

GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

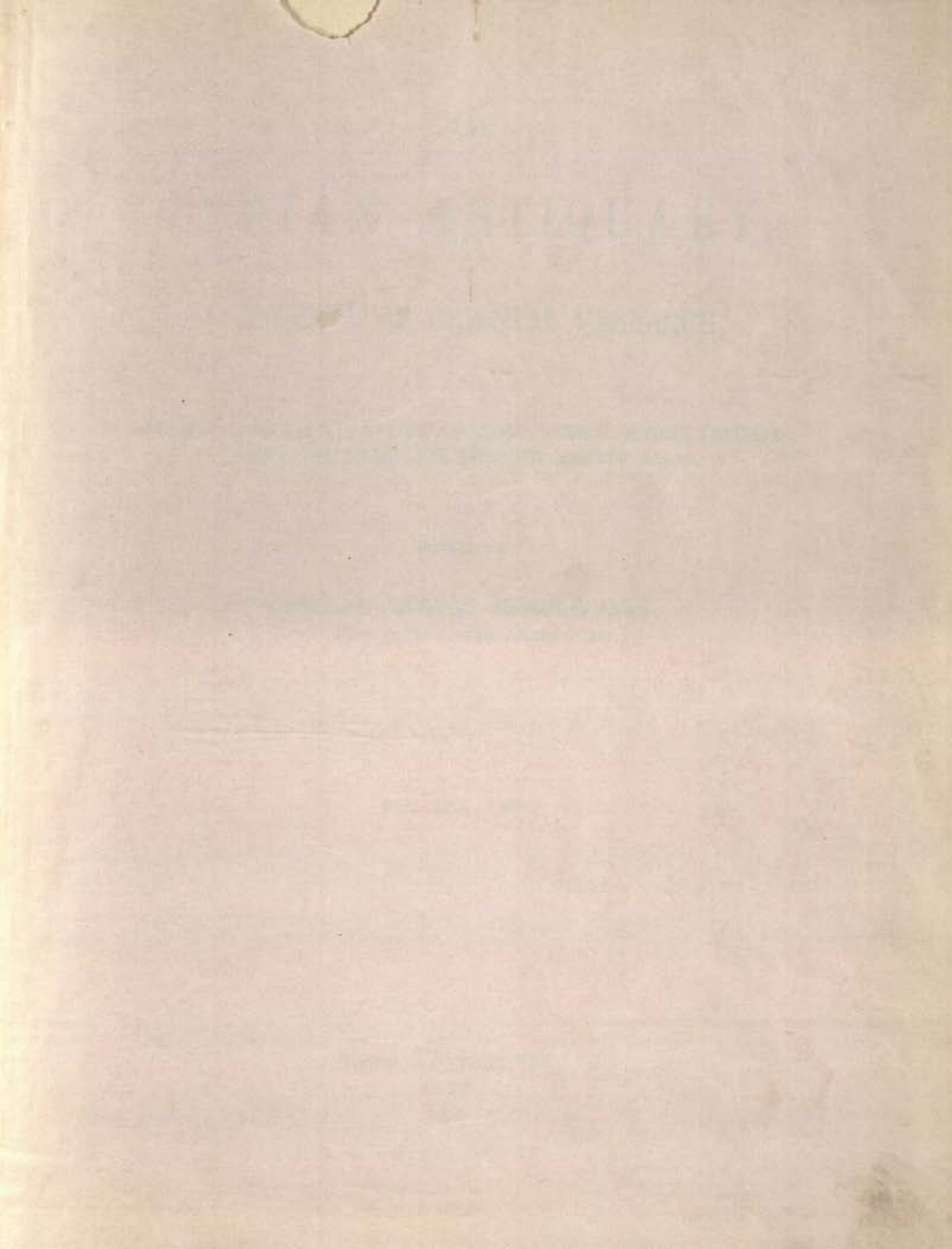
**ARCHAEOLOGICAL SURVEY OF INDIA**

Central Archaeological Library  
NEW DELHI

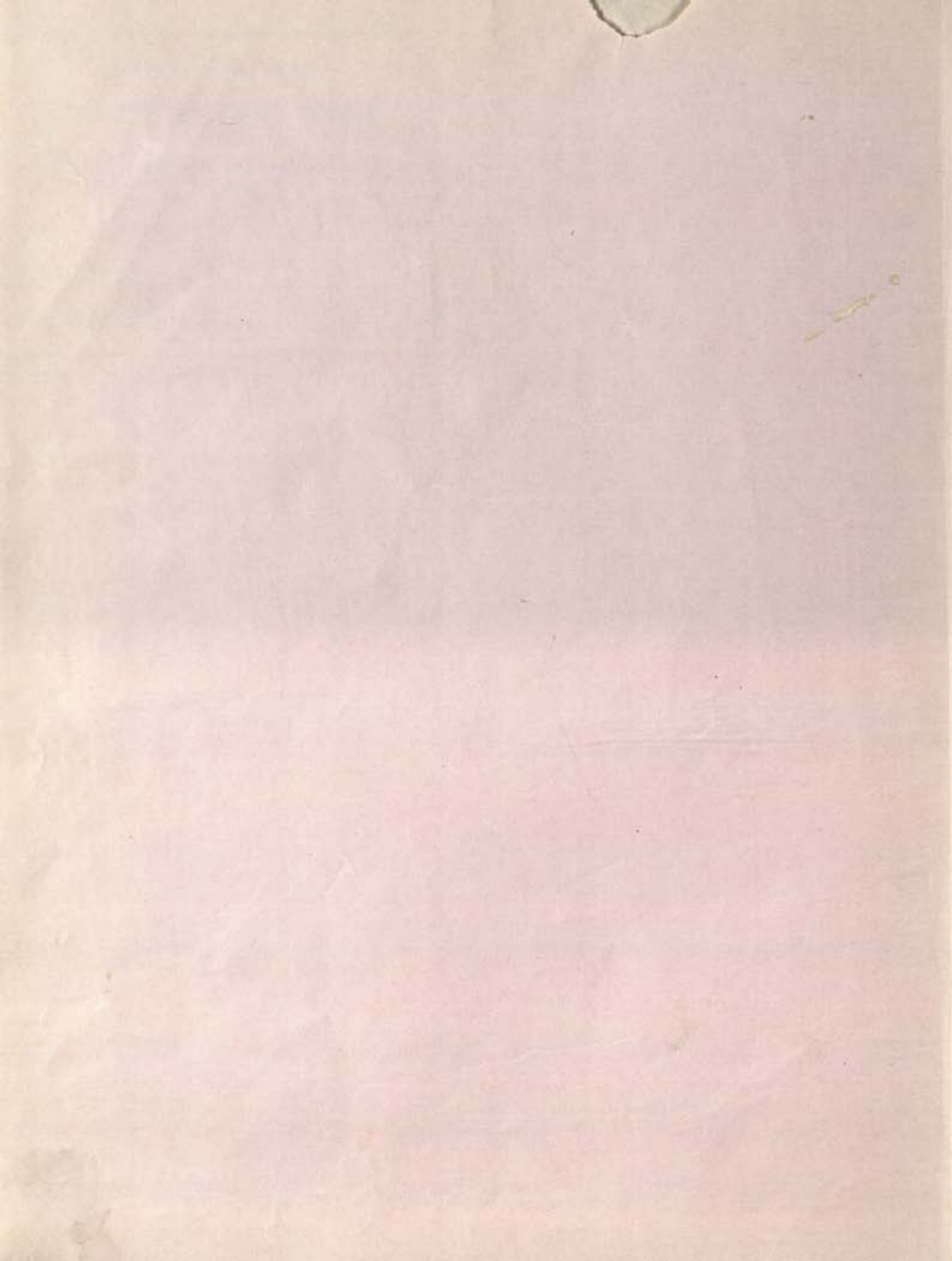
ACC. NO. 76220

CALL NO. R 891.05/I.A

D.G.A 79







THE  
INDIAN ANTIQUARY,  
A JOURNAL OF ORIENTAL RESEARCH

IN  
ARCHÆOLOGY, EPIGRAPHY, ETHNOLOGY, GEOGRAPHY, HISTORY, FOLKLORE, LANGUAGES,  
LITERATURE, NUMISMATICS, PHILOSOPHY, RELIGION, &c., &c.,

EDITED BY

RICHARD CARNAC TEMPLE, C.I.E.,  
LIEUT.-COLONEL, INDIAN STAFF CORPS.

76220 ~~76219~~

VOL. XXX. — 1901.



R-891.05  
I.A.

Swati Publications

Delhi

1985



	PAGE		PAGE
LT.-COL. R. C. TEMPLE, C.I.E. :—		Godown ... ..	456
EXTRACTS FROM THE BENGAL CONSULTATIONS		Soosy — Copoas... ..	508
OF THE XVIIIth CENTURY RELATING TO THE		Some Forms of Feringee ... ..	508
ANDAMAN ISLANDS ... ..	28, 183	Juffye — Jump of the Cultch ... ..	508
EXTRACTS FROM THE LOG OF A VOYAGE ALONG		Some Burmese Expressions at Port Blair... ..	551
THE COAST OF INDIA IN 1746 ... ..	64, 342, 388	Papaya ... ..	552
Sepoy ... ..	120	Corruptions of English at Port Blair ... ..	552
The Trade in Andamanese Slaves ... ..	120	The Braces ... ..	552
Some Old Indo-European Terms for Boats ... ..	160		
Secretore — Secretary ... ..	163	M. N. VENKATASWAMI, M.R.A.S., M.F.L.S. :—	
Some Corruptions of English from Port Blair ... ..	163	FOLKLORE IN THE CENTRAL PROVINCES :—	
AN UNPUBLISHED XVIIIth CENTURY DOCUMENT		No. 14. — The Story of the Ant (a Cumulative	
ABOUT THE ANDAMANS ... ..	232	Rhyme) ... ..	31
Weeping as a Form of Greeting ... ..	256	No. 15. — The Too-punctilious Brahman ... ..	110
Corruptions of English in Port Blair ... ..	256	No. 16. — Why the Mala is the Lowest Caste... ..	200
A Specimen of Modern Domestic Hindustani ... ..	320	No. 17. — The Legends of the Colair Lake ... ..	200
Corruptions of English — Hangling ... ..	320		
Moturpha ... ..	320	PROP. A. WEBER. See JAMES BURGESS and	
Bogus Anglo-Indianisms ... ..	320	GEO. A. GRIERSON.	
Tarryar ... ..	320	M. WINTERNITZ, Ph.D. :—	
Tomb ... ..	408	A Sanskrit Epic Text Society ... ..	117
Kos — Course — Corse ... ..	408		
THE WRECK OF THE "DODDINGTON," 1755... ..	451, 491		

## MISCELLANEA AND CORRESPONDENCE.

The Derivation of the Word Panthay, by Taw		Aspect of Hindu Worship, by S. S. Mehta, B.A. ... ..	254
Sein Ko ... ..	39	The Popular View of Ganesa in Madras, by K.	
Aurangzeb's Family — Date of His Daughter Zinnat-		Srikanta Iyer ... ..	255
un-Nissa's Death, by William Irvine ... ..	79	The Dipak Rag, by C. Tirumalayya Naidu ... ..	319
Date of Buddha's Nirvana, by Jas. Burgess ... ..	117	Spades and Dragons, by R. E. Enthoven ... ..	367
A Sanskrit Epic Text Society, by M. Winternitz ... ..	117	Some Notes on Ladakhi Currency, by Rev. A. H.	
Some Old Indo-European Terms for Boats, by R. C.		Francke ... ..	456
Temple ... ..	160		

## NOTES AND QUERIES.

Some Birth Customs of the Mussalmans in the		Bogus Anglo-Indianisms, by R. C. Temple ... ..	320
Panjab, by Gulab Singh ... ..	40	Tarryar, by R. C. Temple ... ..	320
Hindu Superstitions in the Central Provinces, by		Tomb, by R. C. Temple ... ..	408
M. R. Pedlow ... ..	120, 163, 256	Kos — Course — Corse, by R. C. Temple ... ..	408
Sepoy, by R. C. Temple ... ..	120	Godown ... ..	456
The Trade in Andamanese Slaves, by R. C. Temple... ..	120	Soosy — Copoas, by R. C. Temple ... ..	508
Secretore — Secretary, by R. C. Temple ... ..	163	Some Forms of Feringee, by R. C. Temple ... ..	508
Some Corruptions of English from Port Blair, by		Juffye — Jump of the Cultch, by R. C. Temple ... ..	508
R. C. Temple ... ..	163	Some Burmese Expressions at Port Blair, by R. C.	
Weeping as a Form of Greeting, by R. C. Temple ... ..	256	Temple ... ..	551
Corruptions of English in Port Blair ... ..	256	Papaya, by R. C. Temple ... ..	552
A Specimen of Modern Domestic Hindustani, by		Corruptions of English at Port Blair, by R. C.	
R. C. Temple ... ..	320	Temple ... ..	552
Corruptions of English, by R. C. Temple ... ..	320	The Braces, by R. C. Temple ... ..	552
Moturpha, by R. C. Temple ... ..	320	The Eighteen Agus, by A. I. Francke ... ..	364

## BOOK-NOTICES.

History of Sanskrit Literature, by E. J. Rapson, 164	Professor Fischell's Prakrit Grammar, by G. A. G. 553
------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------



# CONTENTS.

v

## ILLUSTRATIONS.

	PAGE		PAGE
Four Plates illustrating Dr. Stein's Tour. 85, 90, 91, 92		Edakal Cave, Plate I., Figs. 1 and 2	... 413
Ladakhi Marriage Scene ... ..	136	" Plate II.	... 414
Chart of Blackwood's Harbour ... ..	358	" Plate III.	... 415
Nos. 1-4, Cave Inscriptions near Sultan's Battery ...	412	" Plate IV.	... 417
		" Plate V.	... 418
		" Plate VI.	... 419

## ERRATA.

- |                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| P. 3, note 10, line 7, for <i>Harihardvali</i> , read <i>Harihārdvali</i> .                                                                       | P. 17, line 35, for <i>gunged</i> , read <i>gauged</i> .        |
| P. 15, line 7, for <i>vdirections</i> , read <i>various directions</i> , and <i>strike out</i> there <i>before which at the end of the line</i> . | P. 206, line 37, for <i>Ananatpur</i> , read <i>Anantapur</i> . |
|                                                                                                                                                   | P. 377, line 8, for <i>Retrem</i> , read <i>Retrēm</i> .        |
|                                                                                                                                                   | P. 379, line 26, for <i>Kanahwade</i> , read <i>Kanahvade</i> . |
|                                                                                                                                                   | P. 513, line 15, for <i>pētha</i> , read <i>pēṭha</i> .         |





76220



# THE INDIAN ANTIQUARY,

A JOURNAL OF ORIENTAL RESEARCH.

VOLUME XXX. — 1901.

## THE PRESENT POSITION OF INDIAN HISTORICAL RESEARCH.

BY J. F. FLEET, I.C.S. (RETD.), PH.D., C.I.E.

IT is well known now, in certain circles, that our knowledge of the ancient political history of India is derived, not from historical works bequeathed to us by the Hindûs, but almost entirely from the patient examination of a large number of records, not written as a rule with any deliberate intention of relating history, that have survived to our time in the shape of inscriptions on stone and copper. And we are chiefly dependent on those records, not only for the political history, but also for nearly all the chronological details that we require in connection with the linguistic, palæographic, literary, religious, social, and administrative developments, and, in short, in connection with every department of research into the past of India.

It is, however, not so well known what these records are, upon which we are thus dependent, and why they have come down to us in such large numbers, and how it is that they help us so much. Nor has there been exhibited, by those to whom service and residence in India give opportunities which many other scholars do not enjoy, so general a willingness, as might have been expected, to co-operate in collecting and exploring the records. Nor do the specialists in literature, philosophy, and some other lines, seem to realise how useful to them, if they would only peruse the published versions of the records, would be the results that can be brought forward from that source. And some of the objects of the present paper are to explain the nature of these records and the extent to which they help us, and to shew the paramount importance of them in the various lines of research that have been indicated, with the hope of creating a more general interest in them and of persuading more workers to join in the exploration of them.

We want to arouse a more general and practical interest in the epigraphic records among the specialists in literature, philosophy, the history of the religions, and other lines. It can only be imagined that the reason for which the records have not yet appealed more to the specialists, is, that the nature and possibilities of them have never been brought forward with sufficient prominence. And we hope to do something now towards supplying this deficiency. It is not always, of course, that a single inscription, taken by itself, establishes anything of special importance; and we must not expect to make a great discovery in every separate one that we examine. The value of the inscriptions results more from the way in which they all work in, one with the other. But we may mention here two cases which illustrate the results that can occasionally be obtained from even isolated records.

One is the case of *Lakulîṣa*. Among the Śaivas, there was an important school, known as that of the *Lakulîṣa-Pāsupatas*, whose views were thought worthy of being explained by the well



known Sāyana. A historical record connected with this school, known as the Cintra Prāsaati, composed during the period A. D. 1274 to 1296, was edited some eight or nine years ago by Dr. Bühler,<sup>1</sup> who, however, found that he could not tell us anything about the early history and initial date of the school. The required clue is supplied by one of the southern records, an inscription of A. D. 1035 at Baḷagāmi in Mysore,<sup>2</sup> which shows that Lakulīṣa was then alive, and was at Baḷagāmi, by the simple fact, which it registers, that a grant, which was then made for the rites of a temple there, was made to him. And, with this to guide us, it was easy to trace another mention of him in a record of A. D. 1019 or 1020, and to determine that he began his career at Mēlpāḍi in the North Arcot district, Madras, where, doubtless, he laid the foundations of the reputation and influence that he subsequently acquired,—that from there he went to Baḷagāmi, and attached himself to one of the great Śaiva establishments at that place, namely the college of the Kāḷāmukhas of the temple of Pañchaliṅga,—and that later on he proceeded to Gujarāt, and then, settling at Kārvāṇ in the Baroda State, founded there the school of Pāśupatas which carried on the memory of him for so long a time.

The other is the case of the revival of Saivism in the twelfth century A. D. In the Kanarese country, there is the important sect of the Liṅgāyats or Vira-Saivas. Their tenets are explained in the *Basavapurāṇa* and the *Channabasavapurāṇa*, which also give the traditional account of the establishment of the sect and of the revival of Saivism which it accompanied, attributing both to a certain Basava and his nephew Channabasava, who are represented as having held, in succession, the office of prime minister under the Kaḷachurya king Bijjala of Kalyāṇi (A. D. 1156 to 1167). Scepticism as to the correctness of these accounts had been created by the fact, that no mention of Basava and Channabasava is to be found in any of the numerous epigraphic records of that period that have been brought to light. The fact that the *Channabasavapurāṇa* would place the death of Basava in A. D. 785, four centuries before the true time of Bijjala, was not calculated to allay suspicion. And any amount of uncertainty and speculation might have been the result. The matter, however, has been settled by an inscription at Ablūr in the Dhārwar district.<sup>3</sup> The events narrated in this record are referred, by the connection of them with the well known names and period of Bijjala and the Western Chālukya king Sōmēśvara IV., to the latter half of the twelfth century A. D. The record shews that it was then, indeed, that the revival of Saivism took place. But it shews also that the person who actually effected it, was the Brāhmaṇ Ekāntada-Rāmayya, born at Alande in the Nizam's Dominions. And it gives a very racy and interesting account of the circumstances in which he lived and worked, and illustrates pointedly how quickly, in India, real historical events may come to be overlaid with what is purely imaginary and mythical. And, in connection with this record, we take the Managōḷi inscription of A. D. 1161;<sup>4</sup> and there, in the person of a certain Basavarasayya who founded a *liṅga*-temple, evidently of some considerable size and repute, in the neighbourhood of the alleged birth-place of the founder of the sect, we may find the original of the Basava of the Liṅgāyat *Purāṇas*.

As an instance of the more general uses to which the details of epigraphic work may be applied, we may take the case of the Bower Manuscript,—an ancient document written on leaves made from dried birch-bark. It had been obtained through excavations at "the foot of one of the curious old erections of which several are to be found in the Kuchar "district." It was secured and brought to notice by Lieutenant Bower,<sup>5</sup> from whom it derives its name. And Dr. Hoernle has shewn that, in this manuscript, we have a veritable original document, which is a relic that has come down to us from the period A. D. 400 to 450.<sup>6</sup> The contents of this work, which include a medical treatise, a Buddhist tale, and a collection of proverbial sayings, may or may not be of practical value. But it is neither uninteresting nor

<sup>1</sup> *Ep. Ind.* Vol. I. p. 271.

<sup>2</sup> *Ep. Ind.* Vol. V. p. 237.

<sup>3</sup> See *Jour. Beng. As. Soc.* Vol. LIX. Part I, Proceedings, p. 221.

<sup>4</sup> See *Ep. Ind.* Vol. V. p. 227.

<sup>5</sup> *Ep. Ind.* Vol. V. p. 2.

<sup>6</sup> Vol. XXII. above, pp. 37, 38.



unimportant, to have it proved to our satisfaction that, under favourable conditions, a document written on so frail a material as birch-bark can survive for fourteen centuries. It would, however, have been difficult, if not impossible, to establish this conclusively, without the help, for the palæographic examination of the document, of the photo-lithographic reproductions of ancient records which were given as an accompaniment to the texts and translations of them in my volume on the Gupta inscriptions.

And there is one other matter, illustrating still more pointedly the general value of the inscriptions and the hopelessness of attempting to deal finally with any Indian questions without their help and guidance, which is worth noting here, because of the bearing that it has been supposed to have on the history of Sanskrit literature. We mean the Vikrama legend. One of the principal reckonings of the Hindûs is an era which runs from B. C. 57. A Hindû legend tells us that a celebrated king Vikrama or Vikramāditya of Ujjain, in Mâlwa, began to reign in that year, and founded the era, which, on that view, runs from the commencement of his reign. Another version of it asserts that he died in that year, and that the reckoning runs from his death. In either version, the legend appears to be of Jain origin. It is common to both the Digambaras and the Svêtâmbaras. And the *Gâthâs* or Prâkrit verses, upon which the earlier portions of some of the Jain *Pañcâvalis* or successions of the pontiffs are based, pretend to put forward such details about Vikramāditya as that "for eight years he played as a child; for sixteen he roamed over the country; for fifty-six" — (? fifteen) — "he exercised rule, being given over to false doctrine; for forty years he was devoted to the religion of the Jina and then obtained heaven."<sup>7</sup> An addition to the legend connects Vikramāditya with some foreign invaders of India who were called Sakas; and this, again, appears in two versions: one version represents him as regaining the kingdom of Ujjain after the Saka kings had dispossessed his father and had reigned there for four years prior to B. C. 57;<sup>8</sup> and the other, — as reported by Albêrûnî in the eleventh century A. D., — brings the Sakas on the scene a hundred and thirty-five years later, and asserts that Vikramāditya marched against the Saka king, and put him to flight and killed him "in the region of Karâr, between Multân and the castle of Lôni," and that, in celebration of this, there was established the Saka era commencing A. D. 78.<sup>9</sup> And another addition asserts that at the court of Vikramāditya there flourished "the Nine Gems," namely, the poet Kâlidâsa, the astronomer Varâhamihira (died A. D. 587), the lexicographer Amarasimha, and the various authors Dhanvantari, Ghatakarpâra, Kshapâkaka, Sañku, Vararuchi, and Vêtâlabhaṭṭa.<sup>10</sup> Such is the legend. And Mr. Fergusson, led away by the belief, — justifiable enough at the time, forty years ago, — that no inscriptions of any early

<sup>7</sup> Vol. XXI. above, p. 71; and see Vol. XX. p. 350.

<sup>8</sup> See Bhanu Daji's analysis of *Mêrutunga's Thâradali* (*Jour. Bo. Br. R. As. Soc.* Vol. IX. p. 148).

<sup>9</sup> Sachau's *Translation of Albêrûnî's India*, Vol. II. p. 6.

<sup>10</sup> The authority for this is a well known verse, for which no period can be fixed at present. It is to be found in the *Jyôtiṛvidyâharana*, which claims to have been composed by Kâlidâsa himself (*Jour. Bo. Br. R. As. Soc.* Vol. VI. p. 26), but is really to be attributed to about the sixteenth century A. D. (Weber, *Sanskrit Literature*, p. 201, note). But it appears to be "a mere waif and stray, that has come from nobody knows where" (Weber, *ibid.*), like various other verses that are floating about the country, for instance, the verses about the *andmîkâ* or ring-finger (Vol. IV. above, p. 85, and Peterson's Second Report on Sanskrit MSS. p. 62, which quotes it from the anthology of Harikavi called *Harikavîvali*). — If we could place any reliance on an inscription which is said to have been on a stone at Bôdh-Gayâ and to have been copied by Mr. Wilmot in 1785, and of which a translation was published by Wilkins from the copy attributed to Mr. Wilmot (*As. Res.* Vol. I. p. 284, reprint of 1793), we should have a general reference to "the Nine Gems," with the mention of one of them, Amaraḍêva (Amarasimha), carried back to A. D. 948. But the translation represents an extraordinary record, which purports to give an epitome of the *Vâyupurâṇa* in respect of the account of Buddha as an incarnation of Vishnu, and to register the building of a temple of Buddha by Amaraḍêva. It does not indicate in any way the style of a genuine record of the tenth century. And Sir Alexander Cunningham could not find the alleged original inscription at Bôdh-Gayâ (*Archæol. Surv. Ind.* Vol. I. pp. 6, 12). He seems to have subsequently arrived at the conclusion that a copy had been made of a forged inscription, which afterwards disappeared. But it appears more probable that some fraud was practised on Mr. Wilmot, and that he has been mistakenly described as copying the text from an original stone, and that there was palmed off on him an imaginative copy of an alleged original which did not really exist at all.



period, dated in the Vikrama era, could be produced, propounded the theory that the era was not actually in use from B. C. 57, but was invented in the tenth or eleventh century A. D. His ultimate conclusions were, that there was a king of Ujjain named Harsha-Vikramāditya, reigning, according to him, in the period A. D. 495 to 530, — that the battle of Karūr was fought in his time, — that the real date of that battle may have been A. D. 524, — that the Hindūs of later times, however, made a mistake of twenty years, and placed it in a year answering to A. D. 544, — that they wished to have a new reckoning which should supersede the Śaka era, and, for certain conveniences of chronology, should run from an earlier epoch than that era, — that they created an apparent reckoning from B. C. 57 by counting back ten cycles of the sixty-year system from A. D. 544, — and that they found a name for the era in one of the appellations of Harsha-Vikramāditya of Ujjain.<sup>11</sup> Now, we have no epigraphic evidence of the existence of a king Vikramāditya of Ujjain who was reigning B. C. 57, and no reason whatever to believe in the existence of such a person. And, on the other hand, all the epigraphic evidence strongly negatives the possibility of there having been any king Harsha-Vikramāditya of Ujjain in, or at any time near to, the period A. D. 495 to 530 which was worked out by Mr. Fergusson, or even between A. D. 76 and 111 which is the period in which the *Rājataranāgīnī* would place him.<sup>12</sup> Also, an examination of some erroneous postulates assumed by Mr. Fergusson at starting, and of some of the untrustworthy data used by him, quickly exposes the fallacious nature of his theory. But, apart from any considerations of that kind, both the legend, and the theory propounded in the place of it, have been disproved by the results of Professor Kielhorn's examination, from the data supplied by the inscriptions, of various questions connected with the era.<sup>13</sup> He has shewn that the earliest instances of the use of the era all come from eastern Rājputānā, and chiefly from that part of eastern Rājputānā which borders on, or is included in, Mālwa. He has shewn that the era was known in A. D. 472 and 532 as "the reckoning of the Mālavas," and in A. D. 879 as "the Mālava time or era," and that records of A. D. 738 and 1169 speak of it as "the years of the Mālava lord or lords." He has shewn that the word *vikrama* is first found coupled with it in a record of A. D. 842 which speaks of "the time called *vikrama*," and that we hear for the first time of a prince or king named Vikrama, in connection with the era, in a poem composed in A. D. 993, the author of which gives its date by saying that he was writing one thousand and fifty years "after king Vikrama had ascended to the pure dwelling of the immortals." And he has shewn that the first specific mention of the era as having been established by Vikramāditya, is in a record of A. D. 1198. He has pointed out that these facts "would seem to indicate that the connection of Vikrama with the era grew up gradually, or was an innovation which took centuries to become generally adopted." And he has put forward the very reasonable opinion that the word *vikrama*, — from which the idea of the king Vikrama or Vikramāditya was evolved, — most probably came to be connected with the era by the poets, because the years of the reckoning originally began in the autumn, and the autumn was the season for commencing campaigns, and was, in short, the *vikrama-kāla* or "war-time." To upset Mr. Fergusson's theory, there was only needed a date earlier than A. D. 544, actually recorded before that year, and distinctly recognisable as a date of the so-called Vikrama era. And we have two such dates, of A. D. 472 and 532; and we have also two other dates, of A. D. 371 and 423, which cannot be referred to any other era, though they happen not to mention the name of the reckoning in which they are recorded. As regards the legend, all the results of epigraphic research emphatically support Professor Kielhorn's opinion that "the era was neither established by, nor designedly invented in memory of, a king Vikramāditya." And the dates that he has been able to use, from the inscriptions, point to the period between A. D. 842 and 993, as the time during which the first crude rudiments of the full legend were evolved, or at least were brought into something like a substantial story.

<sup>11</sup> See *Jour. R. As. Soc.*, N. S., Vol. IV. pp. 88, 99, 132, and Vol. XII. pp. 274, 277, 279.

<sup>12</sup> See page 15 below.

<sup>13</sup> See Vol. XX. above, p. 401 ff.



We epigraphists, however, not only seek to interest the specialists in the results of our work; we want also to enlist more scholars who will participate in our work, and more supporters of it. When Sir Walter Elliot died in 1887, and General Sir Alexander Cunningham in 1893, there passed away two scholars who, though they did not themselves aim at the critical editing of epigraphic records, recognised, as fully as anyone could, the leading importance of them, and were always ready to use to the utmost their influence to help on that special line of research. In Mr. Fergusson, Mr. Thomas, Mr. Gibbs, and Colonel Yule, again, we have, within the last fifteen years, lost very cordial and influential supporters. And our own ranks have become lamentably small; and some of us are under obligations to deal more with results than with details, which will greatly curtail the time that we can give to the editing of records. In 1888 we lost a most valuable coadjutor in Pandit Bhagwanlal Indraji, a Native gentleman who was working with great application and much critical skill and from a pure desire for the advancement of knowledge. And only in 1898 there passed away, in the person of Dr. Bühler, one who was a leading worker in the field. We want urgently, now, to recruit our ranks, so that the opportunities that are available may be utilised more fully than is being done at present. And we want to be in a position, when the time comes for any reconsideration of the existing archaeological and epigraphic arrangements, to satisfy the Government of India that official encouragement has been fully responded to, and that, so far from any curtailment of it being possible, — an issue which would entail a greater misfortune than can at present be realised, — we require and deserve, and can utilise, still greater facilities for exploration and publication. The Government of India and the Provincial Governments maintain an Epigraphic Staff and Archaeological Surveys, through which materials for work, in the shape of ink-impressions and photographs, can always be obtained by those who have no access to the original records. And they maintain also a special Journal for the publication of the results that may be produced, either from materials obtained through the agencies indicated above, or from materials collected in any other way by private energy. That Journal is the *Epigraphia Indica*. It was started as a separate official publication in 1888 or 1889 by Dr. Burgess, who then held the post of Director-General of the Archaeological Survey. From 1894 it has been carried on in connection with the *Indian Antiquary*, — and in consequence, largely, of the liberal support given by Colonel Temple, the proprietor of the *Indian Antiquary*, — under the direction of the Government Epigraphist, Dr. Hultzsch. And, by the size of its pages and the freedom with which facsimiles are issued, and in other features, it is better suited than any other Journal for the publication of the epigraphic records. Nevertheless, in the five volumes of this Journal that have now been completed, we find the names of only six writers, — (and one of them, Dr. Bühler unhappily now dead), — who can in any way be referred to as habitual contributors. The six writers alluded to, have supplied no less than a hundred and eighty-seven out of the total number of two hundred and thirteen articles included in the five volumes. And we cannot point to any contributions to other Journals, during the same period, which indicate any appreciable activity on the part of other scholars in the same line elsewhere. The pages of the five volumes in question have been filled to very good purpose. But it is extraordinary that so few habitual workers can be found in so interesting and important a line of research. And it is extraordinary that such results as we have been able to put forward in those five volumes and in other publications, should have received, as far as we can judge from any published use of them, so little recognition at the hands of specialists in other lines than that of the political history, who would find much to interest them, and to repay them for the trouble, if they would only examine the five volumes of the *Epigraphia Indica* of which we speak, and the other publications to which we allude. We want to induce more workers to join us. And we look for recruits specially to the class of scholars who have a certain knowledge of Sanskrit to start with; because, though most of the records are not in Sanskrit, that tongue is more or less the key to the languages in which they were written, and a general knowledge of Sanskrit literature and mythology is essential to a proper understanding of many of the allusions in the records.



At the same time, anyone who has made himself conversant with one of the vernaculars in its archaic form and ancient literature, has necessarily acquired, by that process, a considerable acquaintance with the Sanskrit vocabulary, and can easily master, by general reading, what else is wanted. A preliminary knowledge of Sanskrit itself, therefore, is by no means absolutely indispensable. As regards other leading languages, in Kanarese, at any rate, we have, in the Rev. F. Kittel's Kannaḍa-English Dictionary, a scholarly and admirable compilation which has now placed it in the power of all Western students to understand fully, and do justice to, the beauties of that highly polished and powerful tongue; and in Dr. Hultzsch's *South-Indian Inscriptions*, Vols. I. and II. and Part I. of Vol. III., we have a number of carefully edited versions, a study of which would go far towards removing any difficulties in the way of grappling with the epigraphic peculiarities of Tamil. It is no specially difficult matter to now approach the epigraphic records. And a very brief study of some of the versions that have been most recently edited, and of the results brought forward from them, would quickly teach the lines on which it is desirable to deal with the records so as to produce the uniformity of treatment that is requisite, and would inevitably awake an interest that would induce a steady desire to co-operate in the work that we have in hand.

As has been intimated above, we are indebted but very little, and not at all for the more ancient periods, to any historical works compiled by the Hindūs themselves. And it is very questionable whether the ancient Hindūs ever possessed the true historical sense, that is to say the faculty of putting together genuine history on broad and critical lines. As we shall see, they could write short historical compositions, concise and to the point, but limited in scope. But no evidence of their possession of the faculty of dealing with history on general lines has survived to us, in the shape of any genuine historical work, deliberately written by them as such, and also accurate and reliable. The experience of the Arabian writer Albērūnī, in the eleventh century A.D., was, that "the Hindūs do not pay much attention to the historical order of things, they are very careless in relating the chronological succession of their kings, and when they are pressed for information and are at a loss, not knowing what to say, they invariably take to tale-telling."<sup>14</sup> And, certainly, such attempts as have been made by the Hindūs of more recent times, do not display any capabilities from which we might infer that their early ancestors possessed the faculty, even if they did not exercise it. Early in the present century, there was put together, — apparently, quite spontaneously, and not in consequence of any lead given by Western inquirers, — a Kanarese compilation entitled *Rājāvalī-kathe* or "the story of the succession of kings," which purports to trace the history of Jainism, especially in connection with the province of Mysore on the political history of which, also, it pretends to throw light, from the earliest possible times; the published extracts from this work,<sup>15</sup> however, shew that it is simply an imaginative production, of the most fanciful kind, based on the wildest legends, to which no value of any sort can be attached for early historical purposes.<sup>16</sup> At apparently some earlier time, as yet not fixed, there was drawn up, in the same part of the country, a Tamil chronicle entitled *Koṅḡudēśarājākka*<sup>17</sup> or "the kings of the Koṅḡu country," which purports to give a connected historical account of Mysore from the first century A. D.; but in this case, again, the fanciful nature of the work, and its utter want of reliability for any purposes of early history, are disclosed at once by the very slightest thoughtful examination: for instance, at the outset, not only does it give, as real facts, the fictitious

<sup>14</sup> Sachau's *Translation of Albērūnī's India*, Vol. II. p. 6.

<sup>15</sup> See Mr. Rice's *Inscr. at Srav. Bel.* Introd. pp. 3 ff., 8 ff., 25 f., 61.

<sup>16</sup> For one illustration of this, see Vol. XXI. above, p. 157; and regarding the apocryphal character of one of the earlier works on which it may be based, the *Bhadrabādhucharita*, see *Ep. Ind.* Vol. IV. p. 23, note 1.

<sup>17</sup> For Prof. Dowson's abstract of the contents of this work, see *Jour. R. As. Soc., F. S.*, Vol. VIII. p. 1 ff. He has spoken (p. 2) of a translation of it, "in the volume of MSS. at the India House;" this, if it could be found, might perhaps throw some light on the period of its compilation and on its connection with the spurious records of Mysore. It also appears (ibid.) that another translation of the work was made by the Rev. W. Taylor.



pedigree and history with which we are familiar from the spurious copper-plate grants of the Western Gaṅga series, but also,<sup>18</sup> before the first of the fictitious Gaṅga kings, it places, in the period A. D. 82 to 178 and before that time, some of the Rāshtrakūṭa kings whose dates really lay between A. D. 675 and 956. Notices of other chronicles, relating for instance to the Chōla, Pallava, and Pāṇḍya territories and to the Tēlīngāna country, are to be found in Prof. H. H. Wilson's *Descriptive Catalogue of the Mackenzie Collection*. These have, perhaps, not yet been criticised in detail. But a perusal of the notices discloses features very similar to those of the *Rājāvalīkathā* and the *Koṅṁudēśārājākalā*. And, though they may be of some use in the geographical line of inquiry, we have no *prima-facie* reason to expect to find in these works also, anything of the slightest historical value for early times.

And yet there were, undoubtedly, genuine materials in abundance, from which histories of the most valuable kind might have been compiled in early times.

In the first place, we know how, in India, pedigrees are always forthcoming, even in the present day, to an extent that is unknown in Western countries. Among families connected in any way hereditarily with the administration, even the Gaṇḍas or Pāṭils and the Kuṭkarnīs, the village headmen and accountants, can always bring forward, — whenever there is any inquiry into their *watans* or rights and privileges, or any dispute among themselves, — genealogical tables, unquestionably not altogether unauthentic, which exhibit the most complicated ramifications of their houses, and often go back for two or three centuries; and even the death of an ordinary cultivator usually results in the production of a similar table, though of more limited scope, in the inquiry that is held to determine his heirs. Every *maṭha* or religious college of any importance preserves the succession of its heads. Among the Jains, we have the *Paṭṭāvalis* or successions of pontiffs, for a full and lucid notice of some of which we are indebted to Dr. Hoernle:<sup>19</sup> they purport to run back to even the death of the last *Tīrthāṅhaka* Vardhamāna-Mahāvīra in, let us say, B. C. 527; and, though the earlier portions of them were put together in their present form not before the ninth century A. D. (because they exhibit the Vikrama-legend)<sup>20</sup> and with results that are capable of considerable adjustment, they are, no doubt, based upon more ancient and correct lists that were then extant. The preservation of pedigrees and successions has evidently been a national characteristic for very many centuries. And we can, not doubt that considerable attention was paid to the matter in connection with the royal families and that *Vaṃśāvalis* or *Rājāvalis*, lists of the lineal successions of kings, were compiled and kept from very early times. In fact, the matter is not one of speculation, but is capable of proof. We distinctly recognise the use of such *Vaṃśāvalis*, — giving the relationships and successions of kings, but no chronological details beyond the record of the total duration of each reign with occasionally a coronation-date recorded in an era, — in the copper-plate records. We trace them, for instance, in the introductory passages of the grants of the Eastern Chalukya series,<sup>21</sup> which, from the period A. D. 918 to 925 onwards, name the successive kings beginning with the founder of the line who reigned three centuries before that time, but do not put forward more than the length of the reign of each of them; and, from certain differences in the figures for some of the reigns, we recognise that there were varying recensions of those *Vaṃśāvalis*. We trace the use of *Vaṃśāvalis* again in the similar records of the Eastern Gaṅgas of Kalinga, which, from A. D. 1058 onwards,<sup>22</sup> give the same details about the kings of that line with effect from about A. D. 890, and one of which, issued in A. D. 1296,<sup>23</sup> includes a coronation-date of A. D.

<sup>18</sup> See *Ep. Ind.* Vol. III. p. 170 f.

<sup>19</sup> Vol. XX. above, p. 341, and Vol. XXI. p. 57. For others, see Vol. XI. above, pp. 243, 251, Peterson's Second Report on Sanskrit Manuscripts, pp. 89, 163, and Bhandarkar's Report on Sanskrit Manuscripts for 1883-84, pp. 14, 319.

<sup>20</sup> See page 3 f. above.

<sup>21</sup> See, for instance, Vol. XIV. above, p. 55, *South-Ind. Inscri.* Vol. I. p. 86, and *Ep. Ind.* Vol. V. p. 131.

<sup>22</sup> See *Ep. Ind.* Vol. IV. p. 183.

<sup>23</sup> *Jour. Beng. As. Soc.* Vol. LXV. Part I, p. 239.



1141 or 1142. And there is other proof also.<sup>24</sup> There has been brought to light from Nêpâl a long *Vaṁśāvali*,<sup>25</sup> which purports to give an unbroken list of the rulers of that country, with the lengths of their reigns and an occasional landmark in the shape of the date of an accession stated in an era, back from A. D. 1763 to even so fabulous an antiquity as six or seven centuries before the commencement of the Kali age in B. C. 3102. It contains gross mistakes in chronology; for instance, it places B. C. 101 to 34 Amśuvarman, of the Thākuri dynasty, who, we know, was ruling in A. D. 635 and 649 or 650,<sup>26</sup> and, partly through committing one of the usual leading faults of Hindû compilations, namely of treating contemporaneous dynasties as successive dynasties, it places about the end of the seventh century B. C. a certain Vṛishadêva, of the Sûryavamśi or Licchhavi dynasty, who, we know, was a contemporary of Amśuvarman. And, as was pointed out by Pandit Bhagwanlal Indrajī who brought the full *Vaṁśāvali* to notice critically, "it possesses no value whatever as a whole," and "no single one of its several portions is free from the most serious errors," and it is useless for reconstructing the earlier history of Nêpâl, even by adjustment with respect to any names and dates that are known from other sources. But, in connection with the above-mentioned Vṛishadêva, and in spite of the error in respect of his date, it teaches one thing which is of use. From him, whom it places No. 18 in the Sûryavamśi dynasty, to Vasantadêva, No. 23, it gives correctly a list of six successive names, which we have verified from epigraphic records. It allots to each of these rulers, it is true, a length of reign which not only is impossible in itself, but also is disproved in one case at least by the epigraphic records. But the fact remains, that the names are given correctly and in the right order. This short list was certainly not based on some ancient charter read by the original compiler of this portion of the *Vaṁśāvali*. What would have happened, if that had been the case, is suggested plainly enough by the Konnûr inscription from the Dhârwar district,<sup>27</sup> which purports to be the reproduction of a charter, dated A. D. 860, of the time of the Râshtrakûṭa king Amoghavarsha I. Here, we have a record on stone, which says that it was embodied in that shape in accordance with a copper-plate charter that was read and explained by a certain Jain teacher named Viranandin, the son of Mēghachandra. Partly from the characters of the record, and partly from the known fact that Mēghachandra died A. D. 1115, we know that this record was not put on the stone before the twelfth century A. D. We do not dispute the alleged fact that Viranandin drafted the stone record from some ancient charter on copper. But we find either that he could not read that charter correctly, or that he did not take the trouble to interpret it aright; for, not only has he misstated the relationship of some of the Râshtrakûṭa kings whom the stone version does mention and omitted others whom it ought to have included, but also, — probably from a wrong interpretation of some verse which we have not as yet found in a genuine record, — he has placed at the head of the Râshtrakûṭa genealogy a purely fictitious person, whom he has called Prichchhakarâja. If the list from Vṛishadêva to Vasantadêva in the Nêpâl *Vaṁśāvali* had been put together in the same way from some ancient deed, the compiler of that part of the document would undoubtedly have committed some similar mistakes. And we have no hesitation in saying that he took these six names from some genuine early *Vaṁśāvali*, accessible to him, which had survived from the time of the rulers to whom it referred; and probably the duration of the reigns was given correctly by him, and was falsified subsequently by some later compiler, to suit his own scheme of the whole chronology. The Bower Manuscript has shewn us how long even perishable documents may survive. And we may not unreasonably hope that an exploration of some buried city, or even of one or other of the numerous private collections of ancient manuscripts that still remain to be examined, may some day result in the discovery of some of the early and authentic *Vaṁśāvalis*. Meanwhile, we have to be very cautious in accepting what we do obtain in this line. We have before us the example, not only of this Nêpâl *Vaṁśāvali*, but also of some *Vaṁśāvalis* from Orissa, which do not indeed pretend to quite such fabulous antiquity, but which nevertheless purport to present an unbroken list of the kings of

<sup>24</sup> Kalhana, writing in A. D. 1148-49, mentions lists of kings of Kashmīr which had been put together by Kshēmaendra and Hēlarāja (see page 11 below). But we do not quote these as proof of our present point; because they were compilations, not original lists prepared under the dynasties to which they belonged.

<sup>25</sup> Vol. XIII. above, p. 411.

<sup>26</sup> Gupta Inscriptions. Introd. p. 189.

<sup>27</sup> Ep. Ind. Vol. VI, p. 25.



that province, going back from A. D. 1871 to the commencement of the Kali age, with the length of the reign of each, and with certain specified dates as epochs. And the results put forward by them, and by the palm-leaf archives of the temple of Jagannātha at Puri, have been supposed to give at any rate certain definite and reliable land-marks in the early history. But an examination of them and of the archives<sup>28</sup> has shewn that, for at least the period anterior to about A. D. 1100, they are utterly fanciful and misleading, and that they were devised, chiefly from imagination, simply to magnify the antiquity and importance of the temple of Jagannātha and of all its surroundings and connections. These local annals are not correct even in respect of so radical a point as the building of that temple. They attribute it to a king Anāṅgabhimā, whom they would place A. D. 1175 to 1202; whereas we know, from the epigraphic records, that it was built by a predecessor of his, Anantavarma-Chōḍagaṅga-Gaṅgēśvara, in the period A. D. 1075 to 1141 or 1142. Further, they actually divide this latter king into two persons, — Chōḍagaṅga and Gaṅgēśvara, — to whom they would allot the periods A. D. 1132 to 1152 and 1152 to 1166. For the period anterior to him, they do not incorporate any ancient and authentic lists of rulers, but simply bring forward, amongst a host of fabulous names, a few historic kings, some of them not even connected with Orissa at all, whose dates they grossly misplace. And thus these records, again, are absolutely worthless for any purposes of ancient history.

In the genuine early *Vasāvalis*, materials must long have been extant, which could have been turned to most valuable account, if only for the bare outlines of political history. But there were plainly more ample materials than these. Of course, the elaborate routine of modern times had not been devised. Still, with the great advance towards civilisation which the Hindūs had made even in the fourth century B. C., and with the careful and detailed system of administration which is disclosed by the epigraphic records, there must have been, from early times, a fairly extensive system of official records. In any such state of advancement, there are certain precautions and arrangements, indicated by common sense, which would inevitably be adopted. Copies of important orders issued must be kept on record in the issuing office, as a reminder to make sure that instructions given are duly and fully carried out. And orders received must be filed in the receiving office, to be produced in justification of any particular measures taken in giving effect to them. The specific terms of treaties and alliances must be reduced to writing, and copies must be kept for reference by each of the contracting parties. Diaries of some kind must be kept by local governors, from which to prepare from time to time the periodical reports on their administration. A record must be kept, on both sides, of tribute paid by the great feudatory nobles and received by the paramount sovereign. And, even under a system of farming the revenues, accounts of some kind must be framed, of the proceeds of provincial customs and taxes and of village revenues, and of the expenditure incurred on the collection of them. Notes of all these matters must have been preserved in some form or another, in all the various offices. But it is probable that they were kept in the shape of general day-books, — something like the Diaries of the Pēshwās of the eighteenth century,<sup>29</sup> — dealing with all matters mixed, rather than according to any system of separate ledgers and files for each branch of business. Except on the hypothesis of such a system of day-books, it is difficult to account for the manner in which, for instance, the date of a record of A. D. 1008 at Tanjore cites the one hundred and twenty-fourth and one hundred and forty-third days of the twenty-fourth year of the Chōḷa king Rājārāja I.,<sup>30</sup> and the date of a record of A. D. 1113 at Tiruvārūr in the Tanjore district cites the three hundred and fortieth day of the fifth year of the reign of his descendant Vikrama-Chōḷa-dēva;<sup>31</sup> for such a detail to be cited conveniently, there must have been available some such books, in which the days were entered and numbered, and the events of them were posted up, as they ran.<sup>32</sup>

<sup>28</sup> See *Ep. Ind.* Vol. III. p. 331 ff.

<sup>29</sup> For a sample of these Diaries, see the Extracts relating to Political Matters from the *Rājīnī* or journal of the Pēshwā Śāhu from A. D. 1713-14 to 1734-35, which have been recently published. I understand that we are indebted to Mr. Ganesh Chimanji Vad for the compilation of the extracts, and that they are being printed by the Dekkan Vernacular Translation Society, Poona.

<sup>30</sup> *South-Ind. Insers.* Vol. III. p. 14.

<sup>31</sup> See *Ep. Ind.* Vol. IV. p. 73.

<sup>32</sup> A rather curious instance of citing the days is furnished by the Tiruppāvanam grant of the Pāṇḍya king Jaṭavarma-Kulaśekhara, which mentions the four thousand three hundred and sixtieth day of his thirteenth year



In such day-books and other records, valuable items of historical information would abound. The compilation, however, of any general history from them would, no doubt, be a somewhat complicated and laborious matter. But there were, plainly, other materials of a more concise kind, that might have been used with great facility, in the shape of **dynastic archives and chronicles**, which, in some cases at least, survived for a considerable time after the disappearance of the dynasties to which they belonged, and from which comprehensive and very valuable accounts might easily have been put together. It can only have been from ancient archives, of considerable fulness of detail, which had fallen into their own hands, that the Western Chalukya kings of Kalyāṇi derived the knowledge that they possessed, and exhibited in some of their records, of the earlier Chalukya dynasty of Bādāmi, — separated from themselves by an interval of three centuries, during which an extraneous dynasty possessed the sovereignty, — from which they claimed to be descended; this is pointedly illustrated by the mention, in the Kauthēm grant of A. D. 1009,<sup>37</sup> of Maṅgalēśa, who was not in the direct line of descent, and therefore might easily have been lost sight of in a mere *Vaṃśāvali*, and by the preservation, in the same record, among certain other details which tradition alone, or a mere list of kings, would not account for, of the memory of the conquest by him of the territory of Rēvatīdvīpa, and by the way in which the record glosses over his attempt to break the direct and rightful senior line of succession in favour of transmitting the crown to his own son, by representing him as simply a regent during the minority of his nephew Pulakēśin II., to whom, it says, he eventually restored the throne in pious accordance with the custom and laws of the Chalukya kings. And the Silāhāra princes of the Southern Kōṅkaṇ must have kept a careful record of their paramount sovereigns, the Rāshtrakūṭas, as well as of themselves, to account for the statement about the rise of their own family under Kṛishṇa I., and for the full account of the Rāshtrakūṭa genealogy, as well as of their own pedigree, that is given in the Khārēpāṇa grant of A. D. 1008,<sup>38</sup> issued by the Silāhāra Raṭṭarāja in the time of the Western Chalukya king Irivabedāṅga-Satyāśraya. These cases indicate distinctly the compilation and survival of dynastic chronicles, which were doubtless carried on chapter by chapter after the death of each successive king or prince. And we can actually recognise the copy of a chapter, or of the draft of the beginning of a chapter, of such a chronicle, compiled most probably from day-books or other miscellaneous sources, in the Udayagiri inscription of B. C. 151,<sup>39</sup> which gives a succinct account of the career of Khāravēla of Kaliṅga from his birth to the thirteenth year of his reign: it tells us that he spent fifteen years in princely sports, — that for nine years he enjoyed power as *Yuvarāja* or heir-apparent and appointed successor, — and that he was crowned to the succession at the end of his twenty-fourth year; and then it briefly enumerates, year by year, the principal events of his reign, and certain large items of expenditure on public works and charity, as far as the thirteenth year. In this department, again, we may hope that future explorations will result in discoveries that will give us reading of a particularly interesting kind.

These materials did not remain altogether unutilised. We can trace a use of at least the *Vaṃśāvalis* in the historical chapters of the *Purāṇas*, which, composed apparently before the ninth century A. D. (because they do not include the Vikrama legend),<sup>40</sup> do certainly indicate a desire on the part of the ancient Hindus not to ignore general history altogether, and are clearly based upon ancient archives which had survived in a more or less complete shape and were somehow or other accessible to the composers of those works. At the same time, it is not much, in the way of reliable history, that we gather from these chapters. In the first place, some of the necessary materials were apparently not available to the authors; and some of the dynasties are omitted altogether: for instance, the *Purāṇas* do not include (at any rate, in anything like its proper place) any reference to the line that

(Vol. XX. above, p. 288). We can hardly imagine that the numbering of the days had run on from the first day of the reign up to that high number. And we understand that, as suggested (*loc. cit.* p. 289) the writer took the fortieth day of the thirteenth year, and, for some reason or other, added it to  $360 \times 12 = 4320$  as the total number of the days of the preceding twelve years.

<sup>37</sup> Vol. XVI. above, p. 15.

<sup>38</sup> *Ep. Ind.* Vol. III. p. 293.

<sup>39</sup> Proceedings of the Sixth International Congress of Orientalists, Vol. III. p. 135.

<sup>40</sup> See page 3f. above.



was founded by Kanishka;<sup>37</sup> nor do they mention the great dynasty of the Early Guptas, unless they speak of those kings as the Guptas of Magadha, whom they would place more than three centuries ahead of the present day; nor do they make any reference to the great Harshavardhana of Thānēsar and Kanauj, "the warlike lord," as the southern records call him, "of all the region of the north." In the second place, while the authors have usually given us the supposed duration of each dynasty, and in some cases even the lengths of individual reigns, they did not think it worth their while to give us any fixed points in the shape of dates recorded in any of the Hindū eras. Thirdly, some of the materials that were used by the authors had apparently become imperfect: for instance, the *Purāṇas* assign only a hundred and thirty-seven years as the period of the Maurya kings; whereas we know, from the Udayagiri inscription of Khāravela,<sup>38</sup> that the Maurya dynasty lasted for at least twenty-eight years longer; for, it is only in consequence of the continuance of the Maurya away, not only in the original territory of the dynasty but also over the conquered province of Kalinga, that that record could be dated, as it is, in the hundred and sixty-fifth year of the time of the Maurya kings. In the fourth place, even allowing for corruption by successive copyists, it seems plain that, — be the cause what it may: for instance, sometimes inability to decipher ancient characters, — the authors have not always given us even the names of their kings with accuracy; compare, for instance, the Purāṇic lists of the Andrabhṛityas, with each other, and still more with such information about those kings as we have obtained from the epigraphic records. And, finally, the extravagant chronological results that these chapters present, shew that the authors here, again, committed the usual Hindū fault of treating contemporaneous dynasties as successive: thus, to take only a part of the whole list, from the beginning of the Mauryas to the end of the Kailakila-Yavanas the *Viṣṇupurāṇa* gives us a total period of two thousand five hundred and fifty-five years; apply this to B. C. 315, as the most probable exact year of the accession of the first Maurya king Chandragupta,<sup>39</sup> and we have the end of the Kailakila-Yavanas in A. D. 2240, three centuries and a half in the future from even the present time; and we have to place after that a variety of other rulers, including the Guptas of Magadha, who, the same work says, followed the Kailakila-Yavanas. While, therefore, the historical chapters of the *Purāṇas* undoubtedly have some basis of truth, the treatment of the subject in them is sketchy and meagre, the details are incomplete, inaccurate, and extravagant, and we cannot bind ourselves to follow them even in the general outline of the alleged succession of the various dynasties.

The only other indication, that has survived from any antiquity, of an attempt on the part of the Hindūs to put together anything in the shape of a general history, is the *Rājatarāṅginī*, on the first eight cantos of which Kalhaṇa was engaged in A. D. 1148-49.<sup>40</sup> Kalhaṇa mentions certain previous writers, — Suvrata, whose work, he says, was made difficult by misplaced learning; Kshēmendra, who drew up a list of kings, of which, however, he says, no part is free from mistakes; Nilamuni, who wrote the *Nilamatapurāṇa*; Hēlarāja, who composed a list of kings in twelve thousand verses; and Śrīmihira or Padmanihira, and the author of the *Śrīchchavillā*. His own work, he tells us, was based on eleven collections of *Rājakathās* or stories about kings,<sup>41</sup> and on the work of Nilamuni. He says he sought to remove all errors by consulting charters issued by ancient kings, and laudatory inscriptions on stones, and manuscripts. And he has presented us with a detailed account of Kashmir, including

<sup>37</sup> Here, and in connection with what follows, see Wilson's Translation of the *Viṣṇupurāṇa*, Vol. IV. p. 178 ff. — Dr. Bhandarkar seems to be of the opinion (see his *Early History of the Deccan*, in the *Gazetteer of the Bombay Presidency*, Vol. I. Part II., p. 161 ff.), that the *Vāyupurāṇa* and the *Matsyapurāṇa* are older works than the one that I quote, and that the figures given in them are, on the whole, more worthy of being quoted, though the texts have, in some cases at least, undergone corruption. There is no objection to that view. But I can conveniently quote only the figures of the *Viṣṇupurāṇa*. And there is no recognisable discrepancy in respect of the broad features to which I draw attention.

<sup>38</sup> See page 10 above, note 35.

<sup>39</sup> In connection with the following remarks, see the extracts given by Dr. Bühler (Vol. VI. above, p. 268), and by Dr. Hultsch (Vol. XVIII. above, pp. 65, 97, and Vol. XIX. p. 231).

<sup>40</sup> Compare, — especially as helping to illustrate how fictitious matter might come to be introduced into such stories, — the discourse about religion, and the recital of the praises of ancient and recent devotees of Śiva, in which Śaṁśvara IV. and his commander-in-chief indulged on a certain occasion (*Ep. Ind.* Vol. V. p. 258; see also *ibid.* p. 233, for another instance of a *dharma-prasaṅga* or talk about religion between village officials).

<sup>41</sup> See Miss Duff's *Chronology of India*, p. 10.



occasional items of external history, which purports to go back to B. C. 2448, and has given us the alleged exact details of the length of the reign of each successive king from B. C. 1182 onwards. We may expect to find him fairly correct for his own time, and for the preceding century or so. But an examination of the details of his work quickly exposes its imaginative character, and its unreliability, for any early period. It places the great Maurya king Aśoka a thousand years before his real time. It places B. C. 704 to 634 Mihirakula, the great foreign invader of India, whose real period was closely about A. D. 530.<sup>42</sup> It places about eight centuries after Mihirakula a Tōramāga, the original of whom can be none other than Tōramāga the father of Mihirakula. And, though Kalhaṇa could put forward such exact details as four years nine months and one day for the duration of the reign of Mātrigupta (A. D. 106 to 111, as worked out by Dr. Hultzsch), he was obliged to allot to Raṇāditya I. a reign of three centuries (A. D. 205 to 505), simply, as Dr. Hultzsch has put it, in order to save his own chronology.

With these exceptions, — namely the historical chapters of the *Purāṇas* and the *Rājatarāṅgiṇī*, — the ancient Hindūs seem to have never made any real attempt to deal with history on general lines; they have left us to gather what we can from their **ordinary literary works**, into which they have occasionally introduced historical matter, but, as can clearly be seen, only as an incidental detail of quite secondary and subordinate importance.

In the body of their literature, the Hindūs do not help us much. The plots of some of the plays, the classical poems, and the collections of imaginative stories, were woven round historic names, both of persons and of places. But it is seldom, except in the geographical line, that such allusions can be put to any practical use. They help us to locate places, and to fix the limits of countries; for instance, we know, from other sources, that the ancient Tāmalip̄tī is the modern Tamlūk in the Midnapur district, and thus the incidental statement in the *Daśakumāracharita* that Tāmalip̄tī was in the Suhma country,<sup>43</sup> gives us a more precise indication, than is obtainable elsewhere, as to the exact part of Bengal that was known by the name of Suhma. And they help us to establish the antiquity of places; thus, we know, from the Aihole inscription of the time of Pulakēśin II., that the celebrated poet Kālidāsa flourished before A. D. 634; and, so, the mention by him of Gōkarṇa,<sup>44</sup> in the North Kanara district, Bombay, carries back the existence of that place, as a famous Saiva site, to at least the beginning of the seventh century A. D. In the historical line, however, the allusions teach us little, if anything. The works do not give dates for what is told in them: and naturally enough; the similar productions of other countries, also, do not aim at being historical records, and at including chronological details. The works in question are of use historically, only when the date of an author happens to be known, and we are enabled thereby to fix a latest possible limit for a historic name, mentioned by him, for which we have otherwise no specific date at all.

There are, indeed, a few compositions, which put forward certain distinct historical pretensions, but which cannot, in truth, be taken as anything more serious than **historical romances**. In Sanskrit, we have the *Harshacharita* of Bāṇa, and the *Vikramāṅkadēvacharita* of Bilhaṇa. The first deals with the achievements or career of the great northern king Harsha, Harṣadēva, or Harṣavardhana of Thāṇēsar and Kannauj (A. D. 605-606 to about 648); and the second deals, in the same way, with an equally great southern king of later times, the Western Chālukya Vikramāditya VI. of Kalyāṇi (A. D. 1076 to 1126). And thus they both aim at being historical chronicles of those two periods. But they do not present the plain straightforward language of sober common sense. They imitate the classical poems, with all their elaboration of diction, metaphor, and imagery. They weave into their stories mythical and supernatural matter of the most fanciful kind. And they give us some charming reading in the poetical line. But they offer us not much beyond that. The historical information contained in the *Harshacharita* might be summed up very briefly. That in the *Vikramāṅkadēvacharita* is more extensive; mixed up, on the other hand, with more imaginative matter than is found in Bāṇa's work. But neither author has given us a date for anything that is mentioned by him.

<sup>42</sup> *Gupta Inscriptions*, Introd. p. 11.

<sup>43</sup> Wilson's Works, Vol. IV. p. 242.

<sup>44</sup> *Raghuvamśa*, viii. verse 33.



We do not blame them for this : the authors of the modern European historical novels rarely give dates; and, when they do, we should hardly accept their statements for quotation without verification. We only remark that no dates are given. Bāṇa, for instance, tells us<sup>45</sup> that Harshavardhana was born "in the month Jyāishṭha, on the twelfth day of the dark fortnight, the Pleiads being in the ascendant, just after the twilight time, when the young night had begun to climb;" but he has not given us any statement as to the year. And Bilhana tells us<sup>46</sup> that, when Vikramāditya was born, "flowers fell from the sky, Indra's drum resounded, and the gods rejoiced in heaven;" but he does not even name the month and day. Neither author has given us even his own date. And, if Harshavardhana and Vikramāditya were not known from more exact sources of a different kind, we should not even know to what period to refer the poets and their patrons. In the same category we must place the Tamil historical poems, — the *Kaṭavali*, the *Kaliṅgattu-Parani*, and the *Vikrama-Chōḷan-Uḷa*,<sup>47</sup> — for our introduction to which we are indebted to Mr. V. Kanakasabhai Pillai. In these, again, there is much of interest, and a good deal of importance. But here, also, there are no dates, and, so, no means in the works themselves for determining the periods to which they belong.

These works, — the dramas, the classical poems, the imaginative stories, and the historical romances, — are invaluable for the study of manners and customs, trade and commerce, methods and routes of communication, and the details of domestic, social, public, and religious life. They would furnish excellent materials for articles such as those which the Rev. T. Foulkes has given us on the Dekkan in the time of Gautama-Buddha.<sup>48</sup> And they supplement the epigraphic records admirably. But that is all they do. It is only in the introductions and colophons of their literary works, — for a knowledge of which we are indebted largely to the detailed reports of the late Professor Peterson, and of Dr. Bhandarkar, on Sanskrit manuscripts, — that the Hindūs have thought it worth their while to give us any dates to accompany such historical details as they put forward. Here, the dates are useful enough. But we find that the historical matter is introduced only incidentally, to magnify the importance of the authors themselves rather than of their patrons, and is not handled with any particular care and fulness. As typical illustrations, we take the following cases. Sōmadēva tells us, in the colophon of his *Yāsa-tilaka*,<sup>49</sup> that he finished that work in the month Chaitra, Śaka-Samvat 881 expired, falling in A. D. 959, during the rule of a Chālukya prince who was the eldest son of Arikēsarin and was a feudatory of a king Kṛishṇarājādēva. But he does not take the trouble to tell us the name of the prince, presumably his immediate patron, or to state the family or even the parentage of the king, or to indicate the territory of either the sovereign or his vassal. In this case, as it happens, we learn more about the family to which the prince belonged, from the *Vikramārjunaviṇaya* or *Pampa-Bhārata* of Pampa, who, writing A. D. 941-42, mentions, as his patron, the aforesaid Arikēsarin, and gives his pedigree for seven preceding generations, with apparently a tolerably definite hint as to the part of the country to which he belonged.<sup>50</sup> As regards the king Kṛishṇarājādēva, — we knew, from the epigraphic records, the Rāshtrakūṭa King Kṛishṇa III., for whom we had dates in A. D. 940 and 956. And, there being no extraneous objections, we did not hesitate to identify Sōmadēva's Kṛishṇarājādēva with this Kṛishṇa III., and to extend the reign of the latter to A. D. 959, even before obtaining for him a later epigraphic date in A. D. 961.<sup>51</sup> In this way, Sōmadēva's literary reference usefully supplemented the inscriptions. But it teaches us, in itself, little enough. And, by the way, he might plainly have told us even a good deal more than he has. The preamble of the letter issued by his hero king Yaśōdbara,<sup>52</sup> — particularly in its introduction of the titles "supreme lord of the town of Padmāvati-pura, lord of the mountain Kanakagiri, and owner of the Kailāsa-crest," as well as in other details, — is no mere ordinary epistle, but is an imitation of the formal preamble of a grant; from which we gather that Sōmadēva had access to official papers, and used one of the drafts kept on hand for preparing charters of grants. Take, again, the case of Jahlāṇa. In the introduction to his *Subhāshitamuktāvali*, written in the period

<sup>45</sup> *Harshacharita*, Cowell and Thomas' Translation, p. 169.

<sup>46</sup> Vol. XVIII. above, p. 229; Vol. XIX. p. 329, Vol. XXII. p. 141.

<sup>47</sup> Peterson's Second Report, p. 47.

<sup>48</sup> An inscription at Dēvi-Hosūr.

<sup>49</sup> Vol. V. above, p. 318.

<sup>50</sup> Vol. XVI. above, pp. 1 ff., 49 ff.

<sup>51</sup> Rice's *Karṇāṭakabāddanūśāsanam*, introd. p. 26.

<sup>52</sup> *Lec. cit.* (note 49 above), p. 39.



A.D. 1247 to 1260,<sup>53</sup> he states carefully the relationships in his own pedigree, but omits to state them in the case of the Dēvagiri-Yādava kings Bhīllama, Siṅghana, and Kṛishṇa, and their ancestor Mallugi, whom he mentions. And take, finally, the case of Hēmadri. Writing in the period A. D. 1260 to 1271, in the time of the Dēvagiri-Yādava king Mahādēva, under whom, as also under his successor Rāmachandra, he held the post of *Srikaraṇādhipa* or superintendent of the business connected with the drawing up of documents, he aimed, in the introduction to his *Vratakhanda*,<sup>54</sup> at giving the full pedigree, with incidental historical items, of that branch of the Yādavas from even Purāṇic times. In spite, however, of the free access that he must have had to the chronicles and official records of the family, — within the historical period, he has omitted, several times, to state the exact relationships of the successive members of the family; he has apparently passed over altogether one of them, Sēṇadēva, whose existence is established by an epigraphic record; and, as tested by an inscription of A. D. 1191 at Gadag,<sup>55</sup> he has suggested an altogether wrong inference regarding the parentage of Bhīllama, the first paramount king in the family, within only a century before the time at which he was writing.

The dates which are given in the introductions and colophons of the literary works, in connection with the composition of those works, may of course be accepted as reliable. And any genealogical and historical items put forward in the same places, ought to be correct for a few preceding generations. But it would be a **very extraordinary and imperfect history of India** that we should put together from such references, and from the *Purāṇas*, the *Rājataranṅgiṇī*, the historical romances, the general body of the literature, such *Vanśāvalis* as have been obtained from Orissa and Nēpāl, and the few items of alleged history that are incidentally given in the *Paṭṭāvalis*. We should doubtless recognise that the successions of kings given for India itself by the *Purāṇas*, for Kashmir by the *Rājataranṅgiṇī*, and for Nēpāl by the *Vanśāvali*, should be taken as separate successions, in territories the histories of which must be treated separately. We should not know exactly what conclusion to arrive at in respect of the annals of Orissa, which is a province of India itself. But, having regard to the preposterous duration allotted to each of the reigns from B. C. 3102 to 57, we should doubtless decide that all memory of the true history of that period had been lost in Orissa, and that from the next fixed point, A. D. 78, Orissa was an independent province with a history and a line of kings of its own. We could scarcely fail to detect the occurrence, in the *Purāṇas*, the *Rājataranṅgiṇī*, and the Nēpāl *Vanśāvali*, of one particular name, that of Aśōka, which ought to establish a definite synchronous point in the histories of the three countries. We should not be able to deduce the date of Aśōka from the *Purāṇas*. But we should find that the *Rājataranṅgiṇī* would place him somewhere about B. C. 1260. We should find, indeed, that the Nēpāl *Vanśāvali* would place him, roughly, about B. C. 2600. As, however, that list does not mention him as a ruler of Nēpāl but only as a visitor to the country, we should probably infer a mistake in that account, and prefer to select the date of B. C. 1260. And then we should set about arranging the succession of the kings of India itself, from the *Purāṇas*, with B. C. 1260 for the approximate date of the accession of Aśōka as our starting-point.<sup>56</sup>

<sup>53</sup> Bhandarkar's Report for the years 1897-98 to 1899-91, Notices, p. 7.

<sup>54</sup> Bhandarkar's *Early History of the Dekkan* (in the *Gazetteer of the Bombay Presidency*, Vol. I. Part II.), Appendix C., p. 268.

<sup>55</sup> See my *Dynasties of the Kanarese Districts* (in the *Gazetteer of the Bombay Presidency*, Vol. I. Part II.), p. 516. Hēmadri seems to have adopted here some mistaken tradition which appears also in some of the later epigraphic records.

<sup>56</sup> A beginning was actually made, almost in the manner suggested above, by Sir William Jones: see his dissertation on the Chronology of the Hindus, written in 1788 (*As. Res.* Vol. II. p. 111, reprint of 1799). But he took a different starting-point, and fixed it in a different way. His paper was based on a work entitled *Purāṇārthaprakāśa*, which was composed, shortly before the time at which he was writing, by Paudit Radhakant Sarman, and which seems to have been based, in its turn, chiefly on the *Bhāgavatapurāṇa*. In the first place he brought forward a verse given to him from a book entitled *Bhāgavatāśrīṭa*, composed by "a learned Goswami," which purported to fix the Kaliyuga year 1602 expired as the date of the manifestation of Buddha. With this he coupled an assertion in the same book that, two years before that date, there occurred the revolution which placed on the throne Pradyōta, the first king in the third dynasty before that of the Mauryas. And he thus exhibited a chronology which, taking the accession of Pradyōta in B. C. 2100 as its starting-point, placed the accession of Śiśunāga in B. C. 1962, the accession of Nānda in B. C. 1502, and the accession of Chandragupta (the grandfather of Aśōka) in B. C. 1502, and made the dynasty of the Andhrabhṛityas run from B. C. 908 to 452. But he considered that the figures put forward by the



We should then examine the other available sources of information. And probably we should first note, from the Jain *Pattāvalis*, the king Vamarāja, who is said to have founded Aṇhilwād in Gujārāt, in A. D. 746;<sup>57</sup> and we should obtain the alleged succession at Aṇhilwād after him, with an initial date for each king, to A. D. 1304, from the *Pratāchanaparīkṣā* of Dharmasāgara.<sup>58</sup> From the literary works, we should obtain a few names, with fixed dates, such as the following. Jināsēna tells us in the Jain *Harivamśa*, in connection with the date of that work, that in A. D. 783-84 there were reigning, — in vdirections determined with reference to a town named Vardhamānapura, there which is to be identified with the modern Wadhvān in the Jhālāvād division of Kāṭhīāwār, — in the north, Indrāyudha; in the south, Srivallabha; in the east, Vatsarāja, king of Avanti (Ujjain); and, in the west, Varāha or Jayavarāha, in the territory of the Sauryas.<sup>59</sup> And from the *Channabasavapurāṇa* we should have (but, in this case, falsely)<sup>60</sup> a king Bijjala reigning at Kalyāṇi, in the Nizam's Dominions, contemporaneously with them. Guṇabhadra gives us, in recording the date of the completion of his *Uttarapurāṇa*, a king Akālavārsha, with the date of A. D. 897.<sup>61</sup> Pampa gives us a Chālukya prince Arikēssarin, with the date of A. D. 941,<sup>62</sup> with his pedigree for seven generations, and with, apparently, a hint that he was ruling the territory round the modern Lakshmēshwar in the Dhārwar district. Sōmadēva gives us a king Kṛishṇa, with the date of A. D. 959.<sup>63</sup> Ranna gives us a king Āhavanīalla, who was reigning A. D. 983.<sup>64</sup> A later Sōmadēva gives us a Bhōja, who was ruling in the Kōlhāpur territory in A. D. 1205.<sup>65</sup> And Jñānēśvara gives us a Rāmachandra, who was reigning A. D. 1290;<sup>66</sup> while another work gives a date for the same king in A. D. 1297, and shews that the Kōṅkaṇ was a part of his dominions.<sup>67</sup> In the way of definite names with uncertain dates, we should have, from Jahlāṇa,<sup>68</sup> another king Kṛishṇa, with his predecessors Mallugi, Bhillama, and Siṅghaṇa, whom we could not place in any particular period from his information alone. And we should have, from Hēmādri,<sup>69</sup> a much longer list, in which we should recognise the same names, without, however, here again the means of referring them to any particular period. We should probably obtain the right clue here from the fact that Hēmādri elsewhere mentions, as the successor of his king Mahādēva, a Rāmachandra, who, we should guess, ought to be identified with the Rāmachandra of A. D. 1290 and 1297. But in the case of Bāṇa's Harsha or Harshavardhana and Bilhaṇa's Vikramāditya, we should in all probability go completely wrong; the temptation would be almost irresistible, to identify Vikramāditya either with a Vikramāditya who is mentioned in the *Rājatarāṅgiṇī* as a contemporary of Pratāpāditya of Kashmir in the period B. C. 180 to 148, or else with the Vikramāditya of Ujjain of the legend, who is supposed to have died or to have begun to reign in B. C. 57, and to identify Harsha with a certain Harsha-Vikramāditya, king of Ujjain, who is mentioned in the *Rājatarāṅgiṇī* as a contemporary of Hiranya and Mātṛigupta of Kashmir in the period A. D. 76 to 111. We should look in vain in the *Purāṇas*, for any of the names obtained from the literature and the *Pattāvalis*. But we should, to the best of our ability, work those names, and the dates connected with them, into the list obtained from the *Purāṇas* and in continuation of it. And we should possibly be working into it also some quite modern inventions, such as those of the bards of Kāṭhīāwār, which were at one time supposed to be "old-world tales," but which really sprang

Purāṇas were excessive, both for generations and for reigns. And, adjusting those figures according to his own estimate, and taking, as a starting-point, B. C. 1027 for the date of Buddha as fixed by the Chinese authorities as interpreted by De Guignes, he submitted a revised scheme, which placed Pradyōta B. C. 1029, Nanda B. C. 699, and the rise of the Andhrabhṛityas in B. C. 149. — (In this revised scheme, a specific date was not proposed for Chandragupta, whose importance had not been recognised at that time). — He further suggested other corrections, which would place Pradyōta B. C. 817 or 17, and Nanda A. D. 13 or 313. But he pointed out that this arrangement would take the Andhrabhṛityas on to at least the sixth to the tenth centuries A.D., "without leaving room for the subsequent dynasties, if they reigned successively." And it does not seem to have recommended itself to him at all favourably.

<sup>57</sup> Vol. XI. above, p. 253.

<sup>58</sup> See a note on the date of Dhruva, in *Ep. Ind.* Vol. VI.

<sup>59</sup> Vol. XII. above, p. 217.

<sup>60</sup> Rice's *Karandakabodhisattvasaṃhitā*, Introd. p. 28 ff.

<sup>61</sup> *Early History of the Deccan*, p. 250.

<sup>62</sup> See page 13 f. above.

<sup>63</sup> Bhandarkar's Report for 1883-84, pp. 150, 456.

<sup>64</sup> See page 2 above.

<sup>65</sup> See page 13 above.

<sup>66</sup> Vol. X. above, p. 75.

<sup>67</sup> Vol. XXI. above, p. 51.

<sup>68</sup> See page 14 above.



into existence within the last twenty-five or thirty years, and owe their origin only to certain preliminary speculations, put forward by Pandit Bhagwanlal Indraji, that found their way to the bards through an educational treatise.<sup>70</sup> In this way, we should build up a chronological list of the rulers of India, and of some of its provinces, with B. C. 1260 as a starting-point. And then, sooner or later, we should be met by the discovery that Chandragupta, the grandfather of Aśoka, was known to the Greeks as Sandrokottos, and that his date is fixed by the Greek writers. We should thus learn that Aśoka could not be placed before about B. C. 275. All the early part of our arrangements would be upset by a thousand years. And the subject would become a maze of bewilderment, confusion, and speculation, to be approached afresh from an entirely new point of view.

Fortunately, the discovery about Chandragupta was made and announced, — by Sir William Jones, in 1793,<sup>71</sup> — before speculation into the ancient history of India had gone very far. And, fortunately, a few of the inscriptions had already begun to come to notice. From that time, more and more attention was paid to them; and particularly from the time when they were taken in hand by Mr. James Prinsep, who first succeeded in deciphering the records of Aśoka, and, in that and other ways, laid the real foundations of the whole superstructure that has been subsequently reared up. And it is with relief that we turn to them, and lay aside any further consideration of the position in which we should have found ourselves without them.

This is not the occasion for entering into any detailed exposition of the historical results that we have obtained from the inscriptions. The subject would require a volume to itself, and will be dealt with hereafter in that way. But we may point to the first two hundred or more pages of Miss Duff's book on the *Chronology of India*<sup>72</sup> for a general résumé of those results, in a form which will be most useful and indispensable to any student of Indian history. And we may say that, though many details still remain to be filled in from future exploration and research, we have now a very fair knowledge in outline of the political history of India from about B. C. 300 to A. D. 350, and a very full knowledge of it from the latter time onwards. And we are indebted for this, in respect of the earlier period, a good deal to coins taken in connection with the epigraphic records,<sup>73</sup> but, in respect of the later period, almost entirely to the epigraphic records.

We must have, however, some idea as to what the inscriptions are, — as to the extent of territory that they cover, — and as to how they help us so definitely. And, to make the first and third of these matters clear, we must present a classification of the records from two points of view, according to the materials on which they have been preserved, and according to the objects to which they were devoted.

As regards the materials on which they have been preserved, — among the records there is one that stands by itself, in respect of the peculiarity of being engraved on iron; namely, the short poem on the iron column at Mehrauli, near Delhi, which constitutes the epitaph of the great king Chandra. With this exception, the records are to be divided into those which are on copper, and those which are on stone.

The former usually describe themselves by the name of *tāmraśasana*, or “copper-charters.” And they consist sometimes of a single plate, but more usually of several plates strung together on a large signet-ring which bears generally the seal of the authority who issued the particular charter. Many of them have come to notice through being produced by the modern possessors of them before

<sup>70</sup> See *Gupta Inscriptions*, Introd. p. 50.

<sup>71</sup> *Asiatic Researches*, Vol. IV., Anniversary Discourse, p. 13, reprint of 1798.

<sup>72</sup> Published by Archibald Constable and Co., Westminster: 1899.

<sup>73</sup> For some of the numismatic researches which are most useful for historical purposes, see, in particular, *The Coins of the Greek and Scythic Kings of Bactria and India* by Messrs. Gardner and Poole (1885), General Sir Alexander Cunningham's *Coins of the Indo-Scythians, Sakas, and Kushans* (1888, 1890, 1892), his *Coins of Ancient India* (1891), and his *Coins of Medieval India* (1894), and Mr. Rapson's various writings, especially his *Indian Coins* (1897), Part III, B, of Vol. II. of the *Grundriss der Indo-Arischen Philologie und Altertumskunde*.



official authorities in the expectation of establishing privileges which, it is hardly necessary to say, have long since ceased to exist through the lapse of time, the dying out of the families of original holders, rights of conquest, and the many changes of government that have taken place; and it is still in private hands that we must look to find the majority of those that remain extant but unknown. But others have been found buried in fields, and hidden in the walls and foundations of buildings; and the decay of old erections, and the excavation of ancient sites, may at any time yield a rich harvest in this direction.

The stone records usually describe themselves by the name of *śilāsāsana*, "stone-charters," *śilā-lōkhā*, "stone-writings," or *prastasti*, "eulogies." They are found on rocks, on religious columns such as those which bear some of the edicts of Aśoka and others which were set up in front of temples as "flag-staffs" of the gods, on battle-columns or columns of victory such as the two at Mandasōr, on the walls and beams and pillars of caves and temples, on the pedestals of images, and on slabs built into the walls of temples or set up in the courtyards of temples or in conspicuous places in village-sites or fields. And they are often accompanied by sculptures which give the seal of the authority issuing the record, or mark its sectarian nature, or illustrate some scene referred to in it.

As a matter of convenience, we know the copper records best by the name of "grants," and the stone records best by the name of "inscriptions." But there is no radical difference between the two divisions, such as might be inferred from these two names.

As regards the extent of territory that they cover, — the inscriptions come from all parts of India, from Shālbāzgarhī on the north, in the Yusufzai subdivision of the Peshāwar district, to the ancient Pāṇḍya territory in the extreme south of the peninsula, and from Kāthiāwār in the west to Assam on the east; and, from beyond the confines of India itself, we have some from Népāl, others from Ceylon, and others from Cambodia in Indo-China. And they are very numerous. Professor Kielhorn has lately put together a list, with dates, names, and some other leading details, of more than seven hundred from Northern India;<sup>74</sup> that is to say, chiefly from the territory lying on the north of the Nerbudda and Mahānadi rivers. And they are still more abundant in Southern India, where the Musalmāns, in consequence no doubt of being somewhat remote from the great centres of fanaticism, lived formerly, as now, more peaceably with the Hindās, and did not do so much damage to the temples and their stone records. Sir Walter Elliot, who first systematically collected the southern records, compiled manuscript copies of no less than five hundred and ninety-five from the Kanarese country, in addition to a large number of others from the Telugu provinces. Dr. Hultzsch, in his first two volumes of *South-Indian Inscriptions*, and in Part I. of Vol. III., has published nearly three hundred, chiefly from the Tamil country. And further inquiries in the Kanarese country have disclosed the existence of a wealth of materials there, the extent of which can hardly yet be gauged: from the province of Mysore, Mr. Rice has given us texts and abstract translations of a hundred and forty-four records at the great Jain centre Sravaṇa Belgōla, and has dealt, in two volumes of his *Epigraphia Carnatica*, with one thousand seven hundred and sixty-five from the Mysore district alone, and he has still eight volumes to issue; from the Belgāum and Dhārwar districts, in the Bombay Presidency, impressions of nearly a thousand inscriptions were obtained under my own direction; and the southernmost parts of Dhārwar, which are very full indeed of such materials, and some parts of the Belgāum and Bijāpur districts, still remain to be explored.

And the inscriptions help us so definitely, partly because, from the middle of the fourth century A. D., they are nearly all specifically dated in the various Hindū eras, the initial points of which are now so well known that, — by means of various writings by Dr. Schram, Prof. Jacobi, Prof. Kielhorn, and Mr. Sewell and the late Mr. Shankar Balkrishna Dikshit, — we can determine the dates of the records without any doubt, and partly because of the voluminous, varied, and practical

<sup>74</sup> *Ep. Ind.* Vol. V. Appendix.



nature of the matter presented in them. To understand the latter point, however, we must now proceed to a further classification of the records according to the nature of their contents, following, however, only some general lines, without aiming at an accurate completeness of subdivision which would be beyond the scope of our present objects.

We may place first those which are plain statements of events, sometimes perhaps containing allusions to religion and to donations, but not directed to any such ends. In this class, some of the best instances of purely historical narratives are, the Udayagiri cave inscription, already referred to,<sup>75</sup> which summarises the career of Khāravela of Kalinga as far as the thirteenth year of his reign, and presents to us a chapter, or the beginning of a chapter, of a dynastic chronicle; the eulogy of Samudragupta on the Aśoka column at Allahābād,<sup>76</sup> which recites his pedigree, describes his conquests in Northern India, mentions some of the foreign tribes with which he had relations, and gives us a considerable insight into the political divisions of Southern India; and the short poem, in grand diction, on the two columns of victory at Mandasor,<sup>77</sup> which describes the triumphs of Yaśodharman, including the humbling of the great foreign invader Mihirakula "who had never before that bowed his head in obeisance to any save the god Siva." To the same class belong some of the epitaphs; for instance, the short charming poem on the iron pillar at Mēhaurāuli,<sup>78</sup> which preserves the memory of the great king Chandra, and the panegyric of the great Western Gaṅga prince Nalambāntakā-Mārasimha at Sravaṇa-Belgoḷa,<sup>79</sup> and the epitaphs of the Jain teachers Prabhāchandra and Mallishēṇa at the same place.<sup>80</sup> To the same class we may refer some of the records of the carrying out of public works; for instance, the two fine rock inscriptions at Junāgaḍh,<sup>81</sup> which record the repairing of the embankment of the great lake Sudarśana in the time of Rudradāman and again in the time of Skandagupta, — the former of them reciting, also, how it had once before been repaired by a brother-in-law of the great Maurya king Chandragupta, and had been embellished by a local governor of Aśoka. In the same class we have some of the monumental pillars and tablets commemorating the death of heroes in battle; for instance, the small pillar at Eraṇ,<sup>82</sup> which gives us the name of king Bhānugupta, as a preliminary to recording how his follower Gōparāja died in fight and how Gōparāja's wife accompanied his corpse onto the funeral pyre, and the *virgals* or "hero-stones" of Central India, Bombay, and Madras, as illustrated by the Tērahi stones<sup>83</sup> which recite how Chāṇḍīyāga, the governor of a fortress under Guṇarāja, was killed in a fight between Guṇarāja and Undabhata, — by the Ablūr stone,<sup>84</sup> which commemorates the death of the brothers Mācha and Gōma, fighting valiantly on the occasion of a cattle-raid against their village, — and by the Kij-Muṭṭugūr and Āmbūr tablets,<sup>85</sup> which preserve the memory of other heroes killed on occasions of the same kind. In the way of more miscellaneous records referable to this same class, we have the Mandār Hill rock inscriptions,<sup>86</sup> which record the construction of a tank by the order of Kōṇadēvi, the wife of king Ādityasēna; the Bhūmarā pillar,<sup>87</sup> which was set up as a boundary-pillar between the territories of the Mahārāja Hastin and the Mahārāja Sarvanātha, and the record on which enables us to synchronise the families to which those two princes belonged; another stone at Kij-Muṭṭugūr,<sup>88</sup> which marks the spot on an embankment at which a local hero killed a tiger; the Kōṭūr inscription,<sup>89</sup> which narrates how a Saiva ascetic immolated himself in the fire; and the Bejatūru inscription,<sup>90</sup> which tells the pathetic tale of how, in spite of the remonstrances of her parents and her relatives, the widow of a local governor entered the flames, to accompany her dead husband to the world of the gods. In the same class we may notice two inscriptions at Śyamaṅgalam and Tiruvottūr, which give an interesting insight

<sup>75</sup> Page 10 above.

<sup>77</sup> *Gupta Insers.* pp. 142, 149; and see Vol. XVIII. above, p. 219.

<sup>78</sup> *Ep. Ind.* Vol. V. p. 151.

<sup>81</sup> *Archaeol. Surv. West. Ind.* Vol. II. p. 128, and *Gupta Insers.* p. 53.

<sup>82</sup> Vol. XVII. above, p. 201.

<sup>83</sup> *Ep. Ind.* Vol. IV. p. 178. B., p. 182. A., and p. 183. B.

<sup>84</sup> *Gupta Insers.* p. 119.

<sup>85</sup> Vol. XX. above, p. 59.

<sup>76</sup> *Gupta Insers.* p. 1.

<sup>78</sup> *Gupta Insers.* p. 139.

<sup>80</sup> *Ep. Ind.* Vol. IV. p. 22, and Vol. III. p. 184.

<sup>81</sup> *Gupta Insers.* p. 91.

<sup>82</sup> *Ep. Ind.* Vol. V. p. 261.

<sup>83</sup> *Gupta Insers.* p. 211.

<sup>84</sup> *Ep. Ind.* Vol. IV. p. 179. C.

<sup>85</sup> *Ep. Carn.* Vol. IV., Hg. 18.



into the administration of criminal law in the twelfth century A. D. :<sup>91</sup> one of them recites how a certain individual by mistake shot a man belonging to his own village, whereupon the governor and the people of the district assembled together, and decided that the culprit should not die for the offence committed by him through inadvertence, but should burn a lamp in the Tūnāpār temple at Siyamaṅgalam, and accordingly he provided sixteen cows, from the milk of which ghee was to be prepared, to be used in burning the lamp; and the other records that a man went hunting, and missed his aim and shot another man, whereupon the people of the district assembled and decided that the culprit should make over sixteen cows to apparently the Tiruvottār temple. We may further include here two inscriptions at Cheṅgama, which embody political compacts of alliance for purposes of offence and defence.<sup>92</sup> And, though it does not contain any narrative, we may conveniently note here the seal-matrix of Saśāṅka, cut in the rock at the hill-fort of Rōhtāsgaḍh,<sup>93</sup> — the mould in which there would be cast the seals for copper-plate charters issued by him, — which, by its existence there, locates, in that direction, the kingdom of *Kie-lo-na-su-fa-la-na* mentioned by the Chinese pilgrim Hsien Tsiang.<sup>94</sup>

For practically all such records as those mentioned in the preceding paragraph, we are indebted to a historical instinct which found expression more or less fully in them. And some of them illustrate how well the ancient Hindūs could put together brief historical narratives, concise and to the point, but limited in scope. But the records of this class, though fairly numerous in themselves, are but few in number in comparison with the others that we have yet to deal with. And, for the great bulk of the epigraphic records that have come down to us, we are indebted, not to any historical instinct of the Hindūs, but to the religious side of their character and their desire for making endowments on every possible occasion.

We shall notice next those for which we are indebted to religious motives alone. And we may place first those which promulgate religious doctrine. Here, however, we can bring forward, prominently, only the well known rock and pillar edicts of Aśoka, scattered about at various places that were of importance in his dominions, from Shālbāzgarhī in the north to Siddāpur in Mysore on the south and to Dhauli and Jaugada on the east. The object of them was to propagate, under royal endorsement, the Buddhist faith. But, in addition to mentioning the foreign kings Antiochus II. of Syria, Ptolemy Philadelphus of Egypt, Antigenus Gonatas of Macedonia, Magas of Cyrene, and Alexander of Epirus, — by means of which the period to which they belong is fixed, — they yield a little history, in giving the names of some of the peoples of India, particularly the Chōḷas, the Pāṇdyas, and the Andhras,<sup>95</sup> and in recording the conquest of Kāliṅga, and in putting forward, apparently, a date, the year 256,<sup>96</sup> which represents the tradition of that period as to the number of years that had elapsed since the *nirvāṇa*, or else the death, of Buddha.

In another class of records for which we are indebted to religious motives alone, without the accompaniment of endowments, we may cite the following instances. We owe the Taxila plate of the Satrap Patika<sup>97</sup> to the installation of a relic of Buddha. We owe the Kura inscription of Tēramāṇa<sup>98</sup> to the building of a Buddhist monastery. And we owe the Nanā Ghaut inscription, of the Andhrabhṛitya series,<sup>99</sup> to the desire to commemorate the great sacrifices that had been celebrated, and the costly sacrificial fees that had been given, by queen Nāyanikā. For the inscription of Tēramāṇa on the chest of the stone boar at Ēraṇ,<sup>100</sup> which establishes his conquest of Central India, we are indebted to the building of the temple, in the portico of which the boar stands; and to the same motive we are indebted for the Gwālior inscription

<sup>91</sup> See the Annual Report of the Government Epigraphist for the year ending with the 30th June, 1900, p. 11, para. 25.

<sup>92</sup> See the same, p. 13, paras. 32, 33.

<sup>93</sup> Beal's *Si-yu-ki*, Vol. I. p. 210, Vol. II. p. 201.

<sup>94</sup> See *Ep. Ind.* Vol. III. pp. 133, 141.

<sup>95</sup> *Ep. Ind.* Vol. I. p. 238.

<sup>96</sup> *Gupta Inscri.* p. 153.

<sup>97</sup> *Gupta Inscri.* p. 283.

<sup>98</sup> Vol. XX. above, pp. 239, 240, 242, 247.

<sup>99</sup> *Ep. Ind.* Vol. IV. p. 54.

<sup>100</sup> *Archæol. Surv. West. Ind.* Vol. V. p. 90.



of his son Mihirakula,<sup>1</sup> for the Aihole inscription of Pulakēśin II.,<sup>2</sup> which contains a great deal of important matter, and for the Vallimalai inscription,<sup>3</sup> which settles the first four generations of the family of the Western Gaṅga princes of Talakād. It is to the restoration of a temple that we are indebted for the important Mandasor inscription,<sup>4</sup> which gave us what had so long been wanted, namely, a date for one of the Early Gupta kings, recorded in an era, capable of identification, other than that which was specially used by them in their own records. We owe another important record of the Early Guptas, the Eran pillar inscription,<sup>5</sup> which gives us the name of Budhagupta and one of the dates which help to fix the exact initial point of the Gupta era, to the erection of the column as the "flag-staff" of the god of the temple in front of which it stands. We owe the Shāhpur record,<sup>6</sup> which gives us the date of king Ādityasēna in the Harsha era, to the installation of an image. We owe the important inscription at Tālgund,<sup>7</sup> which gives the account of the origin of the great family of the early Kādamba kings of Banawāsi, to the construction of a tank in connection with a temple. And we owe the record which proves the historical existence of the dynasty of the Śuṅgas,<sup>8</sup> to the building of a gateway of the *stūpa* at Bhārhut. A dispute between two priests, each of whom claimed the ownership of a particular plot of land for his god, has given us an interesting record of a trial by ordeal in an inscription at Kittūr.<sup>9</sup> The settlement of a sectarian dispute has given us an inscription<sup>10</sup> which narrates how king Bukkarāya of Vijayanagara brought about a reconciliation between the Jains and the Vaiṣṇavas of Sravana-Belgoḷa, and embodies a compact under which the Jains were to enjoy equal freedom and protection with the Vaiṣṇavas in respect of their rites and processions. The necessity for reforming the sacred law on a certain point, has given us an inscription at Virūnchipuram<sup>11</sup> embodying an agreement fixing the law of marriage among the Brāhmins of the Pādāvidu country, by which they bound themselves that marriages among their families should only be concluded by *kanyādāna*, that is to say by the father giving his daughter gratuitously, and that any father accepting money, and any bridegroom paying money for his bride, should be subject to punishment by the king and excommunication from caste. The desire of pilgrims to commemorate their visits to sacred sites has given us a number of records, which are of considerable value in the geographical line of inquiry.<sup>12</sup> And the presentation of caskets to hold relics of Buddha has disclosed to us, in the inscriptions found at the Bhāṭṭiprōḷu *stūpa*,<sup>13</sup> a peculiar variety of the Aśoka alphabet, which has not been met with elsewhere, and which has an important bearing on the question as to the antiquity of the introduction of the art of writing into India.

Still more numerous are the records of which the object was to register religious donations or endowments, to gods, to priests on behalf of temples, and to communities. The inscriptions of Daśaratha, the grandson of Aśoka, in the caves on the Barābar and Nāgārjuni hills,<sup>14</sup> were engraved to record the presentation of the caves to a community of ascetics. The Nāsik inscription of Ushavadāta, son-in-law of the Kaśaharāta king Nahapāna,<sup>15</sup> was engraved to register the presentation of the cave, with large endowments in money, to a community of monks. The object of the Bhitari pillar inscription of Skandagupta,<sup>16</sup> and of the Kūram grant of Paramēśvaravarman I.,<sup>17</sup> was to register grants of villages to gods. The Cochin grant of Bhāskara-Ravivarman,<sup>18</sup> which establishes the existence of a colony of Jews in the Travancore State, was issued to record the bestowal of a village on the Jews, with the right to use certain religious paraphernalia. We should not have had the Ablūr inscription, which discloses the

<sup>1</sup> *Gupta Inscri.* p. 161.

<sup>2</sup> *Gupta Inscri.* p. 79.

<sup>3</sup> See *Ep. Carn.* Vol. IV. Introd. p. 1, and *Dyn. Kan. Distr.* p. 286.

<sup>4</sup> *Jour. Bo. Br. R. As. Soc.* Vol. IX. p. 307.

<sup>5</sup> *South-Ind. Inscri.* Vol. I. p. 82.

<sup>6</sup> See, for instance, the list of geographical names given by Dr. Bühler, in *Ep. Ind.* Vol. II. p. 407, from records of this kind at Sāñchl.

<sup>7</sup> *Ep. Ind.* Vol. II. p. 323.

<sup>8</sup> *Archaeol. Surv. West. Ind.* Vol. IV. p. 102, No. 7.

<sup>9</sup> *South-Ind. Inscri.* Vol. I. p. 144.

<sup>10</sup> *Ep. Ind.* Vol. VI. p. 1.

<sup>11</sup> *Gupta Inscri.* p. 88.

<sup>12</sup> *Ep. Ind.* Vol. IV. p. 140, A.

<sup>13</sup> *Gupta Inscri.* p. 208.

<sup>14</sup> Vol. XIV. above, p. 138.

<sup>15</sup> *Inscri. at Srav.-Bel.* No. 136.

<sup>16</sup> Vol. XX. above, p. 362.

<sup>17</sup> *Gupta Inscri.* p. 52.

<sup>18</sup> *Ep. Ind.* Vol. III. p. 66.



real originator of the movement that led to the revival of Saivism in the twelfth century A. D.,<sup>19</sup> but for the fact that the ultimate object of it was to register the names of the villages that had been granted to Ēkāntada-Rāmāyā for the purposes of the temple that he built. For the date of Lakulīśa,<sup>20</sup> we are indebted to a record the object of which was to register the grant of a field to a temple, to the establishment of which he was then attached. The Indōr grant of Skandagupta<sup>21</sup> was issued simply to record an endowment to provide oil for a temple of the sun. And so on with innumerable other instances, in which history has been recorded only as an incidental matter, in connection with the primary topic of religious benefactions.

And finally we have the records which register secular grants to private individuals. As instances in this class, we may cite the Vakkalēri grant,<sup>22</sup> which gives the full direct lineal succession of the Western Chalukyas of Bādāmi, from the first paramount king Puṣyabhūti I. to the last of the line, and was issued to register the grant of a village to a Brāhmaṇ, and the Hirahadagalli grant of the Pallava king Śiva-Skandavarman,<sup>23</sup> which was issued to endorse the holding of a garden by certain Brāhmaṇs, and to fix the share of the produce that each of them was to take. In this class we have to place, amongst numerous other records, the majority of the virgals of Mysore, which, differing in this respect from the similar records elsewhere, mostly record grants of land in addition to commemorating the deaths of heroes; for instance, the Bēgūr stone<sup>24</sup> not only records the death of the commander of the Nāgattara troop in a battle that was fought between the forces of Ayyapaḍēva and those of Vīramahēndra, but also records the appointment of his successor and registers the grant of various villages to him. The supplementary inscription on the Ātakūr stone<sup>25</sup> gives another instance of a grant of villages, in recognition of bravery in the battle-field, to a hero who fought and survived. And we learn from it that grants of this kind were sometimes accompanied by the ceremony of washing the warrior's sword, just as religious grants were usually accompanied by the ceremony of laving the feet of the priest into whose hands the donation was actually given.

Now, the donative records are by far the most numerous of all. And, as the result of this, we arrive at the point that in the vast majority of the epigraphic records we have a mass of title-deeds of real property, and of certificates of the right to duties, taxes, fees, perquisites, and other privileges. The copper-plate grants are the actual title-deeds and certificates themselves. The stone inscriptions are usually of the same nature. But they sometimes mention the concurrent bestowal of a copper-plate charter. And in such cases they are, rather, a public intimation that the transaction had been made complete and valid by the private assignment of the necessary title-deeds and certificates.

The essential part of the records was, of course, the specification of the details of the donor, of the donee, and of the donation. And we have to bear in mind that, not only are the donative records by far the most abundant of all, but also, among them, by far the most numerous are those which we may call the records of royal donations, by which we mean grants that were made either by the kings themselves, or by the great feudatory nobles, or by provincial governors and other high officials who had the royal authority to alienate state lands and to assign allotments from the state revenues. The reason for this, no doubt, is that which was suggested by Dr. Burnell;<sup>26</sup> namely, the tendency for gifts to take the place of the sacrifices which, according to the epic poems, and in fact according to some of the earlier records, the kings of India used to have performed, in order to acquire religious merit or to attain other objects. But, be the reason what it may, the fact remains, that the records of royal donations, whether for religious purposes or for other purposes, are the most numerous of all. And many of them register, not simply the gift of small holdings, but grants of entire villages, and large and permanent assignments from the public revenues.

<sup>19</sup> See page 2 above.

<sup>20</sup> See page 1f. above.

<sup>21</sup> *Gupta Inscri.* p. 68.

<sup>22</sup> Vol. VIII. above, p. 25; and *Ep. Ind.* Vol. V. p. 200. While giving the full descent from father to son, omits to mention Maṅgalēśa; see page 10 above.

<sup>23</sup> *Ep. Ind.* Vol. I. p. 1.

<sup>24</sup> *Ep. Ind.* Vol. VI. p. 45.

<sup>25</sup> *Ep. Ind.* Vol. VI. p. 50.

<sup>26</sup> *South-Ind. Palaeogr.* p. 94.



It is to these facts that we are indebted for the great value of the records from the historical point of view. The donor of state lands, or of an assignment from the public revenues, must shew his authority for his acts. A provincial governor, or other high official, must specify his own rank and territorial jurisdiction, and name the king under whom he holds office. A great feudatory noble will often make a similar reference to his paramount sovereign, in addition to making his own position clear. And it is neither inconsistent with the dignity of a king, nor unusual, for something to be stated about his pedigree in charters and patents issued by him or in his name. The precepts of the law-books, quoted by Dr. Burnell from the chapters relating to the making of grants, prescribe, in fact, that a king should state the names of his father and his grandfather, as well as his own.<sup>27</sup> This, no doubt, is a rule deduced from custom, rather than a rule on which custom was based. But we find that, from almost the earliest times, the records do give a certain amount of genealogical information. More and more information of that kind was added as time went on. The recital of events was introduced, to magnify the glory and importance of the donors, and sometimes to commemorate the achievements of recipients. And so, not with the express object of preserving history, but in order to intensify the importance of everything connected with religion and to secure grantees in the possession of properties conveyed to them, there was gradually accumulated almost the whole of the great mass of epigraphic records, from which, chiefly, the ancient history of India is now being put together.

Such are the nature and extent of the materials with which we are working. And the above sketch will suffice to give some idea of the results that we have already accomplished from them. But, though so much has been achieved, a great deal still remains to be done.

In the first place, only a small part of the mine of epigraphic information has been as yet explored. For the earlier period, before A. D. 350, we are looking forward to the results of excavations, still to be made, which should, and undoubtedly will, enable us to get at many an important record now hidden from sight. For the period onwards from that date, we have still to trace many additional copper-plate records, not yet brought to notice, which unquestionably exist in private hands; and, from the enormous number of stone records, we have to select those which will best repay the trouble of editing them in full,—dealing with the others by means of abstracts that shall bring forward every point in them that can be turned to practical account.

In the second place, we must before long make a start towards bringing the records together, in chronological order, in volumes according to the dynasties and periods to which they belong, on lines such as those adopted in the volume of *Gupta Inscriptions*, prepared as Vol. III. of the intended *Corpus Inscriptionum Indicarum* which, however, has not gone beyond Vols. I. and II. It is very difficult to exhaust any particular line of research from texts which are scattered about in the volumes of different Journals, among extraneous matter of all sorts and without any attempt at or possibility of general arrangement according to dates, and many of which are printed in Native characters which do not lend themselves to the use of capitals, thick type, and other devices for marking points that are to be specially attended to. To a great extent, of course, this scattered and unsystematic disposal of our results has been unavoidable. As an inevitable consequence, however, not even the department of political history has been dealt with as fully as might be the case even from such materials as we already have for reference. Much has been done by the *Epigraphia Indica* towards minimising the difficulties entailed by having to search the volumes of so many different publications. But more is needed. We must set about bringing together, in the manner indicated above, such records as have already been published,—inserting, at the same time, any others of each series that can concurrently be prepared for publication. We want, for instance, one volume devoted to the records of the Western Chalukyas of Bādāmi, with those of the early

<sup>27</sup> *South-Ind. Palæogr.* p. 97.



Kadambas of Banawāsi and the Pallavas of Conjeeveram, and with some others of the same period which are not numerous enough to make up a volume by themselves. We want another volume for the records of the Eastern Chalukyas, — another for those of the Rāshṭrakūṭas, — and others for those of the Kalachuris and the Gāhaḍavālas, — and so on, each with the miscellaneous records of the period brought in. When such compilations have been made, we shall have the basis of a systematic arrangement, by means of which the materials can be examined far more conveniently and exhaustively than at present. And it will then be an easy and simple matter to insert in such volumes, in the proper places, references to further records which, of course, must continue to be published in the present detached manner until sufficient materials for supplementary volumes accumulate. Most urgently, perhaps, we want the contemplated volume, devoted primarily to the records of the Indo-Scythian kings and of the Kshatrapas, which was intended to be Vol. II. of the *Corpus Inscriptionum Indicarum*. Still, as a beginning, a valuable service would be rendered by anyone who would compile the records of the Maitrakas of Valabhi, — revising the published texts, transliterating into Roman characters such of them as have been edited in Native type, and giving a critical translation of at least one complete record illustrating each of the different standard drafts of that series, and similar translations of the varying parts of the other records, with an exhaustive Index, and with an Introduction sketching the history and other matters deduced from the records. And such a compilation would doubtless be welcomed as an Appendix to a volume of the *Epigraphia Indica*, if we cannot, by the time that it is ready, propose any other arrangements for publishing it.

In thus re-arranging the records already edited, we have to revise the published texts, and bring them up to date on an uniform system according to our latest knowledge and experience. Even among the most recently issued versions, there are but few that could be finally reprinted simply just as they stand. We require to have both the texts and the translations dealt with critically according to an absolutely uniform method of treatment. The same passages in different records have to be translated in identically the same words, according to whatever final renderings may be determined on. And technical titles and expressions require to be recognised, and to be used as they stand without attempting to render them by English words which may, indeed, be literal translations, but the meanings of which do not suffice to convey the ideas intended by the originals. There are many points in the records, which will not be recognised until we begin to deal with the records on the lines indicated above. There are, also, many allusions in the records, which we are only now beginning to understand. And, as a very suitable instance of what an up-to-date revision can effect, we may point to the case of the Aihole inscription of A. D. 634-35, of the time of the Western Chalukya king Pulakēśin II. It was first handled fully by myself, some twenty-five years ago.<sup>28</sup> It seemed, then, that at any rate all the historical matter in it had been brought out fully and correctly. But it remained for Professor Kielhorn, in lately examining the record anew and re-editing it with the advantages of experience and wider knowledge,<sup>29</sup> to remove some mistakes made by me, and to discover still two more historical items in it, in the mention of the Kollēru lake and of the territory on the north of the Bhīmā, and, further, to detect and explain two recondite allusions, one to a grammatical rule of Pāṇini and the other to the traditional precepts for the behaviour of kings in exile, and to bring out various interesting points in which the writings of the poet Kālidāsa were used and imitated in this record and in some other early ones.

For reasons which have been explained elsewhere,<sup>30</sup> the palæographic inquiry has to be taken a step further than even the point to which it has been brought by the labours of the late Dr. Bühler. And, as one way of helping to this end, the occasions of publishing more final revised texts and translations of records already dealt with, must be utilised to substitute real facsimiles of at least the more representative originals, in the place of the manipulated and sometimes misleading lithographs that have occasionally been issued.

<sup>28</sup> Vol. V. above, p. 67; and again in Vol. VIII. p. 237.

<sup>29</sup> *Ep. Ind.* Vol. VI. p. 73 f.

<sup>30</sup> *Ep. Ind.* Vol. VI. p. 1.



As has been said, even the political history has not been yet worked out from the published records as fully as might be done. And there are other lines of inquiry, of general historical interest, — particularly in the geographical, administrative, and fiscal departments, — which have hardly been touched upon at all to any purpose. The geographical line, indeed, has received a certain amount of attention. But the researches in this line have been made chiefly with the object of trying to identify places, countries, and tribes mentioned by foreign writers, namely, the Greek historians and geographers, the Chinese pilgrims, and the Arab travellers, and of constructing maps of ancient India from their writings. A map of India has still to be put together from the epigraphic records and other native sources. That map will give us the first reliable means of proceeding to apply properly any information that may be derivable from foreign sources. And, in the results that have been put forward from the inquiries that have been indicated above, there is much to be cancelled. There seems to be an idea, in some quarters, that we can and must still find an existing representative of every ancient name recorded by the foreign writers. But tribes die out and disappear; and towns decay and are deserted. Seaside emporia sometimes shift. And the names of cities are liable to change in the course of time, even though the places themselves survive. The records of the Indian campaign of Alexander<sup>21</sup> were written mostly by persons who actually went to India. And yet there are but few of the ancient places, mentioned in them, that have been identified with any real approach to certainty. The author of the *Periplus of the Erythræan Sea*<sup>22</sup> evidently sailed in person round the coast of India. But we cannot expect to find, now, every place on the coast mentioned by him. And, — as regards his inland details, — his statement that Paithan, which is really about two hundred miles almost due south-east from Broach, lies south of the latter place, at a distance of a twenty days journey, quite suffices to shew that, for places away from the coast, he was at least sometimes dependent on information which was liable to be of a very vague kind, and leaves us free to exercise considerable latitude of choice in respect of the direction, in applying his immediately following assertion that Tagara, at a distance of a ten days journey from Paithan, was on the east of Paithan. It is with but little confidence that we can use Ptolemy's work,<sup>23</sup> with only our present means of applying the information given in it, towards reconstructing the early geographical and political divisions of India. Ptolemy, who wrote about the middle of the second century A. D.,<sup>24</sup> had not even the opportunities of personal observation which the author of the *Periplus* enjoyed, but only compiled from the reports of travellers and navigators, and from the works of previous writers, of whom some may have enjoyed such advantages, but others had simply put together information obtained similarly at second-hand. The writer of the geographical part of the article on Ptolemy in the *Encyclopædia Britannica*, Vol. XX., has told us that Ptolemy's geographical knowledge is strikingly imperfect even in regard to the Mediterranean and its surroundings, and that it is especially faulty in respect of the southern shores of Asia, in connection with which he had obtained — (as we can readily detect) — only a vague acquaintance with extensive regions, based on information which was indeed to a certain extent authentic, but which had been much exaggerated and misunderstood. Ptolemy — (we are told) — recognised the importance of utilising, to check and adjust results, any positions of places that had been determined by actual observations of latitude and longitude. But there was not any appreciable number of such places. And thus "the positions laid down by him" were really, with very few exceptions, the result of computations of distances from itineraries and "the statements of travellers, estimates which were liable to much greater error in ancient times

<sup>21</sup> *Ancient India, its Invasion by Alexander the Great*, by J. W. McCrindle.

<sup>22</sup> For Mr. McCrindle's translation of this work, see Vol. VIII. above, p. 107 ff. He has there shewn grounds, which seem conclusive, for placing the work between A. D. 80 and 89, though by other authorities it has been placed somewhat earlier, in Pliny's time (A. D. 23 to 79), and, on the other hand, considerably later, after A. D. 161. The writer of the geographical part of the article on Ptolemy in the *Encyclopædia Britannica*, Vol. XX., has placed it "about A. D. 80" (p. 94).

<sup>23</sup> See the extracts from Ptolemy's *Geography of India and Southern Asia*, with a commentary, given by Mr. McCrindle, Vol. XIII. above, p. 313 ff.

<sup>24</sup> It appears that the first recorded observation of this celebrated mathematician, astronomer, and geographer, was made in A. D. 127, and the last in A. D. 151 (*Encyclopædia Britannica*, Vol. XX. p. 87), but that he was still alive in A. D. 161 (*Smith's Classical Dictionary*, p. 627).



"than at the present day." Moreover, in addition to placing the equator at a considerable distance from its true geographical position, and accepting a prime meridian which made all his eastern longitudes about seven degrees less than they should have been, he made a still more serious mistake, which "had the effect of vitiating all his subsequent conclusions," in taking every degree of latitude, and of longitude measured at the equator, as equal to only five hundred stadia or fifty geographical miles, instead of its true equivalent of six hundred stadia or sixty miles. And, as the result of the last-mentioned error, "if he had arrived at the conclusion from itineraries that two places were five thousand stadia from one another, he would place them at a distance of ten degrees apart, and thus in fact separate them by an interval of six thousand stadia." The curious and utterly erroneous conception of the shape of India, formed by Ptolemy, is well shewn by the map which accompanies Mr. McCrindle's extracts from his work.<sup>35</sup> And the general distortions that resulted from his data and method of work, are admirably exhibited in an ingenious form in the *Encyclopædia Britannica*, Vol. XV., in Plate vii., between pages 516, 517, which shews Ptolemy's idea of the world superimposed upon an actual map of the corresponding portions of the world: his results, exposed in this way, place Paithan (on the Gôdâvarî) well out to sea in the Bay of Bengal: they make Ceylon an enormous island, stretching from below the equator to about the twelfth degree of north latitude, and covering the position of the northern half of Sumatra and of part of the Malay Peninsula, with a large area of the Bay of Bengal including the Nicobar Islands; they make the Mahânadi river run over Siam and Cambodia; they make the Ganges run over the very heart of China, flowing towards the sea somewhere near Canton; they carry Palibothra, which is Patna (on the Ganges), to the east of a line from Tonquin to Peking; and they make the Himalayan range, as represented by the Imaos and Emôdos mountains, run north of Tibet, through the north of China, across the Yellow Sea and Korea, and into Japan. It is obvious that, before we can do anything substantial with Ptolemy's work, in the direction of utilising it for even the outlines of the early political geography of India, we need something more in the way of an exposition of it than even that which Mr. McCrindle has given us, and we require an adjustment of Ptolemy's results for India similar to that which Captain Gerini has given us in respect of his results for the countries beyond the eastern confines of India.<sup>36</sup> And — (passing on to a still more definite source of information) — there is still much to be done in connection with the writings of Hiuen Tsiang,<sup>37</sup> who travelled through practically the whole of India between A. D. 629 and 645 and kept a very close record of his peregrinations. The territorial divisions mentioned by Hiuen Tsiang are fairly easy to locate, more or less approximately, with the help of certain hints from the epigraphic records and other sources. But his cities, or such of them as survive, are more difficult; especially because he has often not given the names of them. Before his writings can be fully utilised, we want better readings of some of his names, and a clearer exposition as to how the *li* is to be interpreted as a measure of distance, or as an indication of distance by the time occupied in travelling, in different styles of country. And, with reference to the understanding, which is no doubt quite correct, that the distances and directions given by him are the distances and directions from each capital to the next capital, we have to bear in mind, in the first place, that even a slight difference in bearings will lead to a wide divergence in position when the bearings are set out on a long line, and, in the second place, that, whereas it is impossible that every capital can have been due north, east, south, or west, or due north-east, north-west, south-east, or south-west, from the preceding capital, he — (if we judge by the present translations) — recognised no points of the compass beyond those eight, and very seldom, if ever, gave the bearings except as if they were due north, etc., or due north-east, etc.<sup>38</sup> We have by no means yet found — (if we ever can

<sup>35</sup> Vol. XIII. above, p. 329.

<sup>36</sup> *Jour. R. As. Soc.*, 1897, p. 551 ff.

<sup>37</sup> *Histoire de la Vie de Hiouen-Tsang* (1853), and *Mémoires sur les Contrées Occidentales par Hiouen-Tsang* (two volumes, 1857 and 1858), by M. Stanislas Julien, with an examination of the geographical results by M. Vivien de Saint-Martin; and the *Si-yu-ki or Buddhist Records of the Western World* (two volumes, 1884), and *Life of Hiuen Tsiang* (1838), by the Rev. Samuel Beal.

<sup>38</sup> The translations represent Hiuen Tsiang as indicating the directions, in the large majority of cases, in the following terms, — (1) "à l'est" (to the east), "à l'ouest, au sud, au nord" (for instance, Julien's *Contrées*, Vol. II, pp. 64, 83, 105, 162), corresponding to which we have, in the English translation of the same passages, "going east, going west,



find) — every city mentioned even by Hiuen Tsiang. And some of the most confidently asserted identifications of places spoken of by him, are unquestionably wrong. Take, for instance, the case of the capital of Kalinga, which he visited and mentioned without, apparently, recording its name. M. Vivien de Saint-Martin<sup>39</sup> felt satisfied that it is represented by Kaliṅgapaṭam on the coast, in the Gañjām district, — an identification which was practically, if not absolutely, endorsed by Mr. Fergusson.<sup>40</sup> While General Sir Alexander Cunningham arrived at the conclusion that it must be Rājamahēndri on the Gōdāvari,<sup>41</sup> the head-quarters of a subdivision of the Gōdāvari district. But the epigraphic records make it clear that neither was it either of those two places, nor even was it — (as one might be tempted to think) — identical with the Kaliṅganagara which figures in records of A. D. 677-78 and onwards and<sup>42</sup> is represented by the modern Mukhalingam and Nagarikatakam in the Gañjām district; they shew that it can only be Piṭhāpuram, — the head-quarters of a zamindārī or estate in the Gōdāvari district, eleven miles almost due north of Coconada, — which is mentioned as Pishtapura in the Aihole inscription of A. D. 634-35 and, before that, in the Allahābād pillar inscription of about A. D. 380. For the ancient geography, as for everything else connected with the past of India, we are really dependent primarily and almost entirely on the epigraphic records. It is from that source that it must be mostly worked out. And we can only fill in additional details from extraneous sources, such as those discussed above, when we have arrived at some more definite idea of at least the general features from the indigenous materials.

There is, thus, plenty of both original research and revisional work still to be done in connection with, and by the help of, the epigraphic records. And the leading desideratum is, certainly, to get those records explored more fully and published in larger numbers. But systematic co-operation in other lines of study would help very greatly, even towards a more accurate understanding of the records. And there are various ways in which much valuable assistance towards the ends that we have in view, might be given by scholars who are not inclined to undertake the editing of the records or even the detailed study of them. In connection with the general literature, there is still a great deal to be done in discovering, and bringing to notice by texts and translations, the historical introductions and colophons, the value of which has been indicated above. We want a compilation of all the historical and geographical hints, and any other practical matter, that can be derived from the epics, the plays, the classical poems, and the collections of imaginative stories. And we want succinct abstracts of all the similar matter contained in the historical romances. Life is too short for the historian to examine all these sources of information in the original texts, or even, in every case, to go thoroughly through translations of them. An editor of a text, on the other hand, could do all that is wanted in a day or two of extra work, the results of which would be embodied in an introduction and an index.

going south, going north" (Beal's *Si-yu-ki*, Vol. II. pp. 185, 200, 217, 266); and (2) "au nord-ouest" (to the north-west), "au sud-ouest, au sud-est, au nord-est" (for instance, *Contrées*, Vol. II. pp. 84, 90, 124, 168), corresponding to which we have, in the English translation of the same passages, "going north-west, going south-west, going south-east, going north-east" (*Si-yu-ki*, Vol. II. pp. 201, 206, 234, 271). Beal's translation sometimes suggests a less specific statement in the original; for instance, it presents "in a south-easterly direction" (*Si-yu-ki*, Vol. I. p. 30), and "going eastwards, going eastward, going in a south-westerly direction, travelling northwards" (*Si-yu-ki*, Vol. II. pp. 191, 194, 204, 253); but Julien's translation of the same passages presents the specific terms "au sud-est" (*Contrées*, Vol. I. p. 15), and "à l'est, à l'est, au sud-ouest, au nord" (*Contrées*, Vol. II. pp. 71, 74, 88, 146). And I find — (on, of course, a cursory examination) — only one case in which both the translations agree in presenting a direction that is not quite specific: Julien has given "dans la direction de l'ouest" (*Contrées*, Vol. I. p. 17); and Beal has given, in the same passage, "westward" (*Si-yu-ki*, Vol. I. p. 31). — We may credit the Chinese pilgrims with any amount of accuracy in the perception of the directions in which they were travelling. But it seems plain that Hiuen Tsiang recorded directions which were only approximate. And, while we may not go so far as to deliberately substitute, say, "north-east" or "south-east" for "east," still, in dealing with such a statement as "going east" or "à l'est," we are at liberty to consider how much deviation we may make towards the north or towards the south, without diverging far enough to arrive at a point which he would most probably have indicated by saying "to the north-east" or "to the south-east."

<sup>39</sup> *Mémoires sur les Contrées Occidentales*, Vol. II. p. 395.

<sup>40</sup> *Jour. R. As. Soc.*, N. S., Vol. VI. p. 252.

<sup>41</sup> *Ancient Geography of India*, p. 516.

<sup>42</sup> As shewn by Mr. G. V. Ramamurti (see *Madras Jour. Lit. Soc.*, 1889-94, p. 68 ff., and, more finally, *Ep. Ind.*, Vol. IV. p. 187 ff.).



And a student of any particular book might, on finishing his perusal of it easily put together an instructive and valuable note which would be welcomed as an article in this present Journal, in the pages of which it would at once attract the attention of those who could use it for general purposes. The *Paṭṭāvalis* require to be examined more fully, especially with a view towards determining how far back we can carry the verses on which the earlier portions of them were based, and to what extent those portions of them are imperfect or erroneous and open to adjustment. The geographical lists of some of the *Purāṇas* still remain to be exhibited, on lines similar to those adopted in respect of the topographical list of the *Bṛīhat-Saṃhitā*; <sup>42</sup> at present we have, beyond that, only the list of the *Bhāgavatapurāṇa*; <sup>44</sup> and, though it may be difficult to find many such lists the value of which is enhanced and made specific by our knowing the exact periods during which they were composed, as is the case with the list of the *Bṛīhat-Saṃhitā*, still they will all come in usefully in some way or another. And there is, no doubt, many a *Māhātmya* or *Sthalapurāṇa* that will be useful for local geography and the identification of places, in the manner in which the *Mahākūṭamāhātmya* helped in establishing the identity of the Vātāpi of the records with the modern Bādāmi. <sup>45</sup>

There is, in short, a vast amount of work still to be done, in all the various lines of research connected with the past of India. We hope, in particular, that the present sketch of the position at which we have arrived, may do something towards attracting more attention to the principal materials, the epigraphic records, and towards inducing more scholars to join us in exploiting them. But we hope, also, that others may be induced to co-operate, by examining more methodically and critically the subsidiary sources of information, and by bringing forward their results in such a way as to make them available for being easily worked in with the more special results derivable from the epigraphic records. The principal materials are the epigraphic records. And a very brief study of some of them will suffice to shew the specific importance of them, and to excite a desire to join in exploring them. But the subsidiary materials, also, are numerous and interesting. And anyone who will take any of them in hand systematically, with just enough knowledge of the results derived from the epigraphic records to shew the objects that require to be kept in view and the general lines of work that should be followed, can render assistance the value of which will be made clear enough when his results are put forward in an accessible form, even if it may not be fully realisable by him while he is actually at work.

## NOTE ON JAINA MYTHOLOGY.

BY JAS. BURGESS, C. I. E., LL. D.

THE mythology of the Jainas has been very little studied by Europeans, and perhaps even by Native scholars outside the Śrāvaka denomination. It would probably repay investigation on the part of those who have local opportunities and access to their literature. Important works have been printed by themselves, at Bombay and Aḥmadābād, within the last forty years; and these deal with the ritual and mythology of their cult in a form that would open the way to a scientific study. Of the *Srī Ratnasūtra*, the second *bhāṣā*, a volume of 766 pages (Bombay, Sam. 1923), fell into my hands many years ago; but the first part I have not seen. The work, besides much other matter, contains a sort of inventory of the mythology. At p. 696 of *bhāṣā* 2, is a list of the 24 Tirthaṅkaras of the past, present, and future *mons* (*trīśachovisinānām*), followed by nine other lists of 24 Jinas each, connected with these three series of Tirthaṅkaras, being the corresponding Jinas in the divisions of the Dhātukikhaṇḍa and Pushkaradvīpa and in the Aurāvata section of Jambadvīpa. These give 720 Jinas — all invented except Mahāvira perhaps. At pages 706-26 we find the twenty-four Jinas of the present *avarasarpī* or age, tabulated with 56 particulars relating to each of them, such as — *chaturvā-tithi*, *vimāna*, *janmanagari*, *janmatithi*, *pitānānam*, *mātā*, *janmanakshatra*, *lāṅghana*, *epiksha*, *yaksha*, etc. In this *Journal*, Vol. XIII, p. 276, some of these details were given.

<sup>42</sup> Vol. XXII. above, p. 169 ff.

<sup>44</sup> See Vol. V. above, p. 68, and Vol. VIII. p. 238.

<sup>45</sup> Vol. XXVIII. above, p. 1 ff.



The attendant Yakshas and Yakshinis, who have their shrines or images close to or in the temples of the Jinas, had perhaps their analogues in Buddhism. But besides these, we find a regular pantheon about such places as Satruñjaya and Girnār in Kāthiāwād, at Ābu, Pāravanātha, and other sacred places.

They divide the gods, all of whom are mortal, into four classes :— (1) the **Bhavanavāsins** or **Bhaumeyikas**, of which there are ten sub-divisions, Asurakumāras, Nāgakumāras, Suvarṇakumāras, Vidyutkumāras, etc., each governed by two Indras; (2) the **Vyantaras**, who live in woods, and are of eight classes, — Piśāchas, Bhūtas, Yakshas, Rākshasas, Kinnaras, Kimpurushas, Mahoragas and Gandharvas: these we know also in the Hindu pantheon; (3) the **Jyatishkas** or divinities of the sun, moons, nakshatras, planets, and stars; and (4) the **Vaimānikas** who are divided into Kalpopagas, or those born in the heavenly Kalpas, Kalpātitas or those born in the regions above them; the **Kalpopagas** live in the twelve Kalpas after which they are named: viz. — Saudharma, Īśāna, Sanatkumāra, Māhendra, Brahmāloka, Lantaka, Mabāsukla, Sahasrāra, Ānata, Prāṇata, Āraṇa and Achyuta. The **Kalpātitas** are sub-divided into the Graiveyaka gods, and the Anuttara gods of five kinds, viz.: the Vijayas, the Vaijayantas, the Jayantas, the Aparājitas, and the Sarvārthasiddhas. — (Colebrooke, *Essays*, Vol. II. p. 221 f., and *Uttarādhyayanāsūtra*.)

Here there is a classification; can any of your readers fill out the details of individual gods, of their respective cults and iconography? The field is open to the investigator. Since the essays of Colebrooke and H. H. Wilson, very little has been added to our information on this subject. Much of it is directly borrowed from Hinduism, but new rôles and conditions are imposed on the gods, they are shorn of their honour and made the servants of the Jinas; and the details of such changes have an interest. Jaina temples are covered with sculptures and the *parigaras* in their shrines are filled with *devatās*: a study of these would yield much fresh material.

#### EXTRACTS FROM THE BENGAL CONSULTATIONS OF THE XVIII<sup>TH</sup> CENTURY RELATING TO THE ANDAMAN ISLANDS.

BY R. C. TEMPLE.

(Continued from Vol. XXIX. p. 378.)

1792. — No. IX.

FORT WILLIAM, 26th October 1792. The Secretary lays before the Board Copies, which he has received from Lieutenant Blair, of his Instructions to Lieutenants Roper and Wales, when the *Viper* was dispatched to the Andamans.

#### Instructions to Lieuts. Roper and Wales, 19 October.

To Lieutt. George Roper, Commanding the *H. C. Snow Viper*.

Sir, — Agreeable to the Accompanying Order you will be pleased to proceed, and consider the delivery of the Accompanying Dispatch for the Honble. Commodore Cornwallis as your principal Object. It will be necessary that you look into Port Cornwallis (formerly Northeast Harbour) where if you do not find H. M. Ships, you will proceed without loss of time to Old Harbour, [now Port Blair] and wait the arrival of the Commodore.

The Native Overseer the twenty Laborers and the Tents you carry down, you will deliver over to Lieutt. Wales, also such Laborers as can be spared from the Settlement the Sepoys, and Mr. Clark the Gunner, with two Months Provisions for the whole, to execute the inclosed Order. You will then remain with the *Viper* for the protection of Old Harbour, until you receive further Orders which will probably be about the end of November.

Calcutta,  
Octr. 19th, 1792.

Wishing you a Speedy passage, I remain, etc.,  
(Signed) Archibald Blair.



To Lieutt. John Wales, Commanding the H. C. Snow Ranger.

Sir, — On the arrival of the Viper at **Old Harbour**, formerly **Port Cornwallis**, you will receive from Lieutt. Roper One Native Overseer and twenty Laborers also such proportion of the Sepoys and Laborers as can be spared from the Settlement with two Months Provisions ; you will also embark as many of the Articles which you were desired to prepare for the new Settlement as you can Stow. You will then proceed to **Port Cornwallis** (formerly **Northeast Harbour**) and begin clearing, at the north or northwest point of **Chatham Island**, employing on this Service besides the Laborers such as can be Spared from the duty of the Vessel, with the promise of extra pay as an encouragement.

It will be proper for some time to avoid intercourse with the Natives, and to be on your guard against hostilities, and the better to prevent surprise, you will carry the **Leeboard** with you, and employ her occasionally in cruizing about the Harbour to observe their motions.

Should the Honble. Commodore Cornwallis visit the new Settlement you will communicate your Instructions and obey his Orders.

By the end of next Month you may expect to receive further Orders from this place.

Calcutta,  
Octr. 19th, 1792.

Wishing you Success, I remain, etc.,  
(Signed) **Archibald Blair**.

Read a Letter from Lieutt. Blair.

Lieutt. Blair. 25 October.

My Lord, — I have the honor to lay before your Lordship a **Plan of a Harbour situated on the northeast coast of the Great Andaman, which I accurately surveyed in March 1791**. It will be observed by examining the Plan, that it is abundantly capacious, containing above eight square nautic Miles, of excellent and safe anchorage. Both the Ingress and Egress are rendered remarkably easy, by the range of the Harbour having a Northwest direction ; by which the S. W. and N. E. monsoons, which are the prevailing winds, blow across, and are consequently fair, for either entering or quitting it : being thus ventilated it will also cool and purify the air, which will no doubt be favorable to the health of the Settlers and the Fleets which may visit it.

The entrance is so wide and so clear of danger that Ships may enter or quit it even in the night ; as a proof of this assertion the **Union and Viper** run into this harbour, in a dark squally night in the height of the S. W. monsoon.

At the Head of the Harbour there are two small Basins, one between **Ariel and Wharf Islands** the other to northwest of **Pit Island**, which would contain six or eight Ships closely moored : into those places, an inferior Force might retire under cover of Works on the Islands, which appear admirably situated for the defence of the Basins.

The most eligible place for the Settlement, I conceive to be **Chatham Island**, and its insularity would in a great measure prevent predatory Visits from the Natives.

Though I did not find any Streams of fresh water in the Harbour, I have yet great hopes that there may be several ; and I am led to this Opinion from observing the contours of several valleys which wind down from the **Saddle**, the highest land on the Andamans, into the Harbour. In one towards the sea three leagues south of the Harbour and noticed in the General Chart I found abundance of fresh water. The bottom of the valleys in the Harbour are very difficult of access, from the Mangrove and excessively entangled Underwood which environ the Shores and will require considerable labor to penetrate.

The face of the country like the other parts of these islands, is very uneven, consisting of abrupt and irregular risings with intermediate Valleys, some pretty extensive. The Soil appears the same as that in the Vicinity of the other harbour, which I found highly productive in excellent tropical Fruits Vegetables and Grain.



The situation of this Harbour being on the east coast and near the north extremity of the Island, will make the communication with Bengal, more expeditious than from any of the other Harbours of the Andamans : the vicinity of the **Cocos** and of **Diamond Island** which abound with Turtle may also be mentioned as a convenience ; and the **Parts of Persaim [Bassein] and Rangoon**, with proper management and the necessary attention to prejudices, might afford supplies of Provision, an excellent breed of Cattle, Teak Timber, and many commercial Articles which might be conducive to the prosperity of the Settlement.

In quitting this harbour in the S. W. monsoon the situation may be a little disadvantageous ; for I apprehend the most probable rout, to secure a passage to the **Coromandel Coast**, will be, to proceed to the southward, round the little **Andaman** ; consequently the time required of working from Port Cornwallis to the Old Harbour will be the difference of time against the former ; but if the passage to the northward of the Andamans should be found practicable, which I apprehend it may, there will be no disadvantage in point of situation, in quitting Port Cornwallis at this Season. The Approach to this Harbour in the S. W. monsoon appears to me easier and safer than to any of the others. For the cluster of Islands which forms the north extremity of the Andamans are sufficiently high to be seen at the distance of seven leagues, the Cocos are seven leagues to N. E. of those, and these form the broad and clear Channel which I recommend for Ship[s] bound to Port Cornwallis during this stormy season. By steering as near as possible to the latitude of 13-47 it is hardly possible that a Ship could pass through this Channel, without seeing the northern Cluster or the Cocos (even in dark weather) ; either of which with the soundings will be sufficient guide for s[t]eering to the Southward for the Harbour ; some further examination which is necessary to compleat the General Chart of the Andamans, will throw further light on this important consideration.

Being intimately connected with this subject, I hope to be excused, for also laying before your Lordship, a **Plan for a Dock, on somewhat new principles**, and particularly applicable to the Harbours of the Andamans, which gave rise to the idea. It is a high gratification to me the reflection that it may possibly prove of public utility and I hope will plead in excuse of my presumption, for intruding on your Lordships time.

Calcutta,

October 25th, 1792.

I am, etc.,

(Signed) Archibald Blair.

Ordered that the Chart received from Lieutenant Blair be deposited in the Secretarys Office, and that his Letter shall lie for Consideration for the present.

#### 1792. — No. X.

Fort William, 5th November 1792. The Governor General delivers in the following Minute.

The Board having Resolved, in Compliance with Commodore Cornwallis's recommendation to establish a **Naval Arsenal at the North East Harbour in the great Andaman Island**, and the preparations for removing the Station from Port Cornwallis being now in great forwardness, I submit the following Propositions to their Consideration.

1st. — That the **Union Snow** and the three Pilot Vessels, which have been fitted out for the purpose of conveying Artificers, Stores, etc., etc., to the Andamans, be dispatched forthwith, under the **Orders of Lieutenant Blair**, who shall be instructed to attend to such directions as he may receive from the Commodore, and remain in charge of the new Settlement until the arrival of the Officer appointed to take that command, after which Lieutt. Blair shall proceed to Bombay to resume his station ; and as his attention and abilities in the management of our first establishment at the Andamans claim our warm approbation, and as he has stated that he has been subject to considerable expence by the distance of those Islands from Bengal, and other Countries from whence he could procure Supplies, I think that he should receive one hundred and fifty Rupees per Month in addition to his Surveyor's allowance from the time of his first taking possession of Port Cornwallis until he shall be relieved from



the command, and that his Surveyors allowance should be continued to him till he shall arrive at Bombay.

2dly. — It is very essential in establishing a Settlement, which is likely to be permanent, and may eventually be of great importance for the security of our Asiatic possessions, that the Situation for public and private buildings should be judiciously chosen, and the spots which it may hereafter be advisable to fortify, should as early as possible be ascertained, I recommend that **Captain Alexander Kyd of the Corps of Engineers**, in whose honor and integrity I place the highest confidence, and of whose merits in his profession I have been myself a Witness, should be appointed to the temporary Command, and that, with the pay and full Batta that his Rank may entitle him to, He should receive an allowance of one thousand Rupees a month as Superintendent.

3dly. — A Subaltern Officer of the Corps of Engineers should accompany Captain Kyd to the new Station; and as one or perhaps two Companies of Sepoys must be sent thither, it will be proper to select a careful and intelligent Officer of Infantry to command them, not only for the purpose of assisting Captain Kyd in making his various arrangements, but to take charge of the Settlement in the event of his temporary absence from it.

Agreed and Ordered in conformity to the Propositions laid before the Board by the Governor General.

(To be continued.)

## FOLKLORE IN THE CENTRAL PROVINCES OF INDIA.

BY M. N. VENKATASWAMI, M.R.A.S., M.F.L.S.

No. 14. — *The Story of the Ant (a Cumulative Rhyme).*

*Sina sachhu dayai,  
Nanali dukha mayai,  
Murri chettu ramiroi,  
Kaki kailu irigai,  
Yunuga kungellu kulipoai,  
Laidlu kallu kuluffirigai,  
Yaitlu nilu kaila kaila ayai,  
Jonna eainu purugupattai,  
Peddarajuka budda digai,  
Pedda dorasaniki pitantu kunai,  
Paidarallu Peddamaku tutta antakunai.<sup>1</sup>*

Once upon a time a peahen reared an ant, which became so attached to her that every day she would precede her foster-mother home from the fields, whither the peahen had gone to fetch the ant her daily food.

One day said the ant: — "Mother dear, I am going to make some *arsailu*<sup>2</sup> for you tomorrow morning."

"Don't make it, don't make it, darling," said the peahen. "You will fall into the pan."

But the ant paid no attention and made the *arsailu*, and began drawing them out of the pan: one, two, three, four, but at the fifth draw there was an accident and she fell into the pan of boiling oil.

<sup>1</sup> These lines mean:— The ant killed itself, the peahen sorrows, the banyan-tree exudes, the crow's leg has gone the elephant's legs have lost their power, the deer's knee-joints are broken, the waters of the river are disturbed, the millet-field is insect eaten, the great king has hydrocele, the queen's seat has stuck to her, the basket has stuck to Paidarallu Peddamaku.

<sup>2</sup> To make *arsailu*. Pound some rice to a coarse powder, mix into a cake with boiled molasses while still liquid place the cakes in a pan of boiling oil, when cooked fish up with an iron ladle and serve the cakes as *arsailu*. *Arsailu* are used on ceremonial occasions, such as betrothals, marriages, and so on.



In due time the peahen returned as usual, but for a long while she searched in vain in every nook and corner for the ant. At last she found the poor little ant quite dead in the burning oil and set up a great lamentation. In her sorrow she sat down under a banyan-tree lamenting, and this made the tree say:—"O peahen, peahen, you have always been joyous: what is the matter today?"

"O banyan-tree. O banyan-tree, don't you know?"

The ant died,  
The peahen grieves,  
The banyan-tree weeps."

The banyan-tree began at once to weep at every pore, and a crow that always used to perch on one of its branches began to enquire:—"O banyan-tree. O banyan-tree, you were always hearty: what is the matter today?"

"O crow, crow, don't you know?"

The ant died,  
The peahen grieves,  
The banyan-tree weeps,  
The crow has lost a leg."

Immediately one of the crow's legs fell off and it began hopping on one leg miserably. An elephant saw it and said:—"O crow, crow, you were always perky: what is the matter today?"

"O elephant, elephant, don't you know?"

The ant died,  
The peahen grieves,  
The banyan-tree weeps,  
The crow has lost a leg,  
The elephant has lost all."

Immediately all power went out of the elephant's legs and he began to crawl cumbrously here and there. In this plight a deer saw him and said:—"O elephant, elephant, you were always strong: what is the matter today?"

"O deer, deer, don't you know?"

The ant died,  
The peahen grieves,  
The banyan-tree weeps,  
The crow has lost a leg,  
The elephant has lost all,  
The deer broke her knees."

Instantly the deer fell on its knees by the river-side in great pain. Said the river:—"O deer, deer, you were always blithe: what is the matter today?"

"O river, river, don't you know?"

The ant died,  
The peahen grieves,  
The banyan-tree weeps,  
The crow has lost a leg,  
The elephant has lost all,  
The deer broke her knees,  
The river bubbles."



When the river began bubbling, said the millet-field alongside:—"O river, river, you were always smooth: what is the matter today?"

"O millet-field, O millet-field, don't you know?

The ant died,  
The peahen grieves,  
The banyan-tree weeps,  
The crow has lost a leg,  
The elephant has lost all,  
The deer broke her knees,  
The river bubbles,  
The millet-field is blighted."

A great blight at once settled on the millet-field and the king who was there<sup>3</sup> said:—"O millet-field, O millet-field, you were always full of corn: what is the matter today?"

"O king, king, don't you know?

The ant died,  
The peahen grieves,  
The banyan-tree weeps,  
The crow has lost a leg,  
The elephant has lost all,  
The deer broke her knees,  
The river bubbles,  
The millet-field is blighted,  
The king has gone lame."<sup>4</sup>

The king began at once to go dot-and-go-one and when the queen saw him,<sup>5</sup> she said:—"O king, king, you were always sturdy: what is the matter today?"

"O queen, queen, don't you know?

The ant died,  
The peahen grieves,  
The banyan-tree weeps,  
The crow has lost a leg,  
The elephant has lost all,  
The deer broke her knees,  
The river bubbles,  
The millet-field is blighted,  
The king has gone lame,  
The queen stuck to her seat."

And sure enough the queen had at once to carry her seat about with her, and Paidaralla Peddamma<sup>6</sup> seeing her in such a plight said:—"O queen, queen, you were always sprightly, what is the matter today?"

<sup>3</sup> In the story as usually told this passage runs:—Into the millet-field the king used to go for the purposes of nature.

<sup>4</sup> The vernacular version has:—the king has hydrocele.

<sup>5</sup> The vernacular has:—when the queen saw that the king had hydrocele, she said, etc.

<sup>6</sup> In Telugu folk-tales, the keeper of the now where the hero or the heroine, as the case may be, lodges and board and gets the first information of the country he or she is visiting.



"O Paidarallu Peddamma, don't you know ?

The ant died,  
The peahen grieves,  
The banyan-tree weeps,  
The crow has lost a leg,  
The elephant has lost all,  
The deer broke her knees,  
The river bubbles,  
The millet-field is blighted,  
The king has gone lame,  
The queen's seat stuck to her,  
And the basket has stuck to Paidarallu Peddamma."

A COMPLETE VERBAL CROSS-INDEX TO YULE'S HOBSON-JOBSON  
OR GLOSSARY OF ANGLO-INDIAN WORDS.

BY CHARLES PARTRIDGE, M.A.

(Continued from p. 350.)

- Balāchong; *s. v.* 38, i.  
Baladi; *s. v.* Country, 206, ii.  
Baladi; *s. v.* Country, 206, ii, twice.  
Balad-ul-falfal; ann. 851 : *s. v.* Malabar, 412, i.  
Balagani; *s. v.* Balcony, 39, ii.  
Balagat; ann. 1553 : *s. v.* Pardao, 841, i; ann. 1563 : *s. v.* Vanjārās, 88, i.  
Balagate; ann. 1510 : *s. v.* Narsinga, 474, i, *s. v.* Peon, 528, i; ann. 1562 : *s. v.* Balaghaut, 38, ii; ann. 1563 : *s. v.* Balaghaut, 38, ii, *s. v.* Bear-tree, 58, i, *s. v.* Nizamaluco, 830, ii; ann. 1666 : *s. v.* Balaghaut, 38, ii.  
Balagatt; ann. 1614 : *s. v.* Balaghaut, 38, ii.  
Balagatta; ann. 1726 : *s. v.* Deccan, 233, ii.  
Balagatte; ann. 1598 : *s. v.* Balaghaut, 38, ii.  
Balaghat; *s. v.* Pateca, 518, ii, *s. v.* Idalcan, 808, i; ann. 1563 : *s. v.* Coprah, 196, i, *s. v.* Mango, 424, i, *s. v.* Neem, 476, ii, *s. v.* Nizamaluco, 830, ii.  
Balaghaut; *s. v.* 38, ii, *s. v.* Ghaut (c), 281, ii; ann. 1762 : *s. v.* Carnatic, 126, ii, 773, i.  
Bala Ghaut; ann. 1805 : *s. v.* Balaghaut, 38, ii.  
Balahar; ann. 1753 : *s. v.* Buddha, 767, ii.  
Balajerow; ann. 1763-78 : *s. v.* Chowt, 166, i.  
Balaji Rao; ann. 1740 : *s. v.* Brinjaul, 87, ii.  
Bālākang-māti; *s. v.* Blacan-matee, 73, ii.  
Bala-khans; ann. 1876 : *s. v.* Balcony, 40, i.  
Bālā khānā; ann. 1880 : *s. v.* Balcony, 40, i.  
Balakhshī; *s. v.* Balass, 39, i.  
Balālās; *s. v.* Doorsumund, 250, ii.  
Balānitis *negyptiaca*; 466, i, footnote.  
Balanus Mirepsica; ann. 1672 : *s. v.* Myrobalan, 466, ii.  
Balanus Myrepsica; ann. 1560 : *s. v.* Myrobalan, 466, ii.  
Bala posh; ann. 1862 : *s. v.* Palempore, 505, i.  
Balang posh; ann. 1862 : *s. v.* Palempore, 505, i.  
Balapum; *s. v.* Parabyke, 512, i.  
Balaser; ann. 1676 : *s. v.* Balasore, 39, i.  
Balasor; ann. 1753 : *s. v.* Kedgerree, 812, ii.  
Balasore; *s. v.* 39, i, 760, i, *s. v.* Factory, 264, ii, *s. v.* Sonthals, 857, ii; ann. 1673 : *s. v.* Patna, 520, i; ann. 1727 : *s. v.* 39, i, *s. v.* Grass-cloth, 361, ii; ann. 1752 : *s. v.* Nilgherry, 830, i, twice.  
Balass; *s. v.* 39, i, 760, i.  
Balasses; ann. 1516 : *s. v.* Balass, 39, i.  
Balassi; ann. 1581 : *s. v.* Balass, 39, i.  
Balasums; ann. 1811 : *s. v.* Baloon, 40, ii.  
Balax; ann. 1404 : *s. v.* Balass, 39, i.  
Balaxayo; ann. 1516 : *s. v.* Balass, 39, i.  
Balaxes; ann. 1681 : *s. v.* Balass, 39, i.  
Balayā; *s. v.* Cobily Mash, 172, i.  
Bāl-būr; *s. v.* Bālwar, 40, ii.  
Balco; *s. v.* Balcony, 39, ii, 3 times.  
Balcon; ann. 1340-50 : *s. v.* Balcony, 39, ii.  
Balcone; *s. v.* Balcony, 39, ii, twice; ann. 1340-50 : *s. v.* Balcony, 39, ii; ann. 1645-52 : *s. v.* Balcony, 760, i.  
Balconi; ann. 1348 : *s. v.* Balcony, 39, ii.



- Balcones; ann. 1667: *s. v.* Balcony, 40, i.  
 Balcony; *s. v.* 39, ii, twice, 760, i; ann. 1876 and 1880: *s. v.* 40, i.  
 Balcōny; ann. 1805 and 1833: *s. v.* Balcony, 40, i.  
 Balcōny; ann. 1733: *s. v.* Balcony, 40, i.  
 Balcōny; *s. v.* Balcony, 39, ii.  
 Balcōny; *s. v.* Balcony, 39, ii.  
 Baldagh; ann. 1860: *s. v.* Ducks, 253, ii.  
 Bale; ann. 1290: *s. v.* Orange, 491, i; ann. 1498: *s. v.* Wali, 739, ii; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Sunda, 659, ii.  
 Bāleśvara; *s. v.* Balasore, 39, i.  
 Balets; ann. 1653: *s. v.* Balass, 39, i.  
 Balgat; ann. 1533: *s. v.* Melique Verido, 823, i.  
 Balghār; *s. v.* Bulgar, 96, i.  
 Balgu; ann. 1608: *s. v.* Champa, 140, ii.  
 Bali; 667, i, footnote, *s. v.* Sutte, 667, ii; ann. 1555: *s. v.* Java, 348, ii; ann. 1586: *s. v.* Sutte, 669, i; ann. 1689: *s. v.* Vedas, 735, i; ann. 1774: *s. v.* Gentoo, 281, i, *s. v.* Sutte, 670, ii.  
 Bāli; ann. 1689: *s. v.* Pāli, 505, ii.  
 Balia; 660, ii, footnote.  
 Balie; ann. 1687-88: *s. v.* Gautama, 279, ii; ann. 1688: *s. v.* Pra, 551, ii; ann. 1690: *s. v.* Pāli, 505, ii, twice.  
 Baligaot; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Balaghaut, 38, ii.  
 Balil; *s. v.* Myrobalan, 465, ii.  
 Balila; *s. v.* Myrobalan, 465, ii.  
 Balilij; *s. v.* Myrobalan, 465, ii.  
 Balimba; ann. 1563: *s. v.* Carambola, 123, i.  
 Bālimbing; *s. v.* Blimbee, 75, ii.  
 Balirig; *s. v.* Myrobalan, 465, ii.  
 Balirij; *s. v.* Myrobalan, 465, ii.  
 Bālīsh; *s. v.* Shoe of Gold, 628, ii.  
 Balk; *s. v.* Balcony, 39, ii.  
 Balkh; 90, ii, footnote, *s. v.* Nowbehār, 482, i; ann. 904: *s. v.* Buddha, 90, ii; ann. 1504: *s. v.* Hindoo Koosh, 316, i.  
 Balla; *s. v.* Bulkut, 96, ii.  
 Ballace; ann. 1611 and 1673: *s. v.* Balass, 39, i.  
 Balladeiras; ann. 1782: *s. v.* Bayadère, 56, ii.  
 Ball-a-gat; ann. 1760: *s. v.* Balaghaut, 38, ii.  
 Ballagate; ann. 1598: *s. v.* Balaghaut, 38, ii, *s. v.* Lascar, 389, i.  
 Balla-Gaut; ann. 1813: *s. v.* Balaghaut, 39, i.  
 Ballasore; ann. 1678: *s. v.* Palankeen, 836, ii; ann. 1679: *s. v.* Tumlook, 864, ii; ann. 1683: *s. v.* Bankshall (b), 47, ii; ann. 1690: *s. v.* Dewaun, 240, i, *s. v.* Urz, 733, i; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Balasore, 39, i, *s. v.* Pomfret, 545, ii; ann. 1748: *s. v.* Resident (a), 848, ii.  
 Balliadera; ann. 1598 and 1599: *s. v.* Bayadère, 56, ii.  
 Balliadere; ann. 1794: *s. v.* Bayadère, 56, ii.  
 Balliapatam; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Delly, Mount, 285, ii.  
 Ballichang; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Balāchong, 38, i.  
 Ballon; ann. 1539: *s. v.* Lanchara, 384, i.  
 Ballongs; ann. 1755: *s. v.* Baloon, 40, i.  
 Bāllonta; ann. 545: *s. v.* Sūrath, 665, ii.  
 Balloon; *s. v.* 40, i; ann. 1540: *s. v.* Alcatif, 7, i.  
 Ballowche; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Bilcoch, 71, i, *s. v.* Sophy, 649, i.  
 Baimochun; ann. 1834: *s. v.* Dewaun, 240, i.  
 Balnāth; 641, ii, footnote.  
 Balochis; ann. 1200: *s. v.* Bilcoch, 71, i.  
 Balōes; ann. 1539 and 1634: *s. v.* Baloon, 40, i.  
 Baloon; *s. v.* 40, i; ann. 1673: *s. v.* 40, i.  
 Balouche; ann. 1665: *s. v.* Afghan, 754, ii.  
 Baloudra; ann. 1555: *s. v.* Baroda, 53, i.  
 Balsamo; ann. 1461: *s. v.* Candy (Sugar-), 120, i.  
 Balsamodendron Mukul; *s. v.* Bdelium, 57, i, *s. v.* Googul, 296, i.  
 Balsār; ann. 1590: *s. v.* Surat, 665, i.  
 Balsara; ann. 1580: *s. v.* Bussora, 768, ii; ann. 1652: *s. v.* Congo-bunder, 782, ii; ann. 1671: *s. v.* Bussora, 769, i.  
 Balsora; *s. v.* 40, ii, *s. v.* Bussora, 768, ii.  
 Balti; *s. v.* Polo, 544, ii; ann. 1846: *s. v.* Pole, 545, i.  
 Balti; *s. v.* Polo, 544, i.  
 Baltistān; 544, ii, footnote.  
 Baluarte; ann. 1644: *s. v.* Almadia, 10, i.  
 Balūch; *s. v.* Bilcoch, 71, i; 14th cent.: *s. v.* Ghilzai, 284, i.  
 Balūj; ann. 643: *s. v.* Bilcoch, 71, i.  
 Balūj; ann. 1556: *s. v.* Bilcoch, 71, i.  
 Bālūwā; *s. v.* Bālwar, 40, ii.  
 Bālwar; *s. v.* 40, ii.  
 Bālwar; *s. v.* Bālwar, 40, ii.  
 Balyānw; *s. v.* Baloon, 40, i.  
 Bamba; *s. v.* Bumba, 96, ii.  
 Bambaye; ann. 1666: *s. v.* Bombay, 77, ii.  
 Bambillonias; ann. 1343: *s. v.* Sugar, 655, ii, 5 times.  
 Bambo; ann. 1586: *s. v.* Bamboo, 41, ii; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Bamboo, 41, ii, *s. v.* Palankeen, 503, ii.  
 Bambo-Achar; ann. 1687: *s. v.* Achār, 3, i.  
 Bamboe; ann. 1687: *s. v.* Achār, 3, i.  
 Bambolimas; *s. v.* Pommelo, 546, i.  
 Bamboo; *s. v.* 40, ii, 41, i, 5 times, 42, i, 3 times, 760, i, twice, *s. v.* Camphor, 116, ii, *s. v.*



- Chick (a), 147, ii, *s. v.* Dandy (c), 229, ii, *s. v.*  
 Dhooly, 242, i, *s. v.* Jhaump, 351, ii, *s. v.*  
 Junk, 360, ii, *s. v.* Kittysol, 371, i, *s. v.*  
 Lattee, 390, ii, *s. v.* Palankeen, 502, ii, *s. v.*  
 Ranjow, 574, i, *s. v.* Sugar, 654, ii, 3 times  
 and footnote, *s. v.* Tabasheer, 674, ii, *s. v.*  
 Tinnevely, 703, ii, *s. v.* Upas, 726, ii, *s. v.*  
 Wanghee, 739, ii, (1), 740, i, twice, (2),  
 740, i, *s. v.* Numerical Affixes, 831, ii;  
 ann. 890: *s. v.* Malabar 412, i; ann.  
 1343: *s. v.* Junk, 360, ii; ann. 1516:  
*s. v.* Java, 348, i, *s. v.* Zedoary, 747,  
 ii; ann. 1621: *s. v.* 41, ii; ann. 1675: *s. v.*  
 Tiger, 703, i; ann. 1685: *s. v.* Upas, 730, ii;  
 ann. 1711: *s. v.* Cot, 205, i; ann. 1726: *s. v.*  
 Pasei, 517, ii, *s. v.* Upas, 731, i; ann. 1727:  
*s. v.* Cangue, 120, ii; ann. 1750-52 and  
 1783: *s. v.* Bankshall (a), 47, i; ann. 1760:  
*s. v.* Chawbuck, 777, i; ann. 1780: *s. v.*  
 Poligar, 543, ii; ann. 1789: *s. v.* Nalkee,  
 829, i; ann. 1807: *s. v.* Cawney, 136, i, *s. v.*  
 Pig-sticking, 537, i; ann. 1810: *s. v.* Bangy  
 (a), 46, i; ann. 1824: *s. v.* Babool, 33, i; ann.  
 1825: *s. v.* Pindarry, 539, i; ann. 1830: *s. v.*  
 Lattee, 390, ii; ann. 1855: *s. v.* 41, ii,  
 5 times, *s. v.* Goglet, 293, i; ann. 1858: *s. v.*  
 Chow-chow, 164, ii; ann. 1862: *s. v.* Mun-  
 cheel, 457, i; ann. 1866: *s. v.* Kookry, 815,  
 ii; ann. 1878: *s. v.* Atap, 29, i, twice.  
 Bamboo-camphor; *s. v.* Camphor, 116, ii.  
 Bamboo-cane; *s. v.* Bamboo, 41, i, *s. v.* Rattan,  
 574, i.  
 Bamboo-sugar; *s. v.* Sugar, 654, ii.  
 Bamboo, Sugar of; *s. v.* Tabasheer, 674, ii.  
 Bamboo-Town; *s. v.* Belgaum, 61, ii.  
 Bambou; ann. 1610, 1666 and 1727: *s. v.*  
 Bamboo, 41, ii; ann. 1782: *s. v.* Boy (b), 84, i;  
 ann. 1811: *s. v.* Baloon, 40, i.  
 Bambouc; ann. 1665: *s. v.* Dacca, 225, i.  
 Bambu; *s. v.* Bamboo, 41, i, twice.  
 Bambū; ann. 1623: *s. v.* Bamboo, 41, ii.  
 Bambuc; ann. 1615: *s. v.* Bamboo, 41, ii.  
 Bambulim; *s. v.* Bummelo, 96, ii, twice.  
 Bambulimas; *s. v.* Pommelo, 546, i.  
 Bambus; ann. 1598: *s. v.* Bamboo, 41, ii.  
 Bambusa arundinacea; *s. v.* Bamboo, 40, ii.  
 Bambusa vulgaris; *s. v.* Bamboo, 40, ii.  
 Bāmiān; *s. v.* Jade, 340, i.  
 Bāmiyah; *s. v.* Bendy, 63, ii.  
 Bam-mā; *s. v.* Burma, 100, ii.  
 Bamo; *s. v.* Bamó, 42, i.  
 Bamó; *s. v.* 42, i.  
 Bamola; *s. v.* Factory, 264, ii.  
 Bamplacot; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Bancoek, 43, i.  
 Bam-you; ann. 1861: *s. v.* Shan, 623, ii.  
 Ban; 605, i, footnote; ann. 1580: *s. v.* Coffee,  
 179, i; ann. 1598: *s. v.* Coffee, 179, ii.  
 Bān; 402, ii, footnote.  
 Banadik; *s. v.* Bundook, 98, i.  
 Banādik; *s. v.* Bundook, 98, i.  
 Banah; ann. 1150: *s. v.* Tabasheer, 674, ii.  
 Banāmī; *s. v.* Benamee, 61, ii, twice.  
 Banām-i-falāna; *s. v.* Bensmee, 61, ii.  
 Banān; *s. v.* Banana, 760, i.  
 Banana; *s. v.* 42, i, 760, i, *s. v.* Jack, 336, i,  
*s. v.* Pisang, 540, ii, *s. v.* Plantain, 540, ii,  
 541, i, 3 times, *s. v.* Numerical Affixes, 832,  
 i; ann. 1563 and 1598: *s. v.* 42, ii; ann.  
 1764: *s. v.* Plantain, 542, ii, twice.  
 Banāna; *s. v.* Banana, 760, ii.  
 Banānā; *s. v.* Bunow, 99, ii.  
 Bananier; ann. 1785: *s. v.* Pisang, 540, ii;  
 ann. 1874: *s. v.* Talipot, 679, i.  
 Banāo; *s. v.* Bunow, 99, ii.  
 Bānāras; ann. 1020: *s. v.* Benares, 764, ii.  
 Banaras; ann. 1781: *s. v.* Baboo, 759, ii.  
 Banāras; ann. 1790: *s. v.* Baya, 56, i.  
 Banāras; *s. v.* Benares, 764, ii.  
 Banarou; ann. 1665: *s. v.* Penares, 764, ii.  
 Banasur; ann. 1616: *s. v.* Elephanta, 260, i.  
 Banasura; *s. v.* Balasore, 760, i.  
 Banau; ann. 1853: *s. v.* Bunow, 100, i.  
 Bānbū; *s. v.* Bamboo, 40, ii.  
 Bancacaes; ann. 1524: *s. v.* Bankshall (a), 47, i.  
 Bancal; ann. 1813: *s. v.* Mace (b), 405, i,  
 twice.  
 Bancha; ann. 1573: *s. v.* Coffee, 179, i.  
 Bauchoot; *s. v.* 42, ii; ann. 1792: *s. v.* 42, ii.  
 Bancoek; *s. v.* 42, ii, 43, i, 760, ii.  
 Bancone; ann. 1560: *s. v.* Lanteas, 385, i,  
 twice.  
 Bankshall; ann. 1750-52: *s. v.* Bankshall (a),  
 47, i.  
 Band; *s. v.* Bund, 97, i.  
 Banda; *s. v.* Factory, 264, ii, *s. v.* Moluccas,  
 440, i, see 837, i, footnote; ann. 1505: *s. v.*  
 Pegu, 525, i; ann. 1605: *s. v.* Kling, 374,  
 i; ann. 1631: *s. v.* Sagwire, 590, ii; ann.  
 1646: *s. v.* Upas, 729, ii; ann. 1659: *s. v.*  
 Beriberi, 67, i; ann. 1682: *s. v.* Cassowary,  
 774, i; ann. 1813: *s. v.* Bendy, 63, ii.  
 Bandahara; ann. 1612: *s. v.* Orankay, 492, i;  
 ann. 1883: *s. v.* Bendára, 63, ii.  
 Bandahāra; *s. v.* Bendára, 63, i.



- Band Ally; ann. 1627: *s. v.* Caravanseray, 124, ii.
- Bandam; ann. 1430: *s. v.* Mace (a), 404, ii, *s. v.* Moluccas, 440, ii.
- Bandamir; *s. v.* Bendameer, 62, ii.
- Band-Amir; ann. 1809: *s. v.* Bendameer, 63, i.
- Bandan; ann. 1430: *s. v.* Lory, 398, ii; ann. 1510: *s. v.* Moluccas, 440, ii.
- Bandana; ann. 1866: *s. v.* Bandanna, 43, i.
- Bandanah; ann. 1875: *s. v.* Bandanna, 43, ii.
- Bandanesen; ann. 1646: *s. v.* Upas, 729, ii.
- Bandanezes; ann. 1570: *s. v.* Sunda, 659, ii.
- Bandanna; *s. v.* 43, i, *s. v.* Piece-goods, 535, ii; ann. 1848: *s. v.* 43, i.
- Bandannoes; ann. 1752 and 1813: *s. v.* Bandanna, 43, i.
- Bandar; *s. v.* Bandel, 44, i, *s. v.* Bunder, 97, ii, *s. v.* Coromandel, 198, ii, *s. v.* Wanderoo, 739, ii; ann. 1344: *s. v.* Bunder, 97, ii, twice; ann. 1345: *s. v.* Bankshall (a), 46, ii; ann. 1346: *s. v.* Bunder, 97, ii; ann. 1530: *s. v.* Candy, 119, ii; ann. 1756: *s. v.* Bassein (1), 53, ii, *s. v.* Broach, 89, i.
- Bandara; ann. 1539 and 1561: *s. v.* Bendāra, 63, i.
- Bāṇḍārā; *s. v.* Bendāra, 63, i.
- Bandar Abbās; *s. v.* Ormus, 492, ii.
- Bandar 'Abbās; *s. v.* Gombroon, 294, i, *s. v.* Ormus, 833, ii.
- Bandar Abbassi; ann. 1653: *s. v.* Congo-bunder, 783, i.
- Bandarāuab; ann. 1442: *s. v.* Pandarāni, 508, ii.
- Bandar Chātīgām; *s. v.* Bandel, 44, i.
- Bandar-Congo; ann. 1652: *s. v.* Congo-bunder, 782, ii, 783, i.
- Bandaree; *s. v.* 43, ii, 760, ii; ann. 1760: *s. v.* 43, i.
- Bandares; ann. 1726: *s. v.* Bendāra, 63, ii.
- Bandari; ann. 1644 and 1810: *s. v.* Bandaree, 43, ii.
- Bāṇḍārī; *s. v.* Bendāra, 63, i.
- Bandarī; *s. v.* Coast, The, 172, i.
- Bandar-i-Hūglī; *s. v.* Bandel, 44, i.
- Bandarines; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Bandaree, 43, ii, twice.
- Bandar-i-Rūmī; *s. v.* Room, 581, i.
- Bandarys; ann. 1548: *s. v.* Bandaree, 43, ii.
- Bandaze; ann. 1766: *s. v.* Bandeja, 760, ii.
- Bande; *s. v.* Bonze, 79, i.
- Bandeja; *s. v.* 760, ii, *s. v.* Bandejah, 43, ii; ann. 1621 and 1760: *s. v.* Bandejah, 44, i.
- Bandejah; *s. v.* 43, ii; ann. 1760: *s. v.* 44, i.
- Bandel; *s. v.* 44, i, 760, ii, *s. v.* Bunder, 97, ii, *s. v.* Coromandel, 198, ii; ann. 1541: *s. v.* Malum, 418, ii; ann. 1717: *s. v.* Pandal, 507, ii; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Hoogly, 322, i; ann. 1753: *s. v.* 760, ii.
- Bandel de Chatigão; *s. v.* Bandel, 44, i.
- Bandel dos Malemos; *s. v.* Bandel, 44, i.
- Bandell; ann. 1782: *s. v.* Bandel, 760, ii.
- Bander; ann. 1630: *s. v.* Gombroon, 294, ii; ann. 1650: *s. v.* Banyan-Tree, 50, ii.
- Bander-Abassi; ann. 1652: *s. v.* Congo-bunder, 783, i.
- Bander Angon; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Bunder, 97, ii.
- Bandh; *s. v.* Bund, 97, i.
- Band Haimero; *s. v.* Bendameer, 62, ii.
- Bandhārā; *s. v.* Bandanna, 43, i.
- Bandhe; *s. v.* Bonze, 79, i.
- Bāṇḍhnū; *s. v.* Bandanna, 43, i.
- Bāṇḍhnūn; ann. 1590: *s. v.* Bandanna, 43, i.
- Bāṇḍho; *s. v.* Bando, 760, ii.
- Bandhya; *s. v.* Bonze, 79, i.
- Bāṇḍī; *s. v.* Bandy, 44, ii.
- Band-i-Amir; *s. v.* Bendameer, 62, ii; ann. 1878: *s. v.* Bendameer, 63, i.
- Bandicoot; *s. v.* 44, i; ann. 1789: *s. v.* 44, ii, *s. v.* Musk-Rat, 459, i; ann. 1879 and 1880: *s. v.* 44, ii.
- Bandicoy; *s. v.* 44, ii, *s. v.* Bendy, 63, ii.
- Bandies; ann. 1810, 1826 and 1860: *s. v.* Bandy, 44, ii.
- Bandija; ann. 1747: *s. v.* Bandeja, 760, ii.
- Bandinaneh; ann. 1442: *s. v.* Pandarāni, 508, ii.
- Bando; *s. v.* 760, ii, 761, i.
- Bandobast; ann. 1843 and 1880: *s. v.* Bundobust, 98, i.
- Band-o-bast; *s. v.* Bundobast, 98, i.
- Bandūk; *s. v.* Bundook, 98, i.
- Bandy; *s. v.* 44, ii; ann. 1791, 1800, 1826, 1829 and 1862: *s. v.* 44, ii.
- Baneanes; ann. 1552 and 1563 (twice): *s. v.* Banyan (1), 49, ii; ann. 1610: *s. v.* Bankshall (a), 47, i.
- Bang; *s. v.* 45, i, *s. v.* Banged, 45, ii, *s. v.* Bengal, 64, i, *s. v.* Bungy, 99, ii, *s. v.* Churnas, 169, ii, *s. v.* Coosumba, 194, ii; ann. 1250: *s. v.* Bengal, 64, i; ann. 1673: *s. v.* 45, i, *s. v.* Hubble-bubble, 326, i, *s. v.* Toddy, 706, ii; ann. 1711, 1727, 1763 and 1789 (twice): *s. v.* 45, i; ann. 1808: *s. v.* Kyle, 380, ii; ann. 1868: *s. v.* 45, ii.
- Banga; *s. v.* Bungalow, 98, ii.



- Bangaçae; 560, ii, footnote; ann. 1524: *s. v.* Bankshall (a), 47, i.
- Bangala; ann. 1298: *s. v.* Bengal, 64, i, *s. v.* Sngar, 655, i; ann. 1817: *s. v.* Bungalow, 99, i, twice.
- Bangāla; ann. 1442: *s. v.* Tenasserim, 695, ii.
- Bangālā; *s. v.* Bungalow, 98, ii.
- Bangālā; ann. 1300: *s. v.* Bengal, 64, ii.
- Bangālī; *s. v.* Bengalee, 65, i, *s. v.* Gaurian, 800, i.
- Bangāliyān; ann. 1633: *s. v.* Bungalow, 98, ii.
- Baṅgāl kī ihūṭa; *s. v.* Pagar, 498, i.
- Bangalla; ann. 1711: *s. v.* Bungalow, 768, ii.
- Bangallaa; ann. 1747: *s. v.* Bungalow, 768, ii.
- Bangalore; 156, i, footnote, *s. v.* Thug, 697, i; ann. 1784: *s. v.* Chawbuck, 142, ii, *s. v.* Mulligatawny, 456, ii; ann. 1791: *s. v.* Pettah, 533, i; ann. 1843: *s. v.* Turban, 719, ii.
- Bangalya; ann. 1610: *s. v.* Bankshall (a), 47, i.
- Bangan; ann. 1780: *s. v.* Banyan (1) b, 49, i.
- Bāngar; *s. v.* Bangur, 45, ii, twice.
- Bangasal; ann. 1613: *s. v.* Bankshall (a), 47, i.
- Bangasalys; ann. 1610: *s. v.* Bankshall (a), 47, i.
- Bangaṣār; ann. 1345: *s. v.* Bankshall (a), 46, ii.
- Banged; *s. v.* 45, ii, twice.
- Bangelaer of Speelhuys; ann. 1680: *s. v.* Bungalow, 768, i.
- Bangeras; ann. 1789: *s. v.* Bang, 45, i.
- Banggolo; ann. 1810: *s. v.* Bungalow, 99, i.
- Banghee; ann. 1873: *s. v.* Bangy (b), 46, i.
- Banghella; *s. v.* Bengal, 64, i; ann. 1510: *s. v.* Bengal, 64, ii.
- Banghy; *s. v.* Bangy, 45, ii, *s. v.* Pitarrah, 540, ii; ann. 1803: *s. v.* Bangy (a), 46, i.
- Baṅgī; *s. v.* Bangy, 45, ii.
- Bangkal; *s. v.* Tael, 675, ii.
- Bangkaul; *s. v.* Bencoolen, 62, i.
- Bangkoek; *s. v.* Judea, 355, i.
- Bangkok; ann. 1859: *s. v.* Anaconda, 757, i.
- Bang-kok; *s. v.* Bancoek, 42, ii.
- Bangkōk; ann. 1850: *s. v.* Bancoek, 43, i.
- Bangla; ann. 1758: *s. v.* Bungalow, 98, ii.
- Banglā; *s. v.* Bungalow, 98, i and ii (3 times).
- Bānglā; *s. v.* Bungalow, 98, ii.
- Bangle; *s. v.* 45, ii, 3 times; ann. 1803, 1809, 1810, 1826 and 1873: *s. v.* 45, ii.
- Bangrī; *s. v.* Bangle, 45, ii.
- Bangrī; *s. v.* Bangle, 45, ii.
- Bangsāl; *s. v.* Bankshall, 46, ii; ann. 1623: *s. v.* Bankshall (b), 47, ii; ann. 1817: *s. v.* Bankshall (a), 47, ii.
- Fāngsāl; ann. 1817: *s. v.* Bankshall (a), 47, i.
- Bangsāl; *s. v.* Bankshall, 46, ii.
- Bangue; ann. 1563, 1578 (twice), 1598, 1606 and 1685: *s. v.* Bang, 45, i.
- Bangun; *s. v.* 45, ii, *s. v.* Brinjar, 86, ii.
- Bangur; *s. v.* 45, ii, *s. v.* Khadir, 365, ii.
- Bangy; *s. v.* 45, ii, twice, (b), 46, i; ann. 1810: *s. v.* (a), 46, i.
- Bangy parcel; *s. v.* Bangy (b), 46, i.
- Bangy-staff; *s. v.* Bangy, 46, i.
- Bangy-wollah; ann. 1810: *s. v.* Bangy (a) 46, i.
- Banha Dela; ann. 1613: *s. v.* Cosmin, 784, i.
- Banbo; ann. 1613: *s. v.* Cosmin, 784, i.
- Banian; 108, ii, footnote, *s. v.* Chetty, 145, i; ann. 1516: *s. v.* Banyan (1), 48, ii; ann. 1613: *s. v.* Caste, 132, i; ann. 1623: *s. v.* Banyan (1), 48, ii; ann. 1630: *s. v.* Banyan (1), 48, ii; *s. v.* Shaster, 623, ii; ann. 1665: *s. v.* Banyan (a), 761, i; ann. 1666: *s. v.* Banyan (1), 48, ii; ann. 1677: *s. v.* Banyan (a), 761, i; ann. 1761: *s. v.* Banyan (b), 49, i; ann. 1764: *s. v.* Banyan (b), 49, i, *s. v.* Writer (b), 867, i; ann. 1786: *s. v.* Banyan (b), 49, i; ann. 1810: *s. v.* Banyan (1), 49, ii, twice, (2), 49, ii, *s. v.* Banyan-Tree, 51, i, *s. v.* Rum-johnny (a), 584, ii; ann. 1813: *s. v.* Banyan (1), 49, i; ann. 1814: *s. v.* Palempore, 505, i; ann. 1821: *s. v.* Banyan-Tree, 51, i; ann. 1836: *s. v.* Khuttry, 368, i.
- Banians; ann. 1650: *s. v.* Banyan-Tree, 50, ii.
- Banian-tree; ann. 1814: *s. v.* Pandal, 507, ii.
- Banian Tree; ann. 1717: *s. v.* Banyan-Tree, 50, ii.
- Bañij; *s. v.* Brinjar, 87, ii.
- Bañik; *s. v.* Bankshall (2), 46, ii.
- Bañj; ann. 1333: *s. v.* Punjaub, 562, i.
- Bañj-āb; ann. 1333: *s. v.* Punjaub, 562, i.
- Bañjāla; ann. 1345: *s. v.* Bengal, 64, ii.
- Bānjar; *s. v.* Brinjar, 88, i.
- Bānjār; *s. v.* Brinjar, 88, i.
- Bānjārū; *s. v.* Brinjar, 87, ii, twice, *s. v.* Lamballie, 383, ii, twice.
- Bānjāras; ann. 1505: *s. v.* Vanjārās, 88, i.
- Banjarmasin; *s. v.* Factory, 264, ii.
- Banjaṣār; ann. 1345: *s. v.* Bankshall (a), 46, ii.
- Banjo; *s. v.* 46, i.
- Banjore; ann. 1764: *s. v.* Banjo, 46, i.
- Bank; ann. 1784: *s. v.* Bang, 45, i.
- Bankar; 605, i, footnote.
- Bapkaśāla; *s. v.* Bankshall (2), 46, ii.
- Bankasay; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Balāchong, 38, i.
- Bankebanksal; 771, i, footnote.



Banki-bazar; ann. 1753: *s. v.* Calcutta, 771, i, twice.

Bānkīṣṭ; *s. v.* Lote, 398, ii.

Banksall; ann. 1687: *s. v.* Bankshall (b), 47, ii; ann. 1748: *s. v.* Bankshall (a), 47, i.

Banksall Island; ann. 1748: *s. v.* Bankshall (a), 47, i.

Banksaul; ann. 1788 and 1813: *s. v.* Bankshall (a), 47, i.

Bankshal; ann. 1781: *s. v.* Compound, 188, i.

Bankshall; *s. v.* 46, i and ii, 560, ii, footnote; ann. 1688: *s. v.* (b), 47, ii, *s. v.* Godown, 292, i; ann. 1727: *s. v.* (b), 47, ii; ann. 1734-5 and 1783: *s. v.* (a), 47, i; ann. 1789: *s. v.* (b), 47, ii.

(To be continued.)

## MISCELLANEA.

### THE DERIVATION OF THE WORD PANTHAY.

Now that both domestic and foreign troubles are falling thick upon the Central Chinese Government at Peking, it is probable that we shall hear of the Panthays again. They are Chinese converts to Islām, and large numbers of them are found in the Provinces of Shensi, Kansuh and Yunnan. In the former two Provinces, they are known as Tungani or Hui-hui. In Burma and the adjoining Shan States, the Muhammadans of Yunnan are known as Panthay or Pang-hse. They are a fine and warlike race, and held Yunnan against Imperial troops from 1855 to 1873. In raising a British regiment at Wei-hai-wei, Chinese Muhammadans are much sought after by the recruiting sergeants.

In Northern China, the Chinese call the converts to Islām Hui-hui, 回回, and the Yunnanese call them Hui-tzu, 回子. There is a great deal of contempt and hatred implied by the Chinese character 回 as distinguished from 回, as the first part of the former means "a dog." Evidently the compliment is a reciprocal one, because the favourite epithet used by all Muhammadans in addressing the followers of other religions is "infidel dog." The Yunnanese also call the Chinese Muhammadans Fan<sup>3</sup> P'an<sup>4</sup> 反叛 or rebels. Both the Burmese word Panthay<sup>1</sup> and the Shan word Pang-hse are evidently derived from fan<sup>3</sup> tsei<sup>4</sup>, 反賊 or pan<sup>4</sup> tsei<sup>4</sup>, 叛賊, which means "a rebellious brigand."

The derivation of the word Panthay appears to be one of the vexed questions of Sinology, and I trust that the above solution will be acceptable to Chinese scholars. In this connexion, the appended extracts bearing on the subject under discussion will be of interest.

Rangoon, June 18th, 1900.

TAW SEIN-KO.

### Extract I.

Anderson's "Mandalay to Momien," pp. 223-25.

"The Mahomedans of Yunnan have a tradition of their origin, which is curious, but mythical. The governor and the hadji at Momien stated, in substance, that their forefathers came from Arabia to China one thousand years ago, in the reign of the Emperor Tung-huon-tsong, who had sent his chief minister, Khazee, to Tseeyoog(?) to implore help against the rebel Oung-loshan. Three thousand men were accordingly sent, and the rebellion was crushed by their assistance. Their former compatriots refused to receive them back, as having been defiled by a residence among pork-eating infidels, so they settled in China, and became the progenitors of the Chinese Mahomedans. This information was furnished in the form of answer to questions put by me carefully written, and translated into Chinese, and Sladen also procured a Chinese document, giving substantially the same account. It will be seen that the variations of this from the account furnished to General Fyche are important; but as the name of the Emperor Tung-huon-tsong differs but slightly from that of Hiu-tsong of the Tung dynasty, against whom Ngan-Loshan rebelled, it seems possible to connect this account with Chinese history. His son Sutsung, A. D. 757, was rescued from his difficulties by the arrival of an embassy from the Khalif Abu Jafar al Mansur, the founder of Bagdad, accompanied by auxiliary troops, who were joined by Ouigoors and other forces from the West. It must be added that my informants, while claiming Arab descent, stated clearly that their more immediate ancestors had migrated from Shensi and Kansu to Yunnan about one hundred and fifty years ago. History, however, shows the early growth and rapid increase in China of a large Mahomedan population, whom the Chinese term Hwait-se; the name Panthay or Pansee being of Burmese origin.

As to the derivation of this term, several theories have been suggested. Major Sladen gives Puthsee

<sup>1</sup> Pronounced "Pangway" by the Chinese and Shans.



as a Burmese term for Mahomedans generally. Garnier says that the word *Pha-si*, which the Burmese have corrupted into *Pan-thé* according to Colonel Phayre, is the same as *Parsi* or *Farsi*, which, in India, is applied to the Mahomedans, and that this denomination is very ancient, as Colonel Yule pointed out that in a description of the kingdom of Cambodia, translated by A. Remusat, a religious sect is described, called *Passi* who were distinguished by wearing white or red turbans and by refusing to drink intoxicating liquors or to eat in company with the other sects; but that distinguished Chinese scholar, Sir T. Wade, derives the term *Panthay* from a Chinese word *Puntai*, signifying the aboriginal or oldest inhabitants of a country; and Garnier mentions that a people called *Pen-ti* are found on the eastern side of the Tali Lake, and in the plain of Tang-tchouen, to the north of Tali. They are a mixed race, descended from the first colonists sent into Yunnan by the Mongols, after the conquest of the country by the generals of Kublai Khan.

Mr. Cooper tells us that the term *Pa-chee*, or white flag party, as distinguished from the *Hung-chee*, or red flag, or imperialists, was also used to designate the rebels in the north of Yunnan, and Garnier frequently applies these terms to the contending parties. The termination *ze* in the name *Hwait-ze*, as in *Mant-ze*, Thibetans, *Miaout-ze*, hill tribes, and *Khwait-ze*, foreigners, seems always to imply political and tribal separation from Chinese proper. These names occur in the curious prophecy of the Four-ze Wars, quoted by Cooper."

#### Extract II.

Colborne Baber's "*Travels and Researches in Western China*," pp. 159-160.

"The word *Panthay* has received such complete recognition as the national name of the Mohammedan revolutionaries in Yunnan that I fear it will be almost useless to assert that the term is utterly unknown in the country, which was temporarily under the domination of Sultan Suliman, otherwise *Tu Wên-hsin*. The rebels were and are known to themselves and to the Imperialists by the name of *Hui-hui* or *Hui-tzu* (Moham-

medans), the latter expression being slightly derogatory.

The name of 'Sultan,' utterly foreign to the ordinary Chinese, was never applied to their ruler, except perhaps by the two or three hadjis among them. The name 'Suliman' is equally unknown. The Mohammedans of Yunnan are precisely the same race as their Confucian or Buddhist countrymen; and it is even doubtful if they were Mohammedans except as far as they professed an abhorrence for pork. They did not practise circumcision, though I am not sure if that rite is indispensable; they did not observe the Sabbath, were unacquainted with the language of Islâm, did not turn to Mecca in prayer, and professed none of the fire and sword spirit of propagandism.

That they were intelligent, courageous, honest, and liberal to strangers, is as certain as their ignorance of the law and the prophets. All honour to their good qualities, but let us cease to cite their short-lived rule as an instance of the 'Great Mohammedan Revival.'

The rebellion was at first a question of pork and of nothing else, beginning with jealousies and bickerings between pig butchers and the fleshers of Islâm in the market places. The officials, who were appealed to, invariably decided against the Mussulmans. Great discontent ensued and soon burst into a flame.

The first outbreak seems to have originated among the miners, always a dangerous class in China, who were largely composed of Mohammedans. The usual measures of exterminative repression were adopted by the officials; their Confucian hostility against any faith or society which possesses an organisation novel to or discountenanced by the Government, was aroused; a general persecution ensued; the Mohammedans made common cause, excited, it is very possible, by their traveller hadjis; and so began the period of disorder and disaster with which we are acquainted.

Regarding the faith of these unfortunate people, Dr. Anderson writes:—'Our Jemadar frequently lamented to me the laxity that prevailed among them, and my native doctor held them in extreme contempt, and used to assert that they were no Mussulmans.'

#### NOTES AND QUERIES.

##### SOME BIRTH CUSTOMS OF THE MUSSALMANS IN THE PANJAB.

On the birth of a daughter no intimation is given to the relations and friends of the father.

After the 7th day, when the dinner ceremony, called usually *dhamayan* in the Panjab, is over,

the woman resumes her usual avocations, at least those do who are strong and have to work for their living. Many, however, do not recover strength for a month.

GULAB SINGH in *P. N. and Q.* 1883.



## NEW RESEARCHES INTO THE COMPOSITION AND EXEGESIS OF THE QORAN.

BY HARTWIG HIRSCHFELD, Ph.D., M.R.A.S.

(Continued from Vol. XXIX, p. 320.)

## CHAPTER V.

## The Narrative Revelations.

**N**ARRATIVE fragments in the oldest revelations — Historical recollections — Morals of the stories — Alterations of Biblical tales — Intentional obscurities — Various methods of narration — Analysis of various narrative addresses — Transition of the descriptive period — *Al Fātiḥa*.

In the development of the *Qorán*, the part of which we are going to treat in this chapter stands above others of the Meccan period as far as variety of topics is concerned, and was undoubtedly more effective than any of the preceding ones.

Although the East is the home of the public narrator (and Muhammed's aim was to instruct and overawe rather than amuse), yet in Arabia he was able to inaugurate a new era in the art of the story-telling. In pre-Islamic times public recitations were poetic, but prose narrations cannot have been quite unknown, at any rate in certain circumscribed areas, since the Meccans used the Greek term *asâtir* for stories, which they disparagingly applied to those told by the Prophet.

The reason why Muhammed introduced tales into his sermons is obvious. A large part of his knowledge of the Bible was of historical in character. He could not fail to realize quickly that by inserting small historical fragments he aroused the curiosity of his hearers. Although these served at first solely as examples to illustrate his warnings, they became gradually longer, and ultimately — being provided with a rich stock of tales of prophets and others who could easily be stamped as such — he simply reversed his tactics. Thus the tale became the chief object of the address, and the morals to be drawn were interspersed.

The short quotations from other books to be found in earlier revelations gave Muhammed opportunities of showing an acquaintance with past events and miracles which must have come as a great surprise to the Meccans. In the primary stages of Islâm, however, tales would have been out of place. Muhammed's first object was to introduce himself as the Messenger of Allâh, to preach His unity, and to confirm his own position. When all he had to say on these points was exhausted, repetition would but have wearied and repelled his most faithful adherents. Interesting tales were, therefore, not only a powerful attraction for his old friends, but an effective means of gaining new ones. They were suited to every capacity, and in an agreeable way induced reflection, whilst working considerably on the superstition of untutored savages.

In the preceding chapter we noticed that these early historical fragments<sup>22</sup> refer to the ancient tribes of 'Ad and Thamûd. Legendary reminiscences of the latter were extant among the Arabs, who had lost the faculty of reading the records engraved in the stones of Al Hîjr. The frustrated expedition of King Abrahâ gave rise to *Sûra* cv., but although the incident had occurred within the memory of living persons, Muhammed dared to transform the plague which had decimated the forces of the enemy, into birds sent down from heaven. In *Sûra* lxxiv. 18, Pharaoh is mentioned for the first time,<sup>23</sup> and in other places either alone or together with other persons.<sup>24</sup> Abraham and Moses we encountered in connection with the *Suhuf* ascribed to them.<sup>25</sup> It must, however, be noted that the two passages in question belong to the confirmatory period, and are not again repeated. I believe this is not accidental. Muhammed may have found it necessary to show that he knew of the existence of previous prophets and their books, but he may not have cared to speak too much about them at that time. He was more interested in

<sup>22</sup> S. lxxiv. 18; xci. 11.<sup>23</sup> S. lxxiii. 16; lxxix. 17; lxi. 9; Hv. 41.<sup>24</sup> Cf. S. lxxxix. 9.<sup>25</sup> S. lxxvii. 19; Hii. 37; cf. Ch. IV.



trying to focus all attention on himself and his new doctrine. People had to become accustomed to see in him first and foremost the bearer of the monotheistic idea, whilst other prophets moved like satellites around him. Finally "the people of Noah" appear in *Sūra* liii. 55.<sup>96</sup>

The Qoranic tales in so far resemble their Biblical models, as they show a marked tendency to demonstrate that the believer is rewarded whilst the infidel meets with severe punishment. Both are portrayed in such vivid colours, that the moral of the story stands out sharply defined against the background. It frequently appeals to the lowest instincts in human nature. When the tales become longer, the thread does not run smoothly, but is at certain intervals interrupted by contemplations.<sup>97</sup>

To demonstrate more clearly the meaning of the first verses in *Sūra* lxviii., Muhammed relates an anecdote of two agriculturists whose harvest was destroyed as a punishment for their having announced their intention of reaping without having exclaimed first: if Allāh please! and with the determination not to give any to the poor.<sup>98</sup> Somewhat later but still of a very early period are v. 34-52 with an allusion to Jonah, "the man of the fish."

The first revelation of distinctly narrative character is *Sūra* li. The beginning reminds us of a good example of the declamatory period.<sup>99</sup> Then follows a brief description of the torments of hell and the pleasures of paradise. To an observant person signs of a divine Providence are to be found in the earth as well as in man's own soul. This is illustrated by a *résumé* of Gen. xviii. The comparison of the account as given in the *Qorān* with its legendary form in Rabbinical literature has been made by Geiger.<sup>100</sup> Evidently in order to make the sermon a little longer, brief accounts of the wickedness of Pharaoh, the people of 'Ād, Thamūd, and the generation of Noah are added. The keynote of the address is probably to be found in v. 52: "There never came a Messenger unless they said: he is a sorcerer or mad." This shews that not only had the old reproach been revived but another had been added, *viz.*, that Muhammed was prompted by a desire for material gain.<sup>2</sup> The latter he refuted in the concluding verses winding up with a threat for the wicked.

If the narration of the strangers' visit to Abraham be examined a little more closely, we observe that Muhammed altered his original to suit his purpose. The message they brought to him with regard to the birth of a son is treated as a matter of secondary importance, whilst their chief object is represented as being to inform Abraham of their intention to destroy a wicked people among whom there is only "one house of Moslems" (v. 36). The whole is meant to represent a "sign" for those who fear the punishment.

There is scarcely a single revelation of narrative character in which the "sign" is not mentioned. This proves how keenly Muhammed felt the disappointment of being still unable to perform a miracle. Hence the employment of *āyā*, the term for "sign" also for "verse." The "sign" is the main object of all the Meccan *sūras* following and many Medinian ones. Not less than ten Meccan *sūras*, all of which are narrative, begin with the words: "These are the signs of the manifest Book," or something similar.<sup>3</sup> A veritable lecture on the sign is

<sup>96</sup> Cf. *S.* lxxi. 1 more in detail.

<sup>97</sup> To this rule even *S.* xli. makes no exception, e. g., v. 34, 38, 40, etc.

<sup>98</sup> See Ch. VIII.

<sup>99</sup> V. 10 قُلْ; cf. lxxv. 4; lxxx. 16; lxxiv. 19, 20. Nold. l. c. p. 83 regards v. 24 sqq. as a later addition.

<sup>100</sup> Was hat Muhammed, etc., p. 129 sqq. Beidh. draws attention to the grammatical character of مَرْيَمَ which is used for sing. and plur. alike. It is possible that Muhammed chose a singular form on purpose with respect to Gen. xviii. 3, which gave the Jewish commentators also opportunities of attaching remarks to it. — Another direct reference to the original is to be found in v. 25 اٰلِهَۃُ = ʾelohim; *ibid.* v. 9.

<sup>1</sup> Application of v. 39.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. *J. Ish.* p. 1090 and the interview of Oṭba with Muhammed; cf. *ibid.* p. 185 sq., and *Qor.* xli. 1 to 3; xxxviii. 86.

<sup>3</sup> Meccan *S.* x. to xv., lxvi., xxvii., xxviii., xxxi.; Medinian: xxiv., lxi.



*Sûra xxvi.*, which is as elaborate as it is methodically constructed. In the beginning the speaker describes his mental condition as follows :<sup>4</sup> —

1. Those are the Signs of the manifest Book.
2. Haply thou art vexing thyself to death that they will not be believers.
3. If we please we will send down upon them from heaven a Sign, so that their necks shall be humbled thereto.

This most impressive introduction<sup>5</sup> is followed by a very detailed relation of the message of Moses to Pharaoh. As credentials he and Aaron receive **Signs** in word and deed similar to *Exod. iv. 1-17*. They perform their task to the astonishment of all present, and lead the Israelites through the sea. The tale ends then with the same words as *v. 7*, which return regularly as refrain after the stories of Abraham, Noah, Âd, Thamûd, Lot, and Shueib. The appearance of each prophet being connected with a "sign" wrought upon the people to whom they were sent, was to prove to the Meccans that Muhammed's knowledge of those facts was miraculous, and therefore likewise a "Sign." This can be inferred from the following words : —

- v. 192. And verily it is a revelation from the Lord of the worlds.
193. The faithful spirit<sup>6</sup> came down with it.
194. Upon thy heart, that thou shouldst be of those who warn.
195. In plain Arabic language.
196. It is [to be found] in the *zûbur* of the ancient !<sup>7</sup>
197. Shall it not be a Sign unto them, that the learned men of the children of Israel recognise it.

There is an obscurity in these verses which is intentional rather than accidental. Such strange things as the *zûbur* and "the faithful *Rûh*" were better left unexplained as food for general contemplation and wonder. The assurance that the revelation had been brought down "in plain Arabic language" did not help to make matters clearer, nor did it follow that everyone understood it. It is, on the contrary, an endeavour to hide the un-Arabic look of the whole paragraph. The same assurance is repeated about half a dozen times in the next few years,<sup>8</sup> and three times at the beginning of addresses. As a Sign must also be regarded that already "the learned of the children of Israel" knew it.<sup>9</sup> This is as vague an expression as can be, since, as we saw above, the Children of Israel were for Muhammed only a historical reminiscence and nothing more. The Meccans were the last to know anything at all about them.

The verbosity of *Sûra xxvi.* is in itself a sign of the severe struggle which raged in the bosom of the Prophet. He saw himself compelled to amend the deficiency in quality by quantity. He represents himself as being sent to warn his nearest kinsmen and to spread his

<sup>4</sup> As to the initials see Ch. XIII.

<sup>5</sup> V. 6 descriptive. — The verses 7 to 8, 67 to 68, 103 to 104, 121 to 122, 139 to 140; 153 to 159, 174 to 175; 190 to 191 form eight refrains which include the seven narrations. The intervals (59, 35, 17, 17, 18, 14, 15 verses) are so unequal that this *sûra* does not give much to support O. H. Mûller's assertions (*l. c.* p. 40 *sqq.*). It is to me more than doubtful that Muhammed, in the composition of this *sûra*, followed any tradition of older times. The *sûra* has a second refrain, *v. 109, 127, 145, 164, 1680*: "I expect no reward."

<sup>6</sup> *الروح* v. 193. In the older passages *الروح* is only mentioned in the connections with the angels (*الملائكة*); cf. S. xcii. 4; lxx. 4; lxxviii. 38; cf. also xvi. 2 (and standing alone, xxxviii. 72). *الملائكة* without *الروح* liii. 28; xvii. 97. All these passages do not go beyond the declamatory period. *Al Rûh* is, of course, the same as in *Exod. xxi. 3*, etc. — The *روح القدس* of rabbinical origin, is not mentioned until xvi. 104 (descriptive). The original Arabic form is *الروح*.

<sup>7</sup> *الزبور* used here for the first time; cf. liv. 43, 52. The verses 79 to 84 appear to be a reflex of various paragraphs from the Jewish prayer called *'Amidah*, or "Eighteen Benedictions."

<sup>8</sup> xx. 112; xliii. 1; xli. 2; xxxix. 29; xlvii. 11; xvi. 105; xli. 2. See Ch. I. p. 6.

<sup>9</sup> *Suffian* in *سفيان* refers to *تنزيل* (v. 192).



wings over all those who follow him in belief (v. 214 to 215), but is not responsible for the perdition of the disobedient (216).<sup>10</sup> These words betray more self-confidence than real potency. Muhammed was hardly able to protect himself, much less others, and, indeed, he could not have succeeded in giving shelter to one of them, had they not enjoyed the protection of influential families. It is therefore better to take v. 215 purely in a spiritual sense, with which the admonition of v. 217, to put his trust in Allāh, agrees very well.

If one peruses the narrative revelations, it is soon perceived that these are of two classes. Some there are which name quite a number of prophets, to each of whom only a few verses are dedicated, whilst others mention but one or two altho' with far more detail. Yet even those of the latter class seldom give complete biographies, but are contented with one or two episodes out of the life of the prophet under discussion, whilst they save other noteworthy incidents concerning the same prophet for other occasions. Thus it happens that larger episodes of the lives of men like Abraham, Moses and Jesus<sup>11</sup> are scattered piecemeal through the whole book. Muhammed exercised a wise economy in not exhausting his material too quickly in order to sustain the interest of his hearers with an ever fresh display of learning.

The narrative element is so essential, that it must be carefully investigated especially with regard to its bearing on Islām in general. Since the bulk of it belongs to the Meccan portion of the *Qorān*, we may conclude that those who had the greatest influence on Muhammed's theological views, were the persons who are oftenest discussed. Now the foremost of these is Moses who is mentioned about twenty times; then follows Abraham with fifteen, Noah, Lot, Shoeib with ten to seven. The birth and mission of Jesus are mentioned in the Meccan *sūras* only twice, but both times without acknowledgment of his divinity (xix. 36; xliii. 58-9). This proves that Muhammed was little influenced by the New Testament. In the face of this fact Wellhausen's assertion, that Christianity had sown the seed of Islām, is untenable. Nor was it Judaism, but Mosaism of which Islām is a weak imitation. Therefore Moses and Abraham are frequently placed before Believers as the representatives of an uncompromizing monotheism.

Here again method and systematic dealing manifest themselves, and out of the apparent chaos of incoherent stories emerge distinct forms which Muhammed has set up as his models. It is not accidental that those who appear next in frequency to Moses and Abraham are Hūd and Šālīḥ, the two legendary prophets of 'Ad and Thamūd, because they are taken from the history of Muhammed's own country; nor is it even by chance that the latter is mentioned not only alone, but earlier and more in detail than the former, probably because the ruins of their dwellings in Al Hijr were known to all travellers.

Typical of older narrative *sūras* is liv. Beginning with a solemn reminiscence of the declamatory period it announces that "the Hour is near and the moon rent; although<sup>12</sup> they might now see a Sign, they would turn away and say: 'deception without end' " — Subsequently the speaker mentions the people of Noah, 'Ad and Thamūd, without, however, stating the names of the apostles belonging to the two last, a proof that Hūd and Šālīḥ have allegorical meanings, viz., Penitent<sup>13</sup> and Pious. Sin and punishment of Thamūd are more minutely described than of the others, including Lot and Pharaoh. The narrator also bestowed a certain amount of care on the forms. The stories are divided into paragraphs each ending with a refrain which runs:

16. Then how was my punishment and my warning.

17. We have made the *Qorān* easy as reminder — but is there anyone who will mind?<sup>14</sup>

<sup>10</sup> I believe the sermon ended v. 220, whilst v. 221 to 228 form an independent address.

<sup>11</sup> The number of prophets mentioned in the *Qorān*, is five and twenty (*Ḥqān*, 790), whilst there occur about forty names of persons.

<sup>12</sup> Bückert's *Dech wenn sie schon is wrong.*

<sup>13</sup> *مود* plur. of *مؤد*; cf. Ch. II.

<sup>14</sup> V. 21 to 22, 32, 40. Also here I can see no strophes, as the paragraphs are of very unequal length. Besides the refrain in vv. 30 to 32 is interrupted by v. 31, which describes the punishment of the Thamūd. The whole is a rhetorical play. Palmer omits the refrain several times.



*Sūra xxxvii.* begins with a completely declamatory introduction to support the proclamation of the Unity of Allāh. Signs would be disregarded by the infidels who hold that death is the end of everything.<sup>15</sup> "When they are told, there is no God beside Allāh, they behave haughtily and say: shall we forsake our gods on account of a mad poet?" (v. 34<sup>16</sup> to 35) ? This charge which had evidently not died out yet, provided Muhammed with another opportunity of a very realistic description of the pleasures of Paradise and the tortures of hell.

After this homiletic overture follows the essential part of the lecture which is of narrative character. Having briefly mentioned Noah, the sermon proceeds to relate the rabbinical legend of Abraham's adventure with his father's idols.<sup>17</sup> On this occasion the speaker treats on an episode in Abraham's life differing from that given in *Sūra xxvi.* Whilst the tone in the latter is solemn and pathetic, the former is anecdotal and in part even satirical. Abraham taunts the idols as well as their worshippers, and the latter construct a furnace into which he is thrown. Being rescued by divine interference, Abraham recites a prayer and receives tidings that "a son" is to be born unto him.<sup>18</sup> In a dream he is commanded to sacrifice his son (v. 101 to 104), but finally he is absolved from performing this painful task and is rewarded for his obedience.

In the course of the sermon Moses and Aaron are alluded to, and Muhammed hurries on to introduce a new personality in the figure of the prophet Elijah.<sup>19</sup> The citation of this man in the *Qorān* has another interest for us, as the worship of Ba'al is mentioned in connection with his name.<sup>20</sup> There can be no doubt, that Muhammed's acquaintance with the history of Elijah could only have come from Jewish sources, as *ba'l* in Arabic is only known in its original meaning of husband.

It is rather confusing to find in this part a few verses devoted to Lot and his wife,<sup>21</sup> but Muhammed had another new person to introduce, *viz.*, Jonah. We read about his adventures on the ship, his being swallowed by a fish, his illness,<sup>22</sup> his gourd, and his mission to hundred thousand<sup>23</sup> people who are saved from destruction by embracing the true faith. — A general feature to be noted in the latter part of the *sūra* is the refrain which terminates the account of each messenger in the words: Peace be upon N. N.,<sup>24</sup> etc., which at the end of the *sūra* is repeated in a more comprehensive manner thus: Peace be upon the messengers, and praise to Allāh, the Lord of the worlds.

<sup>15</sup> Cf. v. 51 and xlv. 34 opposed to v. 56; see Ch. III.

<sup>16</sup> The passage is one of the two expressing the *Dīkr*, see Ch. II.

<sup>17</sup> The anecdote is reported in full by Geiger, l. c. p. 122 sqq. — Moslim theologians of the Zahirite school (see Goldziher, *die Zahiriten*, p. 116 sqq.), which interprets the *Qorān* strictly according to its literal sense, are greatly concerned about several apparently sinful sayings and doings of Biblical persons. Ibn Hāzīm, therefore, takes the trouble to remove these difficulties. Abraham, he points out, made several misstatements, *viz.*, S. xxxvii. 87; vi. 73; xxi. 64, to which Ibn Hāzīm adds Abraham's statement that Sarah was his sister. The last statement does not occur in the *Qorān*, but Ibn Hāzīm must have learnt it from a private source, which did not reveal him Gen. xx. 12. As a consequence of his rigid method of exegesis Ibn Hāzīm's explanations are rather hair-splitting. In a similar manner he treats Adam's disobedience, Noah's error (S. xi. 47), and Lot's impious remark (S. xi. 80). The untruth Joseph's brothers told their father (S. xii. 8 to 18) is dismissed with the declaration that they were not prophets. In the same way Ibn Hāzīm speaks of the transgressions ascribed to Moses, Jonas, David and Solomon (fol. 323<sup>vo</sup> to 333<sup>vo</sup>).

<sup>18</sup> This son is not Isaac but Ismael, as the former is mentioned, v. 112 sq.

<sup>19</sup> Mentioned only once more (vi. 85).

<sup>20</sup> Baghawi *هو اسم من لهم كانوا يعبدونه لذلك سميت مدنيهم بعلمك قال مجاهد عكرمة وقناة* . In the *Qorān* itself *بعلم* occurs several times in its original meaning husband (pl. *بعولة*), li. 228; xxiv. 31. *Sūra xi. 75* *وهذا بعلي شخفا*, however, seems to be translation of (Gen. xviii. 12) *The assertion of Al Baghawi that بعلي means in the dialect of Yaman master is of no consequence, as the original meaning of this word had then already undergone great transformation.*

<sup>21</sup> V. 135 is exactly like xxvi. 171. The wife is not mentioned any more.

<sup>22</sup> *Ibid.* v. 11, "twelve myriads."

<sup>23</sup> Jonah iv. 8, *עשרה*.

<sup>24</sup> Vv. 109, 120, 130, 181.



Of very similar construction is *Sūra* xlv. The "Book" was sent down in "a blessed night."<sup>25</sup> Then follows a rhapsody ending with the words: There is no Allāh beside Him;<sup>26</sup> He quickens and kills, (He is) your Lord and the Lord of your fathers.<sup>27</sup> — The reproach that Muhammed is only "a trained madman" (v. 13), is refuted by the reproduction of a story of Pharaoh to whom "a noble messenger" came who was in fear of being stoned (v. 19). This is evidently a reflex of Exod. viii. 26. Then follows the rescue of the Banū Israel "whom we have chosen"<sup>28</sup> on account of our knowledge of the worlds (v. 31), and gave them the signs." — The objection raised by Meccans that man dies only once, is met by reminding them of the fate of the people of Tobba,<sup>29</sup> whose history was sufficiently known in Arabia. — The address is then concluded by a description of hell, particularly of the tree Zaqqūm, which is in so far significant, as it is mentioned in two preceding addresses.<sup>30</sup>

I here add *Sūra* xxxviii., the revelation of which, according to some commentators, stands in close connection with the conversion of Omar.<sup>31</sup> V. 5 evidently refers to the final seclusion of the Qoreish<sup>32</sup> who remonstrated that so complete a repudiation of every polytheistic relic<sup>33</sup> was unheard of in "the last religion."<sup>34</sup> This paves the way for the argument that also the people of Noah, 'Ād, and Pharaoh ("the man of the stakes") had refused to become believers, as well as the Thamūd, the people of Lōt, and of Al Aika.<sup>35</sup> Quite a new personality is introduced in "our servant David, the man of power." The mountains and birds which praise (Allāh) with him are reflexes of verses like Ps. xvi. 11 to 12, cxviii. 8, etc. The fable related in 2 Sam. xii. 1 to 6 is reproduced by Muhammed in the light of a real incident, but is evidently confounded with 1 K. iii. 27. Another novelty is the introduction of Solomon, whose love for horses (1 K. x. 28) is hinted at, as well as his predilections for enjoyments as shown in Eccles. Ch. ii. The building of the Temple remains unnoticed, although Muhammed, a little later, alludes to his nightly journey to the same, but the rabbinical legends of Solomon's rejection, repentance, and his dominion over spirits are touched upon, being more entertaining.

New likewise is "my servant Job" (*cf.* Job xlii. 7 to 8) who is told by God to stamp with his foot, and a spring gushing forth from the ground should cure him of his disease. There exists no Biblical or rabbinical equivalent for this, but I believe Muhammed had the story of Na'amān, whose leprosy was cured by bathing in the Jordan, in his mind (2 K. v. 10 to 14). An allusion to this was in so far very appropriate, as the Syrian general had been under the impression that the prophet Elisha (mentioned below) would apply a charm to free him from his disease, and the confusion of the two cases is therefore probable. Subsequently we meet "our servants" Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Ismael and Elisha. Who *Dul-Kif*<sup>36</sup> may be, cannot be made out. The name owes its origin apparently to some misreading on the part of Muhammed of which we have had several instances.

The lecture ends in a sermon on the paradise, "the day of reckoning"<sup>40</sup> and hell. The verses which follow are of special interest; I therefore give the translation.

v. 65. Say: I am only a warner, and there is no God beside Allāh,<sup>41</sup> the One, the Victorious.

<sup>25</sup> *Cf.* xvii. 1. فِي لَيْلَةِ الْقَدْرِ.

<sup>26</sup> See Ch. II.

<sup>27</sup> Adaptation of Hebrew *Elohim* *we'ishē abhōthēnū*.

<sup>28</sup> See Ch. II. and S. xxxv. 29.

<sup>29</sup> Only once more, viz., l. 13.

<sup>30</sup> lvi. 52; xxxvii. 60.

<sup>31</sup> Sprenger, II. 23, where the traditions are reproduced. I. Ish. p. 279 refers to the death of Abū Tālib.

<sup>32</sup> "The aristocracy severed themselves from them and said: Go, confide in your gods, etc."

<sup>33</sup> This is meant by v. 6. Sprenger, II. 94 (rom.), refers the multiplicity in *ألهانكم* to angels. The word *أله* is used here for the first time; see above p. 16.

<sup>34</sup> Palmer: "in any other sect" has completely missed the sense of the phrase.

<sup>35</sup> *أحزاب* Sprenger, I. p. 471, rightly compares the word with Hebr. *צור*

<sup>36</sup> *Cf.* Geiger, l. c. p. 183.

<sup>37</sup> S. xvii. 1.

<sup>38</sup> Geiger, l. c. p. 188.

<sup>39</sup> See above and S. xxi. 85. Sprenger, II. p. 270, gives him a Yemenian origin. It is, however, to be observed that also Pharaoh is styled *ذو الأوتار*, and Noah *ذو النون* (xxi. 87).

<sup>40</sup> Occurs three times in the *sūras*, viz., v. 15, 25, 53.

يَوْمَ مَنَ إِلَهَ الْإِلَهِ



66. The Lord of the heavens and the earth, and what is between them, the Mighty, the Forgiving.  
 67. Say: It is a grand story, (68) but ye turn from it.  
 69. I had no knowledge of the exalted chiefs when they contended.<sup>42</sup>

Now the last verse contains a bold statement. Muhammed pretends to have been till then unacquainted with a discussion which took place between the heavenly hosts concerning the creation of man. What he really did know was a rabbinical legend on this subject, connected with Gen. i. 26 ("let us make"), but he did not reveal it fully until a Medinian sermon (ii. 28).<sup>43</sup> In this place he confines himself to reproduce, in Biblical terms,<sup>44</sup> the divine intention of creating man, to which he adds the rabbinical tradition that Adam being superior to the angels, the latter had been ordered to pay homage to him. Satan, however, refused to do so, and was cursed and banished. In conclusion Muhammed found it necessary to repeat that, like previous prophets, he asked no reward for his ministry, nor was he prompted by mercenary motives. This assertion, which no one will deny, was meant to place him in contrast to professional sooth-sayers, and could not but be useful to him.

We now come to a batch of *sûras*, which are distinguished by certain features which they have in common. They have no declamatory prologue, and the refrain, which marks the paragraphs, is also missing. Finally they all begin with reference to the "Signs of the Book and a manifest Qorân."<sup>45</sup> Of these revelations I mention first *Sûra* xxvii. 4 to 59, in which the refrain has not been omitted entirely, but is visibly disappearing.<sup>46</sup> After a short introduction of irrelevant character we hear quite a new story, viz., Moses' vision of the burning bush. He is instructed how to perform the two signs, which shall be among the "nine Signs" (to be shown) to Pharaoh and his people" (v. 12). Subsequently David is mentioned, then Solomon, who informed mankind that he had received the power of understanding the speech of the birds (v. 16). In the same sermon the speaker inserted the history of Solomon's meeting with the Queen of Sheba in legendary form, which in the following generations has developed into a beautiful fairy tale. It is interesting to observe that Muhammed puts the formula of Unification into the mouth of the hoopoe.<sup>47</sup> A few verses later we come across the formula which Muhammed subsequently placed at the head of all documents, and which also stands at the beginning of each *sûra*, and since heads every book or document written by Moslems. — To this story are attached short accounts repeating the missions of Šālih, the prophet of Thamûd, and of Lot.<sup>48</sup>

*Sûra* xxviii. having no other beginning than the verse mentioned above, at once proceeds to relate the history of Moses. Pharaoh (v. 2) is charged with oppressing the inhabitants of the earth by slaying their sons and outraging their daughters; he and his adviser Hamân must therefore be punished. Moses' mother is advised by Allāh to nurse her child, and if she fears for his safety, to throw him into the sea without any misgivings. Pharaoh's men find him in the water, but his wife takes great liking to the boy, and persuades the king to adopt him

<sup>42</sup> Sprenger, II. 240, regards v. 68 to 70 as belonging to the time when the mentor had disappeared; cf. p. 356.

<sup>43</sup> Bagh. *يعنى فى شأن ادم عم حين قال الله نع انى جاعل فى الارض خليفة قالوا اتجعل فيها* من يفسد فيها. See *E'rshith Rabbâ* to Gen. i. 26.

<sup>44</sup> V. 82, *ففتحت فيه من روحى*; cf. (S. xv. 29 and) Gen. ii. 7.

<sup>45</sup> Cf. above.

<sup>46</sup> Only v. 14 (not after v. 45), 52; v. 33 is an echo of xvi. 7. V. 60-95 form an independent address, beginning, and ending with *الحمد لله*.

<sup>47</sup> Confused with the ten plagues which are called *موت*. Exod. vii. 3; x. 1.

<sup>48</sup> V. 28, *لا اله الا هو*. The words *رب العرش العظيم* evidently form an intentional contrast to v. 28, *رلها عرش عظيم*.

<sup>49</sup> V. 69 *هز*. I believe this piece forms a separate *sûra* belonging to the descriptive period, cf. 101.



Moses' mother is well pleased, and appoints her daughter to look after the boy, Mahammed evidently forgetting that the latter was already with the royal couple. The child refusing to be fed by a native woman,<sup>50</sup> his sister offers to find a place where he could be reared, and subsequently he is sent to his mother's house. He grows up, and kills the Egyptian, but repents his transgression (6 to 16). The next verses (17 to 18) read almost like a translation of Exod. ii. 13 to 14. An unknown man from "the remotest end of the city" warns Moses against the danger which threatens his life. Afterwards there is a great confusion in the narrative. Moses flees, and meets two women whom he assists in watering their flocks. These are not only confounded with Lét's two daughters,<sup>51</sup> but also with those of Laban, since the father of the two girls, whom he had assisted, offers him one in marriage on the condition, that he serves him eight or ten years. Then follows the vision of the burning bush, and Moses receives his call (v. 29 to 35). Pharaoh's command to Hámán to build him a tower<sup>52</sup> on which he could ascend to Moses' God is evidently a reflex of Gen. xi. 4, Isaiah xiv. 13, and perhaps also Esther v. 14.

In none of the preceding accounts of Moses' mission was allusion made to the revelation on Sinai. This does not seem to be accidental, since Mahammed was well acquainted with its history, but reserved it for use on another occasion. An opportunity soon arose for alluding to the scene,<sup>53</sup> but he did not reproduce the Biblical tale, because, to judge from v. 43,<sup>54</sup> several Meccans knew it already, and wished him to arrange a similar ceremony. Being unable to comply with the demand, he at least gave a clever answer, asking whether Moses himself had not met with disbelief.

Now in contradiction to earlier theories concerning man's own responsibility, we read here among observations attached to the story in question that "Alláh does not guide the wicked."<sup>55</sup> This maxim subsequently gained preponderance over the other, and was adopted by the orthodox school. The long sermon of contemplative character, which then follows — and in which the Creed is repeated twice<sup>56</sup> — is broken only by a remark on Qūrah's rebellion, and the fabulous wealth attributed to him by the Talmudical tradition.<sup>57</sup>

It would be both irksome and unnecessary to analyse every *sūra* which belongs to this group, and we must therefore be content to draw the main features of each. *Sūra* xv. repeats after a homiletic introduction the story of the disobedience of Iblis (Satan, 28 to 50), and then proceeds to relate the visit of the angels to Abraham (51 to 77). After this the people of Al Aika are briefly mentioned (78 to 79), and the "people of Al Híjr," viz., the Thamūd, whose sepulchral caves<sup>58</sup> (v. 82) Muhammed mistook for houses (80 to 86). A short sermon closes the *sūra*.<sup>59</sup>

A visible effect must have been produced on the hearers by these tales, which not only increased Muhammed's eagerness to recite them, but also induced him to arrange them more carefully for this purpose. Nor did he fail to prepare his hearers for an extraordinary treat, when the story they were going to be told, promised to be of unusual interest. Now an incident had occurred which spurred Muhammed to show his histrionic talent in its best light. Tradition relates that Al Nadhr b. Hārith, one of the Prophet's bitterest enemies, endeavoured to out rival Muhammed's stories by telling the Meccans the adventures of Persian heroes. Al-Nadhr himself, accompanied by Oqba b. Abu Mo'eit, were sent to Medina in order to make enquiries about Muhammed's prophetic powers of the Jewish Rabbis of this town. The latter

<sup>50</sup> Cf. Geiger, l. c. p. 153.

<sup>51</sup> V. 23, *وَابَوْنَا شَيْخًا كَبِيرًا*, is evidently translation of Gen. xix. 31. Geiger overlooked the double confusion.

<sup>52</sup> Cf. xl. 38 to 39 more elaborate than v. xxviii. 38 and therefore probably later.

<sup>53</sup> V. 44 to 46.

<sup>54</sup> V. 48.

<sup>55</sup> V. 50 to 55; cf. Ch. III.

<sup>56</sup> V. 76 and 88.

<sup>57</sup> V. 76 to 79; cf. Geiger, l. c. p. 168.

<sup>58</sup> Cf. Doughty, *Notes et Faits*, xxix. p. 4 seq.

<sup>59</sup> V. 87, "seven of the mathāni;" cf. Geiger, l. c. p. 58. V. 98, *فَدْعُ*, invites to joining the preacher in prayer.



are said to have given the messengers certain queries to be put before Muhammed who replied by narrating the stories of the *Seven Sleepers of Ephesus*, contained in *Sûra* xviii.<sup>60</sup>

However sceptical our attitude may be towards this tradition, thus much is true, that Muhammed was somewhat downhearted, when he began this sermon. "Haply, he says (v. 5), thou grievest thyself to death<sup>61</sup> after them, if they believe not in this (following) communication." It is very probable that the rivalry of Al Nadhr in entertaining his followers with the attractive tales of daring deeds made his spirits sink. The story of the *Seven Sleepers* (v. 8 to 25) which he related, was by its miraculous character not only calculated to outdo tales of the most perilous adventures, but was introduced by the words of Allâh (v. 12) "We relate unto thee their story in truth." A homily attached to the tale takes the form of two parables.<sup>62</sup> The following piece (v. 48 to 58), recapitulating the disobedience of Iblis, is perhaps directed against Al Nadhr, especially the second part of v. 48.<sup>63</sup> The fabulous journey of Moses and his servant (v. 59 to 81) which then follows, is, I believe, based on that of Tobias, interwoven with anecdotes heard elsewhere. The series of tales ends with an account of the journey of the "Two Horned," generally supposed to be Alexander the Great,<sup>64</sup> who is requested by a people of strange speech to protect them against the encroachments of Jâjûj and Mâjûj.<sup>65</sup>

The finest and best rounded tale in the whole book is the recitation styled "Yâsuf," which fills out *Sûra* xii.<sup>66</sup> Muhammed begins with the reference, quoted above, to "the Sign of the distinct Book," and proceeds again: We will relate to thee the finest of stories<sup>67</sup> with which we reveal to thee this *Qorân*. The harmony of the composition is, however, impaired by the daring assertion (v. 103).

"This is one of the stories of the unseen which we inspire thee with, though thou wert not with them when they agreed in their affair, when they were so crafty — and yet most men, though thou shouldst be urgent, will not believe." — Another new tale, the birth of Jesus, is related in *Sûra* xix. Muhammed tells of nothing but the nativity, because he regards the Founder of Christianity in the light of a monotheistic prophet alone, and quotes only such teachings as relate to his mission as a servant of God. He is in possession of "the Book." He is a blessed prophet, charged to teach the propriety of praying, giving alms, honoring parents, and the hatred of oppression. On e cannot fail to be struck with the careful manner in which Muhammed weighed each word when lecturing on this delicate subject, and we have here the best opportunity of noticing, how conclusions may be drawn from things which he left unsaid as well as from those which he said. Vv. 34 to 36 show<sup>68</sup> clearly the attitude he adopted towards the New Testament. In v. 38 he speaks of the various sects and their differences.<sup>69</sup>

The story of Jesus being rather short, Muhammed reverts to the history of the Patriarchs Moses, Aaron, Ismael (v. 55), Idris<sup>71</sup> (v. 57), Noah, and "his descendants Abraham and Israel."<sup>72</sup>

<sup>60</sup> See J. Q. R. Vol. X. p. 100 sqq. <sup>61</sup> Cf. S. xxvi. 2. <sup>62</sup> See Ch. VIII. <sup>63</sup> "They are foes of yours," etc.

<sup>64</sup> Geiger, l. c. p. 171, confesses that he is unable to discover the source of the story. It is to be remembered that Moses bears in Talmudical tradition the name of Tobias (*Sôta*, fol. 12<sup>vo</sup>). According to Itqân, p. 793, the *Mûsa* of this story is not identical with the Biblical Moses, but is a son of Manasse, which is evidently confused with Exod. vi. 19. — There is another explanation possible. According to a Rabbinic legend, R. Joshua b. Levi, a famous Talmudical authority, meets the Prophet Elijah, who journeys with him through paradise and hell. In a parallel Moalim tradition by Al Bokhârî (ed. Krehl, III. p. 276) Moses and Joshua b. Nûn meet Al Khidr (the prophet Elijah), who advises them on their journey. Now while the Rabbinic legend is focussed round the person of a Rabbi (who from a collector of legendary traditions became their hero), the Moalim counterpart of the same tale clung to the better known Biblical Joshua, whose master Moses became the chief person concerned in the legend.

<sup>65</sup> Nöldeke, l. c. p. 106, seems to have given the right explanation of the name.

<sup>66</sup> Gen. x. 2; Ex. xxxviii. 2; xxxix. 6.

<sup>67</sup> Cf. S. vii. 99, iv. 3 sqq. Josef gives his fellow prisoners a lecture on Islâm.

<sup>68</sup> V. 34 refers to the resurrection of all flesh in Messianic times, or Muhammed would have stated otherwise.

<sup>69</sup> Cf. I. Ish. 200 sq., and S. xliii. 57 to 59.

<sup>70</sup> Cf. xliii. 65; fuller definition of *أحزاب* is given in xxxviii. 12, xl. 5.

<sup>71</sup> For the etymology of the name see Geiger, l. c. p. 106, Itqân, 792.

<sup>72</sup> V. 59; Gen. xxiii. 28 was evidently not known to Muhammed.

<sup>67</sup> V. 2, "Arabic Qorân."



A conspicuous feature of this *sūra* is the employment of the term *AlRaḥmān* for *Allāh* no less than *eighteen* times. Sprenger is of opinion that the term stands for Christ. This is however, impossible, since Maryam herself places her hope in *Al Raḥmān* before Jesus is born (v. 18). Besides most of the passages in which that name occurs treat of other prophets.

If the Syrian Christians employed *raḥmānā* for Jesus, they did the same as the Jews did in speaking of God. *Al Raḥmān* in the *Qurān* is therefore nothing but a synonym for *Allāh* or *Al Rabb*.<sup>73</sup> As long as Muhammed lived in Mecca he treated the name *ʿĪsā* (Jesus) as one belonging to an ordinary mortal, and it was only when he came to Medina, and had nothing more to fear, that he substituted *Al Masih*<sup>74</sup> for it. On the other hand *Al Raḥmān* is scarcely used at all after the *narrative period*, since it is rare in the descriptive group. In Medianian revelations it is only mentioned twice (ii. 158, lix. 22); both times in the earlier revelations of this epoch, and used as an attribute in the Creed, and not as name at all.<sup>75</sup> Muhammed explains this clearly in *Sūra* xvii. 110, where he characterizes *Al Raḥmān* as another word for *Allāh*, because the Meccans had charged him with adoring two gods.<sup>76</sup> In another place *Al Raḥmān* is identified with *Huwa* (xiii. 29), and cannot therefore be due to Christian influence at all.

Muhammed could not conclude this sermon without referring to the doctrine of the fatherhood of *Al Raḥmān* (v. 91 to 93).

The brief account of Jesus given in *Sūra* xix. is supplemented in *Sūra* xliii. 14 to 15,<sup>77</sup> but in a rather antagonistic spirit. Subsequently Abraham and Moses are quoted as examples of true servants of *Allāh*, after which the discussion on Jesus<sup>78</sup> is resumed.

Very similar to the preceding two *sūras* is *Sūra* xxi. both as regards matter and composition. The chief subject of discussion is the Unity of *Allāh* which Muhammed, as intimated above, endeavours to demonstrate by way of syllogism. V. 23, "He shall not be questioned concerning what He does, but they shall be questioned," is a reflex of Job ix. 12 (Eccl. viii. 4) a verse made popular through insertion into a Jewish prayer<sup>79</sup> for the Day of Atonement. V. 25 we have mentioned as one of the early attempts to formulate the Creed; v. 26 re-echoes the verse xliii. 59,<sup>81</sup> v. 27 ("they do not speak until He speaks, but at His bidding do they act") is a distinct reflex of Ps. ciii. 20 to 21. The whole passage together with the words "they shrink through fear" (v. 29) may be borrowed from the Jewish morning prayers preceding the reading of the *Shema*, since there can hardly be any doubt, that the Jews in the Hijāz recited the same every day. In spite of these purely theological observations, to which may be added the denial of man's immortality (35 to 36),<sup>82</sup> the narrative character of the *sūra* is maintained in the second half. Moses and Aaron are briefly stated to have received the *Furqān* (v. 49). This word which occurs here for the first time, stands for *Tōrah*, as it does in all Medianian revelations, excepting *S. viii. 42* where it maintains its Aramaic meaning "victory."<sup>83</sup> Muhammed evidently confounded the latter signification with that of *Perāqim* into which the Pentateuch was divided for liturgical purposes, and which also guided the interpretations given to the word by the Moslim Commentators.<sup>84</sup> The rest of the *sūra* is taken up with tales of Abraham and other Biblical characters. In v. 105 Muhammed shows his acquaintance with the Psalms by quoting Ps. xxxvii. 29.<sup>85</sup>

<sup>73</sup> Cf. iv. 1 = xvi. 1 to 2; see Ch. VI. and XVII. 110.

<sup>74</sup> Cf. iii. 40: المسيح عيسى.

<sup>75</sup> The tradition on Muhammed's prayer: O *Allāh*, O *Raḥmān*; see Sprenger, II. p. 260.

<sup>76</sup> See the Commentaries.

<sup>77</sup> See Ch. VIII.

<sup>78</sup> On *ʿĪsā* (v. 61) see the Commentaries and *S. iii. 52*, where Jesus is compared to Adam.

<sup>79</sup> Cf. xliii. 58; see Ch. II. p. 23.

<sup>80</sup> Ne'ed.

<sup>81</sup> See above and *S. xix. 96, 91, 93.*

<sup>82</sup> See v. 8 and *S. xxix. 57.*

<sup>83</sup> Geiger, p. 56, only records the Aramaic interpretation of the word.

<sup>84</sup> Cf. *S. xvii. 107*, *وَقَرَأْنَا فُرْقَانًا*; the resemblance is more noticeable in the spelling than in the pronunciation.

<sup>85</sup> See Sprenger, II. p. 196 (misprint for Ps. xxxvii. 29) and *S. xxi. 105*. The Hebrew text has not "qaddāq" but qaddiqim.



The foregoing *sūra* is a fine example of Muhammed's endeavours to relieve the monotony of narrative sermons by introducing meditations on all sorts of subjects. The same policy is observed in *Sūra* xiv., which begins with the remark that no messenger is dispatched except he speak the language of his own people (v. 4). This is a variation of the phrase "*Arabic Qorān*" usually employed. Another and still more noteworthy feature of the *sūra* is that it is rich in parables,<sup>87</sup> which are of Jewish, and indirectly of Biblical, origin. The merely narrative element in the address offers nothing new, except that Abraham prayed to Allāh to make "his house (Mecca)" safe (v. 40).

*Sūra* xx. is more drawn out. It begins with a very detailed account of the message of Moses, which is in so far of interest, as the Israelites are reminded of the covenant received "on the right side of the mountain" as well as of the Mannah and quails.<sup>88</sup> The description of Allāh as "Living and Eternal (*alḥayyu alqayyūmu*)"<sup>89</sup> is new. An account of Adam's sin and forgiveness with the admonition belonging to it close the *sūra*.

*Sūra* xi. commences with a sermon in which the speaker alludes to the creation of heaven and earth in six days,<sup>90</sup> and "His throne upon the water" (v. 9). Now it appears that one circumstance mentioned above, *viz.*, that the stories relating to one and the same person were rich in variations, had given rise to the suspicion that Muhammed took liberties with the facts. This reproach he endeavours to refute in v. 15: "Haply thou art leaving part of what is revealed to thee and thy breast is straitened thereby, lest they should say: why is not a treasure sent down to him? or why did not an angel come with him? thou art only a warner, and Allāh is guardian over all.—16. Or they will say: he has devised it. Speak: *Bring ten Sūrahs* like it devised, and call upon whom ye can beside Allāh, if you do tell the truth, etc."<sup>91</sup>

This challenge we have already discussed, as also the theological dogma derived from it.<sup>92</sup> A rather stale parable (v. 26)<sup>93</sup> closes the homiletic part of the *sūra*, which then becomes broadly narrative, and takes its name from the first prophet mentioned in it, *viz.*, Hūd. His story (52 to 63) is followed by that of Sāliḥ (64 to 71), Abraham and Lot (72 to 84), Shu'ayb (85 to 98), and Moses (99 to 112). A feeble attempt at a refrain is made by repeating the admonition placed at the beginning (v. 3): "Ask pardon of your Lord, then return to Him" three times.<sup>94</sup> This is a proof of the unity of the *sūra*. At the conclusion Muhammed receives the assurance that all these stories had been revealed to him in order to strengthen his heart (v. 121).

In the following *sūras* the narrative element is visibly on the decline. To these belongs *S. xxxiv.* in which only the first portion (v. 1 to 20) contains references to Biblical persons and is otherwise partly descriptive, partly homiletic.

Several portions, of which *Sūra* vii. is composed, belong to the latest revelations of this period, and are only welded together by a common rhyme. The usual introduction calculated to attract the attention of the hearers contains the phrase (v. 6): "Now let us narrate to them the Meccans' knowledge, for we (Allāh) were not absent." In a mixture of narrative and descriptive style the creation of the earth and man is touched upon, followed by a repetition

<sup>87</sup> V. 4; see the Commentaries and traditions.

<sup>88</sup> See Ch. VIII.

<sup>89</sup> Muhammed uses the Biblical terms, see I. Ish. 368. The explanations of *الحيّ*, given by the Commentators, are wrong.

<sup>90</sup> This is, perhaps, a proof that the Arab Jews pronounced *qayyūm*.

<sup>91</sup> The phrase *في ستة أيام* occurs in the following passages: vii. 52, x. 3, xi. 9, xiv. 60, xxxiii. 3, l. 37, lvii. 4.

<sup>92</sup> Cf. Bagh. *أثبت بقرآن غير هذا ليس فيه سب البتة* ان يدع آلهم ظاهراً.

<sup>93</sup> Known in Moslim theology as *أعجاز*; cf. Ch. I. p. 17.

<sup>94</sup> V. 26; see Ch. VIII.

<sup>95</sup> V. 54, 64, 92; v. 114 is not exactly the same.





of the fall and expulsion of Adam and his wife from paradise (1 to 24). This gives an opportunity of apostrophising the "sons of Adam"<sup>95</sup> into paragraphs of exhortative character with reference to their past life. The middle portion of the *sūra* contains a succession of tales dealing with Hūd, Šālīḥ, Lot and Shoeib (v. 57 to 100), and closes with the repeated assurance that the knowledge of all this is of divine origin. After this, and evidently belonging to the same piece,<sup>96</sup> follows a long account of the mission of Moses. It is interesting to note that Muhammed mentions five plagues or "Signs" (v. 130), viz., the flood (either confounded with that of Noah, or the drowning the Egyptian army), locusts, lice, frogs, and blood. Muhammed's information on this subject was, however, so deficient, that later on<sup>97</sup> he confused them with the "nine and manifest Signs," which Moses performed before Pharaoh. Otherwise the narrative closely follows the lines of the Biblical original.<sup>98</sup> The piece comprehending v. 186 to 205 being an independent homily on the "Hour," and stated to have formed one of Muhammed's answers to Al Nadhr b. Al Hārith,<sup>99</sup> was probably placed here on account of v. 194 being similar to v. 178. The sermon to which the latter belongs is, however, Medinian.<sup>100</sup> It contains a historical, outline of the evolution of man from one pair and the child born to them. The words of v. 189 "they called on Allāh, their Lord" recall Gen. xxv. 21 to 22.<sup>1</sup> V. 198: "Endeavour to pardon command that which is merciful, and shun the ignorant" represent the first attempt to formulate a sentence, and this became subsequently of great importance both in theology and jurisprudence.<sup>2</sup> V. 204 has some slight resemblance to Deut. v. 5 to 7, whilst the last three words, of the *sūra* also recall a phrase of the Jewish prayer book.<sup>3</sup>

Apart from the first vision of Muhammed (spoken of in Ch. III.) he now tells of a second, namely, his nightly journey to the Temple in Jerusalem, which under the name *al-mi'raj*<sup>4</sup> has become famous in Moslim tradition. This forms the beginning of *Sūra* xvii. which was, I believe, very short originally, and only assumed its present bulk through the insertion of large pieces belonging to the following Meccan periods. The mention of the Temple in Jerusalem (v. 1) gives Muhammed an opportunity of surveying briefly the two chief phases of the Israelitish history (v. 2 to 8). The concluding part of the *sūra* (v. 103 to 111) is narrative, although entirely disconnected from the first piece, whilst several words in v. 106 running parallel to v. 7 and v. 108 to v. 5 show the reason why these two pieces were put in one *sūra*. Here is to be placed *Sūra* lxxiii. 15 to 19.<sup>5</sup> According to the Commentators v. 110 (of S. xvii.) was misconstrued by the infidels into a charge of dualism.<sup>6</sup> This suggested the revelation of the doctrine that "the most beautiful names" were those of Allāh (*ibid.*), of which the legend counts not less than ninety-nine beside "Allāh."

*Sūra* xl. is of equally compound character, the portions 1 to 6, 24 to 35, 38 to 59 being narrative.<sup>7</sup> Pharaoh is here not represented as a historical figure at all, but stands as the prototype of a wicked and daring person, combining the characteristics of Nimrod and Nebuchadnezzar. The verses 36 to 37 stand for themselves to represent Joseph as a prophet, thus supplementing *Sūra* xii. in a very important omission. The prophetship of Joseph is evidently an afterthought, as through the romantic character of his history Muhammed had neglected to stamp him as a prophet.<sup>8</sup> For the rest of the *sūra* see below.<sup>9</sup>

<sup>95</sup> V. 25, 26; v. 29 and 33 are younger and only placed here on account of the same beginning.

<sup>96</sup> V. 101 <sup>قُلْ</sup>.

<sup>97</sup> xvii. 103; cf. xxvii. 12.

<sup>98</sup> V. 154 = Exod. xviii. 25 (together with Numb. xi. 24) <sup>وَأَخْلَا</sup>.

<sup>99</sup> See above. <sup>100</sup> See below.

<sup>1</sup> See Palmer, I. p. 161, rem.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. *Metāqif*.

<sup>3</sup> Bend the knee and prostrate and give thanks.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. *Mishkāt* and Sprenger, II. 527 sq.

<sup>5</sup> The verses treat also of Pharaoh; cf. v. 18 <sup>كَانَ وَعْدًا مَقْضًى</sup>.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. Nöldeke, Q. p. 114.

<sup>7</sup> The phrase "O my people," v. 30, 31, 34 and again vv. 41, 42, 44.

<sup>8</sup> Joseph's prophetship, which distinguishes him from his brothers, is made the object of discussion by Ibn Harm, fol. 3.

<sup>9</sup> V. 68 sqq., an independent sermon beginning with <sup>قُلْ</sup>, but placed here on account of <sup>رَبِّ الْعَالَمِينَ</sup>, v. 66 and 67.



To the same period also belongs *Sūra* xxix. 13 to 42.<sup>10</sup> From the reappearance of Pharaoh with Hāmān we may conclude that the speech in question was revealed almost simultaneously with the corresponding portion of *Sūra* xl. A fine parable breaks the sameness of the topics.<sup>11</sup> V. 47 contains the famous assertion that prior to his ministry Muhammed had been unable to read and write.<sup>12</sup>

The second and smallest portion of *Sūra* x., recapitulating the missions of Noah, Moses and Jonah, shows an attempt at chronological order, which is repeated in *S.* xxiii. 23 to 52 with Noah, Abraham, and Moses. The piece was inserted here on account of *alfulk* ("ships," v. 27; cf. v. 22).

I have to mention here several pieces of narrative character which the compilers have inserted into Medinian *sūras*, but which undoubtedly are of Meccan origin. It is improbable *a priori* that Muhammed should have revealed new discourses in Medina on the old topics recited during the service in the Meccan *sūras*, besides which the ministry of Muhammed was of more practical nature, and it is unlikely that he would have returned to these tales. The style is the same as in the other narrative *sūras*. These pieces are xl. 20 to 35 on 'Ād and Moses, and ii. 200 to 210 without reference to any particular person.

An isolated narrative speech we find inserted in *Sūra* v., which is of Meccan origin in spite of the place allotted to it by the compilers (v. 23 to 38). It consists of two parts, the former (v. 23 to 29) giving a condensed account of Numb. Ch. xiii. to xiv. 34. The second (v. 30 to 35) reproduces Gen. iv. 2 to 9 with the agadic already exposed by Geiger, who also discloses the source of v. 35. The next three represent probably the moral drawn from the foregoing tales, and are meant to impress Meccan foes. The punishments threatened were not executed in Medina, but they had only to choose between conversion and execution.

It was the narrative period of the *Qorān* which, as I believe, gave birth to the short *sūra* which heads the book and is known under the name *alfātiha*. It consists almost entirely of verses which occur frequently in revelations belonging to this period, and which Muhammed selected in order to form them into a short prayer. V. 1 is one of the two sentences which are used to invite the audience attending sermons to start praying,<sup>13</sup> and is found both at the beginning and at the end of many discourses. It is at the commencement of *Sūras* xviii., xxxiv., xxxv., and xxvii. 60 which evidently marks the beginning of a new speech. In the last named *sūra* the phrase also ends the sermon, as it does in *S.* xxxvii., xvii., and xl. 67 (end of a sermon) and xxxix. *Sūra* lii. 48 is a combination of both sentences used for the purpose, whilst *S.* x. 10 to 11 informs us that

10. Their prayer therein (in paradise) shall be celebrated by thy praises (*subhānaka*) oh Allāh, and their salutation shall be: Peace!

11. And the end of their prayer shall be: Praise to Allāh, the Lord of the worlds!

This is quite in accordance with the instances given in other places.

The verses 5 to 6 (of *Sūra* i.)<sup>14</sup> appear in *S.* xliii. 42, xi. 59, vii. 15; xlii. 52 to 53, etc. Now although it is very difficult to fix the date of the *sūra* with accuracy, that given to it by Nöldeke is evidently too early.<sup>15</sup>

(To be continued.)

<sup>10</sup> V. 1 to 12 legislative; cf. Ch. VII.

<sup>11</sup> Cf. Ch. VIII.

<sup>12</sup> Cf. Ch. I. p. 12.

<sup>13</sup> The other being *فَسَبِّحْ بِحَمْدِ رَبِّكَ*.

<sup>14</sup> Cf. Ps. xxv. ii. 11.

<sup>15</sup> Nöldeke, *Q.* p. 86 f.; Itqān, p. 54.



## NOTES ON AN ARCHÆOLOGICAL TOUR IN SOUTH BIHAR AND HAZĀRIBĀGH.

BY M. A. STEIN.

IN September, 1899, I applied to the Government of Bengal for permission to utilize the approaching Pūjā vacation for the purposes of a short archæological tour through portions of the Patna, Gayā and Hazāribāgh Districts. The main object I had in view was to acquaint myself personally with the most important of the ancient sites contained in this part of old Magadha and to test by their examination the materials available for the study of its ancient topography. In the course of my preliminary labours for a comprehensive account of the ancient geography of Northern India my interest had naturally been attracted towards Magadha, both on account of the historical importance of this territory and the detailed descriptions which the Chinese pilgrims have left us of its Buddhist *topographia sacra*. I therefore wished to use the first opportunity that offered to obtain that personal acquaintance with the actual localities and their extant remains, which previous experience elsewhere had shown me to be of no small advantage for researches of this kind. An additional reason for the proposed tour was that it offered a convenient opportunity to visit certain ancient remains previously unsurveyed in the Hazāribāgh District, upon which I had been asked to report to Government.

The proposal regarding my tour received the ready approval of Sir John Woodburn, K. C. S. I., Lieutenant-Governor of Bengal. The Local Government accordingly agreed to bear the travelling expenses connected with it and to make the services of a Sub-Overseer of the Public Works Department available for survey purposes. For the liberal assistance thus rendered to me I beg to record my grateful acknowledgment.

**Introductory.** — Owing to its wealth of ancient remains and the fullness and accuracy of the records left by the Buddhist pilgrims already alluded to, Magadha has since the days of Kittered received an exceptionally large share of attention on the part of those Indian Archæologists who have worked in the Gangetic Valley. As a result of their labours, and particularly of the extensive researches of General Cunningham, we possess more or less detailed descriptions of all sites, the identity of which with sacred localities mentioned in the Chinese itineraries has hitherto suggested itself, or which have otherwise attracted antiquarian notice. The fullest and on the whole most reliable of these accounts are due to General Cunningham, and, having been embodied in various volumes of his *Archæological Survey Reports*, are conveniently accessible for reference. In dealing with the sites visited by me I shall, therefore, be able to restrict my remarks to the points, which have a direct bearing on questions of ancient topography, and to those objects of archæological interest, which have either been left unnoticed or been insufficiently described in the above accounts.

I commenced my tour in Magadha on the 9th October at Nawadah, which, as a station on the newly-opened South-Bihar Railway and the headquarters of a sub-division of the Gayā District, formed a convenient starting point for a visit to the series of old localities ranged along and between the Rājgir chain of hills. Thanks to the kind attention of Mr. E. W. Oldham, C. S., Collector of the Gayā District, I found ample arrangements for transport awaiting my arrival and was hence able to march without delay to Giryek, at the eastern extremity of the Rājgir range.

**Giryek : Indrasailaguhā.** — The archæological interest of Giryek is due to the fact that the rugged hill rising immediately to the west of the village, can be shown beyond all doubt to be identical with the Indrasailaguhā mountain of Hiuen Tsiang and Fa-hian. It was sacred to Buddhist tradition as containing the cave in which Buddha had answered the forty-two questions of Indra, Lord of the Dēvas. This identification, first proposed by General Cunningham,<sup>1</sup> supplies useful evidence of the accuracy with which the indications of the Chinese pilgrims can be

<sup>1</sup> See *Archæological Survey Reports*, Vol. i. pp. 16 sqq. ; iii. pp. 145 sqq.



traced in this part of Magadha, wherever prominent natural features of the ground assist us in checking the distances and bearings recorded in their itineraries.

**Hsuen Tsiang**, whose account is, for these parts, throughout more detailed and exact than that of Fa-hian, places the hill "of the rock-cave of Indra" at a distance corresponding to about 10 miles south-east of **Nālanda**. "The summit has two peaks which rise up sharply and by themselves. On the south side of the western peak between the crags is a great stone house, wide but not high." On the top of the eastern peak was a monastery and before it a **Stūpa**, which, from a pious legend connected with the site, was called the **Hansa** or **Goose Stūpa**.<sup>2</sup> In **Fahian's** description, which, though far briefer, agrees in all essential points, the distance to the hill is reckoned as nine *yojanas* in a south-easterly direction from **Pāṭaliputra** or **Patna**.<sup>3</sup>

The distances and bearings indicated by the two pilgrims correspond closely to the actual position of **Giryek** relative to **Badgaon**, the undoubted site of **Nālanda**, and to the modern city of **Patna**. But more convincing proof for the correctness of General Cunningham's identification is obtained by an examination of the rocky spur in which the northern of the two parallel ranges known as the **Rājgir Hills** terminates opposite the village of **Giryek**. Ascending from the bed of the **Panchāna River**, which washes the eastern foot of the spur, an ancient walled-up road, still traceable in many places along the steep scarp, leads up to the ruined **Stūpa** known as "**Jarāsandha's seat** (**baithak**).<sup>4</sup> This structure, accurately described by General Cunningham, occupies a commanding position on the eastern end of the ridge, and is, notwithstanding its ruined condition, still visible from a considerable distance (see Fig. I.). About a hundred yards to the south-west of the **Stūpa** the ridge culminates in a small summit, which was undoubtedly occupied by buildings. The thickness of the thorny jungle, which covers the summit, did not permit a close inspection. But a broad flight of steps leading up to it from the **Stūpa** and massive terrace walls on the west can clearly be seen through the jungle. The position of these remains corresponds so closely to that indicated by **Hsuen Tsiang** for the **Stūpa** of the **Goose** and the **Vihāra** behind it, that their identity with the structures seen by the Chinese pilgrim can scarcely be doubted.

The ridge continuing further to the west gradually rises again and forms at a distance of about 400 yards a second summit covered with large rocks, many of which show flat tops and thus curiously resemble seats. It is possible that it was this natural feature, apparently not noticed in previous accounts, which suggested to the eyes of the pious "the traces on the top of the mountain ridge where the four former Buddhas sat and walked."<sup>4</sup>

**Indrasailaguhā**. — Descending from this point on the southern face of the ridge towards the valley which separates the two ranges of the **Rājgir Hills**, I reached the small cave known as **Gidhadvārī**, already fully described by General Cunningham. By position and appearance it corresponds exactly to the cave, which we find mentioned in **Hsuen Tsiang's** account as the scene of **Indra's** interrogation of **Buddha**. The cave itself shows no trace of human workmanship, but at its entrance, which is reached by scrambling over some precipitous ledges of rock, there is a small platform about 20 feet in length supported by a wall of old masonry. It is useful to note the total absence of any marks that this natural fissure in the rock was once a place of worship and pilgrimage. This observation may offer some assurance with regard to the identifications we shall have to propose for some other caves to be mentioned thereafter.

**Rājgir : Rājagṛha**. — From **Giryek** I marched on the 12th October along the northern foot of the hill-range to **Rājgir**, the ancient **Rājagṛha**, once the capital of **Magadha** and the site of many notable events connected with **Buddha** and his church. In view of the exceptional historical interest attaching to the locality, it is indeed fortunate that the survival of its ancient name in **Brahman** and **Jaina** tradition and in the modern form **Rājgir** has from the first assured its correct identification. But even if the old designation of the place had completely disappeared in

<sup>2</sup> *Si-yu-ki*, transl. Beal, ii. pp. 180 sqq.

<sup>3</sup> *Si-yu-ki*, transl. Beal, i. p. lviii.

<sup>4</sup> *Si-yu-ki*, ii. p. 181.



the course of a history reaching back over 2,500 years, we should find no difficulty in locating it. So detailed are the descriptions which the Chinese pilgrims have left us of the unalterable natural surroundings of the ancient capital, and so clearly marked their agreement with the position of Rājgir.

The modern village, to which the name Rājgir properly applies, is built on the site of the city which King Ajātasatru, Buddha's contemporary, had founded as his residence. This city was distinguished in the days of Fa-hian and Hiuen Tsiang as "the New Rājagṛha" from the far more ancient capital, originally known as Kuśāgārapura, which occupied the valley between the two parallel ranges of hills already mentioned, immediately south of the present village. Kuśāgārapura was a desolate waste of ruins even when Fa-hian visited its sacred spots about A. D. 400. But the five hills, which he describes as completely encircling the valley "like the walls of a city,"<sup>5</sup> and the lines of ramparts still traceable through the jungle, leave no possible doubt as to the position and extent of the old capital. The new site, too, to which Ajātasatru (circa. 5th Cent. B. C.) removed the royal residence, was destined to become deserted. From Hiuen Tsiang's record we learn that already King Aśoka changed the capital of Magadha to Pāṭaliputra and gave the city of Rājagṛha to the Brahmans. These were the sole inhabitants at the time of his visit (circa. A. D. 637), and as their number is given as only a thousand families, we see to what modest dimensions the "New City" had already then dwindled.<sup>6</sup>

**Tīrtha [of Rājgir].**—The mention of this Brahman population at Rājagṛha is a point which deserves special attention with regard to the historical topography of the place. It is easily explained by the fact that the site of Rājgir has, evidently since early times, borne the character of a Hindu Tīrtha. Even now a very considerable portion of the population of Rājgir consists of Brahman Purōhitas living on the pilgrims attracted to the place. The celebrity which Rājgir still enjoys, as a place of popular pilgrimage for Hindus of all sects and classes, is undoubtedly due to the numerous hot springs, which rise in and near the gorge leading from the north to the site of the "Old City," and which, like similar springs throughout India, are worshipped as special manifestations of the divine power. The full description, which Hiuen Tsiang gives of the numerous temples constructed around the springs and of their pilgrim visitors,<sup>7</sup> corresponds closely to the present appearance of the place. It shows plainly that apart from all Buddhist associations Rājagṛha was then, as now, a popular Tīrtha.

This fact, it appears to me, deserves more consideration than it has received hitherto. On the one hand it may explain to us the true reason for the presence of the numerous Jaina shrines which still crown the heights around the old Rājagṛha, for throughout India we find the local worship of the Jaina community attracted to places which Hinduism at large has invested with a sacred interest. On the other hand it must direct our attention to the extant *Māhātmya* of the Tīrtha as a useful source of information on the ancient topography of the place. My researches in Kashmir have shown me what valuable help can often be obtained for the study of the ancient local nomenclature by a critical examination of the *Māhātmyas* of particular Tīrthas.<sup>8</sup> The *Rājagṛhamāhātmya* now in use, which purports to be taken from the *Agnipurāṇa*,<sup>9</sup> may not be in itself a very old production. But the fact that it has preserved a series of local names, which can be proved from independent sources to be of genuine antiquity (e. g., the names of the hills *Vaibhāra* and *Vipula*, the name of *Rājagṛha* itself, etc.), indicates sufficiently that its evidence deserves consideration in studying the old topography of this part of Magadha.

**The Walls of "Old Rājagṛha."**—The importance of Rājagṛha as the ancient capital of the country is forcibly brought home to us by the wide extent of the ground over which its remains spread. The lines of ruined walls still traceable through the thick jungle of the central plain

<sup>5</sup> Si-yu-ki, i. p. lix.

<sup>6</sup> Si-yu-ki, ii. p. 167.

<sup>7</sup> Si-yu-ki, ii. pp. 155 sq.

<sup>8</sup> See my *Memoir of Maps illustrating the Ancient Geography of Kashmir*, J. A. S. B., 1899, pp. 46 sqq.

<sup>9</sup> It has been printed by Sāhib Prasad Singh Kharjavalīsa Press, Bankipur, 1898.



between the two hill-ranges indicate the site of the inner city of "Old Rājagṛha" or Kuśāgārapura, with a circuit of about five miles, as described by Fa-hian and Hiuen Tsiang. But outside this inner city we find the crests of the hills north and south crowned far away with walls of massive masonry, which undoubtedly belonged to a system of circumvallation intended to protect the capital. These lines of walls, rendered difficult of access by the rugged character of the hills and the thick jungle which covers their slopes, have not yet been properly surveyed. But the relative distances of the points, where their remains are easily distinguished and accordingly have been noted by General Cunningham and other observers, strongly support the correctness of the estimate of Hiuen Tsiang, who gives to the external defences of Kuśāgārapura a circuit of about 150 li or 30 miles.<sup>10</sup>

Within the area enclosed by the hills which gave to old Rājagṛha the characteristic epithet of Girivraja, "the mountain-girt city," all was "desolate and without inhabitants" already in the days of Fa-hian. This accounts largely for the scantiness of ancient structural remains now visible above ground, and the difficulty we consequently experience in regard to the exact identification of the numerous sacred spots connected with Buddha and his church, which the pilgrims describe within the valley and near its entrance from the north. With the limited time at my disposal no attempt could be made to scrutinize all the identifications which General Cunningham, and partly his Assistant Mr. Beglar, had proposed for these particular sites.

**Position of the Sattapaṇṇa Cave.**—Among the latter none is historically more interesting than the place where the First Council of the Buddhist Church was held, the famous **Sattapaṇṇa Cave**. As the question of its exact position had been the subject of much speculation and controversy, I was anxious to utilize the opportunity offered by my short stay specially for its examination. According to the uniform testimony of all the Buddhist canonical records the First Great Council, which was convened by Kāśyapa soon after the demise of Buddha to fix the principal tenets of the Church, took place near Rājagṛha in a cave in the Vebhāra Hill, which bore the Pali name of Sattapaṇṇa or Sattapaṇṇi. The *Mahāvastu*, which gives the Sanskrit name of the cave as **Saptapaṇṇa**, furnishes the additional detail that the cave was situated on the north of the hill, which is called there **Vaiḥāra**.<sup>11</sup>

For more exact indications we must turn to our Chinese guides. Fa-hian, starting from the north side of the Old City, takes us first to the **Kalaṇḍaveṇuvana Vihāra**, which from a comparison of Hiuen Tsiang's record can safely be located within or close to the defile leading from new Rājagṛha to the Old City.<sup>12</sup> He then continues: "Striking the southern hill and proceeding westwards 300 paces there is a stone cell called the **Pippala Cave**, where Buddha was accustomed to sit in meditation after his midday meal. Still further west five or six li there is a stone cave situated in the northern shade of the mountain and called Che-ti. This is the place where five hundred Arhats assembled after the Nirvāṇa of Buddha to arrange the collection of sacred books, etc."

Hiuen Tsiang describes the place of the great convocation as "a large stone house" situated in the middle of a great bamboo forest, which occupied "the north side of the southern mountain, about 5 or 6 li to the south-west of the [Karaṇḍa]-Veṇuvana." Before the "large stone-house" there was to be seen an old foundation-wall. This edifice was ascribed to King Ajātaśatru, who made it for the accommodation of the assembled Arhats. Though Hiuen Tsiang's words are not as precise as we might wish, it seems highly probable that here, as elsewhere, he means a natural cavern,<sup>13</sup> and that only the edifice marked by the foundation wall in front was structural.

<sup>10</sup> Si-yu-ki, ii. p. 150; *Arch. Survey Reports*, i. p. 23.

<sup>11</sup> See Map of Rājagṛha, plate xli., of *Archaeol. Survey Reports*, III.

<sup>12</sup> Kern, *Manual of Buddhism*, p. 102.

<sup>13</sup> Compare the use of the same expression for the small cells in the rocks of Mount Gṛdhra-kūṭa (Si-yu-ki, ii. p. 164); for the cave in the Indrapaṭṭaguhā Hill (Giriyak, i. p. 180), for the cave now known as Rājapind, near Jethian (see below), etc.



**Previous views regarding the Sattapaṇṇa Cave.** — General Cunningham, who was the first to take up the search for the traditional site of that great event in Buddhist history, was much influenced in his views by considerations connected with the artificial excavations known as *Sōnbhāṇḍār*, "the Treasury of Gold." These excavations are situated at the south foot of the *Baibhār* (*Vaibhāra*) Hill, about one mile to the south-west of the gorge leading from New Rājagṛha to the site of the "Old City," and have often been described. They consist of two comparatively small chambers cut out of the solid rock and highly polished inside. They show in their architectural features so close an affinity with the Barābar caves of Aśoka and Daśaratha, that the opinion of Mr. Fergusson and Dr. Burgess, which attributes their construction to the period of the Maurya dynasty, has everything in its favour.<sup>14</sup> In his first *Archæological Survey Report*, for the year 1861-62, General Cunningham wished to identify the *Sōnbhāṇḍār* with the *Pi-po-lo Cave*, referred to in the above extract from Fa-hian's account, and also mentioned by Hiuen Tsiang. In accordance with the direction indicated by Fa-hian, he was then prepared to look out for the Sattapaṇṇi Cave on the Northern face of the mountain, at the distance of about one mile from *Sōnbhāṇḍār*, as the supposed cave of Buddha's meditation.<sup>15</sup>

When publishing in 1871 his *Ancient Geography of India*, Gen. Cunningham had come to locate the Sattapaṇṇi Cave itself at *Sōnbhāṇḍār*, and to this belief he subsequently clung, notwithstanding the manifest impossibility of making the position of *Sōnbhāṇḍār* agree with the uniform testimony of the pilgrims, which distinctly points to the northern side of the *Vaibhāra* Hill as the site of the famous cave.<sup>16</sup> This serious objection, to which Mr. Beal, the English translator of Hiuen Tsiang, and others had rightly called attention, was in no way weakened by General Cunningham's discovery, recorded in his *Report* for 1871-72, of the *Pi-po-lo* stone cell and the Asura's cave behind it at the eastern end of the *Baibhār* Hill.<sup>17</sup> For although the distance of the *Sōnbhāṇḍār* from this second site would approximately correspond to the 5-6 *li* counted by Fa-hian between the *Pipolo* and Sattapaṇṇi Caves, yet a glance at General Cunningham's own map will show that the bearing from the former cave to the *Sōnbhāṇḍār* is nearly south, and not west as indicated by Fa-hian.

In the cold season 1872-73 Rājgir, with a series of other localities in Magadha, was visited by Mr. Beglar, General Cunningham's assistant, who in his account of this tour published in Vol. viii. of the *Archæological Survey Reports* has returned in detail to the question of the Sattapaṇṇi Cave.<sup>18</sup> He describes there how, realizing the obstacles in the way of the proposed identification with *Sōnbhāṇḍār*, he searched for the cave in the direction indicated by Fa-hian, i. e., by going to the west from the *Pi-po-lo* Cave at the entrance of the gorge which leads to Kuśāgārapura, and then skirting the north foot of the *Baibhār* Hill. There he came across a series of fissures in the rock all facing to the west and forming a row of little chambers from 4 to 10 feet wide and equally shallow. Owing to a peculiar configuration of the rocks, which a rough plan and section attempt to illustrate, these recesses are said to escape notice on going from east to west, but to be distinctly visible for an observer moving in the opposite direction. They are described as being "less than a mile from the Pippal (*Pipolo*) Cave, and to the west of it;" and as situated "in the middle third of the hill."

This collection of rock fissures, which elsewhere is spoken of as "a large natural cavern" "divided by natural Septa of rock into compartments," was taken by Mr. Beglar to be the true Sattapaṇṇi Cave. In support of this belief we are referred to the etymology of the name *Sattapaṇṇa*, the designation of a plant, the *Alstonia scholaris*, but literally meaning "Seven-leaved," and to the statement that by the side of the six recesses seen by the explorer there was room for a seventh on a part of the rock-face hidden by impenetrable jungle.

<sup>14</sup> See *The Cave Temples of India*, 1890, p. 49.

<sup>15</sup> *Ancient Geography*, p. 463.

<sup>17</sup> The argument in favour of the identification of the *Sōnbhāṇḍār* and the Sattapaṇṇi Cave is taken up at length in *Arch. Survey Rep.*, iii. pp. 140 sqq.

<sup>18</sup> *Arch. Survey Rep.*, viii., pp. 90 sqq.

<sup>16</sup> See *Arch. Survey Rep.* i. p. 21.



A perusal of Mr. Beglar's description of this remarkable spot conveys the impression that his visit had been of the most hurried character. It is, therefore, to be regretted that when he subsequently revisited Rājgir in the company of General Cunningham, no steps were taken to obtain exact facts as to the alleged site of the Sattapanna Cave. General Cunningham in the Preface to the Volume declares the theory broached by his assistant regarding the Sattapanni Cave to be quite untenable.<sup>19</sup> But we are not informed whether he actually saw and examined the rock recesses mentioned in the description above summarized. Mr. Beglar himself in a note prefixed to the *Report* informs us that he has been constrained to abandon what he considered as the main arguments against the identity of the Sōnbhāṇḍār with the Sattapanna Cave.<sup>20</sup> His words leave us in some doubt as to the value which he would still have us attach to his own discovery of the "Seven-leaved" Cave.

This brief retrospect on a much vexed question will explain why the interest of my short stay at Rājgir specially turned on the examination of the Baibhār Hill. The words of our Chinese guides make it quite clear that the cave, which was shown to them as marking the site of the First Synod, was on the northern side of this very hill. Yet I knew from communications of my friends Dr. Grierson and M. Sylvain Lévi that they had both failed to trace Mr. Beglar's rock-cavern, the only cave so far described, which by its position would seem to correspond to the one seen by the pilgrims.<sup>21</sup> The only information I had been able to obtain by my preliminary enquiries among the local Purōhitas and others referred to two caves, briefly mentioned also in the entry of the *List of Ancient Monuments of Bengal* concerning the Baibhār Hill. They were said to exist close together on the rocky scarp of the hill below one of the Jaina temples which crown its south-eastern ridge.

**Caves on the north face of Baibhār Hill.** — Ascending the road which leads to these temples, I first reached the remarkable square platform of unhewn, but carefully fitted, blocks which General Cunningham has noticed under the name "Jarāsandh-ki baithak" and correctly identified with the Pi-po-lo stone-cell.<sup>22</sup> If the tradition is genuine, which made Buddha dwell in one of the cells of this remarkable structure, we have in it indeed the oldest Indian stone building of which the date is approximately known.<sup>23</sup> Its position and distance relative to the road leading from the north to Kuśāgārapura, is exactly as indicated by Fa-hian.<sup>24</sup> The road marked in numerous places by ancient masonry then rises steeply along the north-eastern extremity of Baibhār and, leading generally in a westerly direction, reaches the flatter portion of the ridge where the Jaina temples are situated. They are quite modern in their superstructures; but the massive platforms on which they are built seem old, and in any case we know from Hsien Tsiang's reference to the "naked heretics" (Nirgranthas), who frequented the top of Mount Pi-pu-lo (Vaibhāra),<sup>25</sup> that the sacred character of this hill for the Jainas is not a feature of modern growth.

The caves, to which my Purōhita guides referred, are situated near the temple dedicated to **Ādinātha**, which is the fourth in order from below and according to a rough estimate at a distance of about a mile from the commencement of the ascent. A path, which descends the rugged northern scarp of the ridge to a level of about a hundred feet below the temple, leads to a long terrace, which, notwithstanding the luxurious vegetation covering it at the time of my visit, clearly betrayed its artificial origin. The wall, which supports it towards the lower slope, is composed of large unhewn slabs and can be traced for fully a hundred feet running in the direction from N. E. to S. W. along the face of the slope. The average width of the terrace is twenty-five feet. Where, at the south-west end, the supporting wall is lost in thick jungle, a narrow path strikes off towards a natural cave in the rock face overhanging the terrace. It runs in the direction

<sup>19</sup> See *Arch. Survey Rep.*, Vol. VIII., p. viii.

<sup>20</sup> *Arch. Survey Rep.*, Vol. VIII., p. xiv.

<sup>21</sup> See *Rapport de M. Sylvain Lévi sur sa mission dans l'Inde et Japon*, *Comptes-Rendus de l'Académie des Inscriptions et Belles-Lettres*, 1899, p. 73.

<sup>22</sup> *Arch. Survey Rep.* iii., p. 141.

<sup>23</sup> Compare Mr. Fergusson's remarks, *Cave Temples*, pp. 33 & 37.

<sup>24</sup> *Si-yu-ki*, p. 12.

<sup>25</sup> See *Si-yu-ki*, ii., p. 158.



W. N. W. to E. S. E. and is 40 feet deep in its open portion. The height is about 12 feet at the entrance and 10 feet further in. The cave is widest at the middle, where it is about 16 feet broad. The cave, though undoubtedly due to a natural fissure in the rocks, may have been somewhat enlarged by rough excavations at the sides. At least, there is a suggestion of this in the presence of flat low ledges of rock which line the sides.

Along the same wall of rocks, at a distance of about 50 feet further to the south-west, is a second and somewhat larger natural cavity. It is 47 feet deep, 25 feet wide at its broadest and ten to eleven feet high. Its end is lost in a narrow fissure which is said to extend much further. Several large detached rocks lie in front of the caves.

The ancient wall, which supports the platform in front of the caves, is at present the only proof that these natural fissures were inhabited or visited at an early date. Their position relative to "the Pipolo stone cell" corresponds close enough to the indications which the Chinese pilgrims give as to the traditional site of the First Great Council. But for a definite identification, we may well demand further evidence. It can scarcely be expected that this should be forthcoming in the form of structural remains, seeing that Hinen Tsiang found nothing but an old foundation wall at the spot. It would, however, be undoubtedly a point of negative evidence, if it could be shown that the northern face of the Baibhar Hill does not contain any other caves, natural or artificial, in the position indicated. My Parōhita guides, as well as the Rājwar coolies accompanying me, who had often grazed cattle on the jungle of the hillside and were thus well-acquainted with the locality, denied all knowledge of any other caves.

In order to see myself as much as possible of the northern face of the hill, I descended towards the Rājgir plain by a circuitous path. The jungle which covers the hill is thorny and thick, but not very high. Though it was thus possible to examine the slope closely from more than one projecting point, yet I could not trace any indication of a cave. Nor did I succeed in discovering the rocky recesses described by Mr. Beglar, although I moved subsequently along the foot of the hill in the direction he indicates, from west to east, and took special care to examine all rock-faces with a pair of field-glasses. I do not assume that my examination of the Baibhār slopes has supplied the negative evidence above alluded to in an absolutely conclusive form. But I think its result helps to show that at present only the site below the Ādināth Temple has a claim for serious consideration in our search for the famous Sattapanni Cave.

**Ancient Sites South-west of Rājagṛha.** — The questions, which I was next anxious to examine during my short stay at Rājgir, are connected with a series of ancient localities situated at some distance to the south-east of the old capital. Hinen Tsiang had visited them as he marched from the neighbourhood of Gayā towards Kuśāgārapura, but they had so far not been traced with any certainty. Hinen Tsiang's account of these sites may thus be briefly summarized.<sup>26</sup> Proceeding from the Kukkuṭapādagiri or "Cock's-foot Mountain," with which we shall have to occupy ourselves hereafter, for about 100 li to the north-east he reached a mountain called Buddhavana, which contained a store chamber once inhabited by Buddha. Going about 30 li to the east "amongst wild valleys," the pilgrim came to a wood of bamboos called Yashtivana ("the forest of the staff"), the site of various Buddhist legends. In the midst of this wood was a Stūpa built by Aśoka. South-west of the Yashtivana "about 10 li or so and on the south side of a great mountain" two warm springs are noticed, which were visited for their healing powers. To the south-east of Yashtivana, about 6 or 7 li and on the transverse pass of a mountain, there was a Stūpa marking a spot where Tathāgata explained the law. To the north of this mountain 3 or 4 li the pilgrim mentions a solitary hill where the Rishi Vyāsa had once lived in solitude, and again about 4-5 li to the north of this hill another in which there was a large cave. "In this place Tathāgata, when living in the world, repeated the law for three months." Apart from a

<sup>26</sup> See Si-yu-ki, ii. pp. 145-149.



large and remarkable rock above the cave, reference is made by the Chinese pilgrim to a lofty cavern in the south-west angle of the cave, which a local legend supposed to lead to the "city of Asuras." Near the cave were seen the remains of broad passages which King Bimbisāra had constructed through the rocks and along precipices in order to reach the place where Buddha was. "From this spot proceeding eastward through the mountain about 60 *li* we arrive at the city Kuśāgārapura."

General Cunningham, who alone seems to have concerned himself with the identification of the localities above described, had, while examining in 1862 the remains of Rājgir, obtained information which induced him to identify Yashtivana with a spot known according to him as "Jakhtiban," and the warm springs with those still existing at Tapoban, a short distance to the south. He thought to recognize Buddhavana in a lofty hill called Budhain about 8 miles to the south-west of Rājgir. General Cunningham's brief notices, contained both in his *Ancient Geography* and Vol. iii. of the *Archæological Survey Reports*,<sup>27</sup> show clearly that he had not visited the places himself. He also acknowledged his inability to trace either the caves or the particular structures referred to by Hiuen Tsiang. It is hence scarcely necessary to explain here in details the topographical errors contained in these notices, and the impossibility of bringing the alleged positions of the modern localities mentioned into agreement with Hiuen Tsiang's well defined distances and bearings.

General Cunningham, himself, was evidently well aware of the insufficiency of the data collected by him; for on a subsequent occasion he specially directed the attention of Mr. Beglar to the exploration of the valley which stretches to the west of the site of Kuśāgārapura, and in which he supposed the localities he had heard of to be situated.

Mr. Beglar informs us that he "twice attempted to penetrate the pathless jungle which literally chokes up the valley, but on both occasions without success." Looking down subsequently from the top of the Baibhār Hill Mr. Beglar thought he could make out in the distance, where the two hill-ranges enclosing the valley seem to meet, "a small tumulus having precisely the appearance of a Stūpa." This he assumed to be the "tope near Jakhtiban" mentioned by Hiuen Tsiang. But "from the valley through the pathless jungle" he found it impracticable to get to it.<sup>28</sup>

**March to Jethian.**—The indications furnished regarding this supposed *stūpa* were too vague to warrant a search on my part. I accordingly decided to make first for the village of Jethian, which had been mentioned to General Cunningham as close to "Jakhtiban," and the name of which seemed a manifest derivative from the ancient Yashtivana. Two routes were available to Jethian, one skirting from Rājgir the outer foot of the northern range of hills and then crossing the latter into the valley by the pass called Cakra Ghāt. The other, more direct but also decidedly more difficult, leading from the site of Kuśāgārapura straight through the jungle-covered valley towards Jethian.

As I was anxious to look for any remains that might be hidden in the valley west of the old city, I chose the latter route when setting out for Jethian on the morning of 14th October. The dense jungle I encountered, soon after proceeding beyond the line of the inner ramparts of Kuśāgārapura, sufficiently explained the decided objections which my Rājgir guides had at first raised to my use of this route. Once started, however, they did their best to find a track, though even from the back of the elephant I used, a look-out could be obtained only at rare intervals.

**Budhain Hill.**—After a march of close on three hours I reached a rocky ridge which traverses the valley in the direction from N.-E. to S.-W. and culminates in the Haṇḍia Hill, marked as a Trigonometrical station (elevation 1,472 feet) on the Survey Map. The pass by which I crossed this ridge near its north-eastern end, where it joins the main northern range of the valley, was called Budhain by the Ahirs who accompanied me. This name may possibly apply also to the high rocky eminence of the main range, which rises to the north of the pass. But a glance at the map will show that its

<sup>27</sup> See *Anc. Geogr.*, p. 451; *Arch. Survey Rep.*, iii, pp. 138 sq.

<sup>28</sup> See *Arch. Survey Rep.*, viii., p. 86.



identification with Buddhavana of Hiuen Tsiang is manifestly impossible. The pilgrim tells us that he reached Yashtivana by going to the east, whereas Jethian and the neighbouring Jeshtiban, which, as we shall see, corresponds undoubtedly to Yashtivana, lie to the south-west of Budhain.

After crossing the pass the jungle gradually disappeared, until I reached, near the large village of Kiri, some three miles from Budhain, the open plain of the valley. The latter is here in marked contrast to the jungle-covered sombre waste near Rājgir, fertile and well-cultivated. Proceeding through rice fields and green pasture lands two miles further to the south-west I arrived at Jethian, a populous and evidently thriving village. A short halt made here, for the purposes of local enquiries, enabled me soon to trace the real position of the main localities, which Hiuen Tsiang's account mentions.

In the first place I ascertained that Jeshtiban (not "Jakhtiban" as recorded by General Cunningham) is the name generally given to the western slope and foot of the hill, in which the transverse ridge already mentioned ends about  $\frac{3}{4}$  of a mile to the east of Jethian village. There could be no doubt as to this name being but a slightly modified form of the ancient Yashtivana, of which Jethian itself is an old Prakrit derivative. Tapoban with its hot springs mentioned by Hiuen Tsiang was found to be situated about two miles to the south-west of Jethian village, that is, exactly at the distance which the pilgrim indicates by his measurement of about 10 *li* or so from Yashtivana. I next obtained information regarding a large cave known as Rājpinḍ and already previously mentioned to me, which, by its position in a hill situated about 2 miles to the north-west of Jethian, was clearly marked as identical with Hiuen Tsiang's cave containing the lofty cavern called "the Palace of the Asuras."

**The Springs of Tapoban.** — Time did not permit me that day to pay more than a flying visit to the hot springs of Tapoban, but I was able to re-visit them on my subsequent march to Kurkihār. They issue at a spot, which lies outside the valley and is approached after crossing the southern range of hills by a pass known as the Jethian Ghāt. Their position at the south foot of this range corresponds to Hiuen Tsiang's words. There are four springs in all issuing at the rocky foot of the hillside at short distances from each other, but only two, towards the east, have a large flow. The largest and the one first approached from the east is called Sanatkumarākunḍa. It is, like the rest, enclosed by a stone wall and steps evidently built of old materials. To the west of it stands a small temple of modern date, said to have been built by Bābū Gopāl Singh, a local Zamīndār. Between the temple and the spring already mentioned rises a mound, measuring 75 by 81 feet at the base and 45 feet square on the top. Its height is about 10 feet. The top is covered with small square mounds marking the Samādhs of Sannyāsins and adorned in places with fragments of ancient sculpture. It seems probably that this large mound represents the remains of the *stūpa*, which Hiuen Tsiang mentions as having been erected "by the side of the springs to mark the place where Tathāgata walked for exercise."

The springs are visited by pilgrims in connection with the Tirthas of Rājagṛha and also by many sick from the neighbourhood who seek here relief. A great Yātrā takes place at the Meṣasamkrānti date, when, as in the days of Chinese pilgrim, "men from far and near flock here to bathe, after which those who have suffered from disease or chronic affections are often healed."

**Jeshtiban : Yashtivana.** — After returning through the Jethian Ghāt (on the top of which I noticed under a tree a collection of small reliefs, all of ancient work and some distinctly Jaina) I proceeded, under the guidance of an intelligent village Gumāshta, to the locality known as Jeshtiban. It forms a small undulating plateau, partly grassy, partly covered with low jungle, the west foot of the hill, which is the last offshoot of the Handia ridge in this direction. No ancient remains could be seen above ground, but at a particular spot, designated as Phal-Jethian, I was shown low mounds and furrows which, according to the statement of the villagers, mark the site, from where, some thirteen



years ago, old bricks were dug out by people from Kiri. The excavated foundation walls seem to have belonged to a building about 45 feet square, correctly orientated. At a distance of 35 feet eastwards there are traces of some circular structure with a diameter of 43 feet. The place is popularly supposed to be the site of an old Rājā's Palace. Hiuen Tsiang informs us of Yashtivana, that "the bamboos that grow here are large; they cover the hill and extend through the valley." Bamboos still grow plentifully in the tangled brush-wood of the hill above Jeshtiban, though they cannot be found on the cleared grazing land properly designated as Jeshtiban. Of the *stūpa* which, according to Hiuen Tsiang, Aśoka had built here to commemorate the spot "where Tathāgata had displayed for seven days great spiritual wonders for the sake of the Devas," I could find no distinct evidence. Considering the open nature of the ground and the vicinity of several large villages, requiring stone materials for the *bands* which protect their storage tanks, the complete disappearance of such a structure could not cause surprise.

The almost perfect preservation of the ancient form of the name *Yashtivana* in *Jeshtiban* appears to me to be a distinct argument for placing here the sacred site mentioned by Hiuen Tsiang. It is particularly at places of a sacred interest that we find older forms of the local names often preserved through the quasi-learned tradition of priests and their records. This observation is amply supported by my enquiries into the ancient topography of Kashmir.<sup>29</sup> Whereas at the village which derived its name from the sacred spot there was nothing to stop the regular phonetic transition of *Skr. Yashtivana* into *Jethian*, its Prakrit derivative, the sacred site itself, was likely to retain better the traditional form of the name *Jeshtiban*.

**Cakra Ghāt.** — The day was too far advanced and the distance to Rājgir, where I had to return, too great to allow me to extend my search for the other sites which the pilgrim's itinerary mentions in this neighbourhood. For my return march I chose the route, which leads from Kiri across the northern range of the hills into the open plain beyond. The pass through the range is known as the **Cakra Ghāt**, and has evidently since early days been a much frequented line of communication.

Already, when ascending through the defile which leads up to the pass from the south, I had thought I could notice foundations of ancient walls flanking the present bridle-path. The remains became far more distinct on the north side. There, for a distance of several hundred yards, and close to the east of the path, the foundations of two parallel walls are distinguishable, each about 7 feet in thickness, and keeping at a distance of 14 feet from each other. In the space between the walls there are the remains of an old paved road. The construction of these walls closely resembles that of the fortifications around Kuśāgarapura, showing rough but well-set stone work.

There can be no doubt that the walls flanking the path across the **Cakra Ghāt** were intended for defensive purposes, to protect those using the route from attacks, for which the steep hills on either side would else offer great advantages. I have traced protecting walls in exactly corresponding positions along the ancient road which leads over the *Shākāt* Pass into the *Swāt* Valley, and similar old fortifications existed on the *Malakand* Pass before the construction of the modern works. In the hills of the *Swāt* Valley — a borderland since ancient days, with conditions evidently resembling those of the present *Afghān* frontier — the prevalence of such elaborate ancient defences is easily accounted for. But it is curious to meet their counterpart in the centre of old *Magadha*, apparently so peaceful and centralized.

In several of the villages of the fertile plain through which I passed on my return to Rājgir, particularly at *Simraur*, fragments of ancient sculpture could be seen collected at rustic places of worship. Most of them were distinctly Buddhist. But small *Līngas* of old appearance were also among them.

(To be continued.)

<sup>29</sup> Comp. my *Memoir on the Ancient Geography of Kashmir*, §§ 33, 34.



EXTRACTS FROM THE LOG OF A VOYAGE ALONG THE COAST  
OF INDIA IN 1746.

BY R. C. TEMPLE.

(Continued from Vol. XXIX. p. 341.)

II.

Preliminary Remarks on the Log.

WE may now fairly turn our attention to the main part of the volume, *viz.*, the log, or rather the logs, contained in it. They are all in one hand-writing, and relate to the voyages of "**the Ship Wake, Captain Robert Norton, Commander,**" from Calpie on the Hughli below Calcutta, round the **Indian Coast** as far as Tellicherry, *en route* to Bombay, between August 15th, 1746, and December 30th 1746; on which latter date the account comes to an abrupt end, the remainder of the story having been apparently written into some other book.

There are really **six separate logs**, thus:—

Log I., 31 pp., from Calpie towards Madras.

Log II., 20 pp., from Pulicat to Vizagapatam, as the vessel never got to Madras, for reasons to be explained later on.

Log III., 24 pp., from Vizagapatam towards Bombay, but carrying us only as far as Colombo on "the coast of Zeloan." This time the vessel avoided the Coromandel Coast and went out to sea, for reasons to be explained.

Log IV., 19 pp., from Colombo to Anjengo.

Log V., 7 pp., from Anjengo to Cochin.

Log VI., 9 pp., from Cochin to "Callicute" and "Tellichery."

As above said the whole of the logs are in **one handwriting**, which is shown by the internal evidence of the MS. to be that of the **chief mate, Mr. Macmehone**. Thus, at the very beginning of the first voyage there is an entry, on Sept. 16:—"Came on board the Captain," which shows that some other hand than his made it. There follow innumerable other such entries, proving that Captain Norton, Commander of the *Wake*, had no part in keeping the log.

He seems to have been a martinet, and towards the end of the log there are three entries, which show both this fact and the name and identity of the actual writer:—

- (1) Nov. 28:—"att 8 A. M. was order'd Down to his cabin as a prisoner Mr. Macmehone Chief Mate for asking Civilly for his privilege which is usually allow'd by the owners of this Ship."
- (2) Nov. 29:—"I was Sent on board by a Guard only Going ashore to aske of the Governor libertie to Stay ashore for the recovery of my Health and att the same time Asking Captain Norton about my Privilege. Upon which he order'd me on board with a Guard of soldiers and there to be made a prisoner."
- (3) Dec. 20:—"This Day I was order'd Down to Close Confinement for Observing with a passenger's Quadrant, and also threaten'd to put me in Irons by Captain Robert Norton."

To follow the **story of the logs**. On "fryday, Aug. 15, 1746" the *Wake* started from Calpie on the River Hughli on a voyage to Madras, and proceeded peacefully as far as Vizagapatam. While lying there news was received by "**the Loovain, Captain Macmath Bound to Bengall**" of the now well-known historical attack of **La Bourdonnais on the British Settlement of Madras in 1746**. To quote the quaint wording of the log:—"a gives us an account the 18 Instant, he was obliged to run of [*i. e.*, off] out of Madrass road the place being attack'd by eight sail of french ship's unde the Command of Monsieur Lebourdenie." Finding the coast to be nevertheless pretty clear and going



cautiously, the ship is taken quietly down it as far as Pulicat, where the *Vernon* is met, "who gives us the unfortunate relation of the taking of Madras by the french [i. e., in Sept. 1746] on Thursday the 11th Instant after a seige of 4 Days only, and not but six men kill'd at the most, and not above 8 Sail of french Ships, the 2 Biggest 60 Guns, the rest of 30 each and old Ships formerly mercht Ships." The *Vernon* seems to have rescued "100 Soldiers and Gunners, who made there Escape from Madras after the takeing of the town," at Pulicat.

The first log winds up with the ominous statement "by which unfortunate News we are Oblig'd to bear away to some other port," and accordingly we find the *Wake* retracing its steps as far as Vizagapatam, which was reached on September 21st. From the 2nd October onwards we are treated to a very interesting series of notes as to the steps taken to meet "Dreadfull and Dempestuous Weathr," which was clearly caused, from the description given, by what we should nowadays call a cyclone to the southward.

Captain Norton after this evidently made up his mind to continue his voyage southwards by sailing past the then politically dangerous Madras Coast well out to sea. He accordingly set sail, as his log says, "towards Bombay," on Nov. 13th, making direct for the coast of Ceylon, and keeping a sharp look out for "the Enemy." The ship, naturally at such a time of year, met the full force of the North-East Monsoon, and we find the log to be chiefly made up of notes of bad and squally weather, till the ship hits upon the Little Basses, off the S.-E. coast of Ceylon. Colombo was reached on "Wednesday, Nov. ye 5, 1746," and there was learnt what had been the effect of the "Dreadfull and Dempestuous Weathr" of the 2nd October at Madras. The cyclone had evidently struck the coast at Madras Town (just as the present writer saw one strike it on the 2nd May, 1872), and sent the French fleet to destruction.

The story, as given in the log, is particularly interesting, as it is given at first hand, for, to use the words of the writer:—"This I Copy'd from a letter which the Governour of Colombo was so good as to Interpret it to me in His own House 4 of Nov., 1746. All in french."

The accuracy of the facts stated in the log of the *Wake* can be gauged by a comparison with Orme's account of the period.<sup>11</sup>

"Early in the morning of the 25th June (1746), the English squadron, cruising to the Southward of Fort St. David, near Negapatam, descried that of the French arriving on the coast of Coromandel" (p. 62). There was then an indecisive action and both parties went off to refit at Trincomalee<sup>12</sup> and Pondicherry respectively. "On the 18th of August the French squadron appeared and cannoned the town, but without doing any damage, They attempted to take a ship belonging to the English Company out of the road, but she moved into shoal-water so near the batteries of the fort, that the French did not venture to attack her with armed boats, and it was evident, from the unskillfulness of their operations during this cruise, that Mr De La Bourdonnais did not command them in person: he was at this time in Pondicherry confined to his bed by sickness." . . . "The Protection of the English Settlements on the Coast of Coromandel was the principle object for which the [English] squadron had been sent into India, and their appearance before Madras was at this time thought so necessary to its defence, that the inhabitants were in hourly expectation of seeing them, although they received no intelligence of them, since they were last seen six days before by Mr De La Bourdonnais. The consternation of the town was therefore little less than despair, when it was reported that they had appeared on the 23rd August 30 miles to the northward of Madras, in sight of the Dutch Settlement of Palliacatte, from whence they had again put out to sea and disappeared. They proceeded to Bengal, for the 60 gun ship was so leaky, that it was feared that the shock of firing her own cannon would sink her, if she should be brought into an Engagement" (p. 66).

<sup>11</sup> *History of the Military Operations in Indostan, 1861*, which is a reprint of the Ed. of 1803, and so far as the matters herein mentioned are concerned follows verbatim the first Ed. of 1763. The quotations are from the Ed. of 1861.

<sup>12</sup> Trincomalee in Orme, p. 63.



The result of this was that "on the 7th September the French began to bombard the town. . . . The 10th Sept. the Deputies returned to the French camp, and after some altercations, consented to the articles of capitulation, which had been dictated to them in the first conference. It was agreed that the English should surrender themselves prisoners of war: that the town should be immediately delivered up: but that it should be afterwards ransomed. Mr. De La Bourdonnais gave his promise that he would settle the ransom on easy and moderate terms. The capitulation was signed in the afternoon. . . . There was not a man killed in the French camp during the siege: four or five Englishmen were killed in the town by the explosion of the bombs, which likewise destroyed two or three houses" (p. 67 f.).

Fortunately Messrs. Dupleix (then the French Governor-General) and De la Bourdonnais fell out, and not so much harm was done, as would otherwise have resulted to British interests. Finally Madras was handed back to England in August, 1749, pursuant to the treaty of Aix la Chapelle. (p. 130).

**As to De la Bourdonnais' strength.** It consisted of nine ships, of 70, 36, (3) 34, 30, (2) 28, and 26 guns. The crews were 3,300 men, of which 700 were "either Caffres or Lascars." The English squadron was of five fighting ships, of 60, (3) 50, and 40 guns, with crews of about 1,600 men. "But the English had greatly the advantage in the weight of their cannon, by which the fortune of engagements at sea is at present generally decided. And they likewise sailed better than the French, and were worked with much greater skill" (p. 62).

**As to the cyclone of the 2nd October,** we read:—"On the 2nd October the weather was remarkably fine and moderate all day. About midnight a furious storm arose and continued with the greatest violence, until the noon of the next day. Six of the French ships were in the road when the storm began, and not one of them was to be seen at day-break. One put before the wind and was driven so far to the southward, that she was not able to regain the coast again: the 70 gun ship lost all her masts: three others of the squadron were likewise dismasted, and had so much water in the hold, that the people on board expected every moment to perish, notwithstanding they had thrown overboard all the cannon of the lower tier: the other ship, during the few moments of a whirlwind, which happened in the most furious part of the storm, was covered by the waves, and foundered in an instant, and only six of the crew escaped alive. Twenty other vessels, belonging to other nations, were either driven on shore or perished at sea.

"All the merchandizes and a part of the military stores, belonging to the East India Company, together with all the naval stores found in the town had been laden on board the French ships: these articles, according to the computation made by the French, amounted to 130,000 pounds sterling: the half of the artillery and military stores was estimated at 24,000 pounds sterling: all the other effects and merchandizes were relinquished to the proprietors of them. . . . The storm ruined the French marine force in India, and preserved the English establishments from imminent danger" (p. 70 ff.).

A minor point noticed by Orme is also confirmed by the Log:—"The other two ships, laden with part of the effects of Madras, together with the three lately arrived from Europe, were at anchor in the road of Pondicherry, where they felt no effect of the storm, which was raging at Madras" (p. 70).

From Colombo Captain Norton set sail for the now little known Settlement of Anjengo on the Malabar Coast, cautiously and in much fear of the French, where he stayed trading from "Monday, November y<sup>e</sup> 17, 1746" to "Wednesday, Dec: 3: 1746." Thence he went uneventfully to Cochin in about four days, and sailed thence for Tellicherry, all fear of the French having by that time seemingly disappeared.

Though out of touch with Europeans, the English sailor of that time had evidently a lively life. It seems to have been the custom either to bully or run away from any ship that was casually met at sea. There are instances galore in the Log. Thus on Aug. 26, we find Captain Norton "firing a Gun" by way of bringing to and stopping two passing "paddy Boats," meaning by



that term native sea-going craft carrying rice, as may be seen from the next instance I give of firing on a passing sail. — "Sunday, Sept. 14, 1746. Att 4 P. M. fir'd 2 Guns att a Vessell, which we took for a paddy Boat, being Desirous to gett some Intelligence from Madrass and after haveing brought her too, found her to be the *Vernon*." So again, the *Wake*, on Oct. 29th, fires a gun after dark, by way of inducing a Dutch sloop to give up what news she had. In both these last two cases we see first a British and then a Dutch ship doing all they knew to avoid contact with a larger vessel flying British colours.

On the other hand, on the very day the *Wake* brought up the *Vernon* she had herself to run away, as is thus described :— "Sunday, Sept. 14, 1746, 11 (P. M.). Saw a large Ship on the Beam which [obliged us] to make what sail we Can and leave the *Vernon* to Shift for themselves."

On the 24th and 25th of October the crew had a very lively time of it in the open sea. — "Fryday, 8<sup>r</sup>, 24, 1746. Att a 11 A. M. Saw a large Ship bear SbW. from us Dist. abt 4 leagues | upon the sight of which we haul'd Close upon a Wind | when we first saw her she was stand<sup>s</sup> about SSE. but after hauling our Wind she haul'd up likewise upon her larboard Tack and stood for our Wake. She appears to be full of Hands and Carry's a tear of Guns." — "Saturday, 8<sup>r</sup> the 25, 1746. The aforementioned Ship find<sup>s</sup> she Cou'd not gain any thing to Windward of us She wore and stood to the Eastward."

On the 27th and 28th November, the times were still more exciting, while lying off Anjengo :— "Thursday, 27. have Intelligence of the french being upon the Coast, — fryday, Nov. 28. att 2 P. M. the Captain Came on | and upon the Sight of two large Vessels to the Southward weigh'd our Anchor and Warped into 4½ fm | Do<sup>13</sup> Borrow'd from the Shore 4 two pounders Six Musketts 6 p<sup>r</sup> of pistols with a 100 Shot and 24 Catrises | got every thing Clear to Defend our Selves against them if they shou'd Come | Do<sup>13</sup> Kept a Very Good look out all night | att 10 P. M. the (*deest*) Wrote a letter to our Captain to lett us Know the Vessel we Saw a Dutchman from Colombo bound Cochín." Everything being now safe, the mate proceeds to business at once, and records that he "Receiv'd on board 13 Quoils of Quoir Cordage," and so on, as he quaintly puts it.

In addition to all this the Captain of the *Wake* was naturally nervous all the way from Madras to Vizagapatam, and with good reason ; for on "Saturday, Sept. 20. 8 [A. M.] Saw a Sail which we took to be the *Vernon* bear<sup>s</sup> NEbN. The Ship we took to be the *Vernon* is a strange Ship | upon her tacks and Standing towards [us] we Haul'd up E½S. and upon her Hauling her Courses up and Showing Dutch Colours and then making all the sail She Could Carry after us and likewise being Very full of Hands judg'd her to be an enemy by her Action | So made what sail we Cou'd to gett away: att Noon she Bore NbW., hull too [?]."

And again we read :— "Wednesday 24. Sent the pinnace to speak to a boat which came from the S<sup>o</sup> w<sup>d</sup> who Informs us of a Large Ship Lying att point Guardaware, which I take to be the Ship that Chas'd us some Days ago."

A curious point to note is the manner in which deaths on board are recorded. There are several instances in the log, all of native seamen :— on the 13th Nov., 23rd Nov., 2nd Dec., and 28th Dec. In each case the report is accompanied with a rough figure of a death's head and cross-bones, accompanied by a scythe and an hour-glass. The record is worded in the formal manner of the time :— "depart'd this life so and so," and "we committ'd his body to the Deep." These formal words arise no doubt out of a superstitious dread of mentioning death and burial in direct terms.

There are many other points of interest raised by a study of this valuable old log, but they can best be dealt with as they arise, by way of notes to the text of each portion thereof. For this purpose I will now divide the general log into six separate logs, and annotate each separately.

(To be continued.)

<sup>13</sup> This means at the same hour as before, viz., 2 P. M.



A COMPLETE VERBAL CROSS-INDEX TO YULE'S HOBSON-JOBSON  
OR GLOSSARY OF ANGLO-INDIAN WORDS.

BY CHARLES PARTRIDGE, M. A.

(Continued from p. 39.)

- Banksoll; ann. 1878: *s. v.* Bankshall (b), 47, ii, twice.  
Bank Solls; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Bankshall (b), 47, ii.  
Bàn mākōk; ann. 1850: *s. v.* Bankcock, 43, i.  
Bannanes; ann. 1610: *s. v.* Banana, 42, ii.  
Bannaras; ann. 1586: *s. v.* Patna, 520, i.  
Bannes; ann. 1610: *s. v.* Banana, 42, ii.  
Bannian; ann. 1689: *s. v.* Cabaya, 106, i, twice; ann. 1783: *s. v.* Banyan (1) b, 49, i.  
Bannian Days; ann. 1690: *s. v.* Banyan-Day, 50, i.  
Bannian-Fight; ann. 1690: *s. v.* Banyan-Fight, 50, i.  
Bannians tree; ann. 1650: *s. v.* Banyan-Tree, 50, ii.  
Bannyan; ann. 1608: *s. v.* Banyan (1), 48, ii; ann. 1630: *s. v.* Porcelain, 549, ii.  
Banquesalle; ann. 1610: *s. v.* Bankshall (a), 47, i.  
Bāps; *s. v.* Bamboo, 41, i.  
Bansūr; *s. v.* Bankshall, 46, ii.  
Banshaw; ann. 1764: *s. v.* Banjo, 46, i.  
Bāns-kāfūr; *s. v.* Camphor, 116, ii.  
Bant; *s. v.* Sarong, 602, i.  
Bantak; *s. v.* Numerical Affixes, 831, i.  
Bantam; *s. v.* 47, ii, 761, i, twice, *s. v.* Batavia, 54, i, *s. v.* Coco-de-Mer, 177, ii, *s. v.* Factory, 264, ii, *s. v.* Presidency, 552, ii, 4 times, *s. v.* Tea, 689, i, twice; ann. 1605: *s. v.* Bezoar, 68, ii; ann. 1606: *s. v.* Prow, 555, i; ann. 1613: *s. v.* Pecul, 523, i; ann. 1633: *s. v.* Presidency, 552, ii; ann. 1670: *s. v.* President, 845, ii, twice; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Lory, 398, ii; ann. 1680: *s. v.* Salempoory, 852, ii; ann. 1727: *s. v.* 47, ii.  
Bantam Fowls; *s. v.* 48, i.  
Bantamois; ann. 1648: *s. v.* A Mack, 14, ii.  
Bāntan; *s. v.* Bantam, 47, ii.  
Bantem; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Cockatoo, 175, i.  
Bantin; ann. 1612: *s. v.* Gallevat (b), 276, ii.  
Ban-titar; *s. v.* Chickore, 148, ii.  
Banuas; ann. 1613: *s. v.* Benua, 66, i.  
Banuwa; *s. v.* Benua, 65, ii.  
Bāpwu; *s. v.* Bamboo, 40, ii.  
Banya; *s. v.* Marwāree, 822, ii.  
Banyan (1); *s. v.* 48, i, 761, i, *s. v.* Banyan-Tree, 50, ii, footnote, *s. v.* Dubash, 252, ii, *s. v.* Goozerat, 297, i, *s. v.* Hindoo, 316, i; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Surat, 665, i; ann. 1580: *s. v.* Muslin, 459, ii; ann. 1672: *s. v.* Banyan-Tree, 50, ii; ann. 1673: *s. v.* (1), 49, i, *s. v.* Dewally, 238, ii, *s. v.* Gosbeck, 298, i, *s. v.* Tumasha, 717, i; ann. 1691: *s. v.* Banyan-Tree, 50, ii; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Congo-bunder, 783, i; ann. 1763-71: *s. v.* Custom, 787, i; ann. 1775: *s. v.* (b), 761, i; ann. 1786 and 1788 (twice): *s. v.* (b), 49, i; ann. 1817: *s. v.* (1) b, 49, ii, *s. v.* Gomasta, 294, i; ann. 1877: *s. v.* (1) a, 49, i.  
Banyan (2); *s. v.* 49, ii, 3 times; ann. 1781: *s. v.* 49, ii.  
Banyan (3); *s. v.* 49, ii, *s. v.* Banyan-Tree, 50, i, twice, *s. v.* Buckaul, 90, i, *s. v.* Jute, 362, i, *s. v.* Plantain, 541, i; ann. 1806: *s. v.* Peepul, 524, i; ann. 1865 and 1878: *s. v.* Banyan-Tree, 51, ii.  
Banyan (Language); ann. 1673: *s. v.* Hindostanee (b), 317, i.  
Bānyān; ann. 1555: *s. v.* Bhat, 69, i.  
Banyan-Day; *s. v.* 49, ii.  
Banyan-Fight; *s. v.* 50, i.  
Banyan-grove; ann. 1834: *s. v.* Banyan-Tree, 51, ii.  
Banyāns; ann. 1555: *s. v.* Banyan (1), 48, ii.  
Banyan-Tree; *s. v.* 50, i; ann. 1672: *s. v.* 50, ii.  
Banyan-tree; *s. v.* Cubeer Burr, 215, i; ann. 1771 and 1825: *s. v.* Banyan-Tree, 51, i.  
Banyan Tree; *s. v.* Banyan (3), 49, ii; ann. 1809: *s. v.* Banyan-Tree, 51, i.  
Banyan tree; ann. 1781: *s. v.* Coorsy, 783, ii; ann. 1861: *s. v.* Tortin, 550, i.  
Banyhann tree; ann. 1849: *s. v.* Nankeen, 472, i.  
Banyon; ann. 1731: *s. v.* Banyan (2), 49, ii.  
Banyumas; *s. v.* Upas, 729, i.  
Banyuwangi; *s. v.* Upas, 728, ii.  
Banzelo; ann. 1506; *s. v.* Bengal, 64, ii.  
Banzia; ann. 1726: *s. v.* Tumlook, 717, ii.  
Bao; *s. v.* Kyoung, 816, i.  
Baobab; *s. v.* Bottle-Tree, 81, ii, *s. v.* Monkey-bread Tree, 441, i and ii.  
Bāola; *s. v.* Bowla, 82, i.  
Bāoli; *s. v.* Bowly, 82, i and ii (twice).  
Bāori; *s. v.* Bowly, 82, i.  
Baouth; ann. 1779: *s. v.* Buddha, 91, i, twice.  
Bāp-re; *s. v.* Bobbery-bob, 76, i.  
Bap-re-bap; ann. 1863-64: *s. v.* Bobbery-bob, 766, ii.  
Bāp-re Bāp; *s. v.* Bobbery-bob, 76, i.



- Bāpre bāpre; ann. 1834: *s. v.* Bobbery-bob, 76, i.  
 Bāptontai; B. C. 325: *s. v.* Umbrella, 725, ii.  
 Baqaul; ann. 1826: *s. v.* Bockaul, 90, i.  
 Baquanoor; ann. 1726: *s. v.* Bacanore, 34, i.  
 Bar; ann. 1782: *s. v.* Jyshe, 362, ii.  
 Bar; *s. v.* Banyan-Tree, 50, i.  
 Bār; *s. v.* Malabar, 411, ii, 3 times.  
 Barā; ann. 1583: *s. v.* Varella, 733, ii.  
 Bāra; *s. v.* Imaumbarra, 329, i.  
 Barā; *s. v.* Burra-Sahib, 101, ii.  
 Baraepore; ann. 1811: *s. v.* Soorky, 648, i.  
 Barā din; *s. v.* Kissmiss, 370, ii.  
 Barāgi; ann. 1020: *s. v.* Praag, 845, ii.  
 Barāhima; ann. 1298: *s. v.* Brahmin, 84, ii.  
 Barāhlā; *s. v.* Varella, 733, ii.  
 Barakai; *s. v.* Rice, 578, i.  
 Bārakāni; *s. v.* Bargany, 761, i.  
 Bārakāni; *s. v.* Bargany, 761, i.  
 Barākē; *s. v.* Dwarka, 257, ii.  
 Barāmada; *s. v.* Veranda, 736, ii.  
 Barāmadah; *s. v.* Veranda, 737, i.  
 Baramahal; ann. 1881: *s. v.* Barramuhul, 762, i.  
 Bāra-mahall; *s. v.* Barramuhul, 762, i.  
 Baramahl; ann. 1881: *s. v.* Barramuhul, 762, i.  
 Baramputrey; ann. 1767: *s. v.* Burrampooter, 101, ii.  
 Bārān; ann. 1514: *s. v.* Culgee, 786, ii.  
 Bārān; *s. v.* Brandy Coortee, 85, ii.  
 Baranagār; *s. v.* Negrais, 477, i.  
 Baranda; ann. 1631 and 1729 (twice): *s. v.* Veranda, 737, ii.  
 Baraṇḍa; *s. v.* Veranda, 736, ii.  
 Bārāṇḍā; *s. v.* Veranda, 736, ii.  
 Bārānī; *s. v.* Brandy Coortee, 85, ii.  
 Bārānī-kurti; *s. v.* Brandy Coortee, 85, ii.  
 Barānni; ann. 1754: *s. v.* Brandy, 767, i.  
 Baraset; *s. v.* Cadet, 107, i.  
 Bārasingā; *s. v.* Elk, 261, ii.  
 Bārasinghā; *s. v.* Elk, 797, ii. Also Corrigenda, p. xlvii.  
 Barasinha; *s. v.* Elk, 797, ii.  
 Bārasinghā; *s. v.* 51, ii.  
 Barāwa; *s. v.* Brava, 86, i.  
 Barbacā; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Barbican, 52, i.  
 Barbacana; ann. 1270: *s. v.* Barbican, 52, i.  
 Barbacane; ann. 1250 and 1870: *s. v.* Barbican, 52, i.  
 Barbadoes; ann. 1668: *s. v.* Ananas, 19, ii; ann. 1682: *s. v.* Africo, 5, i.  
 Barbados; *s. v.* Rum, 851, ii, twice; ann. 1661: *s. v.* Ananas, 19, i.  
 Barbakh; *s. v.* Barbican, 51, ii.  
 Barbakpūr; ann. 1590: *s. v.* Calcutta, 111, ii.  
 Darbaquane; ann. 1309: *s. v.* Barbican, 52, i, twice.  
 Bārbār; *s. v.* Bālwar, 40, ii.  
 Barbareen; ann. 1810: *s. v.* Modelliar, 435, ii.  
 Barbāri; ann. 545: *s. v.* China, 151, ii.  
 Barbarice; *s. v.* Guardafui, Cape, 305, i; ann. 90: *s. v.* Bdelium, 57, i.  
 Barbaricō; ann. 80-90: *s. v.* Lac, 381, i.  
 Barbaricon; ann. 80-90: *s. v.* Indigo, 334, i.  
 Barbarien Island; ann. 1780: *s. v.* Berberyn, 66, i.  
 Barbarikaf; ann. 114: *s. v.* Scymitar, 855, i.  
 Barbarikēs; *s. v.* Guardafui, Cape, 305, i.  
 Barbary; *s. v.* Dewann, 239, ii, *s. v.* Peer, 524, ii; ann. 545: *s. v.* Zanzibar, 746, i; ann. 1340: *s. v.* Tanga, 682, ii; ann. 1584: *s. v.* Bashaw, 762, i; ann. 1798: *s. v.* Apricot, 758, ii.  
 Barbeers; ann. 1690: *s. v.* Barbiers, 52, ii.  
 Barber; *s. v.* Bālwar, 40, ii, twice.  
 Barberi; ann. 1659: *s. v.* Beriberi, 67, i.  
 Berberyn; *s. v.* Berberyn, 66, i.  
 Barbet; *s. v.* Coppersmith, 195, ii.  
 Barbican; *s. v.* 51, ii, twice; ann. 1552: *s. v.* 52, i.  
 Barbican; ann. 1614: *s. v.* Gombroon, 294, ii.  
 Barbiers; *s. v.* 52, i, twice, *s. v.* Beriberi, 66, i, (3 times) and ii; ann. 1673: *s. v.* 52, i; ann. 1755 and 1768: *s. v.* 52, ii.  
 Barbus; *s. v.* Mahseer, 410, i.  
 Barbus megalepis; *s. v.* Mahseer, 410, i.  
 Barbus Mosul; *s. v.* Mahseer, 410, i.  
 Barbus Tor; *s. v.* Mahseer, 410, i.  
 Barcelon; ann. 1688: *s. v.* Pra, 551, ii.  
 Barcalor; ann. 1548: *s. v.* Bacanore, 33, ii.  
 Barcas; ann. 1498: *s. v.* Sambook, 595, ii.  
 Barceloar; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Bacanore, 34, i, twice.  
 Barcelore; *s. v.* 52, ii, *s. v.* Bacanore, 33, ii, twice, *s. v.* Factory, 264, i; ann. 1814: *s. v.* Bacanore, 34, i.  
 Barcoor-pettah; *s. v.* Bacanore, 33, ii.  
 Barl; *s. v.* Buxee, 103, i, *s. v.* Dhurna, To sit, 244, ii, twice, *s. v.* Gautama, 279, i, *s. v.* Rajpoot, 571, ii, twice; ann. 1810 and 1828: *s. v.* Bhat, 69, ii; ann. 1856: *s. v.* Kuttaur, 379, ii.  
 Bardamana; *s. v.* Burdwan, 100, i.  
 Bardees; ann. 1546: *s. v.* Salsette (b), 595, i.  
 Bardes; ann. 1337: *s. v.* Gallevat (d), 277, i.  
 Bardes; ann. 1602: *s. v.* Salsette (b), 595, ii.  
 Bardez; *s. v.* Salsette (b), 594, ii.  
 Bardh; ann. 1638: *s. v.* Penguin, 527, ii.  
 Bārdrūd; ann. 1020: *s. v.* Lār (a), 386, i.  
 Bardwān; *s. v.* Burdwan, 100, i.  
 Baree Doab; *s. v.* Muzbee, 828, ii.  
 Bareen; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Congo-bunder, 783, ii.  
 Bārem; ann. 1514: *s. v.* Reshire, 848, i.



- Bāres; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Bahar, 36, i.  
 Bāres; ann. 1613: *s. v.* Bahar, 36, i.  
 Barés; ann. 1510: *s. v.* Coir, 180, ii.  
 Bargū; *s. v.* Bargher, 768, ii.  
 Bargani; ann. 1510: *s. v.* Pardao, 840, ii; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Bargany, 761, ii.  
 Bargāni; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Bargany, 761, ii.  
 Bargantys; ann. 1518: *s. v.* Gallevat (d), 277, i.  
 Bargany; *s. v.* 761, i; ann. 1510: *s. v.* Pardao, 840, ii; ann. 1554: *s. v.* 761, ii, twice.  
 Barganyin; ann. 1510: *s. v.* Bargany, 761, ii, *s. v.* Pardao, 840, ii.  
 Bargeer; *s. v.* 52, ii; ann. 1844: *s. v.* 52, ii.  
 Bargel; *s. v.* Ortolan, 493, ii.  
 Bārgīr; *s. v.* Bargeer, 52, ii.  
 Bargósā; *s. v.* Broach, 88, ii; B. C. 20: *s. v.* Broach, 88, ii.  
 Barguani; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Bargany, 761, ii, twice.  
 Barguanim; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Bargany, 761, ii.  
 Barhal; 338, i, footnote.  
 Bāri; ann. 1020: *s. v.* Benares, 764, ii.  
 Bārī bibī; *s. v.* Burra-Beebe, 101, i.  
 Barīd; *s. v.* Dawk, 231, ii, twice.  
 Barīd Shāh; *s. v.* Melique Verido, 823, i.  
 Barigache; *s. v.* Broach, 88, ii.  
 Bārī 'Id; *s. v.* Eed, 259, i.  
 Barikandāz; *s. v.* Burkundauze, 100, ii; *s. v.* Buxerry, 104, ii.  
 Barikandūze; *s. v.* Numerical Affixes, 832, ii.  
 Barkī; *s. v.* Jack, 338, i; ann. 1335: *s. v.* Jack, 337, i and ii.  
 Barking-Deer; *s. v.* 52, ii.  
 Barking-deer; *s. v.* Baikree, 38, i.  
 Bark of clove; *s. v.* Mace (a), 404, i.  
 Barḳōk; *s. v.* Apricot, 24, i.  
 Barkope; ann. 1781: *s. v.* Jungle-Terry, 360, i.  
 Bārūr; *s. v.* Bacanore, 33, ii.  
 Barma; ann. 1680: *s. v.* Burma, 768, ii; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Burma, 101, i.  
 Barmas; ann. 1220: *s. v.* Daróga, 230, i.  
 Barnā; *s. v.* Benares, 764, ii.  
 Barnagur; ann. 1679 *s. v.* Tumlook, 864, ii; ann. 1781: *s. v.* Hanger, 312, ii.  
 Baroach; ann. 1679: *s. v.* Larry-bunder, 816, ii; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Bafta, 35, ii; ann. 1803: *s. v.* Broach, 89, i.  
 Baroch; *s. v.* Bafta, 35, ii, twice, *s. v.* Cubeer Burr, 215, i.  
 Barochie; ann. 1552 and 1617: *s. v.* Broach, 89, i; ann. 1653: *s. v.* Bafta, 35, ii; ann. 1666: *s. v.* Bombay, 77, ii.  
 Barochi; ann. 1623: *s. v.* Broach, 89, i.  
 Barochie; ann. 1613: *s. v.* Dungaree, 255, i.  
 Baroda; *s. v.* 52, ii, *s. v.* Bora, 80, i, twice, *s. v.* Factory, 264, i, *s. v.* Goozerat, 296, ii, *s. v.* Khutput, 367, ii, *s. v.* Resident, 576, ii; ann. 1808: *s. v.* Dubber, 253, ii, ann. 1857: *s. v.* 53, i.  
 Barodar; ann. 1552 and 1606: *s. v.* Baroda, 53, i.  
 Baros; *s. v.* 53, i; ann. 1584: *s. v.* Benjamin, 65, ii; ann. 1726: *s. v.* Camphor, 117, i; ann. 1727: *s. v.* 53, i.  
 Barouse; ann. 1623: *s. v.* Camphor, 117, i.  
 Bárroussai; *s. v.* Nicobar Islands, 478, ii.  
 Barpatra; ann. 1857: *s. v.* Baroda, 53, i.  
 Barr; *s. v.* Malabar, 411, ii.  
 Barra; ann. 1505: *s. v.* Andor, 758, i.  
 Barrackpore; *s. v.* 53, i, *s. v.* Achánock, 2, ii, *s. v.* Batta, 54, ii, *s. v.* Black, 74, i, *s. v.* Pandi, 509, i; ann. 1787: *s. v.* Bungalow, 99, i; ann. 1810: *s. v.* Achánock, 2, ii; ann. 1824: *s. v.* Bungalow, 99, i; ann. 1835: *s. v.* Doorga pooja: 250, ii; ann. 1848: *s. v.* Achánock, 2, ii, twice.  
 Barramuhul; *s. v.* 762, i.  
 Barrannee; ann. 1788: *s. v.* Brandy Coortee, 85, ii.  
 Barre; *s. v.* Macareo, 403, i, ann. 1569: *s. v.* Bahar, 36, i.  
 Barrempoote; ann. 1726: *s. v.* Burrampooter, 101, ii.  
 Barren Island; *s. v.* Narcondam, 472, ii, 3 times, 473, i, 6 times, 829, i.  
 Barres; *s. v.* Chicane, 146, i.  
 Barriar; ann. 1726: *s. v.* Pariah, 514, ii.  
 Barrier; ann. 1717: *s. v.* Pariah, 514, ii.  
 Barrowse; *s. v.* Baros, 53, i.  
 Barsalor; ann. 1780: *s. v.* Bacanore, 34, i.  
 Barsāt; *s. v.* Bursantee, 102, i.  
 Barsāti; *s. v.* Bursantee, 102, i.  
 Barseloor; ann. 1726: *s. v.* Bacanore, 34, i.  
 Barshāwūr; ann. 1220: *s. v.* Peshawur, 531, ii.  
 Barshūr; ann. 1059: *s. v.* Peshawur, 531, ii.  
 Barsilur Peak; *s. v.* Bacanore, 33, ii.  
 Baruays; ann. 1807: *s. v.* Garce, 278, ii, twice.  
 Barūch; ann. 1150: *s. v.* Sindābūr, 635, i.  
 Barūgaza; ann. 150: *s. v.* Lār (a), 386, i.  
 Barūgāza; *s. v.* Broach, 88, ii.  
 Barūgāzōn; ann. 80-90: *s. v.* Supára, 663, i.  
 Barūh; ann. 1150: *s. v.* Sindābūr, 635, i.  
 Barūj; ann. 1555: *s. v.* Baroda, 53, i, *s. v.* Broach, 89, i.  
 Barns; *s. v.* Camphor, 116, ii; ann. 1875: *s. v.* Camphor, 117, i.  
 Barús; ann. 718: *s. v.* Broach, 89, i.  
 Barwālah; ann. 1255: *s. v.* Siwalik (a), 641, i.  
 Barygaza; *s. v.* Honore, 321, i; ann. 80: *s. v.*



- Broach, 89, i, twice, *s. v.* Sissoo, 639, i, *s. v.*  
Teak, 692, ii; ann. 80-89: *s. v.* China, 151, i;  
ann. 80-90: *s. v.* Calyan, 114, ii twice, *s. v.*  
Deccan, 233, ii.  
Bas; *s. v.* Bus, 102, i, twice.  
Basai; ann. 1590: *s. v.* Surat, 665, i.  
Basain; ann. 1565: *s. v.* Bassein (1), 53, ii.  
Bāsan; *s. v.* Bassan, 762, i.  
Basanderi; *s. v.* Sunderbunds, 660, i and ii (twice).  
Basandhari; *s. v.* Sunderbunds, 660, ii and foot-  
note.  
Basanto; *s. v.* Dhawk, 241, ii.  
Basaraco; ann. 1760: *s. v.* Budbrook, 93, i, twice.  
Basare; ann. 1610: *s. v.* Bazaar, 57, i.  
Basarucchi; ann. 1584: *s. v.* Pardao, 841, i, 3  
times.  
Basaruecho; ann. 1598: *s. v.* Pardao, 841, ii.  
Basaruco; ann. 1598: *s. v.* Pardao, 841, ii,  
twice; ann. 1611: *s. v.* Budbrook, 92, ii.  
Basaruchi; ann. 1584: *s. v.* Pardao, 841, i.  
Basaruchie; ann. 1584: *s. v.* Shroff, 630, i, twice,  
*s. v.* Bargany, 761, ii, *s. v.* Pardao, 841, i.  
Basarucos; ann. 1609 and 1611: *s. v.* Budbrook,  
92, ii.  
Basarukes; ann. 1598: *s. v.* Budbrook, 92, ii.  
Bāsarūr; ann. 1330: *s. v.* Bacanore, 33, ii.  
Bāsava; *s. v.* Lingait, 394, ii.  
Bāsbāsa; ann. 1224: *s. v.* Java, 348, i; ann.  
1347: *s. v.* Mace (a), 404, i.  
Bascha; ann. 1610: *s. v.* Bashaw, 53, ii.  
Baselum; ann. 636: *s. v.* Buggalow, 94, ii.  
Baseruques; ann. 1608-1610: *s. v.* Curry, 218, ii.  
Bāsh; ann. 1590: *s. v.* Bashaw, 762, i.  
Bāshā; *s. v.* Bashaw, 53, i; ann. 1590: *s. v.*  
Bashaw, 762, i.  
Bashaw; *s. v.* 53, i, 762, i; ann. 1702 and 1727:  
*s. v.* 53, ii.  
Bashi-Bozouk; ann. 1878: *s. v.* Nabob (b), 468, ii.  
Bashkird; *s. v.* Shulwaurs, 631, i.  
Basīdū; *s. v.* Bassadore, 762, i.  
Bāsīdū; *s. v.* Bassadore, 53, ii.  
Basil; *s. v.* Toolsy, 709, ii; ann. 1885: *s. v.*  
Toolsy, 863, ii.  
Basilico gentile; ann. 1672: *s. v.* Toolsy, 709, ii.  
Basim; *s. v.* Bassein (3), 54, i.  
Basin; *s. v.* 53, ii.  
Basma; *s. v.* Pasei, 517, i, *s. v.* Sumatra, 657, i;  
ann. 1292: *s. v.* Pasei, 517, i; ann. 1298:  
*s. v.* Sumatra, 658, i.  
Basora; ann. 1563: *s. v.* Carrack, 126, ii.  
Basque; *s. v.* Calavance, 110, ii, *s. v.* Dhow,  
243, ii, *s. v.* Macareo, 403, i, twice.  
Basra; *s. v.* Balsora, 40, ii, *s. v.* India, 330, ii,  
*s. v.* Bussora, 768, ii; ann. 930: *s. v.* Orange,  
491, i; ann. 940: *s. v.* Teak, 693, i; ann.  
1200: *s. v.* Saffron, 589, ii.  
Basrah; ann. 916: *s. v.* Choul, 163, i.  
Basrook; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Reas, 575, i; ann.  
1675: *s. v.* Xerafine, 743, ii.  
Basrūr; *s. v.* Bacanore, 33, ii.  
Bassa; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Bashaw, 53, ii; ann. 1584  
and 1590 (twice): *s. v.* Bashaw, 762, i; ann.  
1648: *s. v.* Firman, 270, i.  
Bassadore; *s. v.* 53, ii, 762, i; ann. 1677: *s. v.*  
Congo-bunder, 783, i; ann. 1821: *s. v.* Kishun,  
370, ii.  
Bassai; ann. 1507: *s. v.* Bombay, 77, i; ann.  
1756: *s. v.* Bassein (1), 53, ii.  
Bassaim; ann. 1623: *s. v.* Paulist, 521, ii.  
Bassain; 839, ii, footnote; ann. 1623: *s. v.*  
St. John's, 591, i.  
Bassan; *s. v.* 762, i.  
Bassatu; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Bassadore, 53, ii;  
ann. 1677: *s. v.* Congo-bunder, 783, i.  
Basseen; ann. 1793: *s. v.* Teak, 693, ii.  
Bassein; *s. v.* 53, ii, *s. v.* Banyan (1), 48, i, *s. v.*  
China-Buckee, 153, i, *s. v.* Choul, 162, ii, *s. v.*  
Cosmin, 201, i, 5 times, *s. v.* Persaim, 530, ii,  
*s. v.* Supara, 662, ii, *s. v.* Tanga, 682, ii, *s. v.*  
Alguada, 755, ii; ann. 1507: *s. v.* Bombay,  
77, i; ann. 1590: *s. v.* Surat, 665, i; ann.  
1674: *s. v.* Chowt, 166, i; ann. 1799: *s. v.*  
Caréns, 773, i.  
Basseloor; ann. 1726: *s. v.* Bacanore, 34, i,  
twice.  
Basses, Little; ann. 1781: *s. v.* Ceylon, 776, ii.  
Bassia latifolia; *s. v.* Mohwa, 439, ii and footnote.  
Bassia longifolia; 439, ii, footnote.  
Bassien; ann. 1795: *s. v.* Persaim, 530, ii, twice.  
Bassora; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Gallevat (d), 277, i;  
ann. 1580: *s. v.* Bussora, 768, ii; ann. 1727:  
*s. v.* Bashaw, 53, ii.  
Basta; *s. v.* Bus, 102, i, twice.  
Bastūh; ann. 930: *s. v.* Zend, 869, i.  
Bastar; ann. 1590: *s. v.* Telinga, 694, ii.  
Bastār; *s. v.* Cowry, 209, i, twice.  
Bastard floriken; ann. 1807: *s. v.* Florican, 270, ii.  
Bastard-galley; ann. 1602: *s. v.* Tanadar, 861, i.  
Bastard saffron; *s. v.* Country, 206, ii, *s. v.*  
Safflower, 588, ii.  
Basti; *s. v.* Bustee, 102, i.  
Bastī; *s. v.* Bustee, 102, i.  
Bastinado; *s. v.* Farāsh, 266, ii.  
Bastra; ann. 1298: *s. v.* Bussora, 768, ii.



- Bat; *s. v.* Tical, 699, ii; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Rajpoot, 572, i.
- Bât; *s. v.* Batta, 55, i, twice; ann. 1789: *s. v.* Batta (a), 55, i.
- Bât; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Rajpoot, 572, i; ann. 1555: *s. v.* Bhat, 69, i, twice.
- Bata; *s. v.* Batta, 762, ii, twice; ann. 1539: *s. v.* Lanchara, 384, i, *s. v.* Shabunder, 618, ii; ann. 1548: *s. v.* Batta (a), 55, i.
- Batachi; ann. 1586: *s. v.* Battas, 763, i.
- Batachala; ann. 1618: *s. v.* Batcul, 54, ii.
- Batacola; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Bacanore, 34, i, *s. v.* Batcul, 54, ii.
- Batae; ann. 1538: *s. v.* Pedir, 523, ii; ann. 1539: *s. v.* A Muck, 13, ii.
- Batai; *s. v.* Camphor, 116, ii.
- Bâtaka; *s. v.* Pataca, 517, ii.
- Bataks; *s. v.* Battas, 55, ii, 763, i.
- Batāla; ann. 1590: *s. v.* Telings, 694, ii.
- Batān; 566, i, footnote.
- Batang; *s. v.* Numerical Affixes, 831, i.
- Batao; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Batta (b), 55, ii.
- Batāra; *s. v.* 762, i.
- Batas; ann. 1539: *s. v.* Calambac, 110, ii; ann. 1555: *s. v.* Battas, 55, ii.
- Batata; *s. v.* Sweet Potato, 672, ii, 673, i; ann. 1540 and 1550: *s. v.* Sweet Potato, 673, i.
- Batatas; *s. v.* Sweet Potato, 672, ii, 3 times, 673, i.
- Batatas edulis; *s. v.* Sweet Potato, 672, ii.
- Batate; ann. 1516: *s. v.* Pariah, 514, i; ann. 1519: *s. v.* Sweet Potato, 673, i.
- Batavia; *s. v.* 54, i, *s. v.* Beer, Country, 60, i, *s. v.* Bombay Marine (1), 78, ii, *s. v.* Calcutta, 109, ii, *s. v.* Compound, 187, ii, *s. v.* Factory, 264, ii, *s. v.* Java, 346, ii, *s. v.* Presidency, 553, i, see 660, i, footnote, *s. v.* Upas, 727, ii, 728, i, *s. v.* Calash, 770, ii, 771, i; ann. 1619 and 649: *s. v.* 54, i; ann. 1659: *s. v.* A Muck, 14, ii, twice; ann. 1661: *s. v.* Pommelo, 845, i; ann. 1665: *s. v.* Aracan, 758, ii; ann. 1682: *s. v.* Punch, 846, i; ann. 1697: *s. v.* Hindostanee, 807, i; ann. 1702: *s. v.* Presidency, 553, i; ann. 1747: *s. v.* Leaguer, 819, i; ann. 1768: *s. v.* Shabunder, 855, ii; ann. 1768-71: *s. v.* Kobang, 815, i, *s. v.* Impale, 808, i, *s. v.* Norimon, 831, i; ann. 1783: *s. v.* Upas, 731, i; ann. 1794-5: *s. v.* Calay, 111, ii; ann. 1798: *s. v.* A Muck, 15, i.
- Batavi nambu; *s. v.* Pommelo, 545, ii.
- Batchian; ann. 1774: *s. v.* Mandarin, 422, i.
- Batcoal; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Beiteul, 61, ii.
- Batcole; *s. v.* Batcul, 54, i.
- Batcul; *s. v.* 54, i; ann. 1516: *s. v.* Pardao, 840, ii; ann. 1785: *s. v.* Dhow, 243, ii.
- Bate; *s. v.* Ratta, 762, ii; ann. 1548: *s. v.* Batta (a), 55, i, *s. v.* Tanadar, 681, ii; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Bombay, 77, ii; ann. 1618: *s. v.* Paddy, 496, i.
- Baté; ann. 1536: *s. v.* Salsette (a), 594, ii.
- Batera; *s. v.* Pateca, 519, i.
- Batecala; *s. v.* Batcul, 54, i; ann. 1618: *s. v.* Candy (s.), 119, ii.
- Batecalaa; ann. 1548: *s. v.* Batcul, 54, i.
- Batecalou; ann. 1600: *s. v.* Paddy, 496, i.
- Batee; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Moorah, 447, i, twice, *s. v.* Batta, 763, i.
- Batel; *s. v.* 54, ii; ann. 1540: *s. v.* Alcatif, 7, i.
- Batela; ann. 1872: *s. v.* Grab, 300, ii.
- Batell; *s. v.* Batel, 54, ii.
- Batelo; *s. v.* Batel, 54, ii.
- Bater; ann. 1754: *s. v.* Bahadur, 759, ii.
- Bathecala; ann. 1510: *s. v.* Batcul, 54, i.
- Bathech; ann. 1430: *s. v.* Battas, 55, ii.
- Bathein; *s. v.* Bassein (2), 53, ii, *s. v.* Cosmin, 201, i.
- Baticala; ann. 1516: *s. v.* Pardao, 840, ii; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Bacanore, 34, i.
- Baticalá; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Bacanore, 34, i; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Honore, 321, ii.
- Baticalà; *s. v.* Wootz, 742, i.
- Baticalou; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Trincomalee, 715, ii.
- Baticola; ann. 1599: *s. v.* Batcul, 54, i.
- Batiee indi; *s. v.* Pateca, 518, ii.
- Batigala; ann. 1328: *s. v.* Batcul, 54, i.
- Bätik; *s. v.* Chintz, 156, i.
- Batikala; *s. v.* Factory, 264, i.
- Batinata; ann. 1624: *s. v.* Jogee, 352, ii.
- Bât-money; *s. v.* Batta, 55, i.
- Bato; ann. 1245: *s. v.* Kowtow, 377, i.
- Bátor; *s. v.* Bahadur, 37, i.
- Bat River; *s. v.* Seychelle Islands, 617, i.
- Batta; *s. v.* 54, ii, 5 times, (b), 55, i, 3 times, 762, i (twice) and ii (6 times), 763, i, *s. v.* Camphor, 116, ii, *s. v.* Catty (b), 134, ii, *s. v.* Paddy, 495, ii, *s. v.* Sicca, 632, ii; ann. 1511: *s. v.* 763, i; ann. 1548: *s. v.* (a), 55, i; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Maistry, 410, ii; ann. 1680: *s. v.* Taliar, 678, ii, *s. v.* (b), 763, i, twice; ann. 1707: *s. v.* (a), 55, i; ann. 1760: *s. v.* 763, i; ann. 1765, 1789 and 1799: *s. v.* (a), 55, i; ann. 1810: *s. v.* (b) 55, ii; ann. 1829 and 1857: *s. v.* (a) 55, ii.
- Batta; *s. v.* Batta (b), 55, i.
- Bättä; *s. v.* Batta (b), 55, i.



- Battāla; ann. 1345: *s. v.* Putlam, 565, ii.  
 Battas; *s. v.* 55, ii, 763, i; ann. 1539 and 1613:  
*s. v.* 55, ii.  
 Battata; ann. 1600: *s. v.* Sweet Potato, 673, ii.  
 Batte; ann. 1598: *s. v.* Paddy, 496, i.  
 Batteca; ann. 1739: *s. v.* Boutique, 82, i.  
 Battecole; ann. 1711: *s. v.* Beiteul, 61, ii.  
 Batte Cove; ann. 1711: *s. v.* Beiteul, 61, ii.  
 Battee; *s. v.* Batta, 763, i; ann. 1680: *s. v.* Taliar,  
 678, ii, *s. v.* Batta, 763, i.  
 Battēla; ann. 1857: *s. v.* Batel, 54, ii.  
 Batticala; ann. 1726: *s. v.* Cañara, 118, ii.  
 Battikh; 519, i, footnote.  
 Battikh; 519, ii, footnote.  
 Battis; *s. v.* Punch, 558, ii.  
 Bättisi; *s. v.* Punch, 558, ii.  
 Battologuizing; ann. 1630: *s. v.* Talisman, 679, ii.  
 Batty; *s. v.* Catty (b), 134, ii, *s. v.* Paddy, 495,  
 ii, *s. v.* Batta, 762, ii, 763, i, twice; ann.  
 1673: *s. v.* Mazagong, 432, i, *s. v.* Paddy,  
 496, i; ann. 1813: *s. v.* Moorah, 447, i.  
 Batty-grounds; *s. v.* Foras Lands, 272, ii.  
 Batty grounds; ann. 1852: *s. v.* Foras Lands,  
 273, i.  
 Batu; *s. v.* Oordoo, 438, i.  
 Bātū Khān; *s. v.* Buxee, 103, i.  
 Batum; ann. 1615: *s. v.* Paddy, 496, i.  
 Bātur; *s. v.* Bahaudur, 37, i.  
 Baturu; *s. v.* Bahaudur, 37, i; ann. 1878: *s. v.*  
 Bahaudur, 37, ii, twice.  
 Bat'uru; ann. 1879: *s. v.* Bahaudur, 37, ii.  
 Batushka; *s. v.* Bata, 31, ii.  
 Batyr; *s. v.* Bahaudur, 37, i; ann. 1876: *s. v.*  
 Bahaudur, 37, ii.  
 Bauboo; ann. 1781: *s. v.* Baboo, 759, ii.  
 Baudas; ann. 1253: *s. v.* Caleefa, 112, i, twice;  
 ann. 1298: *s. v.* Caleefa, 112, ii, *s. v.* Bussora,  
 768, ii.  
 Bang-doore; *s. v.* Moors, The, 447, ii.  
 Baugheruttee; *s. v.* Hoogly River, 322, ii.  
 Banglipoor; ann. 1796: *s. v.* Tussab, 721, i.  
 Bauhinia variegata; *s. v.* Cutchnar, 224, i.  
 Baul; *s. v.* Bowla, 82, i.  
 Bauleah; *s. v.* Boliab, 76, ii.  
 Bāulia; *s. v.* Boliab, 76, ii.  
 Bauté; ann. 1666: *s. v.* Buddha, 91, i.  
 Bāvaḍi; *s. v.* Bowly, 82, i.  
 Bāvi; *s. v.* Bowly, 82, i.  
 Bāviḍi; *s. v.* Bowly, 82, i, twice.  
 Bawa-angin; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Zirbad, 750, i.  
 Bawa Gori Akik; ann. 1849: *s. v.* Babagooree, 32, i.  
 Bawaleea; ann. 1811: *s. v.* Boliab, 76, ii.  
 Bāwarchi; *s. v.* Bobachee, 75, ii, twice; ann.  
 1590: *s. v.* Bobachee, 75, ii.  
 Bāwarchi connah; *s. v.* Khanna, 366, i.  
 Bāwarchi-khāna; *s. v.* Bobachee-Connah, 76, i.  
 Bāwerdjy; ann. 1333: *s. v.* Bobachee, 75, ii, twice.  
 Bawt; ann. 1810: *s. v.* Bhat, 69, ii.  
 Bawustye; *s. v.* 55, ii.  
 Baxel; *s. v.* Buggalow, 94, i, twice.  
 Baxella; *s. v.* Buggalow, 94, i.  
 Bay, The; *s. v.* 55, ii, twice, 763, i, *s. v.* Bala-  
 sore, 39, i; ann. 1670: *s. v.* President, 845, ii;  
 ann. 1683: *s. v.* 55, ii; ann. 1747: *s. v.* 763, ii.  
 Baya; *s. v.* 56, i, *s. v.* Toddy-bird, 707, i, *s. v.*  
 Weaver-Bird, 740, i.  
 Bayā; ann. 1790: *s. v.* Baya, 56, i.  
 Bayadère; *s. v.* 56, i, 3 times, 763, ii, *s. v.* Danc-  
 ing-girl, 229, i, *s. v.* Nautch-girl, 475, i; ann.  
 1782 (twice) and 1825: *s. v.* 56, ii; ann. 1836:  
*s. v.* 763, ii, twice.  
 Bāyat; ann. 1080: *s. v.* Candahar, 119, i.  
 Bay berries; ann. 1628: *s. v.* Coffee, 179, ii.  
 Baydour; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Cañara, 118, ii.  
 Bayezid; ann. 1519: *s. v.* Peshawur, 531, ii.  
 Bayladeiras; ann. 1526: *s. v.* Bayadère, 56, i.  
 Bayladores; ann. 1526: *s. v.* Bayadère, 56, i.  
 Bay leaves; ann. 1521: *s. v.* Areca, 25, ii.  
 Baylen; ann. 1644: *s. v.* Doney, 250, i.  
 Bayparree; *s. v.* 763, ii.  
 Baypore; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Beypoor, 68, ii.  
 Bazaar; *s. v.* 56, ii; ann. 1347: *s. v.* Macheen,  
 406, i, twice; ann. 1686: *s. v.* Chetty, 145,  
 i; ann. 1760-1810: *s. v.* Linguist, 395, ii;  
 ann. 1802: *s. v.* Sayer, 606, i; ann. 1803:  
*s. v.* Pagoda (c), 502, i; ann. 1808: *s. v.*  
 Dhurna, 791, i; ann. 1839: *s. v.* Singara,  
 637, ii; ann. 1860: *s. v.* Jaggery, 341, i;  
 ann. 1873: *s. v.* 57, i, twice; ann. 1880: *s. v.*  
 Ramasammy, 573, i; ann. 1885: *s. v.* Sola,  
 646, ii.  
 Bāzahar; ann. 1610: *s. v.* Bezoar, 69, i.  
 Bāzahr; *s. v.* Bezoar, 68, ii.  
 Bazand; ann. 930: *s. v.* Zend, 869, i.  
 Bazar; *s. v.* Ananas, 20, i, *s. v.* Apricot, 24, i,  
*s. v.* Beetlefakee, 60, ii, *s. v.* Bendy-Tree, 64,  
 i, *s. v.* Black Town, 75, i, *s. v.* Brahminy Bull,  
 85, i, *s. v.* Badgrook, 92, i, *s. v.* Camphor, 116,  
 ii, *s. v.* Catechu, 133, i, *s. v.* Cawnpore, 136, i,  
 see 156, i, footnote, *s. v.* Cutch Pice, 222, i,  
 see 258, i, footnote, *s. v.* Ganza, 278, i, *s. v.*  
 Goa Stone, 290, ii, *s. v.* Majoon, 411, i, *s. v.*



- Mamiran, 419, i, twice, *s. v.* Patchouli, 518, i, *s. v.* Sayer, 604, i (twice) and ii, 605, i, *s. v.* Scavenger, 607, i, *s. v.* Zedoary, 747, ii, twice; *s. v.* Sayer, 854, ii; ann. 1150: *s. v.* Sindābūr, 635, i; ann. 1340: *s. v.* Palankeen, 503, i; ann. 1343: *s. v.* Gogo, 293, i, *s. v.* Pandarāni, 508, ii; ann. 1345: *s. v.* Choolia, 159, ii; ann. 1404: *s. v.* Aljofar, 755, ii; ann. 1474, 1478, 1563 and 1564: *s. v.* Bazaar, 56, ii; ann. 1599: *s. v.* Mace (b), 405, i; ann. 1606: *s. v.* Bazaar, 57, i; ann. 1613: *s. v.* Bezoar, 69, i, *s. v.* Cheling, 144, i, *s. v.* Compound, 188, i, twice, *s. v.* Sampar, 596, ii; ann. 1619: *s. v.* Caravanseray, 124, ii; ann. 1660: *s. v.* Cunchunee, 217, i; ann. 1665: *s. v.* Taj, 860, i; ann. 1711: *s. v.* Chick (b), 148, ii; ann. 1752: *s. v.* Fanām, 266, i; ann. 1783: *s. v.* Cobily Mash, 172, ii; ann. 1784: *s. v.* Buggy, 95, i; ann. 1787: *s. v.* Chit, 778, i; ann. 1793: *s. v.* Chobdar, 157, ii; ann. 1804: *s. v.* Tom-tom, 708, ii; ann. 1808: *s. v.* Dubber, 253, ii; ann. 1816: *s. v.* Pice, 534, i; ann. 1837: *s. v.* Bazaar, 57, i, *s. v.* Malabathrum, 415, ii; ann. 1848: *s. v.* Achánock, 2, ii; ann. 1878: *s. v.* Nerrick, 473, i.
- Bázár; *s. v.* Bazaar, 56, ii.
- Bázār; *s. v.* Bazaar, 56, ii.
- Bazara; ann. 1570, 1705 and 1723: *s. v.* Budgerow, 91, ii.
- Bazard; ann. 1666: *s. v.* Bazaar, 57, i.
- Bazares; ann. 1564: *s. v.* Bazaar, 56, ii.
- Bazar Maund; *s. v.* Seer, 611, i.
- Bazarra; *s. v.* Bazaar, 56, ii.
- Bazarri; ann. 1566: *s. v.* Bazaar, 57, i.
- Bazarro; ann. 1478: *s. v.* Bazaar, 56, ii.
- Bázār-ruka; *s. v.* Budgrook, 92, i.
- Bazaruccio; *s. v.* Budgrook, 92, i, twice.
- Bazaruchies; ann. 1584: *s. v.* Pardao, 841, i.
- Bazaruco; ann. 1510: *s. v.* Pardao, 840, ii, 3 times; ann. 1548: *s. v.* Sind, 634, ii; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Budgrook, 92, ii, twice, *s. v.* Bargany, 761, ii.
- Bazarugo; ann. 1510: *s. v.* Pardao, 840, ii.
- Bazoozah; ann. 1590: *s. v.* Burrampooter, 101, ii.
- Bazzari; ann. 1474: *s. v.* Bazaar, 56, ii.
- Bdallyūn; ann. 1230: *s. v.* Bdelium, 57, i.
- Bdella; ann. 90: *s. v.* Bdelium, 57, i.
- Bdelium; *s. v.* 57, i, 3 times, 764, i, twice, *s. v.* Googul, 296, i, twice, *s. v.* Rum, 584, ii; ann. 80-90: *s. v.* Indigo, 334, i; ann. 1020: *s. v.* Lār (a), 386, i; ann. 1030: *s. v.* Cutch, 222, i; ann. 1612: *s. v.* 57, i.
- Bdōlah; *s. v.* Bdelium, 57, i.
- Beadala; *s. v.* 57, i and ii, *s. v.* Chilaw, 149, ii; ann. 1543: *s. v.* Chilaw, 777, ii.
- Beadala; ann. 1572: *s. v.* Beadala, 57, ii.
- Beadalá; ann. 1552 and 1562; *s. v.* Beadala, 57, ii.
- Be'adálá; ann. 1572: *s. v.* Beadala, 58, i.
- Bearer; *s. v.* 58, i, times, 764, i, *s. v.* Dawk, To lay a, 282, ii, 3 times, *s. v.* Dressing-boy, 252, i, *s. v.* Kuhár, 378, i, *s. v.* Lalla, 383, i, *s. v.* Mate, 430, i, *s. v.* Palankeen, 502, ii, 503, i, *s. v.* Sirdar, 638, ii, *s. v.* Sirdárs, 638, ii, twice, *s. v.* Tonjon, 709, i, twice, *s. v.* Chowdry, 779, ii; ann. 1660: *s. v.* Palankeen, 836, ii; ann. 1760: *s. v.* 58, i, (a), *s. v.* Chawbuck, 777, i; ann. 1764: *s. v.* Farash, 798, ii; ann. 1779: *s. v.* Syce, 860, i, 3 times; ann. 1784: *s. v.* Kitmutgar, 371, i, *s. v.* Manjee, 427, i; ann. 1789: *s. v.* Dhooly, 242, i; ann. 1796: *s. v.* Dawk, 232, i; ann. 1803: *s. v.* 58, ii, (a); ann. 1809: *s. v.* Tappaul, 685, ii; ann. 1810: *s. v.* Bucksheesh, 89, ii; ann. 1815: *s. v.* 58, ii, (b); ann. 1816: *s. v.* Fly, 799, i; ann. 1853: *s. v.* Bucksheesh, 89, ii; ann. 1872: *s. v.* Dhooly, 242, ii; ann. 1876: *s. v.* 58, ii; ann. 1880: *s. v.* Muncheel, 457, i.
- Bearra; ann. 1679: *s. v.* Behar, 764, ii.
- Bear-tree; *s. v.* 58, i, 764, i.
- Beasar; ann. 1605: *s. v.* Bezoar, 68, ii.
- Beasty; ann. 1781: *s. v.* Bheesty, 70, i; ann. 1782: *s. v.* Bheesty, 765, i.
- Beata; *s. v.* Betteela, 68, i, twice.
- Beatelle; *s. v.* Betteela, 68, i.
- Beatilha; *s. v.* Betteela, 68, i; ann. 1572: *s. v.* Betteela, 68, i.
- Beatilla; *s. v.* Betteela, 68, i.
- Beatillias; ann. 1598: *s. v.* Betteela, 68, i.
- Beaulah; ann. 1767: *s. v.* Moorpunky, 825, i.
- Beauliah; ann. 1834: *s. v.* Boliah, 76, ii.
- Bačaim; ann. 1563: *s. v.* Bael, 35, i.
- Becare; ann. 70-80: *s. v.* Madura, 408, i.
- Beccuto; *s. v.* Toucan, 714, i.
- Bechanah; ann. 1689: *s. v.* Bichána, 70, ii.
- Beche-de-mer; *s. v.* Tripang, 716, i.
- Bechnäg; *s. v.* Bish, 72, ii.
- Bed; *s. v.* Vedas, 734, ii, twice; ann. 1774: *s. v.* Vedas, 735, ii.
- Bedar; *s. v.* Bidree, 70, ii, *s. v.* Byde Horse, 105, i, 769, ii, twice; ann. 1869: *s. v.* Poligar, 544, i.
- Bedas; ann. 1770: *s. v.* Vedas, 735, ii, *s. v.* Veddás, 736, i.
- Beddas; ann. 1675: *s. v.* Veddás, 736, i.
- Boddou; ann. 1681: *s. v.* Dewally (b), 238, ii.



- Bede; *s. v.* Byde Horse, 105, i, 5 times, *s. v.* Veda, 734, ii; ann. 1590: *s. v.* Veda, 734, ii; ann. 1758: *s. v.* Byde Horse, 105, i; ann. 1799: *s. v.* Veda, 736, i; ann. 1802: *s. v.* Byde Horse, 105, i.
- Bēde; ann. 1650: *s. v.* Mogul, 436, ii.
- Bede Horse; *s. v.* Byde Horse, 105, i, twice, 769, ii.
- Beder; ann. 1470: *s. v.* Coss, 203, i, 3 times; ann. 1563: *s. v.* Melique Verido, 823, i.
- Bedin-janas; ann. 1738: *s. v.* Brinjal, 87, i.
- Bedmure; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Carnatic, 126, i, *s. v.* Rance, 574, i.
- Bednor; *s. v.* Byde Horse, 769, ii.
- Bednore; ann. 1759: *s. v.* Cacouli, 769, ii.
- Bednür; ann. 1678: *s. v.* Rance, 574, i.
- Bedouin; *s. v.* Ferázee, 267, i, see 631, i, footnote.
- Beebee; *s. v.* 58, ii; ann. 1834: *s. v.* Mustees, 462, ii, twice.
- Beech-de-Mer; *s. v.* 59, i.
- Beechmán; *s. v.* 59, i.
- Beefsteak bird; *s. v.* Mannickjore, 427, i.
- Beega; ann. 1763: *s. v.* Beegah, 59, i.
- Beegah; *s. v.* 59, i, twice, *s. v.* Cotta, 205, ii, *s. v.* Gudge, 307, i; ann. 1784: *s. v.* Khiraj, 367, i; ann. 1788: *s. v.* Black, 766, i; ann. 1877: *s. v.* 59, ii.
- Beegum; *s. v.* 59, ii, twice, 764, i; ann. 1827: *s. v.* Buxee, 769, i.
- Beejanugger; *s. v.* Bisnagar, 73, i, *s. v.* Cañara, 117, ii.
- Beejapore; ann. 1706-7: *s. v.* Pindarry, 539, i.
- Beejoo; *s. v.* 59, ii, *s. v.* Grave-digger, 302, ii.
- Beer; *s. v.* 59, ii, 3 times, 764, i, *s. v.* Pale Ale, 504, ii, twice; ann. 1631: *s. v.* Beer, Country, 60, i, twice; ann. 1638: *s. v.* 764, i; ann. 1690 and 1810: *s. v.* 59, ii; ann. 1814: *s. v.* 60, i.
- Beer, Country; *s. v.* 60, i, 764, i; ann. 1782: *s. v.* 764, i, twice; ann. 1789 and 1810: *s. v.* 60, i.
- Beerboom; ann. 1760: *s. v.* Telinga, 695, i.
- Beer-Drinking; *s. v.* 60, i.
- Beer-shraub; *s. v.* Sherbet, 625, ii.
- Beestie; ann. 1781: *s. v.* Harry, 313, i.
- Beeswax; ann. 1711: *s. v.* Martaban, 429, i.
- Beetle; ann. 1594: *s. v.* Souba, 649, ii; ann. 1677: *s. v.* Betel, 765, i; ann. 1711: *s. v.* Pariah-Arrack, 515, ii; ann. 1781: *s. v.* Cheroot, 144, ii.
- Beetlefackie; *s. v.* Beetlefackee, 60, ii.
- Beetlefackee; *s. v.* 60, ii.
- Beetle-fuckee; ann. 1690: *s. v.* Beetlefackee, 60, ii.
- Beg; *s. v.* Beegum, 59, ii, *s. v.* Mogul, 436, i; ann. 1505: *s. v.* Khanum, 366, ii, twice; ann. 1869: *s. v.* Syud, 674, ii.
- Begah; ann. 1823: *s. v.* Beegah, 59, ii, twice.
- Begala; ann. 1516: *s. v.* Arakan, 24, ii.
- Begam; *s. v.* Beegum, 59, ii, *s. v.* Taj, 860, i.
- Begar; *s. v.* 60, ii.
- Begār; ann. 1882: *s. v.* Begar, 61, i.
- Begār; *s. v.* Begar, 60, ii, twice.
- Begaree; ann. 1815: *s. v.* Begar, 61, i.
- Begāri; *s. v.* Begar, 60, ii.
- Begāri; *s. v.* Begar, 60, ii.
- Begguaryns; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Begar, 61, i.
- Beglerbeg; ann. 1630: *s. v.* Padshaw, 497, ii; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Bashaw, 53, ii.
- Begti; *s. v.* Cockup, 175, i.
- Begum; ann. 1505 (twice) and 1619: *s. v.* Khanum, 366, ii; ann. 1619: *s. v.* Beegum, 764, i; ann. 1665: *s. v.* Taj, 860, i; ann. 1787: *s. v.* Beegum, 59, ii; ann. 1803: *s. v.* Campoo, 117, i, *s. v.* Padre, 497, ii; ann. 1827: *s. v.* Sowarry, 650, ii; ann. 1858: *s. v.* Nabób (b), 468, ii.
- Begum Sunrou; ann. 1831: *s. v.* Nauteh, 475, i.
- Begun; ann. 1653: *s. v.* Beegum, 59, ii.
- Behādir; ann. 1280-90: *s. v.* Bahaudur, 37, i.
- Behar; *s. v.* 764, i and ii, *s. v.* Bungalow, 98, ii, *s. v.* Comotay, 184, ii, *s. v.* Dagoba, 225, ii, *s. v.* Dewauny, 241, i, *s. v.* Hindostan, 316, ii, *s. v.* Jain, 341, ii, *s. v.* Jungle-Terry, 359, ii, *s. v.* Mugg, 455, i, *s. v.* Poorub, 547, ii, *s. v.* Sayer, 604, ii, *s. v.* Caze, 775, i, *s. v.* Rhotass, 849, i; ann. 641: *s. v.* China, 151, ii; ann. 1250: *s. v.* Bengal, 64, i; ann. 1340: *s. v.* Sind, 634, ii, twice; ann. 1538: *s. v.* Xercantor, 868, i; ann. 1590: *s. v.* Burrampooter, 101, ii; ann. 1726: *s. v.* Patna, 520, ii; ann. 1793: *s. v.* Caze, 776, i; ann. 1858-9: *s. v.* Sayer, 605, ii.
- Behār; ann. 1250: *s. v.* Bengal, 64, i.
- Behār; *s. v.* Vihara, 733, ii.
- Behat; *s. v.* Behut, 61, i, twice, *s. v.* Jelum, 350, i, *s. v.* Punjaub, 561, ii.
- Behander; *s. v.* Bahaudur, 37, ii; ann. 1781: *s. v.* Bahaudur, 37, ii, twice.
- Behaudry; ann. 1800: *s. v.* Bahaudur, 37, ii.
- Behistun; *s. v.* Pahlavi, 835, i.
- Behistūn; *s. v.* Zend, 868, ii.
- Behreh; ann. 1519: *s. v.* Goojur, 802, i.
- Behri; *s. v.* Bilabundy, 70, ii.
- Behri-bandī; *s. v.* Bilabundy, 70, ii.



- Behrug; ann. 1623: *s. v.* Broach, 89, i.  
 Behut; *s. v.* 61, i, *s. v.* Jelum, 350, i.  
 Beid; *s. v.* Vedas, 734, ii, twice; ann. 1776:  
*s. v.* Shaster, 624, i.  
 Beijoin; *s. v.* Benjamin, 65, ii; ann. 1498 and  
 1539: *s. v.* Benjamin, 65, ii.  
 Bejuim; *s. v.* Benjamin, 65, ii.  
 Beiram; *s. v.* Gogo, 293, i; ann. 1343: *s. v.*  
 Gogo, 293, i.  
 Beiramee; *s. v.* 61, i; ann. 1648: *s. v.* Gingham,  
 801, i.  
 Beirames; *s. v.* Guingam, 288, i; ann. 1554: *s. v.*  
 Beiramee, 61, i.  
 Beit; *s. v.* Mergui, 434, i.  
 Beiteul; *s. v.* 61, ii.  
 Beiteulgaum; ann. 1804: *s. v.* Patel, 519, ii.  
 Beiteul Cove; *s. v.* Beiteul, 61, ii.  
 Bejāda; *s. v.* Jade, 340, i.  
 Bejādah; *s. v.* Jade, 340, i, twice.  
 Bejutapauts; *s. v.* Piece-goods, 535, ii.  
 Bekar; *s. v.* Baikree, 38, i.  
 Bekhrad; ann. 1590: *s. v.* Musk-Rat, 458, ii.  
 Bekra; *s. v.* Baikree, 38, i.  
 Bekri; *s. v.* Baikree, 38, i.  
 Bel; *s. v.* Bael, 35, i, twice, *s. v.* Custard-Apple,  
 220, i, *s. v.* Wood-apple, 741, i; ann. 1631:  
*s. v.* Bael, 35, i.  
 Belāla; *s. v.* Narsinga, 474, i.  
 Belambū; *s. v.* Blimbee, 75, ii.  
 Belches; ann. 1873: *s. v.* Pial, 533, ii.  
 Beldar; 754, ii, footnote; ann. 1847: *s. v.*  
 Bildár, 71, i.  
 Beldár; *s. v.* Bildár, 71, i, see 754, ii, footnote.  
 Beledi; *s. v.* Country, 206, ii; ann. 1580: *s. v.*  
 Ginger, 287, i.  
 Beledyn ginger; ann. 1516: *s. v.* Country, 206, ii.  
 Beleregi; *s. v.* Myrobalan (2), 465, ii.  
 Bēl-fruit; ann. 1879: *s. v.* Bael, 35, i.  
 Belgaum; *s. v.* 61, ii.  
 Beli; ann. 1563: *s. v.* Bael, 35, i, twice.  
 Belia-bussendry; 660, ii, footnote.  
 Belilegi; *s. v.* Myrobalan (2), 465, ii.  
 Belingbue; *s. v.* Brinjaul, 86, ii.  
 Bēli oculus; *s. v.* Cat's-eye, 134, i; ann. 1837:  
*s. v.* Cat's-eye, 134, ii.  
 Bellale; ann. 1726: *s. v.* Chetty, 145, i, *s. v.*  
 Gingeli, 286, i.  
 Bellary; *s. v.* Baisnagar, 73, i, *s. v.* Ceded  
 Districts, 137, i, *s. v.* Chittledroog, 157, i.  
 Belledi; ann. 1343 (twice) and 1420 and 1580:  
*s. v.* Ginger, 287, i.  
 Beller; *s. v.* 61, ii, *s. v.* Myrobalan, 466, i.  
 Bellerica; *s. v.* Myrobalan (2), 465, ii.  
 Bellerick; *s. v.* Myrobalan, 465, i.  
 Bellerie Myrobalan; *s. v.* Myrobalan (2), 465, ii.  
 Belligamnie; ann. 1672: *s. v.* Trincomalee, 715, ii.  
 Bellunensis; ann. 1726: *s. v.* Camphor, 117, i.  
 Belon; ann. 1653: *s. v.* Khan (b), 813, i.  
 Belooch; *s. v.* Bilooch, 71, i; ann. 1844: *s. v.*  
 Bilooch, 71, ii.  
 Beloochee; *s. v.* ann. 1845: *s. v.* Wug, 743, i.  
 Bēl-tree; ann. 1879: *s. v.* Bael, 35, i.  
 Belūch; *s. v.* Wug, 743, i.  
 Beluchistan; *s. v.* Sissoo, 639, i.  
 Belus eye; ann. 70: *s. v.* Cat's-eye, 134, i.  
 Belzuin; ann. 1568: *s. v.* Mergui, 434, i.  
 Belzuino; *s. v.* Benjamin, 65, ii.  
 Belzuinum; ann. 1584: *s. v.* Benjamin, 65, ii.  
 Belzuinum mandolalo; ann. 1584: *s. v.* Ben-  
 jamin, 65, ii.  
 Bengala; ann. 1498: *s. v.* Bengal, 64, ii; ann.  
 1554: *s. v.* Porto Piqueno, 550, i, twice, *s. v.*  
 Seer, 611, ii.  
 Benguala; ann. 1595: *s. v.* Porto Piqueno,  
 550, ii.  
 Bengualla; ann. 1591: *s. v.* Chittagong, 157, i.  
 Ben; ann. 1560: *s. v.* Myrobalan, 466, ii.  
 Ben, Oil of; 465, i, footnote.  
 Benamee; *s. v.* 61, ii, twice; ann. 1854 (twice),  
 1861 and 1862: *s. v.* 62, i.  
 Be-nāmi; *s. v.* Benamee, 62, i.  
 Be-nāmī; *s. v.* Benamee, 61, ii.  
 Ben Arabum; ann. 1672: *s. v.* Myrobalan, 466, ii.  
 Benares; *s. v.* 764, ii, *s. v.* Achánock, 2, ii, *s. v.*  
 Howdah, 325, ii, *s. v.* Lungoor, 400, i, *s. v.*  
 Mofussil, 435, ii, 3 times, *s. v.* Mugg, 455, i,  
*s. v.* Poorub, 547, ii, *s. v.* Sayer, 604, ii, *s. v.*  
 Shikār-gāh, 626, ii, *s. v.* Chunārgurh, 780, i;  
 ann. 1020: *s. v.* 764, ii; ann. 1774: *s. v.*  
 Sling, 642, ii; ann. 1783: *s. v.* Dewaun, 241,  
 i; ann. 1789: *s. v.* Black, 74, i; ann. 1796:  
*s. v.* Dawk, 232, i and ii; ann. 1803: *s. v.*  
 Baboo, 33, i; ann. 1809: *s. v.* Urz, 733, i;  
 ann. 1860: *s. v.* Pundit, 561, i, 4 times; ann.  
 1883: *s. v.* Dewally, 238, ii.  
 Bénarés; ann. 1791: *s. v.* Pundit, 561, i.  
 Bénarés; ann. 637: *s. v.* Benares, 764, ii.  
 Benares Rupee; *s. v.* Rupee, 586, i.  
 Bencock; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Bancock, 43, i.  
 Bencolon; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Bencoolen, 62, ii.  
 Bencolu; ann. 1501: *s. v.* Bencoolen, 62, i.  
 Bencoolen; *s. v.* 62, i, twice, *s. v.* Compound,  
 187, ii, *s. v.* Factory, 264, ii; ann. 1702: *s. v.*  
 Pagar, 498, i; ann. 1747: *s. v.* West-Coast,



- 740, i; ann. 1783: *s. v.* A Muck, 15, i; ann. 1788: *s. v.* 62, ii.
- Bencouli; ann. 1690: *s. v.* Bencoolen, 62, ii.
- Bendameer; *s. v.* 62, ii, *s. v.* Bund, 97, ii; ann. 1817: *s. v.* 63, i.
- Bendara; ann. 1539, 1552 and 1613: *s. v.* Bendára, 63, i.
- Bendára; *s. v.* 63, i; ann. 1634: *s. v.* 63, ii.
- Bendará; ann. 1511: *s. v.* Kling, 373, ii, 3 times; ann. 1631 (3 times): *s. v.* Bendára, 63, ii.
- Bendára; ann. 1613: *s. v.* Compound, 188, i.
- Bendārā; *s. v.* Bendára, 63, i.
- Bend-emir; ann. 1809: *s. v.* Bendameer, 63, i.
- Bend' Emir; ann. 1621 (3 times) and 1686 (twice): *s. v.* Bendameer, 62, ii.
- Bender; ann. 1753: *s. v.* Bandel, 760, ii.
- Bender-Souret; ann. 1779: *s. v.* Surat, 859, i.
- Bendhara; ann. 1509: *s. v.* Bendára, 63, i.
- Bendi; *s. v.* Bandy, 44, ii.
- Bendinaneh; ann. 1442: *s. v.* Mangalore, 422, ii.
- Bendor; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Bacanore, 34, i.
- Bendy; *s. v.* 63, ii, *s. v.* Bandicoy, 44, ii; ann. 1810 and 1880: *s. v.* 63, ii.
- Bendy Bazar; *s. v.* Bendy-Tree, 64, i.
- Bendy-Tree; *s. v.* 64, i.
- Bengacões; ann. 1561: *s. v.* Bankshall (a), 47, i.
- Bengal n. p.; *s. v.* 64, i, twice, *s. v.* Abcáree, 2, i, *s. v.* Adati, 3, ii, *s. v.* Adjutant, 4, ii, *s. v.* Ananas, 17, ii, 18, i, *s. v.* Andaman, 20, ii, *s. v.* Assam, 28, i, *s. v.* Baboo, 32, ii, twice, *s. v.* Bandel, 44, i, twice, *s. v.* Bandy, 44, ii, *s. v.* Bankshall, 46, i, *s. v.* Banyan (1), 48, ii, *s. v.* Bārasinhā, 51, ii, *s. v.* Batta, 54, ii, *s. v.* Bay, 55, ii, *s. v.* Bearer, 58, i, *s. v.* Benames, 61, ii, *s. v.* Bengalee, 65, i, *s. v.* Bheel (s.), 69, ii, *s. v.* Birds' Nests, 72, ii, *s. v.* Bison, 78, ii, *s. v.* Bocha, 76, ii, *s. v.* Boliah, 76, ii, *s. v.* Brab, 84, i, *s. v.* Brinjaul, 86, ii, *s. v.* Buffalo, 93, ii, *s. v.* Bulbul, 95, ii, *s. v.* Bullumtoar, 96, ii, *s. v.* Bungalow, 98, ii, 4 times, *s. v.* Bungy, 99, ii, see 100, i, footnote, *s. v.* Buxee, 103, ii, *s. v.* Camboja, 115, ii, *s. v.* Canongo, 121, i, *s. v.* Cassay, 131, i, *s. v.* Chickore, 148, ii, twice, *s. v.* Chillumchee, 149, ii, 150, i, twice, see 151, ii, footnote, *s. v.* Chiretta, 156, ii, *s. v.* Chittagong, 156, ii, *s. v.* Choky (b), 158, ii, *s. v.* Chota-hazry, 162, i, *s. v.* Chudder, 167, ii, *s. v.* Chuprassy, 169, i, *s. v.* Churr, 169, i, *s. v.* Churruck Poojah, 169, ii, *s. v.* Codavascam, 178, ii, *s. v.* Collector, 181, ii, *s. v.* Commercolly, 188, ii, *s. v.* Commissioner, 183, ii, *s. v.* Comotay, 184, ii, twice, *s. v.* Compradore, 188, ii, *s. v.* Confirmed, 189, ii, *s. v.* Consumah, 190, ii, *s. v.* Cooch Behar, 191, i, *s. v.* Cooch
- Azo, 191, ii, *s. v.* Coomkee (b), 194, i, *s. v.* Coomry, 194, i, *s. v.* Coorsy, 194, ii, *s. v.* Coromandel, 200, i, *s. v.* Corral, 200, ii, *s. v.* Cosmin, 201, i, *s. v.* Coss, 203, i, *s. v.* Cossimbazar, 204, i, *s. v.* Cossya, 204, i, *s. v.* Cotta, 205, ii, twice, *s. v.* Cotwal, 206, i, *s. v.* Country, 206, ii, *s. v.* Country-Captain, 207, i, *s. v.* Covid, 207, ii, *s. v.* Cowry, 208, ii, 209, i, see 210, ii, footnote, *s. v.* Cranny, 212, i, *s. v.* Cutcha-pucka, 223, i, *s. v.* Cutchérry, 223, i, *s. v.* Dacca, 225, i, *s. v.* Dacoit, 225, i, *s. v.* Daloyet, 227, i, *s. v.* Dam, 227, ii, *s. v.* Dammer, 228, ii, *s. v.* Dana, 229, i, *s. v.* Daya, 232, ii, *s. v.* Dewally, 238, ii, *s. v.* Dewaun, 239, i, *s. v.* Dewauny, 241, i, *s. v.* Dondara Head, 249, ii, *s. v.* Dooputty, 250, ii, *s. v.* Doorga pooja, 250, ii, *s. v.* Drumstick, 252, ii, *s. v.* Ducks, 253, ii, *s. v.* Duftery, 254, i, *s. v.* Dumdum, 254, ii, *s. v.* Dustuck, 257, ii, *s. v.* English-bazar, 262, i, *s. v.* Factory, 264, ii, *s. v.* Ferázee, 266, ii, 267, i, *s. v.* Foujdar, 273, i, *s. v.* Foujdarry, 273, ii, twice, *s. v.* Fuleeta-pup, 274, i, *s. v.* Gardee, 278, ii, *s. v.* Garry, 279, i, *s. v.* Girja, 289, ii, *s. v.* Goglet, 292, ii, *s. v.* Gorawallah, 297, ii, *s. v.* Gordower, 297, ii, *s. v.* Gour (b), 298, i, (c), 298, ii, 3 times, *s. v.* Gram-fed, 301, i, *s. v.* Grass-cloth, 301, i, *s. v.* Guava, 306, i, *s. v.* Gynce, 310, i, *s. v.* Hackery, 310, i, twice, *s. v.* Harry, 313, i, *s. v.* Havildar, 313, ii, *s. v.* Hazree, 314, i, *s. v.* Hidgelee, 314, ii, *s. v.* Hindostan, 316, ii, *s. v.* Hoogly, 321, ii, twice, *s. v.* Hooly, 323, ii, *s. v.* Jack, 337, i, *s. v.* Jaggery, 340, ii, *s. v.* Jail-khana, 342, i, *s. v.* Jamboo, 342, i, twice, *s. v.* Jeel, 349, i, twice, *s. v.* Jennye, 350, ii, twice, *s. v.* Jhoom, 351, ii, *s. v.* Julibdar, 357, ii, *s. v.* Jungle-Mahals, 359, ii, *s. v.* Jungle-Terry, 359, ii, twice, *s. v.* Koddah, 368, ii, *s. v.* Kitmutgar, 370, ii, *s. v.* Kling, 372, i, *s. v.* Kuhár, 378, i, *s. v.* Kulá, 378, ii, *s. v.* Lát, 389, ii, *s. v.* Lattecal, 390, ii, *s. v.* Leeches, 391, i, *s. v.* Love-bird, 399, i, see 402, ii, footnote, *s. v.* Madras, 407, i, *s. v.* Malabathrum, 414, ii, *s. v.* Mamiran, 419, i, *s. v.* Mandarin, 421, i, *s. v.* Mannickjore, 427, i, *s. v.* Mate, 430, i, *s. v.* Maund, 431, i, *s. v.* Mehtar, 432, ii, *s. v.* Mem-Sahib, 433, ii, *s. v.* Mofussil, 435, ii, *s. v.* Molly, 440, i, *s. v.* Moor, 445, ii, *s. v.* Moors, The, 447, ii and footnote, *s. v.* Mort-de-chien, 451, ii, *s. v.* Moturpha, 453, ii, *s. v.* Muckna, 454, i, 3 times, *s. v.* Mugg, 455, i, twice, *s. v.* Mull, 456, i, *s. v.* Mungoose, 457, i, *s. v.* Muxadabad, 468, ii, twice, *s. v.* Nabób, 467, i, *s. v.* Negrals, 477, i, *s. v.* Nilgherry, 479, ii, *s. v.* Omlab,



- 486, i, *s. v.* Orang-otang, 491, ii, *s. v.* Orissa, 492, ii, *s. v.* Paddy-bird, 496, i, *s. v.* Palankeen, 502, ii, *s. v.* Pandy, 509, i, *s. v.* Patcharee, 518, i, *s. v.* Paunchway, 521, ii, *s. v.* Pawnee, 522, i, *s. v.* Peenus, 523, ii, *s. v.* Pepper, 529, i and ii, *s. v.* Piece-goods, 535, ii, *s. v.* Pig-sticking, 536, ii, 5 times, *s. v.* Pommelo, 545, ii, *s. v.* Poolbundy, 546, ii, *s. v.* Poorub, 547, ii, *s. v.* Porto Piqueno, 550, i, *s. v.* Pulwah, 558, i, *s. v.* Punch, 558, ii, *s. v.* Puttywalla, 565, i, *s. v.* Pyke, 566, ii, *s. v.* Quihi, 568, i, *s. v.* Regulation, 575, ii, *s. v.* Regur, 575, ii, *s. v.* Rogue, 579, ii, *s. v.* Rolong, 580, ii, *s. v.* Rupee, 586, i (and footnote) and ii, *s. v.* Sambre, 596, i, *s. v.* Sanskrit, 598, ii, *s. v.* Sarnau, 601, ii, *s. v.* Sayer, 604, i and ii, 605, i and ii, both twice, see 609, i and ii, footnotes, both twice, *s. v.* Seer, 611, i, *s. v.* Seetulpatty, 612, ii, *s. v.* Sepoy, 613, i, *s. v.* Settlement, 616, i, *s. v.* Shanbaff, 623, ii, *s. v.* Sicca, 632, ii, 3 times, *s. v.* Sircar (b) 638, i, *s. v.* Sirdar, 638, ii, *s. v.* Sirris, 638, ii, *s. v.* Siwalik, 640, i and ii, *s. v.* Souba, 649 i, *s. v.* Soursoop (a), 650, i, *s. v.* Sudderand (b), 653, ii, (c), 654, i, twice, *s. v.* Sunderbunds), 660, i, *s. v.* Sunyasee, 661, ii, *s. v.* Surkunda, 666, i, *s. v.* Sweet Potato, 672, ii, 673, i, *s. v.* Syce, 673, ii, *s. v.* Talook, 680, i, *s. v.* Tanga, 682, i, *s. v.* Telinga (s.), 694, ii, twice, *s. v.* Tonjon, 709, i, *s. v.* Tope (b), 712, ii, *s. v.* Tribeny, 715, i, *s. v.* Tumlook, 717, i, twice, *s. v.* Whistling Teal, 740, i, *s. v.* Zemindar, 747, ii, twice, *s. v.* Zenana, 748, ii, *s. v.* Achánock (2), 752, i, *s. v.* Adawlut, 752, ii, twice, 753, ii, 754, i, *s. v.* Behar, 764, i (twice) and ii, *s. v.* Bungalow, 768, i, *s. v.* Buxerry, 769, i, *s. v.* Caryota, 773, ii, *s. v.* Casuarina, 774, i, twice, *s. v.* Cazee, 775, i (twice) and ii, *s. v.* Chownee, 779, ii, *s. v.* Coolin, 783, ii, *s. v.* Curramshaw Hills, 786, ii, *s. v.* Dengue, 789, ii, *s. v.* Gaurian, 800, i, *s. v.* Harry, 806, ii, *s. v.* Jeel, 811, i, *s. v.* Karbaree, 812, ii, *s. v.* Khot, 813, i and ii (footnote), *s. v.* Law-officer, 817, i and ii, *s. v.* Mamlutdar, 822, i, *s. v.* Mufty, 825, ii, *s. v.* Munneepore 826, ii, twice, *s. v.* Musk-Rat, 827, ii, see 828, i, footnote, *s. v.* Muzbee, 828, ii, *s. v.* Pandy, 836, ii, *s. v.* Patcharee, 842, i, *s. v.* Putnee, 847, i, *s. v.* Rogue's River, 849, ii, *s. v.* Thakoor, 862, ii; ann. 1240: *s. v.* Cowry, 209, i; ann. 1340: *s. v.* Ondh, 494, ii, *s. v.* Satigam, 854, i; ann. 1346: *s. v.* Chittagong, 157, i; ann. 1350: *s. v.* 64, ii, *s. v.* Cowry, 209, ii; ann. 1442: *s. v.* Bisnagar, 73, ii, *s. v.* Sarnau, 601, ii, *s. v.* Zirbad, 750, i; ann. 1516: *s. v.* Balass, 39, i, *s. v.* Chudder, 167, ii, *s. v.* Country, 206, ii; *s. v.* Quilon, 570, ii; ann. 1528: *s. v.* Siwalik (c), 641, ii; ann. 1535: *s. v.* Satigam, 854, i; ann. 1538: *s. v.* Xercansor, 868, i, twice; ann. 1540: *s. v.* Charpoy, 141, ii; ann. 1545: *s. v.* Arakan, 25, i; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Chittagong, 157, i; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Jogee, 352, i, *s. v.* Mandarin, 421, ii, *s. v.* Pulicat, 557, ii, *s. v.* Sandoway, 598, i; ann. 1563: *s. v.* Chank, 141, i, *s. v.* Koot, 375, ii, *s. v.* Mango, 424, i; ann. 1566-68: *s. v.* Carraek, 127, i; ann. 1570: *s. v.* Budgerow, 91, ii; ann. 1586: *s. v.* Cowry, 209, ii; ann. 1590: *s. v.* Arakan, 25, i, *s. v.* Goont, 296, ii, *s. v.* Pyke (b), 567, i, *s. v.* Tangun, 683, i, *s. v.* Aracan, 758, ii; ann. 1594: *s. v.* Souba, 649, ii; ann. 1596: *s. v.* Cooch Behar, 191, i; ann. 1598: *s. v.* Chudder, 167, ii; ann. 1615: *s. v.* Gallevat (b), 276, ii; ann. 1623: *s. v.* Ghaut (c), 282, ii; ann. 1632: *s. v.* Hoogly, 322, i; ann. 1644: *s. v.* Chank, 141, i; ann. 1659: *s. v.* Elephanta (b), 261, ii; ann. 1660: *s. v.* Aracan, 758, ii; ann. 1665: *s. v.* Aracan, 758, ii, *s. v.* Cossimbazar, 784, ii; ann. 1666: *s. v.* Rupee, 586, ii; ann. 1676: *s. v.* Balasore, 39, i, *s. v.* Mangelin, 423, i; ann. 1679: *s. v.* Behar, 764, ii; ann. 1689: *s. v.* Firmaun, 270, ii, twice, *s. v.* Punch, 559, ii; ann. 1690: *s. v.* Crore, 214, i; ann. 1703-4: Muxadabad, 463, ii; ann. 1708: *s. v.* Anna, 22, ii; ann. 1726: *s. v.* Achánock, 2, ii, *s. v.* Sipahselar, 637, ii, *s. v.* Sunderbunds, 660, ii, *s. v.* Swatch, 672, i, *s. v.* Vedas, 735, i; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Anna, 23, i, *s. v.* Chandernagore, 140, ii, *s. v.* Chank, 141, i, *s. v.* Cowry, 210, i, *s. v.* Opium, 489, ii, *s. v.* Respondentia, 577, i; ann. 1750: *s. v.* Gruff, 803, i; ann. 1754: *s. v.* Adjutant, 4, ii; ann. 1757: *s. v.* Budge-Budge, 768, i; ann. 1758: *s. v.* Writer, 742, ii; ann. 1759: *s. v.* Brab, 84, ii, *s. v.* Bulgar, 96, i; ann. 1760: *s. v.* Covid, 207, ii, *s. v.* Maund, 432, i; ann. 1767: *s. v.* Afghan, 754, ii; ann. 1770: *s. v.* Assam, 28, ii, *s. v.* Chank, 141, i, *s. v.* Moor, 446, ii; ann. 1771: *s. v.* Dewaun, 240, i; ann. 1772: *s. v.* Peon, 528, ii, *s. v.* Muster, 828, ii; ann. 1774: *s. v.* Cowtails, 210, ii, *s. v.* Sling, 642, ii; ann. 1777: *s. v.* Sircar (b), 638, i; ann. 1778: *s. v.* Gentoo, 281, i, *s. v.* Sanskrit, 599, i, *s. v.* Vedas, 735, ii; ann. 1780: *s. v.* Banyan (1) b, 49, i, *s. v.* Nabób (b), 468, i, *s. v.* Tangun, 683, ii; ann. 1781: *s. v.* Overland, 495, ii; *s. v.* Mort-de-chien, 825, ii; ann. 1782: *s. v.* Bandel, 760, ii; ann.



1783: *s. v.* Budgerow, 92, i, *s. v.* Souba, 649, ii; ann. 1784: *s. v.* Moolvee, 443, ii; ann. 1785: *s. v.* Crore, 214, i; ann. 1786: *s. v.* Gardee, 278, ii, *s. v.* Telinga, 695, i, twice; ann. 1788: *s. v.* Banyan (1) b, 49, i, *s. v.* Chowdry, 165, i, *s. v.* Moors, The, 448, i; ann. 1790: *s. v.* Masulipatam, 429, ii, *s. v.* Cazee, 776, i; ann. 1792: *s. v.* Sunderbunds, 661, i; ann. 1793: *s. v.* Burkundauze, 100, ii, *s. v.* Burrampooter, 102, i, *s. v.* Meeana, 432, ii, *s. v.* Sayer, 606, i, *s. v.* Cazee, 776, i, *s. v.* Munneepore, 827, i; ann. 1794-7: *s. v.* Curry, 219, i; ann. 1796: *s. v.* Guingam, 288, i; ann. 1798: *s. v.* Pundit, 561, i; ann. 1799: *s. v.* Woolock, 867, i; ann. 1802: *s. v.* Tussah, 721, i; ann. 1803: *s. v.* Duck, 793, i; ann. 1809: *s. v.* Zemindar, 748, ii; ann. 1810: *s. v.* Bungalow, 99, i, twice, *s. v.* Kist, 370, ii, *s. v.* Sugar 656, i, *s. v.* Toon, 710, ii; ann. 1811: *s. v.* Hackery, 311, i, *s. v.* Soorky, 648, i; ann. 1813: *s. v.* Adati, 4, i, *s. v.* Grass-cloth,

301, ii, *s. v.* Hackery, 311, i, *s. v.* Safflower, 589, i; ann. 1816: *s. v.* Macassar, 403, ii; ann. 1817: *s. v.* Bungalow, 99, i; ann. 1824: *s. v.* Jungle-Terry, 360, i; ann. 1827: *s. v.* Ticca, 700, i; ann. 1831: *s. v.* Pergunnahs, 530, ii; ann. 1832: *s. v.* Punchayet, 846, ii; ann. 1836: *s. v.* Circars, 171, i; ann. 1843: *s. v.* Suttee, 671, i; ann. 1857: *s. v.* Chillumchee, 778, i, twice; ann. 1858-59: *s. v.* Sayer, 605, ii; ann. 1860: *s. v.* Keddah, 364, i; ann. 1862: *s. v.* Benamee, 62, i; ann. 1863: *s. v.* Swatch, 672, i; ann. 1871: *s. v.* Paddy, 496, i, twice *s. v.* Zemindar, 748, ii; ann. 1-72: *s. v.* Bahaudur, 759, ii; ann. 1873: *s. v.* Baboo, 33, i; ann. 1874: *s. v.* Jillmill, 351, ii, *s. v.* Tucka, 716, ii; ann. 1878: *s. v.* Competition-wallah, 185, ii; ann. 1879: *s. v.* Abcáree, 2, i; ann. 1883: *s. v.* Seven Sisters, 616, i; ann. 1884: *s. v.* Lungoor, 400, ii.  
Bengal (s.); *s. v.* 65, i; ann. 1696: *s. v.* 65, i.

(To be continued.)

#### MISCELLANEA.

##### AURANGZEB'S FAMILY — DATE OF HIS DAUGHTER ZINAT-UN-NISSA'S DEATH.

It is usually asserted that the Princess Zinat-un-nissâ, daughter of 'Alamgir Aurangzeb (†1707) died in the year 1122 H. (1710-11). We know from the *Ma'dgir-i-'Alamgir*, the best authority for his reign, that the emperor had four daughters, of whom one only, the second, survived him.<sup>1</sup> This lady, Zinat-un-nissâ, was still living at the date the *Ma'dgir* was written; and from the statement on p. 69 (printed text) we know that it was completed in 1122 H. (1710-11).

Now, although Zinat-un-nissâ is spoken of as still living in a book completed in 1122 H. (1710-11), it is quite possible that she may have died in that very year. The book may have been finished early in the year, she may have died before the year ended, and the author, though he lived for fourteen years longer, may have left his work as it stood originally.

The usual statement that Zinat-un-nissâ died in 1122 H. (1710-11) seems to have been arrived at in the following manner. In the city of Dihli, in the quarter known as Daryâganj, stands near the Jamna mosque called the Zinat-ul-masâjid, which was used at one time as the government store-house for commissariat bread.<sup>2</sup> In the court of this mosque is a tomb with an inscription. The words of this inscription are given both in Sayyad Ahmad Khân's *Asâr-us-sandâd*, edition of 1854, p. 78, and Supplement, p. 44, and in T. W.

Beale's *Miftâh-ut-tawârîkh*, Lucknow edition of 1867, p. 297. The words on it are (omitting four lines of Arabic):—

*Mânis-i-mâ dar lahâd faẓl-i-khudâ tanhâ bas ast,*

*Sâyah az abr-i-rahmat kabrposh-i-mâ bas ast,*  
*Umedwar-i-husen-i-Fâtimah-i-khâtimah Zinat-un-nissâ Begam*

*Bint-i-Bâdehâh Muhi-ud-dîn Muḥammad*  
*'Alamgir Ghâzi*

*Andr-ullah burhâna hu*  
*Sanah 1122.*

"My sufficient solace in the solitary grave is the grace of God,

"The shade of the clouds of Mercy is grave-cover enough for me;

"One awaiting the favour of the perfect Fâtimah,

"Zinat-un-nissâ, daughter of the emperor,

"Supporter of the Faith, Muḥammad

"Alamgir, the Champion, (may God

"Enlighten her understanding), year 1122."

Upon this inscription Beale founds his entry, *Oriental Biographical Dictionary*, p. 288, that she "died in 1710 A. D., 1122 H." The statement that the lady died in 1122 (1710) is also made by Franklin, *Shah Aulum*, p. 207, and Major W. Thorn, *Memoirs of the War in India* (4to, London 1818), both apparently on the same data. On the other hand, Mr. S. Lane-Poole in the table on p. 21 of his *Aurangzib* (Rulers of India series),

guide-book to Dihli in Urdu, and Carr Stephen, *Archæology of Delhi*, pp. 261-3.

<sup>1</sup> *Ma'dgir*, printed text, p. 539.

<sup>2</sup> See J. S. Mannel's *Rahnuma Dihli*, p. 222, a modern



places her death in 1708 A. D., which corresponds with part of 1119 H. and part of 1120 H. This latest authority thus agrees neither with the inscription nor with the *Ma'dir-i-'Alamgir*, nor with what I believe to be the true date of death.

Zinat-un-nissâ was in the emperor's camp at Ahmadnagar when 'Alamgir died there on the 28th Zûl-Hijjah 1118 H., 2nd March 1707 N. S. She took an active interest in the cause of her full brother, A'zam Shâh, the deceased emperor's second surviving son, and accompanied him in his march from the Dakhin to Hindûstân. She was left behind at Gwâliyâr when A'zam Shâh went on to fight their eldest brother, Muḥammad Mu'azzam Shâh, afterwards Bahâdur Shâh. The battle took place on the 18th Rabi' I. 1119 H. (18th June 1707 N. S.) near Jâjau, a place between Dholpûr and Âgrah. After the battle, the victor, Bahâdur Shâh, sent for the baggage and those adherents and relations of A'zam Shâh who had been left at Gwâliyâr. Zinat-un-nissâ, among the rest, reached Âgrah about the end of Rabi' II. (July 1707), and on the excuse of her mourning for A'zam Shâh, declined to send any congratulations to Bahâdur Shâh. The latter, in spite of his vexation at this slight, doubled his sister's allowances and created her Pâdshâh Begam. In a short time the Begam was despatched to Dihli under the charge of Asad Khân, 'Alamgir's wasîr, the new minister, Mun'im Khân, escorting her for some miles on her way.

As good proof as can be wished that a person did not die in a particular year, is to show that he or she was alive in a subsequent year. This we can easily do in the case of Zinat-un-nissâ. Accordingly we find<sup>1</sup> that in Jahândâr Shâh's reign, which lasted from 21st Safar to 13th Zûl-Hijjah 1124 H. (29th March 1712 to 10th January 1713), the emperor quarrelled with his aunt Pâdshâh Begam (i. e., Zinat-un-nissâ) and refused to visit her, because no invitation had been sent to his concubine, Lal Kunwar. Again in the following year, after Farrukhsiyar had succeeded, we find that he visited Pâdshâh Begam. The date was the 21st Muḥarram 1125 H. (16th February 1713) and the authority is Kâmwâr Khân's *Tazkirah-i-salâṭin-i-chaghataiyah* under that date. Her former intendant Sa'idullah Khân, first of all styled Hidayatullah Khân then Wazîrat Khân, lost his life as a consequence of this visit. The lady upbraided the young monarch for having taken the life of Zûlfiqâr Khân, Jahândâr Shâh's wasîr. Farrukhsiyar retorted that he had her letter advising him to take that step. She protested that she had

written quite the contrary. It was then discovered that Sa'idullah Khân (a personal enemy of Zûlfiqâr Khân's) had substituted another letter for the one prepared by Zinat-un-nissâ's orders.

Strangely enough, we find evidence of the Begam's existence subsequent to 1122 H., in the correspondence of the East India Company's embassy to the Delhi Court under John Surman.<sup>2</sup> The Armenian Khwâjah Sarhad in July 1713 (equivalent to Jamâdi II or Rajab 1125 H.) procured the intercession of Nâzirkhâna eunuch whose "present office is to attend Pâdshâh Begam, daughter of Aurangzib."

Then in Shawwâl 1133 H. (August 1721) in the 3rd year of Muḥammad Shâh, we have a statement as to the disposal of Zinat-un-nissâ's property, which Muḥammad Shâh had as usual taken possession of upon her death. Shi'û Dâs, *Manavar-i-Kalâm*, British Museum, Oriental MS. No. 26, fol. 73b, says:—"An elephant canopy ('imdrf) with gold spike (*kalas*) and a *chandol* (kind of litter), belonging to the estate of the deceased Begam, daughter of His Majesty resting in Paradise (i. e., 'Alamgir), with a pearl coverlet, were granted as a gift to Mihr-un-nissâ, known as Mihr Parwar" (she was one of the widows of Shâh 'Âlam, Bahâdur Shâh). Of course, this entry does not prove the exact date of Zinat-un-nissâ's death, but it raises a presumption that she had not died in 1122 H., that is, eleven years before the disposal of her movable property. But to make the matter certain we have the direct statement of a very accurate man, Mirzâ Muḥammad, in his *Târîkh-i-Muḥammadî*. Under the year 1133 H. he has the entry, "Zinat-un-nissâ Begam, daughter of 'Alamgir, died 22nd Rajab in Dihli, age 80 years." This is equivalent to the 18th May 1721. As Zinat-un-nissâ was born on the 1st Sha'bân 1053 H. ('Abd-ul-ḥamid, *Biddah-nâmâ*, Vol. II. p. 343), the age of 80 years given in this entry corresponds exactly to her true age in the year 1133 H. After this can there be any doubt left that she did not die in 1122 H., but did die eleven years afterwards, in 1133 H.?

With reference to the figures (1122) on the tomb of Zinat-un-nissâ I would suggest two explanations, the first of which seems the most probable. First, then, the figures 1122 may stand for the date of making the tomb and not for that of the princess' death; or secondly, the second stroke of the last two figures may have been obliterated by the wearing away of the stone, leaving them to be read as 1 instead of 2, thus turning 1122 into 1121.

WILLIAM IRVINE.

<sup>1</sup> *Memoirs of Irâdât Khân* in Jonathan Scott's *History of Dekkan*, Vol. II. p. 83.

<sup>2</sup> C. B. Wilson's *Early Annals of the English in Bengal*, Vol. II., Part I., p. 143, quoting the Bengal Consultations under the date of October 19th, 1713, O. S.



## NOTES ON AN ARCHÆOLOGICAL TOUR IN SOUTH BIHAR AND HAZARIBAGH.

BY M. A. STEIN, PH.D.

(Continued from p. 63.)

ON the 16th October I moved my camp to Jethian in order to continue my examination of the sites described by Hiuen Tsiang in connection with Yashtivana. In detailing the result of my search I shall for convenience of reference follow the topographical order indicated in the pilgrim's account.

**Stūpa at Sahudrasthān.**—Hiuen Tsiang mentions to the east of Yashtivana, at a distance of about 6 or 7 *li*, a great mountain and, before a transverse pass<sup>30</sup> of it, a *stūpa* marking the spot where Buddha had explained the law. The position here indicated corresponds exactly to that of a modern place of worship, called **Sahudrasthān**, first mentioned to me in the course of the enquiries I made at Jethian village as to sites of local pilgrimage in the neighbourhood.

At a distance of about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  miles east-south-east of Jethian and  $\frac{1}{4}$  of a mile south-east of Jeshtiban, there is a gap in the main hill-range known as **Saffi Ghāt**. Through it leads a bridle path used by people proceeding towards Haswa and the villages to the south-east. Almost due north of the pass there ends the south-western off-shoot of the **Haṇḍia Range**, which we have noticed above in connection with the position of Jeshtiban and Phal-Jethian. Just opposite to this point a small spur descends from the main range of hills in the south, flanking the approach to the **Saffi Ghāt** on the west and leaving only a narrow gorge between itself and the off-shoot of **Haṇḍia**.<sup>31</sup>

At the end of this small spur and at a height of about 150 feet above the **Harhar stream**, which flows westwards through the gorge just mentioned, is the place of worship known as **Sahudrasthān**, apparently Sanskritized by **Purāṇas** as **Sahōdarāsthāna**. It consists of a small brick enclosure containing three broken Vishṇu images of an ancient appearance. The shrine rests on a square platform of old bricks, which measures, as far as exposed, 15 feet from north to south and 20 feet from west to east. The structure to which this platform originally belonged must have been far larger. For the slopes below on all sides of the projecting end of the spur are covered with fragments of ancient bricks, which undoubtedly have been removed from the structure just noticed.

Nowhere else in the vicinity of Jethian are similar remains now visible above the ground and in view of the close agreement of position, bearing and distance, I think the identity of the **Sahudrasthān** structure with the *stūpa* which stood 6-7 *li* (i. e., about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  miles) to the south-east of **Yashtivana** cannot reasonably be doubted.

The position of **Sahudrasthān** commands an extensive view on all sides, except the south. The *stūpa*, which once occupied it, must hence have been a very conspicuous object. A little below the **Sahudrasthān**, on a small shoulder of the spur to the north-east, stands now a **Līṅga** of uncertain age worshipped as **Harharnāth**.

Further striking evidence for this identification is supplied by an ancient paved road, carried over a walled foundation, which begins immediately below the **Sahudrasthān** and can be traced very clearly for a distance of about 600 yards along the hill-side to the west. Owing to the earth carried down from the hill-side and the thick undergrowth, the original width of this road cannot be estimated with any certainty. In some places it is still 4-5 yards broad, and along the whole distance the level terrace formed by it is distinctly noticeable. The wall of old rough masonry which supports this road is in places still 10-12 feet high and partly borders on a large tank situated to the north and known as **Lilāban**.

<sup>30</sup> This translation given in Beal's footnote for the "cross-ridge" of the text, is the one adopted by Julien, *Si-yu-ki*, ii. p. 13) and preferable in sense.

<sup>31</sup> The position indicated can be easily fixed on the Revenue Survey Map, Bihar Sheet, No. 18, one mile to one inch.



There are no traditions about the origin and object of this ancient road or terrace. But we cannot fail to recognize that it is the same structure which Hinen Tsiang intended to describe in his notice of the *stūpa* now identified. "Then King Bimbisāra wished to come to hear the law. He cut away the mountain, and piled up the stones to make steps in order to ascend. The width is about twenty paces and the length 3-4 *li*."

**Rock-Dwelling of Vyāsa.** — "Three or four *li* to the north of the great mountain," mentioned in connection with the now identified *stūpa*, Hinen Tsiang notices "a solitary hill. Formerly Rishi Vyāsa lived here in solitude. By excavating the side of the mountain he formed a house. Some portions of the foundations are still visible."

The direction here given points clearly to the hill which forms the south-western end of the Haṇḍia Range. It just faces Saffi Ghāt from the north and is separated by a deep gap from the spur running up towards Haṇḍia. The name of this isolated hill is **Bhaluāhi**. Its distance from Saffi Ghāt is about half a mile, which corresponds accurately enough to Hinen Tsiang's "3 or 4 *li*." One old Āhīr, living below Sahudrasthān, knew of an excavation at the south foot of this hill. Reaching the spot with some trouble through the thick jungle I found a natural recess formed by the rocks of the hill-side over-hanging their base at a height of about 15 yards. This recess, known as **Pansabda**, is probably just deep enough to afford sufficient shelter against rain and heat. I could hear of no other excavation, natural or artificial, on this hill or further up the valley of the Harhar stream, and I think that, in the absence of information regarding any other likely locality, the rock recess just described has a good claim to being considered the rock-dwelling of Rishi Vyāsa.

**Rājpiṇḍ Cave.** — "To the north-east of the solitary hill 4 or 5 *li*," Hinen Tsiang tells us, "there is a small hill also standing alone." In the side of this hill he describes a stone chamber, large enough to seat a thousand persons, where once Tathāgata for three months had explained the law. At the south-west angle of the cave the pilgrim noticed a lofty cavern, which a popular legend supposed to lead to the "city of the Asuras." By the side of the cave he mentions a remarkable road made of wood. It was apparently ascribed to King Bimbisāra who, in order to reach the spot where Buddha was, had cut out a passage through the rocks, opened up the valleys, levelled the precipices, and led a way across the river-courses, built up walls of stone, and bored through the opposing crags."

The large cave of **Rājpiṇḍ**, to which my attention had been called already on my first visit to Jethian, by its relative bearing and distance as well as its natural features, accurately answers this description. It is situated on the north face of a rocky hill called **Caṇḍu**, which rises in the Haṇḍia Range about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  miles south-east of the village of Kīrī. The distance of **Caṇḍu**, from the "solitary hill" in which the range ends opposite to Saffi Ghāt, is about one mile, and the bearing is to the north-east, which corresponds exactly to Hinen Tsiang's statement.

Coming from Kīrī I ascended the rubble-covered natural slope of the hill for about ten minutes before I reached the old road leading to the cave, of which I had already heard at the village. As soon as we struck it, my guide pointed out this road which, supported by walls of massive masonry, runs along the hill-side westwards in the direction of the cave. It is between 2 and 4 yards broad and rises with a very gentle gradient, until after about 500 yards it reaches a platform, partly walled up, which gives a very fine view over the valley. The supporting walls of the road near this platform measure about 18 feet in height. The road, cut out in places from the rocky hill-side, then descends towards the cave, the entrance of which is reached at about 150 yards from the platform. In front of the cave the road widens out to a terrace, 16 feet broad, resting on a massive wall.

The cave of **Rājpiṇḍ** is about 91 feet deep in its open part and 20 to 25 feet high. Its breadth, about 20 feet near the entrance, increases to 37 feet at its inner end. The ground in the interior is deeply covered with animal refuse. From the south-west corner of the cave a high fissure runs upwards, which could only imperfectly be lit up with the materials I had at hand, but which evidently extends much further.



The people believe that this fissure reaches far into the mountain, just as in the days of Hiuen Tsiang, who was told of adventurous youths having travelled in it for 30 or 40 *li* before they reached the silver and golden walls of the magic city of the Asuras. The cave is popularly supposed to have been used by the king, whose palace was at Phal-Jethian, for holding his nauteshes. Dr. Grierson, who describes the cave in his very instructive account of the Gayā District, mentions a *Mēlā* which is annually held at the cave and a legend related of it.

Above the entrance of the cave there is a large perpendicular mass of solid rock, which, in the days of Hiuen Tsiang, received the notice of the pious. The gods Sakra and Brahman were supposed to have pounded sandal-wood on "the great and remarkable rock above the stone-house" and to have sprinkled the body of Tathāgata with it. The surface of the stone still emits the scent of the perfume, — an observation as to the correctness of which at the present day, I regret, I am unable to offer an opinion.

The above details will show how closely the *Rājpiṇḍ* cave corresponds to Hiuen Tsiang's description. It is true we can no longer find "the wooden way, about 10 paces wide and about 4 or 5 *li*," which he saw "by the side of the stone house." But on the other hand the actually extant road with its walls and platforms on the precipitous hill-side fully bears out the more general points in Hiuen Tsiang's account of Bimbisāra's road-making already quoted. It is possible that the walls still extant once bore a wooden superstructure widening the road to the dimensions which the pilgrim indicates, but I was unable to find any proof of this. On the other hand the statements of the villagers seem to show that there are traces of the old road extending beyond the easternmost point at which the path now used strikes it. But a clearing of the thick jungle would be necessary in order to follow up this part of the road, which may, perhaps, have led down into the valley with an easier gradient.

**Buddhavāna.** — Hiuen Tsiang distinctly tells us that he reached Yashtivāna, *i. e.*, Jethian-Jeshtiban, by going 30 *li* to the east through the wild valleys of the Buddhavāna mountains. This makes it quite clear that General Cunningham's proposed **identification of Buddhavāna with Buddhain is untenable**, as the pass (or hill) designated by the latter name lies fully 6 miles to the north-east of Jethian, *i. e.*, in the direction almost opposite to the one which the pilgrim indicates. It appears to me highly probable that the Buddhavāna mountain, "with its peaks and cliffs lofty and precipitous," must be looked for in that portion of the southern range which lies to the south-east of Jethian, near the point marked by the entry "Shahpoor," in the Revenue Survey Map. Here the hills rise once more to a fair height and project small transverse spurs all covered with jungle. The central and apparently highest point of this portion of the range is at a direct distance of about 5 miles from Jethian.

My enquiries in the neighbourhood did not bring to my notice any local name that could be connected with **Buddhavāna**, nor could I hear anything of the cave which Hiuen Tsiang mentions on this mountain. All the pilgrim tells us of it is that there was "among the steep mountain cliffs a stone chamber where Buddha once descending stayed; by its side is a large stone where Sakra and Brahmarāja pounded some oxhead-sandalwood and anointed Tathāgata with the same." In view of the vagueness of topographical information here furnished a personal search for this cave offered little hope of success within the limited time available. I accordingly decided to proceed from Jethian direct to Kurkihār, where a far more important question concerning the position of Hiuen Tsiang's "Cock's-foot Mountain" required close examination.

On the 17th October I crossed once more the southern range of hills by the Ghāt close to Jethian and marching along their foot to the south-west, past Tapoban, reached the large village of **Amaithi** at a distance of about 9 miles. A small modern shrine by the roadside at the latter place contains three old images, covered with red-lead, one among them apparently representing Avalokiteśvara. I found a similar collection, consisting mostly of ancient *līngas*, of small size from 3 feet downwards, at a modern temple facing a large tank about one mile to the east of the village of **Orēl**. One of these small *līngas* shows a much effaced head on one side, and another emblem is adorned with four heads,



evidently representing those of Brahman. My attention was attracted to these features, as, though apparently common in Ancient Līngas of Bihār and elsewhere in the east, they had never been noticed by me in the very large number of Līngas I have examined in the Panjāb and in Kāśmīr.

**Kurkihār.** — Kurkihār, which occupies rising ground amidst a wide expanse of well-irrigated rice fields, is a village of large size. It must evidently have been a place of considerable importance also in old days, judging from the extent of its ruined mounds and the remarkable amount of old sculpture, carved building stones and ancient bricks, which have been and are still being extracted from them.

General Cunningham, who examined the site twice, during his tours 1861-62 and 1879-80, has given sufficiently detailed accounts of its topography and of the sculptures which were then visible, in Vols. III. and XV. of the *Archæological Survey Reports*.<sup>32</sup> Referring to these accounts for a general description of the place, I may turn at once to the question which my visit to Kurkihār was mainly intended to elucidate.

Hsien Tsiang, in his itinerary of the Buddhist places of worship situated between Gayā and Rājagṛha, mentions the **Kukkuṭapādagiri** or "Cock's-foot Mountain" immediately before Buddhavana and the sites around Yaśṭivana, and gives us a lengthy account of the religious interest attaching to it. On the top of the three-peaked mountain Kāśyapa, the chief of Buddha's disciples, was believed to have removed himself from mortal eyes to await the coming of Maitreya, the future Buddha. The sides of the mountain are described to us as "high and rugged, the valleys and gorges as impenetrable. Soaring up into the air are three sharp peaks; their tops are surrounded by the vapours of heaven and their shapes are lost in the clouds."<sup>33</sup>

**Supposed Site of Kukkuṭapādagiri.** — This sacred mountain, from which Buddhavana lay about 100 *li* to the north-east, was supposed by General Cunningham to be identical with the site of Kurkihār. He based this identification mainly on the modern name **Kurkihār**, which he believed was to be derived from an assumed earlier form \***Kukkuṭavihāra** representing a contraction for \***Kukkuṭapāda[giri]vihāra**. There seemed, indeed, a very serious obstacle to this identification, viz., the fact which General Cunningham himself felt obliged to acknowledge, that no three-peaked mountain is to be found in the neighbourhood of Kurkihār. He believed, however, that Hsien Tsiang's description could fairly apply to the "three large and rugged hills which rise boldly out of the plain about half a mile to the north of the village, and touch each other at their bases."

General Cunningham, though he reproduced this identification also in his *Ancient Geography*,<sup>34</sup> seems yet to have felt not altogether assured of it. In 1879-80 he, therefore, paid a fresh visit to Kurkihār, chiefly with the object of exploring the hill to the north of the village. On this occasion he specially looked for remains of the *stūpa*, which, according to Hsien Tsiang's account, was built on the top of the mountain where the peaks had closed at Kāśyapa. These remains he believed to have found "in a square basement which still exists on the highest or middle peak of the **Murali Hill** surrounded by quantities of broken bricks."<sup>35</sup>

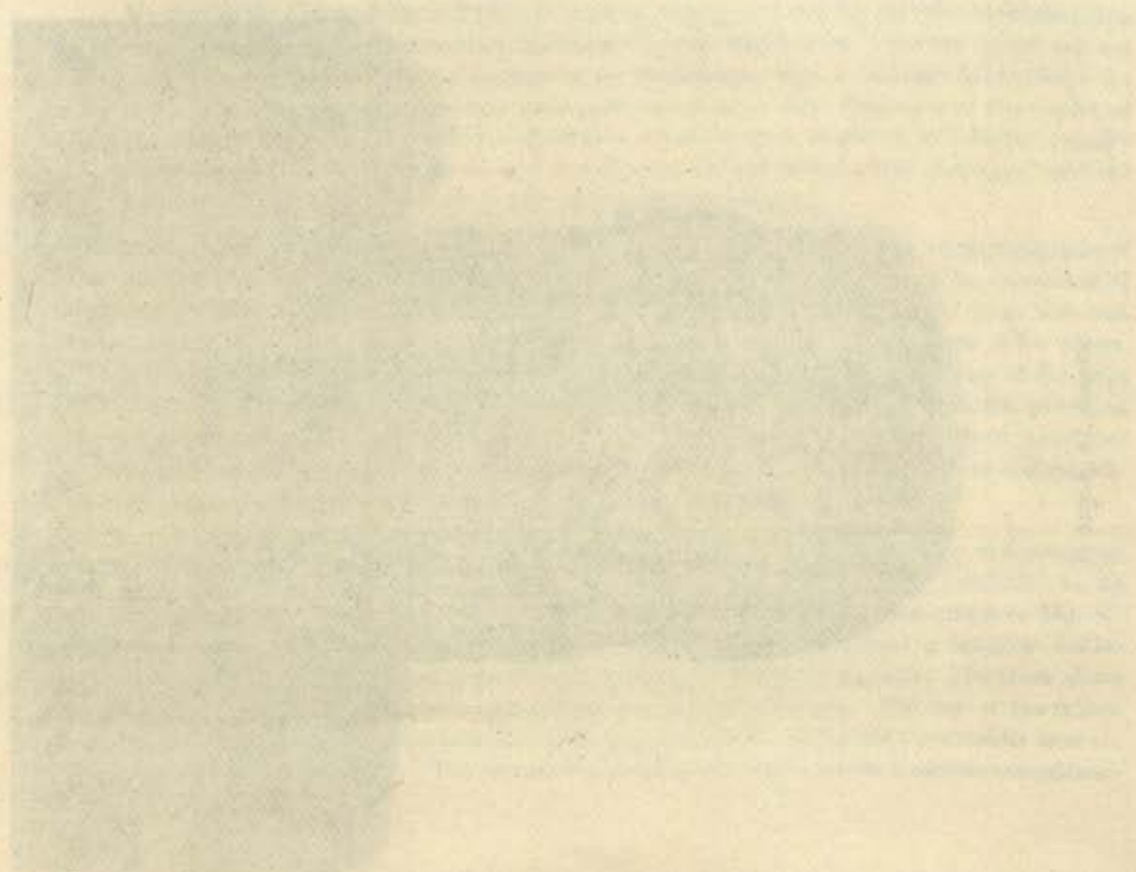
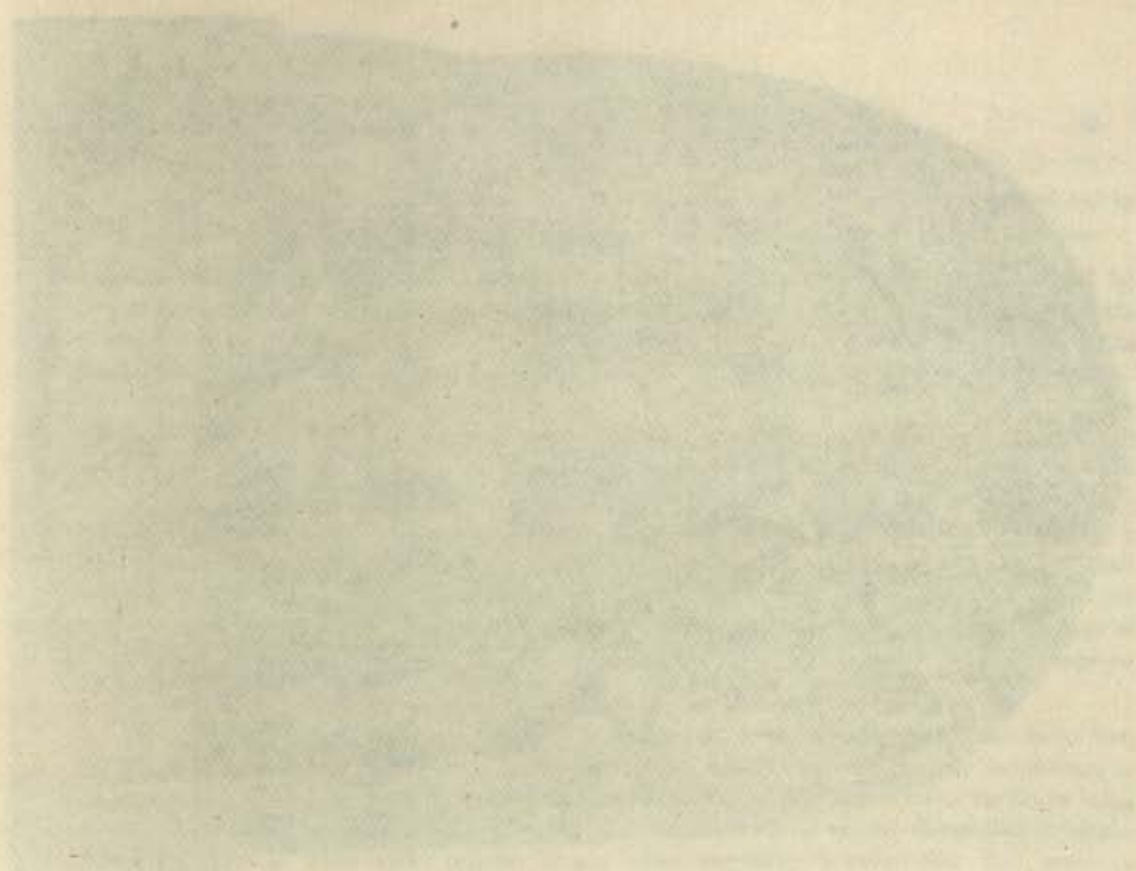
The difficulty involved by the proposed identification of Kukkuṭapādagiri with Kurkihār had struck me already before, when searching in vain on the available maps for any indications of hills in the immediate vicinity of Kurkihār, which could possibly be supposed to correspond to Hsien Tsiang's description of the three-peaked mountain. My doubts had increased after I had ascertained the exact position of Yaśṭivana and thereby indirectly also that of Buddhavana. For though the portion of the hill-range south-west of Jethian, where Buddhavana must be located, lies indeed to the north-east

<sup>32</sup> See Vol. III., pp. 14-16, with plate XII.; Vol. XV., pp. 4-6. <sup>33</sup> See Beal, *Si-yu-ki*, ii. p. 142. <sup>34</sup> See p. 460.

<sup>35</sup> See *Arch. Survey Rep.*, xv. p. 5. The name **Murali** here used must be due to some confusion. It is unknown to the people of Kurkihār as a designation of the low ridge meant by Gen. Cunningham. **Maraḍe** is the name of a large village about three miles due north of Kurkihār and at the foot of the high hills of the Southern "Rājgir range" trending from the north-east. Is it possible that this name, spelt **Murali**, got mixed up somehow with Gen. Cunningham's notes about the Kurkihār ridge?

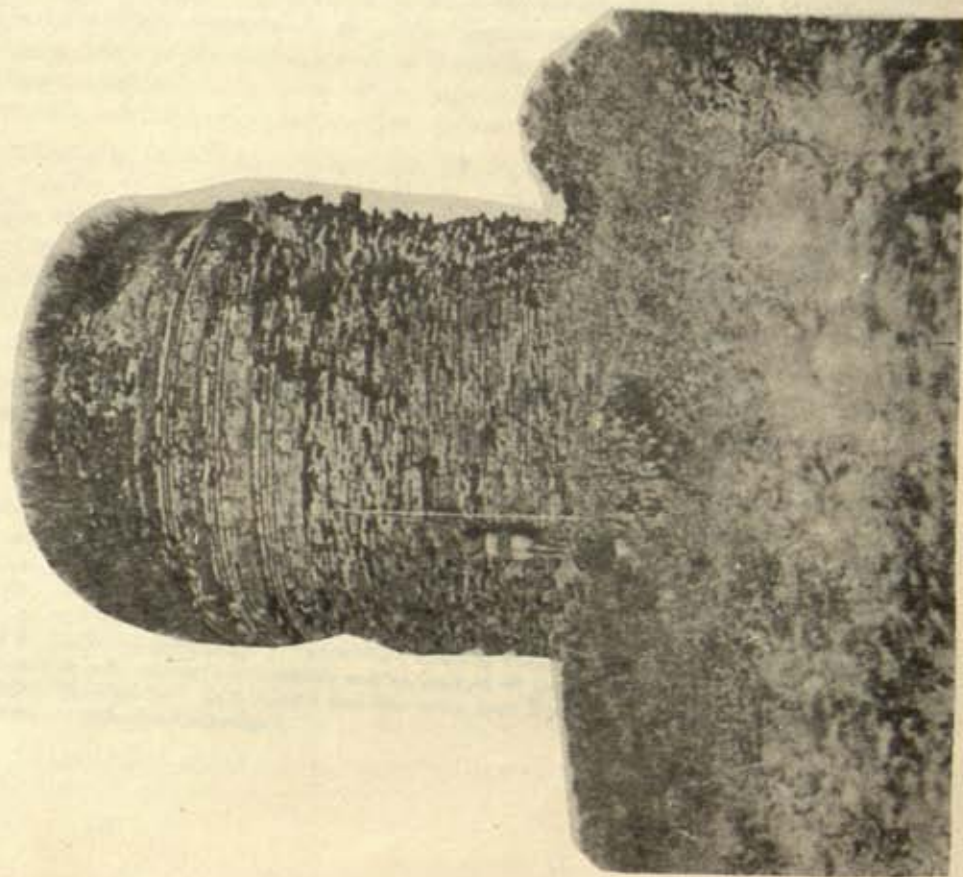


THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO



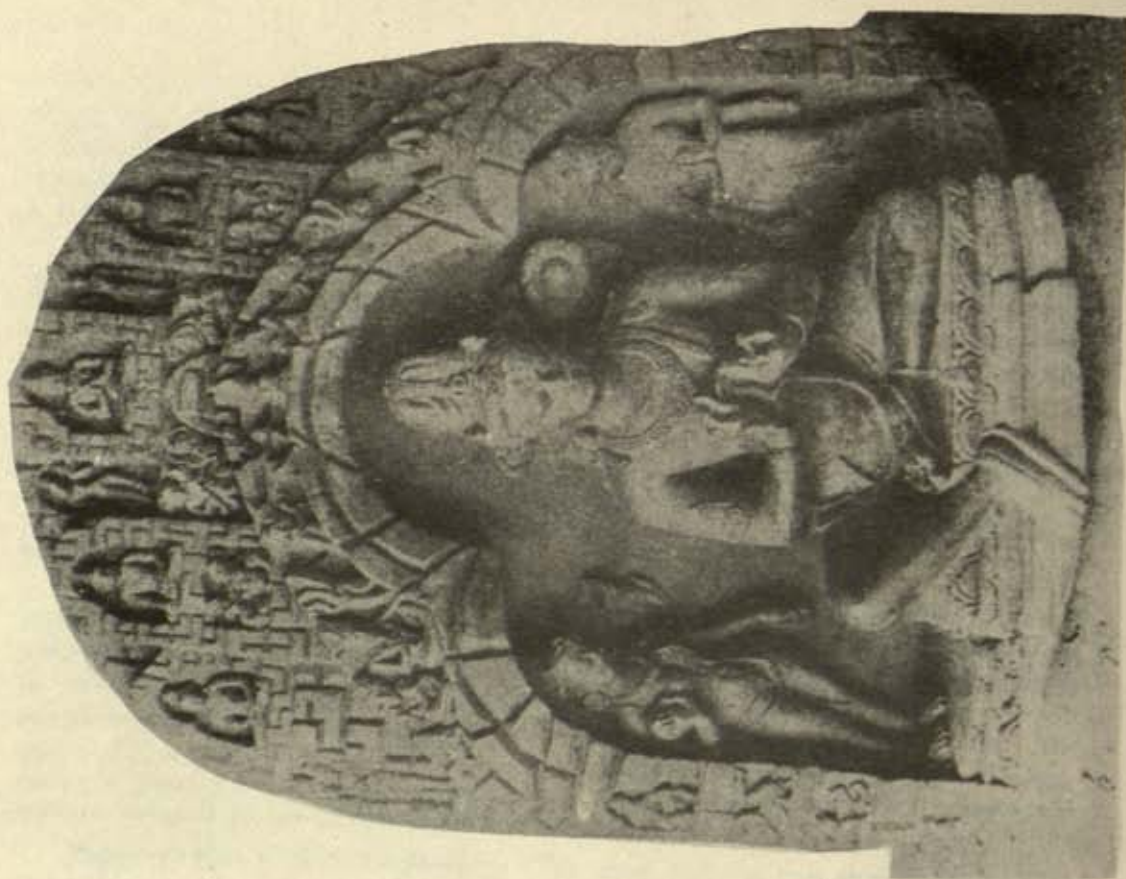


I. STŪPA AT GIRYĒK.



Scale 1 in. to 5 ft. 6 in.

II. RELIEVO FROM KURKIHĀR MOUND.



Scale 3½ in. to 3 ft.



of Kurkihār, yet the distance, in a direct line only 5-6 miles, could not possibly be represented by 100 li in Hsien Tsiang's itinerary, unless we assume a serious mistake in the pilgrim's reckoning.

The visit, which I paid on the morning of the 18th October to the three hills mentioned by General Cunningham north of Kurkihār, confirmed my misgivings. I found that those "hills" were in reality only low rocky ridges, such as we find cropping out "Kopje"-like through a great part of the Gayā District. They are situated a little over a mile to the N.-N.-E. of Kurkihār and are so insignificant in height and extent as to make their omission even from the large scale Revenue Survey Map easily intelligible. The middle hillock, on which General Cunningham looked for the hiding place of Kāśyapa, rises about 150 feet above the level of the rice fields. Its top forms a small plateau 125 feet long from S.-E. to N.-W. and 55 feet broad. On it there is a small platform with a dozen old sculptures of small size, among them a figure about 1½ feet high representing perhaps Māyā or a Sakti, and another of a Bodhisattva, one foot high. The rest of the collection is made up of small Līngas and broken Bhadrapiṭhas. Near the centre of the little plateau stands a black Līnga, of old appearance, about 1½ feet in height, and worshipped by the people of the neighbouring hamlet of Paṭhraura under the name of Rāmnāth. All these sculptured remains are said to have been found on the spot and within the recollection of the people.

The ridge which adjoins the middle one on the south-west is even smaller, rising only to 80 feet; the third to the north-east is only 20-30 feet higher than the middle one and equally insignificant in its other dimensions. All are almost completely bare of vegetation, the hard rock of the slopes being easily washed clear of detritus by the rainfall, and thus retaining no soil for the growth of jungle. Actually in view of these rocky hillocks, it was indeed impossible to believe that they could be meant in Hsien Tsiang's description of the *Kukkutapādagiri*, of which we are told: "Tumultuous torrents rush down its sides, thick forests envelope the valley, whilst tangled shrubs grow along its cavernous height."

My visit to the supposed site of Kāśyapa's mountain finally convinced me that the identification of Kurkihār with the "Cock's-foot Mountain" was impossible. But its result was not purely negative. From the elevated position of the Paṭhraura ridge I could not fail to notice the high hills rising above the plains farther away to the south-west, and culminating in the peaks of Tāṇḍwa and Mahār. Their direction and distance seemed to agree singularly with Hsien Tsiang's indications regarding the relative positions of Buddhavana and the "Cock's-foot Mountain," and the following pages will show that this observation had guided me rightly.

**Sculptures at Kurkihār.**—Though Kurkihār must be denied all claim to the distinction of marking the site of Kāśyapa's legendary resting place, it still deserves a special notice on account of the remarkable abundance of ancient remains which it contains. Carved slabs of large size and architectural fragments of all kinds can be found in plenty, walled into the houses of the village. Votive Stūpas of varying sizes, carved in granite, are seen in great number on the edge of the large tank adjoining the village on the south, where they now serve as washerman's stones, as well as in other places. From the ruined mound marked A on General Cunningham's plan great quantities of large bricks of ancient-make are still being extracted, and an inspection of the houses of Kurkihār shows that probably most of them have been built with similarly obtained materials.

In the course of these excavations sculptures are frequently discovered. Some well-preserved ones have been removed, through the care of Rai Lakshmi Nārāyan, the local Zamīndār, to his adjoining Bungalow. The most interesting of these is reproduced from a photograph in Fig. II. The relief, which is 3½ feet high with a greatest breadth of 3 feet, represents a teaching Bodhisattva seated within a trefoil-shaped niche of rocks between two female attendants. The frieze above the main image represents worshippers approaching a stūpa with offerings. The top of the relief shows five Bodhisattvas in different attitudes, each in a small niche. Below the three middle ones are seen couples of grotesque figures. The composition of the whole relief shows a curious resemblance



to that of many later products of Græco-Buddhist art in Gandhāra, though in respect of the modelling of figures and other details the difference is sufficiently marked.

The flat moulding just below the lotus-seat of the principal figure shows the usual Buddhist formula *Ye dharmahetuprabhavā, etc.*, in characters which appear to me to belong approximately to the 9-10th century of our era. The lower band of the moulding is inscribed with characters which have become much effaced, and which have not allowed me to take an impression sufficiently clear to be made out completely. It appears to contain a dedication. This sculpture is said to have been discovered in 1898 during excavations on the mound close by.

Another relieve measuring 2 feet 9 inches in height represents a female divinity, apparently a Sakti. The characters of the formula *Ye dharmā, etc.*, which is engraved round the head, and those of a short dedicatory inscription below the proper left foot, show close resemblance to those of the Aphaśā inscription (circ. 675 A. D.) reproduced in Professor Bühler's *Indian Palæography*.<sup>36</sup> The dedicatory inscription *Deyadharmō' yaṁ Sākyabhikṣuṁ ɛraṇamataḥ* (sic) marks the statue as the gift of a Buddhist nun (*bhikṣuṇī*), but does not furnish further information. A third relieve, also excavated not very long ago from the neighbouring mound, 2 feet 3 inches high, shows a six-armed male figure, holding lotus, rosary, *cakra*, conch, and what looks like a bowl. It is supported on either side by a female attendant.

Apart from these sculptures, which are well-preserved and ought without difficulty to be secured for the Imperial Museum at Calcutta, there is an older collection of similar spoils in the open courtyard of the temple of Bhagavatī at the north-eastern corner of the village. This has already been described by General Cunningham.<sup>37</sup> Fig. III. shows the principal relieve representing a Buddha in meditation. Its height is nearly 4½ feet. The characters of the formula engraved on the halo seem to belong to about the 10th century of our era. The word *Aksobhyavajra* engraved to the proper right of the head seems to indicate that the Buddha intended is *Akṣobhya*, one of the five eternal Buddhas of the Mahāyāna creed.

The conviction, which I arrived at after my examination of Kurkihār, was that Hiuen Tsiang's Kukkuṭapālagiri had to be looked for further to the south-west in the direction of the hills mentioned. On the 19th October I accordingly moved my camp to the large village of Wazīrganj, situated about 3 miles to the south-west of Kurkihār and conveniently near to the site of Hasra, which I had already before singled out for closer inspection. Hasra is the name given to a low ridge extending at the northern extremity of a higher range of hills, which rise boldly from the plain at a distance of about 4 miles S.-S.-W. of Wazīrganj (marked "Hasra" on Atlas of India Sheet, No. 104). The maximum elevation of the ridge to the north is about 200 feet above the plain. In the little defile, which separates the ridge from the hill to the south, and which is known as Kōl, Mr. Beglar had already noticed a considerable number of mounds, from which ancient sculptures of superior workmanship had been extracted at various times. He had given a brief description of these, accompanied by a plan, but had not been able to trace any tradition or other evidence that might throw light on the original character and name of the site.<sup>38</sup>

**The Hasra Site.**—Proceeding to Hasra on the afternoon of the same day I found the conclusion I had drawn from Mr. Beglar's account as to the importance of the site fully confirmed. The whole of the little valley, which measures about a quarter of a mile in length, is strewn with ancient building materials extracted from numerous ruined mounds. Referring to Mr. Beglar's plan for an indication of the approximate position of these mounds, I may mention that the one near the western entrance of the valley, marked *D* on his plan, measures fully 133 feet in length by 56 feet in breadth and thus evidently marks the position of a building of some dimensions. Again, close to the south foot of the lower ridge and near the centre of it, I came upon a large circular brick-mound, corresponding apparently to the structure marked *H* in Mr. Beglar's plan, but not described in his text. Though

<sup>36</sup> Table IV., columns xvii, xviii.

<sup>37</sup> See *Arch. Survey Rep.*, viii. p. 104 with plate II.

<sup>38</sup> See *Arch. Survey Rep.*, i. p. 15.



evidently used as a quarry by the villagers even quite recently, it still rises to a height of about 25 feet above the level-ground of the valley. The appearance of the mound distinctly suggests its having been a *stūpa*, and as it measures on the top 92 feet from north to the south and 75 feet from east to west, the dimensions of the original structure must have been very considerable. The bricks found on the surface are mostly broken, but appear originally to have measured about 10 inches in length with a thickness of 2 inches.

Much ancient sculpture is said to have been found in the course of the excavation for bricks which the poorer inhabitants of the neighbouring villages are in the habit of carrying on here. But those in fair preservation have apparently all been removed to the rustic shrines of the vicinity. Small broken pieces of reliefs and ornamented bases of statues are found on rubbish heaps at several places, particularly near the narrow eastern end of the valley. Among these there are several showing rows of small Bodhisattva figures, and thus indicating plainly the Buddhist character of the buildings from which they had been extracted. On the mound marked *K* by Mr. Beglar I could no longer trace the pedestal of a statue inscribed with the Buddhist formula. But close to the circular mound *A* at the western entrance of the defile there lies a broken relief of very good workmanship, about 2 feet high, showing a Buddha (now headless) seated in meditation and on its pannelled base (broken) four small images of Buddhas in varying attitudes. The formula engraved on the leaves of the lotus-seat occupied by the principal figure is in characters of about the 10th century. The sculpture deserves preservation.

Even a cursory inspection of the site proved that it must have been once occupied by an important Buddhist religious establishment. But a point of special interest was revealed by a closer view of the hill rising with rugged jungle covered slopes immediately to the south of the **Hasra-Kōl**. When approaching Hasra from the north-east, I had already noticed that the hill behind it was connected at its highest point on the east with two other spurs of about equal height, all three radiating from one central eminence covered like the rest with dense jungle. The view, supported as it was by the contours of the hill shown on the Survey map, and in conjunction with the extensive remains at the foot of the hill, naturally suggested to me that I had really found in the latter the "**Cock's-foot Mountain**" of Hiuen Tsiang.

In order to arrive at a definite opinion regarding this identification it was necessary to proceed to a closer examination of the hill itself, and this I was able to effect on the following morning. Before, however, detailing its results it will be useful here to review briefly the statement furnished regarding the sacred hill by Hiuen Tsiang, as well as by the earlier pilgrim Fa-hian.

**Chinese accounts of Kukkuṭapādagiri.**—Hiuen Tsiang, whose account is far the most detailed and accurate, starts in his description from the immediate vicinity of Bōdhgayā:<sup>30</sup> "To the east of the Mahī river (the present Mohanā Nadi) we enter a great wild forest and going 100 li or so we come to the **Kukkuṭapādagiri** ('the Cock's-foot Mountain') or **Gurupādagiri** ('the mountain of the venerable teacher'). The sides of this mountain are high and rugged, the valleys and gorges impenetrable." After referring, in the words already quoted, to the thick forests in the valleys and the tangled shrubs, which grow along the heights of the three sharp peaks of the mountain, Hiuen Tsiang informs us that "behind these hills the venerable **Mahā-Kāśyapa** dwells wrapped in a condition of Nirvāṇa. People do not dare to utter his name, and therefore they speak of the '**Gurupādāh**.'"

**Kāśyapa**, as Buddha's chief disciple had, when the master was on the point of attaining Nirvāṇa, received from him the commission to preserve the law. For this purpose he summoned the great convocation we have already referred to in connection with the Sattapaṇṇi Cave, "and then continued for twenty years. Then in disgust at the impermanence of the world, and desiring to die, he went towards the Cock's-foot Mountain. Ascending the north side of the mountain he proceeded along the winding path, and came to the south-west ridge. Here the crags and precipices prevented him from going on. Forcing his way through the tangled brushwood he struck the rock with his staff and

<sup>30</sup> See Beal, *Si-yu-ki*, ii. pp. 142-143.



thus opened a way. He then passed on, having divided the rock, and ascended till he was again stopped by the rocks interlacing one another. He again opened a passage through and came out on the mountain peak on the north-east side. Then having emerged from the defiles, he proceeded to the middle point of the three peaks. There he took the Kashāya garment of Buddha and expressed an ardent vow. On this the three peaks covered him over; this is the reason why now these three peaks rise up into the air." The pilgrim next relates the legend how, in future times, on the coming of Maitreya, the next Buddha, Kāśyapa will issue forth from the mountain and, delivering to him the garment of Buddha, enter Nirvāṇa. "Now, therefore, on the top of the mountain is a *stūpa* built. On quiet evenings those looking from a distance see sometimes a bright light as it were of a torch; but if they ascend the mountain there is nothing to be observed."

Two and a half centuries before Hiuen Tsiang's visit Fa-hian had already described the "Cock's-foot Mountain," which was then a pilgrimage place for Buddhists from many countries. Kāśyapa, he tells us, "divided the mountain at its base so as to open a passage. This entrance is now closed up. At a considerable distance from this spot there is a side chasm; it is in this the entire body of Kāśyapa is now preserved." Arhats were supposed to take their abode on the hill after the setting of the sun and to favour pilgrims who were in spiritual difficulties with their advice. "The thickets about this hill are dense and tangled. There are moreover lions, tigers, and wolves prowling about, so that it is not possible to travel without great care."<sup>40</sup> Fa-hian places the mountains 3 *li* to the south of Bōdhgayā, which implies a manifest error of record, such as unfortunately is not uncommon in this pilgrim's itinerary.

**Kukkuṭapādagiri identified with Sōbhnāth Hill.** — On the morning of the 20th October I approached the hill, in which I think we must thereafter recognize the legendary resting place of Kāśyapa, once more from the side of Hasra. Crossing the debris-strewn Kōl valley, I ascended the north slope of the spur immediately overhanging the latter by a rugged track leading through thick jungle. On the ridge, which was reached after a brisk climb of about 20 minutes, all traces of a path disappeared, and further progress to the east, where the spur culminates, was much impeded by a tangled mass of jungle trees, brushwood and high grass. The northern spur, from its middle part where I struck its ridge, rises towards the east in three distinct shoulders formed by massive rocks and in places difficult to climb. When approaching the highest portion, it became quite clear that it forms also the radiating point for two other spurs trending to the south-west and north-east. After climbing up a steep slope of rugged rocks I found that the central summit of the three spurs is surmounted by a square parapet, 9 to 10 feet high, built of rough walls, but sufficiently solid to prevent its being overgrown by the luxuriant jungle. The platform or terrace thus formed measures 75 feet on each side and is correctly orientated.

On its top I found a mound about 10 feet high, apparently circular at one time, but much dilapidated. Its present diameter is about 20 feet. It is composed of large bricks which, according to my guide's statement, were quarried by villagers at the time of a famine within his recollection. From the appearance of this mound it is clear that it represents the remains of the *stūpa* which Hiuen Tsiang mentions on the summit of the Cock's-foot Mountain. One of the bricks exposed measured 10 × 9 × 2 inches. The centre of the mound had been dug into a depth of 4-5 feet. In the cavity thus formed, which is about 10 feet broad, lie five large granite pillars, 9 inches in square thickness, half buried by debris.

From the top of the mound the relative position of the three spurs radiating from this central eminence could be seen most distinctly. Besides the spur, by which I had ascended and which runs almost due west, there is a lower but equally rugged spur descending to the south-west and also showing a number of shoulders. This is continued in the same direction by a series of detached rocky hills, which connect it with the Mahār group of hills about five miles to the south-west. The third spur, which is far shorter, trends in the direction of north-north-east and is soon lost in the plain.

<sup>40</sup> See *Fo-kwo-ki* in Beal, *Sū-yu-ki*, i. p. 1271.



I had no means of ascertaining the exact height of the central peak, but judging from the time occupied in climbing it and the comparison of the highest point of the Mahār Hill, marked 1,616 feet above sea level in the Survey Map, I came to the conclusion that its relative elevation above the plain may be about a thousand feet or a little more. The hill top is known to the people by the name **Sōbhnāth**, and the fact of its bearing an ancient mound is also generally known. But no definite tradition attaches to it, and all I could ascertain was that the well in the centre of the mound had been seen in this condition for the last twenty years.

The natural features of the hill strikingly illustrate the origin of the legend related by Hiuen Tsiang as to Kāśyapa's ascent. The position of the spurs corresponds closely to his account, which mentions, besides the northern side of the mountain, ranges to the south-west and north-east. In the confused masses of rocks heaped up all along the crest lines of the three spurs we can look for the passages which Kāśyapa was supposed to have opened with his staff. The tangled brushwood, which surrounded the hill in the days of both pilgrims, still covers it in remarkable thickness and in the narrow gorges which lead down between the spurs, the rainy season must indeed produce tumultuous torrents. That the name "Cock's-foot Mountain" (**Kukkuṭapādagiri**) is likely to have been derived from the three spurs resembling in relative position the foot of a cock has already been noticed by Hiuen Tsiang's translators. It is impossible to look down from the top of the central peak<sup>41</sup> or even to examine the shape of the hill on the map without being struck with the appropriateness of the simile.

It only remains to point out that the distances and bearings given by Hiuen Tsiang with reference to the "Cock's-foot Mountain" are in full agreement with the position now ascertained for it. From east bank of the Mahi opposite Bōdhgayā to the Kukkuṭapādagiri the pilgrim reckoned 100 *li* or so, the direction being to the east "through a great wild forest." Measuring on the map the direct distance from the Sōbhnāth Hill to the bank of the Mōhana Nadi opposite Bōdhgayā we find it to be close on 14 miles. This distance, with the addition of one-fourth required to compensate for the excess measurement on ordinary roads from village to village<sup>42</sup> and taking the *li* at its ordinary value of about  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile, brings us as near as we can expect to the 100 *li* of the Chinese pilgrim. The true direct bearing, it is true, is to the north-east, not to the east. But then a glance at the map will show that a traveller from Bōdhgayā would have to proceed at first nearly due east to Mahār in order to avoid crossing on his route the hills called after the latter place, which lie in the direct line between Sōbhnāth and Bōdhgayā.

Again after leaving the "Cock's-foot Mountain" Hiuen Tsiang counts about 100 *li* in a north-easterly direction to Buddhavana. Accepting the position I have above approximately marked for the latter locality and measuring the direct distance on the map, we find it a little over 11 miles and the bearing north-east. The slight difference here noticed in the two map-values of Hiuen Tsiang's "100 *li*" is easily accounted for by the fact that in proceeding to Buddhavana the pilgrim had to cross the southern Rājgir range at a point where it is comparatively high and rugged, as his own reference to "peaks and cliffs lofty and precipitous" clearly indicates.

After I had completed my tour and returned to Calcutta, I learned from my friend Lt.-Colonel L. A. Waddell, I. M. S., that he, too, had on a visit paid several years ago to Hasna arrived at the same conclusion as to the identity of the "Cock's-foot Mountain." In view of Col. Waddell's keen power of observation, testified by the important results of his researches into other points connected with Hiuen Tsiang's itinerary, it is a source of special assurance to me to know that the above identification had been arrived at by us both independently.

**Sculptures at Bishanpūr.** — I descended from the Sōbhnāth peak by the steep gorge which leads down between the south-western and western spurs to the village of **Bishanpūr** in order to see the sculptures mentioned by Mr. Beglar at this place.<sup>43</sup> It lies about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  miles to the west of the

<sup>41</sup> Its position may be fixed on the Atlas of India map just below the letter d of the name "Tundwa."

<sup>42</sup> Compare Cunningham, *Ancient Geography of India*, p. 564.

<sup>43</sup> See *Arch. Survey Rep.*, viii. p. 105.



peak and contains, in a half decayed modern shrine designated as the "Bhairavasthūn," a series of fine sculptures said to have been excavated in the Kōl valley some 25 or 30 years ago.

The largest and best preserved among them are a large-sized Buddha-statue with an attendant figure on each side (see Fig. IV.), the whole having evidently formed one group. The height of the central statue is 5 feet from the base and that of the attendants  $3\frac{1}{2}$  feet. The characters of the Buddhist formula inscribed on the pedestal point to the 9-10th century as the probable date of these fine sculptures. The attendant figure on the proper right is clearly marked as Pādmanābhi. The relieves now lying behind the principal statue evidently formed a panel for it and show like the rest of these sculptures highly-finished workmanship.

Fig. V. reproduces three detached relieves, which must have belonged to pedestals for smaller statues. Their execution is equally good. There are two smaller statues of inferior value in niches of the tumbled-down walls, representing Buddha and a four-armed god, probably Vishnu. I was, however, unable to trace the small bas-relief, which is mentioned by Mr. Beglar as bearing a short inscription with the name of **Mahākāśyapa**. In the view of the identification of the Kōl site now arrived at, this name as possibly indicating reference to the local saint would have been of special interest.

I consider that the removal of the Bishanpūr sculptures to a place where their preservation could be assured, probably to the Imperial Museum, is distinctly desirable. Judging from the impression I gained by my enquiries, this removal, if accompanied by the offer of some gratuity to the local Purōhitas, could be effected without difficulty. Or, the grant of a small sum might assure the necessary repairs to the shrine, which could then serve as a shelter for the sculptures now placed there. Still more desirable it seems to me that early steps be taken to prevent unauthorized excavations and consequent destruction in the ruined mounds of the Kōl valley, which, by the identification of their site, have now acquired a special interest.

From Warzārganj I proceeded on the 20th October to Gayā in order to arrange from there for my visit to the **Kuluha Hill**, situated close to the southern border of the Gayā District, but within the limits of Hazāribāgh. The ancient remains on this hill, previously unsurveyed, had formed the subject of a detailed report submitted to Government in June 1899 by Bābū Nand Lal Dey, Munsif-Magistrate of Chatra, Hazāribāgh, and I had been asked to examine them in connection with my tour. After a short stay at Gayā, required in order to allow my camp to move ahead, I marched on the 22nd October *via* Shērgāhāī to Hunterganj village, situated about 32 miles by road south of Gayā on the left bank of the Lālājan River and not far from the northern border of the Hazāribāgh District. On the following day I proceeded to the Kuluha Hill, which rises about 6 miles to the southwest of Hunterganj, and placed my camp at **Haṭwaria**, the nearest inhabited place on the west side of the hill.

**Position of Kuluha Hill.**—The hill known locally as the **Kuluha Pahār** is formed by a projecting spur of the great range which runs along the northern edge of the plateau of Hazāribāgh. It consists of a series of steep basaltic ridges, running in the general direction of north to south and culminating in a pinnacle of bold crags, which reach to a height of 1,575 feet above sea level, as fixed by the Trigonometrical Survey. Owing to its height and bold form the hill is a very conspicuous object in the landscape, as seen from the plains of the Shērgāhāī Sub-Division.

The fact of the hill being the object of a local pilgrimage is mentioned in Sir W. Hunter's *Gazetteer* (Hazāribāgh District) and is also recorded in the *List of Ancient Monuments of Bengal*. But the merit of having first given a full account of it belongs to Bābū Nand Lal Dey, the local officer already mentioned, whose *Report*, dated 7th June 1899, was forwarded to Government with a letter from the Commissioner of the Chōṭā Nagpūr Division and duly communicated to me in print. Bābū Nand Lal Dey deserves every commendation for the zeal and trouble with which he has endeavoured, during his short stay on the hill, to note down all those objects which his state of health permitted him to visit, and which he thought might be of antiquarian interest. As, however, his examination of the remains of the place was necessarily rapid and does not profess to have been made with special



III. SCULPTURES IN TEMPLE-COURT, KURKI HAR.



*Scale 2½ in. to 3 ft.*

IV. SCULPTURES AT BISHANPUR.



*Scale 2½ in. to 3 ft.*



V. SCULPTURED PEDESTALS, BISHANPUR.



*Scale 4½ in. to 3 ft.*

VI. VIEW OF AKĀSALOCANA PEAK, KULUHA HILL.





archaeological knowledge, it would serve no useful purpose to reproduce it here or to discuss particular statements contained in it. It may, however, be mentioned that Bābū Nand Lāl Dey believed the ancient remains on the hill to be exclusively Buddhist, and that he was prepared to identify it, on the basis of a supposed etymology of the name, with "the Makula Parvata of the Burmese Annals of Buddhism" where Buddha is said to have passed his sixth rainy season.<sup>44</sup>

The top of the Kuluha Hill is approached by two paths only, one leading up from Haṭwaria village on the west, and the other from a valley which skirts the hill on the east. Following the former, which I used on my ascents to the hill, traces of the pilgrims' route are soon met in the auspicious *sindūra* (red-lead) marks applied to all larger rocks and trees. About half a mile south of Haṭwaria, where the path leaves a wooded plateau at the foot of the hill, there is a small mound of stones, and on its top an old relieve, measuring 1 foot 8 inches in height by eleven in breadth, which represents the Jina Pārśvanātha under the usual snake-hood. The Hindu pilgrims and their Purōhitas know the sculpture by the name of *Dvārapāla*, "the Guardian of the Gate." For about half a mile further the path crosses an outlying ridge, which is fairly wooded. Then the proper ascent begins over bare basaltic rocks of remarkably large size, which face the whole west side of the hill. They are so steep and and so bare of vegetation that for one not barefooted it is a matter of some difficulty to scramble up. After an ascent of about four hundred feet a wall of even steeper, but smaller, cliffs is met. Here a regular path is formed by broad steps cut into the rock. This path leads at a point about 200 feet higher up through the gateway of an ancient wall to the plateau near the hill top.

**Plateau of Kuluha Hill-top.**—This plateau or rock basin—for this name would be equally applicable for a part of the area—is formed by two massive ridges of rock, more or less parallel, which ascend from the south. Before converging towards the bold pinnacle of rock which, as already mentioned, forms the summit of the hill, these ridges are joined by a transverse ridge which runs in the direction from south-east to north-west and at a distance of about half a mile to the south of the summit. The bare rocks, forming the north face of the transverse ridge, slope gradually down towards a natural basin, which contains a small lake about 300 yards long with a greatest width of about 70 yards. The longitudinal direction of the lake follows the dip of the transverse ridge from N.-W. to S.-E. It is said to be fed by springs and always retains its water, the overflow from the monsoon rains being carried off by a small channel at the south-east corner. The presence of this unfailing supply of water in a locality otherwise made so forbidding by Nature had probably much to do with turning the plateau of the Kuluha Hill into a popular place of pilgrimage.

Immediately above the little lake, with its plentiful growth of lotuses, waterlilies and other aquatic plants, the bare rock rises with steep wall-like slopes up towards the summit. The main ridge on the east ascends to this highest point in a series of bare cliffs, which form a kind of *crête* and fall off almost precipitously towards the valley below. The ridge on the west is less steep and rocky and is covered in the part nearer to the rock basin with thick jungle growth. Higher up it, too, assumes the form of a precipitous wall of cliffs. The summit itself, which forms the final object of the pilgrimage, consists of a series of enormous boulders heaped up one above the other and frowning down boldly into the valleys.

I have attempted to illustrate the main topographical features of the hill by a site-plan prepared from my rough survey (see Fig. VII.). This, I hope, together with the photograph reproduced

<sup>44</sup> "It will be remarked that, excepting the image of Kuleswari, I did not come across the image of a single deity belonging to the Hindu Pantheon: the place is entirely Buddhist. It is my strong conviction that Koluha Pahar is the *makula* Parvata of the Burmese annals of Buddhism. Buddha is said to have passed his sixth *wasso* (or rainy season retirement) on the Makula mountain (see Bigandet's *Life* or the *Legend of Gaudama*). Koluha is simply a contraction and corruption of *Makula* (*ma*) of (*makula*) having dropped by lapse of time, and the word *kula* changed into Kuluha according to the guttural pronunciation of the people of the district. The word *kula*, however, still exists in the name of the goddess Kuleswari (*Kula* + *Iswari*) which means, as I have stated, the Lady of the Mountain Kula."

It is scarcely necessary to point out that the derivation of the name *Kulūha* here suggested is impossible on phonetic grounds, and that the connection of the site with the Makula Parvata cannot be maintained in the absence of any direct historical or topographical evidence.



in Fig. VI., showing the summit as seen from Bhimbhār, will help in following the description of the objects of antiquarian interest to which I now proceed.

**Sacred Sites on Kuluha Hill.**—Reaching the plateau on the west by the path previously described, we notice first the ancient wall which lines the crest line of the ridge on this side. It is there 9 feet thick and shows rows of well-cut slabs of stone on the outer faces, while its interior is apparently built of large undressed stones. The gateway, five feet broad, is much decayed, but beyond it to the N.-E. I was able to follow the wall ascending the ridge for a distance of about 750 feet, notwithstanding the thick jungle by which it is surrounded. Immediately to the north of the gate, where there is a natural dip in the ground, the wall is fully 15 feet high. The wall extends to the N.-E. up to the point where the ridge falls off in almost perpendicular cliffs and where thus Nature itself has provided a rampart. The same observation applies to the wall south of the gate, which, adapting itself to the contours of the plateau, extends in a fair state of preservation for about 700 feet, up to a point on the above-mentioned transverse ridge, where the latter becomes quite unscaleable.

About 130 feet to the S.-E. of the gate by which we have entered, stands a temple sacred to Durgā-Bhagavati. The name under which the goddess is worshipped here, **Kulesvari**, is supposed to be connected with the designation of the hill Kuluha. The temple, which consists of a cella about 12 feet square inside and an outer chamber 10 feet deep and 9 feet broad, is up to a height of five feet from the ground built mainly with stone materials removed evidently from some old structure. Among these large ornamented slabs are found in considerable number. The rest of the extant temple is built with bricks which seem also of old make, and is covered outside with a thick layer of *chunam*.

A broad platform in front of the temple, which faces south, as well as a large dilapidated shed to the west of it, are similarly constructed with ancient carved slabs, while more of the latter lies in front of the building. The present temple is said to have been built by a Rājā Candraketu of Dāntār, as to whose date no information was forthcoming. Judging from its appearance, it can scarcely be older than a couple of centuries. On the other hand the materials used in its construction show that it has probably replaced an earlier structure of more imposing dimensions. One old slab in the wall measures  $4\frac{1}{2}$  feet in length and one foot in height.

The Purōhitas or, as they are locally called, Paṇḍas of the shrine reside at Dāntār and ordinarily take their turn of worship for half a week. The pilgrims, by whose *dalgiṇās* they mainly subsist, visit the hill at particular days auspicious for the 'Yātrā.' Such are the 9th day of the bright half of Caitra, when about 5,000 people are said to assemble, and the day of Māgha known as Śrīpārcamī. There is no *Mahātmya* or legendary in use, but the priests are in the habit of relating to the pilgrims the stories of the *Mahābhārata*, which local belief connects with particular sites of the hill.

About 125 yards to the south of the temple and on the rocky crest of the transverse ridge a large isolated boulder known as **Bhimbhār** is visited by the pilgrims. Bhīma, the epic hero, is believed to have put it there to take rest in its shade. About 40 feet to the N.-E. of it is a platform 21 feet long and 14 feet broad built of large dressed slabs. The place which is called the "wall of King Virāt" offers a splendid view over the Lālājan valley westwards.

About 18 yards to the north of 'Bhimbhār' is a small grotto about 4 feet high and 3 feet broad, formed by a boulder overlying a fissure in the rock. Inside is a well-preserved image of the Jina Pārśvanātha, seated and surmounted by the usual snake-hood. The little sculpture, which is about 2 feet high, is carved in a black basaltic stone and seems distinctly old. The interstices between the rocks serving as sidewalls and the boulders are filled with bricks 9 inches square and  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches thick. Close to the west of this is another small grotto containing a seated Jina in the conventional posture. As the Cihna engraved on the pedestals is effaced the Jina intended cannot be ascertained. Judging from the red-lead marks on these sculptures they seem to enjoy the orthodox attention of the pilgrims.

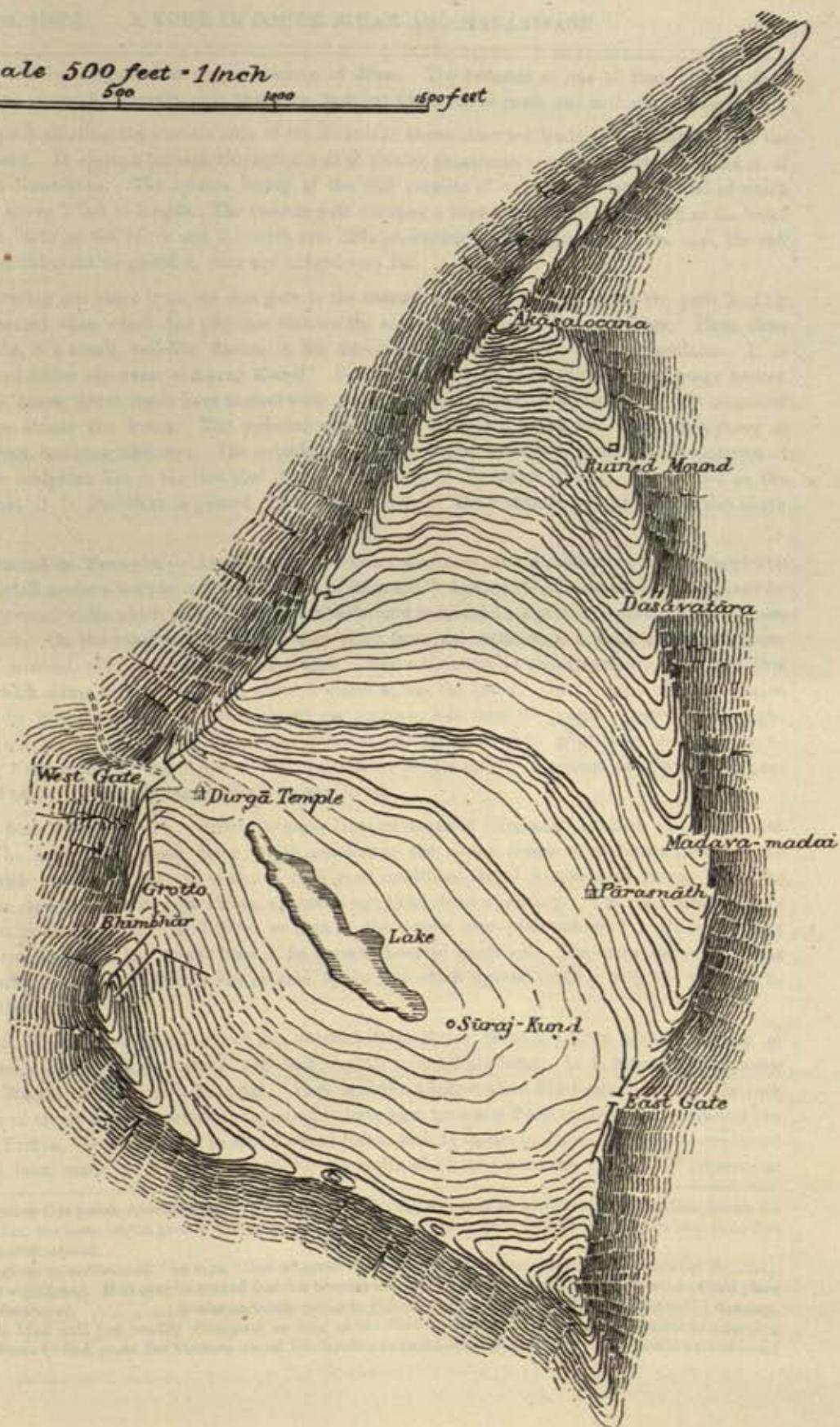
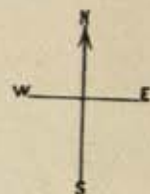
Descending from Bhimbhār towards the temple a small rock-ground tank is passed, and near it two small images placed below a tree. They measure  $1\frac{1}{2}$  feet in height, and though damaged by exposure



# SITE-PLAN OF KULUHA TIRTHA.

VII.

feet  
500 400 300 200 100 0  
Scale 500 feet = 1 inch  
500 1000 1500 feet



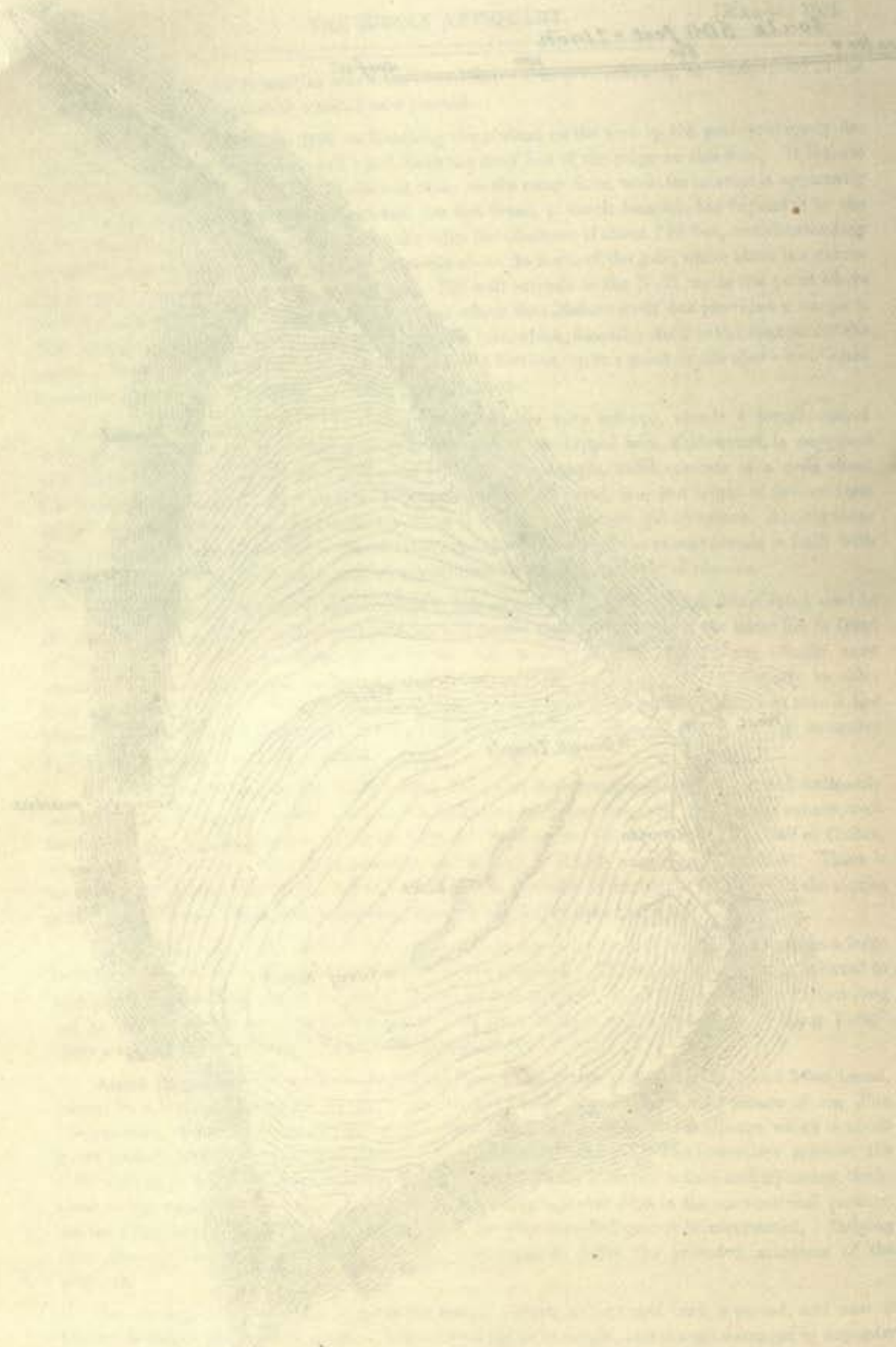


# SITE-PLAN OF KULUMA TIRTHA

THE LAND

Scale 500 Feet = 1 Inch

1911





are yet clearly recognized as representations of Jinas. The pedestal of one of them bears a short inscription of which, however, only the date **Samvat 1443** can be made out with any certainty.

A path skirting the western side of the little lake above described leads to the East Gate of the hill plateau. It opens a passage through a wall of similar construction to that on the west and is of identical dimensions. The outside facing of the wall consists of well-carved slabs, several of which measure above 5 feet in length. The eastern gate occupies a depression in the ridge, and as the latter soon rises both on the south and the north into cliffs presenting a precipitous face to the east, the wall which was intended to guard it, does not extend very far.

Retracing our steps from the east gate to the eastern end of the lake we strike the path leading to the sacred sites which the pilgrims visit on the higher portion of the east ridge. Here, close to the lake, is a small well-like fissure in the smooth rock, where rain water accumulates. It is worshipped under the name of **Suraj Kund**. By the side of it lies the fragment of an image broken above the knees, which must have undoubtedly represented a Buddha or Bodhisattva. It measures 11 inches across the knees. The pedestal attached is 16 inches broad and represents a group of worshippers, bringing offerings. The outside panels are occupied by crouching lions. The interest of this little sculpture lies in the fact that it is the only trace of Buddhist worship I could find on the hill. That it is Buddhist is proved by the few words of the Buddhist formula still legible above the base.

**Pārasnāth Temple.**—Ascending then over an absolutely bare shoulder of rock for about 180 yards a small modern temple is reached called "Pārasnāth." It consists of a square cella, enclosed by *chunam*-covered walls which measure 14 feet outside, and is raised on a platform about 3 feet above the ground. On the south wall of the interior, which faces the entrance, is a small raised platform, which is covered with small bricks and stones. Above these can be seen fragments of a small Jina statue, which seems to have measured about 9 inches across the knees. According to the information supplied by the Purāṇitas who accompanied me, common folk from the jungle villages of the neighbouring hills are in the habit of depositing stones at this shrine on their pilgrimage with a view to removing them again, if the object of their pilgrimage is attained.<sup>45</sup> Customs of a similar purport prevail at other Indian pilgrimage places known to me.

The little temple is said to derive its name from an image of Pārśvanātha, which was once placed in it. The high bulb-shaped dome which surmounts the shrine, shows so modern a form and the *chunam* with which it is covered is also in such good condition, that I do not think we can assign to the whole structure, as it now exists, a greater age than about a century. Yet the Purāṇitas were unanimous in asserting that the builder or date of the temple were quite unknown to them, and that in their recollection it has always been in its present deserted condition. The name and style of the building afford clear proof that it was erected by Jainas, which agrees entirely with the facts to be recorded thereafter.

About 80 yards to the N.-E. of this deserted Jaina shrine there is a large boulder, the top of which forms a comparatively smooth and only slightly rounded platform. It is known by the name **Maḍava-Maḍai or Maṇḍava-Maṇḍai**. Here is shown a hollow about 3 feet square cut into the rock to a depth of about 4 inches, which is supposed to have been used as a **Vedi** or altar at a sacrifice of the epic king Virāṭa. Around it can be seen 9 round holes, each  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches in diameter; they are explained as having been made to serve as sockets for the staffs which supported the "Maṇḍapa" required at

<sup>45</sup> I mention this point, specially because Babu Nand Lal Dey, who here as elsewhere took the Jina image for one of Buddha, has been led to give to the custom a signification which is quite foreign to it, and to base upon this further communications.

"I was given to understand," he says, "that whoever visits this temple throws a stone at the image [of Buddha]. This is very significant. If it ever be proved that the temples and other buildings of the Buddhist period of this place have been destroyed, . . . it was certainly owing to Hindu hatred, and not to Moslem bigotry." Assumptions of this kind will not readily disappear as long as the historical text books ordinarily accessible to educated Indians continue to find room for theories about the forcible extermination of Buddhism unsupported by historical evidence.



the Pratisthā ceremony. Close to this spot there is a line of very shallow and now almost completely effaced Devanāgarī characters engraved in the rock, of which only the letters संव (sāvat) can be made out with any certainty. We have here evidently a mere *sgraffito* of some visitor. To the east of this spot is an oblong platform, supported by walls on which King Virāt is said to have celebrated the marriage of his daughter Uttarū.

**The Daśavatāra Rock-sculptures.**—A steep ascent over boulders for about 250 yards in the direction of N.-N.-E. brings the pilgrim to a series of rock-sculptures known as the **Daśavatāra**. They are carved on the perpendicular west side of a large fissured rock, in two groups. The one first approached shows in a deep continuous niche five seated relievo figures of Jinās, each 10½ inches high and 11 inches broad at the knees. Their modelling and carving is comparatively rude and affords no certain clue to their age. Below each figure is carved a relievo representation of a *śūhāsana*, showing in the centre the *cilva* or characteristic emblem of the Jina intended. These lower relievos are cut very shallow and as they have in consequence much suffered by exposure only two *cilvas*, horse and elephant, are now recognizable. Above the third, fourth and fifth figures, from the left, there is seen a faintly incised *sgraffito* in Devanāgarī characters, of which only the syllables *deva . . . pu* can, however, be read.

A few yards to the north, and on a slightly lower level, the rock-face shows ten more relievo representations of Jinās of similar style and execution. Five, on the left, are seated and of the same dimensions as those described before; those to the right are standing and measure 2½ feet in height. All the figures have on their breast the usual diamond-shaped mark and are accompanied by small attendants holding chowrees. The *Cilvas* below these figures have either not been engraved, though there is room for them, or have completely worn away. Only crouching lions can be made out in the shallow relievos intended to mark pedestals.

From the rock of the **Daśavatāra** the path leads up very steeply towards the summit of the hill. Before reaching the latter, and at a height of about 100 feet above rock-carvings just described, there are noticed foundations of ancient walls which must have originally formed a square of about 18 feet inside. The walls are exposed on the north, east and south, and consist of carefully placed ancient bricks measuring 11 × 8 × 2 inches. In the inside of the square a hollow has been dug out, apparently in a mound of loose stones. The west side is occupied by a flat mound of small stones, which is evidently artificial and rises fully 5 feet above the present level of the wall on the east. I was unable to arrive at any definite conclusion as to the object of this structure. It is certainly of ancient date, and cannot have had any defensive character, as the east scarp of the ridge at this point is quite inaccessible.

**The Ākāśalocana Rock.**—About 80 feet higher up the summit is reached over a series of large crags heaped up by Nature as if to form stairs. One large rock can be scaled only by means of shallow footholds cut into the smooth rounded surface. On the top of the highest crag, which is known as **Ākāśalocana**, there is seen a pair of footprints or *pādukās* cut into the rock to a depth of about half an inch. The toes, which are but slightly marked, face to the north; the length of the footprints is 8 inches. There is no inscription or trace of ornamentation near these marks, and this fact, together with the simplicity of design, suggest that the carving dates from an early time. The footprints are described by the Purāṇikas as those of Viṣṇu, but in view of what we shall have to note thereafter, they are likely to have been originally worshipped as those of a **Jaina Tīrthahkara**.

That the hill must have in earlier days been a prominent Tīrtha for Jainas is made abundantly clear by the fact that apart, from an apparently modern image of Durgā in the temple first mentioned, which I could not see closely, and the Buddhist fragment already noticed, all sculptures on the hill, whether detached or rock-carved, represent **Tīrthahkaras**. Yet local information was unanimous as to the absence of Jainas among the present visitors of the Tīrtha.

**Jaina tradition about Kuluha Tīrtha.**—I should have been obliged to leave this interesting question unsolved had not the enquiries I subsequently made among the small Jaina community of



Patna helped me to a clue. The Jainas consulted, though otherwise well-informed of places of sacred interest for their sect, had never heard of Kuluha. But on going through a handbook for Jaina pilgrims which they showed to me, I came upon a notice, which showed that until recent times a tradition regarding this Tirtha must have survived in some quarters. The little publication referred to bears the title of *Sr tirthamālā Amolakaratna*, and was printed in 1893 by Rana Narayan Pal, Tulapatti, Calcutta, from which place I was, however, subsequently, notwithstanding repeated efforts, unable to obtain a copy.

The handbook, which is written in Hindī and provided with a curiously primitive map, describes correctly enough the route from Gayā to Kuluha and mentions that the name of this place is given "in the *Sastras*" as "**Bhaddalapuranagara**." "There the tenth Tirthamkara, **Sitalasvāmin**, was conceived, born, received initiation, and obtained his enlightenment." The author refers to a temple which "was once adorned by an image," but states that the Tirtha is now deserted.

I regret that other labours and my inability to consult competent Jaina ecclesiastics in Calcutta have prevented me from following up, in older Jaina texts, the indication here furnished. I have little doubt that those specially acquainted with medieval Jaina literature bearing on the subject of Tirthas may be able to trace earlier references to the sacred site above described.

But even without awaiting the result of such enquiries, the identification of Kuluha as a Jaina place of worship is of considerable interest. We have here a distinct instance how, even with a sect so remarkably tenacious in its traditions and customs, a once well-known sacred site has become completely forgotten within comparatively recent times. In the course of my studies regarding the ancient topography of Kaśmīr it has been more than once necessary for me to re-discover, once famous but now entirely forgotten, places of pilgrimage solely by the means of antiquarian research. The instance of Kuluha shows that, even in parts of India proper, where the religious conditions of the population have undergone no marked change, we must reckon with such alterations of the *topographia sacra*.

I may add, in conclusion, that though everything points to Kuluha having been a place of special interest and attraction to the Jaina community, yet the worship of the site was probably always shared also by the mass of the Hindu population in the neighbourhood, just as we find indubitable evidence of the same peaceful condominium from early times at Rājgir, Gīrnār and many other well-known Tirthas.

I returned to Gayā on the 28th October and used a short halt for visits to the most prominent of the shrines at this ancient Tirtha. Descriptions of them have been given by General Cunningham, whose identifications of the sites mentioned by the Chinese pilgrims at and around Gayā seem in full agreement with the topographical indications. At Bōdhgayā I revisited the remains of the most famous shrine of Buddhism still extant in India, amply described in the publications of General Cunningham and others.

**The Remains of Bakraur.**— Crossing from Bōdhgayā the Līlājan River to the east I inspected at Bakraur the remains of a large *stūpa* which Gen. Cunningham had already correctly identified with the "*stūpa* of the perfume elephant" described by Hiuen Tsiang "to the east of the Bodhi Tree, crossing the Nairājanā."<sup>46</sup> It forms the starting point for that portion of Hiuen Tsiang's itinerary, which we had followed above in the reverse direction from Gīryek to the "Cock's-foot Mountain." The top of the mound, which rises to a height of 25 feet above the level ground, measures fully 153 feet from north to south, and thus shows the large dimensions of the original structure. The pool which the pilgrim mentions to the north of the "**Gandhahastī Stūpa**" I was unable to trace, but at a distance of about 500 yards to the south-east of the *stūpa* there are the remains of a large tank marked by ancient embankments. On the north bank of this tank stands now the temple of **Mataṅga**, one of the numerous Tirthas visited by the Gayā pilgrims.

The remaining few days of my vacation were devoted to an examination of the famous caves of Aśoka and Daśaratha in the Barābar hills, north of Gayā, and the ancient remains in their neigh-

<sup>46</sup> *Si-yu-ki*, ii. p. 138.



bourhood, as well as to a brief visit to Patna, the ancient Pāṭaliputra. In regard to the former sites, which have also been fully dealt with in the *Archaeological Survey Reports*, I can restrict myself to a few observations concerning their ancient topography.

It has been duly noticed before that the **Caves of Barābar**, notwithstanding their connection with a family famous in Buddhist annals, have not been mentioned by the Chinese pilgrims. This circumstance is easily accounted for by the fact that the site possessed no special interest for Buddhists. An illustration of this is afforded by the dedicatory inscriptions of Aśoka's Caves, which, as we now know, specially record the offer of these cave-dwellings to mendicants of a non-Buddhistic sect (Ājivikas).

**Siddhesvara Hill.**—A further indication may be found in the fact that the highest of the Barābar hills is occupied by a shrine sacred to **Siva Siddhesvara**, which has a distinct claim to considerable antiquity. This temple, to which General Cunningham only briefly refers,<sup>47</sup> is still the object of an extensive pilgrimage from the neighbouring tracts. The present structure, which seems to have undergone numerous changes, rests on an ancient basement measuring 17 feet on the east side, where it is still well preserved. It there reaches to a height of 5 feet 2 inches from the ground, and is constructed of only three courses of large granite slabs, some of them over five feet in length and 1½ feet thick. This basement projects in the centre by 6 inches for one-third of its length and is decorated with a remarkably bold moulding which indicates its antiquity. The upper portion of the temple contains also numerous carved slabs, which must have been taken from some earlier structure, but the greatest part is so thickly covered with *chunam* that a close examination is impossible. It appears, however, that the original building consisted of a square cella of the dimensions indicated by the well-preserved east basement.

It has been suggested by Mr. Beglar that the hill occupied by the Siddhesvara temple is identical with the great mountain of dark-coloured rocks, on which a small *stūpa* about ten feet high marked the place where Buddha had entered into meditation.<sup>48</sup> No trace of the *stūpa* can now be found on the hill of Siddhesvara. Yet its relative position to another site mentioned by Hsien Tsiang in the neighbourhood, which I believe Mr. Beglar to have quite correctly identified, favours the above suggestion. Hsien Tsiang describes a monastery "to the north-west of the mountain 30 *li* or so, on a declivity of the mountain; it is flanked by a high precipice, and the lofty walls and towers stand up in intervals of the rocks." The position here ascribed to the monastery, with which Buddhist tradition connected a legend of the Buddhisattva **Guṇamati**, agrees most accurately with that of the ruins near the village of **Dharāvāt**, about 4 miles by road to the north-west of the Siddhesvara Peak. The ruins which occupy the steep slope of a rocky ridge facing a great tank to the north, had been described already by General Cunningham, whom, however, their identity with Guṇamati's monastery had escaped.<sup>49</sup> His and Mr. Beglar's accounts make it unnecessary to notice this interesting site in detail. It may, however, be mentioned that the destruction of the remains by the villagers excavating for old bricks has since proceeded considerably and is likely to efface soon the last traces of the lofty terraces and buildings, which once occupied the picturesque hill-side down to the edge of the water.

My two days' visit to Patna was mainly devoted to a rapid inspection of the sites which Col. Waddell's highly successful researches have shown to be of special importance for the study of the topography of ancient Pāṭaliputra, the capital of Aśoka. In view of the fact that the results of Col. Waddell's prolonged explorations and of the excavations begun on his initiative is about to be published in a full report, it would be presumption to detail here the observations which my short visit permitted me to make. They entirely confirmed the opinion first advanced by that scholar as to the remains of the old city being preserved in all probability deep down in the alluvial ground south of the old river-bed known as **Gunsar**. The excavations which have already yielded some very interesting results, if carried on under the supervision of a competent archaeologist on the spot, are likely to bring

<sup>47</sup> *Arch. Survey Rep.*, i, p. 42.

<sup>48</sup> *Arch. Survey Report*, viii, p. 36; Beal, *Si-yu-ki*, ii, p. 103.

<sup>49</sup> *Arch. Survey Rep.* i, p. 53 *et seq.* A brief marginal note from General Cunningham's hand in the copy of Beal's *Si-yu-ki*, which I obtained on the sale of his library, shows that the veteran scholar had accepted this identification.



to light conclusive evidence as to the exact position of the various structures and sites described by the Chinese pilgrims. In the meantime, I hope, the impressions gathered by a personal inspection of the great Gangetic site will assist me when dealing with the ancient topography of Magadha in the publication which my Introductory remarks referred to. \* \* \*

In concluding this account of my short tour in Magadha I feel it a pleasant duty to record my sincere obligation for the manifold assistance I received from the local authorities. I owe the advantages thus accorded to me mainly to the kind offices of Mr. E. W. Oldham, I. C. S., Collector and Magistrate of Gayā, who, himself deeply interested in the history and antiquities of South Bihār, spared no effort to facilitate my movements and enquiries within the short time at my disposal.

### NOTES ON THE SPIRIT BASIS OF BELIEF AND CUSTOM.

BY SIR J. M. CAMPBELL, K.C.I.E., I.C.S.

(Continued from Vol. XXIX. p. 387.)

**Hand.** — A bright open brass hand tops the saddle of many Neapolitan cab-horses and a small hand in gold, coral or silver open, or with horned and figged fingers, guards many a Neapolitan girdle and watch chain.

The hand wards the evil glance not because it is a symbol of the Almighty or an emblem of justice<sup>13</sup> or a type of the Prophet Muhammad and his first four successors in the post of caliph or viceroy. But because the hand is one of the greatest guardians, the hand is the chief of weapons and of tools, the great bread-winner, a sign-centre among early tribes more useful than the tongue. Open brass hands with a hanging eyelet were amulets against the Evil Eye in use among Egyptians, Etruscans, Greeks and Romans.<sup>13</sup> Perhaps the oldest sign of luck is the open red hand on the wall of the Dordogne cave in Central France. American Indian chiefs had the mark of an open red hand woven into their robes. In India, a red right hand may be seen stamped on the festive shoulders of both Hindus and Musalmāns. In Europe, the red hand has been raised to honour as the sign of the British baronet, of the Province of Ulster, and of the Sultan of Constantinople. Among Hindus the carved hand is worshipped as the sign of the *sati* or pure widow<sup>14</sup>. Both Musalmāns and Christians have been able to continue hand worship, Musalmāns by, among Sunnis, treating the thumb as the Prophet and the four fingers as his four successors; and among Shīahs as the Prophet, his daughter the Lady Fatimah, her husband Ali, and her two sons Husein and Hasan. Christians have continued the worship of the hand either by making the open hand the sign of power and justice and so of the Almighty or by considering the hand with three stretched fingers a symbol of the Trinity.<sup>15</sup> The guarding power of the hand is increased by making it take certain shapes. Of these shapes the Italians recognise and employ three. The fig-hand, *manu fica* (supposed to be of phallic significance), that is, the thumb tip pointing down and grasped between the first and middle fingers. Among the Romans and western Latin nations this gesture was known as

<sup>13</sup> The Egyptian hand of Justice was the left hand. According to Apuleius (A. D. 150) in the procession of Isis the fourth noble carried the emblem of Justice, the left hand, with the palm open, which on account of its natural inactivity and its being endowed with neither skill nor cunning has been judged a more fitting emblem of Justice than the right hand.

<sup>14</sup> Examples are figured in Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 241.

<sup>15</sup> According to King (*The Gnostics*, p. 223 and note 1) the Brāhmins considered the open hand an emblem of the *argha* or *yoni*.

<sup>16</sup> Compare the sixth century mosaic from Ravenna in north-east Italy figured as No. 107 in Mr. Elworthy's *Evil Eye*, p. 243, and the hand raised in ecclesiastical blessing with the thumb, first and second fingers-outstretched. The Gipsies say:—"When the Golden Hand shines out of the clouds over two lovers it means good luck." See



the fig-hand because the fig is phallic. The name fig-hand is in use in Italian, Spanish and French, and, though the name is not used in Germany and England, the gesture is understood.<sup>16</sup> Like other evil-scaring gestures to thrust forward the fig-hand against any one was a gesture of abuse since it implied that the person against whom the sign was made was, or was haunted by, an evil spirit.<sup>17</sup> A second guardian hand in south Italy is the horn-hand, *manu cornuta*, with the first and fourth fingers straight, and the thumb, middle and third fingers bent to the palm and clasped by the thumb.<sup>18</sup> A third guardian hand, the priest's blessing hand, has the thumb and the first and middle fingers straight and the third and little fingers doubled. This hand which is worn at watch chains is a pre-Christian amulet.<sup>19</sup> It is called *manu pantea* or combine hand because on it are collected many guards against the Evil Eye. The interest of this combine hand, like the south Italian earthen-ware discs covered with close-packed guardian shapes, is that the figure of each guardian, whether painted, carved or embossed, adds his share to the virtue of the whole. The rude but clear focusing of virtues on these hands and discs shows how, under more elaborate management, the greater deities have gathered to themselves local guardians and inheriting the fame of the local guardians have continued them as symbols. Like the pantea or all-focusing hand, rural guardian influences leaving their homes in stream, stone, tree and beast centred in one human shape which gathering to itself every influence became Pan or All.<sup>20</sup> Another guardian use of the hand was to shoot out the middle finger, doubling the others back into the palm. The middle finger so shot out was either a phallus or a horn. It came to be called the *infamis*, that is, the ill-famed, or the *impudicus*, that is, immodest finger, because shooting it against any one implied that the person shot against was a devil or was possessed.<sup>21</sup>

**Honey.** — As the early man's food, as a source of liquor, and as a healer, honey has a virtue which secured it an early place among the protectors against the Evil Eye.<sup>22</sup>

Theodore Watts' "The Dukkeripen" in Myer's *Poets of the Century*, p. 270. The Moors carved an open hand over the great gate of the Hall of Justice in the Alhambra in Spain. Figured in Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 246. According to Bassett (*Legends and Superstitions of the Sea*, p. 14, and Frontispiece) the Arabs did not always think of the hand as a guardian influence. They said any ship venturing on the Atlantic was stopped by the huge hand of Satan rising out of the water to seize them.

<sup>16</sup> Compare Dean Ramsay's *Reminiscences*, quoted below. The Talmud (Jewish) variety of the fig-hand is to place the thumb of the right hand in the left hand and the thumb of the left hand in the right hand. Compare (Sohwab's *Talmud de Jerusalem*, p. 456): — "If in entering a city you fear the Evil Eye place the thumb of the right hand in the left hand and the thumb of the left hand in the right hand and say, 'I am of the race of Joseph on which the Evil Eye has no effect.'" Here the phallic thumb seems to be considered as a spirit-home rather than as a spirit-scare, and so the thumb was veiled to prevent evil spirits entering through it.

<sup>17</sup> The practice and the meaning of 'shewing the fig' among the Italians of Greater Greece suggests an explanation of the Greek *sukophantes* literally fig-shower but meaning sycophant or tale-bearer. The ordinary explanation that the hateful character got its name from informing on persons who evaded the duty on figs is admitted to be a maning-making of little more value than a pun (compare Liddell and Scott's *Greek Dictionary* s. v.). The South Italian practice of shewing the fig — that is, the fig-hand — to keep off an evil influence, suggests that the sense of the word *sukophantes* or fig shower is the man who forces one to show the fig, that is, either a phallus of fig-wood or the fig-hand.

<sup>18</sup> In a Ravenna sixth century mosaic the Almighty is shown as a hand piercing the clouds, the first and fourth fingers pointed as in the *manu cornuta*. See Fig. 113. Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 265. Fig. 115 (*op. cit.* p. 267) shows a Hindu goddess with the right hand in the *manu cornuta* attitude.

<sup>19</sup> Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 300.

<sup>20</sup> These details illustrate two laws: (a) that the virtue of charms grows by massing them: (b) that the local guardian, losing his individuality as a healer and savor, merges into the younger wider-ruling deity and thus, under the title of symbol, secures a dim and doubtful continuance of worship. In connection with these two laws it may be suggested that such merged local guardians are called symbols, that is, things thrown together, because by those who have the spread of the religion at heart as many as possible of the earlier local guardians are merged in the new guardian, so that together they may supply the attributes and draw the worshippers required to secure steadiness to the newly established throne.

<sup>21</sup> Hare's *Cities of Southern Italy*, p. 11, says: — "The most popular antidote to the Evil Eye in Italy is a little coral hand with one finger stretched out, the hand of Saint Jennaro, with which the shops at Naples are full. These charms are specially in request whenever Vesuvius is in a state of eruption."

<sup>22</sup> Compare Story's *Castle of St. Angelo*, p. 206.



**Horn.** — The horn, the glory and the guardian of so many of the nobler animals, would raise in men an early feeling of worship. To this respect experience added the healing virtue of horn in cases of spirit-possession, burnt, soaked into hartshorn or drunk in fine scrapings to drive out a witch-sent spirit.<sup>23</sup> These two sources of worship have combined to make horn a leading scarer of evil spirits all the world over. Among the Romans a horn was the symbol of good luck, *bonus eventus*. Macrobius (A. D. 350) says:— "Nothing is so powerful to avert evil as horn."<sup>24</sup> The horn of plenty is a widespread amulet among the peoples both of northern and of southern Europe.<sup>25</sup> Perhaps from its value as a sudorific and therefore an antidote to the feverishness caused by the breathless and parching Scirocco wind horn has gained and kept in South Italy the highest place among guardians.<sup>26</sup> A hand grasping a horn forms one of the nine elements in the compound Neapolitan amulet the *cima-ruta* or ruespray.<sup>27</sup> In South Italy, the word horn of itself drives off or prisons the evil glance. The name horn is given not only to the ox horns that guard crofts, fields, dwellings and vegetable shops<sup>28</sup>; to the ram and goat horns that save the stock of the wine-seller; to the stag or if possible elk horns that guard the stores of the grocer and druggist; and to the natural horns miniaturized in coral, gold, silver, mother-of-pearl and lava and worn at the girdle or watch chain. The name horn is extended to crab and lobster nippers, to cock spurs, to the claws of birds and to the teeth of animals including tigers' teeth and boars' tushes. Even horse-shoes, half moons, and shapes probably originally phallic are known as horns. Finally the favourite Neapolitan guardian hand, the first and the little finger stiff and the middle and third bent to the palm and clasped by the thumb is known as *manu cornuta*, the horn hand.<sup>29</sup>

As in the case of the Hand and the Horse-shoe the virtue of horn amulets and charms has been traced to their being symbols of the horns of the Moon and so connected with the worship of Diana perhaps with the worship of Isis. But as has been noticed above the virtue of horn passes behind the symbol stage and has an unborrowed guardian power as the protector of animals and as the healer of sickness. Horn is honoured in countries where neither the name of Diana nor the name of Isis has ever been known. It may not be safe to say that the belief in the guardian virtue of animal horns is older than the belief in the guardian virtue of the moon's horns. Still it seems safe to say that the origin of the two beliefs is distinct and that the iron horns and crescents found among the Ashantees in West Africa are in origin unconnected with moon worship and represent the brow and horns of an ox, a favourite and widespread crop-guard and scare.<sup>30</sup> That in the high religion of Egypt

<sup>23</sup> Compare Murray's "Handbook of Spain" in Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 23, note 43.

<sup>24</sup> Neville Rolfe, *Naples in the Nineties*, p. 58. In Ladakh, in Central Asia, ram's horns are fastened to fruit-trees. Trees so guarded yield wonderful crops of fruit. In North India, pieces of jackal and antelope horn are worn to keep off the Evil Eye. Crooke's *Popular Religion of Northern India*, Vol. II. p. 36.

<sup>25</sup> Compare Grimm, *Teutonic Mythology*, Vol. II. p. 572. Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 263.

<sup>26</sup> The scrapings and raspings of the horns of the common male deer are used in decoctions: hartshorn jelly is nutritive and is given in diarrhoeas; the white earth made from calcined hartshorn is used in dysenteries; and to lighten labour pains; the salt of hartshorn is a great sudorific and is given in fevers with success. *Encyclopædia Britannica*, "Hartshorn." Horn is largely used as a medicine in India, New Guinea, Madagascar, and South Africa.

<sup>27</sup> Neville Rolfe, *Naples in the Nineties*, p. 54. Mr. Rolfe compares (*op. cit.*) Zedekiah (2 Chronicles, xviii. 10) presenting the king of Israel with horns of iron in token he would win if he went to battle to Ramoth Gilead.

<sup>28</sup> Is the horn of an ox of the homestead which Homer's fisher casts into the sea as he lets down with a long rod his baits for a snare to the little fishes below, merely a bob or float or does the floating horn keep off the evil influences which might hinder the fishes taking the baits? Butcher and Lang's *Odyssey*, Book XII.

<sup>29</sup> The horn hand keeps off the risk that attends the mention, even the thought, of an ill-omened person. Compare Crawford's *Saracinesco*, p. 210:— "The old Marquis made the sign of the horns with his forefinger and little finger as though to protect himself against the sinister influence invoked by the mention of the hated Count Spioeca." The sense of the widespread saying, that an injured husband should wear horns, seems to be the husband's special need of protection against the Evil Eye. Its glance would naturally effect a lodging in one so faint-hearted as the nature of his misfortune shows the husband to be.

<sup>30</sup> The Ashantee field crescents are figured (No. 88) in Elworthy, *The Eye, Evil*, p. 215. The tribes of the West Nile keep the Evil Eye from their crops by sticking the bleached skull of an ox on the end of a pole. Berghoff, *Pall Mall Gazette*, May 1st, 1899, p. 2. The same practice prevails among the wilder tribes of Western India.



early local crop-guarding animal horns may be assimilated as moon-horns and symbols of Isis illustrates the special interest of the study of the Evil Eye, namely, that the charms and amulets are worn from their personal and original virtue against evil influences and not from the dim and reflex honour of being symbols of some elaborate far-reaching faith.<sup>31</sup>

**Horse.** — Three experiences combine to make the horse a leading guard against the Evil Eye. To horse-owning peoples his willing strength, intelligence, spirit and devotion make the horse a guardian of the higher or self-sacrificing type. Among tribes to whom the horse is strange his size, power and fury make him a fiend requiring and rewarding the process of squaring. To all who have dealings with the horse his nervousness, his delicacy, his liability to strange sweatings and other sudden sicknesses shew that the horse is a favourite home for spirit-influences and that against such influences he requires special protection. In most countries of Europe a horse-head is a favourite scarf pin or other personal decoration.<sup>32</sup> A brass rearing horse is a common guardian on a Neapolitan saddle-bow. The sense is, the horse is a favourite Evil-Eye house and this shining, capering collar-horse draws the Evil Eye and saves from its influence the horse on whose collar it gleams. Again, the horse is a scare because the horse is a guardian. Horse-heads and stuffed horses ornamented the approaches to early German places of worship and to Tartar tombs.<sup>33</sup> Besides his value as a servant and instrument the horse, to the tribes who knew him well, was a healer. Among the Romans a horse-tooth kept evil influences from a teething child, his foam cured itch, earache, galls and women's diseases, the ashes of his dung staunched blood and healed sores, and horse urine mixed with the water of a forge cured madness.<sup>34</sup> In England, to pass a child under the belly of a piebald horse cures whooping cough.<sup>35</sup> In Ireland, a wound heals if the wounded part is put in a horse's mouth.<sup>36</sup> In India, one sickness or form of possession the horse is believed to cure is barrenness.<sup>37</sup> Of the class of horse-worshippers who reverence the horse because he is strange to them the early tribes of India, the American Indians, and the people of the Solomon Islands are examples.<sup>38</sup> To those who are familiar with the horse, its nervousness and liability to sudden sickness and sweating make the horse seem a specially favourite spirit-home and therefore to require particular protection. It is perhaps because climatic influences affect their horses with sudden sickness, like the stroke of the land wind so harmful to horses in some parts of India, that the Neapolitans are specially careful to guard and adorn their horses.

**Horse-shoe.** — The horse-shoe combining the guardian virtues of iron, of the horse, and of the hoof of the horse whose parings burnt or soaked are not less sovran against spirit-possession than hartshorn, is an universal guard against the Evil Eye.<sup>39</sup> In England (1660), it was common to nail

<sup>31</sup> Similarly the corner brass-plated wooden horns of the Jewish altar (Exodus, xxvii. 2) and the stone corner horns in classic altars seem to have their origin in such animal horns as adorn and guard local shrines in India, Afghanistan, Beluchistan and Persia. Compare Crooke's *Popular Religion of Northern India*, Vol. II. p. 255.

<sup>32</sup> King, *The Gnostics*, p. 158. (Among Greeks and Romans) the horse's head was a favourite device for signets. King considers the horse-head as a *memento mori*, and compares the death head so much in fashion in Cinque-cento jewellery. The value of both horse and death heads seems to be neither symbolic nor moral but as spirit-homes.

<sup>33</sup> Grimm, *Teutonic Mythology*, Vol. II. p. 630, notices how ruling a belief was the worship of the horse among Celts, Teutons and Slavs. The respect continued in the practice of hanging horse-heads about stables to keep off night hags and cattle plagues. It remains in the carved horse-heads on the roofs of dwellings in Saxony.

<sup>34</sup> Pliny, *Natural History*, Book xxviii. Chaps. 11, 16, 17, 19: Book xxx. Chap. 16.

<sup>35</sup> Henderson's *Folklore*, p. 143.

<sup>36</sup> Scott's *Border Minstrelsy*, p. 430.

<sup>37</sup> Compare Crooke's *Popular Religions of Northern India*, Vol. II. p. 207. The horse's power to cure barrenness seems connected with the belief held by Indian Mussalmāns that the horse is the pure male, *pakha marad*, that is, that the horse is the only male animal who has no bodily signs of the union in him of the two sexes.

<sup>38</sup> Horse worship is notable among the hill tribes of Gujarāt and the early tribes of the Central Provinces who own no horses. Compare Hislop's *Tribes of the Central Provinces*, pp. 8, 7, and 21. The American Indians to whom the horse was a stranger at once worshipped Cortez' horse as the god of thunder (Bancroft, Vol. III. p. 483). In 1896 the first horse was brought to the Solomon Islands. The horse was towed ashore over a coral reef with immense difficulty. The Natives shewed the greatest dread of the gigantic creature and could not be induced to go near it. Soon the horse became unmanageable and wandered at will, a terror to the neighbourhood. A month or two after arrival, to the intense relief of the Natives, the horse died. *Solomon Island Report*, 1898-99, in Scotsman, 9th November 1899.

<sup>39</sup> In Ireland the hoofs of a dead horse were held sacred. Brand's *Popular Antiquities*, Vol. III. p. 305.



horse-shoes on the thresholds of doors to prevent witches entering the house.<sup>40</sup> In Somerset, horse-shoes are still fastened over house doors to prevent a witch overlooking a house.<sup>41</sup> In Italy, a horse-shoe is worn on the watch chain along with a coral or metal horn to guard against the Evil Eye.<sup>42</sup> In the case of the horse-shoe as in the case of horn the value of the study of the Evil Eye is that the articles which control the influence of the Evil Eye owe their worship to their antique and personal virtue as guardians and not to any borrowed lustre which their crescent shape may seem to draw from being a symbol of the Moon. The value of the horse-shoe passes behind the late stage of religion when all crescent shaped guardians are grouped under the crescent spirit which again is made a symbol of some later and more general deity. Such shapes as the horse-shoe, even when absorbed as symbols, bring their guardian virtue with them: they do not draw their guardian virtue from the deity to which they are attached as symbols or attributes. It follows that in his relation to earlier local guardians the younger deity is a compound amulet which, under the name of symbols, emblems and attributes, draws to itself the virtues as well as the worshippers of earlier and more local guardians.

**Hunchback.** — The hunchback or gobo is a popular protector against the Evil Eye in South Italy, either as a four-inch brass figure on cab or cart horse saddles or as a minute image in silver, coral, mother-of-pearl or lava fastened to the watch chain or girdle. Hunchback figures were worn as amulets in Egypt and Phœnicia and are now worn in Constantinople.<sup>43</sup> The Indian belief, probably an early belief, is that the cause of a child having a hunchback is that some spirit has taken a fancy to the child before or after birth and making his abode in the child disfigures it so that no human may be tempted to fall in love with the child and rob the spirit of the child's affections. In return for the possession of his loved dwelling the spirit in the hunchback sees that no ill-luck befalls the child's home. Some rich families in Bombay believe they owe their success to the luck of having a hunchback child. The hunchback *Punch* has a spirit-lodger who supplies his special stores of wit and wisdom. The gambler before entering the gaming house loves to touch the hump of a hunchback that any ill-luck in the gambler may pass into the hump. It is because the hunchback is a favourite spirit-home that a small image at the watch chain or girdle turns the evil glance from the wearer to itself. The image supplies the wearer with the protection which in former times the company of his dwarf secured to the king.

**Hyæna.** — The skin from a hyæna's brow is worn in Italy to keep off the Evil Eye.<sup>44</sup> His mad laughter, his fondness for graveyards, his odd appearance, his dislike of the light combine to make the hyæna seem possessed. The Buda blacksmiths of Abyssinia were supposed to turn into hyænas.<sup>45</sup> The natives of the Egyptian Soudan fear to shoot a hyæna lest they should commit a murder.<sup>46</sup>

**Incense.** — In Italy, the fumes of incense are used to cure the Evil Eye.<sup>47</sup>

**Iron.** — The importance of iron as a charm has been noted in a previous paper. The unique spirit-scaring power of iron is shewn by the dread and dislike of iron attributed to even the highest guardians.<sup>48</sup>

**Key.** — The key is an old amulet shewn in miniature in the Bologna Etruscan museum.<sup>49</sup> In Scotland, a key is still applied to the back of a child's neck to stop bleeding at the nose. The root of the key's virtue is probably its guardian power as a tool and as the protector of what is closed. Its shape would add a phallic virtue. In the higher religions the key became a symbol of the greater guardians to whom belong the openings of life and death. Isis, Diana, Ianus, and St. Peter hold keys. One of the nine elements in the Neapolitan child's charm, the rue-sprig or *cima ruta*, is a key.<sup>50</sup>

<sup>40</sup> Anbrey's *Miscellanies*, p. 140.

<sup>41</sup> *Op. cit.* p. 331.

<sup>42</sup> Berghoff in *Pall Mall Gazette*, May 1st, 1899.

<sup>43</sup> Useful notes on the spirit fear (including the guardian fear) of iron are given in Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 222.

<sup>44</sup> Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 333.

<sup>45</sup> Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 218.

<sup>46</sup> *Op. cit.* p. 21.

<sup>47</sup> *Op. cit.* p. 220.

<sup>48</sup> *Op. cit.* p. 28.

<sup>49</sup> Story's *Castle of St. Angelo*, p. 206.

<sup>50</sup> Neville Rolfe, *Naples in the Nineties*, p. 54.



**Mask.** — The Romans hung little masks, *ocilla*, of Bacchus on trees to keep off the Evil Eye.<sup>51</sup> Some Etruscan vases are studded with grinning masks.<sup>52</sup> The favourite mask of the ancient Romans and Greeks was the Gorgon or Medusa face, at first terrible, dripping gore, with snake tresses, a nightmare of hate and pain; then through the glamour of the sixth and fifth century smile, passing to a face of sadness and beauty, the tresses sometimes snaked, sometimes plain, sometimes twisted in horns.<sup>53</sup> That the meaning of the Medusa's face on Athene's buckler was neither ornament nor to turn enemies into stone, but to house or prison influences that might annoy or damage the deity, is shown by the ever-recurring Medusa head in Etruscan (B. C. 1200-200) funeral monuments and over Etruscan house doors to keep away evil spirits.<sup>54</sup> The beautiful Medusa faces carved on the bucklers and graves of many of the imperial statues (A. D. 300) in Rome and Naples were likewise to guard the wearers against evil influences, as were the Sunface and other badges that marked and guarded the Roman legions.<sup>55</sup> With the history and interest of the Medusa face in Western Asia and in East and South Europe the history and interest of a guardian human face in India closely corresponds. These guardian faces are found all over India and their use extends in time from the earliest rock-cave or part Greek remain (B. C. 250) to the latest Brāhmanic, Jain or other Hindu temple or public building. The guardian face has many names: *Kirtimukh*, that is, Rumour or Fameface; *Singhmukh*, Hornface; *Sinhmukh*, Lionface; *Suryamukh*, Sunface. These faces vary in character. The Ramour a round fierce human face and the Sun a round kindly human face may owe some of their character to Greek or Roman influence. But the Lion and Horn faces with horns, goggle-eyes and fierce open mouth and tushes that curving sideways mix with whiskers and pass into flowing festoons of spray and leaf seems a local fancy rising from the tree through the animal to the human. These faces look out coarse and ugly from the roof-tree and eave ends of modern Hindu temples. But they gain interest and refinement in the Jain temples of the seventh to the eleventh century A.D., filling the ceiling corners, which unguarded are so apt to become a haunt of evil spirits, embellishing the flat keystones of the cross-cornered domes, and grinning or frowning from belts round the richly carved temple shafts, from the paved floor at the entrance doors, and from the slab in front of the shrine door. In all these positions, though the usual answer is that the Horned Head is for show, an occasional priest or worshipper more intelligent or more outspoken will furnish the true explanation, namely, that the horned head is carved in those places to keep off evil spirits or to keep off the

<sup>51</sup> Virgil *Georgics*, Book II. v. 389 :—"To thee, Bacchus, soft (that is, waxen) masks hang from the lofty pine." The phallus was similarly hung to guard fruit-trees. Elworthy (*The Evil Eye*, p. 148) suggests that *masca* may be *basca* or phallus with the general sense of amulet. According to Grimm (*Teutonic Mythology*, Vol. III. p. 1045) :—"In the old German laws the notion of a sorceress and a mask meet. *Striga quod est masca*, a witch which is a mask." Grimm (*op. cit.*, Vol. III. p. 1082) would refer the word mask to the Italian *maschera*, masticate, because the witch devours children.

<sup>52</sup> Compare the Anubis Vase figured in Dennis, *Cities of Etruria*, Vol. II. p. 318.

<sup>53</sup> Valuable information and figures of the different Medusas are given in Elworthy's *The Evil Eye*. Compare the tasked lolling-tongued Etruscan Gorgoneion. Dennis, *Cities of Etruria*, Vol. II. p. 221; also Vol. II. pp. 441-443.

<sup>54</sup> Miss Margaret Symonds, *The Story of Perugia*, pp. 271, 273, 276. Miss Symonds says (p. 273) :—"The Etruscans commonly used the Medusa to keep away evil spirits. Her face is usually calm and often lovely." In one instance it is calculated to strike terror as well as admiration. Dennis (*Cities of Etruria*, Vol. II. p. 343) notes in the inner chamber of a tomb near Chiusi a wall painting of a hideous mask or Gorgon's face with tongue hanging out. In the case of the Medusa as in other instances the scare was also the house. Both in the European Medusa and in the Indian Fame Face the open mouths and staring squint eyes of certain of the masks are to house rather than to scare. Compare Figs. 39 and 40 in Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 148.

<sup>55</sup> According to Mr. Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 178, these badges were to defeat the glances of the enemy. In addition the brilliant badges of the legions would draw to themselves and so imprison not only the evil glances of the foe but the crowd of ancestral spirits that came to help the hostile army and also the spirits of the spells which the enemy's sorcerers had woven against the legions. King (*The Gnostics*, Plate X. cut 5, and p. 223) figures a Gorgon's Head with the legend "I protect Bhoro mandares" (some Persian or Armenian). He adds :—"This inscription is most important as it explains why the Gorgoneion is so frequent a personal decoration, being reputed the most efficacious of amulets."



**Evil Eye.**<sup>56</sup> In addition to the Horn heads and other building protectors, the mask figures in two important branches of Hindu worship in their temples and in their homes. In most temples the leading image is of stone, and on certain great days over the stone face is drawn a metal mask of brass, silver or gold according to the sanctity of the day or the wealth of the shrine. Metal masks are also common among Hindu household gods, some kindly and smiling to represent the leading guardians, others savage and fierce night-mares in brass to house some dead and hostile member of the family who causes them terror and sickness.<sup>57</sup>

**Milk.** — Story mentions milk first among articles used in Italy to overcome the Evil Eye.<sup>58</sup>

**Mirror.** — It has been said above that the shadows in mirrors caused fear to those to whom mirrors were strange but that mirror-shadows ceased to cause fear when they were seen to be mere surface reflections. This view is correct in drawing a contrast between the mirror and the eye. Still, even after its newness ceases to cause dread, the mirror has an interest and a virtue as a spirit-home. Spirits go into the mirror, the home of reflections and shadows, and are housed and contented. Again, the mirror may be filled with the guardian sunlight and flash like a search-light and scare evil influences. In Northern and Western India, fragments of mirror are worked into women's robes, and by flashing the blessed sun scare evil influences. Thumb rings have a piece of mirror set in them to house and to scare. In Scotland, mirrors are veiled after a death: in Bombay, among both Hindus and Musalmāns, mirrors are veiled at night. In both practices the sense is to prevent evil spirits passing into the mirror. The interest of these practices is their earliness, the feeling that even if housed the influence does not become guardian but remains hostile and dangerous.

**Monkey.** — In China, monkeys are kept at the entrance to cattle sheds to keep off the Evil Eye.<sup>59</sup>

**Mouth.** — The mouth as the chief entrance is a leading home and prison for evil influences. Among the Classic Greeks and Latins masks with open mouths, with or without lolling tongues, were leading evil traps. The importance attached to the open mouth appears in the Italian stones carved into front human faces and with an open mouth the whole known as *boca* or mouth. Holed stones which are hung near windows to keep off the Evil Eye in the villages near Amalfi in South Italy are called *pietra bocata* or mouthed stones. It is the same belief that evil influences are drawn to them and do not come out again that makes holed stones lucky in India, in England, and over most of the world.<sup>60</sup>

**Nail.** — From its material which gives its control over spirits and from its imprisoning the evil spirit which has been passed into it when it is driven into some sacred tree or building an iron nail, even the word *defigere*, drive (a nail) home, is a leading guardian against the Evil Eye.<sup>61</sup>

<sup>56</sup> With the Indian foliage-tusched and leafy-whiskered Horn Face compare in Taormina, a Greek (B. C. 660-200), a Roman (A. D. 100-400), and later (1000-1400) a Saracenic-Norman town, about thirty miles south of Messina in Sicily some curious carved heads. One of these in a palace in the south-west corner of the cathedral square probably of the early seventeenth century a puff-cheeked goggle-eyed face with open grinning mouth. And from each corner of the mouth a tusk circling into horn-like points with other tusches stretching sideways and passing into festoons of sprays and roses. Also bearing the balcony of a handsome perhaps fifteenth century dwelling on the south side of the Corso Umberto caryatid human heads with blown cheeks and goggle eyes and horns with open mouth and lolling tongues all notably like Indian heads. A remarkable flowing whisker and leaf head is carved over the entrance to a mediæval palace in Girgenti in South Sicily.

<sup>57</sup> With the mask as a home of the Hindu dead compare in Chiusi in Etruria (Tuscany) in Italia the ashjars or canopi with a human head as a lid which according to Dennis (*Cities of Etruria*, Vol. II. p. 308) were rough likenesses of the dead.

<sup>58</sup> Story's *Castle of St. Angelo*, p. 200.

<sup>59</sup> Gray's *China*, Vol. II. p. 58.

<sup>60</sup> Compare Aubrey, England (1630) (*Miscellanies*, p. 140):—"A flint with a hole in it hung from the manger keeps the night hag from riding horses."

<sup>61</sup> Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 329. Compare the scraping of a witch above the breath and the scraping of the gum in toothache by a nail as a means to get into the nail the familiar of the witch and the gnawing tooth-worm.



**Numbers.** — In South Italy, the lucky numbers 3, 7, 8 and 9, even if spoken, keep away the Evil Eye.<sup>62</sup> Besides the guardian powers of certain numbers, cards with combinations of numbers are worn because like patterns they puzzle and hold the Evil Eye.

**Onion.** — The onion is one of the charms worn in Italy to keep off the Evil Eye.<sup>63</sup>

**Palm.** — In Southern Italy, palm leaves blessed at Easter are burnt to keep off the Evil Eye.<sup>64</sup>

**Phallus.** — The phallus shares with the eye the first place among guardians against evil glances. Like the little masks of Bacchus phalluses made of fig wood were hung from fruit-trees to keep off the Evil Eye. Among the Romans and Greeks one favourite form of amulet, hung from the necks of children, was a phallus or the phallic hand, that is, the thumb tip caught between the first and the middle finger.<sup>65</sup> A phallus was hung from the triumphal car to guard the conqueror. In Italy, Sicily, Greece and Egypt, the phallus was carved on walls to keep off the Evil Eye.<sup>66</sup> It was a favourite scare and symbol among the Egyptians, the Phœnicians, and the Etruscans. In India, the phallus or *lingam* is perhaps the widest worshipped and most important of guardians, whether as a temple, a shrine or a family god, or worn round the neck or upper arm as an amulet. In the form of the Satirica Sigua it is shown over blacksmiths' shops in Pompei.<sup>67</sup> The high importance of the phallus as a guard against the Evil Eye among the Greeks and Romans is shewn by its name *baskauos* or *fascinum*, that is phallus, meaning evil-scarer, as if the phallus was the fascinator that outfascinates the Evil Eye. Among the Romans evil effects were prevented by merely saying the word *fascinum* or *præfascine*. In a play of Plautus a young man who praises a girl's beauty is reminded that to his praise he should have added the word *præfascine*.<sup>68</sup> The sense seems to be that the word *fascinum* or the phrase *præfascine*, beware of the *fascinum*, is addressed to any evil influences that may have been tempted to seek a lodging in the beautiful girl. In a somewhat similar way Germans avert from themselves the ill effects of selfboasting by the phrase *unberufen*, you (spirits) are not wanted. The difference between the force of the words *præfascine* and *unberufen* is that the Roman *præfascine* is of itself enough to scare evil influences since it embodies the word *fascinum* before which no spirit can stand, while to be effective the German suggestion, you are not wanted, must be backed by a table-rapping accompaniment, an early music from

The nail with the evil influence in it should then be driven into an oak. Aubrey's *Miscellanies*, p. 138. Compare also the value of the nail into which as into the cross the spirit of the crucified was believed to have passed. In Republican Rome at the close of each year the spirit of the dead year was nailed into the wall of the temple of Janus. In India, nails are driven into the threshold to prevent the return of the angry dead.

<sup>62</sup> Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 404.

<sup>63</sup> Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 21.

<sup>64</sup> Haro's *Cities of Southern Italy*, p. 10. The use of palms to keep off danger is noted by Pliny, *Natural History*, Book XIII. 9, 2. It is because the palm is a guard against the Evil Eye that winners in games and warriors in triumphs were given a palm, since the time of triumph is the time of special danger from the Evil Eye. Greek ladies in the dangerous time of child-birth guarded themselves from evil influences by holding a palm branch. Starke's *Travellers' Guide*, 1833, p. 78, note 1.

<sup>65</sup> Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 150. The shape of the babies' coral keeps the shape of the old classic *fascinum*, the Priapic symbol. *Op. cit.* p. 429.

<sup>66</sup> Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 155. In Pompei, an occasional phallus indicates the superstition of the Evil Eye. A tavern has a large phallus towards the street to avert the Evil Eye. Haro's *Cities of Southern Italy*, pp. 208, 212. Dennis (*Cities and Countries of Etruria*, Vol. II, p. 119, and footnotes) holds that the object of carving the phallus on city walls was probably to guard against the Evil Eye. The old Etruscan city walls give numerous examples, also tombs in Etruria, Naples and Sicily. The Pelasgians worshipped the phallic Hermes and introduced his worship into Greece.

<sup>67</sup> Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 154.

<sup>68</sup> Andrew's *Latin Dictionary*. *Præfascine*; Ainsworth, *Op. cit.* Ainsworth's reference is Plautus' *Rud.* 2, 5, 4, and Plautus' *Asin.* 2, 4, 84. He translates *præfascine*, "give me leave to say" or "I may say it in a good hour." He quotes from a Latin author. Before praising our forefathers said *præfascine*. This word warded envy or fascination. It was an old opinion that one who praised himself over freely or being present was overpraised ran a certain risk of fascination (*fascinum*).



whose sounds fiends flee.<sup>69</sup> The origin of the power of the phallus to turn aside the Evil Eye has been traced to the mirth-provoking element in the indecent. Plutarch<sup>70</sup> (Greece, A. D. 150) says the efficacy of objects that keeps off witchcraft depends on their strangeness and ridiculousness which fixes the mischief-working eye on themselves.<sup>71</sup> That the strange and the ridiculous attract spirits may be admitted. At the same time many of the articles which to the philosophic and modern-minded Plutarch seemed strange and ridiculous were early guardians and spirit-prisons, whose early worshipfulness was forgotten. Elworthy refers to the phallus as a comic amulet and quotes Dodwell in support of the view that its oddness is what makes the indecent useful.<sup>72</sup> Still, like the eye, the horn and the horse the original connection of the phallus with the Evil Eye belongs not to the time when the indecent was considered comic but to the early stage of thought when the phallus was considered a great guardian home.<sup>73</sup> That there is nothing indecent or mirth-provoking in the early worship of the *phallus* is shewn by the solemn and decent ritual connected with the accepted worship of the Indian *lingam*.<sup>74</sup>

**Prayers.** — A chief safeguard in Naples against the Evil Eye is to invoke the aid of Nemesis, that is, vengeance, whose earlier characteristic was envy.<sup>75</sup> Other prayers which help to turn the evil glance are the good prayers of those who do not gaze with admiration on or bepraise others: and the blessing of those who wish to inspire courage.<sup>76</sup>

**Rites.** — Under the head of rites for turning aside the Evil Eye may conveniently be brought the rule of doing something unpleasant so as to dissemble good fortune. In Greece and Rome and in Modern Italy, to do something unpleasant saved from the Evil Eye.<sup>77</sup> The doing of something unpleasant is a form of the device of belittling, which is so useful a counteractive to the poison of admiration. To avoid the risk caused by admiration the Hindu mother calls a boy who is born after several children have died Stone or Dirt-heap or Girl, so that the hostile spirit who has slain his brothers may think it not worth his while to attack the new child. In England, in caressing children, scamp, rascal, witch and devil are used in the tenderest tones. Mr. Story<sup>78</sup> suggests that this abuse has its origin in an old faery dread. He compares the abuse with the Corsican practice of applying to children the word rascal and outcast. The Corsicans explain the abuse by saying that children are open to fascination if they are blessed or praised. Indian parents who mark their infants' faces with lamp-black when they take them out of doors and Egyptian Muslim parents who dress their children meanly or smear their faces with dirt to lessen the risk of the Evil Eye conform to the same rule.<sup>79</sup> Other cases of belittling are at Roman funerals the practice of mixing satire and ridicule with the praises of the dead,<sup>80</sup> and at triumphs of seating a slave beside the conqueror reminding him of death. Also among northern nations the fool making fun of the king.

(To be continued.)

<sup>69</sup> Rapping on wood is a spirit-scaring music. In Italy, before A. D. 550, when bells were first set in Christian Churches, the sacred or scaring noise was made by beating wood. In Thibet, the spirit-scaring instrument at Buddhist monasteries is a wooden gong.

<sup>70</sup> Symposium, V. 7, in Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 143.

<sup>71</sup> Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 148.

<sup>72</sup> *Op. cit.* note 247. King (*The Gnostics*, p. 116) adopts the view that the diverting is the best guard. He adds: — "For such an end could anything serve better than the strange absence and unlikely to be exposed phallus?"

<sup>73</sup> Among Hindus one of the family dead lives in the house *ling*; some warrior or murdered man or woman live in the shrine *ling*; some ruler or high priest and his hosts of followers live in the temple *ling*.

<sup>74</sup> Elworthy (*The Evil Eye*, p. 137) figures a man squatting and shewing his bare back; this he notes as an instance of the comic indecent being useful against the Evil Eye. The more correct explanation of such figures seems to be that the back parts, the *os sacrum* or holy bone, like other private parts, were held to have a guardian virtue and so scared the Evil Eye. The Italian sailor shews his bare back to stop a contrary wind (Bassett, *Legends of the Sea*, p. 142). The insult attaching to the exposure of the back or other private part, like the sense of other abusive words and attributes, is that the person, before whom the parts are exposed, is considered as an evil spirit or as haunted by an evil spirit.

<sup>75</sup> Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 21.

<sup>76</sup> Story's *Castle of St. Angelo*.

<sup>77</sup> Arabian Society in the Middle Ages, p. 193.

<sup>78</sup> Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 21.

<sup>79</sup> *Op. cit.* p. 160.

<sup>80</sup> Gibbon's *Decline and Fall*, Vol. III. p. 55.



## NOTES ON INDIAN HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHY.

BY J. F. FLEET, I.C.S. (RETD.), PH.D., C.I.E.

**Raktapura.**

THIS town is mentioned in some inscriptions on stone at the Jain temple called Saṅkhabasti at Lakshmēshwar, — the head-quarters of the outlying tāluka of the same name of the Senior Miraj State, within the limits of the Dhārwar district, — which purport to register charters issued by the Western Chalukya kings Vikramāditya II. in A. D. 735, and Vijayāditya in A. D. 730, and Vinayāditya in A. D. 687.<sup>1</sup> And I have said that Raktapura appeared to be another early name of Lakshmēshwar itself.<sup>2</sup>

But the first two passages both assert that Vikramāditya II. and Vijayāditya, respectively, made certain grants of land (at Lakshmēshwar) for the benefit of the Jain temple, — called Saṅkhatirthavasati in one passage and Saṅkhajinēdra in the other, — of the city of Pulikaranagara, when their victorious camps were at the town of Raktapura. Here, we have Lakshmēshwar mentioned by its usual ancient name Puligere or Purigere, in the Sanskritised form of Pulikaranagara.<sup>3</sup> It would be somewhat unusual that it should be mentioned by a second name also in the same passages. It is not necessary that, for the kings to grant lands situated at Lakshmēshwar, their camps should be either at that town or anywhere in that neighbourhood.<sup>4</sup> And Monier-Williams' Sanskrit Dictionary gives *raktā* as equivalent to *lākṣhā*, with the same meaning as *alaktaka*. My opinion, therefore, now is that Raktapura is simply another form of Alaktakapura, equivalent to Alaktakanagari; that is to say, that it was another name for the modern Alṭēm, about twelve miles east-north-east from Kōlhāpur.<sup>5</sup>

**The Kōgaḷi country.**

The earliest mention that we have of this territory is in the Nilgund inscription of the time of the Western Chalukya king Taila II., dated in A. D. 932.<sup>6</sup> The record speaks of a certain Kannapa or Kennapa, who, by the favour of Taila II., had been ruling parts of the Banavāsi province, namely, the Belvola three-hundred and the Purigere three-hundred,<sup>7</sup> and "the land (that had the name) commencing with Kōgaḷi." And, in editing it, Prof. Kielhorn quoted a suggestion, made by me, that the word Kōgaḷi might perhaps be a mistake for the Keṅgaḷi of other records, the chief town of a five-hundred district. At

<sup>1</sup> Vol. VII. above, p. 110, the third part of the record, lines 61 to 82, and p. 112, the second part, lines 23 to 53, and the fourth part, lines 69 to 87.

<sup>2</sup> E. g., *Dyn. Kan. Distrs.* p. 304, note 6.

<sup>3</sup> The Sanskritised forms Purikarapura and Purikaranagara — (with *r* in the second syllable) — occur, the former in the spurious Sōḷi grant (*Ep. Ind.* Vol. III. p. 180, text line 67), and the latter in a Bajagāmi record of A. D. 1096 (see *Ep. Ind.* Vol. V. p. 243, note 3). It seems worth mentioning that, while the older form of the name occurs, indifferently, as Puligere or Purigere, and while — (with the usual change from *p* to *h*) — Hulgere occurs freely in the later records, I cannot quote a single case in which we have Hurigere, with the *r* in the second syllable combined with *h* in the first.

<sup>4</sup> For instance, the Vakkaḷeri plates of A. D. 757 record the grant by Kirtivarman II. of a village in the Hāṅgal tāluka, Dhārwar district; but, when he made the grant, his camp was at Bhapḍāragavittage on the river Bhūnarathī, which is the 'Bhundarkowteh' of the Indian Atlas sheet No. 46 (1852), on the Bhūnā, in the Shōlāpur tāluka of the Shōlāpur district, in lat. 17° 27'; long. 75° 44', about twenty miles south-west from Shōlāpur. And again, when, in A. D. 915, the Rāstrakūṭa king Indra III. granted the villages of Tenna and Umbarā in Gujārāt, he was at Kurundaka (*Jour. Bo. Br. R. As. Soc.* Vol. XVIII. p. 208); and Kurundaka is the modern Kurundwāḷ near Kōlhāpur.

<sup>5</sup> See Vol. XXIX. above, pp. 274, 277.

<sup>6</sup> *Ep. Ind.* Vol. IV. p. 204.

<sup>7</sup> These two districts are spoken of in this record as "the two three-hundreds," — in a verse, in Sanskrit. The more customary expression of this kind, in Kanarese prose at any rate, was "the two-six-hundred," meaning "the two three-hundreds which together made up a six-hundred;" see, for instance, Vol. XII. above, p. 271, text lines 7, 8.



that time, however, I was not aware of the other references to the Kôgali country which I now give.

One of them is in an inscription of A. D. 1071 at Baḷagāmi in Mysore.<sup>8</sup> Here, we have (line 33 ff.) a verse in the somewhat unusual Akkara metre, which runs:—

Eseva Kôgali-nāḍ-olagaṇa Tumbigereya mūḍaṇa simey-olage  
Mosalemaḍuvina paḍavaṇa simeyo[=N]āgēśvaraṁ Svayambhū-niḷe(la)yaṁ |  
jaṣada Balipuravaradoḷ Yôgēśvaraṁ Hariharādityaṁ Vāssayanaṁ-ēmba  
pesara dēvaraṁ dēvāleyaṁgaḷaṁm-mūḍisidar<sup>9</sup>=Gṇagaḷa-dēvar ||

Translation:—“Gṇagaḷadēva founded (a temple of) Nāgēśvara (P) and an abode of Svayambhū within the eastern boundary of Tumbigere in the beautiful Kôgali country and in the western boundary of Mosalemaḍu, and temples of the gods named Yôgēśvara and Hariharāditya and Vāssayana (*i. e.* Vāṣayana, Viṣṇu) at the famous Balipura (Baḷagāmi) the best of towns.”

The other is in an inscription of A. D. 1108 at Dāvāṅgere in Mysore.<sup>10</sup> Here, we have (line 21 ff.) a verse in the Utpalamālikā metre, which runs:—

Kôgali-nāḍol=aggada Kadamba-disāyarad=āgarāṁgaḷoḷ  
dēḷulakam Jināyalayakav=āravegaṁ kere bāvi satrakam |  
rāgaḍe tanna pannayada suṁkadoḷaṁ daṣavannav-ittan-i-  
nt-ā garam-nḷḷināṁ negarḷda(la) Bamm-araṣaṁ gṇa-ratnad=āgarāṁ ||

Translation:—“In the Kôgali country, in (*various*) places or abodes of the pre-eminent region, the best of regions,<sup>11</sup> of the Kadambas, the famous Bammaraṣa joyfully gave the daṣavanna<sup>12</sup> on the whole of his own customs-duty of the pannaya,—to continue as long as that tax<sup>13</sup> should last,—for a temple and a shrine of Jina and a garden, and for a tank, a well and an alms-house.”

The fact that the Kôgali nāḍ is thus mentioned in these two records at Baḷagāmi and Dāvāṅgere without any indication that it was a distant country, is a hint that it was somewhere not far from those two places; and the second record perhaps locates it, at that time, in the Nôḷambavāḍi province, since it describes Bammaraṣa or Barmaraṣa as a Mahāmātya and Achchupannāyadadhishṭhāyaka or superintendent of the customs-duty called achchupannāya,

<sup>8</sup> My P&M, Sanskrit, and Old-Canarese Inscriptions, No. 159; and see Mr. Rice's *Mysore Inscriptions*, p. 145. — The name of the metre, Akkara, is specified in the original. For some schemes of the Akkara metres, see the Rev. F. Kittel's edition of Nāgarman's *Kanarese Prosody*, p. 102 ff. The present verse appears to be a Piri-Akkara, or “great Akkara,” though it seems not to answer quite exactly to the scheme there disclosed.

<sup>9</sup> Read dēvara dēvāleyaṁgaḷaṁ mūḍisidar.

<sup>10</sup> P. S. O.-C. *Inscr.* No. 137; and see *Mysore Inscr.* p. 18. The metre here distinctly marks the vowel of the first syllable of the name Kôgali as long.

<sup>11</sup> Disāyara is plainly equivalent to disāvara.

<sup>12</sup> Daṣavanna seems to be the same as the modern *daṣavanda* or *daṣavanda*, which has been explained by Mr. Rice as meaning “land granted to a person for repairing or building a tank, on condition of paying in money or kind one-tenth or some small share of the produce” (*Mysore*, revised edition, Vol. II. p. 547), or “land granted at one-tenth of the usual rates to a person in consideration of his constructing or repairing a tank” (*Ep. Carn.* Vol. IV. *Introd.* p. 12). But here it seems to have more the meaning of one-tenth of the proceeds of the pannaya-customs. — In the word pannayada, the vowel of the second syllable seems to be only shortened by metrical license. Lines 15, 17, and 33 of the same record use, in prose, the usual form *pannāya*, with the long ā.

<sup>13</sup> The word *garam*, or that combination of *aksharas*, occurs three times in this passage. In the first place, it is the *tadbhava*-corruption of *gāra*, ‘a house, a dwelling, a place.’ In the third place, it is the *tadbhava*-corruption of *ākara*, ‘a mine.’ Here, in the second place, we must find a third meaning; and we must evidently divide, and take *gara* as used more or less justifiably (to suit the *prasa*) for *kara*, ‘tax.’ — *d garam*, — *d karam*, “that tax:” the grant could, of course, only last as long as Bammaraṣa himself should continue to manage and receive a share of the *pannāya*.



who was "governing" or managing the *paṇḍāya*-customs of the *Noḷambavāḍi* thirty-two-thousand by the command of the *Mahāsāmantādhipati*, *Mahāpradhāna*, *Bhāṇasavergaḍe*, and *Daṇḍanāyaka* Anantapālayya, a high official of Vikramāditya VI. And, with that hint as to the neighbourhood in which to look, coupled with the actual occurrence of the name *Kōgaḷa* within a reasonable distance, it is easy to identify *Mosalemaḍu* with the modern *Rāgi-Mosalawāḍ*, — the 'Raggy Mosalwaud' of the Indian Atlas sheet No. 59 (1828), in lat.  $14^{\circ} 36'$ , long.  $75^{\circ} 57'$ , — a town or large village in the Harpanhaḷḷi tāḷuka of the Bellary district, about ten miles almost due north from Dāvāngere (the 'Dāvankaira' of the map), and *Tumbigero* with the modern village of the same name, — the 'Toombegerry' of the map, — two miles on the west of *Rāgi-Mosalawāḍ*.

*Kōgaḷa*, a large town or village in the Hūvina-Haḍagalli tāḷuka of the same district, is shewn in the same map in lat.  $14^{\circ} 56'$ , long.  $76^{\circ} 13'$ , twenty-eight miles to the north-by-east from *Rāgi-Mosalawāḍ*. If it does not actually represent the ancient capital of the *Kōgaḷi nāḍ*, it at any rate preserves the name of the ancient district.<sup>14</sup> And the *Kōgaḷi* country may now be identified with the Hūvina-Haḍagalli and Harpanhaḷḷi tāḷukas of the Bellary district, with perhaps also the inclusion of some territory more to the east, as *Kōgaḷi* is on the east bank of the river Hagari.<sup>15</sup> It lay immediately on the south-east of the Belvola and Purigere districts. And the boundary-line was, doubtless, the river Tuṅgabhadra, as at present.

#### The Kaṇiyakal three-hundred district.<sup>1</sup>

The *Kaṇiyakal* three-hundred district is mentioned in the inscriptions of A. D. 1064 and 1072 at the Jaṭiṅga-Rāmēśvara hill in the Moḷakālmuru tāḷuka of the Chitaldroog district, Mysore.<sup>16</sup> And the general purport of the first of these records places it in the *Noḷambavāḍi* thirty-two-thousand province.

The records register grants that were made for the god Rāmēśvara of the *Balgōṭi tirtha*, meaning, of course, the place where there stand the two shrines near which the records are. By the first record, there was granted a village named *Kīriya-ḍakivaḍuvāṅgi* in the *ḍakivaḍuḷunke* seventy in the *Kaṇiyakal* three-hundred. And by the other there was granted the village of *Baṇṇekal* in the *Kaṇiyakal* three-hundred.

The Jaṭiṅga-Rāmēśvara hill is shewn in the Indian Atlas sheet No. 59 (1828) as 'Jetting Ramishwar,' in lat.  $14^{\circ} 50'$ , long.  $76^{\circ} 48'$ .<sup>17</sup> *Kaṇiyakal*, the town from which the three-hundred district took its name, is evidently the 'Cunnacull' of the same map, the 'Kanakallu' of the Madras Manual of the Administration, Vol. III. p. 766, and the 'Kaṇēkallu' of Mr. Sewell's *List of Antiquities, Madras*, Vol. I. p. 112; it is in lat.  $14^{\circ} 48'$ , long.  $77^{\circ} 8'$ , on the

<sup>14</sup> Mr. Sewell tells us (*Lists of Antiquities, Madras*, Vol. I. pp. 107, 109), that there are remains and inscriptions at both *Kōgaḷa* and *Rāgi-Mosalawāḍ*. — He has written the first name with the ordinary *l*, *Kōgaḷa*; but we are probably quite safe in substituting the *ḷ* from the ancient spelling. — As regards the other name, he has written it *Mosalavāḷa*, with the vowel *a* in the first syllable; but I think I am safe in substituting *o*, from the Indian Atlas, endorsed as it is by the ancient record. As to the components of the name, — *rāgi*, 'the raggy-grain,' is of course a modern prefix, probably adopted to distinguish the place from another *Mosalawāḍ*, twenty-one miles almost due north of this one; *maḍu* is doubtless the Kanarese word, which means 'deep water, a deep place in a river, a pool,' — (the map shews a large tank at *Rāgi-Mosalawāḍ*, with others on the stream that feeds it), — and why it should have passed into *ēḍa*, 'a town or village,' is not apparent; *mosale* is perhaps a variant of *mosale*, *mosale*, 'an alligator, a crocodile.'

<sup>15</sup> I have not at hand any map that shews the eastern boundary-line of the two tāḷukas in question, separating them from the *Kōḷḷigi* tāḷuka. — The Hagari river, mentioned here, is not to be confused with the Chinna-Hagari or 'Janagahully' river which skirts the south-east corner of the *Kōḷḷigi* tāḷuka, or with the large river Hagari or *Vēdavati* which flows through the Bellary tāḷuka.

<sup>16</sup> *Ep. Ind.* Vol. IV. pp. 212, 214.

<sup>17</sup> In the preliminary edition of the revised quarter-sheet of the same map, N. W. (1895), the name has been omitted.



west bank of the Hagari or Vēdavatl river, in the Rāyduṛg tāluka of the Bellary district, Madras, — twenty-two miles east-half-south from the Jaṭiṅga-Rāmēśvara hill. And Baṣṣekal is, no doubt, the 'Bennacul' of the map, six miles on the north of 'Cunnacull.'

Of the other two place-names no traces can be found in the map, whether with or without the Dāki and Kiriya-Dāki, which seem to be prefixes representing the names of the founders of the villages.<sup>18</sup>

#### Taḍigaipāḍi; Daḍigavāḍi.

The Chōḷa records mention among the conquests of Rājakeśarivarman-Rājarāja I., whose reign commenced between the 25th June and the 25th July, A. D. 985,<sup>19</sup> a country the name of which is presented in them in the various forms of Taḍiyavāḷi, in a record of his fourteenth year,<sup>20</sup> — Taḍivāḷi, in a record of his sixteenth year,<sup>21</sup> — Taḍigaipāḍi, in a record of his seventeenth year,<sup>22</sup> — and Daḍigavāḍi, in a record of his twenty-ninth year.<sup>23</sup> It is always mentioned in connection with the well known Gaṅgavāḍi and Nōḷambavāḍi countries. And Dr. Hultzsch has told us that most of the inscriptions of Rājarāja I. give the name of it in the form of Taḍigaipāḍi.<sup>24</sup>

We can now identify this country with a territory named Daḍigavāḍi, which is mentioned in an inscription at Koppa, on the Simshā river, — brought to notice by Mr. Rice, and referred by him to "P. about 1060 A. D.," — in the Nellikere or Nelligere hōbḷi of the Nāgamaṅgala tāluka in the Mysore district.<sup>25</sup>

The record, which is a short one in praise of an ascetic named Goheyabhaṭṭāraka, uses the expression "Nōḷambavāḍi and this Daḍigavāḍi." This plainly places Koppa itself, which is sixteen miles towards the east-south-east from Nāgamaṅgala, in the Daḍigavāḍi country. And we have another trace of the name of the country, with another village to be located in it, in the name of the modern Daḍaga, in the same hōbḷi, — the 'Dudga' of the Indian Atlas sheet No. 60 (1826), — a village, with a fairly large tank, about ten miles towards the north-north-west from Nāgamaṅgala. There are records at this place. And one of them,<sup>26</sup> referred by Mr. Rice to "P. 1400 A. D.," gives its original name as Daḍiganakere, and claims antiquity for it by describing it as an *anādiy-agrahāra*, "an *agrahāra* that never had any beginning, an *agrahāra* that had existed from time immemorial."

It seems, at first sight, rather curious that the Chōḷa records should mention the conquest of Daḍigavāḍi in addition to the conquest of Gaṅgavāḍi and Nōḷambavāḍi; because, the Gaṅgavāḍi country being a ninety-six-thousand province, one would expect that it would include the whole of southern and eastern Mysore outside such portions of it as were included in the Nōḷambavāḍi thirty-two-thousand. We know, however, that the numerical components of the ancient territorial names greatly exaggerated the numbers of the cities, towns, and villages in the provinces and districts.<sup>27</sup> We must evidently accept the Daḍigavāḍi country as a well established division of Mysore, which is at least not necessarily included whenever mention is made of the Gaṅgavāḍi country. And, looking to the two villages which, as pointed out above, were plainly in the Daḍigavāḍi country, and to the general topographical features, we may probably define it as a territory which was bounded on the east by the Simshā, — on the south

<sup>18</sup> We have Dāki in the form Dākara in the illustration to Kēśirāja's *Saddamanidarpana*, sūtra 62 (Mr. Kittel's edition, p. 75).

<sup>19</sup> *Ep. Ind.* Vol. VI. p. 24.

<sup>20</sup> *South-Ind. Inscr.* Vol. III. p. 6.

<sup>21</sup> *Ibid.* p. 105.

<sup>22</sup> *Ibid.* p. 11.

<sup>23</sup> *Ibid.* p. 24.

<sup>24</sup> *Ibid.* p. 5.

<sup>25</sup> *Ep. Carn.* Vol. IV., Ng. 67; and see *Introd.* p. 13: for the proposed date, see the translation.

<sup>26</sup> *Ibid.* Ng. 35; and see *Introd.* p. 13: for the proposed date, see the translation.

<sup>27</sup> See *Dyn. Kan. Dist.* p. 298, note 2; also, Vol. XXIX. above, p. 277, note 18.



by the Kāvēri, from where the 'Simshā joins it on the east to where the Hēmāvatī joins it on the west, — and on the west by the Hēmāvatī, up to about the point between Hoḷe-Narsipur and Channarayapaṭṇa where that river, flowing from the west, turns to the south. Probably the northern boundary left the Hēmāvatī there, and, following more or less the course of the northern boundaries of the present Kṛishṇarājapēṭ and Nāgamaṅgala tālukas, ran to the 'Simshā in the neighbourhood of Nellikere. And this would make the territory consist of a well defined area, comprising the present Kṛishṇarājapēṭ, Nāgamaṅgala, Maṇḍya, Seringapatam, and Maḷavaḷḷi tālukas of the Mysore district. Whether it may be extended any further to the north, remains to be seen when the records of the Hassan and Tumkūr districts are available for examination.

There is, no doubt, a connection of some kind or another between the Daḍigavāḍi territory and the name of the fictitious Daḍiga, whom the legends, embodied in the eleventh century A. D. in the full Purāṇic and pseudo-historical genealogy of the Western Gaṅgas of Talakāḍ, would place in or about the second century A. D.<sup>28</sup> But we can hardly imagine that this territorial name, the existence of which is taken back to at any rate about A. D. 1000, was derived from the name of an imaginary person whose alleged existence is first put forward by a record dated three quarters of a century later. However, for the present we need only point out that, just as Gaṅgavāḍi means "the country of the Gaṅgas," and Nolaṃbavāḍi means "the country of the Nolaṃbas," and Raṭṭavāḍi means "the country of the Raṭṭas," so Daḍigavāḍi seems to clearly mean "the country of the Daḍigas," and that the word *daḍiga* has the meaning of 'a man who bears a club, staff, or cudgel.' We can carry the word back, as a personal name, to just after A. D. 794, in the case of a certain Daḍigarasa, who was governing a *nāḍ* or district, in which was Guḍigere (within the limits of the Dhārwar district), under a Gaṅga named Mārassaḷba (and in Sanskrit Mārāśarva) who just at that time was claiming to exercise paramount sovereignty in that part of the country.<sup>29</sup> And it is possible that that Daḍigarasa may have been the original of the fictitious Daḍiga. This, however, is all that can be said at present on that point. For a later time, an inscription at Sūḍi, in the Rōṇ tāluka of the Dhārwar district, mentions, with the date of A. D. 1113 or 1114, a certain Mahāsāmanta Daḍigarasa, son of Guṇḍarasa, who was descended from Lōkarasa, of the Bālivarṇa, lord of the Daḍigamaṇḍala country.

### FOLKLORE IN THE CENTRAL PROVINCES.

BY M. N. VENKATASWAMI, M.F.L.S., M.R.A.S.

No. 15. — *The Too-punctilious Brahman*.<sup>1</sup>

A most punctilious Brāhmaṇ once accidentally trod on a leaf that had been used as a plate. "Alas, alas, what have I done?" said the Brāhmaṇ, and proceeded at once to journey to Kāśi (Benares) to expiate the sin he had committed.

On the road he met a Sūdra, of whom he enquired his destination. "I am going to Kāśi," said the Sūdra. "So am I," said the Brāhmaṇ, and they began to journey together. At the first halting-place the Sūdra went to the *bāzār* and purchased half a *śēr* of rice and two pice worth of *ghī*. He cooked his rice and fried some *rangapodi*<sup>2</sup> he had with him, and was soon in a deep and long sleep

<sup>28</sup> See Mr. Rice's *Mysore*, revised edition, Vol. I. p. 309 ff.

<sup>29</sup> See an inscription at Guḍigere, which will shortly be published in the *Epigraphia Indica*, Vol. VI.

<sup>1</sup> [Stories against the Brāhmaṇs are as common in the South as in the North of India. Indeed, there would seem to be everywhere a silent under-current of exasperation against the tyranny of caste, of which the Brāhmaṇs are the impersonation. — Ed.]

<sup>2</sup> To make *rangapodi*: take some dried prawns, chillies, garlic, and salt and reduce the whole to powder in a mortar.



after his customary bath and meal. The Brāhmaṇ also went to the *bāzār*, where he purchased rice, pulse, *ghī*, chillies, salt and turmeric and set to work to cook. But his ceremonies were so many that when the Sūdra had awakened from his sleep he was still at his meal. At last, after much cogitation, the Brāhmaṇ asked the Sūdra how it was that he managed to get through his cooking and meals so rapidly. "O it's all on account of the *rangapodi* which my mother made for me," said the Sūdra. "What is *rangapodi*," said the Brāhmaṇ. "Well, you had better try it," said the Sūdra, and thereafter the Sūdra was careful to let the Brāhmaṇ have a ladleful of *rangapodi* at every meal. The Brāhmaṇ was delighted with so savoury an addition to his food, and by and by the *rangapodi* gave out. So the pair started off to the *bāzār* to get some ingredients for more. The Sūdra led the way to the *Bestiwāḍi*,<sup>3</sup> where dried fish of all sorts were kept for sale. "What a stink!" said the Brāhmaṇ, "why have you come here?" "For prawns for the *rangapodi* of course," said the Sūdra. "Prawns for the *rangapodi*," exclaimed the Brāhmaṇ in great horror. "What have I been eating? For merely treading on a used dining-leaf I started to journey to Kāśī, and here have I been eating prawns! O fate, fate!" And he parted company with the Sūdra, with a vow to eat no food for three days as an expiation for his fresh sin.

On the third day he felt extremely thirsty, and begged a betel-nut from an old woman he saw working at a spinning-wheel. She took one from her wallet and threw it to him. The Brāhmaṇ put it into his mouth and broke it between his teeth. "Well, you must have teeth of iron," said the old woman, "I got that nut at my wedding. I and my husband, my six brothers-in-law and all their wives have tried our teeth on that nut and have never been able to break it." Here then was yet another sin, for which the Brāhmaṇ determined to go without food for a further day and a half.

Continuing his journey the Brāhmaṇ reached a city, and after buying some rice and pulse and his other necessities, asked where the Bapanamma<sup>4</sup> resided. A house was pointed out to him and he went there and asked the woman to cook his purchases sharp, as he was very hungry. When the most welcome meal was finished he saw a barber's case of instruments in the house and at the same time quite unsuspectingly asked the Bapanamma where her husband was. "At the palace," she replied. Then it flashed upon him that he had been directed to the barber's house and had taken his meal at the hands of the barber's wife! "O what have I done now? Surely Sani<sup>5</sup> is pursuing me. This sin is greater than the others. I must make all the haste I can to reach Kāśī and wash them all away."

So the Brāhmaṇ put his best foot foremost and soon reached the holy city one morning very early. Now, he had no intention of paying the heavy fees demanded for purification in the usual form, and so he took his way to the opposite side of the river and began his dippings and devotions at an unfrequented spot. It happened that just at that hour and at that spot a large number of people were consigning to the holy river the ashes of a cremated Madiga.<sup>6</sup> At the same time his wife was to be formally made a widow. But out of the river arose the Brāhmaṇ. "Your husband come to life again," said the astonished people. "How fortunate!" "Nonsense," said the Brāhmaṇ, "I am not her husband." But it was of no use. The people were not to be robbed of the miracle, and the widow was not going to lose her chance of being restored to the comforts of life; and thus the poor Brāhmaṇ was carried off in triumph to the woman's house, where the marriage-booth was erected and before he

<sup>3</sup> *Bestiwāḍi* is the the street where the fishermen live.

<sup>4</sup> Bapanamma, a Brāhmaṇi: one who will look after stray Brāhmaṇs. The point in the tale is that he was not understood and the barber's house, because the owner's wife was named Bapanamma, was shown him.

<sup>5</sup> Sani, the god of ill-luck.

<sup>6</sup> Madiga, a shoe-maker: being workers in leather the caste is a very low one.



knew where he was the *mangalasūtra*\* was tied round the woman's neck and they were man and wife. Thus the end of the Brāhman's scruples was that he had to become a Madiga.

# A COMPLETE VERBAL CROSS-INDEX TO YULE'S HOBSON-JOBSON OR GLOSSARY OF ANGLO-INDIAN WORDS.

BY CHARLES PARTRIDGE, M.A.

(Continued from p. 79.)

- Bengala (s.); *s. v.* 65, i.  
 Bengala (n. p.); *s. v.* Bengal, 64, i, *s. v.* Bengalee, 65, i, *s. v.* Chittagong, 157, i; ann. 1510: *s. v.* Beiramee, 61, i; ann. 1511: *s. v.* Kling, 373, ii; ann. 1516: *s. v.* Bengal, 64, ii, 3 times, *s. v.* Orissa, 492, ii, *s. v.* Sugar, 655, ii; ann. 1522: *s. v.* Sumatra, 658, ii; ann. 1541: *s. v.* Peking, 526, i; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Bengalee, 65, i, *s. v.* Chiamay, 145, ii; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Comotay, 185, i, *s. v.* Cospetir, 202, i, twice, *s. v.* Gour (c), 298, ii; ann. 1561: *s. v.* Cowry, 209, ii; ann. 1563: *s. v.* Eagle-wood, 258, ii, *s. v.* Nard, 473, ii, *s. v.* Puttān, 565, ii; ann. 1567: *s. v.* Typhoon, 723, ii; ann. 1568: *s. v.* Arakan, 25, i, *s. v.* Delhi, 234, ii, *s. v.* Porto Piqueno, 550, i; ann. 1569: *s. v.* Porto Piqueno, 550, ii; ann. 1585: *s. v.* Cooch Behar, 191, i; ann. 1586: *s. v.* Patna, 520, i; ann. 1588: *s. v.* Chinapatam, 778, i; ann. 1591: *s. v.* Calico, 113, i; ann. 1596: *s. v.* Porto Piqueno, 550, ii; ann. 1598: *s. v.* Abada, 1, ii, twice, *s. v.* Chittagong, 157, i; ann. 1602: *s. v.* Malabar (A), 413, i; ann. 1610: *s. v.* Kling, 374, i; ann. 1616: *s. v.* Hoogly, 322, i, *s. v.* Patna, 520, i, *s. v.* Poorub, 547, ii; ann. 1663: *s. v.* Neelgye, 476, i; ann. 1665: *s. v.* Hoogly, 322, i, *s. v.* Moluccas, 441, i; ann. 1667: *s. v.* Juggernaut, 356, ii; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Patna, 520, i, twice; ann. 1676: *s. v.* Cossimbazar, 204, i, *s. v.* Mugg, 455, ii, *s. v.* Ruttee, 587, ii; ann. 1690: *s. v.* Bengal, 64, ii, 4 times; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Palempore, 836, ii; ann. 1767: *s. v.* Gentoo, 281, i, *s. v.* Moors, The, 448, i, twice; ann. 1860: *s. v.* Non-regulation, 481, ii.  
 Bangāla; ann. 1350: *s. v.* Bengal, 64, ii.  
 Bengal Artillery; *s. v.* Dumdum, 254, ii.  
 Bengalas; ann. 1563: *s. v.* Eagle-wood, 258, ii.  
 Bengal babbler; *s. v.* Seven Sisters, 616, i.  
 Bengale; 112, i, footnote; ann. 1345: *s. v.* Sugar, 655, ii; ann. 1516: *s. v.* Burma, 101, i; ann. 1586: *s. v.* Hing, 318, ii; ann. 1610: *s. v.* India of the Portugese, 333, i; ann. 1664: *s. v.* Cowry, 785, ii; ann. 1665: *s. v.* Mustees, 462, ii, *s. v.* Aracan, 758, ii; ann. 1705: *s. v.* Sicca, 633, i; ann. 1745: *s. v.* Pandáram, 508, i; ann. 1753: *s. v.* Kedgerree, 812, ii, *s. v.* Cooch Azo, 783, ii, *s. v.* Muxadabad, 828, ii; ann. 1774: *s. v.* Overland, 834, i, twice.  
 Bengalee (language); *s. v.* Gaurian, 800, i; ann. 1783: *s. v.* Moors, The 448, i; ann. 1824: *s. v.* Bungalow, 99, i.  
 Bengalee (native); *s. v.* 65, i, twice, *s. v.* Madras, 407, i, *s. v.* Opium, 489, i, *s. v.* Pig-sticking, 536, ii, twice, *s. v.* Bayparree, 763, ii; ann. 1855: *s. v.* Kulá, 378, ii.  
 Bengalen; ann. 1598: *s. v.* Porto Piqueno, 550, ii.  
 Bengalese; ann. 1807: *s. v.* Jaggery, 341, i.  
 Bengal Florican; *s. v.* Florican, 270, ii.  
 Bengal hemp; *s. v.* Sunn, 661, ii.  
 Bengal gram; *s. v.* Gram, 300, ii.  
 Bengal Hurkaru; *s. v.* Hurcarra, 327, ii.  
 Bengali; *s. v.* Anile, 22, i, *s. v.* Baboo, 32, ii, *s. v.* Bearer, 58, i, *s. v.* Buckyne, 90, i, *s. v.* Chuckerbutty, 166, ii, *s. v.* Godown, 291, ii, *s. v.* Jompon, 353, i, *s. v.* Mugg, 455, i, *s. v.* Tiparry, 703, ii, *s. v.* Tucka, 716, ii, *s. v.* Veranda, 736, ii, *s. v.* Coolin, 783, ii, *s. v.* Moonga, 825, i; ann. 1340: *s. v.* Satigam, 854, i; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Bengalee, 65, i; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Cospetir, 202, i; ann. 1599: *s. v.* Serang, 615, i; ann. 1633: *s. v.* Bungalow, 98, ii; ann. 1880: *s. v.* Qui-hi, 568, i; ann. 1874: *s. v.* Tucka, 716, ii; ann.

\* *Mangalasūtra*. A circular piece of gold (14k) is tied round the neck of the bride by the bridegroom, and this action completes the marriage ceremony, the marriage being thereafter indissoluble.



- 1880: *s. v.* Ramasammy, 573, i; ann. 1883: *s. v.* Telinga, 695, i; ann. 1885: *s. v.* Mook-tear, 824, ii.
- Bengali; ann. 1632: *s. v.* Hoogly, 322, i.
- Bengali; *s. v.* Patchouli, 518, i; ann. 1610: *s. v.* Bankshall (a), 47, i.
- Bengali; ann. 1633: *s. v.* Bungalow, 98, ii.
- Bengali; *s. v.* Moors, The, 447, i, *s. v.* Sola, 646, i; *s. v.* Vaishnava, 733, i.
- Begallies; ann. 1780: *s. v.* Banyan (1) b, 49, i.
- Bengall; ann. 1666: *s. v.* Hoogly, 322, i; ann. 1678: *s. v.* Hosbolhookhum, 807, ii; ann. 1679: *s. v.* Behar, 764, ii; ann. 1683: *s. v.* Interloper, 808, ii; ann. 1694: *s. v.* Interloper, 809, i; ann. 1698: *s. v.* Zemindar, 748, i; ann. 1704: *s. v.* Roomaul, 582, i; ann. 1706: *s. v.* Harry, 806, i; ann. 1767: *s. v.* Burrampooter, 101, ii.
- Bengalla; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Sunda, 659, ii; ann. 1644: *s. v.* Hoogly, 322, i, twice; ann. 1711: *s. v.* Bungalow, 768, ii.
- Bengallee; *s. v.* Saligram, 593, ii; ann. 1810: *s. v.* Cranny, 212, ii; ann. 1861: *s. v.* Ameen, 11, ii.
- Bengallies; ann. 1788: *s. v.* Moors, The, 448, i.
- Bengally; ann. 1804: *s. v.* Palankeen, 504, i.
- Bengal Madder; *s. v.* Munjeet, 457, ii.
- Bengalore; *s. v.* Sanam, 597, i.
- Bengalos; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Cospetir, 202, i.
- Bengal Quince; *s. v.* Bael, 35, i.
- Bengals; *s. v.* Moors, The, 447, i; ann. 1772: *s. v.* Hindostanee, 317, ii.
- Bengi; ann. 1638: *s. v.* Bang, 45, i.
- Bengioi; *s. v.* Benjamin, 65, i, twice.
- Benguala; ann. 1516: *s. v.* Cael, 108, i.
- Benguela; ann. 1590: *s. v.* Gong, 295, ii.
- Beni; ann. 1487: *s. v.* Fetish, 267, i.
- Beniaga; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Lewchew, 392, ii.
- Beniamin; ann. 1612: *s. v.* Benjamin, 65, ii.
- Benighted; *s. v.* Carnatic Fashion, 126, ii, *s. v.* Madras, 407, i, *s. v.* Mull, 456, ii.
- Benighted, The; *s. v.* 65, i.
- Benin; ann. 1563: *s. v.* Caffer, 108, ii.
- Benjamin; *s. v.* 65, i, *s. v.* Java, 346, ii; ann. 1846: *s. v.* Java, 348, ii; ann. 1567: *s. v.* Nipa (b), 480, i; ann. 1568: *s. v.* Mergui, 434, i; ann. 1585: *s. v.* Cayolaque, 136, ii; ann. 1759: *s. v.* Tomback, 708, i.
- Benjamon; ann. 1539: *s. v.* Battas, 55, ii, *s. v.* Calambac, 110, ii.
- Benjan; ann. 1633: *s. v.* Mosque, 452, ii, *s. v.* Parsee, 516, ii.
- Benjanen; ann. 1672: *s. v.* Avatar, 31, i.
- Benjui; *s. v.* Benjamin, 65, ii.
- Benjuy; 65, ii, footnote, twice; ann. 1516 (twice) and 1563: *s. v.* Benjamin, 65, ii.
- Benki; *s. v.* Binky-Nabob, 71, ii.
- Benki-nawab; *s. v.* Binky-Nabob, 71, ii.
- Benkora; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Hidgelee, 314, ii.
- Benksal; ann. 1623: *s. v.* Bankshall (b), 47, ii.
- Ben-nut; 465, i, footnote.
- Bent; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Chick (a), 148, i.
- Bentalah; ann. 1570: *s. v.* Beada'a, 57, ii.
- Bentaras; ann. 1612: *s. v.* Orankay, 492, i.
- Benua; *s. v.* 65, ii, twice.
- Benyan; ann. 1638: *s. v.* Khuttry, 367, ii; ann. 1648: *s. v.* Parsee, 516, ii; ann. 1672: *s. v.* Banyan (1), 48, ii; ann. 1726: *s. v.* Banyan-Tree, 50, ii, twice.
- Benyghted; ann. 1860: *s. v.* Mull, 456, ii.
- Benyhted; ann. 1860: *s. v.* Benighted, The, 65, i.
- Benzoi; ann. 1461: *s. v.* Benjamin, 65, ii.
- Benzoin; *s. v.* Benjamin, 65, i, twice, *s. v.* Picota, 534, ii; ann. 1348: *s. v.* Artichoke, 27, i; ann. 1498: *s. v.* Pegu, 525, i, *s. v.* Sarnau, 601, ii; ann. 1505: *s. v.* Pegu, 525, i; ann. 1510 and 1514: *s. v.* Sarnau, 601, ii; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Baros, 53, i.
- Beoparry; *s. v.* Bayparree, 763, ii.
- Bepari; *s. v.* Bayparree, 763, ii.
- Bepole; ann. 1578: *s. v.* Naem, 476, ii.
- Bepparree; ann. 1878: *s. v.* Bayparree, 763, ii, twice.
- Ber; *s. v.* Bear-Tree, 58, i; ann. 1666: *s. v.* Banyan-Tree, 50, ii.
- Bér; ann. 1563: *s. v.* Bear-Tree, 53, i.
- Bera; ann. 1771: *s. v.* Bearer, 764, i, twice.
- Beram; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Beiramee, 61, ii.
- Beramada; *s. v.* Veranda, 736, ii.
- Beranghâr; ann. 1507: *s. v.* Gole, 294, i.
- Berar; *s. v.* Bassein (3), 54, i, *s. v.* Bhounsia, 70, i, *s. v.* Madremaluco, 821, i; ann. 1590: *s. v.* Coolurnee, 191, ii; ann. 1594: *s. v.* Souba, 649, ii; ann. 1798: *s. v.* Resident (b), 577, i.
- Berâr; ann. 1590: *s. v.* Godavery, 291, ii, twice.
- Berbá; ann. 1882: *s. v.* Beriberi, 764, ii.
- Berbelim; ann. 1618: *s. v.* Berberyn, 66, i.
- Berber; ann. 1610: *s. v.* Beriberi, 66, ii.
- Berberbach; *s. v.* Bálwar, 40, ii.
- Berberis; *s. v.* Catechu, 133, i.



- Berberyn; *s. v.* 66, i; ann. 1836: *s. v.* 66, i.  
 Ber-daxing; *s. v.* Datchin, 788, ii.  
 Berebere; ann. 1613; *s. v.* Beriberi, 66, ii; ann. 1720: *s. v.* Beriberi, 67, i.  
 Berebery; ann. 1682: *s. v.* Beriberi, 764, ii.  
 Berengena; *s. v.* Brinjal, 86, ii, 87, i.  
 Berenjal; ann. 1783: *s. v.* Brinjal, 87, ii.  
 Berenjaw; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Brinjal, 87, i.  
 Berhampore; *s. v.* Batta, 54, ii, *s. v.* Factory, 264, ii, *s. v.* Dengue, 769, i; ann. 1810: *s. v.* Corge, 197, ii.  
 Berhumpooter; ann. 1590: *s. v.* Burrampooter, 101, ii.  
 Beri; *s. v.* Beriberi, 66 i.  
 Beriberi; *s. v.* 66, i, twice, 66, ii, 764, ii, *s. v.* Barbiers, 52, i; ann. 1631: *s. v.* 66, ii; ann. 1835, 1837 and 1880: *s. v.* 67, i.  
 Beri-Beri; *s. v.* Beriberi, 66, ii.  
 Beri-beri; *s. v.* Barbiers, 52, i, *s. v.* Beriberi, 66, i, 66, ii, twice; ann. 1835; *s. v.* Beriberi, 765, i.  
 Béri-béri; ann. 1685: *s. v.* Beriberi, 67, i.  
 Béringédes; ann. 1782: *s. v.* Brinjal, 81, ii.  
 Beringela; *s. v.* Brinjal, 86, ii.  
 Berinjalā; *s. v.* Brinjal, 87, i.  
 Ber-Bampong; ann. 1812: *s. v.* Compound, 187, i.  
 Berkendosses; ann. 1793; *s. v.* Burkundauze, 100, ii.  
 Berm; ann. 1791: *s. v.* Pettah, 533, i.  
 Berma; ann. 1516: *s. v.* Burma, 101, i.  
 Bermuda; ann. 1885; *s. v.* Dengue, 798, ii, twice.  
 Beroni; ann. 1648: *s. v.* Gingham, 801, i.  
 Berras; ann. 1768-71: *s. v.* Bearer, (a), 58, ii.  
 Berretta rossa; ann. 1510: *s. v.* Kizilbash, 815, i.  
 Berrette; ann. 1550: *s. v.* Kizilbash, 815, i, 3 times.  
 Berrette rossé; ann. 1550: *s. v.* Kizilbash, 815, i.  
 Berri-berri; ann. 1809: *s. v.* Beriberi, 67, i.  
 Bérallion; *s. v.* Beryl, 67, i.  
 Bérullos; *s. v.* Beryl, 67, i; ann. 150: *s. v.* Beryl, 67, ii.  
 Berūpātri; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Beiramee, 61, i.  
 Beruwalā; *s. v.* Berberyn, 66, i.  
 Beryl; *s. v.* 67, i and ii; ann. 70: *s. v.* 67, ii.  
 Besan; *s. v.* Basin, 53, ii.  
 Besant; ann. 1343: *s. v.* Sugar, 655, ii.  
 Besermani; ann. 1559: *s. v.* Mussulman, 462, i.  
 Besorg; *s. v.* Budbrook, 92, ii; ann. 1638: *s. v.* Budbrook, 92, ii.  
 Bessi; ann. 1781: *s. v.* Bassein (1), 53, ii.  
 Besurmani; ann. 1580: *s. v.* Mussulman, 462, i.  
 Beswa; ann. 1763: *s. v.* Beegah, 59, i.  
 Beta Bengalensis; *s. v.* Pollock-saug, 545, i.  
 Beta vulgaris; *s. v.* Pollock-saug, 535, i.  
 Betechoot; *s. v.* Banchoot, 42, ii.  
 Beteelaes; ann. 1685: *s. v.* Betteela, 68, i.  
 Beteellas; *s. v.* Piece-goods, 535, ii.  
 Betel; *s. v.* 67, ii, twice and footnote, 765, i, *s. v.* Areca, 25, ii, *s. v.* Camphor, 116, ii, *s. v.* Malabathrum, 414, ii, twice, *s. v.* Pawn, 522, i, *s. v.* Pigdaun, 536, i; ann. 1340: *s. v.* Saloop, 592, ii; ann. 1510: *s. v.* Areca, 25, ii, *s. v.* 67, ii, *s. v.* Chunām, 168, i; ann. 1516: *s. v.* 67, ii; ann. 1524: *s. v.* Bankshall (a), 46 ii; ann. 1548: *s. v.* Areca, 25, ii, 3 times; ann. 1563: *s. v.* Chunām, 168, i, *s. v.* Malabathrum, 415, i, twice, *s. v.* Tembool, 695, ii; ann. 1578: *s. v.* Catechu, 133, ii; ann. 1585: *s. v.* 68, i; ann. 1610: *s. v.* Chunām, 168, i; ann. 1623 and 1672: *s. v.* 68, i; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Chunām, 168, i; ann. 1759: *s. v.* Cacouli, 769, ii; ann. 1760: *s. v.* Bandedjah, 44, i, *s. v.* Catechu, 133, ii; ann. 1869: *s. v.* Chuekler, 167, i.  
 Betele; ann. 1582: *s. v.* Betel, 67, ii.  
 Betel-faqui; ann. 1770: *s. v.* Beetlefakee, 60, ii.  
 Betelfaqui; ann. 1710: *s. v.* Beetlefakee, 60, ii.  
 Betel-holder; ann. 1672: *s. v.* Naik (c), 470, ii.  
 Betelle; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Betel, 67, ii.  
 Betel-leaf; *s. v.* Betel, 67, ii, *s. v.* Malabathrum, 414, ii, twice, *s. v.* Pawn, 522, i, *s. v.* Tembool, 695, ii; ann. 1578: *s. v.* Deccany, 234, i.  
 Betel-nut; *s. v.* Areca, 25, ii, *s. v.* Betel, 67, ii, *s. v.* Gambier, 277, ii, *s. v.* Penang, 527, i; ann. 943: *s. v.* Cubeb, 214, ii; ann. 1342: *s. v.* Pudipatan, 557, i.  
 Betel nut; ann. 1759: *s. v.* Shabunder, 618, ii.  
 Betel-server; ann. 1672: *s. v.* Cuspadore, 787, i.  
 Beth; ann. 1552: *s. v.* A Muck, 13, ii; ann. 1666: *s. v.* Sanskrit, 599, i; ann. 1667 and 1689: *s. v.* Vedas, 735, i; ann. 1791: *s. v.* Vedas, 736, i.  
 Betle; *s. v.* Betel, 67, ii.  
 Betool; *s. v.* Tank, 684, i.  
 Betre; *s. v.* Betel, 67, ii; ann. 1524: *s. v.* Bankshall (a), 46, ii; ann. 1563: *s. v.* Betel, 67, ii, twice, *s. v.* Chunām, 168, i, *s. v.* Tembool, 695, ii; ann. 1585: *s. v.* Betel, 68, i.  
 Betteela; *s. v.* 68, i; ann. 1727: *s. v.* 68, i.  
 Bettelar; ann. 1298: *s. v.* Putlam, 565, ii.



- Bettell; ann. 1566: *s. v.* Areca, 25, ii.  
 Bettle; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Betel, 68, i.  
 Bettle-nut; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Mangalore (a), 422, ii.  
 Bettle; ann. 1521: *s. v.* Areca, 25, ii.  
 Betula Bhojpattrā; 599, i, footnote.  
 Bety-chuit; ann. 1638 and 1648: *s. v.* Banchoot, 42, ii.  
 Be-wāris; *s. v.* Bewauris, 68, i.  
 Bewauris; *s. v.* 68, i.  
 Beyla; *s. v.* Googul, 296, i.  
 Beypoor; *s. v.* 68, i, twice.  
 Beypur; *s. v.* Chalia, 139, ii, twice.  
 Beyramies; ann. 1498: *s. v.* Shanbaff, 623, ii.  
 Beyt; ann. 1552: *s. v.* A Muck, 13, ii.  
 Bezahar; ann. 1580: *s. v.* Bezoar, 765, i.  
 Bezant; *s. v.* Carat, 123, ii; ann. 1348: *s. v.* Outery, 494, ii.  
 Bezar; ann. 1599: *s. v.* Mace (b), 405, i; ann. 1610: *s. v.* Bezoar, 69, i.  
 Bezar stone; ann. 1608: *s. v.* Tael, 675, ii.  
 Bezas stone; ann. 1617: *s. v.* Bezoar, 69, i.  
 Bezeneger; ann. 1566: *s. v.* Suttee, 668, ii; ann. 1567: *s. v.* China, 152, i, *s. v.* Winter, 740, ii.  
 Bezoar; *s. v.* 68, ii, 4 times, 765, *s. v.* Jade, 340, i, *s. v.* Snake-stone, 643, ii, twice; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Coco-de-Mer, 177, ii; ann. 1599: *s. v.* 68, ii, *s. v.* Mace (b), 405, i; ann. 1673 and 1711: *s. v.* 69, i; ann. 1867: *s. v.* Goa Stone, 290, ii.  
 Bghai; *s. v.* Carénis, 773, i.  
 Bhabur; *s. v.* Baber, 32, i.  
 Blade; ann. 1765: *s. v.* Vedas, 735, ii.  
 Bhadra Kālī; *s. v.* Pagoda, 499, ii.  
 Bhadrāsvas; ann. 650: *s. v.* Java, 347, i.  
 Bhae; ann. 1825: *s. v.* Qui-hi, 568, i.  
 Bhaga-dhara; *s. v.* Bahaudur, 37, i.  
 Bhāgalpur; *s. v.* Champa, 140, i, *s. v.* Tussah, 720, ii.  
 Bhāgalpūr; *s. v.* Jungle-Terry, 359, ii, 3 times. *s. v.* Terai, 696, i, *s. v.* Behar, 764, i, *s. v.* Sonthals, 857, ii, twice; ann. 1809: *s. v.* Luckerbaug, 400, i.  
 Bhagavadi; ann. 1796: *s. v.* Pagoda (c), 502, i, twice.  
 Bhagavān; 500, i, footnote, twice.  
 Bhagavant; *s. v.* Pagoda, 499, i, twice, see 500, i, footnote.  
 Bhagavat; *s. v.* Pagoda, 498, ii, 499, i, 4 times, 499, ii, twice, see 500, i, footnote, 4 times.  
 Bhagavata; 499, ii, footnote.  
 Bhagavati; *s. v.* Pagoda, 498, ii, 499, ii, 15 times, 500, i and footnote (5 times).  
 Bhagavati; 500, i, footnote.  
 Bhāgirathi; *s. v.* Hoogly River, 322, ii.  
 Bhāi Pherū; *s. v.* Ferozeshuhur, 798, ii.  
 Bhakar; ann. 1612: *s. v.* Rohilla, 580, ii.  
 Bhakkar; *s. v.* Sucker-Bucker, 652, ii; ann. 1521: *s. v.* Sucker-Bucker, 652, ii.  
 Bhaktā; *s. v.* Paddy, 495, ii.  
 Bha-maw; *s. v.* Bamó, 42, i.  
 Bhamo; 623, ii, footnote.  
 Bhandāri; *s. v.* Bandaree, 43, ii.  
 Bhāṇḍārīn; *s. v.* Bendāra, 63, i.  
 Bhāṇḍāsāla; *s. v.* Bankshall (3), 46, ii.  
 Bhāṇḍāsūle; *s. v.* Bankshall (3), 46, ii.  
 Bhang; *s. v.* Bang, 45, i, *s. v.* Bungy, 99, ii, *s. v.* Gunja, 308, i; ann. 1874: *s. v.* Gunja, 308, i, twice, *s. v.* Majoon, 411, i.  
 Bhāng; *s. v.* Bang, 45, i.  
 Bhāngar; *s. v.* Bangur, 45, ii.  
 Bhanges; ann. 1789: *s. v.* Bangy (a), 46, i.  
 Bhāngi; *s. v.* Cowry, 210, ii.  
 Bhangī; *s. v.* Bungy, 99, ii, *s. v.* Mehtar, 433, i.  
 Bhangy dāk; ann. 1844: *s. v.* Bangy (b), 46, i.  
 Bhaṇṭā; *s. v.* Batta, 54, ii.  
 Bhaṇṭā; *s. v.* Batta, 54, ii.  
 Bhaṇṭā; *s. v.* Brinjaul, 86, ii.  
 Bhaṇṭākī; *s. v.* Brinjaul, 86, ii.  
 Bhar; ann. 1598: *s. v.* Bahar, 36, i.  
 Bhāra; *s. v.* Bahar, 35, ii.  
 Bharā'ij; ann. 1255: *s. v.* Oudh, 494, ii.  
 Bharal; *s. v.* Burrel, 102, i.  
 Bhāram; *s. v.* Bahar, 35, ii.  
 Bharata; ann. 1045: *s. v.* Dravidian, 251, ii.  
 Bhāratavarsha; *s. v.* India, 329, ii.  
 Bharhut; *s. v.* Custard-Apple, 220, ii, 221, ii.  
 Bharōch; *s. v.* Broach, 88, ii.  
 Bharraky; *s. v.* Dwarka, 257, ii.  
 Bharta; *s. v.* Batta (b), 55, i.  
 Bhartī; *s. v.* Bhat, 69, i.  
 Bhāru-kachchha; *s. v.* Broach, 88, ii.  
 Bhāsha; *s. v.* Sanskrit, 598, i.  
 Bhāshā; *s. v.* Juribasso, 362, i.  
 Bhat; *s. v.* 69, i, *s. v.* Jancada, 810, i; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Rajpoot, 572, i; ann. 1828: *s. v.* 69, ii.  
 Bhāt; *s. v.* Batta, 54, ii, *s. v.* Paddy, 495, ii, *s. v.* Batta, 762, ii.  
 Bhāṭ; *s. v.* Bhat, 69, i.  
 Bhata; *s. v.* Batta, 54, ii.



- Bhātā; *s. v.* Batta, 54, ii.  
 Bhatkal; *s. v.* Batcul, 54, i, *s. v.* Wootz, 742, i.  
 Bhatta; *s. v.* Paddy, 495, ii, *s. v.* Batta, 762, ii, twice.  
 Bhatta; *s. v.* Batta, 54, ii, *s. v.* Bhat, 69, i.  
 Bhatti; *s. v.* A Muck, 13, i, twice.  
 Bhaudan; ann. 1764: *s. v.* Sunderbunds, 858, ii.  
 Bhaugulpore; ann. 1788: *s. v.* Jungle-Terry, 360, i.  
 Bharti; ann. 1775: *s. v.* Bhat, 69, i.  
 Bhavāni; *s. v.* Dewally, 238, i.  
 Bhavati; ann. 1468-9: *s. v.* Quilon, 570, i.  
 Bhawalpur; 685, i, footnote.  
 Bhayāchārā; *s. v.* Bhyacharra, 70, ii.  
 Bheel (n. p.); *s. v.* 69, ii; ann. 1785 and 1825: *s. v.* 69, ii.  
 Bheel (s.); *s. v.* 69, ii; ann. 1879: *s. v.* 69, ii.  
 Bheestee; ann. 1773: *s. v.* Bheesty, 70, i.  
 Bheesty; *s. v.* 69, ii, 765, i, *s. v.* Jemadars, 350, i, *s. v.* Mussuck, 461, ii; ann. 1810, 1829 (twice), and 1878: *s. v.* 70, i; ann. 1829: *s. v.* Goglet, 292, ii.  
 Bhend; *s. v.* Sola, 646, i.  
 Bhendā; *s. v.* Bendy, 63, ii.  
 Bhendī; *s. v.* Bandicoy, 44, ii.  
 Bhendī; *s. v.* Bendy, 63, ii.  
 Bhera; *s. v.* Behut, 61, i.  
 Bhīānsh; ann. 1260: *s. v.* Siwalik (s), 641, i.  
 Bhikshu; *s. v.* Buxee, 103, i, *s. v.* Gyelong, 309, ii.  
 Bhikti; *s. v.* Cockup, 175, i.  
 Bhikty; *s. v.* 70, i.  
 Bhil; *s. v.* Babool, 33, i.  
 Bhil; *s. v.* Bheel, 69, ii, 3 times.  
 Bhilla; *s. v.* Bheel, 69, ii.  
 Bhīm-nagar; ann. 1008: *s. v.* Nuggurcote, 492, ii.  
 Bhīm-nagar; *s. v.* Nuggurcote, 492, ii.  
 Bhimsaini; ann. 1875: *s. v.* Camphor, 117, i.  
 Bhīmsinf; ann. 1590: *s. v.* Camphor, 117, i.  
 Bhindī; *s. v.* Bendy, 63, ii.  
 Bhīshma; ann. 1045: *s. v.* Kling, 373, i.  
 Bhishti; *s. v.* Mussuck, 461, ii, *s. v.* Chowdry, 779, ii.  
 Bhitūr; *s. v.* Peshwa, 532, ii.  
 Bhoi; *s. v.* Boy (b), 83, i; ann. 1810: *s. v.* Boy (b), 84, i.  
 Bhoi; ann. 1590: *s. v.* Mabout, 409, i.  
 Bhoi; *s. v.* Mate, 430, i.  
 Bholia; ann. 1830: *s. v.* Budgerow, 92, i.  
 Bholiah; ann. 1824: *s. v.* Boliyah, 76, ii.  
 Bhongalee; ann. 1836: *s. v.* Bandaree, 43, ii.  
 Bhonālā; ann. 1881: *s. v.* Guana, 304, ii.  
 Bhoñslah; *s. v.* Bhounala, 70, i.  
 Bhootan; ann. 1774: *s. v.* Mongoose, 457, ii.  
 Bhoñslah; *s. v.* Bhounala, 70, i; ann. 1730: *s. v.* Bhounala, 70, i.  
 Bhosselah; ann. 1780: *s. v.* Bhounala, 70, i.  
 Bhotan; *s. v.* Cooch Behar, 191, i, *s. v.* Doar, 248, ii.  
 Bhoulie; ann. 1775: *s. v.* Bowly, 82, ii.  
 Bhouliya; ann. 1860: *s. v.* Paunchway, 522, i.  
 Bhounala; *s. v.* 70, i.  
 Bhonree; ann. 1775: *s. v.* Bowly, 82, ii.  
 Bhreeghoo-Kahetra; *s. v.* Broach, 88, ii.  
 Bhriḡu-kachchha; *s. v.* Broach, 88, ii.  
 Bhrōch; ann. 1756: *s. v.* Broach, 89, i.  
 Bhudda; *s. v.* Buddha, 90, i.  
 Bhuddist; ann. 1810: *s. v.* Buddha, 91, ii.  
 Bhuf Kahār; ann. 1873: *s. v.* Kuhār, 378, i.  
 Bhūj; *s. v.* Culsey, 216, i.  
 Bhundaree; ann. 1808: *s. v.* Bandaree, 760, ii; ann. 1836: *s. v.* Bandaree, 43, ii.  
 Bhundarrie; ann. 1883: *s. v.* Bandaree, 43, ii.  
 Bhūpati; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Cospetir, 202, i.  
 Bhnūrā; *s. v.* Pra, 551, i.  
 Bhurja; 599, i, footnote.  
 Bhūta; *s. v.* Devil Worship, 237, ii, twice.  
 Bhutān; *s. v.* Tangun, 683, i.  
 Bhūta-pūja; *s. v.* Devil Worship, 237, ii.  
 Bhūtesar; ann. 1020: *s. v.* Tibet, 698, ii.  
 Bihyacharra; *s. v.* 70, ii.  
 Bah; ann. 1020: *s. v.* Punjaub, 562, i.  
 Biās; *s. v.* Jowaula mookhee, 354, ii, *s. v.* Punjaub, 561, ii, *s. v.* Saul-wood, 603, i.  
 Bibars; *s. v.* Chicane, 146, ii.  
 Bibāsios; *s. v.* Punjaub, 561, ii.  
 Bibi; ann. 1611: *s. v.* Beebee, 58, ii; ann. 1786: *s. v.* Beebee, 59, i.  
 Bibi; *s. v.* Beebee, 58, ii, twice.  
 Bibi Achut; *s. v.* Banchoot, 42, ii.  
 Biby; *s. v.* Beebee, 58, ii.  
 Biça; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Macao (b), 402, ii, twice, *s. v.* Viss, 739, i, 3 times.  
 Bichá; *s. v.* Ganda, 800, i.  
 Bichána; *s. v.* 70, ii.  
 Biche de Mer; ann. 1783: *s. v.* Swallow, 671, i.  
 Bicheneger; ann. 1474: *s. v.* Jungle, 359, i.  
 Bichenegher; ann. 1470: *s. v.* Bisnagar, 72, ii.  
 Bichhānā; *s. v.* Bichána, 70, ii.  
 Bicho-de-mar; *s. v.* Beech-de-Mer, 59, i.  
 Bichúá; ann. 1659: *s. v.* Palankeen, 503, ii.  
 Bickaneer; ann. 1883: *s. v.* Tank, 685, i.  
 Bicker Majit; ann. 1785: *s. v.* Oojyna, 487, ii.



Bico; ann. 1554: s. v. Talapoin, 677, ii.  
 Bidang; s. v. Numerical Affixes, 831, i.  
 Bidar; s. v. Cañara, 117, ii; ann. 1631: s. v.  
 Melique Verido, 823, i; ann. 1660: s. v.  
 Carnatic, 126, i.  
 Bidadar; s. v. Bidree, 70, ii, s. v. Melique Verido,  
 823, i; ann. 1590: s. v. Telinga, 694, ii.  
 Bidásopēs; s. v. Jelum, 350, i.  
 Bidaspes; s. v. Behut, 61, i.  
 Bidáspēs; s. v. Punjaub, 561, ii.  
 Bidjanagar; ann. 1442: s. v. Bisnagar, 73, ii,  
 s. v. Mangalore (a), 422, ii.

Bidree; s. v. 70, ii.  
 Bidri; s. v. Bidree, 70, ii.  
 Bidry; s. v. Bidree, 70, ii.  
 Bieldar; ann. 1726: s. v. Burkundauze, 100, ii.  
 Bigah; s. v. Cotta, 205, ii.  
 Bigam; s. v. Beegum, 59, ii.  
 Bigara; s. v. Banchoot, 42, ii, s. v. Bowly,  
 82, ii.  
 Bigarrah; ann. 1507: s. v. Bombay, 77, i.  
 Bigarry; s. v. Begar, 60, ii.  
 Biggah; ann. 1788: s. v. Black, 766, i.  
 Biggereen; ann. 1673: s. v. Begar, 61, i.

(To be continued.)

## MISCELLANEA.

### DATE OF BUDDHA'S NIRVANA.

THE date of the *Parinibbana* or demise of Buddha has been long since fixed, with very considerable probability, by Prof. Max Müller. His date for this event, on which much of the chronology of Buddhism depends, is 477 or 478 B. C. (*Hist. Sansk. Liter.* pp. 262-300).

In the *Mahavanso* we are told that Aśoka summoned the great Buddhist Council of Pāṭali-putra in the 17th year of his reign. At the close of that Council the Thero Majjhantiko deputed two theras, Sona and Uttara, to the Sowanabhūmi country. In the Kalyāṇi inscriptions of Pegu—dating from 1476 A. D.—the arrival and success of these missionaries is related, as in the *Mahavanso*, adding—"Thus was religion established in this country of Rāmaññadesa by the two Theras in the 236th year that had elapsed since the attainment of Parinibbana by the Sammasambuddha."<sup>1</sup>

Now Aśoka's reign is generally assumed to date from B. C. 260, and his 18th year—when the missionaries might arrive in Burma, would coincide with 242 B. C. If now we apply 236 years to this, we have 478 B. C. for the date of the Nirvāṇa, as derived by Prof. Max Müller from the chronology of the Hindu rulers previous to Chandragupta. The Burmese date is probably derived from the Singalese chronology in the *Mahavanso*, which place 236 years between the landing of Vijaya and the accession of Devanampiya Tishya, but it

antidates the latter event by about 65 years as compared with Aśoka's council determined from Chandragupta's time. The interest of this is that it supports what has been derived from other date,—upsetting the Singalese date from Singalese sources.

The period between Buddha's Nirvāṇa and Aśoka with his contemporary Devanampiya Tishya, has been filled up with Vijaya and his successors in six reigns and an interregnum: this must be regarded as constructive chronology. The period only has been derived from Indian sources.

Walagrambāhu was restored to the throne, and the doctrines of Buddhism first reduced to writing in Ceylon, in the 217th year after the mission from Aśoka. This date must have been about 25 B. C. and not, as has been assumed, 88 B. C. How much further the error in Singalese chronicle continues should be investigated.

JAS. BURGESS.

### A SANSKRIT EPIC TEXT SOCIETY.

At the XIIth International Congress of Orientalists, held at Rome, in October 1899, the proposal printed below was laid before the members of the Indian Section. At the instance of Col. Temple a Committee was formed which decided

<sup>1</sup> Mr. B. F. St. Andrew St. John, in *Acts du Congrès, Inter. Paris, 1897, Sect. I. p. 226.*



(i.) that it was desirable to found a Sanskrit Epic Text Society, (ii.) that its first work should be an edition of the *Mahābhārata* in the South-Indian recension, (iii.) that a sub-committee be formed consisting of Col. Temple, Sir Raymond West, Profs. Bendall, Eggeling, Rhys Davids, Dr. Fleet, and Dr. Hoernle, who are to act in concert with Syed Ali Bilgrami, the representative for India, and with Dr. Winternitz of Prague, the author of the scheme. It is in the hope that the scheme may find warm friends and supporters in India, especially in the South that we give below in extenso the 'Proposal' presented to the Congress in No. 3 of its 'Bulletins.'

A Proposal for the Formation of a Sanskrit Epic Text Society laid before the Indian Section of the XIIth International Congress of Orientalists, held at Rome, in October 1899.

At the last Congress of Orientalists in Paris, I read before the Indian Section of the Congress a paper on the South-Indian *Mahābhārata* MSS. in the Collection of the Royal Asiatic Society of Great Britain and Ireland, in which I tried to show that these MSS. represented a distinct recension of the *Mahābhārata*, which students of the Hindu Epics could not afford to neglect.

I have since published, in the *Indian Antiquary* (March, April, May 1898), an analysis of some portions of the *Adiparvan* of the *Mahābhārata*, contained in two of these South-Indian MSS. An Analysis of the *Sabhaparvan* according to one Malayalam MS. of the Royal Asiatic Society's Collection, and one Telugu MS. of the India Office will shortly be published in the same *Journal*. In my paper on the *Adiparvan* I was able to point out important omissions in the South-Indian MSS., which made it more than probable that certain passages at the beginning of the *Mahābhārata*, found in our editions, are later interpolations. In the *Sabhaparvan*, on the other hand, the Malayalam MS. offers a much fuller text than our editions, containing a considerable number of chapters of which there is no trace in our texts. Many of these additions differ, as regards their style and language, so little from other parts of the text, that if they happened to be included in our Bombay or Calcutta editions, they would undoubtedly be considered to be as genuine and as old as the bulk of the accepted text of the

*Mahābhārata*. The Telugu MS. does not share all these additions; in fact, it represents a text which on the whole has more in common with that of the Northern editions than with that of the Malayalam MS.

But the materials, which have so far become accessible, are by no means sufficient to enable us to form a clear idea of the exact relations of the South-Indian recension to the Northern text. This much, however, is clear even from the few extracts from South-Indian MSS. hitherto published, that the text of the *Mahābhārata*, as found in our Bombay and Calcutta editions, is an utterly insufficient basis for critical researches concerning the great Hindu Epic, and that the text on which all *Mahābhārata* studies have hitherto been founded, is not the text but only one of the texts of the *Mahābhārata*.

When Protap Chandra Roy published his popular edition of the *Mahābhārata*, he was blamed by a Pandit of Southern India for having published an edition which was "sadly defective in the text," and which was detrimental to the religious interests of the people of Southern India "as many portions supporting the Advaita and Vaisishtha-advaita doctrines, but unfavourable to the Sakti worshippers of the North, had been omitted." The Pandit complained that "many verses quoted by the great philosophers of the South in support of their respective doctrines, are not to be found in Mr. Protap Chandra Roy's edition." These charges, which are extremely characteristic of the way in which native Hindu scholars look upon the text of such books as the *Mahābhārata*, were answered by Mr. Protap Chandra Roy, who pointed out "that there could be no edition of the *Mahābhārata*, howsoever carefully edited, that would please scholars of every part of India." He declares that he is quite willing "to consult any approved manuscript of Southern India," but concludes by saying: "The fact is, the divergences of manuscripts are so great that it is perfectly impossible to produce an edition that could at once satisfy both Aryavarta and Dakshinātya."

Now, what we really need, and what seems to me to be the *sine qua non* for historical and critical researches regarding the text of the *Mahābhārata*, is a critical edition which should neither satisfy the people of Northern India nor those of the Dekkhan, but which should satisfy the wants

<sup>1</sup> See the covers of Part XXIX. (1897) of Protap Chandra Roy's Translation of the *Mahābhārata*.



of Sanskrit scholarship. I repeat what I said at the last Congress in Paris, that "a critical edition of the *Mahābhārata*, made by European scholars according to the principles followed in editing any other important text, is wanted as the only sound basis for all *Mahābhārata* studies — nay, for all studies connected with the epic literature of India."

Yet such an edition must, for a long time to come, remain a pious wish. For there can be no doubt that an actual critical edition of the *Mahābhārata* is at the present moment out of the question, inasmuch as the preliminary work necessary for such an edition has never yet been begun. Nay, it may even be doubted whether a critical edition, in the ordinary sense of the word, will ever be possible of such a work as the *Mahābhārata*. But what is certainly possible, and what cannot be delayed much longer if *Mahābhārata* criticism is to lead to any satisfactory results, is to collect all the materials necessary for textual criticism — to collect and collate any old and original MSS. of the *Mahābhārata* found in different parts of India — to compare the text or texts offered by MSS. and editions with that used by the different commentators. We should at least be able to say of any important passage whether it is found in all the different versions of the *Mahābhārata*, or only in some of them. And where there are different versions of one and the same passage, if we cannot say which was the original one, we should at least be able to compare all the existing versions with one another. More especially, the text of the old Bengali MSS. (of which Dr. Soerensen has given us a specimen), and that of the South Indian MSS. ought to be made generally accessible.

Such a thorough investigation of all authentic MSS. of the *Mahābhārata*, is a task far beyond the power of one single scholar, even if he devoted to it all his time and energy. What is wanted in order to accomplish it, is a division of labour on a large scale. And this division must be a systematic one. The work to be done must be clearly mapped out, and many workers must be enlisted, each of whom will have to choose his own portion of the work. It seems to me that there is only one way to bring about such a systematic division of labour, and that is the formation of a Sanskrit Epic Text Society which should be the centre of all researches relating to the ancient Hindu Epics.

If once such a centre were formed it would not limit itself to the work of which I just have spoken. The Society would also find ways and means for the publication of texts connected in any way with the history of the *Mahābhārata*. The numerous abstracts of and extracts from the *Mahābhārata* existing in Sanskrit MSS., and the various translations into the vernaculars, even such works as the Persian and the Javanic versions of the *Mahābhārata*, if they were made generally accessible by authentic translations (into English or German or French), are likely to prove of considerable interest for the history of the *Mahābhārata*.

Moreover, no student of the Hindu Epics can be unaware of the numerous points of contact existing between the Epic and the Puranic literatures. But as regards the *Purāṇas* — which apart from their intrinsic value for the religious history of ancient India, are of such great importance on account of their manifold relations to the epic literature — textual criticism has hardly yet begun to be applied to them, and of their chronology we know next to nothing. Here, too, many hands are wanted to accomplish all the work that has still to be done. And if a centre were formed for the systematic investigation of the Hindu epic literature, the critical work required for the *Purāṇas* might well fall within the range of the same centre.

It is hardly necessary to add that the proposed 'Society' would also promote the critical study of the *Rāmāyaṇa*, and I see no reason why the final restoration of the original text of Valmiki's poem, which Professor Jacobi has proved to be quite practicable,<sup>2</sup> should not become a fact.

On all these grounds, I beg to propose that the Indian Section of the XIIth International Congress of Orientalists sanction the formation of a Sanskrit Epic Text Society whose aims might be summed up as follows:—

- (1) To raise the funds necessary for the accomplishment of the Society's work.
- (2) To inaugurate a systematic collection of MSS. of the *Mahābhārata*, and other texts relating to the Hindu Epic poetry from all parts of India.
- (3) To gather together and assist competent scholars who are willing to undertake the copying or collating of MSS. the editing or translating of any epic texts, or to contribute any critical or historical researches relating to these texts.

<sup>2</sup> See *Z. D. M. G.* Vol. 51, pp. 605 sqq.



- (4) To provide for and superintend the publication of texts, translations, or any treatises tending to further the objects of the Society.

I propose that the Indian Section of the Congress should (I.) appoint a Committee to take the necessary steps for the formation of a Sanskrit Epic Text Society, and (II.) express its view of the desirability of such a Society meeting with every possible financial support on the part of Governments, Academies and Learned Societies both in Europe, America, and especially in India.

A learned Hindu has recently told us<sup>3</sup> that "It is no exaggeration to state that the two hundred millions of Hindus of the present day cherish in their hearts the story of their ancient Epics. The Hindu scarcely lives, man or woman, high or low, educated or ignorant, whose earliest recollections do not cling round the story and the characters of the great Epics . . . Mothers in India know no better theme for imparting wisdom and instruction to their daughters, and elderly men know no richer storehouse for narrating tales to children, than these stories preserved in the Epics. No work in Europe, not Homer in Greece or Virgil in Italy, not Shakespeare nor Milton in

English-speaking lands, is the national property of the nations to the same extent as the Epics of India are of the Hindus. No single work except the Bible has such influence in affording moral instruction in Christian lands, as the *Mahābhārata* and the *Rāmāyana* in India." If that is so, and if indeed (as the same author assures us) these poems "have been the cherished heritage of the Hindus for three thousand years," and "are to the present day interwoven with the thoughts and beliefs and moral ideas of a nation numbering two hundred millions"—then, surely, any studies devoted to the Epics of ancient India deserve the most serious attention and the most eager support of the rulers of India. Nor should the assistance of Learned Societies in Europe and America be wanting in furthering the critical and historical researches connected with a work which, apart from containing some of the most interesting specimens of ancient poetry, is an invaluable storehouse of information about the history, religion, philosophy, the laws and customs, and the civilization of ancient India.

M. WINTERWITZ, PH.D.

Prag (Austria), June 1899.  
Deutsche Universität.

#### NOTES AND QUERIES.

##### HINDU SUPERSTITIONS IN THE CENTRAL PROVINCES.

1. Nail-parings are always thrown into some frequented place that they may be destroyed by the traffic. If they are thrown into a damp spot they will grow into a plant which will ruin the person from whose body they came. About twenty years ago there lived one Viraswāmi in Nāgpur, who is said to have been ruined by the accidental growth of a finger nail-paring in a flower-pot in his house.

2. When a new grindstone is bought, a handful of wheat must be ground on it and the flour sprinkled in circles on a road-way, so that passers-by may destroy them. This makes the stone to grind well in the future.

M. R. PEDLOW.

##### SEPOY.

HERE are some good early MS. references to this word.

1746. — Their strength on shore I compute 2000 Europeans Seapias and 300 Coffrees. — *Letter from Madras*, 9th Oct., in *Bengal Consultations*.

1746. — They surprised the camp with about 200 Europeans and as many seapias. — *Letter*

from Vizagapatam, 29th December, in *Bengal Consultations*.

1746. — Seapias 600. — *Op. cit.*

1746. — With some seapias and coffrees. — *Op. cit.*

R. C. TEMPLE.

##### THE TRADE IN ANDAMANESSE SLAVES.

THERE is an old story of a systematic slave trade in Andamanese with the Malay Peninsula all through the 18th and early 19th Centuries. The following interesting extract from the *Bengal Dispatches*, dated 26th April, 1792, is evidence of the trade:—

"Concerning the Officer of a French Merchant Vessel offering several Inhabitants of the Andamans for Slaves.

"We have read Captain Light's Letter of the 1st of April 1791, concerning an offer of Monsr. St. Croix, an Officer of a French Merchant Vessel, to some Natives, or others, from the Andamans, for sale, and approve of your having caused Copies of it to be sent to Europe to Colonel Montigny."

R. C. TEMPLE.

<sup>3</sup> Romesh Dutt, *Mahā-Bharata, The Epic of Ancient India, condensed into English Verse*, p. 125.



## NEW RESEARCHES INTO THE COMPOSITION AND EXEGESIS OF THE QORAN.

BY HARTWIG HIRSCHFELD, PH.D., M.R.A.S.

(Continued from p. 53.)

## CHAPTER VI.

## The Descriptive Revelations.

**D**ESCRPTIVE elements in older addresses — Object and scope of description — Models imitated — Lectures on the "Signs" — Analysis of *Sūra xvi.*

In the first proclamation, as we have seen, only one item out of the Biblical narrative for the Creation of the World was made use of — the one item essential for Muhammed's immediate requirements, *viz.*, the Creation of Man. It was not Muhammed's intention, however, to omit the rest of the narrative; he only reserved it for reproduction on later occasions, as the opportunity or need should arise. He would have neglected an ethical factor of great importance, had he omitted to remind his hearers how much gratitude they owed their Maker for having given them the means of living a comfortable life. So far from making such a mistake, he took the earliest opportunity of touching on this subject, immediately after the first proclamation had been made, although at first only in slight reference.

The descriptive element in the *Qorān*, therefore, is nearly as old as the book itself, although it is not particularly noticeable till the latter part of the declamatory period. It becomes more prominent in the narrative period, when Muhammed's style had lost the charm of novelty. It is impossible to draw a line clearly separating the descriptive from the preceding classes of revelations, since many verses of a descriptive character are interspersed among the narrative lectures. Yet those sermons, in which descriptions of Nature and its bounties form the foremost topic, are distinctly of later date.

Although divergent in character the descriptive revelations agree with the narrative revelations in one important point, that is, in the endeavour to demonstrate the "Signs of Allah," and to form another substitute for miracles which the Prophet was unable to perform. It seems that Muhammed wished to convey to his hearers, that as so many "Signs" of the divine omnipotence already existed, new ones could be dispensed with. The scope of descriptions being rather limited, the number of revelations of this class is smaller than of any previous one, but they also follow Biblical models and abound in repetitions.

Apart from the brief allusion to the Creation contained in the first proclamation, the oldest pieces of descriptive character are found in a few verses in the declamatory *Sūra lxxx.*<sup>16</sup>

24. But let man look unto his foods,
25. Verily we have poured the water out in torrents,
26. Then we have cleft the earth asunder,
27. And made to grow therefrom the grain
28. And the grape and the bay,
29. And the olive and the palm,
30. And gardens closely planted,
31. And fruits and grass —
32. A provision for you and your cattle.
- lxxvii. 25. Have we not made the earth to hold
26. The living and the dead
27. And set thereon firm mountains reared aloft, and given you to drink water in streams?

<sup>16</sup> See also *S. lxxvii.* 25 to 27.



I regard the last portion of *S. lxxix.*<sup>17</sup> which looks like a hasty recapitulation of Gen. Ch. I. as the first independent piece of this class. It speaks of heaven, night and dawn, the earth, water and pastures, man and beast.

*Sūra lxxi.* contains a rather original description of Nature ascribed by Muhammed to Noah. In spite of the narrative beginning, this chapter cannot be placed among the narrative revelations, because with the exception of the first few verses the rest of the *sūra* (the bulk of which is of descriptive character) reproduces a prayer<sup>18</sup> in which Noah tells of his unsuccessful endeavours to make his people believe in God.

The inner connection which exists between the first proclamation and the descriptive revelations of a much later period is unmistakably illustrated by *S. lv.*, which cannot be as old as Nöldeke believes it to be.<sup>19</sup> Now, for this new species of lectures Muhammed required new models. Having chosen for the preceding the form of prayer, he composed this *sūra* after the fashion of Ps. cxxxvi. with a refrain introduced gradually and repeated afterwards at the end of each verse. For a descriptive sermon Muhammed could only use few verses of the body of the Psalm, which I place in parallel columns with the corresponding verses of the *sūra*:

*The Sūra.*

4. The sun and the moon have their appointed time. 5. And the stars and the trees adore.
6. And the heavens, He raised them and set the balance.
9. And the earth He has set it for living creatures.

*The Psalm.*

8. The sun to rule by day: for, etc.
9. The moon and stars to rule by night.
5. To Him that by wisdom made the heavens.
6. To Him that stretches out the earth, etc.

The *sūra* gives a more comprehensive synopsis of the Biblical account of the Creation, and that is the reason, why the first proclamation is repeated, and, as a matter of course, placed at the beginning in the words: *AlRaḥmān* taught the *Qorān* (2) He created man, (3) taught him plain speech. — Another proof of the imitative character of the *sūra* is that the refrain does not speak of "Signs" but of "Bounties."<sup>20</sup> Part of the contents of the *sūra* are taken from another Psalm which will occupy our attention anon. When the material was quite exhausted,<sup>21</sup> Muhammed resorted again to pictures of hell and paradise.

The style adopted in *S. l.* is one of great contemplativeness on the Creation, interspersed with a narrative reminiscences,<sup>22</sup> which also afford an opportunity for the introduction of a fine metaphor.<sup>23</sup> Descriptions of Nature are adorned with pictures of the *Last Day* which, in this short *sūra*, is mentioned by not less than five different appellations.<sup>24</sup>

Another lecture on the "Signs" is *S. xlv.*, discoursing on the earth and the animated beings that move on it, on the change of night and day, the food sent down from heaven (through rain), and the wind. Dry land as well as sea, the hosts of heaven and earth which serve men, are all subjects which lend themselves to treatment in the usual style.

Nearly contemporaneous with this one is *S. xlii.*,<sup>25</sup> in the rather long introduction of which the "Arabic *Qorān*" (v. 5) is alluded to, and Divine Providence appears several times

<sup>17</sup> Also Nöldeke, *Q.* p. 87, regards this piece as the later portion of the *sūra*.

<sup>18</sup> Nöldeke, p. 95, sees in this *sūra* a fragment of a larger sermon.

<sup>19</sup> *Ibid.* p. 83; cf. Sprenger, II. p. 219, with the tradition connected with it. Verse 1 = xvi. 2, but *Rabbika* replaced by *AlRaḥmān*.

<sup>20</sup> The refrain is evidently nothing but the attempt of a rendition of *نِعْمَاتُكَ يَا رَبِّ*. The dual *نِعْمَاتُكَ* has no particular significance, and was only chosen on account of its yielding a rhyme to *Raḥmān*. Verse 7 recalls Isaiah xi. 6.

<sup>21</sup> Verse 58 contains a fine metaphor; see Ch. VIII.

<sup>22</sup> Verses 1 to 11, 14 to 15, 37.

<sup>23</sup> V. 15, see Ch. VIII.

<sup>24</sup> See Ch. IV.

<sup>25</sup> Verse 9, *لَيْسَ كَمِثْلِهِ شَيْءٌ*, cf. Exod. viii. 6, ix. 14, etc. — Verses 11 to 12, legislative. Verses 28 (cf. xlv. 3) and 31 begin with *وَمِنْ آيَاتِهِ*. — Verses 52 to 53, see Ch. V.



(vv. 18, 20, 23) as *Kalima*.<sup>26</sup> Both the *Kalima* (v. 45) and "Arabic Qorán" (v. 2) also appear in S. xli., of which several portions (vv. 8 to 11, 37 to 40) are descriptive, and contain, besides, a sketch of hell and paradise. The introduction treating of the "Arabic Qorán" is, in the course of the lecture, supplemented by a verse (44),<sup>27</sup> which is intended to explain more clearly an idea expressed some time before,<sup>28</sup> but it only makes it more obscure. It runs thus:—

"And had we made it a 'foreign Qorán,' they would have said: 'unless its signs be detailed [we will not believe]; is it foreign and Arabic?' Say: 'It is, for those who believe, a guidance and a healing; but those who do not believe, in their ears is dullness, and it is blindness to them. Those are called to from a far off place'."

The revelation seems to be an excuse for employing a certain number of foreign words in the "Arabic Qorán." Perplexity shuffles.

*Súra xxxv.*, being of a distinctly descriptive character, begins with the statement afterwards repeated, that Alláh makes the angels His messengers. This is nearly a literal translation of Ps. civ. 4. The same psalm is also re-echoed in other verses.<sup>29</sup> Similar topics, but in shorter form, are discussed in Ss. xxxii.,<sup>30</sup> lxvii., and xxv.<sup>31</sup> I mention the last two together, because their common superscription marks them both as hymns to the Creator.<sup>32</sup> In S. xxv., Muhammed replies to a charge that he was but an ordinary mortal eating food and visiting the fairs.<sup>33</sup> This charge was not imaginary, but seems to have been made repeatedly, since it is refuted twice (vv. 8 and 22) in this sermon. A final answer is not given until S. xxiii. 53,<sup>34</sup> in which messengers in general are bidden to "eat good cheer." Of this *súra* the first and last parts (vv. 1 to 22, 53 to 118) form one address, but vv. 27 and 34 show why the piece was inserted after v. 22.<sup>35</sup> From the more elaborate arguments employed we gather that this *súra* is later than xxv. The homily embodied in the last part (v. 98) consists only of repetitions, the most important of which is the attempt to demonstrate the Unity of Alláh by argument.<sup>36</sup>

Two verses of this part (99 and 100) contain expressions for exorcising ("I take refuge") Satanic influences, and give perhaps a clue to the placing of the Ss. cxiii. and cxiv.,<sup>37</sup> which are formulas of the same character and with the same commencement.

*Súra xvi.* marks the apogee of the descriptive revelations. It not only unites all descriptive recitations scattered through other sermons, but places them before the reader in a really

<sup>26</sup> See Ch. I., note II.

<sup>27</sup> From Beidhāwī's remarks we infer that the reading أَعْجَبْتِي is uncertain, as other authorities have أَعْجَبْتِي and أَعْجَبْتِي.

<sup>28</sup> See S. xvi. 198 and Ch. I. — The sense of the passage seems to be the following: Had we revealed the Qorán in a foreign tongue, their disbelief could not be greater than it is; cf. xvi. 165.

<sup>29</sup> E. g., v. 10, 13, 14. The two, three and four pairs of wings ascribed to angels are evidently modelled after Is. vi. 2 together with Ezech. i. 6. As to the paraphrastic imitation of Ps. civ. see below.

<sup>30</sup> The creation of the world in six days is also mentioned in xi. 9, l. 37, xxv. 60. As to v. 4 see lxx. 4 and Ch. IV.

<sup>31</sup> The expressions فَرَقَانِ and تَبَارَكَ (v. 1, cf. Geiger, l. c. p. 50) seem to be taken from the Jewish prayer called *Qiddish*.

<sup>32</sup> Verse 1: "Blessed be," etc., see lxxvii. 1; *ibid.* v. 5: With "lamps" cf. Gen. i. 16.

<sup>33</sup> The verses 8, 9 and 22 (cf. xxiii. 34) seem to be a justification directed against Exod. xxxiii. 28. Whether Muhammed was really expected to live for some time without food, is hard to say, but this seems to have been the case, and it is supported by a tradition of Bagh. (on v. 22) on the authority of AlDhahbī and Ibn Abbās, that the Qorēish reviled the prophethip of a man who consumed food. The matter is probably to be understood as follows: Some Meccan critic had a superficial knowledge of the statement that Moses had passed a certain time without food, and inferred from it that a prophet who could perform miracles, must also be able to dispense with eating and drinking.

<sup>34</sup> There are also other points of connection between the two *súras*; cf. xxiii. 1 to 11, and xxv. 64 to 77.

<sup>35</sup> Verse 21, نَأْكُلُون, cf. vv. 34, 35; v. 22, الْفَلَك, cf. vv. 26 to 29.

<sup>36</sup> Cf. verse 117, and Ch. II.

<sup>37</sup> Cf. S. xxiii. 99 to 100, xvi. 100, vii. 199.



artistic form. Muhammed must have bestowed much care on its composition, as it is beautiful, although not quite original; it is in fact an imitation of Ps. civ. with the verses differently arranged. We must naturally expect to see Muhammed adapt his rendering of the Psalm to the conditions of life in Arabia, as also to his particular theological purposes.<sup>38</sup> The latter are represented by a strong Moslim tendency, and teachings are inserted which are not to be found in the original. Those verses of the Psalm are therefore omitted which describe animals and plants unknown to Meccans. I place the verses side by side :

*The Sûra.*

2. He sends down the angels with the spirit<sup>39</sup> [which is part] of his *Amr* upon whom He will of His servants (to say): Give warning that there is no God but Me; Me therefore do ye fear!

3. He has created the heavens and the earth in truth! Exalted be He above that which they join with Him.

10. He it is Who sends down water from the sky, whence ye have drink, and whence the trees grow whereby you feed your flocks.

11. He maketh the corn to grow for you, and the olives, and the palms, and the grapes, and some of every fruit—*verily in that is a Sign unto a people who reflect.* 13. And what He has produced for you in the earth varying in hue, *verily in that is a Sign for a people who are mindful.* (See also vv. 69 to 71.)

12. And He subjected to you the night and the day, and the sun, and the moon, and the stars are subjected to His bidding. *Verily in that are Signs to a people who have sense.* 16. . . . and by the stars too are they guided.

14. He it is Who has subjected the sea, that ye may eat fresh flesh therefrom, and ye bring forth from it ornaments which ye wear; and thou mayest see the ships cleaving through it; and that ye may search after His grace, and haply ye may give thanks.

*The Psalm.*

4. He maketh His angels winds (*spirits*); His ministers a flaming fire.

2. Who covereth [Thyself] with light as with a garment, Who stretcheth out the heavens like a curtain.

5. Who laid the foundations of the earth, etc.

3. Who layeth the beams of His chambers in the waters; Who maketh the clouds His chariot; Who walketh upon the wings of the wind.

14. He causes the grass to grow for the cattle, and herb for the service of man, that he may bring forth food out of the earth. 15. And wine that maketh glad the heart of man, and oil to make [his] face to shine, and bread which strengthens man's heart.

19. He appointed the moon for seasons, the sun knoweth his going down. 20. Thou maketh darkness and it is night, wherein all the beasts of the Lord do creep forth.

25. This great and wide sea wherein are things creeping innumerable, both small and great beasts. 26. There go the ships, [there is] that Leviathan whom Thou hast made to play therein.

<sup>38</sup> Cf. S. xxxv. 1. — Verse 43 may serve to fix the date of the *sûra*, and probably refers to the isolation Muhammed's followers had to suffer for some time in Mecca, or to the emigration of a number of them to Abyssinia. As to the details see Sprenger, II. 128 sqq. — Verse 110 sqq. I regard (against Sprenger) as Medinian. الذين هاجروا refers to those who had shared the Hijra to Medina, but the piece was placed here on account of these two words. The verses 116 and 119 are nothing if not Medinian, since they were of no interest for a Meccan audience.

<sup>39</sup> Muhammed renders *rûh* by الروح, being unaware of the circumstance that الروح also means wind. Verse 1 being introduction, is Muhammed's own; the same is the case with vv. 6 to 8, bearing on the habits of travelling merchants.



15. And He has cast firm mountains on the earth lest it should move with you, and rivers and roads, haply ye may be guided. (See also v. 83.)

40. They swear by their most strenuous oath: Allāh will not raise up him who dies, etc. . . . 50. Do they not regard whatever thing Allāh has created, its shadow falls on the right or the left adoring God and shrinking up? 67. And Allāh sends down water from the sky and quickens therewith the earth after its death; *verily in that is a Sign to a people who can hear.* 72. God has created you, then He lets you die, etc.

44. Those who are patient and upon their Lord rely.<sup>40</sup>

51. Whatever is in the heavens and in the earth, beast or angel, adores Allāh, nor are they big with pride.

52. They fear their Lord above them, and do what they are bidden.

63. If Allāh were to punish men for their wrong-doing, He would not leave upon the earth a single beast, etc.

87. Do they not see the birds subjected in the vaults of the sky? none holds them in but Allāh, *verily in that is a Sign unto a people who believe.*

8. They go up by the mountains, they go up by the valleys unto the place which Thou hast founded for them. 18. The high hills a refuge for the wild goats, and the rock for the conies.

29. Thou hidest Thy face they are troubled. Thou takest away their breath, they die and return to their dust. 30. Thou sendest forth Thy spirit, they are created, and Thou renewest the face of the earth.

27. These wait all upon Thee, that Thou mayest give them their meat in due time.

33. I will sing unto the Lord as long as I live: I will sing praise to my God while I have my being.

34. My meditation of Him shall be sweet, I will be glad in the Lord.

35. Let the sinners be consumed out of the earth and let the wicked be no more. Bless thou the Lord, O my soul; praise ye the Lord.

12. By them the fowls of the heaven have their habitation, which sing among the branches.

17. Where the birds make their nest, [as for] the stork, the fir trees are her house.

Muhammed almost betrays the imitation in his own words; for he not only mentions the *Zuhur* (Psalms) "that had been sent down before" (v. 46),<sup>41</sup> but at the end of the sermon (v. 105) he, apparently without necessity, defends himself against the charge of plagiarism. The traditionists give a number of names as possible sources of this accusation, but it is useless to repeat their extravagant and unreliable tales on the point.<sup>42</sup> To conclude from Muhammed's words ("We know that they say: only a mortal man teaches him"), the rumours were only circulated secretly, but he was a match for his foes, and turned his knowledge of their suspicions into a prophetic faculty which made him acquainted with their slanderous whispers.<sup>43</sup>

It is quite in accordance with Muhammed's methods of preaching, that so fine a rhetorical performance should be repeated. Thus some descriptive portions of *S. xiii.*<sup>44</sup> not only recall

<sup>40</sup> *صبروا* = *صبروا* in the original which allows a conclusion as to how the Arab Jews pronounced *ص* and *د*; another instance of the same kind is *صبرهم*, vii. 156 = *صبر* (cf. Ch. V.).

<sup>41</sup> Verse 46 is to be joined to *نوحى اليهم* (v. 45), whilst the words *فاما لولا* as far as *نعمون* form a parenthesis.

<sup>42</sup> The traditions are collected by Spranger, II. 379 sqq. Cf. xxxvi. 76.

<sup>43</sup> See Ch. II.

<sup>44</sup> The *sūra* is one of those beginning with the "Sigas." According to Fihrist, p. 251, it is Medianian.



several imitations of verses of Ps. civ. quoted before, but supplement others which he had omitted. To the former belong the verses 2, 3, 4, 18.<sup>45</sup> Of the latter group are:

*The Sûra.*

13. He it is who shows you the lightning for fear and hope, and He brings up the heavy clouds.

14. And the thunder celebrates His praise, and the angels too for fear of Him, and He sends the thunder-clap and overtakes there-with whom He will.

*The Psalm.*

7. At Thy rebuke they flee, at the voice of Thy thunder they haste away.

32. He looketh on the earth and it trembles, He toucheth the hills and they smoke.

The first part of S. x. (vv. 1 to 57) belongs to those addresses which begin with a reference to the "Signs." A parable inserted here is also of descriptive character.<sup>46</sup> The piece next to it owes its place also to some descriptive verses, but seems to be of Medinian origin.<sup>47</sup>

The best sermon with text on the "Signs" is S. xxxi. (1 to 10, 19 to 34). The descriptions are of the usual style, but there is a piece inserted (vv. 11 to 18),<sup>48</sup> which interrupts the description and is altogether out of place. In v. 22 the speaker is advised not to take the unbelief of the infidels to heart, an advice repeated in the following sermon, S. xxxvi. (v. 76), which is thoroughly descriptive. The homiletic introduction includes a parable<sup>49</sup> of narrative character. After this follows a discourse on the "Signs" (vv. 33, 37, 41). New is the remark on the change of night and day as well as on the stations of the moon, and an observation on the eclipse of the sun.<sup>50</sup>

Now these three paragraphs (v. 33-36, 37-40, 41-44) greatly resemble strophes of four verses each though without metre. This lapse into old habits either revived the reproach that he was a poet, or Muhammed saw the danger in good time, and wished to prevent any misconception. He therefore declared (v. 69) that he had never learnt poetry, nor was it suitable for him. The verse mentioned above, advising him not to be grieved about disbelief, seems to stand in connection with this. Verse 78 has a historical background. Ubeyy b. Khalaf came to Muhammed with a decaying bone and asked who could quicken it. The affair seems to have caused some sensation, as several years later it was made the subject of an attack against the Qoreish by the Medinian poet Hassân b. Thâbit.<sup>51</sup>

The descriptive period further includes S. xxvii. 60 to 95 — an independent sermon;<sup>52</sup> further S. xxxix., the second part of which is a discourse on death. Some of these verses

<sup>45</sup> Verses 22 and 24, صبروا, and صبرتم respectively; see above.

<sup>46</sup> Verse 25, cf. Ch. VIII.

<sup>47</sup> Verse 58 [O ye men, now has come to you counsel from your Lord, etc.] is spoken in the style of an introduction to a sermon; cf. S. ii. l. — Verse 61, يفترون. cf. v. 76.

<sup>48</sup> This is of legislative character and in the form of admonitions addressed by Loqmân to his son (see Ch. VII.). The *sûra* derived its name from this piece which seems to have been placed here on account of the rhyme. Cf. Noldeke, p. 117, who only entertains doubt as to v. 13.

<sup>49</sup> V. 12 sqq., see Ch. VIII.

<sup>50</sup> Verse 39, cf. Ch. I. Palmer's translation of the verse is hardly correct. I believe Muhammed wished to express the idea that the movements of the sun and the moon were so well regulated, that it is the latter which "reaches" the former, and not vice versa. The commentators refer to the variety of the sphere. Bagh. وقيل الشمس ينبغي لها ان تدرت القمر لا تجتمع معه في فلك واحد ولا الليل سابق النهار لا يتصل ليل بليل لا يكون بينها نهار عمل.

<sup>51</sup> Hassân b. Shâbit, Diwan, ed. Tunis, p. 81, 2.

Ubeyy has acquired heresy from his father on the day when the Messenger detached himself from him.

Hast thou come to Muhammed with a rotten bone in order to give him the lie, being ignorant of his condition, etc.?

<sup>52</sup> Verse 64 — Ps. civ. 2; v. 72 — S. x. 66, xxxi. 22.



are regarded by Weil as interpolated.<sup>53</sup> The chronology of this *sūra* as well as S. xxx. is pretty distinctly fixed by two respective remarks on parables "struck" before (xxxix. 28, xxx. 58). The latter *sūra*, though commencing with an allusion to a defeat which the Byzantine army had suffered at the hand of Persians, is an elaborate homily on the "Sign," as seven verses commence with the words: To his Signs belong, etc.<sup>54</sup>

*Sūra* xxii. 1 to 13 and 62 to 71 are two fragments belonging to the descriptive group, whilst all the rest is Medinian. A certain connection between the two pieces is visible in vv. 3, 8, 67 respectively, where those who "wrangle about Allāh" are mentioned. Finally the verses ii. 158 to 162, although placed in a *sūra* commonly regarded as Medinian, has all the marks of the revelations of the descriptive Meccan period.<sup>55</sup>

## CHAPTER VII.

### The Legislative Revelations.

MEANING of the term — Relation of the legislative to previous periods — Loqmān — Laws given to mankind — Character of special laws promulgated in Mecca — Abrogation of Jewish ritual law.

The term "legislative" in this chapter applies to those passages in the Meccan portions of the *Qorān*, which are in any way admonitory, and are discussed chiefly with regard to the place they occupy in the book. In the same way as the Old Testament provided laws to meet all the requirements of the Israelites, so the *Qorān* forms the principal source of the moral, ritual and juridical codes<sup>56</sup> of the Faithful. The regulations dictated in Mecca are limited to such as could be given to a religious community which owed allegiance to temporal powers of a different kind. As it was impossible to foretell whether the Prophet would ever be in a position to wield a temporal sceptre, administrative ordinations are entirely excluded from Meccan revelations.<sup>57</sup> As regards ritual laws the Meccan period produced hardly any besides those relating to prayers and other forms of divine worship.

We have seen above that Moslim tradition itself places the descriptive revelations before those of legislative character, but this is not always rigidly adhered to. Some of the former, being mere recommendations, do not aspire to the authority of laws. The belief in Allāh and His Prophet is, of course, an injunction of the earliest date, but it appears in the nature of an axiom meant to carry conviction. Religious observance being of more practical character could not be expected until the former was firmly established in the minds of the believers.

The precepts which Muhammed thought fit to reveal in Mecca had long been under preparation, but it was impossible to promulgate them in anything like a systematic fashion as long as the struggle for the acceptance of the first maxims lasted. After all, the foregoing periods are nothing but a variety of endeavours to end this struggle. During this time the want of a religious code had to be supplied by the example set by the Prophet himself, or by his predecessors with whose stories believers were made acquainted. Nay, Allāh Himself serves as example by imposing mercy upon himself in the style of a commandment as it were (S. vi. 12).<sup>58</sup> In the same speech the Prophet is bidden to declare that he was *commanded* to be the first Moslim (v. 17). A second speech (v. 46 to 73) follows the same train of ideas. We

<sup>53</sup> Verses 31 to 32, 43, see Ch. XIII. Verse 31 is quite out of connection both with the preceding and following verses. The homily coming after it has no marked character, and is therefore difficult to fix. Perhaps vv. 74 to 75, the concluding words in particular, may help to place the portion somewhat nearer to the narrative period.

<sup>54</sup> Verses 19 to 24, 45.

<sup>55</sup> Nöldeke, p. 31, also regards the verses as Meccan.

<sup>56</sup> See Sachau, *Älteste Quellen des Muhammed*, Eschiz. The original meaning of *ḥikm* is "tenets of belief."

<sup>57</sup> The passage, vi. 118 to 121, is Medinian.

<sup>58</sup> The speech ends, v. 45, *الحمد لله رب العالمين*.



hear again "that Allāh has imposed mercy upon Himself."<sup>59</sup> The Prophet is ordered to state that he is forbidden to worship the idols of the Meccans,<sup>60</sup> but that he and his friends are commanded to be Moslems, to recite prayers, and fear Allāh (vv. 70 to 71).

An instance of how legislation was at first given in very small doses, is to be found in three verses attached to S. xciii.<sup>61</sup>

- v. 9. But as for the orphan, oppress him not,
- 10. And as for the beggar, drive him not away,
- 11. And as for the favour of thy Lord, discourse thereof.

The last verse is a reminiscence of the descriptive revelations.

It is indeed most interesting to observe how cautiously Muhammed proceeded to accustom his hearers to regular religious observance. He knew the characters of his friends sufficiently to perceive how dangerous it would be to overwhelm them with religious duties, and the following are instances of his attempts to achieve his object in a somewhat circuitous manner. In one sermon he describes the life of "the servants of Allāh," naturally in order to teach:—

- S. xxv. 64. And the servants of the Merciful are those who walk upon the earth lowly and when the ignorant address them, say: Peace!
- 65. And those who pass the night [adoring] their Lord in prostration and standing.
- 66. And those who say: O our Lord, turn from us the torment of hell, etc.
- 67. And those who when they spend are neither extravagant nor miserly, but who ever take their stand between the two.
- 68. And those who call not upon another god with Allāh, and kill not the soul which Allāh has forbidden, save deservedly, and do not commit fornication; for he who does that shall meet with a penalty.
- 72. And those who do not testify falsely, and when they pass by frivolous discourse, pass by it honourably, etc., etc.

The admonition addressed by Loqmān<sup>62</sup> to his son is nothing but a variation of the same endeavour. Being first himself reminded of the gratitude he owed to Allāh, this legendary sage instructs his son—in the fashion of the author of Proverbs, ch. I. to VII.—to believe in the Unity of God, to honour his parents, to lead a virtuous life, and to recite prayers; commandments which are all within the scope of religious prescriptions taught in Mecca. The piece which justifies reproduction runs thus:—

- xxxi. 11. And we did give unto Loqmān wisdom saying: Be grateful to Allāh; for he who is grateful to Allāh, is duly grateful for his own soul, and he who disbelieves, verily Allāh is independent, worthy of praise.

<sup>59</sup> S. vi. 54. Cf. the passage in the Talmud (Berakh. fol. 7<sup>vo</sup>): God prays. What prays He? R. Zutrā b. Tōbiyyāh says on behalf of Rāb: (He prays:) Be it my will that my mercy overcome mine anger; let my mercy prevail over my (other) attributes, that my conduct with my children be merciful and that I deal with them leniently.

<sup>60</sup> *Ibid.* 53, 67, 69; xvii. 80 to 87.

<sup>61</sup> These three verses do not belong to the preceding part of the *sūra*—from which they differ as to the rhyme—but are placed here on account of v. 6 to 8.

<sup>62</sup> Concerning the personality of Loqmān see Sprenger, I. 23 sqq. Besides Balaam, with whom he is identified on account of the synonymy of the names, also Job and a negro slave "with thick lips" serve to personate him in the opinion of various commentators. The name seems to me to be a corruption of *Soleimān*, the letter *s* being omitted. The introductory phrase, "we have given to Loqmān wisdom," is in favour of this suggestion as well as the resemblance of the whole speech to the first chapters of the Book of Proverbs. As to the fables ascribed to Loqmān see Derenbourg, *Fables arabe et français*. BerEs, 1840.



12. And when Loqmân said to his son while admonishing him: O my son, associate none with Allâh, for, verily, such association is a grave iniquity.
13. And we have commanded<sup>63</sup> man [to honour] his parents; his mother bore him with weakness upon weakness, and his weaning is in two years; be thankful to me and thy parents, for unto me [shall your] journey [be].
14. But if they strive with thee that thou shouldst associate with me that which thou hast no knowledge of, then obey them not, etc.<sup>64</sup>
15. O my son, verily if there were the weight of a grain or mustard seed and it were [hidden] in a rock, or in the heaven, or in the earth, Allâh would bring it [forth], etc.<sup>65</sup>
16. O my son, be steadfast in prayer, and bid what is proper, prevent what is objectionable,<sup>66</sup> be patient of what befalls thee, for this is due of the determined affairs.
17. And twist not thy cheeks proudly, nor walk in the land haughtily: verily, Allâh does not love every arrogant boaster.
18. And be moderate in thy walk and lower thy voice: verily the most disagreeable of voices is the voice of asses.<sup>67</sup>

Another variation is to be found in a series of admonitions given to mankind in general, although there can be no doubt, that Muhammed only had his small Moslim community in view. The sermon in question forms a part of S. vii., v. 28 to 56, and contains rules to be observed in connection with the places of public worship (v. 28 to 30<sup>68</sup>). But fearful, as it were, lest Believers should be discouraged by laws which might only be the forerunners of more arduous ones, Muhammed deemed it expedient to assure his friends that no soul should be burdened with more than it could bear (v. 40).<sup>69</sup> Yet he does not conclude the sermon without a warning to "call on your Lord humbly and secretly, not to do evil on earth, and to invoke Allâh with fear and earnestness" (v. 53 to 54).

There is hardly any group of legislative revelations in which the respect due to parents does not find a place. This forms the nucleus of a short lecture which was placed at the beginning of S. xxix. 1 to 12, and xli. 1 to 19.

It is not in the least surprising that Muhammed endeavoured to imitate the *Decalogue*, or, rather to adapt it to the requirements of Islâm. This has not only been recognized by European scholars,<sup>70</sup> but also by Muhammedan commentators. Discussing the *Decalogue* in his *Kitâb AlArâis AlTha'âlibi*<sup>71</sup> concludes with the remark that Allâh had also given it to Muhammed, and quotes the two places in which it is reproduced in the *Qorân*.

Of these two recensions the earlier seems to be that inserted in S. xvii., of which it forms the whole middle portion. The following reproduction of the chief part shows that several verses are nearly literally translated from the *Pentateuch*:—<sup>72</sup>

v. 23. Put not with Allâh another god, or thou wilt sit despised and forsaken.

Muhammed was so well versed in the subject, that he altered it freely, substituting for commands which were out of place in Arabia others of more practical value. The prohibition of murder gave

<sup>63</sup> This is the only recommendation introduced here by *وَوَصَّيْنَا*. It is repeated in S. xli. 14 to 16.

<sup>64</sup> Cf. Talmud Yebâm, fol. 5<sup>vo</sup> (with reference to Lev. xix. 3): It is the duty of each of you to honour me, etc.

<sup>65</sup> Cf. S. x. 62, xxxiv. 8.

<sup>66</sup> This phrase occurs here for the first time, but is very frequent later on, especially in Medianian *sûras*. Cf. *Mewâqif*, p. 331, and *Al Ghazâlî, Ihya'*, II. 207 *et seq.*

<sup>67</sup> See Ch. VIII.

<sup>68</sup> See Nöldeke, Q. p. 118.

<sup>69</sup> Cf. S. vi. 153, xxiii. 64.

<sup>70</sup> Sprenger, II. p. 484.

<sup>71</sup> Cod. Brit. Mus. Add. 18,508 fol. 139.

<sup>72</sup> See *Beiträge*, p. 19 *et seq.*



him an opportunity of denouncing the burying of female infants alive (v. 33),<sup>73</sup> and it is due to him that that barbarous custom was abolished. He forbade the spoliation of orphans, and ordained that agreements must be kept, true weights and measures must be given (v. 36 to 37), etc.

The second and more elaborate reproduction<sup>74</sup> is given, S. vi. :—

152. Say, Come! I will recite what your Lord has made inviolable for you (1) that you may not associate with him anything; (2) kindness to your parents; (3) and do not kill your children through poverty; . . . (4) and draw not nigh to hideous sins, either apparent or concealed; (5) and kill not the soul, which Allāh has made inviolable, save by right; that is what He has ordained you, haply you may understand.
153. (6) And draw not nigh unto the wealth of the orphan, save so as to better it, until he reaches full age! (7) and give weight and measure with justice . . . ; (8) and when ye pronounce, then be just, though it be the case of a relative; (9) and Allāh's compact fulfil ye; that is what he has ordained you, haply you may be mindful.
154. (10) That this is my right way, follow it thou and follow not various paths to separate ourselves from his way; that is what he has ordained you, haply you may fear.

The sentences are instructive not only for what they contain, but for what they omit. The omission of Exod. xx. 2 is not surprising, as it implies no commandment, and allusion to the exodus of Egypt is of still less use for Islām. The contents of verse 7 are rather against the spirit of Islām. Frequent enunciations of the name of Allāh formed and still form a powerful means of implanting belief in the hearts of the Faithful. Numerous traditions exist of the benefits derived from frequent repetition of the formula: There is no God beside Allāh. Finally, the law of Sabbath was not required.<sup>75</sup> It is not difficult to discover why Muhammed looked upon the Jewish Sabbath as a punishment for disobedience, and characterized it as being "laid upon those who disputed" (xvi. 125). The reason why a day of rest did not gain ground in Islām seems to be a social rather than a religious one. Although the creation of the world in six days is frequently mentioned in the *Qorān*, the interruption of work on the seventh day is as regularly omitted. In a country where agriculture is of small account, and hard work altogether unknown, a day of rest has no *raison d'être*. It is possible that some vague notion had reached Muhammed that among Assyrians the seventh day was called an "evil day" on which no work should be done.<sup>76</sup> In a Medianian revelation<sup>77</sup> Muhammed calls those, who

<sup>73</sup> Cf. S. vi. 138 (I. I. p. 58), vv. 118 and 119 containing regulations with respect to killing animals for food are Medianian.

<sup>74</sup> Seems to be an independent piece, and placed here on account of its beginning with *قُلْ*, like many other paragraphs of the *sūra*.

<sup>75</sup> Al Beidh. on S. xvi. 125: The celebration of the Sabbath and giving oneself up entirely to worship was incumbent upon those who contended with him, viz., their prophet. These are the Jews whom Moses had commanded to confine themselves (on this day) to worship, etc. Thus Al Beidh. refers *يوم* not to the Sabbath, but to Moses (see S. xli. 45 where *يوم* refers to the Sabbath, etc.). *كتاب* (I. I. p. 58), and evidently had Exod. xv. 24 in his mind. Rabbinic interpretation, as is well known, refers, *ibid.* v. 25, to the command of the Sabbath, and the words *w'shām nissāhā* reflect perfectly the idea which Muhammed had conceived on the celebration of that day. Cf. Bokh I. 224, a tradition according to Abu Huraira: *هذا يومهم الذي فرض عليهم*. The puerile character of the tradition speaks for its value. The Moslems, while adopting Friday as a day of public worship, lead both Jews and Christians. On the name *يوم الجمعة* see Beidh. on *Qor.* lxii. 9 (Medin.). It appears that the day of *al-darāba*, which is the ancient name for Friday, was kept as prayer-day before Islām. According to Beidh., Ka'b b. Lu'ayy gave the day that name, because people used to congregate on it, probably for mercantile purposes. Muhammed then retained both the ancient custom and the name. I regard S. xvi. 152 as Medianian, cf. ii. 61 and iv. 50.

<sup>76</sup> Cf. Schrader K. A. T. 2nd ed. p. 20.

<sup>77</sup> See S. iv. 50 and below.



celebrate the Sabbath, "cursed." He evidently formed his opinion from seeing that the Jews observed the Sabbath by abstaining from work on that day. While the spiritual side of the celebration remained hidden to him, he saw that it involved great inconvenience in domestic and public life, and impressed him as something very undesirable.<sup>75</sup> By singling out one day in the week, employed from time immemorial for gathering, as the day of public worship, he followed the Jewish and Christian customs to some extent. It is, however, very improbable that he chose Friday in order to eschew either the Saturday or the Sunday. Following the reproduction of the *Decalogue*, v. 155 seems to be a free rendering of Exod. xxxi. 18. The bounty attached to it formed evidently part of the same speech. V. 160 looks like a rebuke on the multitude of Christian sects, whilst v. 161 again returns to the *Decalogue*, being a kind of reflex of Exod. xx. 5 to 6.

(To be continued.)

### THE LADAKHI PRE-BUDDHIST MARRIAGE RITUAL.

(Translation and Notes.)

BY A. H. FRANCKE, LADAKH.


SOME time ago I published in *Mémoires de la Société Finno-ougrienne*, Helsingfors, some translations in German of folktales and of extracts from a Tibetan MS. relating to the *Késar-Myths of Western Tibet*. The publication of the *Marriage Songs of the Ladakhis* now undertaken is another step in the same direction. My object in these publications is to present means to the scientific world for unveiling the hitherto hidden treasures of the *Pre-Buddhist Religion of Tibet*. I was fortunate indeed to get hold of these wedding songs, just before they had vanished altogether. In Central and Upper Ladakh only mere reminiscences, are left of them, although the gorgeous dress of the *Nyopas* and the scene before the house are still in vogue. In Lower Ladakh the songs have been preserved much better, but a large portion of them have ceased to be intelligible to the people. Thus whilst the first nine of the songs I collected were, certain passages excepted, generally understood by the ordinary man, the latter half of the collection consists more or less of a succession of unintelligible sounds. The reason may be, that the wedding ritual proved too hard a trial on the patience of the party and was cut short in many cases.

The method of reading has been as follows. All the songs were dictated slowly by the leader of the *Nyopas* to the village Munshi of *Khalatse*, *Yeshes Rig 'adzin*, who wrote them down according to the actual sound. This copy proved to be very useful as far as *Yeshes Rig 'adzin* himself had understood the words. For disentangling the more obscure passages, however, the assistance of the mission schoolmaster of *Leh*, *Shamuel aByoridan*, and of other *Ladakhis*, possessed of common sense, had to be requisitioned. In this way, the first half of the collection has become fairly intelligible, whilst the latter half is still full of obscure passages.

It is necessary for the proper comprehension of these songs to direct the attention of the readers to the fact that the four points of the compass play a rather important rôle in the wedding songs, as well as in other *Pre-Buddhist literature* (*vide Ladakhi Songs No. XV.*). This



<sup>75</sup> See Sprenger, II. 482. The Jewish dietary law appeared to Muhammed likewise in the light of a chastisement for frowardness. Abstemiousness from so many articles of food as are tabooed by the Jewish law naturally appeared strange to a people whose supply was rather scanty, and did not despise fallen camels. This latter custom was abrogated by Muhammed in *Qor. vi. 146*, who also did away with several old usages connected with the eating of certain animals (see *vi. 143 to 147*). He further forbade the eating of animals over which, when being slaughtered, the name of Alláh had not been mentioned (*vi. 118 to 121*). Nöldeke, p. 119, regards this verse as misplaced. "As to the Jews," Muhammed adds (*v. 147*), "we have forbidden them to eat everything that has a solid hoof, and of oxen and sheep did we prohibit them to eat the fat, save what the backs of both do bear, or the inwards of what is mixed with bone" (*cf. S. xvi. 112*). Muhammed reveals here a close intimacy with details of the Code, which he could not have gained from his own knowledge of the *Pentateuch* alone. I therefore regard all those passages as *Medinian*.

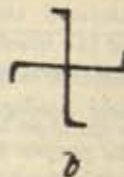
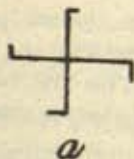


is very natural, for as has been pointed out in the paper on the Késar-Myths, the Pre-Buddhist Religion must have been a system of sun and nature worship. Now it is the sun, who creates the four points of the compass. All of them are different manifestations of the sun and hence the importance attached to them in a physiological religion. This fact suggests a solution to the difficult problem of explaining the ancient mystic emblem of the Bon Religion, *yyungdrung* . This emblem was in my view invented to represent the sun as the creator of East, South, West and North, the little mark at the end of each line indicating the inclination of the sun to proceed from one point to the other.

It is not an easy matter to give a satisfactory explanation of the word *yyungdrung*, but I dare to offer one, in favor of which there is at least some probability. In the Késar-Myths an old name of the sun, *bya Khyung dkrung nyima*, occurs. This means literally 'the bird Khyung, the disc, the sun.' In course of time the name *Khyung dkrung* may have degenerated to become *yyungdrung*, especially at a time when the idea of the emblem had ceased to be generally understood. Laws of sound cannot be of much avail here, because we are dealing with a proper noun. A few suggestions, however, might be made in favor of this derivation:— (1) a word *yyung* is absolutely non-existing and cannot be found in any dictionary; (2) there exist a few cases of *k* being dropped when preceding *y*, thus *kyang* = *yang*, *kyi* = *yi*, *kyin* = *yin*; (3) there is only a very slight, hardly perceptible, difference in the pronunciation of *dkrung* and *drung*. Of course, this explanation of the emblem rests on the theory, that it is always the same sun, which appears in the East every morning, and is in opposition to the theory shown in Song No. I. B. 7, *post*, p. 135. However, the study of other physiological religions has proved plainly that the most contradictory theories may dwell in them side by side.

While on the point of derivation; in regard to the change from *khyung* to *yyung*, it may be compared also to the following corresponding words in Jäschke's *Tibetan Dictionary*: *khyabpa-yabpa*, both 'cover' in Ladakhi; *'akhyarba-yarba*, both 'go astray'; *'akhyampa-yamyom*, both 'be unsteady'; *akhyigspa*, 'to fetter'; *yyigspa*, 'to be hindered'; *'akhyurba*, 'to be separated'; *yurba* or *yurma*, 'pull out' (weeds, etc.); *'akhyompa*, 'to wave'; *yompa*, 'be swinging', swing. The *y* of *yyung* and *yyigspa* is a silent prefixed letter and is often omitted in writing.

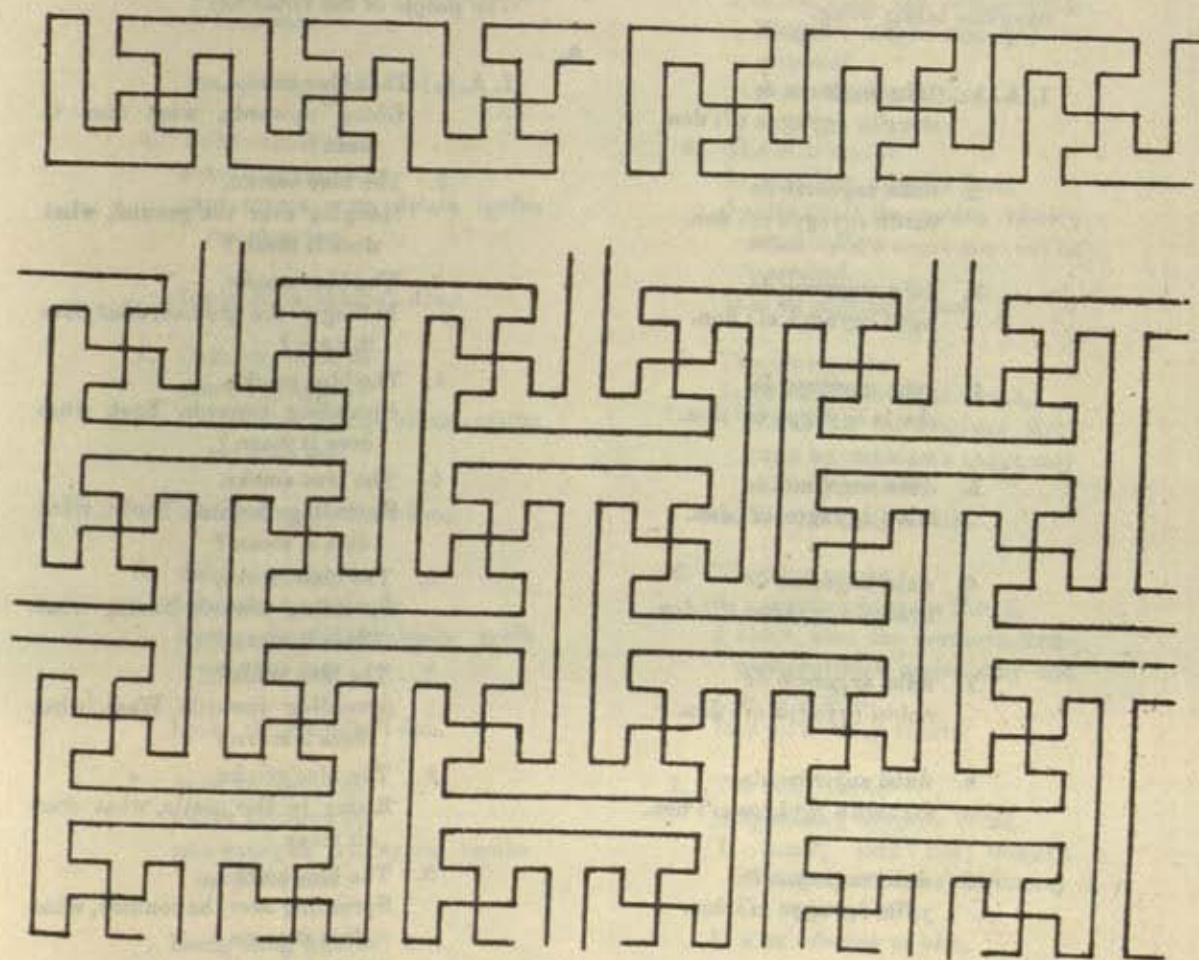
In the figures *a* and *b* below is shown the *yyungdrung* in both positions: the natural and the reversed. The Rev. A. W. Heyde of Ghûm tells me that the *yyungdrung* as a monogram is said to be composed of the two syllables  *sū* and  *ti*, *sūti* = *svasti*.



According to Waddell, *Lamaism in Tibet*, both the established Buddhist church and the adherents to the Bon Religion have a *yyungdrung* of their own, the one under *a* being the emblem of Lamaism, that under *b* of the Bon Religion. It is most natural that *a* alone should correspond to the actual course of the sun, for it is probably the older one. Indian Buddhist missionaries may have fought in vain against the use of the symbol, and finally agreed to introduce it into their own system by regarding it as a monogram, containing the three syllables *su asti* in Indian characters. Afterwards in opposition to Buddhism and at a time when the leading ideas of the once physiological religion had vanished, Bon priests made the emblem turn the other way; just as the custom of circumambulation was altered by the Bonpas from right to left.



In the drawings below showing the *yyundrung* as an ornament in Native houses in Khalatse, Lower Ladakh, it will be seen turned both ways.



However all this may really be, on the whole I feel obliged to say, that my explanation of the *yyundrung* must not be taken for more than a mere guess at its interpretation from a Tibetan point of view. I have no means in this remote land of collating these speculations with the mass of literature on the *svastika*.

The *yyundrung* is thought to be of great importance at the wedding ceremony, and both bride and bridegroom have to sit on carpets showing the emblem. It is indeed in universal use in this connection, for in a copy of the wedding songs, which I received a few days ago from Phyang the *yyundrung* is used for punctuation instead of the full stop.

#### Song No. I.<sup>1</sup>

bagma btangtsana nyopas sgola btangcessi  
glu'i<sup>2</sup> dpecha yin.

This is the book of the songs, which are sung  
at the door by the **Nyopas**, when the bride is  
given.

<sup>1</sup> The orthography of the songs has been brought into accordance with that of Ladakhi letter writing. In all doubtful cases, however, the spelling of the first MS. will be given.

<sup>2</sup> A *chungba* is indicated by an apostrophe.



om bkrashispar gyurcig, bkrashis bdeblags  
dang ldanpar gyurcig.

nangmas btang 'adug.

Om, may you be blessed ! May the blessing  
come unto you speedily !

The people of the house say :

## A.

I. A. 1. duba sngonmo de  
stengdu rgyugpa ci'i don.

2. duba sngonmo de  
bardu rgyugpa ci'i don.

3. duba sngonmo de  
'ogtu rgyugpa ci'i don.

4. duba sngonmo de  
sharla rgyugpa ci'i don.

5. duba sngonmo de  
lhoru rgyugpa ci'i don.

6. duba sngonmo de  
byangda rgyugpa ci'i don.

7. duba sngonmo de  
nabtu rgyugpa ci'i don.

8. duba sngonmo de  
mkhardu rgyugpa ci'i don.

9. duba sngonmo de  
yulla rgyugpa ci'i don.

10. duba sngonmo de  
grongdu rgyugpa ci'i don.

I. A. 1. That blue smoke,  
Rising upwards, what does it  
mean ?

2. The blue smoke,  
Hanging over the ground, what  
does it mean ?

3. The blue smoke,  
Falling to the ground, what does  
it mean ?

4. The blue smoke.  
Spreading towards East, what  
does it mean ?

5. The blue smoke,  
Spreading towards South, what  
does it mean ?

6. The blue smoke,  
Spreading towards North, what  
does it mean ?

7. The blue smoke,  
Spreading towards West, what  
does it mean ?

8. The blue smoke,  
Rising to the castle, what does  
it mean ?

9. The blue smoke,  
Spreading over the country, what  
does it mean ?

10. The blue smoke,  
Spreading over the village, what  
does it mean ?

## B.

I. B. phyimas landu.

1. duba sngonmo de  
stengdu rgyugpa de  
lhai dbangpo rgya bzhinla rgolba  
ma zhus sam

bsangshug phulba'i don.

2. duba sngonmo de  
bardu rgyugpa de  
btsan ama skyabs bdunla rgolba  
ma zhus sam

bsang shug phulba'i don.

I. B. People outside [the *Nyopas*] answer :

1. The blue smoke  
Rises upwards,  
I think, that the Lord of Heaven,  
dBangpo rgyabzhin's anger  
may not be provoked,  
It is an offering to him.

2. The blue smoke,  
Is hanging over the earth,  
I think, that the Earth-Mother,  
skyabsbdun's anger may not  
be provoked,  
It is an offering to her.



- |                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>3. duba sngonma de<br/>'ogtu rgyugpa de<br/>klurgyal lcogpola rgolba ma<br/>zhus sam<br/><br/>bsang shug phulba'i don.</p>        | <p>3. The blue smoke<br/>Is falling to the ground,<br/>I think, that the Water-King,<br/>lCogpo's anger may not be<br/>provoked,<br/>It is an offering to him.</p>             |
| <p>4. duba sngonmo de<br/>shardu rgyugpa de<br/>shar rdorje sems dp'ala rgolba<br/>ma zhus sam<br/><br/>bsang shug phulba'i don.</p> | <p>4. The blue smoke<br/>Is spreading towards East,<br/>I think, that the eastern rDorje<br/>sems dp'a's anger may not be<br/>provoked,<br/>It is an offering to him.</p>      |
| <p>5. duba sngonmo de<br/>lhoru rgyugpa de<br/>lho rinchen byung ldanla rgolba<br/>ma zhus sam<br/><br/>bsang shug phulba'i don.</p> | <p>5. The blue smoke<br/>Is spreading towards South,<br/>I think, that the southern Rin-<br/>chen byungldan's anger may<br/>not be provoked,<br/>It is an offering to him.</p> |
| <p>6. duba sngonmo de<br/>byangdu rgyugpa de<br/>byang donyod grubpala rgolb<br/>ma zhus sam<br/><br/>bsang shug phulba'i don.</p>   | <p>6. The blue smoke<br/>Is spreading towards North,<br/>I think, that the northern Don-<br/>yodgrubpa's anger may not<br/>be provoked,<br/>It is an offering to him.</p>      |
| <p>7. duba sngonmo de<br/>nubtu rgyugpa de<br/>nub snangba mth'ayasla rgolba<br/>ma zhus sam<br/><br/>bsang shug phulba'i don.</p>   | <p>7. The blue smoke<br/>Is spreading towards West,<br/>I think, that the western<br/>sNangba mthayas' anger may<br/>not be provoked,<br/>It is an offering to him.</p>        |
| <p>8. duba sngonmo de<br/>mkhardu rgyugpa de<br/>rtselha snyanpola rgolba ma<br/>zhus sam<br/>bsang shug phulba'i don.</p>           | <p>8. The blue smoke<br/>Is rising to the castle,<br/>I think, that rTselha snyanpo's<br/>anger may not be provoked,<br/>It is an offering to him.</p>                         |
| <p>9. duba sngonmo de<br/>yulla rgyugpa de<br/>yulthsa snyanpola rgolba ma<br/>zhus sam<br/>bsang shug phulba'i don.</p>             | <p>9. The blue smoke<br/>Is spreading over the country,<br/>I think, that Yulthsa snyanpo's<br/>anger may not be provoked,<br/>It is an offering to him.</p>                   |
| <p>10. duba sngonmo de<br/>grongla rgyugpa de<br/><br/>phalha snyanpola rgolba ma zhus<br/>sam<br/>bsang shug phulba'i don.</p>      | <p>10. The blue smoke<br/>Is spreading over the peasants'<br/>[houses],<br/>I think, that Phalha snyanpo's<br/>anger may not be provoked,<br/>It is an offering to him.</p>    |



## Notes on the Tibetan Text.

*Nyopa*, buyer, because the bride was bought in ancient times. The salutation in classical language *Om ōkrashispar*, etc., is exchanged after each strophe, but will not be repeated in these pages.

I. A. In all verses *ci don* means literally: it is the meaning of what? II. B. As regards the meaning of names and general position of the heads of the Pre-Buddhist cosmology, see my paper on the Késar-Myth in *Mémoires de la Société Finno-ougrienne*, 1900, No. XV. The syllable *sam* I was first inclined to translate by 'or,' but people told me, that they understood it to mean 'think,' in favour of which might be pointed to the people's response: Well thought, you mighty friends. In v. 4, 5, 6, and 7 the gods, who govern the four directions, are mentioned.

They are the properly Tibetan *lōkapālas*. In Lamaism three of them have become *Dhyānibuddhas*, whilst *rDorje sems dp'a* has become their president. That their relationship to the four points of the globe has not yet quite been lost in Lamaism, is shown by the *Padmathanyig*, see Grünwedel, *Mythologie des Buddhismus*, pp. 98, 99.

The names in literal translation mean:—  
4. 'The thunderbolt with the courageous soul.'  
5. 'The producer of great price.'  
6. 'Fulfiller of the aim, he has.'  
7. 'Eternal light.' With the exception of 6, all the names point plainly to the different manifestations of the sun. 7 in particular goes back to the idea, that the West is the receptacle of all the suns, which have been born up to the present day. This idea is too natural a one to have been imported from Persia. Instead of *ma zhus* the original rendering was probably *ma zhu*, the imperative being used for the optative. 8. *rTselha*, god of the summit. 9. *Yulthsa*, village idol. 10. *Phalha*, god of the fathers, i. e., family.

## Notes on the English Translation.

It might be well to say a few words about the scene, which forms the background of the songs. The *Nyopas* (i. e., friends of the bridegroom, who were sent to buy the bride) come on horseback and clad in gorgeous dress (vide Plate) before the house of the bride and ask for entrance. This is refused to them unless they are able to answer certain questions. All the people of the house are armed with sticks and the *Nyopas* are beaten unmercifully as soon as they fail to prove their respectable origin by answering the questions satisfactorily. The people of the house light a fire of the wood of the pencil cedar and concerning the smoke of this the first questions are asked.

After the questions regarding the principal deities have been settled, in 8, 9, and 10 the local deities come in. Though in ancient times idols do not seem to have had a place in the Bon Religion, we can see how the idea gradually crept in. As we know from the Késar-Myths, the *lha's* or gods used to visit the earth frequently. High hills became known as places of the gods' descent, and to honour them properly, white altars were erected. By and by these altars or *lhatho's* were considered as being the dwelling places of certain *lha's* and at last the idea was developed, that wherever a *lhatho* was erected, a *lha* would soon take his seat. So we have a *lha* on the hill (near the castle) in 8, and the family (father) *lha* in 10. In 9 the word *thsa* might point to a rough idol, compare Jäschke's *Dict. thsathsa*. All of them have the epithet *anyanpo* = well sounding.

## Song No. II.

## A.

II. A. legs bsamis dbangi nyebo.  
nangmas.

1. phuru yar yzigs 'ang  
gangs chu dkarpo de  
su dang ganggi chang.

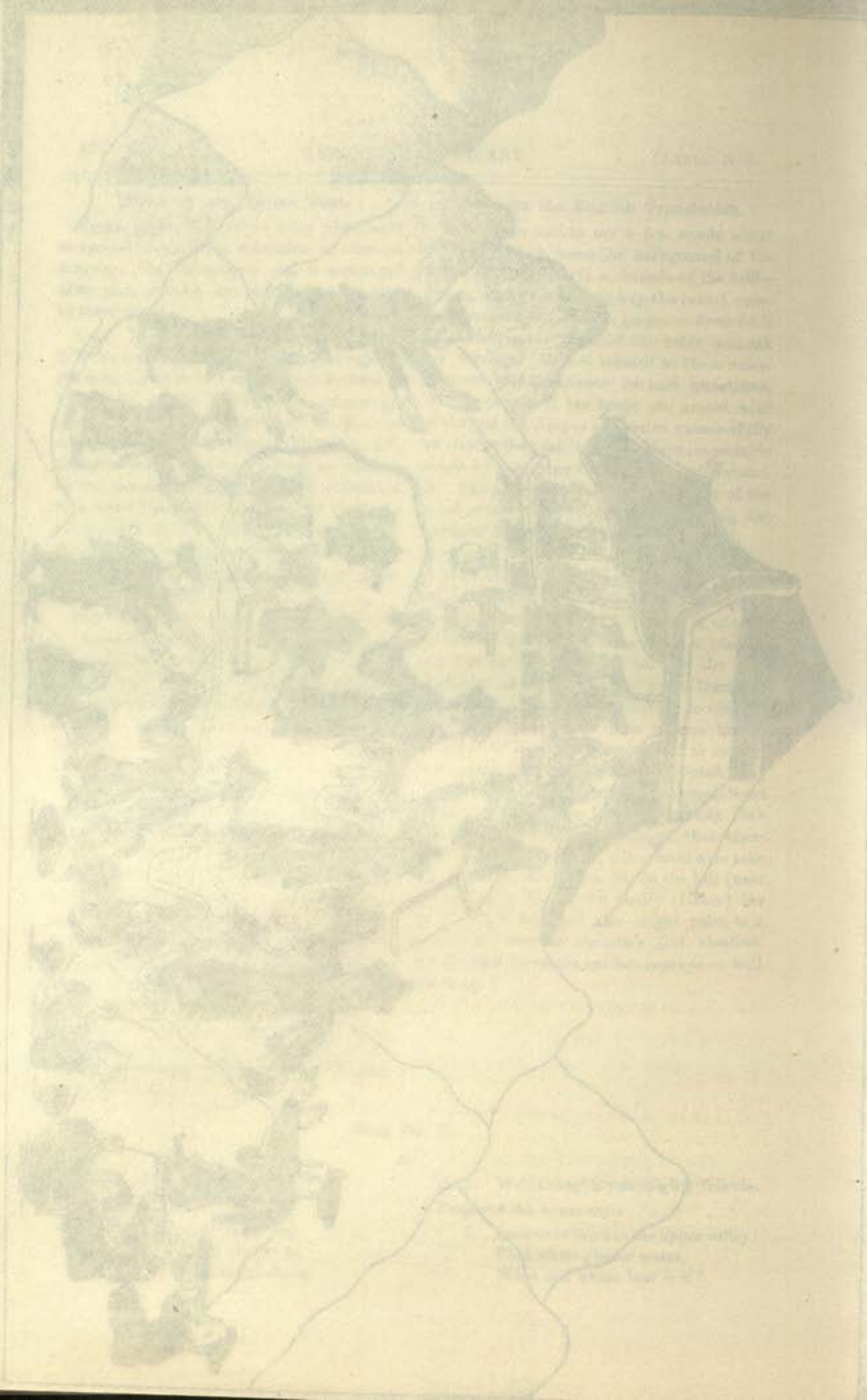
II. A. Well thought, you mighty friends.  
People of the house say:

1. Look over there to the upper valley!  
That white glacier water,  
What and whose beer is it?











2. *yyasla yar yzigs 'ang*  
*yy'a chu khral khrol de*  
  
*su dang ganggi chang.*
3. *mdoru yar yzigs 'ang*  
*ytsang chab sngonmo de*  
*su dang ganggi chang.*
4. *yyonla yar yzigs 'ang*  
*chamig kyal kyil de*  
*su dang ganggi chang.*
5. *sbrulngo ma chabrkyan nangdu*  
  
*yang dkar naskyi chang*  
*su dang ganggi chang.*

2. Look over there to the right!  
That foaming water among the  
stones.  
What and whose beer is it!
3. Look over there below!  
That blue river water,  
What and whose beer is it?
4. Look over there to the left!  
Those wells here and there,  
What and whose beer are they?
5. And in this large jar with the  
snake's head  
The beer [made] of white barley,  
What and whose beer is this?

## B.

Nyopas landu.

II. B. 1. *phura yar yzigs 'ang*

*gangs chu dkarpo de*  
*dar sing ysoba'i chang.*

2. *yyasla yar yzigs 'ang*  
*yy'a chu khral khrol de*  
  
*shaphran ysoba'i chang.*
3. *mdoru yar yzigs 'ang*  
*ytsang chab sngonmo de*  
*nyaphran ysoba'i chang.*
4. *yyonla yar yzigs 'ang*  
*chumig kyal kyil de*  
*ma zhing ysoba'i chang.*
5. *sbrulngo ma chab rkyanla*  
  
*yang dkar naskyi khuba de*  
*nyo 'am spun bdungyi chang.*

## Notes.

A. 2. *yyachu*, this word is used here, so people tell me, for water with stones, not for stagnant water, *khralkhrol*, noisy. 4. *kyal-kyil* scattered about. 5. *ma*, mother, used for everything large, here the large jar.

B. 4. *ma zhing*, motherfield, a very fertile field. Instead of *kyalkyil-parpur* is also used in the same sense.

The Nyopas answer:

II. B. 1. Look over there to the upper valley!

That white glacier water  
Is the beer, nourishing the  
ice-lion.

2. Look over there to the right!  
That foaming water among the  
stones  
Is the beer, nourishing the young  
deer.
3. Look over there below!  
That blue river water  
Is the beer, nourishing the little  
fishes.
4. Look over there to the left!  
Those wells here and there  
Are the beer, nourishing the  
mother-fields.
5. And in this large jar with the  
snake's head,  
The fluid [made] of white barley  
Is the beer of the Nyopas or the  
seven brethren.

## Notes.

A. 5. The mouth of the jar is formed like a snake's head. B. 1. The ice-lion with the blue locks [or mane] was originally the glacier itself, later on it developed into a fabulous being, which was thought to live there. 5. The number of the Nyopas ought to be seven.



## Song No. III.

## A.

III. A. snyan ysanpar mdzodcig.

1. dgung dang dbyibskyi mjalthsul  
de

su dang ganggis byas.

2. shar dang nubkyi mjalthsul de  
su dang ganggis byas.3. lho dang byanggi mjalthsul de  
su dang ganggis byas.4. steng dang 'oggi mjalthsul de  
su dang ganggis byas.5. phu dang mdoyi mjalthsul de  
su dang ganggis byas.6. mkhar dang yulgyi mjalthsul de  
su dang ganggis byas.7. yzhis dang ynaskyi mjalthsul de  
su dang ganggis byas.8. phyi dang nanggi mjalthsul de  
su dang ganggis byas.

III. A. Now listen with your ears!

1. The existence of the high heaven  
and of the forms [plants,  
animals].By whom and how was it  
created?2. The existence of East and West,  
By whom and how was it  
created?3. The existence of South and  
North,  
By whom and how was it  
created?4. The existence of height and  
depth,  
By whom and how was it  
created?5. The existence of an upper and a  
lower valley,  
By whom and how was it  
created?6. The existence of castle and  
village,  
By whom and how was it  
created?7. The existence of hearth and  
home,  
By whom and how was it  
created?8. The fact, that some people are  
outside and some inside,  
By whom and how was it  
created?

## B.

phyimas landu.

III. B. 1. dgung dang dbyibskyi mjalthsul  
de

nyi zla nyiiskyis byas.

2. shar dang nubkyi mjalthsul de  
khri ydugs nyimas byas.3. lho dang byanggi mjalthsul de  
zla mthsan dkarpos byas.

The Nyopas answer:

III. B. 1. The existence of the high  
heaven and of the forms  
Was created by sun and moon.2. The existence of East and West  
Was created by the sun, the  
umbrella of the throne.3. The existence of South and  
North  
Was created by the Moon, the  
whitener of the night.



4. steng dang 'oggi mjalthsul de  
sbang char zilbus byas.

5. phu dang mdoyi mjalthsul de  
skyeser<sup>3</sup> rlungpos byas.

6. mkhar dang yulgyi mjalthsul de  
rgyal dang blongyis byas.

7. yzhis dang ynaskyi mjalthsul de  
ynyendrung rnamskyis byas.

8. phyi dang nanggi mjalthsul de  
nyo'am spun bdangyis byas.

#### Notes.

In the original *mjalthso* is given instead of *mjalthsul*, which is unintelligible. See more examples for elision of *l* at the end of a syllable in my *Ladākhī Grammar*, laws of sound 4. *dbyibs* is a word, not so easily understood, two kinds of *dbyibs* are mentioned in XIII., they are *nammkha*, sky, heaven, and *chos*, religion. B. 5. *skyeser*, name of the wind god. May be either *skyegsar*, the reborn one, see Kesar-Myth, or *skyebser*, producer of coolness.

#### Song No. IV.

byonrabs yin.

IV. A. 1. 'adir byon rnams shargyi gling-  
nas yongtsana  
shar phyogs rgyalpo suzhig  
bzhugs

bran dang 'akhor yyog cila dkar  
dbyibs dang chalugs cinda 'adra.

2. lhoyi phyogs nas yongtsana

lho phyogs rgyalpo su zhig  
bzhugs

bran dang 'akhor yyog cila dkar  
dbyibs dang chalugs cinda 'adra.

4. The existence of height and depth  
Was created by the dewy soaking  
rain.

5. The existence of an upper and a  
lower valley  
Was created by *skyeser*, the wind.

6. The existence of castle and village  
Was created by the king and the  
ministers.

7. The existence of hearth and home  
Was created by you, our friends.

8. The fact, that some people are out-  
side and some inside,  
Was created by the *Nyopas*, the  
seven brethren.

#### Notes.

A. 8. This question refers to the scene created by the arrival of the *Nyopas*. B. 2. The sun is often called an umbrella on account of his circular shape. 3. Though the moon as representative of the night can be made to account for the North, it is difficult to see her relation to the South.

B. 4. Perhaps on account of the fact, that clouds show great varieties of altitude. 5. A strong draught is felt in every valley.

#### A.

This is about the origin [of the *Nyopas*].

IV. A. 1. When you came here from the  
eastern country,  
Who was king there in the East?

Why may we call his subjects and  
servants white?

What is their shape and custom  
like?

2. When you came here from the  
southern country,

Who was king there in the  
South?

Why may we call his subjects and  
servants white?

What is their shape and custom  
like?

<sup>3</sup> Having been questioned meanwhile by Regierungsrat Dr. E. Schlägintweit about the equation *Kesar* = *skyegsar*, I wish to state the following facts: This equation was not worked out by myself, but received ready made from the natives, who explain the name in this way. According to a letter from Rev. Fr. Peter, Kyelang, the popular pronunciation of the same name is *Kyesar* in Lahoul. In a collection of popular songs which I received from Phyang three days ago, the king's name is invariably spelled *Kyesar*. In Leh ordinary people pronounce the name *Kesar*, but educated people, who know the myths from the epics, pronounce it *Gesar*. All the changes from *Kyesar* to *Gesar* can be accounted for, see my *Ladākhī Grammar*, Introduction, *Kyirno* = *girma*.



3. kyed rnama nubkyi glingnas yong-  
stsana  
nubphyogs rgyalpo su zhis bzhugs  
bran dang 'akhor 'gyog cila dkar

dbyibs dang chaluḡs cinda 'adra.

4. kyed rnama byanggi glingnas yong-  
stsana  
byangphyogs rgyalpo su zhis bzhugs  
bran dang 'akhor 'gyog cila dkar

dbyibs dang chaluḡs cinda 'adra.

phimas landu.

- IV. B. 1. ngacag nyebo rnama shargyi glingnas  
yongstsana  
sharphyogs rgyalpo yul 'akhor srung  
bran dang 'akhor 'gyog chosla dkar

dbyibs dang chaluḡs bdelegs 'adug  
sharna khri 'yduḡs nyima mchis

skad cig 'adrina dela dris.

2. nga nyebo lhoyi glingnas yongstsana  
lho phyogs rgyalpo 'aphags skyed  
bzhugs  
bran dang 'akhor 'gyog chosla dkar

dbyibs dang chaluḡs bdelegs 'adug  
lhona 'abru sna 'adzommo dg'a

skad cig 'adrina dela dris.

3. nga nyebo nubkhyi glingnas yong-  
stsana  
nub phyogs rgyalpo spyang mig bzang  
bzhugs  
bran dang 'akhor 'gyog chosla dkar

dyibs dang chaluḡs bdelegs 'adug  
nubna sman sna 'adzommo 'adug

skad cig 'adrina dela dris.

3. When you came here from the  
Western country,  
Who was king there in the West?  
Why may we call his subjects and  
servants white?  
What is their shape and custom like?
4. When you came here from the  
northern country,  
Who was king there in the North?  
Why may we call his subjects and  
servants white?  
What is their shape and custom like?

B.

The Nyopas answer:

- IV. B. 1. When we came here from the eastern  
country,  
**Yul 'akhor srung** was king there in  
the East.

For the sake of their religion we may  
call his subjects and servants  
white.

Their shape and custom are good.

In the East there dwells the sun, the  
umbrella of the throne.

If you want to hear some news, ask  
him!

2. When we came here from the southern  
country,  
**'aPhagskyed** was king there in the  
South.

For the sake of their religion we may  
call his subjects and servants  
white.

Their shape and custom are good.

In the South they enjoy all kinds of  
grain.

If you wish to hear some news, ask  
that!

3. When we came here from the western  
country,  
**sPyangmig bzang** was king there in  
the West.

For the sake of their religion we may  
call his subjects and servants  
white.

Their shape and custom are good.

In the West there are all kinds of  
medicines.

If you wish to hear some news, ask  
them!



4. ngacag nyebo rnam byanggi  
glingnas byongstsana  
byang phyogs rgyalpo 'aphags  
skyed bzhangs  
bran dang 'akhor yyog chosla  
dkar
- dbyibs dang chalugs bdelegs  
'adug  
byangna thsos sna 'adzommo  
'adug  
skad cig 'adrina dela dris.

## Notes.

A. 1, etc. *cin da*, ought to be spelt according to the views of Ladakhis *ci mda*, *mda* (or perhaps 'ada) meaning 'about.' The names of the kings mean B. 1. protector of the country. 2 and 4. the high-born one. 3. good eye. Very likely the original name of 4 had been lost and that of 2 was inserted instead. Each verse may also have a seventh concluding line: *ngacag nyebo rnamla skadsha bshadrgyu med*, we friends do not know any news; 'adzommo = 'adzompo, plentiful. Instead of *bdelegs* the original has *bdelegs*.

4. When we came here from the  
northern country,  
'aPhagsskyed was king there in  
the North.  
For the sake of their religion we  
may call his subjects and ser-  
vants white.  
Their shape and custom are good.
- In the North there are all kinds  
of dyes,  
If you wish to hear some news,  
ask them.

## Notes.

A. 1, etc. White is the colour of the lha's and of all good things. B. As regards the products of the different countries, they are mentioned in about the same manner in *Ladakhi Songs* No. XV. Harvest festival at *Skyurbuchan*. They are perhaps more of a practical than of a mythological interest.

The three names, given in this song, do not seem to be of Tibetan origin. They are probably the Tibetan names of the Indian *lôkapâlas*. Though there can be no doubt as to the pre-buddhist origin of this song as a whole, the names of the kings may be later Lamaist interpolations. I am rather inclined to believe, that an ancient version of this song had the names of those kings, who actually reigned in the respective regions many years ago. In this connection it may be added, that in Song No. X., where the four points of the compass come in again, actual geographical kingdoms, for instance China and India, are mentioned. Regarding the names, given in IV., compare Grünwedel, *Mythologie des Buddhismus*, p. 181; *epyanmig bzang*, instead of *mig mi bzang*, is probably a corruption, as it does not correspond to the Indian *virûpâksha*.

## Song No. V.

## A.

berrabs yin.

phyimas.

- V. A. 1. shing stagpa skyerpa shugpa  
ysum
2. de ysum shing dang ma rdung-  
shig

This is about the sticks.

The Nyopas say:—

- V. A. 1. The birch, the alp-willow and  
the cedar,
2. With sticks of these three kinds  
of wood do not beat us!



3. de ysum shing dang rdung zerna
  4. mgoyi ldem 'achagua ldem 'achag  
stong dang len
  5. luskyi phe ralna pheral stong  
dang len
  6. anyangyi yu 'achagna yu 'achag  
stong dang len
  7. 'oggi sga 'achagna sga 'achag  
stong dang len.
- legs bsams dbanggi nyebo.

## B.

nangmas landa

- V. B. 1. bdaggi lagtu yodpai shing yu  
lcang ldempa 'adi
2. 'akhrungsa rgyagar yuldu 'akh-  
rungs
3. thsarsa bodyul dbussu thsar
4. lcugstod serpo yseria yod
5. rtsemo sngonmo yyula byas
6. lhayi dbangpo rgya bzhinnas
7. lcaga rgyabpai bk'a khrol cig
8. 'adila bk'alang yang dagpa zbig  
yung zerna
9. nyi zlai buzbig 'abrangs
10. zla skar mdundu mchis
11. don ngan phugssu 'akhrugs
12. phu ngan duba che
13. mgron ngan ringdu mchis
14. rinchen dbyugpas char cig phob
15. nam bz'a rincangyi ldurcig  
phob.

3. If you beat us with these three  
kinds of wood,
  4. Breaking our helmets, you must  
return them a thousandfold,
  5. Hurting our body, we shall  
return it a thousandfold,
  6. Breaking our earrings, you must  
return them a thousandfold,
  7. Breaking our saddles, you must  
return them a thousandfold!
- Well thought, you mighty  
friends!

People of the house say:—

- V. B. 1. This elastic stick of the tur-  
quoise willow, which is in my  
hand,
2. Arose in India, its birth-place.
3. It grew in dBus in Tibet, its  
growing place.
4. Its flexible yellow upper half  
looks like gold.
5. Its blue tip was made of tur-  
quoise.
6. By the king of the gods, rGya  
bzhin,
7. [There was issued] an order to  
beat [with it].
8. If you ask, what holy prophecy  
he gave regarding it,
9. 'A son of sun and moon may  
follow [you]!
10. The moon and the stars may be  
before [you]!
11. Bad speech ought to be blamed.
12. If [the fire] is badly blown,  
there is much smoke.
13. A bad guest be far away!
14. Now let go down a rain [of  
blows] with the costly sticks.
15. Beat them on their costly dress!



## Notes.

A. 4. *Idem*, said to be the golden hat of the Nyopas, is called *Idem* either on account of its stiff shape or because of its being an emblem (allegory) of the sun. As will have been noticed in the preceding songs, the Nyopas have to play the part of the sun god. 5. *phe* = *phyé*, perf. tense, of 'abgedpa, to open, thus 'if you beat an opening of the body, "a wound," the verb being used as a noun.

B. 3. *thasara*, finishing place, when applied to men, it is the country, where maturity is attained. 4. *γserla yod*, it belongs to gold. 5. *γyula byas*, it was made [turned] into turquoise. 9. 'abrange = 'abrengs, imperative tense. 10. instead of *mdundu* the original has *dundu*, instead of *mchis* it has *ches* and *che*; the same must be said of *mchis* in B. 13. *nabz'a*, Ladakhi for *nabz'a*. *laur* perhaps the same as *ldur ldur* in Jäschke's Dictionary.

## Song No. VI.

## A.

phyimas.

VI. A. 1. shing grama glangma leangma  
γsum

2. de γsum shing dang ma rdung-  
shig

3. de γsum shing dang rdung zerna

4. ngoyi Idem 'achagna Idem 'achag  
stong dang len

5. laskyi phe ralna pheral stong  
dang len

6. snyangyi γyu 'achagna γyu  
'achag stong dang len

7. 'oggi sga 'achagna sga 'achag  
stong dang len.

legs bsams dbanggi nyebo.

## B.

nangmas landu

VI. B. 1. bdaggi lagtu yodpai shing γyu  
leang sngonpoi

2. skyedpa sngonpo γyula byas

3. lo 'adab 'adzamgling mi yul  
khyab

## Notes.

Because at the end of each verse in IV. the Nyopas failed to give a satisfactory account of the four countries, this is taken as a sufficient cause to beat them. For their defence they recite V. A., VI. A., and VII. A., and find fault with the sticks. On the other hand the bride's party praise their sticks as having been approved of by the king of heaven V. B., a king of the earth VI. B., and the king of the underworld [waters] in VII. B.

B. 9 and 10 is said to refer to the procession of the wedding party.

The Nyopas say:—

VI. A. 1. The furze, the hill willow and the  
house willow,

2. With sticks of these three kinds  
of wood do not beat us!

3. If you beat us with these three  
kinds of wood.

4. Breaking our helmets, you must  
return them a thousandfold.

5. Hurting our body, we shall re-  
turn it a thousandfold.

6. Breaking our earrings, you must  
return them a thousandfold!

7. Breaking our saddles, you must  
return them a thousandfold!

Well thought, you mighty  
friends!

People of the house answer:—

VI. B. 1. Of this green stick of the tur-  
quoise willow, which is in my  
hand,

2. The blue middle was made of  
turquoise.

3. The leaves of the tree cover all  
'adZamgling the country of  
men.



4. rje sabdag rgyalpo bzhinnas
5. lcags rgyabpai bk'a khrol cig.
6. 'adila bk'alung yang dagpa zhig  
  'nyang zerna
7. rgyalpoi bu zhig 'abrangs
8. zlasakar mdundu mchis
9. don ngan phugssu 'akhrugs
10. phu ngan duba che
11. mgron ngan ringdn mchis
12. rinchen dbyngpas char cig phob
13. nam bz'a rincangyi ldur cig phob.

## Notes.

In B. two lines seem to have been lost, because for all the rest this song is in conformity with V. B. or perhaps V. B. 2, 3 are later additions. In 4 the king is mentioned as representative of the earth, an older version may have had Mother *skyabs bdun*, compare Song No. I, B. 2, *ante*, p. 134.

4. By the king, the owner and lord of the earth
5. [There was issued] an order to beat [with it].
6. If you ask, what holy prophecy he gave regarding it,
7. 'A son of the king may follow [you]!
8. The moon and the stars may be before [you]!
9. Bad speech ought to be blamed,
10. If [the fire] is badly blown there is much smoke.
11. A bad guest be far away!
12. Now let go down a rain [of blows] with the costly sticks,
13. Beat them on their costly dress.

## Notes.

B. 3. 'aDzamgling or 'aDzambugling. comprised originally Tibet and India, later on all Asia or the whole earth, in the latter sense it is to be taken here. It is the Indian *Jambudvīpa*.

## Song No. VII.

## A.

phyimas

VII. A. 1. shing starbu 'ambu tserbu ysum

2. de ysum shing dang ma rdung-  
  shig

3. de ysum shing dang rdung zerna

4. mgoyi ldem 'achagna ldem 'achag  
  stong dang len5. luskyi phe ralna pheral stong  
  dang len6. anyangyi yyu 'achagna yyu  
  'achag stong dang len7. 'oggi sga 'achagna sga 'achag  
  stong dang len.

## B.

rangmas

VII. B. 1. bdaggi lagtu yodpai shing yyu  
  lcang sngonpoi

The Nyopas say:—

VII. A. 1. The walnut-tree, the tamarisk  
  and the thorn,2. With sticks of these three kinds  
  of wood do not beat us!3. If you beat us with these three  
  kinds of wood,4. Breaking our helmets, you must  
  return them a thousandfold,5. Hurting our body, we shall re-  
  turn it a thousandfold,6. Breaking our earrings, you must  
  return them a thousandfold,7. Breaking our saddles, you must  
  return them a thousandfold!

People of the house say:—

VII. B. 1. Of this green stick of the tur-  
  quoise willow, which is in my  
  hand,



2. rtsaba dkarpo dungla byas.
3. sbathag 'og phyogs kluyul khyab
4. klurgyal lcogpo m'a gros zilchen-  
nas
5. lcags rgyabpai bk'a khrol cig
6. 'adila bk'alung yang dagpa zhiig  
yinaug zerna
7. kla phranbu zhiig 'abrangs
8. yul tsa mdundu mchis
9. don ngan phugasu 'akhrugs
10. phu ngan duba che
11. mgron ngan ringdu mchis
12. rinchen dbyugpas char cig phob.
13. nambz'a rincangyi ldr cig phob.

## Notes.

VII. A. 1. 'umbu = 'ombu, tamarisk. B. 7 phran is generally used only of young animals. In 11 the original has *song*, go, instead of *mchis*, be. This fact is perhaps the best justification for my putting *mchis* in the place of *che* and *ches* of the original.

2. The white root was made of a shell.
3. The roots [of the tree] cover all the lower underworld.
4. By the wise and glorious lCogpo, King of the Underworld,
5. [There was issued] an order to beat [with it].
6. If you ask, what holy prophecy he gave regarding it,
7. 'A young kLu may follow [you]!
8. The village idol may be before [you]!
9. Bad speech ought to be blamed.
10. If [the fire] is badly blown, there is much smoke.
11. A bad guest be far away!
12. Now let go down a rain [of blows] with the costly sticks,
13. Beat them on their costly dress!

## Notes.

If we look at V. B. 4, VI. B. 2, and VII. B. 2, we see, that the stick of the turquoise willow is identified with the tree of the world, which we find in so many mythologies. The roots of this tree cover the underworld, VII. B. 3, the leaves cover the earth VI. B. 3, and the top reaches *stanglha*.

## Song No. VIII.

## A.

phyimas

- VIII. A. 1. skyaba zanthsan dang 'ulu thsigs  
bead dang yogpa snanag dang
2. de ysum shing dang ma rdung-  
shig
  3. de ysum shing dang rdung zerna
  4. mgoyi ldem 'achagna ldem 'achag  
stong dang len
  5. luskyi phe ralna pheral stong  
dang len
  6. synangyi yu 'achagna yyn 'achag  
stong dang len
  7. 'oggi sga 'achagna sga 'achag  
stong dang len.

The Nyopas say:—

- VIII. A. 1. The soup-spoon, the gravy-spoon  
and the black-nosed poker,
2. With these three sticks do not  
beat us!
  3. If you beat us with these three  
sticks,
  4. Breaking our helmets, you must  
return them a thousandfold,
  5. Hurting our body, we shall re-  
turn it a thousandfold,
  6. Breaking our earrings, you must  
return them a thousandfold,
  7. Breaking our saddles, you must  
return them a thousandfold!



## B.

nangnas lan ma shespas yang phyimas

VIII. B. 1. nged nyebo rnamsla rdungbai  
shing zbig yod

shing hala ldempai shing zhig  
yod

shing hula ldempai shing zhig  
yod

shing rtsaba ycigla rtsemo ysum

rtsemo ysumla yalga drag.

2. yalga dangpora

bya chen khyunggi thsangs

yser sgong ma bcagpa

bya thsangs ma bshigpa

bya de ma 'agrogspa

shing de snamnas byon

de dang rdung mdzod cig

de dang rgyob mdzod cig

de dang rdang mdzodna

mgoyi ldem 'achagnayang

ldem 'achag stong meddo

luskhi phe ralna

pheral stong meddo

snyangyi yyn 'achagnayang

yyn 'achag stong meddo

'oggi sga 'achagnayang

sga 'achag stong yang med.

3. yalga ynyispara

byargyal rgodpoi thsangs

yyn sgong ma bcagpa

bya de ma 'agrogspa

bya thsangs ma bshigpa

shing de snamnas byon

de dang rdung mdzod cig, etc.

(see v. 2).

Because the people of the house do not know  
what to answer, the Nyopas say:—

VIII. B. 1. A wood to beat us, friends, does  
exist.

It is a wonderfully elastic wood,

It is a marvellously elastic wood.

There is a tree, the root of which  
has three stems.

These three stems have [to-  
gether] six boughs.

2. On the first bough

There is the nest of the huge bird  
khyung.

Not breaking the golden egg,

Not destroying the bird's nest,

Not frightening the bird,

Take a stick and come!

With this stick do beat us!

With this stick do whip us!

If you beat us with this stick,

Breaking our helmets,

You need not return them a  
thousandfold.

Hurting our body,

We shall not return it a thou-  
sandfold.

Breaking our earrings,

You need not return them a  
thousandfold.

Breaking our saddles,

You need not return them a  
thousandfold!

3. On the second bough

There is the nest of the wild  
eagle.

Not breaking the turquoise egg,

Not frightening the bird,

Not destroying the bird's nest,

Take a stick and come!

With this stick do beat us! etc  
(see 2).



- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>4. yalga ysumparu<br/>mgobo ldad dkar thsangs</p> <p>dung sgong ma bcagpa<br/>bya thsangs ma bshigpa<br/>bya de ma 'agrogspa<br/>shing de snamnas shog<br/>de dang rdung mdzodcig, etc.</p> <p>5. yalga bzhiparu<br/>glagmo mkhal dkar thsangs</p> <p>ngul sgong ma bcagpa<br/>bya thsangs ma bshigpa<br/>bya de ma 'agrogspa<br/>shing de snamnas byon<br/>de dang rdung mdzod cig, etc.</p> <p>6. yalga lngaparu<br/>ribya gongmoi thsangs</p> <p>byur sgong ma bcagpa<br/>bya thsangs ma bshigpa<br/>bya de ma 'agrogspa<br/>shing de snamnas byon<br/>de dang rdung mdzod cig, etc.</p> <p>7. yalga drugparu<br/>khraskya dkarmoi thsangs</p> <p>lcags sgong ma bcagpa<br/>bya thsangs ma bshigpa<br/>bya de ma 'agrogspa<br/>shing de snamnas byon<br/>de dang rdung mdzodcig, etc.</p> | <p>4. On the third bough<br/>There is the nest of the bird<br/>'white head.'<br/>Not breaking the pearl-white egg,<br/>Not destroying the bird's nest,<br/>Not frightening the bird,<br/>Take a stick and come!<br/>With this stick do beat us! etc.</p> <p>5. On the fourth bough<br/>There is the nest of the eagle<br/>'white kidney.'<br/>Not breaking the silver egg,<br/>Not destroying the bird's nest,<br/>Not frightening the bird,<br/>Take a stick and come!<br/>With this stick do beat us! etc.</p> <p>6. On the fifth bough<br/>There is the nest of the snow<br/>partridge.<br/>Not breaking the coral egg,<br/>Not destroying the bird's nest,<br/>Not frightening the bird,<br/>Take a stick and come!<br/>With this stick do beat us! etc.</p> <p>7. On the sixth bough<br/>There is the nest of the white<br/>falcon.<br/>Not breaking the iron egg,<br/>Not destroying the bird's nest,<br/>Not frightening the bird,<br/>Take a stick and come!<br/>With this stick do beat us! etc.</p> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

## Notes.

A. 1. The expressions given here are colloquial Lower Ladakhi for soup-spoon, table-spoon and poker. B. 1. *hala* = *halas*, *hula* the same as *hala*, *rtsemo* means originally 'top.' 2. *sgong* = *sgonga*, egg. The termination *pa* in *bcagpa*, *bshigpa* and *'agrogspa* is Ladakhi for *par*, the supine being used here in a gerundial sense. 5. *mkhal dkar*, white kidney, i. e., the feathers over the kidney are white. 6. *ribya*, another name of the same bird is *lhabya*.

## Notes.

This song seems to contain a further description of the tree of the world. It is remarkable that the tree of the world is said to have six boughs, for I have not yet met with the number six in other books relating to Bonpa mythology. In this connection I should like to mention that according to the *Edda* there are six animals (a goat and five stags) feeding on the leaves of the tree of the world, and that the *Edda* (not *Simrock*) speaks of six worlds.



## Song No. IX.

## A.

- IX. A. 1. khyed nyebo me ma khrul  
 2. da nang yongba gangnas yongs  
 3. 'agroba nyideag gangdu 'agro  
 4. sdodpai bde lce gangna yod  
 5. dgospai skudon sula yod  
 6. yzhungyul 'adira cila byon.

phyimas.

- IX. B. 1. yong da ngazha sharphyogs bde-  
 chen glingnas yongs.  
 2. 'agro da ngazha nubphyogs  
 urgyan glingdu 'agro  
 3. sdodpai bdelce de sa ynas 'adina  
 yod  
 4. dgospai skudon ni yzhungyul  
 'adina yod.  
 legs bsams dbanggi nyebo.

## Notes.

A. 1. *me ma khrul*, do not let the fire fall down, proverbial expression, for 'do not break down now, show your ingenuity!' 4. The original has *sula* instead of *gangna*, the lines 4 and 5 having been confounded. B. 2. *urgyan*, here in Lower Ladakh is understood to mean either *Padmasambhava* or the 'Western Paradise.' 1 and 2 again show, plainly, that the Nyopas have to play the part of the sun.

## B.

- IX. A. 1. Now, friends, do not let the fire fall down!  
 2. Now, you, who enter, from where do you come?  
 3. Then, where will you go to?  
 4. Where will you be pleased to sit down?  
 5. For whose sake do you come?  
 6. Why did you come here into the middle of the village?

The Nyopas say:—

- IX. B. 1. We come from a happy country in the East,  
 2. We go to the country of the paradise in the West.  
 3. We shall be pleased to sit down here.  
 4. Our aim is here in the middle of village.  
 Well thought, you mighty friends!

## Notes.

This song IX. is generally the conclusion of the scene before the house, the Nyopas are invited to enter and tell the name of the girl. Then the bridal party, the Nyopas and the whole village sit down for a great feast, when the *Chang glu* (the continuation of the wedding song, given above) is sung. On the following morning a Buddhist Lama appears and reads a scripture portion from an orthodox Buddhist book. People tell me that he may read anything, he likes, because neither the Lama nor the bride are able to grasp the meaning, and the chief thing is the correct pronunciation. Then the bride and the Nyopas mount their horses and ride to the house of the bridegroom, where another feast is given.

## Conclusion.

Having thus arrived at the end of the first intelligible half of the wedding ritual, it will be as well to add a few words about the other less intelligible half, though the latter is not yet ready for publication. After a study of the verses contained in it, which can be understood fairly well, I have come to the conclusion that the so-called **second half of the ritual** is not the continuation of the first; but a composition apart. It is in reality a **new ritual dating from the time of the introduction of Buddhism into Ladakh**, and is an attempt to replace the ancient Bonpa ritual by another, which, though not entirely Lamaist, tries to introduce Buddhist ideas by placing them side by side with Bonpa ideas. That this



compromise has proved a failure, is shown by the fact that people have never been able to grasp it in full and are now on the point of abandoning it altogether.

As might have been expected, my interpretation of the Kēsar-Myths has been criticised<sup>4</sup> as being unscientific. There can be no doubt that there are no scientific means available to prove the solar origin of many a hero. It is so much easier to prove the descent of all of them from great ancestors. However, a certain amount of commonsense, now and then speaks in favour of a solar descent. In my notes to Wedding Song No. I., I said, that the name of the northern Lōka, pāla-Donyodgrubpa could not well be explained as a manifestation of the sun, but my critics have helped me to bring him into the system. From the Kēsar-Myths we learn, that Kēsar, the supposed spring-hero, had a different name before his birth on earth, that is, during winter. Then, whilst in heaven, he was called Dongrub, 'the fulfiller of the aim.' This name is, so to say, a prophecy, it indicates the future doings of the hero. There can be no doubt that the year and the day have certain parallels, and the winter of the year corresponds to the night of the day. Is it wonderful then, that the Lōkapāla of the north (i. e., the place where the sun is during night) should have the same name as the spring-god during winter? Donyodgrubpa means 'the fulfiller of the aim, he has.' The original name Dongrub was changed into a four-syllabled one simply to bring it into accordance with the four-syllabled names of the other Lōkapālas. Thus we see, that the name of the supposed spring-hero Kēsar, before his entering into action, is in accordance with the name of the sun before his starting his day's work. Does this fact not suggest a possible solar origin of Kēsar?

Hitherto certain schools especially have considered it scientific to compare the mythologies of certain nations only with those of such nations as are related to them by language. However, religion overleaps the barriers of linguistic relationship, and there is no necessity to believe that a solar mythology had been worked out by a single nation and was carried to others by her missionaries. On the contrary, solar mythologies may have arisen in many countries and later on the different nations have borrowed one from the other.<sup>5</sup> The existence of the *Nibelungensage* not only among the Ugurs, but also among the Tibetans is an established fact. Compare G. N. Potanin: *Vostochnye motivy v srednevěkovom jevropejskim eposē*. Moskau, 1899.

#### A COMPLETE VERBAL CROSS-INDEX TO YULE'S HOBSON-JOBSON OR GLOSSARY OF ANGLO-INDIAN WORDS.

BY CHARLES PARTRIDGE, M. A.

(Continued from p. 117.)

- |                                                                                                   |                                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| Bigha; s. v. Gudge, 307, i; ann. 1763: s. v. Beegah, 59, i.                                       | Bijapur; ann. 1510: s. v. Deccan, 233, ii.        |
| Bighā; s. v. Beegah, 59, i, twice.                                                                | Bijapūr; s. v. Sabaio, 851, ii.                   |
| Bihar; ann. 1872: s. v. Dagoba, 226, i.                                                           | Bijāpur; ann. 1778: s. v. Mort-de-chien, 450, ii. |
| Bihār; s. v. Comotay, 184, ii, s. v. Behar, 764, ii.                                              | Bijapūr; s. v. Idalcan, 807, ii.                  |
| Bihisht; s. v. Bheesty, 69, ii.                                                                   | Bijápūr; ann. 1590: s. v. Cospetir, 202, i;       |
| Bihishtī; s. v. Bheesty, 69, ii, 70, i, s. v. Jemalars, 350, i; ann. 1782: s. v. Bheesty, 765, i. | ann. 1604 or 1605: s. v. Tobacco, 704, ii.        |
| Bihishtī; s. v. Thakoor, 862, ii.                                                                 | Bijápūr; s. v. Deccan, 233, i.                    |
| Bijah Gurh; ann. 1781: s. v. Bheesty, 70, i.                                                      | Bijanagar; ann. 1441: s. v. Satin, 602, ii;       |
| Bijai Singh; s. v. A Muck, 13, i.                                                                 | ann. 1563: s. v. Madremaluco, 821, i;             |
| Bijalār; ann. 1300: s. v. Bengal, 64, ii.                                                         | ann. 1620: s. v. Pardao, 842, i.                  |
| Bijapore; s. v. Gardee, 278, ii.                                                                  | Bijanagar; s. v. Gentoo, 280, i.                  |
|                                                                                                   | Bijanagher; ann. 1516: s. v. Bisnagar, 73, ii.    |
|                                                                                                   | Bijanaguer; ann. 1516: s. v. Narsinga, 474, i.    |
|                                                                                                   | Bijanagur; s. v. Chinapatam, 153, ii.             |

<sup>4</sup> This remark refers only to private letters from certain professors; if I had had the pleasure of seeing Prof. Dr. Grünwedel's most interesting review of the *Kesar Myth* [published in the *Globe*, August, 1900], I should certainly have modified my expressions.

<sup>5</sup> Just like the *Wandermärchen*.



- Bijar Khān; *s. v.* A Muck, 13, i, twice.  
 Bijermājī; ann. 1526: *s. v.* Kohinor, 375, i.  
 Bijī; *s. v.* Numerical Affixes, 831, i.  
 Bijū; *s. v.* Beejoo, 59, ii.  
 Bikaner; *s. v.* Tank, 683, ii, 685, i, footnote.  
 Bikermājī; ann. 1526: *s. v.* Kohinor, 375, i.  
 Bikh; *s. v.* Bish, 72, ii.  
 Bikkūra; *s. v.* Albacore, 6, i.  
 Bikshuni Uthala; ann. 400: *s. v.* Chuckerbutty, 166, ii.  
 Bilabandi; *s. v.* Bilabundy, 70, ii.  
 Bila-bandi; *s. v.* Bilabundy, 70, ii.  
 Bilabundy; *s. v.* 70, ii.  
 Bilātee panee; *s. v.* Bilayutee pawnee, 71, i.  
 Bilaur; *s. v.* Beryl, 67, ii.  
 Bilāyat; ann. 1843: *s. v.* Bundobust, 98, i.  
 Bilāyatī; *s. v.* Bilayutee pawnee, 71, i.  
 Bilāyatī baingan; *s. v.* Bilayutee pawnee, 71, i.  
 Bilāyatī pāni; *s. v.* Bilayutee pawnee, 71, i, *s. v.* Pawnee, 522, i.  
 Bilayut; *s. v.* 70, ii; ann. 1810: *s. v.* Kitmutgar, 371, i.  
 Bilayutee pawnee; *s. v.* 71, i, 765, i.  
 Bildār; *s. v.* 71, i.  
 Bilgan; *s. v.* Belgaum, 61, ii.  
 Bilhim; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Bora, 80, ii.  
 Bili; ann. 1672: *s. v.* Bael, 35, i.  
 Billaīt; *s. v.* Bilayut, 70, ii.  
 Billaur; *s. v.* Beryl, 67, i and ii.  
 Billi ke ankh; ann. 1837: *s. v.* Cat's-eye, 194, ii.  
 Billiton; ann. 1584: *s. v.* Dammer, 228, ii.  
 Bilooch; *s. v.* 71, i, 765, i.  
 Bilpar; ann. 1665: *s. v.* Grassia, 302, ii.  
 Bilūch; *s. v.* Bilooch, 71, i, *s. v.* Khelāt, 367, i, twice, *s. v.* Jam, 809, i.  
 Bilūchī; *s. v.* Dingy, 246, i.  
 Biluchistan; *s. v.* Cutch Gundava, 222, ii.  
 Bilūchistān; *s. v.* Bilooch, 71, i.  
 Bima; ann. 1538: *s. v.* Godavery, 291, i.  
 Bimbasāra; ann. 1879: *s. v.* Crore, 214, ii.  
 Bimlipatam; *s. v.* Factory, 264, i.  
 Bindamire; *s. v.* Bendameer, 62, ii.  
 Bindarra; ann. 1784: *s. v.* Pindarry, 539, i.  
 Bindy; *s. v.* Bendy, 63, ii.  
 Binh-Thuān; *s. v.* Champa, 140, i.  
 Binky Nabob; *s. v.* Binky-Nabob, 71, ii.  
 Binky-Nabob; *s. v.* 71, ii.  
 Binjarree; *s. v.* Brinjarry, 87, ii.  
 Binjarries; ann. 1800: *s. v.* Vanjārās, 88, ii.  
 Bintam; ann. 1523: *s. v.* Prow, 555, i.  
 Bintang; *s. v.* Old Strait, 484, ii, *s. v.* Toomongong, 710, i.  
 Bintara; ann. 1810: *s. v.* Bendāra, 63, ii, 3 times.  
 Bipur; ann. 1572: *s. v.* Beypoor, 68, ii.  
 Birah; ann. 1118: *s. v.* Siwalik, 640, ii.  
 Birbhoom; *s. v.* Jungle-Terry, 359, ii.  
 Bircandes; ann. 1726: *s. v.* Burkundauze, 100, ii.  
 Bīrdhūl; ann. 1311: *s. v.* Madura, 408, i.  
 Bird of Paradise; ann. 1705: *s. v.* Bird of Paradise, 72, ii.  
 Bird of Paradise; *s. v.* 71, ii, *s. v.* Manucodiata, 427, i; ann. 1674 and 1691: *s. v.* 72, i; ann. 1868: *s. v.* 72, ii.  
 Birdsnest; *s. v.* Agar-agar, 5, ii.  
 Birds' Nests; *s. v.* 72, ii.  
 Birds' nests; ann. 1858-9: *s. v.* Sayer, 605, ii.  
 Birdwood; *s. v.* Adam's Apple, 3, ii.  
 Biringal; ann. 1783: *s. v.* Brinjal, 87, ii.  
 Birinj; *s. v.* Brinjarry, 87, ii, *s. v.* Rice, 578, i.  
 Birīōk; *s. v.* Apricot, 24, i.  
 Birman; ann. 1795: *s. v.* Persaim, 530, ii, *s. v.* Prome, 555, i, *s. v.* Shan, 623, i, *s. v.* Talaing, 677, i, twice, *s. v.* Chobwa, 778, ii, twice; ann. 1799: *s. v.* Caréns, 773, i, *s. v.* Munneepore, 827, ii.  
 Bīrpūr; ann. 1584: *s. v.* Sūrath, 666, i.  
 Bīs; ann. 1815: *s. v.* Bish, 73, i.  
 Biscay; *s. v.* Dhow, 243, ii.  
 Bisc; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Bish, 72, ii.  
 Biscobrā; *s. v.* 765, i; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Gecko, 280, i; ann. 1883: *s. v.* 765, ii.  
 Biserminorum; ann. 1246: *s. v.* Mussulman, 462, i.  
 Bish; *s. v.* 72, ii, *s. v.* Biscobra, 765, ii.  
 Biskhaprā; *s. v.* Biscobra, 765, i.  
 Biskhoprā; *s. v.* Biscobra, 765, i.  
 Bis ki huwa; ann. 1819: *s. v.* Bish, 73, i.  
 Bisnaga; *s. v.* Badega, 34, i, *s. v.* Bisnagar, 73, i; ann. 1516: *s. v.* Cañara, 117, ii; ann. 1533: *s. v.* Pulicat, 57, ii; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Cañara, 118, i; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Cospetir, 202, i, *s. v.* Honore, 321, ii, twice; ann. 1572: *s. v.* Badega, 34, ii; ann. 1580: *s. v.* Chuckler, 167, i; ann. 1611: *s. v.* Mangelin, 423, i; ann. 1681: *s. v.* Narsinga, 474, ii.  
 Bisnagar; *s. v.* 73, i, *s. v.* Gentoo, 280, i, *s. v.* Mysore, 467, i, *s. v.* Narsinga, 474, i; ann. 1430: *s. v.* Juggernaut, 356, i; ann. 1513: *s. v.* Salsam, 592, i; ann. 1516: *s. v.* Pardao, 840, ii; ann. 1540: *s. v.* Xerafine, 867, ii; ann. 1541: *s. v.* Peking, 526, i; ann. 1563: *s. v.* Hing, 318, i; ann. 1611: *s. v.* 73, ii; ann. 1672: *s. v.* Cañara, 118, ii.



- Bisnaga; ann. 1510: *s. v.* Narsinga, 474, i, twice; ann. 1562: *s. v.* Balaghaut, 38, ii.  
 Bison; *s. v.* 73, ii, *s. v.* Gour (a), 298, i; ann. 90: *s. v.* Buffalo, 93, ii; ann. 1881: *s. v.* 73, ii.  
 Bisontes; ann. 70: *s. v.* Buffalo, 93, ii.  
 Bistee; ann. 1630: *s. v.* Gosbeck, 298, i.  
 Bist-o-chahār-gānī; ann. 1350: *s. v.* Bargany, 761, ii.  
 Bist-o-panjgānī; ann. 1350: *s. v.* Bargany, 761, ii.  
 Bitekchi; ann. 1280-90: *s. v.* Bahaudur, 37, i.  
 Bitekchi; ann. 1280-90: *s. v.* Bahaudur, 37, i.  
 Bitikh; 519, i, footnote.  
 Bitter-Almonds; ann. 1689: *s. v.* Pice, 534, i.  
 Bittikhi 519, i, footnote.  
 Bittikh-i hindī; *s. v.* Pateca, 519, i.  
 Bittle; ann. 1615: *s. v.* Betel, 68, i.  
 Bitumen; *s. v.* Kil, 368, i; ann. 1560: *s. v.* Kil, 368, i; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Dammer, 228, ii; ann. 1813: *s. v.* Googul, 296, i.  
 Bivra; ann. 1538: *s. v.* Godavery, 291, i.  
 Bīyah; ann. 1310: *s. v.* Sutledge, 859, i.  
 Bīyah; ann. 1300: *s. v.* Punjaub, 562, i.  
 Bīyāh; ann. 1020: *s. v.* Sutledge, 859, i; ann. 1400: *s. v.* Punjaub, 562, i.  
 Biyyardāwal; ann. 1330: *s. v.* Mabār, 401, ii.  
 Bize; ann. 1585: *s. v.* Tical, 699, ii, twice.  
 Bizenegalia; ann. 1420: *s. v.* Bisnagar, 73, ii; ann. 1430: *s. v.* Juggurnaut, 356, i.  
 Blacan-matee; *s. v.* 73, ii.  
 Blacan-mati; *s. v.* Blacan-matee, 73, ii.  
 Blachang; ann. 1784: *s. v.* Balāchong, 38, i; ann. 1883: *s. v.* Balāchong, 38, ii.  
 Blachong; *s. v.* Balāchong, 38, i.  
 Black; *s. v.* 73, ii, 765, ii, *s. v.* Nigger, 479, i; ann. 1548: *s. v.* Nigger, 479, i; ann. 1676, 1747, 1750, 1753 and 1761: *s. v.* 765, ii; ann. 1762: *s. v.* 766, i; ann. 1782: *s. v.* 74, i, *s. v.* Bobbery-bob, 766, i; ann. 1787: *s. v.* 74, i; ann. 1788: *s. v.* 766, i; ann. 1789 and 1832-3: *s. v.* 74, i.  
 Black Act; *s. v.* 74, ii; ann. 1876: *s. v.* 74, ii.  
 Blackamoor; ann. 1345: *s. v.* Ameer, 12, i.  
 Blackamoor's Teeth; ann. 1749: *s. v.* Cowry, 785, ii.  
 Black-breast; *s. v.* Chickore, 149, i.  
 Black-Buck; *s. v.* 74, ii.  
 Black Cotton Soil; *s. v.* 74, ii.  
 Black dammer; *s. v.* Dammer, 228, ii.  
 Black Doctors; *s. v.* Black, 74, ii; ann. 1787: *s. v.* Black, 74, ii.  
 Black Hole; ann. 1869: *s. v.* Godown, 292, i.  
 Black Language; *s. v.* 74, ii.  
 Black man; *s. v.* Black, 74, i, twice.  
 Black Partridge; *s. v.* 75, i.  
 Black Town; *s. v.* 75, i, twice, 766, i; ann. 1679: *s. v.* Gentoo (a), 800, ii; ann. 1693: *s. v.* Taliar, 678, ii, *s. v.* Tom-tom, 708, ii; ann. 1696: *s. v.* Godown, 292, i; ann. 1727 and 1780 (twice): *s. v.* 75, i; ann. 1782: *s. v.* Gardens, 279, i, *s. v.* 766, i; ann. 1792: *s. v.* Tonicatchy, 709, i; ann. 1827: *s. v.* 766, i.  
 Blackwood; ann. 1879: *s. v.* Black Wood, 75, ii.  
 Black Wood; *s. v.* 75, i.  
 Black wood; *s. v.* Sissoo, 639, i, twice.  
 Blaeu; ann. 1753: *s. v.* Kedgerie, 812, ii.  
 Blambangan; ann. 1586: *s. v.* Sutte, 669, i.  
 Blanks; *s. v.* 75, ii; ann. 1718: *s. v.* 75, ii.  
 Blatta; ann. 1775: *s. v.* Cockroach, 175, i.  
 Blatta orientalis; *s. v.* Cockroach, 175, i.  
 Blimbee; *s. v.* 75, ii, see 123, i, footnote.  
 Blinton; ann. 1584: *s. v.* Dammer, 228, ii.  
 Bloaches; ann. 1813: *s. v.* Bilooch, 71, ii.  
 Bloodsucker; *s. v.* 75, ii.  
 Blood-sucker; ann. 1810: *s. v.* Bloodsucker, 75, ii.  
 Bloqui; ann. 1328: *s. v.* Jack, 337, i.  
 Blotia; ann. 1648: *s. v.* Bilooch, 765, i.  
 Blubber; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Fool's Rack, 272, i, twice.  
 Blue cloth; *s. v.* Piece-goods, 535, ii.  
 Blue-throat; *s. v.* Jay, 349, i.  
 Blumea balsamifera; *s. v.* Camphor, 116, i.  
 Blunderbusses; ann. 1683: *s. v.* Ameer, 12, i.  
 Boa; *s. v.* Anaconda, 756, ii; ann.?: *s. v.* Anaconda, 757, i.  
 Boa aquatica; *s. v.* Anaconda, 16, i.  
 Boa Bahia; *s. v.* Guardafui, Cape, 304, ii.  
 Boar avatār; *s. v.* Pagoda, 498, i.  
 Boa seytale et murina; *s. v.* Anaconda, 16, i.  
 Boa-Vida; ann. 1538: *s. v.* Bombay, 766, ii.  
 Boa Vida; ann. 1538: *s. v.* Salsette (a), 594, ii.  
 Boay; ann. 1608-10: *s. v.* Boy (b), 84, i.  
 Bobachee; *s. v.* 75, ii; ann. 1866: *s. v.* 76, i; ann. 1883: *s. v.* Maistry, 410, ii.  
 Bobachee Bahauder; *s. v.* Bahaudur, 36, ii.  
 Bobachee-Connah; *s. v.* 76, i.  
 Bobachee connah; *s. v.* Khanna, 366, i.  
 Bobbera pack; ann. 1878: *s. v.* Bobbery-pack, 76, i.  
 Bobberjee; ann. 1883: *s. v.* Maistry, 410, ii.  
 Bobbery; *s. v.* 76, i, twice; ann. 1830 and 1866: *s. v.* 76, i.  
 Bobbery-bob; *s. v.* 76, i, 766, i.



- Bobbery-pack; *s. v.* 76, i, twice.  
 Bobbry Hall; ann. 1816: *s. v.* Tiff, To, 701, i.  
 Bobby; 32, i, footnote.  
 Bober Mirza; *s. v.* Ganda, 799, ii.  
 Bobil; ann. 1877: *s. v.* Bummelo, 97, i.  
 Bobo; *s. v.* Beebee, 58, ii.  
 Bobstay; *s. v.* Bawustye, 55, ii.  
 Boca; *s. v.* Bogue, 76, ii.  
 Bocaa; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Sunda, 659, ii.  
 Boca do Tigre; *s. v.* Bocca Tigris, 76, i.  
 Bocca Tigris; *s. v.* 76, i, *s. v.* Bogue, 76, ii; ann. 1540: *s. v.* Liampo, 393, i.  
 Boecoli; ann. 1814: *s. v.* Red Cliffs, 575, i.  
 Bocha; *s. v.* 76, ii.  
 Bochā; *s. v.* Bocha, 76, ii.  
 Bochah; ann. 1810: *s. v.* Bocha, 76, ii.  
 Bochah; ann. 1810: *s. v.* Bocha, 76, ii.  
 Bochrán; *s. v.* Bosmán, 81, ii.  
 Bodda; ann. 1753: *s. v.* Buddha, 767, ii.  
 Boddattan; ann. 1343: *s. v.* Pandarāni, 508, ii.  
 Bodha; ann. 590: *s. v.* India, 332, i.  
 Bodhimor; *s. v.* Tibet, 698, i.  
 Bodhisattva; *s. v.* Buddha, 90, ii.  
 Bodisatva; *s. v.* Pra, 551, i.  
 Bodoah-p'hra; *s. v.* Pra, 551, i.  
 Bodu; ann. 1685: *s. v.* Buddha, 91, i.  
 Boehmeria nivea; *s. v.* Grass-cloth, 301, i.  
 Boer; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Macareo, 403, ii.  
 Boeuf; ann. 1610: *s. v.* Boy (b), 84, i.  
 Boey Tea; ann. 1726: *s. v.* Bohea, 691, i.  
 Boffetas; ann. 1598: *s. v.* Bafta, 35, ii.  
 Bogahah; ann. 1681: *s. v.* Bo Tree, 81, ii.  
 Bogas; *s. v.* Mordexim, 452, i; ann. 1675: *s. v.* Bo Tree, 81, ii.  
 Bo-gās; *s. v.* Bo Tree, 81, ii.  
 Bogatchera; ann. 1683: *s. v.* Zemindar, 747, ii.  
 Bogatir; *s. v.* Bahaudur, 36, ii.  
 Boggleywala; ann. 1848: *s. v.* Jungle, 359, i.  
 Boggleywallah; ann. 1848: *s. v.* Collector, 182, i.  
 Böghe; ann. 1829: *s. v.* Shaman, 621, i.  
 Boghei; *s. v.* Buggy, 94, ii.  
 Bogli-oor; ann. 1784: *s. v.* Jungle-terry, 812, i.  
 Boglipour; *s. v.* Jungle-Terry, 359, ii.  
 Bog of Tygers; ann. 1747: *s. v.* Bocca Tigris, 76, ii.  
 Bogra; *s. v.* Law-officer, 818, i, twice.  
 Bogue; *s. v.* 76, ii.  
 Böh; ann. 1829: *s. v.* Shaman, 621, i.  
 Bohára; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Candahar, 119, i.  
 Bohatyr; *s. v.* Bahaudur, 37, i.  
 Bohay; *s. v.* Bohea, 691, i.  
 Bohea; *s. v.* 690, ii, 3 times, 691, i; ann. 1711, 1721 and 1727: *s. v.* 691, i; ann. 1814: *s. v.* Bonze, 79, ii.  
 Bohea Tea; *s. v.* Tea, 692, i.  
 Bohee Tea; ann. 1711: *s. v.* Bohea, 690, ii.  
 Bohon-Upas; *s. v.* Upas, 727, ii.  
 Bohon Upas; ann. 1783: *s. v.* Upas, 731, twice.  
 Bohorá; ann. 1853: *s. v.* Bora, 80, ii, 3 times.  
 Bohorā; *s. v.* Bora, 79, ii, twice.  
 Bohra; *s. v.* Sheeah, 625, i; ann. 1780: *s. v.* Bora, 766, ii.  
 Bohrá; *s. v.* Bora, 79, ii, 3 times, 80, i, 9 times.  
 Bohrah; ann. 1343 and 1620: *s. v.* Bora, 80, ii.  
 Bohr Ghât; ann. 1826: *s. v.* Ghaut (b), 282, i.  
 Boi; ann. 1591: *s. v.* Boy (b), 83, ii; ann. 1720: *s. v.* Boy (b), 84, i.  
 Bo-i-jahūdān; *s. v.* Bdelium, 57, i.  
 Bois d' aigle; *s. v.* Eagle-wood, 258, i.  
 Bois d' Eschine; ann. 1610: *s. v.* China-Root, 153, ii.  
 Boishnab; *s. v.* Vaishnava, 733, i.  
 Bois puant; *s. v.* Stink-wood, 652, i.  
 Bokerdun; ann. 1803: *s. v.* Hurcarra, 327, ii.  
 Bokhara; *s. v.* Choga, 158, i, *s. v.* Cotwal, 205, ii.  
 Bokhārā *s. v.* Ameer, 11, ii, *s. v.* Vihara, 738, ii.  
 Bole-ponjis; *s. v.* Punch, 558, ii.  
 Bolgar; *s. v.* Bulgar, 96, i.  
 Bolghār; *s. v.* Bulgar, 96, i.  
 Bolia; ann. 1757: *s. v.* Boliah, 76, ii, *s. v.* Gordower, 297, ii.  
 Boliah; *s. v.* 76, ii, see 522, i, footnote.  
 Bolio; ann. 1810: *s. v.* Boliah, 76, ii.  
 Bolleponge; ann. 1653: *s. v.* Punch, 846, i.  
 Boloche; ann. 1613: *s. v.* Bilooch, 71, i.  
 Bolon dinata; ann. 1524: *s. v.* Bird of Paradise, 72, i.  
 Bolta; *s. v.* 76, ii.  
 Bolumba; ann. 1598: *s. v.* Carambola, 123, i.  
 Boly; ann. 1610: *s. v.* Cowry, 209, ii.  
 Bomba; *s. v.* Bumba, 96, ii, twice; ann. 1572: *s. v.* Bumba, 96, ii, twice.  
 Bombahia; *s. v.* Bombay, 77, i.  
 Bombai; ann. 1538: *s. v.* Salsette (a), 594, ii.  
 Bombaiim; ann. 1666: *s. v.* Bombay, 77, ii.  
 Bombaim; *s. v.* Bombay, 77, i, twice, *s. v.* Rupee, 586, i; ann. 1508 and 1531: *s. v.* Bombay, 766, ii; ann. 1563: *s. v.* Bombay, 77, ii; ann. 1620: *s. v.* Carrack, 127, ii; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Bombay, 77, ii, 78, i, twice, *s. v.* Dugaree, 255, i, *s. v.* Hendry Kendry, 314, i, *s. v.* Horse-keeper, 324, ii, *s. v.* Pateca, 519, ii;



- ann. 1675: *s. v.* Xeraphine, 743, ii; ann. 1677 and 1760: *s. v.* Bombay, 78, i.
- Bombain; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Bombay, 77, ii; ann. 1580: *s. v.* Elephanta, 259, ii; ann. 1616: *s. v.* Elephanta, 260, i; ann. 1620: *s. v.* Calputtee, 114, i.
- Bombardier; *s. v.* Matross, 430, ii, twice.
- Bombarinasa; *s. v.* Pommelo, 546, i.
- Bombasa; *s. v.* 77, i.
- Bombāsī; *s. v.* Bombasa, 77, i.
- Bombassi; ann. 1888: *s. v.* Bombasa, 77, i.
- Bombast; ann. 1566: *s. v.* Choya, 166, i.
- Bombax Malabaricum; *s. v.* Seemul, 610, ii.
- Bombay; *s. v.* 77, i, twice, 766, ii, *s. v.* Adawlut, 4, i, *s. v.* Agun-boat, 5, ii, *s. v.* Amah, 11, i, *s. v.* Apollo Bunder, 23, ii, 5 times, *s. v.* Baikree, 38, i, *s. v.* Bandaree, 43, ii, *s. v.* Bark-ing-Deer, 52, ii, *s. v.* Bassein (1), 53, ii, *s. v.* Belgaum, 61, ii, *s. v.* Bendy-Tree, 64, i, *s. v.* Bilayut, 71, i, *s. v.* Black Town, 75, i, twice, *s. v.* Black Wood, 75, i, *s. v.* Bombay Box-work, 78, i, *s. v.* Bora, 79, ii, 80, i, *s. v.* Box-wallah, 83, i, *s. v.* Vanjārās, 88, i, *s. v.* Bunder-boat, 97, ii, *s. v.* Bungy, 99, ii, *s. v.* Butler, 102, ii, *s. v.* Calyan, 114, ii, *s. v.* Cheroot, 144, ii, *s. v.* Chillumchee, 150, i, 4 times, *s. v.* Chimney-glass, 150, ii, see 156, i, footnote, *s. v.* Choul, 162, ii, twice, *s. v.* Chow-chow, 164, ii, *s. v.* Chuprassy, 169, i, *s. v.* Civilian, 171, i, *s. v.* Commissioner, 183, ii, *s. v.* Cooja, 191, ii, *s. v.* Coomry, 194, ii, *s. v.* Country, 206, ii, *s. v.* Daman, 228, i, *s. v.* Datura, Yellow, 231, ii, *s. v.* Déwal, 238, i, *s. v.* Ducks, 253, ii, *s. v.* Elephanta, 259, ii, twice, *s. v.* Factory, 264, i, *s. v.* Fedea, 266, ii, *s. v.* Firefly, 267, ii, *s. v.* Foras Lands, 272, ii, *s. v.* Foudarry, 273, ii, *s. v.* Gallevat, 275, ii, *s. v.* Gindy, 285, ii, *s. v.* Goa Powder, 290, ii, *s. v.* Goa Stone, 290, ii, *s. v.* Gorawallah, 297, ii, *s. v.* Guardafui, Cape, 304, ii, *s. v.* Gym-Khana, 309, ii, *s. v.* Hendry Kendry, 314, i, twice, *s. v.* Hing, 318, i, *s. v.* Honore, 321, ii, *s. v.* Horse-keeper, 324, ii, *s. v.* Hulwa, 327, i, *s. v.* Jadoogur, 340, ii, *s. v.* Jain, 341, ii, *s. v.* Jamoon, 342, ii, *s. v.* Jarool, 345, ii, *s. v.* Java, 346, ii, *s. v.* Jungeera, 358, ii, *s. v.* Kaunta, 363, ii, *s. v.* Kennery, 365, i, *s. v.* Khoti, 367, i, *s. v.* Kooza, 375, ii, *s. v.* Lār (b), 386, i, *s. v.* Lemon-grass, 392, i, *s. v.* Mahseer, 410, i, *s. v.* Mango, 423, ii, twice, 424, ii, *s. v.* Maund, 431, ii, *s. v.* Mazagong, 432, i, *s. v.* Mem-Sahib, 433, ii, *s. v.* Monkey-bread Tree, 441, ii, twice, *s. v.* Moorah, 447, i, *s. v.* Moturpha, 453, ii, *s. v.* Muchwa, 454, i, *s. v.* Mull, 456, ii, *s. v.* Nassick, 474, ii, *s. v.* Nuncaties, 484, i, *s. v.* Pagar (b), 498, i, *s. v.* Palankeen, 502, ii, *s. v.* Panwell, 511, i, *s. v.* Parell, 513, i, *s. v.* Parvoe, 517, i, *s. v.* Peon, 528, i, *s. v.* Piece-goods, 535, ii, twice, *s. v.* Pig-sticking, 536, ii, 5 times, *s. v.* Popper-cake, 548, i, *s. v.* Putchock, 564, ii, *s. v.* Puttywalla, 565, i, *s. v.* Qui-hi, 568, i, *s. v.* Reas, 575, i, twice, *s. v.* Regulation, 575, ii, *s. v.* Rupee, 586, i, 3 times, *s. v.* S. John's, 591, i, *s. v.* Salsette, 594, i, 3 times, *s. v.* Sayer, 605, ii, *s. v.* Seedy, 610, i, *s. v.* Seer, 611, i, *s. v.* Severndroog, 616, i, *s. v.* Shigram, 626, i, *s. v.* Singapore, 636, ii, *s. v.* Soursop (a), 650, i, *s. v.* Sudder (c), 654, i, twice, *s. v.* Surat, 664, i, *s. v.* Syce, 673, ii, *s. v.* Tana, 681, i, *s. v.* Toolsy, 709, ii, *s. v.* Vaccination, 733, i, *s. v.* Vellard, 736, i, *s. v.* Vihara, 738, ii, *s. v.* Wootz, 741, ii, *s. v.* Ala-blaze Pan, 755, i, *s. v.* Alpeen, 756, i, *s. v.* Ap, 758, ii, *s. v.* Guinea-worm, 804, i, *s. v.* Gwalior, 804, ii, *s. v.* Havildar's Guard, 806, ii, *s. v.* Jaggery, 809, i, *s. v.* Khot, 813, i, *s. v.* Mamlutdar, 822, i, *s. v.* Parell, 842, i, *s. v.* Patcharee, 842, i, *s. v.* Purdessee, 846, ii, *s. v.* Summerhead, 857, i, *s. v.* Supreme Court, 859, i, twice; ann. 1321: *s. v.* Delhi, 234, i; ann. 1516: *s. v.* 77, ii, *s. v.* Tana, 681, ii; ann. 1536: *s. v.* Salsette (a), 594, ii; ann. 1538: *s. v.* 766, ii; ann. 1563: *s. v.* Mango, 423, ii; ann. 1644: *s. v.* Cusbe<sup>h</sup>, 219, ii, *s. v.* India of the Portugese, 333, i, *s. v.* Mazagong, 432, i; ann. 1663: *s. v.* Chouse, 164, i; ann. 1670: *s. v.* President, 845, ii; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Kuhár, 378, i; ann. 1679: *s. v.* Seedy, 610, ii; ann. 1690: *s. v.* Elephanta, 260, ii, *s. v.* Seedy, 855, i; ann. 1702: *s. v.* Presidency, 553, i; ann. 1711: *s. v.* 78, i; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Hendry Kendry, 314, i, *s. v.* Presidency, 553, ii, *s. v.* Reas, 575, i; ann. 1747: *s. v.* Bussora, 769, i, *s. v.* Sepoy, 855, i and ii (twice); ann. 1754: *s. v.* Grab, 300, ii; ann. 1759: *s. v.* Brab, 84, ii; ann. 1760: *s. v.* 78, i, *s. v.* Candy (s.), 120, i, *s. v.* Carnatic, 126, i, *s. v.* Freguezia, 274, i, *s. v.* Maund, 432, i, *s. v.* Pattamar (a), 521, i, *s. v.* Salsette (a), 595, i; ann. 1764: *s. v.* Elephanta; 261, i; ann. 1765: *s. v.* Writer, 742, ii ann., 1770: *s. v.* 78, i; ann. 1772: *s. v.* Muster, 828, ii, twice; ann. 1774: *s. v.* Eagle-wood, 258, ii; ann. 1773: *s. v.* Punchayet, 846, ii,



- twice; ann. 1780: *s. v.* Elephanta, 261, i;  
ann. 1782: Beer, Country, 764, i; ann. 1783:  
*s. v.* Veranda, 738, i; ann. 1785: *s. v.* Bummelo,  
97, i; ann. 1791: *s. v.* Cutcherry, 223, ii;  
ann. 1793: *s. v.* Teak, 693, ii; ann. 1794:  
*s. v.* Slave, 857, i; ann. 1795: *s. v.* Wootz,  
742, i; ann. 1800: *s. v.* Coast, The, 172, i;  
ann. 1804: *s. v.* Panwell, 511, ii; ann. 1808:  
*s. v.* Kaul, 363, ii; ann. 1809: *s. v.* 78, i, *s. v.*  
Cadjan (a), 107, ii, *s. v.* Destoor, 137, ii, *s. v.*  
Vellard, 736, i; ann. 1810: *s. v.* Dirzee, 246,  
i, *s. v.* Punchayet, 560, i; ann. 1813: *s. v.*  
Avadavat, 31, i, *s. v.* Googul, 296, i, *s. v.*  
Parvoe, 517, i; ann. 1826: *s. v.* Sowcar, 651,  
i; ann. 1833: *s. v.* Parvoe, 517, i, twice; ann.  
1846: *s. v.* Supara, 663, ii; ann. 1857:  
*s. v.* Batel, 54, ii; ann. 1860: *s. v.* Ducks,  
Bombay, 253, ii; ann. 1867: *s. v.* Gooroo,  
296, ii; ann. 1872: *s. v.* Grab, 300, ii; ann.  
1874: *s. v.* Pomfret, 545, ii; ann. 1876: *s. v.*  
Boy (a), 83, ii; ann. 1878: *s. v.* Buggy, 95,  
i; ann. 1879: *s. v.* Cheeta, 143, ii; ann.  
1880: *s. v.* Bondy, 64, i; ann. 1883: *s. v.*  
Bandaree, 43, ii, twice, *s. v.* Gym-Khana, 310,  
i, *s. v.* Mosquito, 453, i, *s. v.* Pyse, 847, ii,  
*s. v.* Seven sisters, 616, i.  
Bombay Box-work; *s. v.* 78, i.  
Bombay Buccaneers; *s. v.* Bombay Marine, 78, ii.  
Bombay Duck; *s. v.* 78, i; ann. 1877: *s. v.*  
Bummelo, 97, i.  
Bombay duck; *s. v.* Bummelo, 96, ii, twice.  
Bombaye; ann. 1760: *s. v.* Elephanta, 260, ii.  
Bombay Island; *s. v.* Breech-Candy, 767, i, *s. v.*  
Malabar Hill, 822, i.  
Bombay kī ihāta; *s. v.* Pagar, 498, i.  
Bombaym; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Bombay, 77, ii.  
Bombay Marine, *s. v.* 78, i, ann. 1780: *s. v.*  
78, ii.  
Bombay Stuffs; *s. v.* Piece-goods, 535, ii.  
Bombaza; ann. 1516: *s. v.* Bombasa, 77, i.  
Bombeye; ann. 1676: *s. v.* Bombay, 78, i.  
Bombicis excrementum; *s. v.* Guingam, 288, i.  
Bombil; *s. v.* Bummelo, 96, ii.  
Bombila; *s. v.* Bummelo, 96, ii.  
Bon; ann. 1580: *s. v.* Coffee, 179, i; ann.  
1598: *s. v.* Coffee, 179, ii.  
Bonano; ann. 1673 and 1686: *s. v.* Banana, 42,  
ii; ann. 1689: *s. v.* Plantain, 542, ii; ann.  
1690: *s. v.* Lime, 394, ii.  
Bona Speranza, Cao de; ann. 1506: *s. v.* Quiloa,  
568, ii.  
Bondocaire; ann. 1298: *s. v.* Sultan, 656, ii.  
Boneta; ann. 1764: *s. v.* Bonito, 79, i.  
Bone-tiger; *s. v.* Luckerbang, 400, i.  
Bonetta; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Cobily Mash, 172, ii.  
Bonettoes; ann. 1696: *s. v.* Albacore, 6, i.  
Bongcha; ann. 1809: *s. v.* Gavial, 800, ii.  
Bongew; ann. 1615: *s. v.* Juribasso, 362, i,  
twice.  
Bongkooses; ann. 1726: *s. v.* Buncus, 97, i.  
Bongkos; ann. 1726: *s. v.* Buncus, 97, i.  
Boni; ann. 1816: *s. v.* Macassar, 404, i.  
Boniana; *s. v.* Ananas, 17, ii.  
Boninas; 65, ii, footnote; ann. 1539: *s. v.*  
Benjamin, 65, ii.  
Bonitas; ann. 1631: *s. v.* Dorado, 251, i.  
Bonites; ann. 1610: *s. v.* Bonito, 79, i.  
Bonito; *s. v.* 78, ii, twice, *s. v.* Cobily Mash,  
172, i, twice, *s. v.* Dorado, 251, i; ann. 1578:  
*s. v.* Dorado, 251, i; ann. 1592: *s. v.* Albacore,  
6, i; ann. 1593 and 1604: *s. v.* Albatross, 6,  
ii; ann. 1615 and 1620: *s. v.* 79, i; ann.  
1760: *s. v.* Albacore, 6, i, *s. v.* 79, i;  
ann. 1841: *s. v.* Cobily Mash, 172, ii, 3 times.  
Bonnetta; ann. 1773: *s. v.* Bonito, 79, i, 3 times;  
ann. 1783: *s. v.* Cobily Mash, 172, ii.  
Bonnia; ann. 1584: *s. v.* Benjamin, 65, ii.  
Bonsos; ann. 1585: *s. v.* Bonze, 79, ii.  
Bonze; *s. v.* 79, i, twice; ann. 1545: *s. v.*  
Japan, 344, i; ann. 1794-7 and 1814: *s. v.*  
79, ii.  
Bonzee; ann. 1606 and 1727: *s. v.* Bonze, 79, ii.  
Bonzi; *s. v.* Bonze, 79, i; ann. 1590: *s. v.* Bonze,  
79, ii.  
Bonzii; ann. 1552 and 1572: *s. v.* Bonze, 79, ii.  
Bonzo; *s. v.* Bonze, 79, i, twice.  
Bonzolo; ann. 1782: *s. v.* Bhounsia, 70, ii.  
Bonzos; ann. 1549: *s. v.* Bonze, 79, i.  
Boodh; ann. 1795: *s. v.* Pali, 506, i; ann.  
1800: *s. v.* Gautama, 279, ii, twice.  
Boolee; ann. 1825: *s. v.* Bowly, 82, ii.  
Boomerang; *s. v.* Collery-Stick, 182, ii, twice.  
Boon Bay; ann. 1690: *s. v.* Bombay, 78, i.  
Boorhanpoor; ann. 1790: *s. v.* Masulipatam,  
429, ii.  
Bootan; *s. v.* Moonaul, 444, i; ann. 1793: *s. v.*  
Munneepore, 827, i.  
Bor; *s. v.* Bear-tree, 764, i; ann. 1563: *s. v.*  
Bear-tree, 58, i.  
Bora; *s. v.* 79, ii, 766, ii, *s. v.* Moor, 445, ii;  
ann. 1825: *s. v.* 80, ii.  
Borā; *s. v.* Boxwallah, 83, i, twice.  
Borah; ann. 1810 (twice) and 1863: *s. v.* Bora,  
80, ii.



- Borassus flabelliformis*; *s. v.* Brab, 84, i, *s. v.* Fau-palm, 266, i, *s. v.* Ollah, 485, i, *s. v.* Palmyra, 506, ii, *s. v.* Punkah, 562, ii, *s. v.* Talipot, 679, i.  
*Borassus Gomutus*; *s. v.* Gomuti, 295, i, *s. v.* Sagwire, 590, i.  
*Borax*; *s. v.* Tincall, 703, i; ann. 1563 and 1590: *s. v.* Tincall, 703, i.  
*Bore*; *s. v.* Macareo, 402, ii, 3 times and footnote, 403, i, 3 times; ann. 1811: *s. v.* Macareo, 403, ii, ann. 1885: *s. v.* Macareo 820, ii.  
*Borgal*; ann. 1298: *s. v.* Bulgar, 96, i.  
*Borghāli*; ann. 1333: *s. v.* Bulgar, 96, i.  
*Bori*; *s. v.* Cowry, 209, i, twice.  
*Bornean*; *s. v.* Camphor, 116, i.  
*Borneo*; *s. v.* 80, ii, 766, ii, *s. v.* Camphor, 116, ii, twice, *s. v.* Factory, 264, ii, *s. v.* Orang-otang, 491, ii, twice, see 728, ii, footnote; ann. 1521: *s. v.* 767, i, twice; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Celebes, 137, ii; ann. 1584: *s. v.* Benjamin, 65, ii; ann. 1690: *s. v.* Tomback, 708, i; ann. 1726: *s. v.* Camphor, 117, i; ann. 1727: *s. v.* 81, i.  
*Borneo camphor*; *s. v.* Wood-oil, 741, i.  
*Borneu*; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Borneo, 81, i.  
*Borney*; ann. 1516: *s. v.* Borneo, 80, ii, *s. v.* Champa, 140, i.  
*Boro Bodo*; *s. v.* Boro-Bodor, 81, ii.  
*Boro-Bodor*; *s. v.* 81, i.  
*Boro-Budur*; *s. v.* Boro-Bodor, 81, i.  
*Borrah*; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Bora, 80, ii.  
*Bosch Sandery*; *s. v.* Sunderbunds, 660, ii.  
*Bos grunniens*; *s. v.* Yak, 744, i, twice.  
*Bosh*; *s. v.* 81, ii, twice.  
*Bos Luca*; *s. v.* Elephant, 797, i and footnote (4 times).  
*Bosmán*; *s. v.* 81, ii.  
*Bosmoron*; 578, ii, footnote.  
*Bosmórou*; 578, ii, footnote.  
*Bosses*; ann. 1618: *s. v.* Bonze, 79, ii.  
*Bost*; ann. 940: *s. v.* Ghilzai, 283, ii.  
*Bostangie*; ann. 1687: *s. v.* Pyke (a), 567, i.  
*Boteca*; *s. v.* Boutique, 82, i; ann. 1561: *s. v.* Boutique, 82, i.  
*Botella*; *s. v.* Batel, 54, ii; ann. 1833: *s. v.* Batel, 54, ii.  
*Botickee*; *s. v.* 81, ii; ann. 1727: *s. v.* 81, ii.  
*Botique*; ann. 1782: *s. v.* Boutique, 82, i.  
*Botiqueiro*; *s. v.* Botickee, 81, ii; ann. 1567: *s. v.* Botickee, 81, ii.  
*Bo-tree*; *s. v.* Bo Tree, 81, ii; ann. 1877: *s. v.* Vihara, 739, i.  
*Bo Tree*; *s. v.* 81, ii.  
*Bottle-connah*; ann. 1784: *s. v.* Bungalow, 99, i, *s. v.* Khanna, 366, i, *s. v.* Pucka, 555, ii.  
*Bottle-khanna*; *s. v.* Khanna, 366, i.  
*Bottle-Tree*; *s. v.* 81, ii; ann. 1880: *s. v.* 81, ii.  
*Boubalis*; *s. v.* Buffalo, 93, i.  
*Bouche du Tigre*; ann. 1782: *s. v.* Bocca Tigris, 76, ii.  
*Bondah*; ann. 1806: *s. v.* Buddha, 91, i.  
*Bouddas*; ann. 440: *s. v.* Buddha, 90, i.  
*Bouddha*; ann. ? : *s. v.* Dīnār, 245, ii.  
*Bouddhou*; ann. 1801: *s. v.* Buddha, 91, i.  
*Boué*; ann. 1782: *s. v.* Boy (b), 84, i.  
*Bougee Bougee*; ann. 1756: *s. v.* Budge-Budge, 768, i.  
*Bouguis*; *s. v.* Compound, 187, i.  
*Bouleponge*; ann. 1666: *s. v.* Punch, 559, i, twice.  
*Bounceloe*; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Bhoansla, 70, i.  
*Bonquises*; ann. 1656: *s. v.* Bugis, 95, ii.  
*Bourbon*, Isle of; *s. v.* Seychelle, 616, ii, 617, i; ann. 1716: *s. v.* Mort-de-chien, 450, ii.  
*Bourgades*; ann. 1750: *s. v.* Durbar, 255, i.  
*Bourhan-Bota*; ann. 1845: *s. v.* Bish, 73, i.  
*Bouro*; *s. v.* Cajeput, 109, ii.  
*Bourou*; *s. v.* Babi-roussa, 32, ii.  
*Boussa*; *s. v.* Buckshaw, 89, ii.  
*Bousserouque*; ann. 1653: *s. v.* Xerafine, 867, ii.  
*Bousuruques*; *s. v.* Budgrook, 92, ii; ann. 1610: *s. v.* Budgrook, 92, ii, twice.  
*Boutan*; ann. 1766: *s. v.* Sunyásee, 662, i.  
*Boutique*; *s. v.* 81, ii, 767, i, *s. v.* Botickee, 81, ii; ann. 1767: *s. v.* 767, i; ann. 1772, 1780 and 1834: *s. v.* 82, i.  
*Bouitta*; ann. 200: *s. v.* Buddha, 90, i.  
*Boutárou*; 578, ii, footnote.  
*Bouy*; ann. 1781: *s. v.* Souchong, 691, ii.  
*Bōvi*; *s. v.* Boy (b), 83, i.  
*Bowchier*; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Bashire, 102, i, *s. v.* Carrack, 126, ii.  
*Bowergurh*; *s. v.* Tank, 684, i.  
*Bowla*; *s. v.* 82, i.  
*Bowlee*; ann. 1876: *s. v.* Bowly, 82, ii.  
*Bowly*; *s. v.* 82, i, 767, i.  
*Bowry*; *s. v.* Bowly, 82, i.  
*Boxitas*; ann. 1800: *s. v.* Buxee, 103, ii.  
*Boxwālā*; *s. v.* Bora, 80, i, *s. v.* Boxwallah, 83, i, 3 times.  
*Boxwallah*; *s. v.* 83, i.  
*Boy*; *s. v.* 83, i, 5 times, see 568, i, footnote. ann. 1554: *s. v.* (b), 83, ii; ann. 1563: *s. v.*



- Mango, 423, ii, 424, i; ann. 1609: *s. v.* (a), 83, ii, twice; ann. 1673: *s. v.* (b), 84, i; ann. 1681 and 1696: *s. v.* (a), 83, ii; ann. 1716: *s. v.* Roundel, 583, i; ann. 1755-60: *s. v.* (b), 84, i; ann. 1771: *s. v.* Bearer, 764, i; ann. 1778: *s. v.* (b), 84, i; ann. 1784: *s. v.* (a), 83, ii; ann. 1785, 1804 and 1809: *s. v.* (b), 84, i; ann. 1825: *s. v.* Qui-hi, 568, i; ann. 1836: *s. v.* (a), 83, ii; ann. 1866: *s. v.* (a), 83, ii, *s. v.* Pooja, 546, ii; ann. 1872 and 1875: *s. v.* (a), 83, ii; ann. 1876: *s. v.* (a), 83, ii, *s. v.* Compradore, 189, i.
- Bóy; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Boy (b), 83, ii, twice.
- Boya; *s. v.* 84, i.
- Boyador; *s. v.* Quiloa, 568, ii.
- Bóy de sombreiro; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Mocuddum, 435, i.
- Boye; ann. 1610: *s. v.* Boy (b), 84, i.
- Boyhog; ann. 1604: *s. v.* Crease, 213, ii.
- Böyi; *s. v.* Boy (b), 83, i.
- Boze; *s. v.* Bonze, 79, i; ann. 1618: *s. v.* Bonze, 79, ii.
- Bo-zi; *s. v.* Bonze, 79, i.
- Bra; *s. v.* Pra, 845, i and ii.
- Brab; *s. v.* 84, i, *s. v.* Fan-palm, 266, i, *s. v.* Lontar, 396, i; ann. 1750-60: *s. v.* Toddy-bird, 707, i; ann. 1760: *s. v.* 84, ii, twice; ann. 1808: *s. v.* Bandaree, 760, ii; ann. 1809: *s. v.* 84, ii; ann. 1860: *s. v.* Palmyra, 507, i.
- Brabb; ann. 1673 and 1759: *s. v.* Brab, 84, ii.
- Brabo; ann. 1760: *s. v.* Brab, 84, ii.
- Bracalor; ann. 1516: *s. v.* Bacanore, 33, ii.
- Bracelor; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Bacanore, 34, i.
- Brachman; *s. v.* Brahmin, 84, ii; ann. 545: *s. v.* China, 151, ii; ann. 1060: *s. v.* Buddha, 90, ii; ann. 1663: *s. v.* Pundit, 561, i; ann. 1676, 1688 and 1714: *s. v.* Brahmin, 85, i.
- Brachmanse; ann. 1616: *s. v.* Pundit, 561, i.
- Brachmānas; B. C. 330 and 300: *s. v.* Brahmin, 84, ii.
- Brachmanes; ann. 1555: *s. v.* Brahmin, 84, ii; ann. 1615: *s. v.* Swamy (b), 671, ii; ann. 1616: *s. v.* Sunyāsee, 662, i.
- Brachmānes; ann. 500: *s. v.* Brahmin, 84, ii.
- Brachmani; ann. 1694: *s. v.* Sanskrit, 599, i.
- Bráchmas; ann. 500: *s. v.* Brahmin, 84, ii.
- Brachmin; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Brahminy Kite, 85, ii.
- Braganine; ann. 1584: *s. v.* Bargany, 761, ii, twice.
- Bragany; *s. v.* Bargany, 761, i.
- Bragmanse; ann. 60-70: *s. v.* Kling, 373, i.
- Bragmanorum; ann. 840: *s. v.* Buddha, 90, i.
- Brágmen; ann. 1578: *s. v.* Brahmin, 85, i.
- Brāhlā; *s. v.* Varella, 733, ii.
- Brāhm; ann. 1781: *s. v.* Sikh, 633, ii.
- Brahma; *s. v.* Brahmo-Somāj, 851, ii, twice; ann. 1666: *s. v.* Sanskrit, 599, i; ann. 1672: *s. v.* Chank, 141, i; ann. 1753: *s. v.* Burram-pooter, 768, ii; ann. 1810: *s. v.* Chowry, 165, ii.
- Brahmā; *s. v.* Burram-pooter, 101, ii.
- Brahma-desa; *s. v.* Burma, 100, ii.
- Brahman; *s. v.* Brahmin, 84, ii, *s. v.* Chandaui, 140, ii, *s. v.* Cranganore, 211, i, see 218, ii, footnote, *s. v.* Gooroo, 296, ii, *s. v.* Kling, 372, ii, *s. v.* Malabar Rites, 414, i, *s. v.* Mugg, 455, ii, *s. v.* Nambooree, 471, ii, *s. v.* Panchāngam, 507, i, *s. v.* Poorāna, 547, ii, *s. v.* Rajpoot, 571, ii, *s. v.* Saligram, 593, i and ii, *s. v.* Sanskrit, 598, i, twice, *s. v.* Soodra, 647, ii, *s. v.* Suttee, 667, i, twice, *s. v.* Vedas, 734, i, 4 times, *s. v.* Caste, 774, i, *s. v.* Nizamaluco, 830, i, *s. v.* Thakoor, 862, ii; ann. 400: *s. v.* Mandarin, 421, i; ann. 414: *s. v.* Java, 347, i; ann. 1045: *s. v.* Kling, 373, i; ann. 1318: *s. v.* Sanskrit, 598, ii; ann. 1578: *s. v.* Mort-de-chien, 450, i; ann. 1612: *s. v.* Cassanar, 131, i; ann. 1664: *s. v.* Lama, 383, i; ann. 1771: *s. v.* Banyan-Tree, 51, i; ann. 1778: *s. v.* Vedas, 735, ii; ann. 1797: *s. v.* Moor, 825, i; ann. 1833: *s. v.* Parvoe, 517, i; ann. 1850: *s. v.* Aryan, 28, i; ann. 1867: *s. v.* Soodra, 647, ii; ann. 1885: *s. v.* Dhurna, 791, ii, *s. v.* Saligram, 853, i.
- Bráhmān; *s. v.* Salootree, 594, i; ann. 1692: *s. v.* Padre, 497, ii; ann. 1837: *s. v.* Pali, 506, i.
- Brāhmān; ann. 1874: *s. v.* Hullia, 327, i.
- Brāhman; *s. v.* Coolin, 783, ii, twice.
- Brāhmaṇa; *s. v.* Brahmin, 84, ii.
- Brahmanes; ann. ? : *s. v.* Dinār, 245, ii.
- Brahmani; ann. 1712: *s. v.* Snake-stone, 644, i.
- Brāhmaṇi; *s. v.* Palmyras, Point, 507, i.
- Brahmanical; *s. v.* Suttee, 667, i, twice.
- Brahmanique; ann. ? : *s. v.* Dinār, 245, ii; ann. 1872: *s. v.* Suttee, 671, i.
- Brahmanism; *s. v.* Devil Worship, 238, i, *s. v.* Caste, 774, i.
- Brahmapoutra; ann. 1753: *s. v.* Cooch Azo, 783, ii.
- Brahmaputra; *s. v.* Assam, 28, i, *s. v.* Burram-pooter, 101, ii, *s. v.* Chiamay, 145, ii, *s. v.* Cooch Azo, 191, ii, *s. v.* Jennye, 350, ii, *s. v.*



- Jumna, 358, ii, *s. v.* Naga, 469, ii, *s. v.* Saul-wood, 603, i, *s. v.* Sunderbunds, 660, i, *s. v.* Munneepore, 826, ii, 827, i, footnote; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Burrampooter, 101, ii.  
 Brahmaputren; ann. 1753: *s. v.* Burrampooter, 768, ii.  
 Brahmen; ann. 1717: *s. v.* Soodra, 647, ii.  
 Brahmenē; ann. 1572: *s. v.* Brahmin, 84, ii.  
 Brahmenē; ann. 1753: *s. v.* Buddha, 767, ii.  
 Brahmes; ann. 1760: *s. v.* El'ora, 262, i.  
 Brahmin; *s. v.* 84, ii, *s. v.* Chuckerbutty, 166, ii, *s. v.* Jack, 336, i, *s. v.* Narcondam, 472, ii, *s. v.* Pandey, 509, i; ann. 150: *s. v.* 84, ii; ann. 1510: *s. v.* Nair, 471, i, *s. v.* Polea, 542, ii; ann. 1557: *s. v.* Nambeadarim, 471, ii; ann. 1590: *s. v.* Dwarka, 257, ii, *s. v.* Juggernaut, 356, ii, *s. v.* Vedas, 734, ii; ann. 1780: *s. v.* Law-officer, 818, ii; ann. 1799: *s. v.* Toshiaconna, 713, ii; ann. 1800: *s. v.* Pariah, 515, i; ann. 1803: *s. v.* Puhur, 557, ii, *s. v.* Jasoo, 810, ii; ann. 1805-6: *s. v.* Pariah, 515, i; ann. 1808: *s. v.* Junglo, 360, i, *s. v.* Sutte, 670, ii; ann. 1814: *s. v.* Zamoria, 746, i; ann. 1818: *s. v.* Pali, 506, i; ann. 1821: *s. v.* Banyan-Tree, 51, i; ann. 1823: *s. v.* Thug, 697, ii; ann. 1830: *s. v.* Padre, 497, ii; ann. 1858: *s. v.* Nirvāna, 480, ii; ann. 1875: *s. v.* Dhurna, To sit, 244, ii, twice.  
 Brahmin; ann. 1826: *s. v.* Jagheerdar, 341, ii.  
 Brahmini bull; ann. 1872: *s. v.* Brahminy Bull, 85, i.  
 Brahminical; *s. v.* El'ora, 261, ii, *s. v.* Jain, 341, ii, *s. v.* Juggernaut, 355, ii, *s. v.* Pagoda, 499, ii.  
 Brahminism; *s. v.* Lunka, 401, i.  
 Brahminy; ann. 1680: *s. v.* Roocka, 850, ii; ann. 1834: *s. v.* Rozye, 584, ii.  
 Brahminy Bull; *s. v.* 85, i, twice.  
 Brahminy bull; 579, ii, footnote, *s. v.* Zebu, 746, ii.  
 Brahminy Butter; *s. v.* 767, i, twice.  
 Brahminy Duck; *s. v.* 85, i, twice.  
 Brahminy Kite; *s. v.* 85, ii, *s. v.* Pariah-Kite, 516, i.  
 Brahmist; *s. v.* Brahmo-Somāj, 85, ii.  
 Brahmutr; *s. v.* Burrampooter, 101, ii.  
 Brahmo-Somāj; *s. v.* 85, ii.  
 Brahmo Somaj; ann. 1876: *s. v.* Brahmo-Somāj, 85, ii.  
 Brahman; ann. 1809: *s. v.* Tazee, 688, i; ann. ann. 1814: *s. v.* Lingam, 395, i.  
 Brakhta; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Kishm, 370, i.  
 Brakia; ann. 1000: *s. v.* Shulwaurs, 631, i.  
 Brama; ann. 1543: *s. v.* Burma, 768, ii; ann. 1606: *s. v.* Burma, 101, i; ann. 1623: *s. v.* Brab, 84, i; ann. 1652: *s. v.* Cochinchina, 174, ii.  
 Bramā; ann. 1545: *s. v.* Burma, 101, i.  
 Bramas; ann. 1545: *s. v.* Prome, 554, ii.  
 Bramah; ann. 1774 and 1778: *s. v.* Vedas, 735, ii.  
 Braman; ann. 1567: *s. v.* Casis, 130, ii; ann. 1717: *s. v.* Pandāram, 507, ii.  
 Bramane; ann. 1582: *s. v.* Brahmin, 85, i; ann. 1630: *s. v.* Brahmin, 85, i, *s. v.* Caste, 132, i, *s. v.* Pagoda (b), 501, ii; ann. 1718: *s. v.* Pandāram, 508, i.  
 Bramanpoutre; ann. 1753: *s. v.* Burrampooter, 768, ii.  
 Bramānan; *s. v.* Boro-Bodor, 81, ii.  
 Brame; ann. 1652: *s. v.* Chiamay, 145, ii; ann. 1760: *s. v.* Vedas, 735, ii; ann. 1779: *s. v.* Buddha, 91, i; ann. 1782: *s. v.* Poongee, 547, i; ann. 1791: *s. v.* Pundit, 561, i, twice.  
 Bramen; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Linguist, 395, i; ann. 1600: *s. v.* Granthum, 304, i.  
 Bramene; ann. 1623: *s. v.* Sanskrit, 599, i.  
 Bramin; *s. v.* Brahmin, 84, ii; ann. 1442: *s. v.* Jogee, 352, i; ann. 1516: *s. v.* Mainato, 410, ii; ann. 1520: *s. v.* Sutte, 668, ii; ann. 1648: *s. v.* Sutte, 670, i; ann. 1651: *s. v.* Panchāngam, 507, ii, *s. v.* Saiva, 591, ii; ann. 1689: *s. v.* Salaam, 592, i; ann. 1690: *s. v.* Mango-trick, 425, ii; ann. 1726: *s. v.* Chetty, 145, i, *s. v.* Pariah, 514, ii, *s. v.* Talee, 678, ii; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Granthum, 304, i, twice; ann. 1759: *s. v.* Sunnud, 661, ii; ann. 1760: *s. v.* Pandāram, 508, i, *s. v.* Chawbuck, 777, i; ann. 1770: *s. v.* Assam, 28, ii, *s. v.* Fakeer, 265, i, *s. v.* Vedas, 735, ii; ann. 1776: *s. v.* Shaster, 624, i, *s. v.* Tyre, 724, ii; ann. 1780: *s. v.* Cowle, 208, i; ann. 1789: *s. v.* Sepoy, 613, ii; ann. 1795: *s. v.* Pali, 506, i; ann. 1796: *s. v.* Snake-stone, 644, i; ann. 1798: *s. v.* Pundit, 561, i; ann. 1802: *s. v.* Tussah, 721, i; ann. 1809: *s. v.* Parvoe, 517, i; ann. 1810: *s. v.* Dubash, 253, i; ann. 1838: *s. v.* Swamy (a), 671, ii.  
 Bramine; ann. 1651: *s. v.* Sanskrit, 599, i, *s. v.* Vedas, 735, i; ann. 1726: *s. v.* Ram-Ram, 573, ii; ann. 1760: *s. v.* Poorāna, 547, ii, *s. v.* Vedas, 735, ii.  
 Braminy; ann. 1680: *s. v.* Congeveram, 782, ii.  
 Brammā; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Tavoy, 687, ii.



- Brām-mā; *s. v.* Burma, 100, ii.  
 Brammanes; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Nair, 471, i.  
 Brammhanicum; ann. 1777: *s. v.* Hindostanee, 317, ii.  
 Brammines; ann. 1632: *s. v.* Juggernaut, 356, ii.  
 Brammones; ann. 1444: *s. v.* Brahmin, 84, ii.  
 Bramp ore; ann. 1616: *s. v.* Coss, 203, i.  
 Bramport; ann. 1616: *s. v.* Cummerbund, 216, ii.  
 Branco; *s. v.* Blanks, 75, ii.  
 Brandal; *s. v.* Brandul, 85, ii.  
 Brand-geese; ann. 1672: *s. v.* Cyrus, 224, ii; ann. 1698: *s. v.* Coolung, 194, i.  
 Brandul; *s. v.* 85, ii.  
 Brandy; *s. v.* Brandy Coortee, 85, ii.  
 Brandy (Coortee); *s. v.* 767, i.  
 Brandy-coatee; *s. v.* Brandy Coortee, 85, ii.  
 Brandy Coortee; *s. v.* 85, ii.  
 Brandypawnee; *s. v.* 85, ii, *s. v.* Pawnee, 522, i; ann. 1866: *s. v.* 85, ii.  
 Brandy-shraub; *s. v.* Sherbet, 625, ii.  
 Brandy-shraubpauny; *s. v.* Brandypawnee, 85, ii.  
 Brantwein; *s. v.* Samshoo, 597, i.  
 Brasill; ann. 1598: *s. v.* Sappan-wood, 600, i; ann. 1625: *s. v.* Sappan-wood, 600, ii.  
 Brass; *s. v.* 86, i.  
 Brassica oleracea; *s. v.* Nol-kole, 830, ii.  
 Brasyll; ann. 1498: *s. v.* Tenasserim, 696, i.  
 Bratty; *s. v.* 86, i, *s. v.* Ooplah, 488, i.  
 Bräutigams; ann. 1733: *s. v.* Kincob, 369, ii.  
 Brava; *s. v.* 86, i, *s. v.* Brab, 84, i, *s. v.* Quilon, 568, ii; ann. 1514: *s. v.* Magadoxo, 408, ii; ann. 1516: *s. v.* 86, i; ann. 1666: *s. v.* Brab, 84, i.  
 Brava Chilve; ann. 1514: *s. v.* Magadoxo, 408, ii.  
 Bra-Wijaya; *s. v.* Pra, 845, i.  
 Brawls; *s. v.* Piece-goods, 535, ii.  
 Brazil; *s. v.* Brazil-wood, 86, i, twice, *s. v.* Sappan-wood, 600, i; ann. 1275: *s. v.* Ceylon, 138, ii; ann. 1519: *s. v.* Sweet Potato, 673, i; ann. 1552 and 1554: *s. v.* Brazil-wood, 86, ii, ann. 1875: *s. v.* Cavally, 775, i.  
 Brazil; ann. 1506: *s. v.* Tenasserim, 696, i.  
 Brazil cherry; *s. v.* Tiparry, 703, ii.  
 Brazill; ann. 1641: *s. v.* Brazil-wood, 86, ii.  
 Brazill wood; ann. 1685: *s. v.* Sappan-wood, 600, ii.  
 Brazil-wood; *s. v.* 86, i, *s. v.* Quilon, 569, i, *s. v.* Sappan-wood, 600, i, *s. v.* Sweet Potato, 673, i; ann. 1330: *s. v.* 86, i; ann. 1420-30: *s. v.* Malabar, 412, ii; ann. 1430: *s. v.* Tenasserim, 695, ii; ann. 1567: *s. v.* Siam, 632, i; ann. 1568: *s. v.* Mergni, 434, i.  
 Breach; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Mazagong, 432, i, *s. v.* Paddy 496, i.  
 Breachrandy; *s. v.* Foras Lands, 272, ii.  
 Bread-fruit; ann. 1440: *s. v.* Jack, 337, ii.  
 Bream; ann. 1626: *s. v.* Cavally, 135, ii.  
 Breech-Candy; *s. v.* 767, i.  
 Brehon Laws; ann. 1885: *s. v.* Dhurna, 791, ii.  
 Bremá; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Jangomay, 343, ii.  
 Brenem; ann. 1570: *s. v.* Sappan-wood, 600, i.  
 Bchat Sanhitā; *s. v.* Gurjaut, 309, i.  
 Bridge; *s. v.* India, 329, ii, 3 times.  
 Bridgemán; *s. v.* 86, ii.  
 Brigantines; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Calputtee, 114, i.  
 Brih; *s. v.* Brahmin, 84, ii.  
 Brihaddevatā; ann. 1872: *s. v.* Suttees, 671, i.  
 Brihat Sanhitā; ann. 550: *s. v.* Carnatic, 126, i.  
 Bri-mdzo; *s. v.* Zobo, 750, ii.  
 Brindōes; *s. v.* Corcopali, 196, ii.  
 Bringal; ann. 1813: *s. v.* Brinjal, 87, ii.  
 Bringe; ann. 1580: *s. v.* Curry, 218, ii.  
 Bringela; ann. 1740: *s. v.* Brinjal, 87, ii.  
 Bringella; *s. v.* Brinjal, 86, ii.  
 Bringiela; *s. v.* Brinjal, 86, ii.  
 Brinj; *s. v.* Brinjarry, 87, ii.  
 Brinjaal; ann. 1810: *s. v.* Brinjal, 87, ii.  
 Brinjal; *s. v.* Conbalingua, 189, i; ann. 1860: *s. v.* Brinjal, 87, ii; ann. 1875: *s. v.* Chitchky, 156, ii.  
 Brinjal; *s. v.* Bilayutree pawnee, 71, i.  
 Brinjalles; ann. 1783: *s. v.* Brinjal, 87, ii.  
 Brinjara; *s. v.* Zingari, 749, ii.  
 Brinjārā; *s. v.* Brinjarry, 87, ii.  
 Brinjaree; *s. v.* Brinjarry, 88, i; ann. 1810: *s. v.* Vanjārās, 88, ii; ann. 1829: *s. v.* Pindarry, 539, ii.  
 Brinjarree; ann. 1825: *s. v.* Vanjārās, 88, ii.  
 Brinjarry; *s. v.* 87, ii, twice, *s. v.* Naik, 471, i; ann. 1793: *s. v.* Vanjārās, 88, ii; ann. 1800: *s. v.* Vanjārās, 88, ii, *s. v.* Cowle, 208, i; ann. 1877: *s. v.* Vanjārās, 88, ii.  
 Brinjarry; *s. v.* Lamballie, 383, ii.  
 Brinjary; ann. 1820: *s. v.* Taut, 687, ii.  
 Brinjal; *s. v.* 86, ii, twice, *s. v.* Bangun, 45, ii.  
 Brinjela; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Brinjal, 87, i.  
 Brinz; *s. v.* Rice, 578, i.  
 Brioche; *s. v.* Sheermanul, 625, ii.  
 Brisi; *s. v.* Rice, 578, i, twice.  
 Britain, N.; *s. v.* Cassowary, 131, i.  
 Briton, Capo de; ann. 1612: *s. v.* Penguin, 527, ii.



- Briun; *s. v.* Rice, 578, i.  
 Broach; *s. v.* 88, ii, 767, i, *s. v.* Candahar, 119, i, *s. v.* Factory, 264, i, *s. v.* Goozerat, 296, ii, *s. v.* Regur, 576, i; ann. 80: *s. v.* 89, i, 3 times; ann. 1150: *s. v.* Sindābūr, 635, i; ann. 1321: *s. v.* Supāra, 663, i; ann. 1808: *s. v.* Dubber, 253, ii, *s. v.* Juttee, 355, i; ann. 1825: *s. v.* Bora, 80, ii.  
 Broach Baftas; ann. 1672: *s. v.* Bafta, 35, ii.  
 Broach Gate; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Choky, 158, ii.  
 Brobdignag; ann. 1830: *s. v.* Alligator-pear, 10, i.  
 Brodera; *s. v.* Baroda, 52, ii, *s. v.* Factory, 264, i; ann. 1813: *s. v.* Baroda, 53, i.  
 Brodra; ann. 1638: *s. v.* Baroda, 53, i.  
 Brohmoputro; ann. 1809: *s. v.* Gavial, 800, ii.  
 Broichia; ann. 1648: *s. v.* Broach, 767, i.  
 Broitschea; ann. 1638: *s. v.* Baroda, 53, i.  
 Brokht; *s. v.* Kishm, 370, i.  
 Brokt; ann. 1682: *s. v.* Kishm, 814, ii.  
 Bromelia Ananas; *s. v.* Ananas, 17, i.  
 Bron; *s. v.* Rice, 578, i.  
 Brun; *s. v.* Prome, 554, ii.  
 Brunai; *s. v.* Borneo, 80, ii.  
 Bruné; *s. v.* Borneo, 80, ii.  
 Brunei; *s. v.* Borneo, 80, ii, *s. v.* Factory, 264, ii.  
 Bruneo; ann. 1584: *s. v.* Borneo, 81, i.  
 Buah-nona; *s. v.* Custard-Apple, 220, ii.  
 Bu-Ali Kotwal; ann. 1040: *s. v.* Cotwal, 206, i.  
 Buspanganghi; ann. 1522: *s. v.* Coco-de-Mer, 177, ii.  
 Buspaty; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Cospetir, 202, i.  
 Busduco; ann. 1613: *s. v.* Rambotang, 573, i.  
 Bubac; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Sheeah, 625, i.  
 Bubalus; *s. v.* Buffalo, 93, i, twice; ann. 70, 90 and 1580: *s. v.* Buffalo, 93, ii.  
 Butalus arni; *s. v.* Buffalo, 93, ii.  
 Bubaxia; ann. 1612: *s. v.* Sarnau, 601, ii.  
 Buddam; ann. 840: *s. v.* Buddha, 90, ii.  
 Bub lo; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Buckshaw, 89, ii.  
 Buccal; ann. 1800: *s. v.* Buckaul, 90, i.  
 Buccaly; ann. 1780: *s. v.* Puckanly, 556, ii.  
 Buccaneers; 25, i, footnote.  
 Bucephala; ann. 250: *s. v.* Shama, 620, ii.  
 Buceros; *s. v.* Toucan, 714, i.  
 Buchse; *s. v.* Buxerry, 104, ii.  
 Buck; *s. v.* 89, i; ann. 1880: *s. v.* 89, i.  
 Buckaul; *s. v.* 90, i.  
 Buckeer; *s. v.* China-Buckeer, 153, i.  
 Buckor; ann. 1616: *s. v.* Sucker-Bucker, 652, ii.  
 Buckor succor; ann. 1616: *s. v.* Sucker-Bucker, 652, ii.  
 Buckram; ann. 1781: *s. v.* Cochín Leg, 174, ii.  
 Buckserria; ann. 1772: *s. v.* Buxerry, 769, ii.  
 Buckshaw; *s. v.* 89, ii, twice; ann. 1760: *s. v.* 89, ii.  
 Buckshee; ann. 1804: *s. v.* Buxee, 104, i.  
 Bucksheesh; *s. v.* 89, ii, 767, i, *s. v.* Cumshaw, 216, ii.  
 Buckshish; 839, i, footnote; ann. 1823: *s. v.* Bucksheesh, 89, ii.  
 Buckshoe; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Buckshaw, 89, ii.  
 Buckyne; *s. v.* 90, i, *s. v.* Lilac, 394, i, *s. v.* Neem, 476, ii.  
 Budao; ann. 1610: *s. v.* Buddha, 91, i.  
 Budas; ann. 1060: *s. v.* Buddha, 90, ii, twice.  
 Budāsaf; ann. 904: *s. v.* Buddha, 90, ii, 3 times.  
 Budd; ann. 870: *s. v.* Buddha, 90, ii, twice; ann. 880: *s. v.* Diul-Sind, 247, i.  
 Budda; ann. 1080: *s. v.* Buddha, 90, ii; ann. 1753: *s. v.* Buddha, 767, ii, twice.  
 Buddam; ann. 400: *s. v.* Buddha, 90, i.  
 Buddfattan; ann. 1342: *s. v.* Pudipatan, 557, i.  
 Buddh; ann. 1825: *s. v.* Kennery, 365, i; ann. 1879: *s. v.* Milk-bush, 823, ii.  
 Buddha; *s. v.* 90, i and ii, both twice, 767, i and ii (twice), *s. v.* Boro-Bodor, 81, i, twice, *s. v.* Candahar, 119, i, *s. v.* Candy, 119, ii, *s. v.* Dagon, 226, i, 226, ii, footnote, *s. v.* Gautama, 279, i and ii, *s. v.* Jain, 342, i, *s. v.* Nerbudda, 478, i, *s. v.* Pagoda, 499, ii, *s. v.* Pra, 551, i, 4 times, *s. v.* Saul-wood, 603, i; ann. 240: *s. v.* 90, i; ann. 400: *s. v.* Chuckerbutty, 166, ii, twice, *s. v.* Peshawur, 531, ii; ann. 414: *s. v.* Java, 347, i; ann. 460: *s. v.* Chuckerbutty, 166, ii; ann. 1060: *s. v.* 91, i; ann. 1161: *s. v.* Camboja, 115, ii; ann. 1681: *s. v.* Dewally (b), 238, ii; ann. 1828: *s. v.* Gautama, 279, ii; ann. 1834: *s. v.* Dagoba, 226, i, twice; ann. 1858: *s. v.* Nirvána, 480, ii; ann. 1861: *s. v.* Mandalay, 420, ii; ann. 1869: *s. v.* Nirvána, 481, i; ann. 1878: *s. v.* Shintoo, 628, i; am. 1879: *s. v.* Nirvána, 481, i.  
 Buddhism; *s. v.* Buddha, 90, i, *s. v.* Burma, 100, ii, *s. v.* Jain, 341, ii, *s. v.* Jogee, 351, ii, *s. v.* Lunka, 401, i, *s. v.* Nirvána, 480, ii, *s. v.* Nowbehār, 482, i, *s. v.* Pra, 551, ii, *s. v.* Buddha, 767, ii, *s. v.* Caste, 774, i, *s. v.* Pailoo, 836, i; ann. 1060: *s. v.* Buddha, 91, i; ann. 1829: *s. v.* Shaman, 621, i; ann. 1878: *s. v.* Shintoo, 628, i.



- Buddhist; *s. v.* Arakan, 24, ii, *s. v.* Bonze, 79, i, twice, *s. v.* Boro-Bodor, 81, ii, *s. v.* Bo Tree, 81, ii, *s. v.* Buddha, 90, i, *s. v.* Burma, 100, ii, *s. v.* Buxee, 103, i, 3 times, *s. v.* Cooch Behar, 191, i, *s. v.* Cospetir, 201, ii, *s. v.* Dagoba, 225, ii, 3 times, *s. v.* Diul-Sind, 247, i, *s. v.* Dondera Head, 249, ii, *s. v.* Ell'ora, 261, ii, *s. v.* Gautama, 279, i, *s. v.* Gyelong, 309, ii, *s. v.* India, 329, ii, *s. v.* Juggernaut, 355, ii, *s. v.* Kling, 372, i, *s. v.* Kulá, 378, ii, *s. v.* Lama, 388, i, *s. v.* Mugg, 455, ii, *s. v.* Naga, 469, ii, *s. v.* Nirvána, 480, ii, *s. v.* Pagoda, 499, ii, *s. v.* Pali, 505, ii, twice, *s. v.* Panthay (A), 511, i, *s. v.* Poongee, 547, i, *s. v.* Pracrit, 552, i, *s. v.* Shaman, 621, i, twice, *s. v.* Shan, 622, ii, *s. v.* Supára, 663, i, *s. v.* Talapoin, 677, i, *s. v.* Tope (c), 712, i, *s. v.* Tumlook, 717, i, *s. v.* Vihara, 738, ii, 3 times, *s. v.* Behar, 764, ii, *s. v.* Benares, 764, ii, *s. v.* Buddha, 767, i and ii (twice), *s. v.* Kyoung, 816, i, *s. v.* Lát, 817, i; ann. 1190: *s. v.* Buddha, 767, ii; ann. 1300: *s. v.* Sindábūr, 635, i; ann. 1608: *s. v.* Champa, 140, ii; ann. 1837: *s. v.* Pali, 506, i, 3 times; ann. 1856: *s. v.* Chuckerbutty, 167, i; ann. 1858 and 1869: *s. v.* Nirvána, 480, ii.
- Buddhistic; *s. v.* Boro-Bodor, 81, i, twice.
- Buddhisto; *s. v.* Shan, 622, ii.
- Buddhos; ann. 1837: *s. v.* Pali, 506, i.
- Buddou; ann. 1681: *s. v.* Vihara, 738, ii; ann. 1770: *s. v.* Buddha, 91, i.
- Budfattan; ann. 1516: *s. v.* Pudipatan, 557, i.
- Budge Boodjee; ann. 1763: *s. v.* Budge-Budge, 768, i.
- Budge-Budge; *s. v.* 767, ii.
- Budgero; ann. 1683: *s. v.* Saugor, 603, i; ann. 1684: *s. v.* Devil's Reach, 790, ii; ann. 1783: *s. v.* Budgerow, 92, i.
- Budgeroe; ann. 1679: *s. v.* Woolock, 741, ii; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Budgerow, 91, ii.
- Budgerook; ann. 1510: *s. v.* Pardao, 840, ii; ann. 1711: *s. v.* Budgrook, 93, i.
- Budgerow; *s. v.* 91, ii, 3 times, see 522, i, footnote, *s. v.* Peenus, 523, ii; ann. 1683: *s. v.* Gardens, 278, ii; ann. 1764: *s. v.* Sunderbunds, 858, ii; ann. 1780: *s. v.* Paunchway, 521, ii; ann. 1781: *s. v.* 92, i, *s. v.* Manjee, 427, i, *s. v.* Woolock, 741, ii; ann. 1784: *s. v.* 92, i, *s. v.* Manjee, 427, i, *s. v.* Peenus, 523, ii; ann. 1785 and 1794 (twice): *s. v.* 92, i; ann. 1824: *s. v.* Pulwah, 558, i.
- Budgrook; *s. v.* 92, i, 93, i, 768, i; ann. 1548: *s. v.* Sind, 634, ii; ann. 1584: *s. v.* Shroff, 630, i; ann. 1608-10: *s. v.* Curry, 218, ii; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Reas, 575, i; ann. 1677: *s. v.* 92, ii, *s. v.* Rupee, 587, i.
- Budgrows; ann. 1737: *s. v.* Budgerow, 91, ii.
- Búdhásaf; ann. 1000: *s. v.* Buddha, 90, ii.
- Budhul; ann. 1590: *s. v.* Jack, 338, i.
- Budhum; ann. 1728: *s. v.* Buddha, 91, i, twice.
- Budiecas; *s. v.* Pateca, 519, i and ii (footnote).
- Budkhāna; ann. 1343: *s. v.* Jogee, 352, i.
- Budkhānah; ann. 1345: *s. v.* Anchediva, 20, i.
- Budlee; *s. v.* 768, i, *s. v.* Muddle, 455, i.
- Budmash; ann. 1844: *s. v.* Budmash, 93, i; ann. 1866: *s. v.* Budmash, 93, i, *s. v.* Poggie, 542, ii.
- Budmash; *s. v.* 93, i.
- Buduftun; ann. 1516: *s. v.* Pudipatan, 557, i.

(To be continued.)

## MISCELLANEA.

## SOME OLD INDO-EUROPEAN TERMS FOR BOATS.

BY R. C. TEMPLE.

THESE remarks have arisen out of a statement and an illustration occurring in a MS. of 1669-70 by T. B[ateman], usually quoted as "T. B., Asia, etc.," fol., 100. "A purgoo: These Vse for the most part between Hugly and Pyplo and Ballasore: with these boats they carry goods into y<sup>e</sup> Roads On board English and Dutch, etc., Ships, they will

lieue a longe time in y<sup>e</sup> Sea: beinge brought to anchor by y<sup>e</sup> Sterne, as theire Vusual way is."

This passage is quoted in Anderson's *English Intercourse with Siam*, p. 266, who was given it by Yule with this remark:—"J. [i. e., T.] B., the author, gives a rough drawing. It represents the *Purgoe* as a somewhat high-sterned lighter, not very large, with five oar-pins a side. I cannot identify it exactly with any kind of modern boat of which I have found a representation. It is perhaps most like the *palwār*. I think it must be an Orissa word, but I have not been able to trace



it in any dictionary, Uriyā or Bengali." The modern Indian palwar (Malay, palwa) is a skiff, and would not answer the description. Anderson, *loc. cit.*, mentions that in 1685 several "well-laden Purgoes" and boats had put in for shelter at Ramēswaram to the northward of Madapollam," i. e., on the Coromandel Coast. There seems to be no such word known there now.

I think, however, that the term purgoo is probably an obsolete Anglo-Indian corruption of an Indian corruption of the Portuguese term barco, barca. Thus, 1510. "Into the Island Çuaquem [Suakin] they imported many spices from India and there they embarked in shallops [gelua-jaliā] (which are a kind of barques [barcos], like caravelas which ply in the Straits) . . . and there they took passage in barges [barcas] and in a few days' time reached Cairo." Dalboquerque, *Hak. Soc. Ed.*, II., 230. In 1498, Vasco da Gama, *Hak. Soc. Ed.*, p. 107, in his *Malaydīam Vocabulary* translates barca by çambuco [sanbūq. Ar., sailing boat for going ashore], and he habitually used the word for any kind of sailing boat (*op. cit.* 240). At p. 77 occurs "about a league below Calicut about seventy boats [barcas] approached," which barcas Castanheda called tones. These the *Hak. Soc.* Editor calls by a mistake "rowing-boats." The dhony, dhoney, Tam. tōṇi, is a large shallow sailing boat, 70 ft. by 20 ft. beam.

The above quotations seem to establish the fact that barca was used for any kind of sailing boat by the early Portuguese visitors to the East.

The prow, with all its variants, parò, parao, pharao, proe, provoe, praw, pairau, and its double derivation from the Malayalam pāru and the Malay prāu, prāhu, has all along been used as a generic term for any kind of sailing vessel, especially for those taking cargoes and passengers to and from the early travellers' ships.

To the many quotations given by Yule, *Hobson-Jobson*, s. v. prow, I would add the following referring to the pāru of the Indian West Coast. 1508:—A parao filled with the corpses of the principal Moors, who had been killed in action was sent drifting to shore towards the city." Dalboquerque, *Hak. Soc. Ed.*, II., liii. 1623:—October the sixteenth. In the Morning we discern'd four Ships of Malabar Rovers near the shore (they

called them Paroes and they goe with Oars like Galeots or Foists). *Della Valle, Hak. Soc. Ed.*, II., 201. The foist, Port. fusta, was a small sailing vessel. But the identification of parao with the Malayalam pāru is shown by Pyrard de Laval (1611): "The Portuguese call their own galiots Navires (navios) and those of the Malabars Pairaus. Most of these vessels were Chetils,<sup>1</sup> that is to say merchantmen. Immediately on arrival the Malabars draw up their Pados or galiots on the beach. I was witness to the most gallant behaviour on the part of one of these Pados which was returning from war." *Hak. Soc. Ed.*, II., 345.

Then again there was the Anglo-Indian parr or parra suggesting the Dakhani word parwā (*cf.* palwa and palwar above), used for a large boat. 1684:—Jan. 12. Recd. a Generall from Vizagapatam p<sup>r</sup> a Parr dated 4th instant . . . Nov. 3. Also Several Parras and other larg boat in our River broak and blown beyond Recovery. *Mad. Cons. Pringle's Ed.* pp. 6, 132, and note, p. 165 f.

There were, therefore, several words of varying origin, closely allied in sound, in use for small sailing-vessels and large boats, which were used also for boats generically. Indeed the variants seem endless: *vide* Linschoten, c. 1584. "In small boates called Tones and Pallenges [or Palegas] bring them aboard." *Hak. Soc. Ed.*, II., 191.

But the prow from its Malay derivation of prāhu was mixed up with the pirogue (French for a canoe) and possibly the Portuguese peragua, a fast sailing-vessel. 1703:—They saw also near the City of Bantam above sixty little Barks which the Inhabitants call Praos, Prauwen or Pirogues. The Sails and Tackling are the same with those of the Jonques. Those were Fishermen Boats." *Coll. of Dutch Voyages*, 145. Elsewhere, *loc. cit.*, pp. 138, 144 (misprinted piroque) and 137 ("the Crew of the Lion met with a little Pirogue or Indian Boat"), the compiler nearly always uses pirogue for prāhu, though sometimes for a canoe or small boat (p. 282).

The old French writers do not, however, seem to have themselves used pirogue in the East for a canoe. In the *Premier Livre de L'Histoire de la Navigation aux Indes Orientales par les Hollandois*, 1609, we find, fol. 8:—"Ils en font de Canaas [elsewhere in the book always Canoaas]

<sup>1</sup> I. e., cheffi. For the interesting i in this word see ante, Vol. XXVI. p. 245, n. 40.



ou Barques, de moyenne grandeur, d'une seule piece." Fol. 13: — "Ainsi navigans en compagnie de Paraos nous vinsmes la où nous trouvâmes trois ou quatre Canoas." Fol. 20: — "En un Golphe ou pays de Iava veismes un Ionco, qui est un bateau de Iava." On fol. 23 there is a "Delineation sur le vif" of a fight between the Dutch fleet and 24 paraos and ioncos de Iava where the paraos are armed boats and the ioncos sailing vessel. Chap. 33 (fol. 35 ff.) is entitled "Des Fustes, Galeottes, navires ou Ioncos, Pharaos, Barques de guerre & esquifs en Iava & lieux circonvoisins & les lieux où pour le plus basty," with an illustration which shows the ioncos to be ships, the paraos to be sailing-vessels or barques, and the fishing boats (canoas) to be outriggered canoes. In 1696 the *Voyage de Siam des Peres Jesuites*, p. 133, says: — "Cependant il venoit a toute heure à bord une infinité du Canots de Javans qu'ils appellent **Praux**" with an illustration of the "Rade de Bantam" showing a sailing Prau and a Canot or fishing Prau (outriggered Canoe). In the *Journal en suite du Voyage de Siam* (Amsterdam reprint, 1687), under 16 Aoust (1685) we read: — "Le Chevalier de Fourbin est parti ce matin à une heure après minuit dans le canot" (p. 117). And under Septembre 26, "A huit heures du soir est arrivé un petit canot Siamois." The English translation of the *Voyage de Siam*, London, 1688, p. 95, has: "In the mean time vast numbers of the Javaners Canoes, which they call **Praux**, came on Board of us every minute." And it gives the plan of the "Rade de Bantam" in facsimile.

All this information is exactly on a par with that from Lockyer. 1711: — "The large Proes will carry fourteen or fifteen Tun and are chiefly employ'd in profitable Voyages to the Coasts of Pegu, Malacca, etc. But their flying Proes are only for fishing, coasting and visiting the Islands thereabouts." — *Trade in India*, 45. But at p. 92 he has: — "4 Cochin-Chinese Gallies with Prows, which mounted to in all 65 and in them about 300 Soldiers."

That the Malay prahu was used for any kind of sailing vessel is neatly evidenced by a queer contribution to *Asiatic Researches*, 1818, Vol. XII. p. 129 ff., on the "Maritime Institutions of the Malays." At p. 130, we read, "these are the Laws to be enforced in Ships, Junks and Prahus;" but throughout the Rules that follow prahu is used for every kind of ship indiscriminately. This is of course evidence independent of the direct statement of all Malay scholars, Raffles, Marsden, Crawford, Maxwell, Swettenham, etc., that prahu,

prahu is a generic term for a vessel of any kind on the water.

As regards purgoo, purgoe, purga, porgo, byrgoe, the evidence is as follows: —

1669-79. — T. B. shows in the text above quoted that the purgoo was a lighter for goods at "Hugly, Pyplo and Ballasore." It probably could also sail.

1680. — "A porgo drove ashore in the Bay about Pepley, laden with the Company's Petre." — *Mad. Consult.* See also Yule, *Suppl. s. v. porgo*. No doubt these boats were identical with those T. B. alluded to.

1683. — "The Thomas arrived with y<sup>e</sup> 28 Bales of Silk taken out of the Purga." — *Hedges, Hak. Soc. Ed.*, I., 65. At p. 63 we read: "forcing away y<sup>e</sup> Master and all y<sup>e</sup> men of y<sup>e</sup> boat whereon y<sup>e</sup> remainder of our Decca fine cloth and 28 Bales of Silk were laden." So the purga was a "boat" of the lighter class. At p. 64 it was "y<sup>e</sup> boat we brought from Hugly."

1685. — Anderson's statement above quoted from the Madapollam Records presumes the purgoo to have been a freight-boat.

1685. — Pringle notes in *Mad. Cons.* for 1684, p. 165: — "(porgo occurs) in Hoogly letter to Fort St. George, dated 6th February 1684-5 coupled with bora (Hind. bhar, a lighter), but in his 1685 vol. he does not quote the letter.

The purgoo then was a barge (barca) confused with the bark (barco), just as the sail-less barge and the sailing bark have been confused in the West. *Vide Leguat*, 1692, *Hak. Soc. Ed.*, I., 107: — "We were to build a pretty big Boat . . . . Our Bark was twenty Foot long at the Keel six broad and four deep, we rounded it at both ends."

I close these notes with two useful quotations towards the history of the word Prow.

1686. — The natives are very ingenious beyond any people in making Boats or proes, as they are called in the East Indies, and therein they take great delight. [Describing a canoe with an "out-lager," i. e., outrigger]. — *Dampier, New Voyage*, 2nd Ed., 1697, p. 298 f.

1813. — The Malay and Buggess [Bugis] proas . . . . used to come here [Junkceylon] to exchange their produce." — *Milburn, Commerce*, 11. p. 292.



## NOTES AND QUERIES.

## Screetore — Secretary.

*Ante*, Vol. XXIX. p. 116, I explained that the word *screetore* was, in its various Anglo-Indian forms, a corruption of the auctioneers' and furniture-dealers' word *escritoire* for a fancy writing-table (*bureau*). I give here a still further corruption of it from a furniture-dealer's book. A would-be antique book called "The Compiler | Furniture and Decorations | Choice and select Designs | from the best Authors | Compiled and Published | by B. Charles designer | 14 Fulham Road South Kensington | London, 1879" has come into my hands. At p. 109 are two designs copied from Ince of fancy writing tables. Putting Ince's date at about 1750 we get at a date for the quaint heading of the designs.

c. 1750. — "Lady's Secretary's. W. Ince invt. et del. M. Darly sculp. (Designed by W. Ince, contemporary to Chippendale.)"

R. C. TEMPLE.

## SOME HINDU SUPERSTITIONS IN THE CENTRAL PROVINCES.

1. When a sick person is at the point of death, the howling of dogs, or the hover or scream of kites, denotes that celestial beings are about to take the departing soul up into the heavens.

2. If a mother complains of failure of milk, the old women of the household go at once to the nearest well, circumambulate it, burn incense and make offerings of cocoanut and libations of milk and water. At each libation the following prayer is offered:—"O merciful Gangā, fill my breasts with as heavy a volume as thine own bosom bears."

3. Weapons of all sorts are supposed to bear animosity, as such, towards human beings. The way to secure yourself against the enmity of any particular weapon is to knock it several times against Mother Earth.

4. The slaying of a cat is a great sin, and to expiate it, you must eat its tail, or, if you can afford it, you should make a golden cat and give it in charity to a temple.

5. Drought is said to be caused by throwing pieces of iron out of the house during a shower of rain. There is, however, a doubt about this, and some say that it is a good thing to do as the pieces of iron will act as lightning conductors.

6. The surest way of bringing about a drought is to bury a female corpse with a foetus in its womb. The only cure for this is to exhume the body and take the foetus out and then bury it again. If a woman is buried when pregnant at a time of year which is not the autumn there will be no rain in consequence during the next rainy season.

7. If a child is afflicted with a bad cold it is sufficient for the mother to seat it in the lap of a brother or sister, or of any old woman failing the first two, and pour into the child's nostrils a mixture of sesamum oil boiled with flies and garlic.

8. When a child is learning to walk and falls on the ground, the mother should spit on the spot and kick it and at the same time abuse the ground. This she should do to drive away the hungry imps and devils that are always prowling about to do mischief and have brought about the fall of the child.

M. R. PADLOW.

## SOME CORRUPTIONS OF ENGLISH FROM PORT BLAIR.

1. "Portland Cement" becomes *simin*, *simint* and *sirmit*.

2. "Mess, mess-house" becomes *messcott* in petitions, being a mixture of Eng. "mess" and Hind. *kof*, house.

3. *Kwangtung*, the name of a local ship, becomes *Kultin*.

4. *Bablanse quio* is the form on a menu that bubble and squeak, the favorite dish of the native cook, sometimes assumes.

R. C. TEMPLE.



## BOOK-NOTICE.

A HISTORY OF SANSKRIT LITERATURE, by ARTHUR A. MACDONELL, M.A., Ph.D., of Corpus Christi College, Oxford; Boden Professor of Sanskrit and Fellow of Balliol. (Short histories of the Literatures of the World, IX. London: William Heinemann, 1900.)

PROFESSOR MACDONELL has given us a thoroughly interesting and readable account of a great subject. His book is a popular book in the best sense of the word: but it is much more than this. The judiciously selected bibliographies, which he has added to his chapters, will be of the greatest utility to the student, who wishes to make a more minute investigation of any particular branch of Sanskrit literature.

Such a book, giving a comprehensive view of the whole, and, at the same time, affording a clue to the study of the different parts, was very greatly needed in English. European students, indeed, usually know enough German to be able to use German works, and they have had for the last thirteen years Prof. L. von Schroeder's *Indische Literatur und Kultur*, the scope of which is much the same as that of the present work. But Native Indian students are not, as a rule, similarly equipped; and everyone who has had to teach Native students must have experienced a difficulty which will now be removed by this hand-book.

Summarizing, as it does, the results of a host of special monographs, Prof. Macdonell's book contains in many respects, and especially in regard to the *Veda*, a much fuller account of the gains of modern scholarship than is to be found elsewhere in any one volume. For example, his accounts of the composition of the *Rig-Veda*, of the criteria by the application of which the relative ages of its different parts may be discovered, of the Vedic metres and their development within the *Veda* itself, etc., together constitute a most useful *résumé* of the results of highly specialised research.

The great change which has of recent years come over the investigation of the history of Indian culture lies in the recognition of the fact that the Aryan in India possessed greater originality than he was previously credited with. Formerly he was allowed to have an infinite capacity for "brooding

over" ideas which he had conveyed from others, but his power of initiating such ideas was denied. It was almost assumed that the invasion of Alexander the Great and the settlement of the Bactrian Greeks in Northern India had completely dominated all subsequent Indian culture. Now, on the other hand, it is difficult to mention any science or art in which some original efforts and some degree of progress are not, by general consent, conceded to India. Astronomy, mathematics, law, grammar, coinage — all these had beginnings and a more or less perfect development in India itself. Especially true is this of every branch of literature. As Prof. Macdonell points out, "The importance of ancient Indian literature as a whole largely consists in its originality. Naturally isolated by its gigantic mountain barrier in the north, the Indian peninsula has ever since the Aryan invasion formed a world apart, over which a unique form of Aryan civilisation rapidly spread, and has ever since prevailed." In this remark on the literature generally, Prof. Macdonell includes the drama, thus agreeing with the greater number of scholars now-a-days that the Indian drama had an independent origin. The attempt to derive it from a Greek source, like the attempt to trace the influence of Greek novelists in the Sanskrit romances, was really only one manifestation of what was, at one time, an almost universal bias, singularly ill-supported by any kind of tangible evidence.<sup>1</sup>

The statement on p. 413, that Kanishka was a Çaka king and the founder of the Çaka era should be modified. On his coins he is called a Kushana, not a Çaka. The whole question of the origin of the Çaka Era is at present in a great state of uncertainty, and it cannot be said that recent contributions to the discussion have done much to enlighten us on the subject.

Professor Macdonell is to be congratulated on his courage in omitting what has hitherto been a constant feature of all works on Sanskrit literature — Goethe's little poem on Çakuntalâ. Like Schopenhauer's equally exaggerated estimate of the *Upanishads*, it has lured many an honest soul on to bitter disappointment.

E. J. RAPSON.

<sup>1</sup> One will really not be sorry when the last is heard of the argument derived from *gavandîkâ*, "the Greek cloth." When Macaulay's New Zealander undertakes to investigate the English drama, and discovers that, in our theatres, portions of the floor and stage were often covered with Turkey carpet, that the walls were dusted with a brush called a Turk's head, that, during the

intervals, the denizens of the humbler parts of the house regaled themselves with Turkish delight, while their more fortunate brethren in the *foyer* partook of Turkish coffee (actually served, in one instance, at least, c. 1900 A. D., by a real live Turk) and smoked Turkish cigarettes, he will have just as good an argument for its Oriental origin.



## NEW RESEARCHES INTO THE COMPOSITION AND EXEGESIS OF THE QORAN.

BY HARTWIG HIRSCHFELD, Ph.D., M.B.A.S.

(Continued from p. 131.)

## CHAPTER VIII.

## The Parable in the Qorân.

**R**EAL poetical element in the *Qorân* — Critical value of the *mathal* in the *Qorân*. — Its development and distribution through the various period — Views of Arab authors on the *mathal* — The shorter aphorisms collected — Parable and dogma — Parables chronologically arranged — Application of *mathals* — Biblical *mathals* in the *Qorân* — Anthropomorphism — Moslim views on the subject — Repetitions of *mathals* in altered forms — *Mathals* in Medianian revelations.

Appendix: The *Mathal* in Tradition.

Apart from those few cases already notified, in which Muhammed betrayed his inability to alienate himself completely from certain traditions of the national poetry,<sup>79</sup> we find his sermons embellished to a surprising extent with poetic gems. The *Qorân* is studded with them — to use his own phrase — like "with hidden pearls." The pathos of the declamatory period would hardly bear artistic criticism, but the case is quite different as regards the parables, poetic comparisons, and figures of speech which leapt unsought upon his tongue, and by their simplicity and appositeness give an undeniable charm to many passages otherwise forced and tedious.

When speaking in aphorisms Muhammed introduced no new element into the literature of the Arabs, since proverbs and epigrams are prominent in their oldest productions. His own share is unusually large, and Moslim theologians and *litterateurs* eagerly compiled an enormous number of sayings and parables which they attributed to Muhammed, but with the exception of those occurring in the *Qorân* itself, it is difficult to establish the authenticity of any of them.<sup>80</sup>

The Arabic term for aphorism is *mathal*. The various definitions of this word, given by Moslim authors, commence with the idea of similitude,<sup>81</sup> like the Hebrew *mâshâl*, but the *mathal* also includes fables and short tales, which on account of some peculiar feature have become proverbial.<sup>82</sup> The *mathal* therefore comprehends every allegory, tale, and sentence containing anything worth remembering. To these the Qorânic *mathal* adds, under certain conditions, the interpretations of description<sup>83</sup> and example.<sup>84</sup> It afforded the Prophet numerous opportunities of alluding to persons and incidents in the guise of a parable or fable of his own invention.

Muhammed's employment of the *mathal* as an element of rhetoric was undoubtedly a concession to the familiarity of his people with this feature of national poetry, although its fictitious character should have placed it in contrast to the reality of the revelations. Indeed, Muhammed limited the fictitious appearance of the *mathal* as much as possible. The aim of his speeches was practical, and the effect of the *mathals* intended to be drastic rather than artistic. Eloquence for its own sake was not the Prophet's chief object, and in using figures of speech he never sought to be poetic.

<sup>79</sup> See above Ch. I. To the plays upon words mentioned by Nöldeke, l. c. p. 32, should be added *Qor.* vi. 26.

وَهُمْ يَنْهَوْنَ عَنْهُ وَيَنْأَوْنَ عَنْهُ

<sup>80</sup> See Appendix to this chapter.

<sup>81</sup> See Al-Maidânî, *Arabum Proverbia*, ed. Freytag, III. p. 329. Al-Beidh. on *Qor.* ii. 16, and Sprenger, *Dictionary of Technical Terms*, p. 1340. Kaashâf on *Qor.* xvi. 62. Al-Ghazâlî, in *Kif, al-madâni*, p. 102, sq., establishes the difference between *mathal* and *mathal*.

<sup>82</sup> E. g., the sheep and the knife, Hariri, *Mayamas*, introduction, *Z. D. M. G.* xli. p. 737, and Talmud, Pesah, fol. 63<sup>ra</sup>.

<sup>83</sup> Kaashâf. ii. 16; Al-Bagh. often.

<sup>84</sup> *Qor.* vii. 176, xvi. 62; for further classification cf. *Itqân*, p. 561 sqq.



Besides this the *mathals* of the *Qorān* have a literary importance also, as they assist in the critical treatment of the book. In some cases they serve to fix the periods of the addresses of which they form a part, and their dispersion through the book reveals the following interesting facts. In older portions they are extremely rare. None, or hardly any, occur as early as the confirmatory period. It is plain that, when the Prophet was engaged in building up the framework of the new faith, he could not at the same time adorn it, and he may also have feared that *mathals* of any kind would be suggestive of poetry. They, however, gradually crept into the declamatory period in the form of very brief comparisons, whilst real parables could only find a place amidst longer discourses of doctrinal character. The oaths taking as witnesses the sun, moon, stars, dawn, day, night and similar subjects, cannot be regarded as aphoristic expressions, because they are merely high-flown invocations of natural phenomena. Even the appeals, to the "Elevated *Qorān*," the "Book," the "Day of Judgment" in its various descriptions, and other transcendental objects are based on matters which the Prophet taught were real. His pictures of the transformations of Nature, of the Last Day, of the pleasures of paradise and the tortures of hell have also substantial backgrounds. Hence there are considerably more parabolic utterances in the shorter and less pompous period of narrative revelations, whilst the bulk of the Meccan *mathals* belongs to the periods of the descriptive and legislative addresses. They are still more frequent after the Hijra until the battle of Badr, after which they are not so often met with. We thus see that the *mathal* in the *Qorān* developed gradually. It reached its apogee, when Muhammed's hitherto purely doctrinal mission assumed a political character. Of those which appear later, some are almost repetitions of former ones, some are evolved from personal experiences, others are manifestly borrowed, one is of questionable authenticity,<sup>85</sup> and all of them have little or no fictitious element.

The *mathal* as one of the characteristic features of the *Qorān* has hitherto received no attention from European students; yet its importance did not escape several Moslim writers of repute. Fourteen shorter aphorisms were collected by Abu Maṣṣūr Al Tha'ālibī.<sup>86</sup> Al Suyūṭī in his *Itqān*<sup>87</sup> entered more deeply into the subject proper. According to his statement, based on earlier authorities,<sup>88</sup> Muhammed is said to have given the *mathal* a place among the five ways in which revelations came down, and to have advised believers to reflect on their meaning. He further states that Al Māverdi, commenting on this, teaches that study on the *mathal* holds the foremost rank among the studies of the *Qorān*, however neglected it may be, and that "a *mathal* without its application is like a horse without bridle and a camel without strap."<sup>89</sup> Of the views of other authors, quoted by Al Suyūṭī, on the importance of the *mathal*, I will only mention one, viz., that the *mathals* represent abstract reflections in concrete form, because the human mind grasps by means of the tangible. The purpose of a *mathal* is therefore the comparison of what is hidden to something that is manifest, and comprises the various degrees of approval and disapproval with their consequences. "Therefore," concludes Al Suyūṭī, in his introductory remarks on the topic, "has Allāh inserted in the *Qorān* as well as in His other books many *mathals*, and one of the chapters of the Gospel bears the name: Chapter of the Parables."<sup>90</sup>

The difference between shorter comparisons and figures of speech, and the parable proper has already been pointed out by Al Suyūṭī,<sup>91</sup> who treats on both in different chapters of his work, dividing the former into various classes which there is no need to be detailed here.

It is of greater importance to note that the *mathal* had to be submitted to a kind of dogmatic treatment. Some objected to the employment of the *mathals* of the *Qorān* for profane purposes. The poet Ḥariri was blamed for having interwoven one of the *Qorānic* comparisons in one of his *Maqāmas*,<sup>92</sup> because, according to Al Zarkashi, it is not lawful to transfer *Qorānic mathals* to other works. We conclude from this that Moslim critics had some notion of the poetic element which was hidden in aphorisms and parables, but being accustomed to judge according to the exterior of things, they considered nothing poetic which was not written in verse and rhyme.

<sup>85</sup> Q. xlviii. 29, see below.

<sup>86</sup> Abū Hureira.

<sup>87</sup> Bq. 564, Comparisons and Aphorisms.

<sup>88</sup> K'tāb alijās wal'jāz (Cairo, 1301), p. 4.

<sup>89</sup> Itq., il'ād.

<sup>90</sup> Page 776.

<sup>91</sup> Cf. S. Matth. Ch. xiii.

<sup>92</sup> Qor. xxix. 40 cf. Itq. 265. Cf. Ḥariri Maq. xiii., Schol.



We will now proceed to give a list of the most striking comparisons and aphorisms. Although it does not claim to be exhaustive, it is yet sufficient to show Muhammed's purpose in introducing them. The parable proper will be discussed afterwards. The first group is arranged according to the sequence of *sûras* in our editions, the Medinian passages being marked by an asterisk.

- \* ii. 9. In their hearts is a sickness.
- \* 69. They (your hearts) are as stone, or harder still; there are some stones from which streams burst forth, and there are others, when they burst asunder, the water issues out.
- \* v. 35. We have prescribed to the children of Israel that whoso kills a soul, unless it be for another soul, or for violence [committed] in the land, it is as though he had killed men altogether.<sup>93</sup>
- vi. 32. The life of this world is nothing but a game and a sport.<sup>94</sup>
- 66. To every prophecy is a set time.
- 125. Whomsoever Allâh wishes to guide, He expands his breast to Islâm; but whomsoever He wishes to lead astray, He makes his breast tight and straight, as though he would mount up into heaven.
- 164. No soul shall earn aught against itself; nor shall one bearing a burden bear the burden of another.<sup>95</sup>
- vii. 38. Until the camel enters the eye of a needle.<sup>96</sup>
- \* viii. 22 (57). The worst of beasts are in Allâh's sight the deaf, the dumb, those who do not understand.
- 24. Allâh steps in between man and his heart.
- x. 24. Your wilfulness against yourselves is but a provision of this world's life.
- 28. As though their faces were veiled with the deep darkness of the night.
- xiii. 17. Shall the blind and the seeing be held equal? or shall the darkness and the light be held equal?<sup>97</sup>
- xvi. 79. Nor is the matter of the Hour aught but as the twinkling of an eye or nigher still.<sup>98</sup>
- 94. Be not like her who unravels her yarn, fraying out after she has spun it close.
- xvii. 86. Everyone acts after his own manner.
- xxi. 36. Every soul shall taste of death.<sup>99</sup>
- 104. As the rolling of the *Sijill* for the books.<sup>100</sup>
- \* xxii. 32. He who associates aught with Allâh, it is as though he had fallen from heaven, and the birds snatch him up, or the wind blows him away into a far distant place.
- xxiii. 55. Each party rejoices in what they have themselves.

<sup>93</sup> Cf. Mishnah, Sanh. iv. 5.

<sup>94</sup> Cf. xxix. 64, xlvii. 38, lvii. 19; Hariri, *Maq.* xiii.

<sup>95</sup> This is a very old aphorism and occurs already in iii. 39, xxiv. 19, xxxix. 9, etc. See also Torrey, *The Commercial Theological Terms in the Qoran*, Leyden, 1892.

<sup>96</sup> Cf. Geiger, l. c. p. 71, and Al Meidânî, II, 498; Hish. 922, l. 16.

<sup>97</sup> Cf. *ibid.* v. 19, xxiv. 20, 21, xx. 124, 125, vi. 50, xl. 60, xxvii. 68, xxx. 52, ii. 165. Cf. Isaiah, vi. 10; Ps. civ. 4-7.

<sup>98</sup> Cf. 1 Cor. xv. 52. The phrase is also common in the Talmud and in Syriac.

<sup>99</sup> Cf. xxix. 57; iii. 182.

<sup>100</sup> Cf. Ch. IV.



- xxix. 40. The weakest of houses is the house of the spider.<sup>1</sup>
- xxxi. 18. The most disagreeable of voices is the voice of the asses.
34. No soul knows what it shall earn to-morrow, and no soul knows in what land it shall die.<sup>2</sup>
- \* xxxiii. 19. Like one fainting with death.
- xxxv. 41. The plotting of evil only entangles those who practice it:
- xxxvi. 39. Until it (the moon) becomes again like an old dry palm-branch.
- xxxvii. 47. As though they (the maidens) were a hidden egg.
63. Its spathe is as it were the heads of devils.
- xxxix. 12. Shall those who know be held equal to those who know not?
- xli. 34. Good and evil shall not be deemed alike.
- xlii. 19. He who wishes for the tilth of the last world — the tilth of this world.
31. The ships that sail like mountains in the sea.
- \* xlix. 12. Some suspicion is a sin<sup>3</sup> . . . . would one of you like to eat his dead brother's flesh?<sup>4</sup>
1. 15. We are nigher to him than his jugular vein.
- lii. 24. . . . boys of their's as though they were hidden pearls.
- liv. 7. As though they were locusts scattered about.
- lv. 58. As though they were rubies and pearls.
- lvi. 22. Bright and large-eyed maids like hidden pearls.<sup>5</sup>
- \* lxi. 4. As though they were a compact building.
8. They desire to put out the light of God with their mouths.
- \* lxiii. 4. Like timber propped up.
- lxix. 7. As though they were palm stumps thrown down.<sup>6</sup>
- lxx. 8. The heaven shall be like molten brass (9) and the mountains shall be like flocks of wool.
43. As though they flock to standards.
- lxxiv. 51. As though they were timid asses which flee from a lion.
- lxxvi. 19. Thou wilt think them scattered pearls.
- lxxvii. 32. It throws off sparks like towers, (33) as though they were yellow camels.
- lxxix. 46. As though they had only tarried an evening or the noon thereof.
- ci. 3. Men shall be like scattered moths, (4) and the mountains shall be like flocks of carded wool.<sup>7</sup>

The list is long enough to reveal a poetic element of considerable strength.

We now come to those parables which Muhammed introduced by the term *mathal*. These are more elaborate and contain a moral. I have thought it advisable to discuss them in an approximately chronological order, which will allow us to observe the development of the

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Al Meidani, II. 842, and Job, viii. 14. See Al Tha'libi, *نماذج القلوب في المضامع المنسوب* (Cod. Brit. Mus. Or. 9538) fol. 82<sup>vo</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Talmud B. Succah, fol. 53<sup>vo</sup>. R. Johanan says: The feet of man bring him to the place where he is doomed to die.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Hariri (p. 28, l. 8), Maq. I. 89.

<sup>4</sup> See Dan. iii. 8.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. Hassan b. Thabit, p. 89, l. 6; *Hq.* p. 243.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. lvi. 20, the same phrase.

<sup>7</sup> Cf. lvii. 19, iii. 113; li. 263, 267, and above Ch. IV.



Qorānic *mathal*. The first does not appear until in the narrative *S.* xviii., in which two occur at once. In the former, the wealthy unbeliever is contrasted with his poor but pious neighbour in the following manner:—

- v. 31. Strike out for them a *mathal*: two men<sup>8</sup> for one of whom we made two gardens of grapes, and surrounded them with palms and put corn between the two. Each of the two gardens brought forth its food, and did not fail in aught. (32) And we caused a river to flow between them, and he (the owner) had fruit. He said to his friend, who competed<sup>9</sup> with him: I am wealthier than thou, and mightier of household. (33) And he went in unto his garden having sinned against himself. Said he: I do not think that this will ever come to an end. (34) And I do not think that the Hour is imminent, and surely, if I be sent back unto my Lord, I shall find a better one than it in exchange. (35) His friend — who competed with him — said to him: *Thou hast disbelieved in Him who has created thee from dust, and then from a clot, and then made thee a man.* (36) But He is Allāh, my Lord, and I will not associate anyone with my Lord. (37) Couldst thou not have said, when thou didst go into thy garden: What Allāh pleases! There is no power save in Allāh. If thou lookst at me, I am less than thee in wealth and children. (38) But haply my Lord will give me [something] better than thy garden, and will send upon it a thunderbolt from the sky, so that it shall become bare slippery soil. (39) Or on the morrow its water will be deeply sunk, so that thou canst not reach it. (40) His fruits were encompassed so that on the morrow he wrung his hands for which he had spent thereon, for they (the fruits) had perished on their trellises; and he said: Would that I had never associated anyone with my Lord! (41) Yet he had not any party to help him beside Allāh, nor was he helped.

The second *mathal* consistently teaches the vanity and short duration of earthly pleasures. It is as follows:—

- v. 43. Forge for them a *mathal* of the life of this world; [it is] like water which we have sent down from the sky,<sup>10</sup> so that the vegetation of the earth is mingled with it. On the morrow it is dried up, and the winds scatter it. Allāh is powerful over all. (44) Wealth and children are the adornment of the life of this world, but the lasting pious deeds are better with thy Lord as a recompense and better as a hope.

The application of both *mathals* is easily found. The opulent but wicked man represents the stubborn opponent of Islām, whilst the less wealthy neighbour is the Prophet himself. It is to be noted that, in his censure of his rich rival, the other repeats the chief words of the first proclamation (v. 35 = *S.* xvi. 1 to 2).<sup>11</sup> Further, the double allusion to the loss of Muhammed's

<sup>8</sup> The fictitious character of parables being objectionable to the Moslim Commentators, they endeavour to explain them as bearing on real persons or accidents. Thus Al Bagh. reproduces a tradition (without Isāid) according to which this parable refers to two brothers in Mecca of whom the believing one was Abu Salama b. Abd Asad, foster brother to Muhammed, who died A. H. 4, and whose widow Umm Salama became the wife of the Prophet (see Sprenger, I. 433). Others (Ibn Abbās) are of opinion, that the *mathal* in question was revealed on account of the Fazāra chief Uyeina b. Hish (Sprenger, III. 363 sq.) who was converted to Islām shortly before the conquest of Mecca, and of the Persian Salmān and the friends of both. The subjects of the *mathal* are said to have been two Jewish brothers (see also Kash.). Since all these traditions deserve but little credence, I refrain from entering more fully into them. Biblical parallels to the *mathal* are to be found: Isaiah, xl. 7; Ps. ciii. 15-16.

<sup>9</sup> Palmer: "his next door neighbour," which is hardly correct; he seems to have read *بجواره*.

<sup>10</sup> See *Bqān*, p. 586; Al Ghazālī, *Kit. Al-mawāzīn*, p. 101.

<sup>11</sup> Cf. *haz.* 17-19.



two sons (v. 37 and 44) in their infancy, as well as that of his former wealth, is too plain to be misunderstood. This melancholy narrative is particularly applicable to his own position a short time after the death of his wife Khadija, when he also lost his uncle Abū Tālib, his only protector. The date of the revelation in question could thus be fixed at (the summer 619) about three years before the Hijra.

The comparison of the vicissitudes of human life to the growth and decay in Nature appeared so appropriate to Muhammed, that he not only repeated the last quoted *mathal* in a more elaborate form, but also gave it a didactic tendency. The following instance is particularly interesting:—

- x. 25. Verily the likeness (*mathal*) of this world is like water which we send down from the sky, and with it are mingled the plants of the earth from which men and cattle eat, until when the earth puts on its ornamt and becomes garnished, its inhabitants think that they have power over it. Our order<sup>12</sup> comes by night or by day; we make it mown down, as if it had not been rich yesterday — thus do we detail the signs unto people who reflect.

One of the most natural and therefore very common topics in Muhammed's sermons is the contrast between unbelievers and the faithful. This is sometimes expressed in allegorical form, as in the following *mathal*. The infidels are likened to the blind and deaf, while the believers are those who see and hear; shall the two classes be held equal (xi. 26)? The comparison of unbelief with blindness, deafness and dumbness being quite Biblical, is one of the commonest in the *Qorān*.<sup>13</sup> Mentioning dumbness alone it occurs again, and in a more developed form, in a *mathal* to be touched upon later.

Unquestionably modelled on Biblical *māshāl* are the following two contained in the (narrative) xivth *Sūra*. The one (v. 21) represents the works of the infidels as ashes which are blown about on a stormy day.<sup>14</sup> This is clearly a reflex on Ps. I. 4 (Is. xl. 7). The other *mathal*, occurring in the same address (v. 29 to 31) compares a good word to a good tree<sup>15</sup> whose root is firm and whose branches are in the sky. It gives its fruit at every season by the permission of its Lord — Allāh draws parallels for men, haply they may be mindful. The likeness (*mathal*) of a bad word is as a bad tree which is felled down above the earth and has no staying place. — This parable is a free rendering of the verse in Ps. i. preceding the one upon which the foregoing *mathal* is based (see also Abōth, III. 17; Jer. xvii. 6 to 8). The phrase, *it gives its fruit at every season*, marks the origin without doubt.

Besides the two comparisons mentioned above,<sup>16</sup> *S. xvi.* counts not less than three *mathals*. The first stands in connection with two others placed together in *S. xliii.*, of which the second is somewhat earlier, but the first nearly contemporaneous with the one under consideration. It is introduced by a rebuke, directed against the pagan Arabs for their manifest aversion to female children, many of whom they destroyed in infancy. "When any of them," he says (xvi, 60), "is informed [of the birth] of a girl, his face turns black, and he is choked with wrath." In the parallel passage, which also contains a warning against the offence of ascribing daughters to Allāh (*S. xliii.* 15) stands instead of "girl" the phrase: — "that which he (the pagan Arab employs as a *mathal* for the *Raḥmān*" (v. 16).<sup>17</sup> Subsequently Muhammed declares (*S. xvi.* 62) those who do not believe in the "last world" are the *mathal* (prototype) of evil,<sup>18</sup> whilst Allāh is

<sup>12</sup> *Amrūd*, cf. xvi. 1-2.

<sup>13</sup> Cf. above, p. 168, where the blind and seeing are compared with one another, but this *mathal* is realistic.

<sup>14</sup> *Hq.* 565.

<sup>15</sup> Al Qastālānī, vii. p. 188, *كلمة التوحيد أو كل كلمة حسنة كالحمد والاستغفار والتهليل*; cf. Kash.

<sup>16</sup> See p. 168.

<sup>17</sup> Al Jāhiz (Abstracts from) *Kit. Al-bayān wal-tibyan*, Constantinople, 1801, p. 175, says with regard to this verse: Allāh strikes a *mathal* on account of the inadequacy of the language and in order to promote understanding, even going so far as to compare His people to women and children.

<sup>18</sup> *مَثَلُ السُّوء* cf. vi. 176, *سَاءَ مَثَلًا* which I translate: "a bad example"; Kash., *صفة السوء*; cf. Al Bagh.



the highest *mathal*. It would be difficult to understand what Muhammed meant by this vague expression, did he not explain it a few verses later in the distinct prohibition (v. 76): — You shall not forge a *mathal* for Allāh, behold Allāh knows but you do not know.<sup>19</sup> In contrast to this prohibition stands the assertion (S. xliii. 57 to 59), that the Son of Maryam was set up as a *mathal*, "he is but a servant upon whom we have bestowed our mercy, and whom we have made a *mathal* for the children of Israel."

Now here is a distinct restriction laid down, which serves not only to emphasize the monotheistic idea, but also to cavil at the anthropomorphic metaphors used in the Bible. As a sincere convert to monotheism Muhammed disapproved of any attempt to explain divine attributes in the light of human faculties; in other words, he wished to be more monotheistic than the Bible whose anthropomorphic terms he took literally. In a tradition handed down by Al Shahrastāni<sup>20</sup> Muhammed is said to have declared: — "The *Mushabbiha* (those who personify Allāh) are the Jews of this nation," which means that Moslems who represent Allāh after the fashion of human qualities follow the sinful custom of the Jews. The Prophet, however, had only one side of the question in view, and Kremer<sup>21</sup> blames him unjustly for contradicting himself. Though it must be admitted that Muhammed did not investigate the question of anthropomorphism thoroughly, yet all passages in the *Qorān* dealing with the subject are not of one stamp. Muhammed rejected that form of *tashbīh* (personification), which in the Bible refers to God individually. Allāh is never spoken of as a "Man of war" (Exod. xv. 3),<sup>22</sup> "the Rock who has borne thee" (Deut. xxxii. 4), or "the Fountain of living waters" (Jer. ii. 13), or as "Father." The last named appellation, so common in both Testaments, appeared to Muhammed as sheer blasphemy. He therefore took an early opportunity of declaring<sup>23</sup> that Allāh had neither a child nor any equal.<sup>24</sup> The title of "Father" is accordingly scrupulously avoided in all the lists of the "Most Comely Names."<sup>25</sup> It seems to me more than accidental that, when Muhammed related his alleged vision, that he did not mention any name of God, but circumscribed it by the epithet of "Mighty of Power."<sup>26</sup> The Commentators refer this expression to the Archangel Gabriel, although at that period Muhammed had not shown any knowledge of him,<sup>27</sup> and in the verse in question evidently alluded to Allāh himself. To prevent misunderstanding that similitudes of Allāh should not be made, Muhammed cautiously stated that any other title of Allāh used by him was but one of the "Most Comely Names" which belonged to Him. In this way he kept his hand free to employ that other, and rather subordinate, form of anthropomorphism with which he was quite unable to dispense. He certainly tried to do without it, but only succeeded during the first period. Allāh thus speaks and writes, possesses hands, sits on his throne, which is borne by angels, loves, hates, and is even cunning towards the

<sup>19</sup> The Commentators see in this verse only the prohibition to compare Allāh with another being, which in that case would be placed side by side with him. Kaah., والشبيبه بدل لأن من يضرب الأمثال. تمثيل للأشياء بالله والتشبيه بدل لأن من يضرب الأمثال.

مشبه حال البحر وقصة بقصة. Cf. also Jalalain and Al Beidh. The verse stands in connection with xxvi. 78.

<sup>20</sup> Ed. Cureton, p. 13; Al Nawawi, v. p. 350. فان مذمب اليهود التجميع. Cf. Goldziher in *Monatschrift f. Gesch. u. W. d. Jdth.* xviii. p. 309.

<sup>21</sup> *Geschichte der herrschenden Ideen, etc.* p. 17.

<sup>22</sup> In the first part of his *Kitāb al Milāl wa al Aḥzāl* (fol. 30vo) Ibn Hazm, in his criticism of the O. T., gives a translation of Exod. Ch. xv., and remarks that to describe Allāh as a "strong man" is heresy. He professes to have urged this point to a Jew of his acquaintance, who replied that in *Qor.* xxiv. 35, Allāh is styled "the Light of heaven and earth." While admitting this, Ibn Hazm referred the Rabbi to a tradition, according to which Abu Darr asked Muhammed if he had ever seen Allāh? The answer was "yes," but this "light" did not mean a visible light, but an invisible one. Ibn Hazm therefore explains the "light" in question as guidance for the inhabitants of the earth, but "light" is to be wanted among the names of Allāh. It is, however, not difficult to see that in the expression "light" there is an inconsistency which even embarrassed Mu'tazilite interpretation. Al Beidh. endeavours to show that, in this passage, "light" virtually applies to Allāh only and stands for "he gives light." Cf. also Mawāqif, p. 169. In several Meccan (xx. 113, xxiii. 117) and Medianian (lix. 23) revelations Allāh is styled "King," but this offers less difficulty for abstract interpretation; cf. Al Beidh. on lix. 23, Mawāq. p. 161, and Al Qastalāni (ed. Būlāq, x. p. 316) who explains: "Possessor of government." See also on this subject my article: "Muhammed and Criticism of the Bible," *J. Q. R.* XIII. p. 222 seq.

<sup>23</sup> Cf. *Qor.* xii. 3; cf. xxiii. 93, vi. 101, etc.

<sup>24</sup> Cf. Deut. iv. 35, 39.

<sup>25</sup> See Zedhouse, *J. R. A. S.* 1880.

<sup>26</sup> See Ch. IV.

<sup>27</sup> The name occurs only in Medianian *ṣūras*.



wicked.<sup>28</sup> All this is quite in harmony with the Biblical style. Traditions of a more sensual character are to be received with scepticism as to their authenticity.<sup>29</sup> The famous tradition according to which Muhammed said: — The heart of a believer is between the two fingers of the Merciful<sup>30</sup> is by no means more realistic than the verse (S. xxxviii. 75): "I have created with *my hand*," or any of the numerous passages in which Allāh sees, hears and speaks.<sup>31</sup>

The Qoranic anthropomorphism is but a variety of that in the Bible, which Muhammed considered he had improved on, but which otherwise he accepted without much reflection during the time of his training. Later Moslim theologians, who had gone through a similar course of studies, naturally looked upon anthropomorphic revelations with a different eye, and endeavoured to explain, that they were inbred doctrines. Inconsistency was the result. The punctilious Zahirite school did not allow the "Ninety-nine most comely names" to be surpassed,<sup>32</sup> and put up a long list of names *not* suitable for Allāh.<sup>33</sup> Schools of more liberal ideas took no heed of this restriction, but observed a certain restraint in names which Allāh did not attribute to himself either in the *Qorān* or in tradition.<sup>34</sup> On the other hand the Zahirites follow the more free thinking theologians to some extent in the allegorical explanation of human faculties with which Allāh is endowed,<sup>35</sup> and only one class goes so far as to take even those literally.<sup>36</sup>

The warning that Allāh must not be made the object of *mathals* is at once illustrated by a parable set up by Himself in the following manner:—

v. 77. A bond slave who is quite unable to do any work, and another whom Allāh has provided with every good provision, and who gives alms from it secretly and openly; are these two equal?

78. And Allāh has forged a *mathal*: two men, of whom one is dumb and able to do nothing, a burden to his master, wherever he turns, he does no good; is he to be held equal with him who bids what is just and who is on the right way?

The parable of the servant was very popular both among Jews and Christians. I only mention those of Abôth, I. 3,<sup>37</sup> and St. Matth. xxiv. 45 and xxv. 14 *sqq.* Both *mathals* in question have the same object in view, *viz.*, to show that man, whilst dependent<sup>38</sup> on Allāh, should be charitable and righteous. In both parables also allusions to practical religion are not wanting, *viz.*, in *yunfiq* (give alms), *ya'muru bil'adli* (bids what is just) and *girāfin mustāqimin* (right way), through which the general character of the *mathals* is considerably limited.

The last *mathal* in S. xvi. (v. 113) furnishes an instance of the manner in which it developed in a later repetition. It speaks of a city which was safe and happy, whilst its provisions were flowing in from all sides; but it would not acknowledge, that all these had been sent by

<sup>28</sup> Ps. xviii. 27; *Qor.* viii. 30; cf. Al Beidhāwī: It is not lawful to use this term without restriction.

<sup>29</sup> Kremer, *Gesch.* p. 18 *sq.*, places reliance in some traditions on that matter, which are fictitious, but even if they had been authentic, Muhammed would not have referred them to Allāh.

<sup>30</sup> Cf. Al Shahrastāni, p. 77

<sup>31</sup> Al Qastal. امثالاً لا يرى اى خلقه بنفسى من غير توسط كآب وآتم والقانية لما فى خلقه  
من مزيد القدرة واختلاف الفعل وقيل المراد باليد القدرة

<sup>32</sup> I. H. fol. 163<sup>vo</sup>. See also Al Beidh. on xxxix. 67. I. H. fol. 164<sup>vo</sup>.

<sup>33</sup> Reproduced by Goldziher, *die Zahiriten*, etc. p. 149.

<sup>34</sup> *Ibid.*

<sup>35</sup> *Ibid.* p. 164. The original passage of I. H.'s work is given here after the Leyden MS., to which the London Codex offers important variations.

<sup>36</sup> The school of Ahmad b. Hanbal.

<sup>37</sup> The *Mishnāh* in question is re-echoed in the numerous assertions of Muhammed that he expected no recompense for his ministry. See Ch. V.

<sup>38</sup> Cf. Ihyā, I. p. 249, l. 8. Al Suyūti in *Muḥimāt al-aqrān* refers the two men (v. 78) to Useid b. Abil 'Is and 'Othmān b. 'Affān. Al Beidh. sees no allusion to any individual in either *mathal*.



Allāh. He therefore affected the inhabitants with hunger and fear for their wickedness. Then one of their town-fellows approached them in the character of a divine messenger, but was not believed. Thereupon the city was overtaken by heavy punishment.

The parable is, of course, perfectly clear. The happy and wealthy city is no other than Mecca,<sup>39</sup> whose merchants traded in all directions. The messenger out of their midst is Muhammed whom they called an impostor, but dire punishment is in store for them. The threatened famine will also become clear presently.

Now this parable is repeated in a later and considerably altered form. The alteration was necessary, probably because the threatened punishment had not taken place, whilst the situation of the Prophet had meanwhile become much more difficult and dangerous. I give the translation of the *mathal* in full:—

*Sūra xxxvi. 12.* Forge for them a *mathal*: the inhabitants of the city, when the messengers came to them, (13) when we sent to them those two, but they called them both liars; so we strengthened them with a third, then they said: verily, we are sent to you. (14) They replied: You are only mortals like ourselves, and the Merciful has revealed nothing [to you], you are naught but liars. (15) They said: Our Lord knows that we are sent to you; (16) we are only charged to clearly convince you. (17) They answered: We have augured concerning you; if you do not desist, we will surely stone you, and painful punishment shall be inflicted on you by us. (18) Said they: your augury is with you, what if you have been warned? but you are a sinful people! (19) And there came hastily from the remotest parts of the town a man who said: O my people! follow the messengers. (20) Follow those who do not ask for reward from you, whilst being guided. (21) What ails me that I should not worship Him who created me, and to whom you will be made to return? (22) Shall I take other gods beside Him? If the Merciful desires harm for me, their intercession will not avail me at all, neither can they save me. (23) I should then be in manifest error. (24) I believe in your Lord, therefore hearken unto me! (25) [When they had killed him] it was said [to him]: Enter thou into paradise; said he: O, would that my people did but know, (26) that Allāh has forgiven me and made me one of the honoured ones . . . (27) it was but a single noise, and lo! they were extinct.

Although this parable is told in the usual legendary style of prophetic messengers, it is a variation of the preceding one with a historical background. It speaks about the city and the messengers who at first number only two, and are later on supported by a third. The *mathal* seems to be of Christian origin, but Muhammed made the mistake of putting the attribute of *AlRahmān* into the mouth of the heathenish townspeople.<sup>40</sup> He had evidently the tale (Acts xi. 22 to 30) in his mind, and some Commentators rightly declare the city to be Antioch,<sup>41</sup> whose pagan population forms the exact parallel to Mecca. The application of the *mathal* is given in v. 29: Alas for the men, there comes to them no messenger, but they mock at him!

<sup>39</sup> Ibn 'Abbās in *Mufṣ. alaqṛ*; Al Beidh. and Jal. A tradition by Ibn Sihab on behalf of Ḥafṣa refers it to Medina.

<sup>40</sup> The heathenish character of the populace may be gathered from the expression *نَطِيرًا* (v. 17) which means: we have augured from the flight of birds.

<sup>41</sup> Kash. and Jal. Al Beidh. gives a different story which, however, does not suit the case. "The man" mentioned (v. 19) is called Ḥabb, the carpenter (Kash.: *Hab. b. Isrāʾil*). This name is evidently a translation of Agabus. His prophecy of a coming famine links this *mathal* to Q. xvi. 113-114 ("a messenger out of their midst"). As to the famine see Josephus, *Jn.* xi. 2.



A couple of rather forcible *mathals* taken from the social life of the infidel Meccan citizens are the following (S. xxx. 27): The Prophet asks the people, if they would feel inclined to regard their slaves as their equals, and allow them to share their property. The meaning is that Allāh cannot be expected to look upon the idols, which are made by man's hand, as His equals! In one more complicated, or rather confused, form the *mathal* re-appears in a later revelation as follows (S. xxxix. 30): One man has partners who disagree with each other, whilst another is entirely subservient to one who is his master; are these two men (the one who has partners and the slave) to be considered equal? By no means<sup>42</sup> — The first man represents Allāh to whom the heathen Meccans attribute associates. The last figure in the parable is evidently also meant for Allāh. The hostility prevailing between the various idols very appropriately expresses the narrowness and diversity of the powers with which they are endowed.

A fine parable, connected with a descriptive passage, is the following (S. xiii. 18): Allāh sends down rain from the sky, the water-courses flow according to their bulk, the torrent carries along with it foam that swells up. A similar foam arises from the fire kindled by men [when melting metals and] craving ornaments and utensils. Thus does Allāh hit the truth and the falsehood, *viz.*, the foam disappears in nought, whilst that [solid part], which profits man remains on earth. This is Allāh's way of forging parables.<sup>43</sup>

It appears that Muhammed's opponents responded to his parables with similar ones, particularly with reference to resurrection.<sup>44</sup> To such remarks he had a kind of constant reply which appears twice in the same form, *viz.* (Ss. xvii. 51 and xxv. 10): Look how they forge for thee parables,<sup>45</sup> but they err, neither can they find a way [to refute thee]. — On the other hand Muhammed boasts (S. xxv. 35): They bring thee no *mathal*, unless we (Allāh) brought thee the truth and the best explanation. — As a demonstration he reminds his audience of the cities and peoples which had been annihilated, and adds (v. 41): For each have we forged the *mathals*,<sup>46</sup> and each we have crumbled to pieces. — Such general references to *mathals* mentioned previously in detail confirm the comparative lateness of the passages just quoted, and one of the latest must therefore be the following summing up (S. xxxix. 28): Now we have forged for men in this *Qorān* all kinds of *mathals*, haply they are mindful.<sup>47</sup>

With this the series of *mathals* in the Meccan part of the *Qorān* concludes. The comparatively large number found in the last two periods is still surpassed in the first year after the Hijra, when they suddenly became extremely numerous. This is certainly not a mere coincidence, and shows the critical value of the *mathal* in general for researches on the composition of the *Qorān*. The Medinian *mathal*, moreover, stands in close connection with Muhammed's altered position and the new tone of his speeches. He soon became aware how much more critical and analyzing this new audience was. His addresses now being calculated to win the Jews of Medina as well as its pagan inhabitants, he dared not offer them hollow declamations, which, even for the Meccan world, had only served for a certain time. He himself had also become ripier, and his aim lay clearer before his eyes. The moral success won by the invitation of the Medinians, his own personal safety and daily increasing authority gave his word a power hitherto unknown. Above all, he had had more than ten years' practice in preaching,

<sup>42</sup> See above.

<sup>43</sup> V. 19 contrasts him who knows the truth with the blind man; v. 35 of the same *sūra* contains a "*mathal* of the garden promised to the pious," which is but a description; cf. Kaab. *صفة الجنة*.

<sup>44</sup> See Q. xvii. 52, xxxvi. 78.

<sup>45</sup> Al Beidh. refers it to the various titles of poet, soothsayer, sorcerer and madman given to Muhammed by the Meccans.

<sup>46</sup> Al Beidh. *بيننا له القصص العجيبة من قصص الأولين انذارا واعدارا*.

<sup>47</sup> *Ibid* v. 30, a *mathal* discussed above, but evidently misplaced on account of v. 28; v. 29 does not suit the context either and the same is the case with v. 31. The arrangement of the verses is here visibly in confusion. See also xxx. 58 in somewhat modified form.



whilst his own knowledge augmented continually. It is of no small moment that the space of time between the Hijra and the battle of Badr, that is to say, the time before Muhammed became an important political factor, should be richest in mathals. *Sûra ii.*, which consists of the oldest Medinian sermons, counts no less than eight parables, six of which are of indisputable originality. The language also, if not poetic, is yet fluent, and abounds in allegories. The first Medinian *mathal* is taken from the daily occupation, and is as follows (v. 15): Those who buy error for guidance — their commerce brings no profit, neither are they guided — (16) their *mathal* is like him who kindles a fire, but when it lights up his surroundings, Allāh carries his light away, and leaves them in darkness, so that they cannot see. (17) They are deaf, dumb and blind,<sup>48</sup> so that they cannot turn round. — To this *mathal* is immediately joined the following (v. 18): Or<sup>49</sup> they are like a stormcloud from the sky in which is darkness and thunder and lightning; they put their fingers in their ears<sup>50</sup> because of the noise of the thunder for fear of death; Allāh encompasses the unbelievers. (v. 19) The lightning all but takes away their sight; as often as it shines for them, they walk therein, but when it becomes dark around them, they stand still; and if Allāh so pleased, He would surely deprive them of their hearing and their sight; Allāh is almighty.

It seems that some Medinian critics had taken exception to Allāh's employment of animals, particularly insignificant ones like spiders and flies as the subjects of *mathals*.<sup>51</sup> Muhammed shows how undeserved is their censure in the dignified manner (ii. 24): Behold Allāh is not ashamed to forge a *mathal* on a gnat or what is above it [in size];<sup>52</sup> those who believe know that it is the truth from their Lord; but the unbelievers say: what means Allāh with such a parable? He leads many astray with it, and guides others, but he only leads astray the wicked.

Muhammed was so little prepared to cease composing parables about animals, that he invented several more of the same kind. In *S. ii.* 161 the infidels are compared to a man who shouts to that which hears naught but a noise and a cry, they are deaf, dumb and blind<sup>53</sup> and without sense. The Commentators<sup>54</sup> have already seen that the metaphor stands for the word "cattle."

The fly re-appears in a revelation of somewhat later date. "O men," he says (*S. xxii.* 72) "a parable is forged for you, so listen to it. Verily, those whom they adore beside Allāh could never create a fly, if they all united together to do it, and if the fly should despoil them aught they could not recover it from it — weak are both the seekers and the sought."

Several of Muhammed's Medinian opponents, Jews in particular, when hearing one of the above mentioned mathals (*S. ii.* 24) enquired what its meaning was. They also questioned him about one of the earlier revelations (*S. lxxiv.* 33) in which it is stated that *nineteen* angels were appointed to watch over the hell fire. "Those in whose hearts there is sickness"<sup>55</sup> and the infidels ask: What does Allāh mean by this as a *mathal*?<sup>56</sup> (v. 33)? Muhammed's answer is rather unsatisfactory, as the number *nineteen* seems to have been chosen at random, a fact which he dared not admit. But thus much is clear that both questions as well as the answers to them date from about the same time, *viz.*, the first year after the Hijra, although the one was placed by the compilers next to the revelation which it was meant to explain.

<sup>48</sup> See p. 163.

<sup>49</sup> Second *mathal*, although the term is omitted.

<sup>50</sup> 1 Sam. iii. 11; 2 K. xxi. 12.

<sup>51</sup> The animals mentioned in *mathals* are birds, camel (twice), spider, ass (twice), locusts, moth, dog, fly.

<sup>52</sup> *فَمَا قَوْهَا* 'much more so.' Al Beidh. *فضل عما هو أكبر منه*; cf. *Itq.* 266. <sup>53</sup> Cf. verse 17 and above.

<sup>54</sup> Al Beidh.: Nöldeke, *Q.* p. 132, regards vv. 163-6 as Meccan, but this cannot be concluded from *مَا أَفْقِنَا عَلَيْهِ أَبَا عَدُو*, since this is also a common Jewish phrase.

<sup>55</sup> *Viz.*, the Jews; cf. Ch. IX.

<sup>56</sup> *Lit.*, what means Allāh with this as a *mathal*? The Commentators are at a loss to explain the construction of the phrase. Kaash. takes *مِنْهُ* a *tamyiz* to *haddi* or as a *ḥāl*. Vv. 31-34 are undoubtedly Medinian, and were only placed here on account of their reference to v. 30.



Many of those who rallied round the Prophet in Medina, particularly emigrants from Mecca, were extremely poor. Although liberally supported by the more wealthy inhabitants of the town who had joined Islām, they looked forward to raids on Meccan caravans as a means of gaining some property of their own. Robbery was so little regarded as anything illegal or immoral, that Muhammed not only sanctioned raids by participating in them himself, but did not hesitate to violate the sacred month in order to make believers "walk in the path of Allāh." There were plenty of people anxious to enrich themselves by plunder in honour of Allāh, but they lacked the means to carry out their plans. Muhammed, therefore, continually urged the wealthy to raise funds for this purpose, with promises of ample reward hereafter. The admonition sometimes took the form of a parable as follows:—

(S. ii. 263) The likeness of those who spend their fortune in the path of Allāh is like a grain which produces seven ears, in every ear a hundred grains, Allāh gives twofold to whom He pleases; Allāh is bounteous and omniscient. But those, he continues, who give alms while taunting and annoying the receiver — as a man would do who only gives for appearance's sake — are compared (v. 266) to a rock covered with dust which a shower washes away, leaving the stone bare.

This fine parable which seems in part to be built on St. Mark iv. 5 *sqq.*, is followed by a third not less striking, on the same topic in the following manner:—

(v. 267) Those who lay out their wealth merely to obtain the grace of Allāh, and as an insurance for their souls, are like a garden on elevated ground. Rain waters it richly, and its crops grow twofold. Should rain fail, dew irrigates them.

These *mathals*, intended to encourage believers to spend their fortune to increase the Prophet's worldly power, contrast strangely with two others which gave little comfort after the defeat at Uhud. As for unbelievers, he says (S. iii. 112), their wealth shall not profit them, neither their children, against Allāh, they shall be the companions of hell fire, and they shall dwell therein for ever. (113) The likeness of what they lay out in this present life is as a wind wherein there is a cold blast; it affects the corn-fields belonging to people who have injured their own souls and destroyed them.<sup>57</sup>

Still more pessimistic is the following<sup>58</sup> (S. lvii. 19): Know ye that this present life is but a toy and vain amusement and pomp and affectation of glory among ye,<sup>59</sup> and multiplying of wealth and children — like rain which astonishes the husbandman<sup>60</sup> by its fertility, but then the vegetation withers until thou seest it turn yellow, and become dry stubble — but in the last world there is heavy punishment.

Here we have to notice several *mathals*, which show how bitter Muhammed felt against Jews and Christians. "The *mathal* of Jesus is in the eye of Allāh like the *mathal* of Adam, whom he has created from dust" (S. iii. 52). Still more spiteful is an epigram hurled against the Jews, whose power was considerably weakened after the expulsion of the tribe of the B. Qainoqā. "They are burdened, he says, with the Torah, which they do not observe, they are likened to the ass which carries books" (S. lxiii. 5).<sup>61</sup>

To this period belongs a *mathal* which contains an attack against a certain individual not mentioned by name, and is so densely veiled that even the Moslim Commentators are at a loss to establish the identity of the person in question. It is evident that Muhammed pointed

<sup>57</sup> Cf. Itqān, p. 565.

<sup>58</sup> See above.

Al Qastal ix. p. 237.

<sup>59</sup> See v. 22, lxiv. 11, and Nöldeke, Q. p. 145.

كعب الصبيان ولهم كلهم القبايا وزينة النساء وتفاخر وتفاخر الاقربان وتكاثروا ككثرت الرهبان

<sup>60</sup> الكفار, see Al Beidh.

<sup>61</sup> See Geiger, *ibid.* p. 92.



at a man of high station and education, otherwise he would hardly have described him as one "whom we have given our signs, but he stepped away from them; had we wished we would have exalted him thereby, but he crouched<sup>62</sup> upon the earth and followed his lust. He is likened unto a dog, whom if thou shouldst attack, he hangs out his tongue, and if thou shouldst leave him, hangs out his tongue too" (S. vii. 174 to 175).

From the text of the *mathal* it is clear that the person to whom it refers, had been given opportunities of embracing Islām, but had not made use of them, and thereby set "a bad example to the people who declare our signs to be lies" (v. 176).

Following Arab Commentators, Sprenger suggests that the *mathal* refers to the poet *Omayya b. Abi Ṣalt* of Ṭā'if,<sup>63</sup> who was a gifted and well educated man. According to Arabic tradition he was an apostate from paganism, but refused to follow Muhammed from jealousy. It is, however, clear that Muhammed did not refer to him. He admired his poems,<sup>64</sup> and would not have used such offensive language about him. The words "whom we have given our Signs," and "they declare our Signs to be lies," can only refer either to a Jew or a Christian, but since the passage belongs undoubtedly to a Medinian revelation, very probably a Jew is meant, which would agree with the remarks of Al Beidhāwī, that he was one of "the learned of the Jews."

It seems to me that this man was no other than the poet Ka'b b. Al Ashraf, the chief of the B. Al Nadhr, who was very active in stirring up Muhammed's enemies. After the battle of Badr he went to Mecca to incite the Qoreish to take revenge on those who had slain their kinsmen, and composed songs in which he denounced Muhammed and Islām.<sup>65</sup> I see an allusion to Ka'b's poems in the simile of the dog that hangs out his tongue. Moreover the alliteration of the name Ka'b with *kalb* (dog) appears to be intentional rather than accidental. Finally we must bear in mind that Ka'b was assassinated shortly afterwards by order of the Prophet.

The expulsion of Ka'b's tribe<sup>66</sup> which was to follow, had to be abandoned for the moment owing to the defeat of the Moslems at Uhud. It was carried out shortly afterwards as being conducive to the prestige of Muhammed who celebrated it in the following two *mathals*. In the first (S. lix. 15) the expelled are compared to people "who had shortly before tasted the evil consequences of their conduct," which means that the B. Al Nadhr had to share the fate of their brethren of the Banū Qainoqā. In the second *mathal* (*ibid.* v. 16) they are likened to Satan, who first entices men from the faith, but then withdraws and pretends to fear Allāh.

This *mathal* misrepresents the facts. The expulsion of the two Jewish tribes, and the subsequent slaughter of the B. Koreiza were acts of treachery, for which Muhammed wanted an excuse. Although the Jews refused to acknowledge his mission, still they were monotheists; but we shall see later on, how Muhammed tried to impute pagan doctrines to them. The weakness of his arguments is perceptible in his comment on the foregoing *mathals*. "Had we, he says (v. 21), revealed the *Qorān* on a mountain, one would have seen this mountain humble itself and split for fear of Allāh,<sup>67</sup> such are the *mathals* which we forge for men, haply they may consider." — This verse reads like the fable of the fox and the grapes. Muhammed was ill satisfied that revelation did not come to him like that on Mount Sinai; but we must remember, that according to a tradition originating from his own statement, he received the first revelation on mount Hira.

١٢٢

<sup>62</sup> I. I. 279 has other persons in view; other interpreters infer Balaam; cf. Al Beidh. Al Ghazālī in *Jawahir al Qoran* also refers the *mathal* to Balaam (f. 42ve).

<sup>63</sup> *Kit. Al Aghāni*, III. p. 187 sqq. (cf. Sprenger, I. p. 110, sqq.). According to Al Zobeir he had read the Bible, did not believe in idols and forbade the drinking of wine. The last item is evidently added from religious tendency.

<sup>64</sup> Cf. R. J. x. p. 19. The hanging tongue is also made a symbol of poetic satire (*Hija*) in the traditions on Ḥasan b. Thābit, *Aghāni*, iv. 3-4.

<sup>67</sup> Confusion of Mount Sinai with Zach. xiv. 4; cf. Ps. cxiv. 4.

<sup>66</sup> Q. lix. 11 sqq.



Muhammed liked to compare unbelievers, and Jews in particular, to people who walk in darkness. When inculcating the precept, which makes it unlawful to eat flesh from an animal "over which the name of Allāh has not been pronounced," he asks (S. vi. 122): Is he who was dead, and we have quickened and made for him a light that he may walk therein amongst men, like him who finds himself in darkness which he cannot emerge from? — It seems that the material of this *mathal* is derived from Isaiah ix. 1.

The more the Prophet of Allāh became merged into a worldly potentate, the more his speeches assumed the tone of manifestor. It seems all the more strange to find a group of three rather fine *mathals* attached to Muhammed's endeavour to vindicate the honour of his wife 'Aisha, whom public opinion had accused of infidelity. The verses in question (S. xxiv. 34 to 40) may not, indeed, have been revealed on this occasion at all, but it appears, as if Muhammed, after having gone through that disagreeable affair, was anxious to change the subject.<sup>68</sup> The first of these *mathals* (which are all taken from scenes met with in travelling, and with the exception of third probably recollections of his own journeys) has already been discussed above,<sup>69</sup> and gives an impressive, but not very detailed account of incidents of bygone days. This is followed (v. 39) by a neat comparison of the unbelievers to "a mirage in a plain (desert) which looks like water to the thirsty traveller, until he approaches it, when he finds nothing."<sup>70</sup> The infidels are further (v. 40) compared to darkness in a deep sea,<sup>71</sup> in which one wave covers another; dark clouds rise above it increasing the darkness to such an extent, that we cannot see one's outstretched hand. They are again likened (S. lxvi. 10) to the disobedient wives of Noah,<sup>72</sup> and Lot to whom (v. 11 to 12) are opposed the wife of Pharaoh and Maryam as models of piety and chastity. Here Muhammed's Biblical recollections became rather confused. Instead of Noah's he seems to have had Job's wife in his mind. For Pharaoh's wife Geiger has already rightly substituted his daughter.

There only remains one more *mathal* occurring in a verse the authenticity of which as an original Qoranic revelation is doubtful to me. It has, however, been embodied in the official text of the *Qordn*; we must, therefore, discuss it here, whilst reserving the investigation of its authenticity for later on.<sup>73</sup> The verse in question (S. xlviii. 29) forms an appendix to a *sūra* which was revealed concerning various events of the seventh year of the Hijra, and is entirely out of connection with the context. It is easy to see why the compilers of the *Qordn* placed the verse here, from the preceding one, which states that "Allāh has dispatched His messengers with the right guidance and the true faith, in order to exalt the same above every other creed, and Allāh is sufficient as witness." This verse evidently formed the conclusion of an address, and quite unexpectedly we read the following announcement (v. 29): Muhammed is the messenger of Allāh, and those who are with him, are fierce against the unbelievers, but merciful towards one another. Thou seest their bowing down and adoring, seeking favour and good will from Allāh. The Sign [they wear] upon their faces is an emblem of the worship; such is their *mathal* in the Torāh. Their *mathal* in the Gospel is as a seed which puts forth its stalk, makes it grow and strong, so that it rises upon its stem, and astounds the sower, etc.

Now only the second part of the verse, bearing on the New Testament, is a real parable, and is taken from S. Mark iv. 8, whilst the first part belongs to those cases in which *mathal* is to be taken in a wider sense, as is also done by the Commentators. The words evidently describe some external adjustment of the Jews during worship, which would not have remained unknown either to Muhammed, or to any one who visited a Jewish house of prayer. I can refer the words in question to nothing else but to the phylacteries derived from *Deut.* vi. 8,

<sup>68</sup> Nöldeke, Q. p. 157, leaves the question undecided.

<sup>69</sup> Cf. Ch. II. The parable is explained in a scholastic manner in Ibn Sinās *Risāla*, في اثبات النبوة وتاويل رموزهم وامثالهم, ed. Constant. 1298 H. pp. 85-86. See also Al Ghaz. *Kit. Almadān*; Itq. 566.

<sup>70</sup> Not expressly styled *mathal*, but introduced by *ka*; cf. Itq. 565.

<sup>71</sup> Itq. p. 567.

<sup>72</sup> Geiger, p. 111.

<sup>73</sup> Ch. XI<sup>1</sup>.



xi. 18,<sup>74</sup> and styled "Sign." Although our verse only mentioned the one worn on the forehead — the other placed on the arm probably being covered by the garment — the term "sign" was applied<sup>75</sup> to both by the person whom Muhammed might have been asked about their character. The Commentators explain this *mathal* as a description, which it undoubtedly is, and it seems to me that its proper place should be among the traditions appended to this chapter.

### Appendix to Chapter VIII.

#### The *mathal* in Tradition.

Apart from the *mathals* in the *Qorân* a large mass of sayings and parables supposed to have originated with Muhammed lived in the recollections of the first generations of Believers. This increased marvellously as the sacred and polite literatures of the Arabs developed. To endeavour to establish or refute the authenticity of these would be a hopeless task, the means of testing them being much smaller than those we have for traditions on religious and historical matters. Muhammed was obviously fond of speaking in parables and metaphors when pronouncing revelations, and from this we may conclude that he employed the same method of instruction when discoursing with his friends, or addressing Believers from the pulpit. Although many of the sayings attributed to him may be authentic, only a few can be substantiated with any certainty.

The apocryphal sayings of Muhammed may be divided into two classes, *viz.*, those embodied in the *Hadîth* or religious tradition, and those registered by secular writers. This division is, however, superficial only, and does not touch the greater or lesser veracity of either class. In the following pages I have collected as many as I could find, but have only mentioned such works as I have been able to examine. I do not therefore claim to have exhausted the subject.

A series of "Speeches and Table Talk" of Muhammed, containing proverbs and general remarks, has been compiled by Mr. Stanley Lane Poole, London, 1882.

At the head of my collection I place two comparisons which are chronicled in all standard works on Moslim tradition. Both of these are connected with the manner, in which revelations came down to Muhammed. In the one he stated that he heard the voice of revelation "as the chiming of bells," in the other the first revelation came down to him as "the dawn of the morning" (Bokhâri beginning, *Mu'atta*, p. 86, *etc.*). Although a large number of these sayings are dispersed in the *Hadîth* works of Al Bokhâri (died 256 H.) and Muslim (died 260 H.), these authors did not devote much attention to them. Al Tirmidi (died 279) however in his collection of traditions has a special chapter on fourteen *mathals* which I reproduce here (after the edition of Bulâq, 1875, Vol. II. p. 143 *sqq.*).

1. [From Jubeir b. Nufeir from Al Nuwâs b. Sinân Al Kilâbi:] Fantastic description of the "Right Path" (*Qor.* I. 5).

2. [Jâbir b. Abd Allâh Al Ansâri:] The Prophet once heard in a dream a discussion between the Archangels Michael and Gabriel on the following parable: Thou [O Muhammed] and thy people are compared to a king who chose a city of residence, where he built a palace. In this he placed a table and then he sent messengers to invite the people to partake of the repast he had spread thereon. Some of them accepted the invitation, but others refused. The King is Allâh, the residence Islâm, the palace is Paradise, and thou, O Muhammed, art the messenger. Whosoever accepts thee, enters Islâm, and is received into Paradise where he enjoys all that affords him pleasure.

It is possible that this parable is modelled on a Talmudical one (*Sanhedrin*, fol. 38<sup>vo</sup>) of great popularity, in which an explanation is given why in the creation of the component parts

<sup>74</sup> Cf. Exod. xiii. 13.

<sup>75</sup> *mathal* is in this instance rendered by *âjâz*, because the latter has its fixed Moslim terminology.



of the world, the earth, stars, and animals preceded man, who, being the noblest creature, found a garden prepared for abode, and food ready, when he appeared on the earth. The moral of both parables is nearly the same.

3. [Muh. b. Bishār from Muh. b. Abi Adiy from Ja'far b. Maimūn from Abū Tamīm Al Hujaimi from Abū Othmān from Ibn Mas'ūd:] Muhammed said: My eyes are asleep, but my heart is awake (see I. Hish. p. 375, *Kāmil* of Al Mubarrad, ed. Wright, p. 77 and 741). This saying is evidently a mistranslation of Cantic. v. 2 caused by mis-hearing 'eni "my eye" instead of ani "I" (see my article: Historical and legendary controversies, etc. J. Q. R. x. p. 105). A *mathal* following this sentence deals with the same subject.

4. Another and shorter repetition in a somewhat modified form, also on the authority of Jābir b. Abd Allāh.

5. [Muh. b. Ism'ā'il from Mūsā b. Ism'ā'il from Abān b. Yazīd b. Abi Kathīr from Zeid b. Abi Salām from Al Hārith Al Ash'ari:] The infidel is compared to a man who buys a slave. He brings him to his house, and instructs him in the work he has to do, but the slave (instead of following his instructions) works for somebody else. Which of you wishes to be Allāh's servant? Allāh has commanded you to *pray*, so do not turn away from him, since he turns his face towards that of his servant, while the latter is engaged in praying. Allāh has further commanded you to *fast*. He who fasts is compared to a man in a turban, who has in his possession a bag with musk, the odour of which makes everybody wonder. The odour of the breath of a fasting man is pleasanter to Allāh than the smell of musk. Giving *alms* is further illustrated by the parable of a man who was taken prisoner. He is loaded with chains and ill treated, but afterwards ransomed for a small sum. The saying of the *Dikr* is finally compared to a strong castle, which gives refuge to a fugitive, who is surrounded by his foes. Man can guard himself against Satan only through the *Dikr*.—This group of *mathala* seems to betray Christian influence. For the author of *Silāh Al Māmīn* (Brit. Mus. Or. 3855, fol. 12) has the following version: Muhammed said: Allāh commanded John to teach the Israelites five sentences; among them is the *Dikr*. This is compared to a man who is persecuted by his enemies, but finds refuge in a fortress.

6. [Anas from Abu Mūsā from Muhammed:] A Moslim who reads the *Qordā*, is likened to a citron, whose fragrance and taste are both good, but a Moslim, who does not read the *Qordā* is likened to a fruit which has no fragrance, though its taste is pleasant. The hypocrite who reads the *Qordā*, is likened to a fragrant plant of bitter taste, but the hypocrite who does not read the *Qordā* is likened to the coloquint which smells as badly as it tastes bitter.—This parable is to be found in nearly all works of *Ḥadīth*; cf. Bokh (ed. Krehl, III. 401; Moslim, (Butag 1304,) IV. p. 81; Misbkāt, 276). The sundry recensions show slight variations. See also Lane Poole, l. c. p. 154.

7. [Al Hasan b. Aliy Al Khilāl and several others from Abd Allāh b. Razzāq from Muhammed from Al Zohri from Sa'id b. Al Musayyab from Abu Hureira:] Muhammed said: The believer is likened to the sapling, which the winds incessantly try to upset. The believer is also continually exposed to trials, but the hypocrite is as the cedar which is not shaken untill the time of the harvest comes. In Muslim (x. p. 267) this tradition is reproduced with the same (very unreliable) Isnād, but is twice repeated on the authority of Ka'b b. Mālik, the "tree" being replaced by an "ear of corn." Since this *mathal* seems to be, at least in part, modelled on that in *Abōth*, III. 17, the version with the tree seems to be the more authentic one.

8. [Ishāq b. Mansūr from Ma'n from Mālik from Abd Allāh b. Dinar from Ibn Omar:] Muhammed said: The Believer is likened to a tree whose foliage does not fall off.—This tradition, which is badly authenticated, is followed by a discussion of the species of that tree.

9. [Quteiba from Al Laith from Ibn Al Ḥādī from Muhammed b. Ibrahim from Abu Salama from Abdal Rahmān from Alfu Hureira:] Muhammed said: If anyone had a river



passing by his gate, he would bathe five times a day; could, then, any uncleanness remain on his body? No! This is the likeness of the five daily prayers, with which Allāh washes away the sins.

10. [Quteiba from Hāmid b. Yahyā from Thābit al Banāni from Anas:] Muhammed said: My people is likened to the rain, no one knows whether its beginning is more pleasant or its ending.

11. [Muhammed b. Ismā'il from Khilād b. Yahyā from Bashīr b. Al Muḥājir from Abd Allāh b. Boreida from his father:] Muhammed threw down two dates and asked: "What does this mean?" No one knew. "The one," he said, "is hope, the other fulfilment."

12. [Al Hasan from Al Khilāl from Abdal Razzaq from Mu'aminar from Al Zuhri from Salām from Ibn Omar:] Muhammed said: Men are likened to camels; among a hundred thousand findest but one fit to ride on (see Muslim II. p. 275; Al Tha'alibi, *Syntagma* ed. Valetton, p. 7).

13. [Quteiba b. Sa'id from Al Mughira b. Abdal Raḥmān from Abu Zinād from Ala'raj from Abu Hureira:] Muhammed said: I and my people are likened to a man who kindles a fire in which flies and butterflies are caught. Thus I seize your race, and you are thrown into the fire (see Muslim, II. p. 206).

14. [Masaddad from Yahyā from Sufyān from Abd Allāh b. Dinār from Ibn Omar from Muhammed, who said:] You, O Moslems, the Jews and Christians are symbolised in the following parable: A man hired labourers to whom he said: "Who will work for me until noon for one carat?" The Jews did it. Then he asked: "Who will work for me until the afternoon (prayer time)?" The Christians did it. "Then you, O Moslems, shall work for me from the afternoon till evening for two carats." They answered: "We give the most work for smallest pay." "Have I," asked he, "wronged you?" "No." "Thus," he replied, "do I bestow my favour upon whom I choose." — The reader will have no difficulty in recognizing in this parable an adaptation of the Parable of the Householder (St. Matthew xx. 2) as far as it suited the situation. (See also Mishkāt, Engl. transl. II. p. 814.)

To these *mathals* I attach a few more which are dispersed in the collections of traditions. One of the best known of these, which is also mentioned in most modern works, is the comparison of a reader of the *Qorān* to a man who owns a camel. If he keeps it fastened, it remains with him, but if he loosens it, it runs away (*Mu'attā*, 88, Al Nawawi, *Kit. Al Tibyān*, p. 81; cf. Sprenger, III. p. xxxv.).

Ibn Abbās handed down the tradition that Muhammed said: He who has in his inside nothing of the *Qorān* is compared to a desolate house (*Tibyān*, p. 14).

[Mūsā from Wahīb from Ibn Tā'ūs from his father from Abu Hureira:] The Prophet said: The niggard and the almsgiver are compared to two men clad in coats of mail from their breast to their collar-bone. On the almsgiver it grows until it covers the tips of his fingers and obliterates his guilt. On the niggard, however, every buckle keeps firm in its place, so that he cannot loosen it (Bokh. ii. 158, iii. 21). — For *لَا* which gives no sense, I read *لَا* "guilt." The text of this parable shows several corruptions, which may be taken as a sign of its old age, and probable genuineness. Al Nawawi's corrections (*ibid.*) are of little assistance — The same tradition with a different Isnād, likewise going back to Abu Hureira, Bokh. *ibid.* The *mathal* is an imitation of *Qor.* ii. 263, 267: see above, p. 172.

The worshipper of idols is likened to a thirsty traveller, who sees a mirage in the deserts, but cannot reach it (cf. Qastalāni, viii. p. 183). This *mathal* is fashioned after *Qor.* xxiv. 39 (see above, p. 174).

[Abu Bakr b. Abi Shaiba and Abu Āmir Ash'arī and Muhammed b. Al Atā (the wording being that of Abu Āmir) from Abu Usāma from Boreid from Abu Borda from Abu Mūsā from Muhammed:] My mission to guide knowledge is likened to the rain which reaches the



earth. Part of the latter, which is good, absorbs the water, and produces herbs and other vegetation in abundance. Some parts of the earth are hard, and therefore retain the water, which serves for man to drink therefrom, and to water their flocks and herbs. Another part is [barren] level ground, which neither holds the water nor allows anything to grow. This is typical of those who accept the Law of Allāh. He allows them to benefit by my mission, to learn and to teach. But the likeness of him, who does not raise his head and does not accept the guidance of Allāh, which was entrusted to me (Muslim, II. 206).

In connection with *Qor.* lvii. 19 Al Qastalānī (ix. 237) quotes a comparison, handed down by Muslim as follows: Muhammed said: If one of you dips his hand in the sea, let him see what remains on it, when he takes it out again. — [Abu Hureira:] Muhammed said: I and the prophets before me are likened to a building which a man has erected and beautified. People surround it, and say: We have never seen a finer building, except one brick [which is Muhammed], Muslim, *ibid.*

[Abu Borda from Abu Mūsa:] Muhammed said: I and my people are likened to a man who said to his people: "I beheld an army, and I warn you to escape; and now you may depart in ease." One portion obeyed and was saved, but the other which refused to believe him, was surprised by the enemy and destroyed. — Follows application [Muslim, *ibid.*].

Of other authors who have embodied larger and smaller collections of alleged sayings of Muhammed I have quoted the following:

The famous Amr b. Baḥr Al Jāhiz of Baṣra (died 255 H.) in his *Kitāb Al Maḥāsīn wal'a dhūdān* (ed. van Vloten, Leyden, 1898) quotes many dicta ascribed to Muhammed on liberality, niggardliness, and other subjects. More sayings are to be found in Abstracts of the same author's work, *Kit. Al Bayān wal Tiḥyān* (Constantinople, 1883).

A small collection of dicta is contained in Al Belāḍorī's *Kit. futuḥ albulḍān* (ed. de Goeje) p. 537, but much more are dispersed throughout the *Kāmil* of Al Mubarrad (ed. W. Wright).

In the *Kit. Al Muḥtār* of Ibn Doreid (died 321) sayings attributed to a number of persons, beginning with Muhammed (pp. 2 to 4) are collected. The sayings are accompanied by annotations.

The works of Abd Al Malik Al Tha'alibi (died 429) are very rich in alleged sayings attributed to Muhammed, viz.: —

1. *Kit. al'ijāz wal'ijāz* (ed. Valetton, 1894, and Cairo, 1301). The same work is recorded under the title, *Kitāb naṣāḍir al ḥukm* (Brit. Mus. Add. 9569).

2. *Al Latāif wal 'arāif fi-l addād* and *Al yawāqūt fi baidā-e-mawāqūt* prepared by Abu Naṣr Al Muqaddasi (Cairo, 1883). Sayings in praise or blame of all sorts of things.

3. *Thimār alqulāb* (Add. 9558), a volume which contains a large amount of interesting information on every imaginable subject, concerning anecdotes, folk-lore, proverbs, etc. The author draws largely on the writings of Al Jāhiz, and is therefore of great importance for the literary study of the latter.

4. *Muntakhabāt al tamthīl*, Constantinople, 1884.

5. *Barī al Akbād*, Cairo, 1883, arranged according to the number of subjects mentioned in each saying.

Abu Abd Allāh Muhammed b. Salama Al Qudāi Al Shafa'i (died 454) wrote a work titled *Kit. Al Shihādū*, which contains a thousand dicta supposed to belong to Muhammed (Add. 9692).

Abul Qāsim Husein b. Aḥmad Al Rāghib Al Isfahāni (died 500) wrote *Kit. Muḥāḍarat alādīb wa muḥāḍarat al shuārā walbulḥā* (Add. 7305; cf. H. Kh. v. p. 414).



Al Ghazālī reproduces in his *Ihyā' 'ulūm al-dīn* a very elaborate parable attributed to Muhammed on the life of this world. This parable has been translated into German in Kremer's, *Geschichte der herrschenden Ideen*, etc. p. 158. Shorter sayings to be found in the same work are the following (I. p. 279):

1. Anyone who speaks the *Dīkr* amongst those who neglect it, is like a green tree in the midst of barren ground.
2. Anyone who speaks the *Dīkr* amongst those who neglect it, is like one who fights in the midst of those who run away.
3. The *Dīkr* of Allāh in the morning and evening is better than the clashing of swords in the war path of Allāh, or spending one's fortune in lavish expenditure.

The same author's work *Jawāhir Al Qorān* (Add. 9483; cf. *Itqān*, p. 843) contains many *mathals* on behalf of Muhammed. The work was composed after the *Ihyā'* which is quoted fol. 11<sup>vo</sup>, l. 11, and forms a very important supplement to the author's theological treatises.

The best known of all collections of sentences attributed to Muhammed is undoubtedly to be found in Al Maidānī's famous work *Amthāl Al Arab* (ed. Freytag, III. pp. 607 to 617. The same chapter has been reproduced by Aḥmad Al Damanhūrī in his *Kit. sabīl al-riḥād* (Alexandria, 1871), pp. 62-66.

The *Kit. Al muwāshshā* by Al Washshā (ed. Brünnow) is likewise to be mentioned among the works concerned in this subject. The same is the case with the *Taḥfīfāt al muḥaddithīn* by Al Askari Al Lughawi (Br. M. Or. 3062), who endeavours to be critical with regard to the authenticity of the sayings handed down.

Some *mathals* attributed to Muhammed are to be found in Ḥariri's *Maqāmas*, ed. I. Derenbourg, p. 48, l. 16.

There are still to be recorded an abridgment of Al Farābis' *Khulū'at Al Khālīṣa* by Al Badakhshānī (Kazan, 1851). Forty sayings attributed to Muhammed are also collected with a Persian commentary in a richly illuminated MS. of the Brit. Mus. Or. 5081. The work is printed under the title *Jāmi*, Firozpur, 1887. (To this my attention was called by Mr. A. G. Ellis of the British Museum.)

(To be continued.)

#### EXTRACTS FROM THE BENGAL CONSULTATIONS OF THE XVIII<sup>TH</sup> CENTURY RELATING TO THE ANDAMAN ISLANDS.

BY R. C. TEMPLE.

(Continued from p. 31.)

1792. — No. XI.

Fort William, 12th November 1792. Agreed that the following Instructions be given to Lieut. Blair Proceeding to the Andamans.

Lieutenant Archibald Blair. 12 Novr.

Sir, — You are already informed that, in compliance with the Recommendation of Commodore Cornwallis the Governor General in Council has determined to establish a Naval Arsenal at the North East Harbour of the Great Andaman Island, and you have been acquainted that three of the Company's Sloops have been Sent from the Pilot Service to Assist, with the *Union Snow*, taken up on Freight for 4 Months in transporting the Artificers, Stores and Provisions from Bengal to the Andamans and from the Place hitherto called Port Cornwallis [Port Blair] to the Harbour above mentioned.



The Sloops which are called the *Seahorse Cornwallis* and *Juno* are Commanded by Messrs. John Petman C. Crawley and T. Dorrington who will remain in Charge of them during the Trip and are informed by the Master Attendant that they are to obey such Orders as you may give them. The *Union Snow* is also under your directions.

The four Vessels being reported to be in Readiness to take their Departure, and the Weather having now a Settled Appearance it is His Lordship's pleasure that no Time should be lost in their dispatch, and that they proceed forthwith under your General Command keeping Company with each other on the Way direct to the North East Harbour now called Port Cornwallis where as soon as may be convenient after your Arrival, you will begin the work of establishing a Settlement for the East India Company clearing the Country progressively from the North East of Chatham Island towards its Southern Extremity unless any obstacles, at present unforeseen should make it appear to you advisable to deviate in any manner from this Directions. You are Authorized to erect a small temporary Redoubt for Defence should you find it necessary, and such temporary Buildings as can be most quickly finished for the Reception of the Provisions Ammunition, and other Stores.

When these Articles which indispensably require to be well Attended to shall have been Secured against Injury from Weather, and as much as possible from vermine you will choose a proper Spot of Ground for a Garden, and have it prepared for the Reception of the Fruit Trees Plants, etc., that you take from Bengal or can be sent from the Old Harbour where you will order a few People to remain to take Care of the Garden until all the most useful Trees and plants, etc., have been removed from it to be placed at the new Settlement; and during that Time one of the Vessels is to remain at the Old Harbour for the Protection of the People I have mentioned. It is wished that while they are there they may be able to prevail on the Natives to cultivate upon the Stock that will still be left of Fruit Trees and Vegetables, so as to introduce them gradually into General Demand.

You will of course send to the Old Harbour when you arrive at the New, the two Natives whom you brought with you to Bengal and who are now returning in the *Union* and you will cause any small Articles that you think will be Acceptable to the People to be Distributed amongst them when you evacuate the Settlement, which must be done as soon as the Stores, etc., that are to be moved from it have been interely (*sic*) taken away.

It is hardly necessary to acquaint you that your former orders for observing the most humane and conciliatory conduct towards the Natives of the Country and adopting the best means of securing a friendly intercourse with them, are still in force. Your endeavours to this End were in a great deal successful at the place you are now to leave, and afforded the Board much Satisfaction.

The Circumstances of your Situation on the Bombay Establishment rendering it of Consequence to you to be on the Malabar Coast, and the Services of a Surveyor being now less wanted at the Andamans than those of an Engineer I have orders to acquaint you that Captain Kyd has been appointed to be Superintendant of the Andamans, and is to receive Charge of the Settlement on his Arrival which will probably be in five or Six Weeks. With his concurrence and if your time should admit, you are authorized to finish the Survey of the Andamans and to ascertain the relative position of the Southern Necobar with the Acheen Island which has not been hitherto well determined.

You are then at liberty to proceed to Bombay to resume your Station in that part of India coming first to Calcutta to Settle your Accounts if you think your Presence here necessary for that Purpose. The Board have instructed me to acquaint you that it is at present their wish to have the Marine at the Andamans under your Care, when the Service which takes you to the Malabar Coast is ended, and that they mean to write upon the Subject to the Governor in Council.

I am particularly instructed to mention to you that Notwithstanding the Directions in this Letter, you are to Attend carefully to all orders that you may receive from Commodore Cornwallis who has



expressed his readiness to Assist, with his Majesty's Ships in Establishing the Settlement on the great Andamans at the North East Harbour.

The Board have desired me to signify to You that as your Attention and Abilities in the Management of the Company's first Establishment at the Andamans claim their fullest approbation and as you formerly stated that you were Subject to Considerable Expence by the distance of those Islands from Bengal and other Countries from whence you could procure Supplies, they have been pleased to grant you an Allowance of One hundred and fifty Sicca Rupees per Month in Addition to that Which you receive of Surveyor, from the Time of Your first taking Possession of Port Cornwallis, *Vizt.*, the 5th of October 1789 Untill you Shall be relieved from the Command, and further, they have determined that Your Surveyor's Allowance Shall be continued till your Arrival at Bombay.

It is the desire of Government that the Pilot Schooners may be returned to Bengal (where they will be much wanted) either together or Separately, as soon as they can be Spared from the Service, upon which they are Sent excepting the Sea-horse, which is to be Sunk in the Salt Water, to remove, if possible, a Quantity of Vermin and white ants that are in the Vessell and could not be expelled by any Means that have been taken here, and you are Requested to Assist by issuing such Orders as you think in [?] it necessary to give Effect to the Experiment One of a Similar third [?] kind] is understood to have Succeeded in the Instance of the Viper.

I wish you a Safe and Speedy Passage, and am, Sir, Your, etc.,

Fort William,

(Signed) Edward Hay, Secry. to Govermt.

12th November 1792.

1792. — No. XII.

Agreed that the following Letter be written to Commodore Cornwallis and, Ordered that it be dispatched under Charge of Lieutenant Blair.

To Commr. Cornwallis. 12th Novr.

The Hon'ble William Cornwallis, Commander in Chief of his Majestys Ship in the East Indies.

Sir, — We think it proper to inform you that the opinion expressed by your Excellency in favor of an Establishment at the North East Harbour of the Great Andaman in Preference to the Place which was first chosen for [the] Companys Settlement upon that Island has induced us to determine on removing it, and we accept with due Acknowledgments, the offer made by your Excellency to Assist with such Part of his Majesty's Squadron as can be spared to Effect that Purpose.

Your Excellency will receive with this Letter, a Copy of the Instructions given to Lieutenant Blair, in which he is directed to Attend carefully to all orders you may be pleased to give him.

Fort William,

We have the honor to be, etc.,

12th Novr. 1792.

1792. — No. XIII.

Fort William, the 19th of November 1792. Read a Letter and its enclosure from Lieutenant Archibald Blair.

To Edward Hay, Esqre., Secry. to Govt.

Sir, — I have the satisfaction to inform you, that six Months Provision with the necessary Stores are embarked, and that the Settlers agreeable to the enclosed Return, are well accommodated, and in perfect health and Spirits.

Union James and Mary,

I have the Honor to be, etc.,

Novr. 17th, 1792.

(Signed) Archibald Blair.



Enclosure in Lt. Blair's letter, dated 17th Novr.

Return of the People engaged for the new Settlement at the Andamans Embarked on board the Union, Viper, Cornwallis, Juno, and Seahorse:—

Assistant Storekeeper	...	...	...	...	...	...	1
European Overseers	...	...	...	...	...	...	4
Serjeant Major	...	...	...	...	...	...	1
Havildars	...	...	...	...	...	...	2
Naicks	...	...	...	...	...	...	2
Private Sepoys	...	...	...	...	...	...	20
European Tent and Sail Maker	...	...	...	...	...	...	1
Native Carpenters	...	...	...	...	...	...	10
Do. Smiths	...	...	...	...	...	...	6
Do. Sawyers	...	...	...	...	...	...	6
Do. Bakers	...	...	...	...	...	...	2
Do. Taylors	...	...	...	...	...	...	4
Do. Washermen	...	...	...	...	...	...	6
Do. Potters	...	...	...	...	...	...	2
Do. Bricklayers	...	...	...	...	...	...	2
Do. Gardiners	...	...	...	...	...	...	2
Do. Fishermen	...	...	...	...	...	...	10
Do. Tindals	...	...	...	...	...	...	3
Lascars	...	...	...	...	...	...	32
Barbers	...	...	...	...	...	...	2
Stone Cutters	...	...	...	...	...	...	2
Servants	...	...	...	...	...	...	20
Brick makers	...	...	...	...	...	...	2
Copper Smiths	...	...	...	...	...	...	2
Turner	...	...	...	...	...	...	1
Gramies	...	...	...	...	...	...	2
Women	...	...	...	...	...	...	30
Children	...	...	...	...	...	...	7
Surdars	...	...	...	...	...	...	8
Labourers	...	...	...	...	...	...	170

360<sup>13</sup>

Novr. 17th, 1792.

(Signed) Archibald Blair.

(To be continued.)

<sup>13</sup> [Should be 362. — ED ]



## NOTES ON SPIRIT BASIS OF BELIEF AND CUSTOM.

BY SIR J. M. CAMPBELL, K.C.I.E., I.C.S.

(Continued from p. 105.)

**Salt.** — Salt sprinkled, thrown into the fire, or melted in water is deadly to the Evil Eye.<sup>81</sup> In Scotland, to correct an evil glance, holy water, exorcism and the smoke of incense were used.<sup>82</sup> Tweed fishermen salt their nets to keep off evil influences.<sup>83</sup> No Isle of Man seaman (1700) will sail without a piece of salt in his pocket.<sup>84</sup> In South Italy, children wear bits of rock-salt round their necks to keep off the Evil Eye.<sup>85</sup> It is the wholesome and healing influence of salt, especially its power to put to flight the demon of corruption, that makes it so valuable and so widespread a guardian against evil glances.

**The Scape.** — The goat and other scapes come close to Evil Eye charms since the object of both is to house evil glances. In England and Scotland, a he-goat is kept in horse stables near the entrance as he is a favourite Evil Eye home.<sup>86</sup>

**Sea-horse.** — The sea-horse, *caballo marino*, both dried and figured in metal, is worn as an amulet and fastened to harness in Naples.<sup>87</sup>

**Serpent.** — Besides being one of the most powerful guardians the fascination of the snake's eye over birds and other prey makes the snake a specially valued protection against the Evil Eye.<sup>88</sup>

**Shell.** — As a spirit-home the shell *Concha veneris* is a favourite guardian against the Evil Eye.<sup>89</sup>

**Siren.** — A special Neapolitan amulet is the Sirene or Siren seated on a single or double sea-horse. This is worn by children and women and is also hung in the window or other part of a house.<sup>90</sup>

**Skeleton.** — A miniature skeleton is a favourite wearing charm in South Italy. Among the Greeks and Romans the skeleton was a favourite charm.<sup>91</sup> The moral explanation of the Roman practice of carrying a skeleton round the feast room when the drinking of wine began, namely that the guests might remember death, is probably a later meaning-making of a

<sup>81</sup> Compare Mrs. Romanoff's *Rites and Customs of the Græco-Russian Church*, p. 325.

<sup>82</sup> Dalrymple's *Darker Superstitions of Scotland*, p. 15. These rites may be a survival of the Catholic ritual. At the same time exorcism, holy water (that is, water with salt in it) and incense smoke are cures for spirit-possession earlier not only than the Christian but than the classic religions. The detail of the non-ecclesiastical and apparently non-Christian use of salt and water in Evil Eye ailments in Scotland in the beginning of the present century are interesting. In Scotland (1800, Brand's *Popular Antiquities*, Vol. III, p. 47), if any member of a family was suffering from an evil glance a sixpence was borrowed. On the borrowed sixpence salt was heaped and the salt spilt into a tablespoon full of water. The sixpence was dropped into the spoon and the patient's soles and palms were moistened with the salt water. The operator thrice sipped the salt water, drew his forefinger across the patient's brow and threw the contents of the spoon over his shoulder into the back of the fire with the words "Lord keep us from scath."

<sup>83</sup> Bassett's *Legends and Superstitions of the Sea*, pp. 159, 411.

<sup>84</sup> *Op. cit.* p. 438.

<sup>85</sup> Hare's *Cities of Southern Italy*, p. 10.

<sup>86</sup> Compare the monkey kept in China as a safeguard to cattle. Gray's *China*, Vol. II, p. 58. Compare also the regimental animals to which attaches a feeling of luck.

<sup>87</sup> Compare Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, pp. 211, 256, 266.

<sup>88</sup> Compare Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, pp. 312, 350.

<sup>89</sup> *Op. cit.* p. 28.

<sup>90</sup> *Op. cit.* pp. 356-357. Compare Neville-Rolfe, *Naples in the Nineties*, pp. 41-44. The Sirens originally were goddesses. One of them, Parthenope, gave its old name to Naples. Compare Bassett, *Legends and Superstitions of the Sea*, p. 16.

<sup>91</sup> Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 122; King, *The Gnostics*, p. 157.



practice whose sense, like the sense of the Roman shower of rose leaves, was to free the banquet room from the spirits which had thronged to the wine. The skeleton cleared the air of spirits because more than even wine the dead are a tempting spirit-home.<sup>82</sup> " 'Tis certain," says Aubrey (1660),<sup>83</sup> "the touch of a dead hand has wrought wonderful effects." At Stowel in Somersetshire, a painter cured a wen on his neck by asking a blessing, saying the Lord's prayer, and stroking the wen with the hand of a dead woman. The sense is, the spirit was tempted from the wen into the more attractive dead hand.

**Skull.**—As a tempting spirit-home the human skull is a favourite early ornament. Necklaces of skulls decorate Hindu deities, and skulls adorn and protect coffins and tomb-stones. A miniature human skull is a common charm and scarf ornament in Naples. The tribes of the White Nile keep the Evil Eye from their grain fields by setting on the end of a pole the bleached skull of an ox. The same practice prevails among the wilder tribes in Western India.

**Spitting**—has been and is an almost universal practice to counteract evil influences.<sup>84</sup> Pliny (Rome, A. D. 70) says:—"Spitting into the urine or into the right shoe before putting it on keeps off the Evil Eye."<sup>85</sup> In Italy, if a child has been blighted by an evil glance and the person who did the mischief is known, the child is brought before the person and spits thrice into his mouth.<sup>86</sup> According to a Somerset saying, "You should spit thrice if you meet anyone with a north or Evil Eye."<sup>87</sup> Compare the Roman and English plan of spitting into the hand before fighting or beginning to work: also spitting on the first coin earned during the day. The Afghans spit on the ground to wash away the evil glance.<sup>88</sup>

**Sulphur**—one of the greatest cleansers and scares, is a chief Italian remedy for an attack of the Evil Eye.<sup>89</sup>

<sup>82</sup> It seems odd that a skeleton or dead body should be a favourite spirit-home. Two attractions combine. First, the dead body is a spirit-home without a tenant. Lodgings to let is stamped on the lifeless body. The second attraction is corruption which so tempts the coarser order of spirits that their love for the nasty drives them to haunt grave-yards and other unclean places. Evil spirits were believed to haunt unclean places when with the exaltation of the guardian spirit the character of the non-guardian spirit was degraded. That non-guardian spirits were unclean and loved corruption was supported by the experience that the unclean caused sickness, evil smells and flies, three leading proofs of the presence of evil spirits. The belief rules Russia in the form of the dreaded vampire, a spirit who finds its way into a dead body and revives it, so that the dead haunts its own home and lives on the lifeblood of its inmates. The vampire belief in turn finds support in the experience of consumption and other diseases which seem to suck the patient's blood, and the other experience of bodies long after burial found fresh and bleeding. Of the fondness of evil spirits for the unclean and the ill-smelling, Aubrey (1660, *Miscellanies*, p. 162) says:—"Evil spirits are pleased and allured and called up by suffumigations of henbane and other stinking smells which witches use in their conjurations."

<sup>83</sup> *Miscellanies*, p. 125.

<sup>84</sup> Examples have been given in a former article on spitting as a spirit-scarer. Other instances will be found in Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, pp. 412-414. Compare Theocritus (Sicily, B. C. 280), Idyll VII., Banks' translation, p. 49:—"May the old woman be at hand by spitting to keep afar what is not good." Also Idyll XX., *op. cit.* p. 163, Eunice said:—"Away lest you contaminate me," and spat thrice in her breast. Also Idyll XXIII., *op. cit.* p. 274:—"The heartless girl who spat on the body of her dead lover;" and Polyphemus, Idyll VI., (*op. cit.* p. 36):—"Who after excessive admiration of his own beard and eye and teeth spat thrice into his breast in case he should bewitch himself."

<sup>85</sup> Quoted in Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 419. The spitting into it prevents any evil influence passing into the urine and so affecting the person whose issue it is. The spittle in the shoe drives out of the shoe any lurking influence which might cause weariness.

<sup>86</sup> Story's *Castle of St. Angelo*, p. 208. The sense of this practice is that the spirit sent into the child by the owner of the evil glance is in the child's spittle. When the child's spittle passes into the mouth of the owner of the evil glance a communion is established between the child and the owner in virtue of which any damage done to the child must equally effect the owner of the Evil Eye.

<sup>87</sup> Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 417.

<sup>88</sup> Bellaw's *Afghanistan*, p. 387.

<sup>89</sup> Story's *Castle of St. Angelo*, p. 206. Among Greeks and Romans sulphur was a favourite purifier. After the babe Hercules strangled Juno's dragons, Tiresias, among other rites, advised that the house should be purified with clear sulphur. Banks' Theocritus (B. C. 280), Idyll XXIV., Bohn's Library, p. 130.



**Sunface.** — The Sunface or Surya-mukh is one of the chief guardians against evil in India, being carved in temples and carried in procession worked on banners. A sunface was worked into many of the badges worn by the Roman legions whose guardian glances would overcome the spells of the enemy.

**Tongue.** — The tongue is as great a fascinator as the eye. In one view the tongue is an even greater fascinator than the eye, since it not only blasts with slander that is spoken envy but is also the source of the admiration and flattery which with envy form the two main channels of evil influence. The Accadians or early Chaldeans prayed their guardians to save them from the Evil Eye and the spiteful tongue.<sup>100</sup> Virgil (Eclogue VII.) advises the young poet to bind clown's spikenard (*bachar*) round his brow lest any evil tongue should harm him; and Horace (First Epistle) talks of harm done by the skew glance and by the bite of the evil tongue. At Roman sacrifices the Priest called *Favete linguis*, favour with your tongues, that is, keep silence. Etruscan and Indian masks and images and the masks and images of many early tribes and peoples have lolling and split tongues.<sup>1</sup> To thrust out the tongue against any one is a widespread sign of derision with the usual meaning that the person thrust or lolled at is a devil or is devil-haunted. Another instinctive thrusting out of the tongue tip when something has been indiscreetly said seems a form of *unbarufen* as if to scatter the rumour spirits who might spread the wrongly published news.

**Thread.** — A red thread was tied round the necks of Roman infants as a charm against fascination.<sup>2</sup> In Afghanistan, the Evil Eye is kept from horses by tying white and blue threads to their tails.<sup>3</sup> Among Indian Moslems a blue thread and in Scotland as in Rome a red thread keeps off the Evil Eye.<sup>4</sup>

**Tooth.** — A boar's tusk is a favourite charm against the Evil Eye in Naples.<sup>5</sup>

**Water,** the universal cleanser and healer, is a favourite Italian cure for an attack from an evil glance.<sup>6</sup> Evil glances like other evil influences fear nothing so much as holy water. But both among Classic Greeks and Christians the main virtue of holy water rests in salt.<sup>7</sup> Though water cures Evil Eye attacks (so far as has been ascertained) neither water nor picture nor sign of water is used in Naples to keep off an evil glance. In Florence, new houses, which are tempting Evil-Eye lodgings, bear the early waving Etruscan sign of water apparently for luck.<sup>8</sup> The Jews hold that the Evil Eye cannot pass through water. According to the *Talmud* fish are free from the Evil Eye because they live under water.<sup>9</sup>

**Wolfskin.** — A strip of wolfskin fringes many parts of the harness of a Neapolitan horse. The belief in the guarding virtue of a wolfskin is old. Pliny (A. D. 70) says: — "A wolfskin fastened to a horse's neck makes him proof against weariness:<sup>10</sup> a wolfstail is also a protection."<sup>11</sup> In Scotland, a girdle of wolfskin is a cure for epilepsy.<sup>12</sup> Here, as in other cases, the

<sup>100</sup> Lenormant, *Chaldean Magic*, pp. 16-17.

<sup>1</sup> Compare Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, pp. 162-163, Figure 50.

<sup>2</sup> Persius, *Satires*, II. v. 31.

<sup>3</sup> Bellow's *Afghanistan*, p. 387.

<sup>4</sup> MS. Notes.

<sup>5</sup> Neville-Rolfe, *Naples in the Nineties*, p. 53.

<sup>6</sup> Story's *Castle of St. Angelo*, p. 203.

<sup>7</sup> Compare in Theocritus (B.C. 280, Idyll XXIV., Dale's Translation, p. 130) the order given by Tiresias after the babe Heracles had throttled Juno's dragon:—"Sprinkle the house from a green branch dipped in plenty of pure water mixed as usual with salt."

<sup>8</sup> MS. note from Col. Selby, B. E. Neither the Moslim name of eye ('*ain*) for a free flowing spring nor the German saying (Grimm, Vol. I. p. 145, n. 1), "You must not look into running water, it is God's eye," seem to be used to give water as an eye a special glamour or hosing power over an evil glance.

<sup>9</sup> Swab's *Talmud de Jerusalem*, Vol. I. p. 456.

<sup>10</sup> Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 330. The sense is, weariness is the result of evil influences through a human glance or by other channels passing into the horse. The guardian wolfskin scares or draws to itself (that is, *prisona*) the devil of weariness and the horse keeps fresh.

<sup>11</sup> *Op. cit.* p. 21.

<sup>12</sup> Lady Camilla Gordon, *Memories and Fancies*, p. 110.



trust in the wolf is not the result of the belief that a wolf suckled Romulus: it goes back to the stage when, assquered-fiend, the wolf became the herdsman's protector and therefore gained the credit of saving the guardian of Rome.

**Words.** — Besides by articles evil glances can be scared or prisoned by uttering certain words. These words are either the names of certain evil scaring articles or the names of some of the greater guardians. The uttering of the names of spirit-scaring articles scares spirits because in the name part of the spirit, or, in earlier phrase, one of the spirits of the article named lives. To name the name of the greater guardians — Classic Hebrew, Christian, Moslim, Hindu — is admitted to scare evil and has no special reference to the Evil Eye.<sup>13</sup> What is of interest in connection with the Evil Eye is that, though they belong to a much earlier stage of faith, certain of the local and lower guardians have such sovran power over evil that even the portion of their spirits that serves to keep their names alive suffices to guard against evil. Of the early guardians whose name can turn the evil glance the chief are the phallus, the horn, the nail and certain numbers. *Fascinus* or more usually *prafascine* is a word which saves from an evil glance.<sup>14</sup> The guardian virtue of the word *prafascine* equalling *forafascino*, that is, glamour avault, might seem to be the tone of command. But no evil influence would heed this tone or form of command unless the word *fascinus* was the name of the *phallus*, the chief of spirit-homes, so tempting that the name by itself is enough to draw spirits into it. It is for this reason, namely, to house and so dispose of evil influences, that among Hindus at the spring or Holi festival and among the early Romans in the Fescennine and other guardian songs the singers were enjoined to shout phallic words, the use of which at other times would have been deemed unseemly. So great is the scaring power of horn in south Italy that to utter the word horn takes the harm out of an evil glance.<sup>15</sup> So powerful a home or jail of evil glances is an iron nail that to utter the word *defigere*, that is, 'drive it home,' scares evil.<sup>16</sup> Among numbers 3, 7, 8, and 9 are so lucky that to name one of them turns aside an evil glance.<sup>17</sup> In the east of Scotland, for a fisherman to name 'cauld iron' is enough to scare any influences who may have gathered in consequence of the use of some unlucky word.<sup>18</sup> In this and in other cases the word is the name and so is part of the thing named.

**Writing.** — Words written have power as well as words spoken. Arabs, Jews and other Asiatics wear holy words in a hollow amulet. A little canvas bag containing a prayer to the Madonna or a verse of Scripture is frequently tied to the headstall or saddle of a Neapolitan horse.<sup>19</sup> To keep off the Evil Eye, Muslims in Egypt wear amulets engraved with mystic characters.<sup>20</sup> In Egypt, between B. C. 330 and A. D. 300, the name of the guardian Serapis carved in gems baffled the Evil Eye.<sup>21</sup> In Abyssinia, passages from the Sacred Writings are worn in a leather case.<sup>22</sup>

<sup>13</sup> In Europe, the evil influence of compliment is turned aside by saying "God be praised." The Turk says:—"Ma-shû-Allâh, what God wills (happens)." The Persian and Indian Musalmân says:—"God be thanked." If any one praises her child, an Italian nurse says:—"Thank God." Compare Story, *Castle of St. Angelo*, p. 159. In Spain, Greece, Turkey, Palestine, Egypt and Algiers, if you praise a child, you must add "God preserve it." Dalrymple's *Darker Superstitions of Scotland*, pp. 12-13. Prayer to guardians is also an universal safeguard against the Evil Eye. As early as B. C. 2000 the Accadians (or primitive Chaldeans) called on their guardians to turn aside the Evil Eye. Lenormant's *Chaldean Magic*, p. 5. The Greeks and Romans prayed to Nemesis to ward off the Evil Eye. Pliny in Story's *Castle of St. Angelo*, p. 150. The early Nemesis was envy, not retribution. Nemesis becoming a guardian is a case of the guardian being the squared fiend.

<sup>14</sup> Story's *Castle of St. Angelo*, p. 159.

<sup>15</sup> *Op. cit.* p. 329.

<sup>16</sup> Guthrie's *Old Scottish Customs*, p. 149; Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 222.

<sup>17</sup> Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 332.

<sup>18</sup> King's *The Gnostics and their Remains*, p. 70. "Baffle envy, oh Serapis," is one mottoe.

<sup>19</sup> Berghoff in *Fall Mail Gazette*, May 1st, 1899, p. 2.

<sup>20</sup> Jorio in Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 230.

<sup>21</sup> *Op. cit.* p. 404.

<sup>22</sup> *Arabian Life in the Middle Ages*, p. 84.



## Section IV. — Local Details.

This summary of local beliefs connected with the Evil Eye begins with India, because in India, the early dread of the Evil Eye is unweakened: and because the Indian details are fuller than those available for other countries. In Western India, the blast of the Evil Eye is believed to be a form of spirit-possession. In Western India, most witches and wizards are said to be evil-eyed. Among ordinary persons those only who are born under the following conditions are evil-eyed. Hindus believe that a pregnant woman has peculiar longings either from the day of conception or from the fifth month after conception. These longings are due to the development of the foetus. They consist of a wish to eat certain fruits and sweetmeats: to walk in deep shade or in gardens with running water; or to wear rich clothes and ornaments. If these desires are not gratified the child is born weak and greedy, and is believed to have an Evil Eye. If a person who has an Evil Eye sees a man or woman eat anything for which he has a longing the eater vomits or falls sick. In the Konkan, near Bombay, the belief is general that, at the time of dinner, if any one enters the house without washing his feet and sees the inmates at their meal, the eaters become sick or vomit their food or lose all appetite till the Blast of the Evil Eye is warded off. An unwashed outsider brings with him evil influences because he comes from wastes or roads or places where three or four roads meet. As he passes any of those spirit-haunts the haunting spirits buzz about his heels like gnats, and, unless he washes his feet before entering a house, the spirits enter with him into the house and make for the food and the eaters. A man who comes into a house with unwashed feet is said to enter *bharalya pâyāne*, that is, with full feet.

In Western India, the chief devices and rites for baffling the blast of the Evil Eye are: (1) Salt and water are mixed, waved three or seven times round the face of the person affected, and thrown on the road or at a spot where three roads meet. (2) Cowdung ashes are taken to a Brāhmaṇ or to an exorcist, who sprinkles the ashes on his left palm and turning the thumb of his right hand several times over them charms them by saying incantations and then rubs them on the forehead of the person affected. (3) Chillies are powdered and the powder is thrown on burning charcoal laid in a tile and the whole is waved three times round the face of the patient. (4) When a child of one month old sickens its mother takes in her hand some salt and mustard seed, waves them thrice round the child's face, and throws them on the fire. If the smell is very strong the mother knows that the blast of the Evil Eye was very severe. (5) That a child may not be witched Hindu women mark its brow with lamp-black, and some mothers tie round the child's neck a string of *bajarbattu* seeds,<sup>23</sup> or a garland of garlic, cloves, marking-nuts or shells. (6) If a man while taking food believes that the glance of some one present has struck him, the eater offers some of the food to the suspected person. If the suspected person eats, the ill-effect of the glance ceases. The sense of this belief is that the eating of a portion of the food by the suspected person rehouses in him the evil spirit that passed along his glance into the food. By this means the spirit cannot continue to harm the original eater without equally harming the second or suspected eater, that is, the spirit's own houser, and that is itself. When it is not known whose eye affected the sick man he is taken to a charmer who utters mystic verses over part of the food which the eater believes to be the cause of his sickness. The charmed food is kept slung from the ceiling for a night and next morning is given to the sick man to eat. Sometimes the food which has disagreed with the patient is divided into three parts and one of the parts is divided into three morsels. Each morsel is lifted to the sick man's mouth as if to feed him but instead is set on the ground on the right of the sick man. (7) A handful of dust is gathered at the meeting of three roads and mixed with salt and chillies. The mixture is passed thrice from the head to the foot of the sick man outside the house near the threshold and is there burnt on a plate. If the smoke has no smell of chillies the man is believed to be witched. If the

<sup>23</sup> The seeds of the talipot palm, *Corypha umbraculifera*.



smoke smells of chillies the sickness is believed to be due to natural causes and not to possession. (8) Seven pebbles picked from a place where three roads meet, seven leaves of the *khajuri* or date-palm, and seven leafy branches of the *bor* (*Zizyphus jujuba*) tree are brought. The date-palm leaves are waved round the patient's face and then knotted by a member of the family or by some one else who knows the charm which should be repeated during the tying of the knot. The knotted palm leaves, the bunches of jujube leaves, the seven pebbles, and a morsel of food are then waved round the face of the patient and put in a vessel filled with water. The sick man is told to spit into the vessel and to drop into the water a lock of his hair or the paring of one of his nails. The neck of the vessel is stopped with *erand* or castor leaves and a cloth is tied over the mouth. The vessel is waved three times round the sick man's head and is set on the fire to boil. As soon as it boils it is placed under the patient's cot. A broom and a shoe are also brought, struck thrice on the ground, and placed under the cot close to the pot. Next morning the cloth over the mouth of the vessel is untied, the vessel is taken outside the house and its contents are spilt. If the water has turned red the man is believed to have been witched: if the water has not turned red the patient is suffering from some bodily disease. (9) Boiled rice is laid on a plantain leaf, red powder is scattered over the rice, and a small lighted torch or wick is stuck on the rice. The whole is thrice waved round the patient's face and is carried to a well or pond, the bearer being careful not to look back or to speak to any one on the way. He sets his charge near the water, washes his hands and feet, and goes home. In this and in the other instances quoted the object of waving fire or lights round the patient is to draw the spirit into the light and so to house or prison it. Housed in the light the spirit is taken to the edge of a stream or pond, or to where three roads meet, and the spirit in his lamp-house is left at this spirit-resort which is a prison as much as a home. It is worthy of note that in these rites fire is treated not as a spirit-scare but as a spirit-prison. (10) A child who cries too much is witched. The mother takes burning charcoal in a tile or pot-herd and laying chillies on the charcoal in the evening sets the sherd at the meeting of three roads. When a grown person is affected by the Evil Eye a small earthen lamp is lighted, set on a piece of cowdung, waved round the patient's face, and left at a place where three roads meet. Among the Kunbis of the Bombay Dakhan, black threads, shells, marking-nuts or an old shoe is tied round the neck or leg of a pet bullock to keep off the Evil Eye.<sup>24</sup> Among Gujarât (Bombay) Shrâwaks or Jains the bridegroom wears a black silk thread tied round his right ankle to keep off the Evil Eye. A Gujarât mother calls a boy who is born after several children have died Stone or Rubbish or Girl. The mother's object is that no spirit may be tempted to come and live in the boy, or rather that the envious spirit of some former wife or other family ghost whose ill-will killed the elder children, may be cheated into leaving this boy alone. A high class Gujarât Hindu child is believed to suffer either from its own gaze or from the gaze of some fond relation.<sup>25</sup> In Gujarât, the Hindus who have the most hurtful form of Evil Eye are those possessed by Vir, the spirit of a dead warrior.<sup>26</sup> The strict sub-sect of Varjadi Vaishnavas in Gujarât keep their drinking water where no one can see it.<sup>27</sup> Both among Musalmâns and Hindus the belief prevails that during the dark spirit-haunted hours of the night the eye of the sleeper becomes charged with evil influences. The Gujarât Muslim on awakening should cast his first glance on gold, silver or iron: if his waking glance falls on a man the man will sicken,<sup>28</sup> Another saying is: the first glance should fall on an ornament, the second on the wearer.<sup>29</sup> Gujarât Muslims are careful not to take their meals in presence of strangers, otherwise the food is sure to disagree with the eater or to be thrown up.<sup>30</sup> In Gujarât, a glance of admiration is known as *mithi nazar* or sweet glance. If a stranger casts a sweet glance on a child, the nurse or parent wards the evil glance by saying:—"Sec there is dirt on the heel of your shoe." The spirit which might have passed from the admirer's

<sup>24</sup> *Bombay Gazetteer*, "Poona Statistical Account."

<sup>27</sup> *Op. cit.*

<sup>29</sup> *Op. cit.*

<sup>25</sup> The late Mr. Vaikunthram.

<sup>26</sup> *Op. cit.*

<sup>28</sup> Khân Sâheb Abâs Ali, Inspector of Police, Godhra, 27th January 1887.

<sup>30</sup> Khân Bahâdur Fazl Lotfullah Paridi.



eye into the child is turned to the supposed dirt on the heel. The belief is general that the admiring glance of a parent may damage a child as much as a stranger's sweet look. Another glance that harms is the strong man's glance. Like the glance of love the strong man's glance has a *koshish* or drawing power. According to the Gujarāt Musalmāns as the tiger draws the deer and as the snake draws the bird so the glance of a strong eye drains the strength of a weak eye.<sup>31</sup> When an Indian Musalmān is complimented on his health he says:—"God be thanked." Indian Muslims bind a blue thread round a child's neck or wrist to keep off the Evil Eye.<sup>32</sup> In North Gujarāt, the belief is common that the fine bullocks for which that part of the Province is famous, are specially liable to suffer from admiration. In 1888, a pair of Rādhānpur bullocks gained a prize at a cattle show at Ahmedabad, the capital of the Province. So many people looked at and praised the bullocks that one of them sickened. The keeper tied a green and black cotton thread round the fore-leg of the sick animal and it recovered.<sup>33</sup> In Dhārwar, in the South of the Bombay Presidency, if a person praises a child the mother (to avert the Evil Eye) says:—"Look at your foot, it is covered with filth."<sup>34</sup> The Karnātak Liṅgaits, like the Gujarāt Shrāvaks, do not allow any stranger to look at them while they are eating, lest any evil glance may pass into the food. Most Hindus, when they offer *naivedya* or food to their house gods, close their eyes, draw the left hand over the closed eyes, and wave the right hand in front of the gods. In European practice, the evil, that is the evil spirits, in the worshipper is prevented from passing into the object of worship by signing the Cross in front of the eyes or simply by bowing the head. Among Hindus, the issue of an evil influence from the worshipper's eyes is prevented by the double precaution of closing the eyes, and of drawing the left hand in front of the closed eyes. The waving of the guardian right hand clears any evil influences that, without its protection, might pass from the worshipper to the worshipped. In Bengal, at the first pregnancy ceremony, a cloth is hung between the husband and wife.<sup>35</sup> The place where sacrifices are performed must be sheltered by a shed.<sup>36</sup> In worshipping the bones of Krishna at Jaganāth the priest covers his eyes.<sup>37</sup> Among the Hindus, an elder brother never looks at a younger brother's wife.<sup>38</sup> Among most Hindu women, it is a mark of respect to turn the back on a man or to turn away or veil the face,<sup>39</sup> the object being to prevent evil influences passing from the eyes of the woman into the person to be honoured. In Cashmir (1831), the traveller Vigné was told that spots of quartz in a trap rock were a disease caused by the Evil Eye.<sup>40</sup>

The Evil Eye is dreaded by the Malays.<sup>41</sup> In China, when a pregnant woman sees a child the mother rubs the child with betel-palm paste to prevent her child's soul passing into the unborn infant.<sup>42</sup> To avoid the Evil Eye and admiration the Japanese dress their children shabbily.<sup>43</sup> The Musalmān women of Turkistān wear dark thick veils of horse-hair.<sup>44</sup> The Evil Eye is much feared in Afghanistan. It causes all manner of mishaps to animals as well as to men. The Evil Eye of animals and of men, especially of Englishmen, is bad: but the Evil Eye of the invisible genii and fairies is worse.<sup>45</sup> The evil glance may be avoided by spitting, by wearing charms, and by tying white and blue threads to horses' heads and tails.<sup>46</sup> The ancient Persians considered the Evil Eye an *aighāsh* or demon.<sup>47</sup> Zoroaster (B. C. 600) ordered that if any one saw a pleasing object he should say over it the name of God.<sup>48</sup> When his health is praised a Persian Musalmān says:—"Thanks to God."<sup>49</sup> In Chaldea, as far back as the time of the Accadians (B. C. 2000), guardians were besought to keep away the Evil Eye.<sup>50</sup> Another Accadian

<sup>31</sup> Khān Sāheb Abās Ali, Inspector of Police, Godhra, 27th January 1887.

<sup>32</sup> Khān Bahādur Fāz Lutfullāh Faridi.

<sup>33</sup> Information from the late Mr. Tirmalao.

<sup>34</sup> Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I. p. 140.

<sup>35</sup> *Op. cit.* Vol. III. p. 183.

<sup>36</sup> Dabois, Vol. I. p. 436.

<sup>37</sup> Straits Journal Branch Royal Asiatic Society.

<sup>38</sup> *Manners and Customs of the Japanese*, p. 177.

<sup>39</sup> Bellow's *Afghanistan*, p. 387.

<sup>40</sup> West's *Pahlavi Texts*, p. 111.

<sup>41</sup> Khān Bahādur Fāz Lutfullāh Faridi, MS. note, 1896.

<sup>42</sup> MS. Note.

<sup>43</sup> Ward's *View of the Hindus*, Vol. III. p. 72.

<sup>44</sup> Ward's *View of the Hindus*, Vol. II. p. 153.

<sup>45</sup> Vigné's *Travels in Cashmir*.

<sup>46</sup> Gray's *China*, Vol. II. p. 31.

<sup>47</sup> Schuyler's *Turkistan*, Vol. I. p. 124.

<sup>48</sup> *Op. cit.*, loc. cit.

<sup>49</sup> Dabistān, Vol. I. p. 317.

<sup>50</sup> Lenormant's *Chaldean Magic*, p. 5.



prayer beseeches the gods to keep at a distance evil spirits, ill-wishing men, plague, fever, the spiteful tongue, and the Evil Eye.<sup>51</sup> Among the Arabs, the early Ishmaelites (B. C. 1200) decked their camels with crescents to keep off the Evil Eye.<sup>52</sup> The Prophet Muhammad (A. D. 600) accepted the general belief that the Evil Eye caused diseases and death.<sup>53</sup> The modern Arab believes that the horse and still more that the camel is apt to suffer from the Evil Eye. They guard their animals with eye-shaped amulets and with talismans containing passages from the *Kuran*.<sup>54</sup> In the Levant, the poorest ask passers to share in their meal.<sup>55</sup>

Among the Jews King Solomon (B. C. 1000) (Proverbs, Chap. XXIII. v. 6-8) describes the man with the Evil Eye: — "Eat thou not the bread of him that hath an Evil Eye, neither desire thou his dainty meats. For as he thinketh in his heart so is he. 'Eat and drink,' saith he to thee; but his heart is not with thee. The morsel thou hast eaten thou shalt vomit up and lose thy sweet words." So in the New Testament, Christ says: — "The light of the body is the eye. If thine eye be evil the whole body shall be full of darkness;" and, again, "Is Mine eye evil because I am good?"<sup>56</sup> Christ's view that an Evil Eye is the outcome of evil spirits in a man is shewn by the passage: "For from within out of the heart of men proceed evil thoughts, adulteries, fornications, murders, thefts, covetousness, wickedness, deceit, an Evil Eye, blasphemy, pride, foolishness. All these evil things come from within and defile the man."<sup>57</sup> This description that, like other desires and impulses, the Evil Eye comes from within may seem in agreement with the later scientific view that such impulses and appetites are material, a necessary result of the body, and are not caused by any outside spirit that has made its abode in the man. Still the statement that the greedy longings of the Evil Eye come from within is in no way opposed to the view that the greedy thoughts or other evil impulses are the temptings of the devil, or, in still earlier phrase, that they are spirits that have come into the man from outside. This view is illustrated by the passage that follows the verses quoted where an evil spirit who lived in a man left his lodging, came back, and finding his old lodging comfortable called other spirits and they lived together in the man. Out of this man, from his lodgers, that is from within, would come the Evil Eye, the uncleanness and the other unwillful and hurtful influences that made the second state of the man with his *table-d'hôte* of spirit-lodgers worse than his first state with only one tenant. The Jews professed that the race of Joseph were above the power of the Evil Eye.<sup>58</sup> Still to keep off the Evil Eye, the *Talmud* advises that, in entering a city, the thumb of the right hand should be placed in the left hand and the thumb of the left hand in the right hand.<sup>59</sup> Further, to keep off the Evil Eye, the Jews, after their re-establishment (B. C. 440) in Jerusalem, adopted the practice of wearing guards or phylacteries, that is, little boxes containing passages of Scripture.<sup>60</sup> The Jews of Tunis take the strictest precautions that no Evil Eye shall gain access to a new-born son. They hide the babe behind curtains, keep the room full of smoke, and hang about flaming hands and outspread fingers, pieces of bone and cowry shells.<sup>61</sup> The Phœnikians (B. C. 1000) used an eye as an amu-

<sup>51</sup> Lenormant's *Chaldean Magic*, pp. 16, 17.

<sup>52</sup> *Arab Society in the Middle Ages*, p. 84.

<sup>53</sup> Dalrymple's *Darker Superstitions of Scotland*, p. 14.

<sup>54</sup> St. Mark, Chap. VII. v. 21, 22.

<sup>55</sup> Schwab's *Talmud de Jerusalem*, Vol. I. p. 456. Though in theory the Jew was exempt from the Evil Eye the glance of a Jew might be an evil glance. "If," says the *Talmud*, "any one is afraid of casting an evil glance let him look at the left side of his nose." (*Op. cit.*, loc. cit.) The sense seems to be that the spirit in the left or unlucky eye will pass into the first object seen, that is, the looker's nose, and so do no harm.

<sup>56</sup> *Op. cit.*, loc. cit. The sense seems to be that, by veiling the phallic thumb by the hands, the entry of evil spirits is prevented. At the same time the good meaning of the open hand in India (see King, *The Gnostics*, p. 222) suggests that the protection is purely phallic.

<sup>57</sup> The late date of the adoption of the practice explains the use of a Greek word for the guard. King (*The Gnostics*, p. 116, n. 2) suggests that the use of texts took the place of earlier Ephesian spells.

<sup>58</sup> Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 426. Of the dread of praise, as opening an attack from the Evil Eye, Langwill (*Children of the Ghetto*, p. 39) gives the following example in his account of the poor Jews of London: — "It is a fine child, *unbeshrer*, only it won't be its mother's fault if the Almighty takes it not back again. She picks up so many ignorant love women who come in and blight the child by admiring it aloud, not even saying *unbeshrer*" (*unbeshrer* apparently is a Dutch form of the German *unberufen*, unsummoned).

<sup>59</sup> Judges, Chap. VIII. v. 21.

<sup>60</sup> Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, pp. 124, 223, 341.

<sup>61</sup> St. Mathew, Chap. VI. v. 22-23; Chap. XX. v. 15.



let to guard against the Evil Eye. The Carthaginians (B. C. 500), mainly a Phœnikian colony, were fond of pottery in the shape of animal heads with an eye on the neck. The Carthaginians also used an ornament closely like the Etruscan and Neapolitan rue-sprig, or *cimaruta*.<sup>62</sup> Dread of the Evil Eye was ever present among the ancient Egyptians (B. C. 2000-500). Both the living and the dead wore, and on the walls were painted, the eye of Osiris, the hieroglyphic *ut'a*.<sup>63</sup> In Middle-Age Egypt (B. C. 600-A. D. 600), during the centuries before and after Christ (B. C. 300-A. D. 300), Serapis was considered a special guardian against the Evil Eye. The name of Serapis carved in gems baffled the Evil Eye.<sup>64</sup> In modern Egypt (A. D. 600-1900), the women blacken with *kohl* or antimony the edge of the eyelid above and below the eye.<sup>65</sup> The blackness is said to cool the eye. The practice suggests the belief that the black fringe scared spirits from attempting to enter the eye. When a Muslim Egyptian salutes a saint he holds his hands before his face like an open book.<sup>66</sup> To keep off the Evil Eye, in which he fears enchantment, the Egyptian Muslim wears amulets called *telism* or talismans with mystic characters engraven on them.<sup>67</sup> The Egyptian Muslims have a saying:—"The food that is coveted or on which the Evil Eye has fallen, carries no blessing."<sup>68</sup> To guard their children from the Evil Eye, Egyptian Muslims either have them slovenly clad, rubbing dirt on their clothes; or they sew on their head-dress coins, feathers, gay lappets or charms, so that the evil glance may be drawn to the ornament.<sup>69</sup> The Abyssinian Budas, potters and iron workers, who turn into hyænas, are supposed to have the Evil Eye. Charms and amulets against the Evil Eye are written and worn in leather cases in Abyssinia.<sup>70</sup> The Nubians, the Abyssinians, and the Negroe tribes of the White Nile have a firm belief in the power of the Evil Eye. The Evil Eye is supposed to harm cattle and horses and so to witch guns that they constantly miss their aim.<sup>71</sup> Pliny (A. D. 50) says that the glance of African sorcerers causes trees to wither, cattle to perish, and infants to die.<sup>72</sup> During Denham's journey across the Sahara from Tunis towards Lake Chad in 1812 a she-camel suddenly fell dead. "The Evil Eye," said the Tunis Arabs, "God be praised, God is great, powerful and wise, those looks of the desert people are always fatal."<sup>73</sup> In parts of Africa no one eats in public in case he may be envied by some hungry man.<sup>74</sup> At Dahomey, in Central Africa, during a ceremonial when the king drinks, two of his wives stretch a calico screen in front of him. Another pair of wives open small parasols to hide the king's figure. Guns are fired, the Amazons tinkle bells, rattles are sprung, ministers clap their hands, commoners turn their backs, dance like bears or swarm like dogs.<sup>75</sup> When the wife of a Dahoman serves her husband with food or drink, she touches the ground with her forehead and bends before him with averted face.<sup>76</sup> Among the neighbouring tribe of Loangos, when the chief drinks, the people bury their faces in sand.<sup>77</sup> No one may see the contents of any dish served to the chief of the Moubattâs in Central Africa.<sup>78</sup> In East Africa, the Mpwapwas wear an apron with a fringe of thongs to keep off the Evil Eye and other witchcraft.<sup>79</sup> The Moursaks of Central Africa set the head of an ass in their gardens to keep off the Evil Eye.<sup>80</sup> In Madagascar, no food is carried across a road without being covered.<sup>81</sup> If you say to a Madagascar woman that her child is pretty, the mother, to turn aside the Evil Eye, says:—"No the child is ugly or nasty."<sup>82</sup> The Ashantees of West Africa set in their fields iron standards with horns and a brow

<sup>62</sup> Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, pp. 127, 345.

<sup>63</sup> King, *The Gnostics and their Remains*, p. 70.

<sup>64</sup> *Arabian Society in the Middle Ages*, p. 71.

<sup>65</sup> *Op. cit.* p. 84. *Talism* is the Arabic form of the Greek *apotekasma*, planet influence. A talisman both gained love and guarded mischief: an amulet (*amulet*, baffle) only guarded mischief. See King, *The Gnostics*, p. 115.

<sup>66</sup> Lane's *Modern Egyptians*, p. 145.

<sup>67</sup> Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, pp. 23, 391-394.

<sup>68</sup> Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 11.

<sup>69</sup> Dalrymple's *Darker Superstitions of Scotland*, p. 14.

<sup>70</sup> Burton's *Voyage to Dahomey*, Vol. I. p. 245. The action of the commoners is interesting. They turn their backs to prevent their eyes sending evil glances: they dance like bears and swarm like dogs to entice evil spirits into themselves.

<sup>71</sup> *Op. cit.* Vol. I. p. 45.

<sup>72</sup> *Op. cit.* Vol. I. p. 245.

<sup>73</sup> Schweinfurth's *Heart of Africa*, Vol. II. p. 28.

<sup>74</sup> Notes and Queries in Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 121.

<sup>75</sup> Cameron's *Across Africa*, p. 98.

<sup>76</sup> Notes and Queries in Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 121.

<sup>77</sup> Schweinfurth's *Heart of Africa*, Vol. II. p. 326.

<sup>78</sup> *Op. cit.* Vol. II. p. 168.

<sup>62</sup> *Op. cit.* pp. 5, 125, 136.

<sup>63</sup> *Encyclopædia Britannica* (IXth Edn.), "Egypt," p. 723.

<sup>64</sup> *Arabian Society in the Middle Ages*, p. 193.

<sup>65</sup> Berghoff in *Pull Mail Gazette*, May 1st, 1889, p. 2.

<sup>66</sup> Denham and Clapperton's *Africa*, Vol. I. p. 153.



like an ox-skull to protect the sown crops from evil spirits.<sup>83</sup> In the Congo Country, in South-West Africa, if any one looks at the chief while the chief is eating, the looker is killed.<sup>84</sup> The people of Guinea in West Africa are described in 1553 as reverencing their king wonderfully and never daring to look him in the face.<sup>85</sup> When Monte-Lumo of Mexico (A. D. 1550) dined a gilt wooden screen was drawn in front of him that no one might see him eat.<sup>86</sup> Mexican women turned their backs on the men when they gave them drink.<sup>87</sup> In Nicaragua (1530), the belief was common that some persons' looks were mortal and that the glance of certain eyes was fatal to children.<sup>88</sup> In Peru (1530), worshippers covered their eyes while adoring sacred objects. The priests kept their eyes on the ground and their backs turned to the god when they sacrificed.<sup>89</sup>

In Europe, among the ancient Greeks (B. C. 1500-150), the Evil Eye was greatly dreaded. The Greeks and Romans held that the eye carried disease and death as well as love and delight to men, animals and trees.<sup>90</sup> The Evil Eye was called *baskanos*, a word of doubtful origin, connected by some with an early Greek word *basko*, go: according to others, *baskanos* is a Chaldean word meaning *phallus*. The Chaldean origin is supported by the fact that the *phallus* was called *baskanos*, perhaps with the sense that it fascinated fascination, prisioning or turning aside the evil glance.<sup>91</sup> The Greeks worshipped Nemesis or Fortune in her early character of envy as a guard against the Evil Eye.<sup>92</sup> The ancient Greeks were impressed with the danger of self-fascination. Besides the case of Narcissus, Theocritus (B. C. 260) makes Dametas and Plutarch (A. D. 150) makes Eutelidas fascinate themselves by looking at their own faces.<sup>93</sup> According to Pliny (A. D. 50) the glance of an Illyrian who had double eyebrows was mortal.<sup>94</sup> According to Plutarch (A. D. 150) the glance of certain eyes harmed infants and young animals. The Cretans and people of Cyprus had special power to cause harm, and the glance of the Theban Evil Eye might slay a grown man.<sup>95</sup> In its milder form Plutarch seems to have found the casting of envious glances general. "The common people," he says, "are envious or evil-eyed. They are vexed in their minds as often as they see the cattle, of those for whom they have no kindness, their dogs, or their horses in a thriving state. They sigh, they grin, they set their teeth and shew all the tokens of a malicious temper when they behold the fields, of those for whom they have no kindness, well tilled or their gardens adorned or beset with flowers."<sup>96</sup> In A. D. 380, Heliodorus, Bishop of Thrace, noticed the danger of being struck by the Evil Eye if you went among crowds. The Bishop held that when any one with an Evil Eye looked at what was excellent he filled the surrounding atmosphere with a pernicious quality and transmuted his own envenomed exhalations into what was nearest to him.<sup>97</sup> In modern Greece, the Evil Eye is called *kakomati*.<sup>98</sup> Mud is rubbed on the brow of a new-born babe to keep off the Evil Eye. If a stranger looks at a Greek child the mother spits into the child's face or into her own bosom. Like the ancient Greeks the ancient Romans prayed to Nemesis or Anoy to guard them from the Evil Eye.<sup>99</sup> Canon Iorio, an eighteenth century Italian authority on the Evil Eye, says:—"In the vast field of amulets against the Evil Eye every one was known to the Ancients: the moderns have not added a single horn."<sup>100</sup> The word *baskanos*, which the Ancient Greeks used both for the Evil Eye and for the *phallus*, appears in Latin as *fascinus* or *fascinum*, and is the origin of the English fascinate. Virgil (B. C. 40) says:—"I know not what eye witches (*fascinat*) my young lambs."<sup>101</sup> Like *baskanos*, *fascinus* was used with the sense of *phallus*,

<sup>83</sup> Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 215.

<sup>84</sup> Spencer's *Descriptive Sociology*, p. 232.

<sup>85</sup> Story's *Castle of St. Angelo*, p. 183.

<sup>86</sup> Compare Smith's *Greek and Roman Antiquities*, "Fascinum," and Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 7.

<sup>87</sup> *Op. cit.* p. 4. As envy seems to be Nemesis before Nemesis was raised to Divine Vengeance, this worship of Envy, like the widespread use of an eye to guard against the Evil Eye, is a case of the religious law that the guardian is the squared fiend. Envy propitiated can imprison in itself all envious thoughts and glances.

<sup>88</sup> Dametas (Idyll VI. Bohn's *Libraries*, Theocritus, p. 36) speaks in the character of Polyphemus:—"Lately I was looking into the sea and beautiful was my beard and beautiful my solitary eyebrow and beautiful my teeth whiter than Parian marble. That I might not be witched I spat thrice upon my breast." The case of Eutelidas is quoted in Plutarch's *Symposium V.*: Compare Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 14.

<sup>89</sup> *Natural History*, Book vii., Chap. 2.

<sup>90</sup> Plutarch's *Morals*, Vol. I. p. 272.

<sup>91</sup> Pliny, A. D. 50, in Story's *Castle of St. Angelo*, p. 150.

<sup>92</sup> In Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 264.

<sup>93</sup> *Op. cit.* pp. 426-427.

<sup>94</sup> *Op. cit.* p. 234.

<sup>95</sup> Kerr's *Voyages*, Vol. VII. p. 226.

<sup>96</sup> *Op. cit.* p. 243.

<sup>97</sup> *Op. cit.* p. 225.

<sup>98</sup> Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 10.

<sup>99</sup> Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, pp. 6 and 33.

<sup>100</sup> *Op. cit.* p. 7. n. 2.

<sup>101</sup> *Eclagues*, III. 103.



apparently because the *phallus* out-fascinated or imprisoned the evil glance.<sup>2</sup> Like the *phallus* the Romans (A. D. 40) used *oscilla* or little masks of Bacchus to guard trees against the Evil Eye.<sup>3</sup> Pliny notes that if any one sickened without cause people said:—"Mantis te vidit, A grasshopper has seen you." Pliny also records that a piece of wolfskin fastened to a horse's neck makes him proof against weariness.<sup>5</sup> And that to spit into his urine or into his right shoe before putting it on guards the spitter from the Evil Eye.<sup>6</sup> This spitting cure is a case of the use of the term Evil Eye in the general sense of evil influence. The sense of spitting into urine is to prevent Evil Eye or other influences coming into the urine and so through the urine into the body of the spitter (according to the early belief that in any issue lives one of the souls or part of the soul of the person from whom the issue has come, so that any harm done to the issue injures the issuer). The sense of spitting into the right shoe before putting it on is to drive out any evil influence that may have lodged in the shoe, since such spirit would pass from the shoe into the foot and cause weariness or other harm.

No nation of modern Europe takes more pains to guard both people and horses from the Evil Eye by wearing charms and using evil-scaring and honsing gestures and words than the Italians. In Italy, if any one is complimented on his good health, he will say—or if a child's healthy look are praised, the nurse will say:—"Thanks be to God."<sup>7</sup> The names of the leading articles, gestures and words in general use against the Evil Eye have been noted above. One of the most striking sights in Naples and in the country towns near Naples is the brightness and the variety of the articles fastened to harness to protect horses from the Evil Eye. The beliefs and practices connected with the Evil Eye are specially common in South Italy, Sicily, and Corsica. According to the Neapolitan belief the *jettatore* or caster of the evil glance is born with the power: he cannot get rid of the power: as a rule he does not know that his glance is evil.<sup>8</sup> According to Mr. Story, in Italy, the belief in the power of the Evil Eye is universal. Every coral shop is filled with amulets and every body wears a charm, ladies on their arms or at their belts, men on their watch-chains, beggars on their necks.<sup>9</sup> Dumas in his *Impressions de Voyage* describes the Evil Eye as a fundamental article of social faith in Naples.<sup>10</sup> One theory is that the eye cannot of itself have an active fascinating power. But that, through the eye, the spirits of evil persons may fascinate and send forth contagion by means of a poisonous exhalation.<sup>11</sup> Another theory is that the *jettatore* or thrower cannot command the evil glance. The glance blights the first object it lights on. In Naples, women used to be supposed to throw the most poisonous glances: now the glance most dreaded is that of a mean-looking and morose man.<sup>12</sup> In the seventeenth century (1660), Aubrey wrote:—"In Spain, France and other southern countries, nurses and parents are very sly to let people look upon their young children for fear of fascination." In Spain, they take it ill if one looks on a child and say:—"God bless it." They talk of *mal de ojos*.<sup>13</sup> In Spain, the glances of a woman are most dreaded. The cure is to drink horn-shavings.<sup>14</sup> If a stranger looks at her child a Turkish or a Greek woman will either spit into the child's face or into her own bosom.<sup>15</sup> In Russia, a child who suffers from low spirits, loss of appetite, and restlessness is believed to be witched. The wise-woman or mid-wife is called. She takes a vessel of water, drops into it a cinder or two, and a pinch of salt, makes the sign of the cross over the water, says a long prayer over it and begins to yawn. She crosses the water again, takes a sip, squirts it thrice over the patient's face, makes him drink, and washes his face and head.<sup>16</sup> Russian children are blasted by admiration. If any one says:—"What a fine, healthy babe," the nurse says:—"Do you wish to witch the child?"<sup>17</sup> A kind-hearted

<sup>2</sup> Compare Andrews, *Latin Dictionary*, s. v. *Fascinus*.

<sup>3</sup> Compare Virgil, *Georgics*, Book II. v. 389:—"For thee, Bacchus, soft little masks hang from the tall pine."

<sup>4</sup> In Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 15.

<sup>5</sup> In Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 330. Here the Evil Eye, whose glance causes weariness is drawn into the squared fiend or guardian wolf.

<sup>7</sup> Story's *Castle of St. Angelo*, p. 159.

<sup>8</sup> Story's *Castle of St. Angelo*, p. 193.

<sup>11</sup> Story's *Castle of St. Angelo*, pp. 183, 184.

<sup>12</sup> Aubrey's *Miscellanies*, p. 173.

<sup>13</sup> Reference mislaid.

<sup>14</sup> Murray's *Handbook of Spain* in Elworthy, *Evil Eye*, p. 23, note 43.

<sup>15</sup> Mrs. Romanoff, *Rites and Customs of the Græco-Russian Church*, p. 52.

<sup>17</sup> *St. James' Budget*, June 22nd, 1883; Mrs. Romanoff, *Rites and Customs of the Græco-Russian Church*, p. 52.

<sup>6</sup> *Op. cit.* p. 419.

<sup>9</sup> Dumas LaCorricolo in Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 27.

<sup>10</sup> *Saturday Review* of 8th August 1891, p. 167.

<sup>12</sup> Compare Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 23.



evil-eyed Slav father blinded himself that his glance might not harm his children.<sup>18</sup> In South Russia, many amulets have been found with markings representing eyes.<sup>19</sup> In Germany, the witch is, in theory, almost the only medium of evil influences. The Evil Eye is perhaps more characteristic of the German witch than of any other witch. According to Grimm, you can tell a German witch by seeing your image upside down in her pupil.<sup>20</sup> Though in theory the Germans have focussed evil influences in the glances of witches the common boast-saving phrase (accompanied by table rapping), "*Ein zwei drei unberufen*, Once, twice, thrice, you are not wanted," implies the belief that unhoused spirits swarm in the air and are ever on the lookout for likely lodgings.<sup>21</sup> The words *schelange* squint-eye, *zauber-blick* glamour-blink, and *boschaft* evil glance, further show that in common German belief the power of the Evil Eye is not limited to witches. In South France, the presence of any one with the Evil Eye is supposed to put silkworms off their feed.<sup>22</sup>

In England, in the seventeenth century, according to Lord Bacon, the Evil Eye most hurts when the person envied is beheld in glory or triumph: because, in the time of glory or triumph, the spirits of the person envied most come out and meet the blow.<sup>23</sup> Near Salisbury, in South England, in 1685, in charging a jury in a witch case, a Justice said:—"The natures of some people are corrupted by *atrabilis*, or something unknown, so that their look when fixed many times on a living object destroys the object by a certain poison." This result may be contrary to the purpose of the miserable persons who sometimes affect their beloved children and oftener their own cattle. The Judge knew one Christian Malprid, who had an Evil Eye. He and his children and all his cattle were lean. The only fat animal about the place was a dog who kept himself out of sight in the barn among the beans.<sup>24</sup> In Yorkshire, in 1810, boys put the thumb between the first and middle fingers pointing downwards to guard against the Evil Eye of a witch.<sup>25</sup> In 1899, in Somerset and Devon, the phrase 'wished' is used of any illness or other misfortune which, appearing unnatural, is taken to be due to some artificial overlooking.<sup>26</sup> In Somerset and Dorset, the mass of the people are as firm believers in witchcraft and the Evil Eye as were the swains of Theocritus and Virgil.<sup>27</sup> In Somerset, they say:—"Spit three times if you meet any one with a north or Evil Eye."<sup>28</sup> That horse-shoes are fastened over house doors to prevent a witch overlooking the house and that the use of coral and bells is to guard the child is known and admitted.<sup>29</sup> A Somerset woman who thought herself overlooked would pull her shift over her head, turn the shift against the sun three times, and three times drop a live coal through the shift.<sup>30</sup> [Here the evil influence is drawn from the woman into the shift by turning the shift three times against the sun.<sup>31</sup> Then the live coal passing through the shift scares the evil spirit from his lodging in the shift.] The practice in English cavalry regiments of the officers arching their swords over the bride as she passes from the altar is probably to guard the newly married couple from the Evil Eye and other influences. Two scaring powers unite in the sword, the power of the iron and the divinity or worshipfulness

<sup>18</sup> Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 9.

<sup>19</sup> *Op. Cit.*, p. 133.

<sup>20</sup> Chamber's *Encyclopædia*, Article "Evil-Eye."

<sup>21</sup> The rap under the table is apparently music to scare evil influences.

<sup>22</sup> *A Little Stepdaughter*, p. 127. The scene is the south of France. The belief that evil influences enter by other passages than the eye is shown by the silkwormer's order (*op. cit.*) against allowing any maimed or deformed (and therefore possessed) person to enter a silkworm shed, *magnanière*. Another silkwormer's rule (*op. cit.*) is never to give light or drink to any one asking at the door of a silkworm shed. The sense of this rule is that in the fire or in the drink a portion of the soul or some one of the souls of the silkworms passes to the receiver and enables him by saying charms over the gift of fire or of water to pass some evil influence into the fire or water and so into the silkworms.

<sup>23</sup> Essay on Envy.

<sup>24</sup> *Gentleman's Magazine Library*, "Popular Superstitions," p. 289.

<sup>25</sup> Dean Ramsay in Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 256.

<sup>26</sup> Compare Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 417.

<sup>27</sup> Rose in Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 13.

<sup>28</sup> Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 417.

<sup>29</sup> *Op. cit.*, pp. 218, 429.

<sup>30</sup> Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 429.

<sup>31</sup> The shift as a protector from cold is a great guardian and spirit-home. Compare among the Germans the lucky and the baneful shifts: the golden shift that saves from drowning and the spell-proof shift spun by a maiden. Grimm's *Teutonic Mythology*, Vol. III. pp. 1093-99 and notes 1 and 2.



of the weapon.<sup>32</sup> According to Mr. Baring Gould, Mr. Hawker, Vicar of Morwenstow in Cornwall, in the early part of the present century, believed in the Evil Eye. Whenever he came across any one with a filmy eye or with a double pupil or with eyes of an unequal size he would hold the thumb and the fore and middle fingers in a peculiar manner to ward off the Evil Eye. "I do not pretend," he said, "to be wiser than the word of God. I find that the Evil Eye is reckoned with blasphemy, pride and foolishness as things that defile a man."<sup>33</sup>

Towards the close of the seventeenth century in the western islands of Scotland, all the islanders and thousands of the neighbouring mainlanders were of opinion that some particular persons had an Evil Eye which affected children and cattle, causing frequent mischances and even death.<sup>34</sup> The people tied Molucca beans (which the Gulf Stream leaves on their shores) round their children's necks. If an evil glance was aimed at it the bean turned black.<sup>35</sup> Another device for turning the Evil Eye was to carry a piece of coal.<sup>36</sup> About the same time (1690) the people of the mainland of Scotland believed that a man might destroy his own cow by looking at it the first thing in the morning and praising the cow's fatness.<sup>37</sup> The experience that persons with an Evil Eye as often damage themselves as their neighbours seems to have led to the rule that in witch-trials no evidence might be taken that the accused had an Evil Eye.<sup>38</sup> The sensible line was drawn between the overlooker whose evil influence was unwished perhaps unconscious and the witch who by careful and disreputable scheming, had secured as a lodger an evil influence ready to be sent to ruin any one the witch disliked or envied. In eighteenth-century Scotland, the belief that the Evil Eye is a form of spirit-possession was general. When a person was struck by the Evil Eye, exorcism, holy-water and the fumes of incense were used to drive out the evil influence.<sup>39</sup> About the same time (18th century) certain uneclesiastical scaring rites were also in use. An old sixpence was borrowed and heaped with salt. The salt was spilt into a tablespoonful of water into which the sixpence was dropped. The patient's soles and palms were thrice moistened with the salt water. The operator three times tasted the salt water, dipped his finger into the spoon, and drawing his wet finger-tip across the patient's brow threw the contents of the spoon into the back of the fire saying:—"Lord, save us from scaith."<sup>40</sup> In North Scotland (1800), it was believed that great praise of a child or of people, animals or crops fore-spoke them, that is, laid them open to Evil-Eye attacks. "Hold your tongue or you will fore-speak the child," was the local saying to avert the risk.<sup>41</sup> Early in the present century, in the Scottish Highlands, if a stranger admired a cow, some of the cow's milk was given him to drink to break the spell.<sup>42</sup> At that time the belief was general that during the spirit-haunted night evil influences passed into the sleeper. To free their eyes from these evil tenants it was usual on waking to say in Gaelic:—"Let God bless my eye and my eye will bless all it sees. I shall bless my neighbour and my neighbour will bless me."<sup>43</sup> In Scotland (1825), to keep off the Evil Eye or ill-ee, people rolled a red thread round their finger or neck and stuck a rowan twig in their hat.<sup>44</sup>

<sup>32</sup> The extreme scaring power of iron has been noted in the article on Iron. Some additional examples are given by Mr. Elworthy (*The Evil Eye*, pp. 220-225). All the examples seem to find their explanation in the spirit horror of iron. Young children should not have their hair or nails cut by anything made of iron since the iron might scare their frail spirits out of them. Such is the strength of the iron influence that the Jews and apparently the early Christians doubted their guardian's power to withstand it. No stone in the altar at Jerusalem had been touched by iron, and Christian Martyrs after being saved from fire and wild beasts fell victims to the sword of the executioner.

<sup>33</sup> *The Vicar of Morwenstow*, p. 152.

<sup>34</sup> Martin in Brand's *Popular Antiquities*, Vol. III. pp. 45, 46.

<sup>35</sup> *Op. cit.* Vol. III. p. 46.

<sup>36</sup> *Op. cit.* Vol. III. p. 45.

<sup>37</sup> *Dalyell's Darker Superstitions of Scotland*.

<sup>38</sup> Compare *op. cit.* p. 7, where Dalyell writes:—"I know of no example of the charge of an Evil Eye forming one of the charges against the accused in a Scottish witchcraft case."

<sup>39</sup> *Op. cit.* p. 15.

<sup>40</sup> Brand's *Popular Antiquities*, Vol. III. p. 47.

<sup>41</sup> Walter Gregor, p. 91.

<sup>42</sup> In Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 9. The sense is: In the milk, the issue of the cow, some of the cow's spirit lodges. By drinking the milk the cow-spirit passes into the stranger. If the cow-spirit has suffered from the stranger's glance, after drinking the milk, the stranger suffers as much as the cow. He is therefore anxious to withdraw the spirit from which the cow is suffering.

<sup>43</sup> Guthrie's *Old Scottish Customs*, p. 196.

<sup>44</sup> Hone's *Every Day Book*, Vol. II. p. 687. In Falkirk (1826), a woman earned her living by selling *Skaith Saw*, a thick gruel that kept off the Evil Eye. *Op. cit.*, loc. cit.



Still (1890), in West Scotland, the edge of the evil glance is turned by carrying a rowan twig or five-leaved clover or by wearing a garment outside in.<sup>45</sup>

In Ireland, the legendary king Miada, though possessed of a magic sword, was beaten by Balor of the Evil Eye.<sup>46</sup> In the sixteenth century, according to Camden, Irish eye-biting witches were executed for making children and horses and cattle suddenly sick.<sup>47</sup> In the seventeenth century, the Evil Eye was common in Ireland. Its effect was known as overlooking, eye-biting and fascination. In 1661, Mary Langdon charged with eye-biting pleaded that unless she touched the victim her simple overlooking could do little harm.<sup>48</sup> In the eighteenth century, the Irish had the custom in all weathers of throwing the doors open when at dinner as it were inviting all strangers.<sup>49</sup> In South Ireland, in 1825, it was believed that on May eve the faeries or good people had power and inclination to do all sorts of mischief without restraint. The Evil Eye is then also deemed to have more than its usual vigilance and malignity. The nurse who on May eve would walk in the open air with a child in her arms would be reprobated as a monster. All, old and young, were liable to the 'Blast,' a large round tumour which was thought to rise suddenly upon the part affected from the baneful breath cast on it by one of the good people in a moment of vindictive or capricious malice.<sup>50</sup> The belief that children and cattle are eye-bitten still prevails.<sup>51</sup>

(To be continued.)

### FOLKLORE IN THE CENTRAL PROVINCES.

BY N. M. VENKATASWAMI, M.F.L.S., M.R.A.S.

No. 16. — *Why the Mala is the lowest caste.*<sup>1</sup>

In the beginning the Mala was the milker of the cows of Indra and the supplier of milk to the celestial nymphs, his daughters. This was their sole food, and what was over the Mala was allowed to take himself. One day he came across some cream in his share, and finding it most delicious, assumed that the creature that could produce so sweet a thing must be sweeter than the product. So he went at once and killed the cow that had produced the milk, and proceeded to eat it. Indra found this out, drove the Mala out of heaven and made him the progenitor of the lowest caste.

No. 17. — *The Legend of the Colair Lake.*<sup>2</sup>

ONCE upon a time Parnēśwar was wandering about the earth in the form of a poor man and came to the country over which flows the Colair Lake. It was then a highly prosperous land wholly given up to pleasure. The god asked for a drink, but no one would give him any water, and he was repulsed from door to door by the pleasure-seekers. He was about to go away when a poor woman not only gave him some water to drink but also to wash his hands and feet. Then she brought him some food. Pleased at her hospitality the god asked her to follow him, and she followed. And lo! the country they had left was a flaming fire. The fire burnt on till there was a great hollow in the ground and into the hollow the waters flowed and formed a great lake.

<sup>45</sup> MS. Note, 1st January 1884. The luck in turning a garment inside out is somewhat dim. The sense may be to little one's prosperity by showing the seamy side of one's coat. A saying given by Grimm (*Teutonic Mythology*, Vol. III. p. 1029) supports this explanation. The coat is so handsome, the apple so red, no Evil Eye must look upon it.

<sup>46</sup> Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 9, note 17. <sup>47</sup> *Op. cit.* pp. 10, 11; Reginald Scott, *Discovery of Witchcraft*, p. 50.

<sup>48</sup> Dalrymple's *Darker Superstitions of Scotland*, p. 10.

<sup>49</sup> *Gentleman's Magazine Library*, "Manners and Customs," p. 20.

<sup>50</sup> Hone's *Every Day Book* (Ward, Lock & Coy., 1888), Vol. I. p. 237.

<sup>51</sup> Brand's *Popular Antiquities*, Vol. III. p. 24.

<sup>1</sup> [The most persistent form of folklore in India is the attempt of the lower castes to show by idle tales that they were once of higher estate. Such attempts are usually based upon a foolish folk etymology. — Ed.]

<sup>2</sup> [The Colair Lake [Kollērn] is a large shallow depression between the deltas of the Kistna and the Godavary, formed by the land-making activity of those great rivers in combination with the action of the monsoon on the sandy foreshores. The lake is half swamp, half lake, and is fed by four rivers. The remarkable legend given above no doubt alludes to the formation of the lake within historical times. — Ed.]



## SPURIOUS INDIAN RECORDS.

BY J. F. FLEET, I.C.S. (RETD.), PH.D., C.L.E.

*The substance of this article was read, under the title Curiosities of Indian Epigraphy, before the Indian Section of the Twelfth International Congress of Orientalists at Rome, on the 10th October, 1899.*

*Publication was reserved for the Indian Antiquary.*

IN a previous paper on the Present Position of Indian Historical Research,<sup>1</sup> we have explained the nature and given some idea of the extent and possibilities of the materials, namely the epigraphic records, from which, chiefly, we are working out a knowledge of the ancient history of India.

But we have to exercise discrimination in using those materials. For, just as there are numismatic and even literary forgeries,<sup>2</sup> so also there are spurious, counterfeit, or forged records, as well as genuine ones. Some of these spurious records have imposed on us in the past. From accepting them, as well as from giving too ready a credence to the pseudo-historical legends which exist in abundance in so many parts of the country, to the fantastic *Vanīśavalis* and archives of Orissa and similar documents obtained elsewhere, and to imaginative chronicles such as the *Koṅḡudēsārājāka* and the *Rājāvalīkathē*,<sup>3</sup> a good deal of false matter has been

<sup>1</sup> Page 1 ff., above.

<sup>2</sup> We have, for instance, in the way of literary forgeries, the *Jyōtīrēddhārāṇa*, which has already been mentioned (page 3 above, note 10); and Dr. Peterson has spoken of forgeries, against which he had been warned by Dr. Bühler, of the Śāikhāyana redaction of the *Rigveda* (Second Report on Sanskrit Manuscripts, p. 4). — It does not appear necessary to treat as forgeries such works as the *Saṅgamēśvaramāhātmya* (see note 22 on page 267 below); at any rate, when, as in that case, they do not seem to make any pretension to having been actually composed at the fanciful dates put forward in them. They are simply more or less modern compositions, which may be found of use in respect of geography (see page 27 above), but which present only imaginative history and dates when they attempt to deal with history and dates at all.

<sup>3</sup> See page 6 above, and notes 16, 17. — As regards the *Koṅḡudēsārājāka*, I have, I think, omitted to mention, on any previous occasion, that Dr. Burnell had, before me, arrived at a similar opinion of it. He said that it is very little use to accept it as an authority, because "it bears evident signs of being a very recent compilation from 'grants and local traditions most clumsily put together' (*South-Ind. Palae.*, 1874, p. 26, note 1, and second edition, 1878, p. 33, note 1). The Rev. W. Taylor's translation of the *Koṅḡudēsārājāka* is to be found in the *Madras Jour. Lit. Science*, Vol. XIV., 1847, p. 1 ff. — With the *Koṅḡudēsārājāka* and the *Rājāvalīkathē* we may compare, on a smaller scale, a document, produced by the astrologers of Belgaum and Manōji, of which I have given a translation, under the title "a Chronicle of Toragal," in Vol. V. above, p. 33 ff. It opens by mentioning, as contemporaries, Vira-Bukka, by whom it means of course Bukkarāya I. of Vijayanagara (A. D. 1343 to 1379), and an alleged king Jayasēkhara, for whom it puts forward a date in the *Kahaya saṁvatsara*, Śālivāhana-Śaka-Saṁvat 1008 (expired), in A. D. 1056. It then runs through an incomplete list of the kings of Vijayanagara. Then, after reciting two occurrences placed in A. D. 1565 and 1516, it mentions the last five members of the Ādil Shāhī dynasty of Bijapur (which came to an end in A. D. 1686 or thereabouts). It then enumerates some of the Havāldars and Killēdars of Toragal. And then, reverting to earlier times, it gives a long passage reciting how, in A. D. 1686, the alleged king Jayasēkhara, who was enthroned on the mountain *Pārśāraparvata* — (this evidently means *Parasag*, in the Belgaum district), — granted to the astrologers a village named *Pūvalli*, by which, making a very curious mistake, it means *Hūli* (close to *Parasag* and *Saundatti*), instead of any place now known as *Hubli*. It was afterwards ascertained by me (see Vol. VII. above, p. 290) that this part of the document had become known, many years before, to Mr. Munroe, who communicated it to Mr. Wathen, who published Mr. Munroe's abstract translation of it (see *Jour. R. As. Soc.*, F. S., Vol. II. p. 386, No. 5, and Vol. V. p. 173). Mr. Wathen understood that it had been obtained from some ancient building in the Kanarese country. And I (then a beginner in epigraphy) expressed the opinion that it had evidently been taken from some copper-plate grant or stone inscription, but made the suggestion that probably the whole document was not to be accepted as entirely true and accurate, but belonged to a class of papers which might at least be of interest in shewing how far history could be correctly dealt with by the Natives of India. The original of any such record, however, has not come to light. And I should say, now, that this part of the document is not based on any record, genuine or spurious, which does or did exist, but is a purely imaginative composition, put together on the lines of some of the later records. — If we look about for them, we shall probably find imaginative compilations like the *Koṅḡudēsārājāka*, the *Rājāvalīkathē*, and this Chronicle of Toragal, and compositions like the *Saṅgamēśvaramāhātmya* (see note 22 on page 267 below), all over Southern India; and in fact we know of several others, from the Mackenzie Collection of Manuscripts. And, no doubt, some beginners in the study of Indian antiquities will, from time to time, still be deluded by them, as also by spurious records; and some of these beginners will never acquire the knowledge to recognise, or possess the courage to admit and rectify, their early mistakes.



introduced into the history of India. And, with a view to working out that history on sound lines, we have, in trying to prevent the introduction of any more such matter into it hereafter, as well as in eliminating the fables that have already been imported into it, to be specially on our guard against such materials as falsely purport to be ancient official records or vouchers issued by official authority.

The recognition of the existence of spurious records is not a matter of simply modern date. There is a mention of one such record in the Madhuban grant of A. D. 631-32, issued by king Harshavardhana of Thāpēsar and Kanauj, which tells us,<sup>4</sup> that it was ascertained, on inquiry, that a certain Brāhmaṇ was in the enjoyment of a village named Sōmakundikā on the strength of a *kūṭāsana* or forged charter, and that, consequently, that charter was broken up, and the village was taken away from him and was given to others. Here, we have a distinct reference to a forged grant. And it may be added that the practice of manufacturing *kūṭāsanas* or forged charters is recognised in the laws of Manu, which prescribe death as the penalty for the fabrication of them.<sup>5</sup> There is, further, an emphatic denunciation of some fraud of the same kind in the Tārāchaṇḍī rock inscription of A. D. 1169 or 1173,<sup>6</sup> in which the Mahānāyaka Pratāpachavala of Jāpila instructs his descendants<sup>7</sup> that some Brāhmaṇs had obtained, by bribery and corruption, from a certain Dēu, a servant of king Vijayachandra of Kanauj, a *kutāmra* or bad or fraudulent charter for two villages named Kalahaṇḍī and Baḍapilā, — that the said charter was not entitled to any credit, — that the said Brāhmaṇs were in every respect dissolute persons, and had not the right to even so much land as the point of a needle could pierce, — and that, therefore, the said villages were to be resumed, and his own descendants were to levy and enjoy the proprietor's share of the produce and the like. Here, however, the reference seems to be to a charter issued dishonestly by a corrupt official, rather than to a forgery.

In the present day, the real nature of some of the spurious records was not recognised until quite recently. Fortunately, however, as the result of extended experience, it is now not difficult to detect them. They betray themselves in a variety of ways. Very often, the first feature that attracts attention and excites suspicion, is bad formation of the characters. It is not unreasonable to suppose that skill and neatness in writing and other details were qualifications required from clerks and engravers in ancient times, just as now. In fact, in the large majority of the genuine records, whether on copper or on stone, we have beautiful samples of extreme regularity of work and careful finish. And we find that some of the persons who prepared those records prided themselves on their work, and expressed their pride or were commended for the execution of what they turned out: for instance, Karpabhadra, the engraver of the copper-plate grant of Vaidyadēva king of Kāmarūpa, is described in the record as an accurate workman,<sup>8</sup> and an inspection of the published lithographic reproduction of his work will shew that he fully deserved the commendation; and Koṇḍāchārya, the writer of one of the grants of the Eastern Chalukya king Amma II., likens himself, in respect of the fine sample of his handwriting that he has given us, to Viśvakarman,<sup>9</sup> the mythological artist and artificer of the gods, and the special deity of all craftsmen.<sup>10</sup> Even when the characters present the required types, an indifferent formation of them is enough to raise doubts as to the nature of a record. But there are other features also, not so conspicuous at first sight, by which the spurious records betray themselves. They do so by palæographic slips, in attempts to imitate the ancient characters; by using characters which are known to have been developed after the

<sup>4</sup> See *Ep. Ind.* Vol. I, p. 74.

<sup>5</sup> *Mānavadharmasāstra*, ix, 232.

<sup>6</sup> No. 153 in Prof. Kielhorn's List of the Inscriptions of Northern India (*Ep. Ind.* Vol. V. Appendix, p. 22).

<sup>7</sup> See Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. II, p. 261, and *Jour. Amer. Or. Soc.* Vol. VI, p. 548.

<sup>8</sup> *Ep. Ind.* Vol. II, p. 358.

<sup>9</sup> Vol. XIII, above, p. 250, text line 37.

<sup>10</sup> In the spurious records of the Western Gāṅga series from Mysore, the writers of the Tanjore, Merkāra, Hoṣūr, Dēvarhālī, and Hallegere grants, went a step further, and, to enhance the value of their work, called themselves by the actual name of Viśvakarman. They have given us decidedly good work in the Dēvarhālī and Hallegere plates, and probably also in the Hoṣūr grant; but not in the Tanjore and Merkāra instances.



periods to which the records would assign them, or, sometimes, to have become obsolete before those periods; by orthographic blunders; by corrupt language; by peculiar words and forms; by faulty terminology in respect of titles; by abrupt and ungrammatical transitions between Sanskrit and the vernaculars; by the use of eras which were foreign to the series to which they purport to belong; by the false dates which they put forward for kings whose real dates are known; by presenting pedigrees which are known to be fictitious; and in diverse other details.

We shall not, on this occasion, go into an exposition of the details by which the spurious records betray themselves. We have only to start with the fact that the spurious records exist. But the question naturally presents itself, as to what was the reason for their existence. The answer is readily found, in the point at which we have already arrived on page 21 above; namely, that in the vast majority of the epigraphic records we have, not historical narratives intentionally written simply as such, but a mass of title-deeds of real property, and of certificates of the right to duties, taxes, fees, perquisites, and other privileges. Nearly every one of the spurious records is a counterfeit title-deed or certificate. And they were fabricated, not to produce history, which is only an incidental feature in them as in the genuine records, nor to falsify history, but to establish claims to property; sometimes, no doubt, to support bona-fide rights in cases in which the original title-deeds and certificates had been lost, and sometimes as a means of putting forward fraudulent claims.

And they can be fabricated, whether with that same object or with others, and with a pretence to antiquity, even in the present day. Among the spurious records of Mysore, there is one, known as the *Suradhēnupura grant*, which was at one time supposed to be an ancient record and to establish the date of A. D. 807 for the Western Gaṅga prince Śivamāra II.<sup>11</sup> But we now know that it is not of any antiquity at all, and that it was fabricated within the last thirty years, on knowledge derived from some of the other forgeries of the same series, for the purpose of production before the Inām Commission or court of inquiry into alienated holdings, in order to establish an actual right or an asserted claim to certain property:<sup>12</sup> it claims that, in the time of Śivamāra II. and in a year which it specifies, the village of *Suradhēnupura*, which it appears to call *Suradēvapura*, was constituted an *agrahāra* consisting of twenty-four shares which were apportioned among thirteen Brāhmanas, who are fully specified in it by names and other details; and the person who fabricated it, or who procured the fabrication of it, was, no doubt, prepared to supplement it by producing either the required pedigree establishing his standing as a descendant of one of the alleged original grantees, or else a deed of gift or sale or some such document purporting to have been executed by some descendant of an alleged original grantee. This *Suradhēnupura* forgery was concocted with the object with which almost all the ancient spurious records were fabricated; namely, to serve as a title-deed. But, — a still more extraordinary thing, — we find that spurious records can be fabricated in the present day to invent imaginary history, in order to gain the favour of those who are inquiring into the past of India. There is a plate in the Library of the Asiatic Society of Bengal which does not contain anything of the nature of a title-deed, but aims at being only a record of a purely historical character, and simply purports to record a war between the Bharras of Bundēlkhand and the Lōdhis, terminating in A. D. 1347 with the overthrow of the Bharras.<sup>13</sup> This document, while only pretending to be of the fourteenth century A. D., is written and engraved in characters which aim at being those of one of the varieties of the Aśoka alphabet of the third century B. C.; it makes the mistake of coupling, with the use of those characters, the Sanskrit language, which was not the epigraphic language of that period; and it betrays itself as an absolutely modern production by the use of modern

<sup>11</sup> See *Ep. Carn. Vol. III. Introd. p. 3*

<sup>12</sup> See, more fully, *Ep. Ind. Vol. VI. p. 58*. I quote the details of this document from a copy of the text of it, which Mr. Rice kindly sent me.

<sup>13</sup> See *Jour. Beng. As. Soc. Vol. XLVI. Part I. p. 236, and Proceedings. p. 265.*



numerals, by specifying the characters by a name, Pālī, that was only applied to them in the present century, and by following in its spelling of the name of the Bharrs a quite recent refinement of English transliteration. And, in connection with this curious production, we may note that, at the end of his observations on it, Dr. Rajendra Lal Mitra made a remark which is worth quoting and bearing in mind, not only in respect of this particular case, and not even only in respect of spurious records in general; he said<sup>14</sup> — "It might be asked what would be the object of such a piece of imposition? But from the days of Wilford there have been so many attempts of the kind made by Pandits, that it is scarcely necessary to dwell upon it at length. The smile of a Sahib of high rank and the reward expected are quite sufficient to account for such wicked acts."

The reason for which the ancient spurious records were fabricated, was, in almost every case, that they should serve as title-deeds and certificates. And it is easy to trace the principal occasions for the fabrication of them. Incidental occasions, of various kinds, may have occurred at any time. The accidental loss of an original title-deed, and the feeling of insecurity resulting therefrom, might lead at once to the fabrication of another, perhaps from memory or perhaps from a manuscript copy of the original, to be substituted for it and to be produced when necessary. A public disaster might easily lead to a more extensive manufacture of such instruments; for instance, to take a modern illustration, some twenty years ago a building at Poona, containing many records and other papers, was destroyed by fire, and the courts of at least one neighbouring district were immediately afterwards inundated with forgeries, of which some were fabricated to replace genuine documents which unquestionably had been destroyed in the fire but which, it was then represented, had not been deposited in the building at all, while others were fabricated simply because the occasion gave the opportunity of putting forward claims which would have been disproved at once by genuine documents which had been destroyed. But, in ancient times, the principal occasions must have occurred whenever there was a change of dynasty, or a temporary but appreciable loss of power by local feudatories. The donative records usually contain mandates to future kings and governors to uphold grants that have been made, and benedictive and imprecatory verses asserting the merit of continuing grants and the sin of confiscating them. And these were, evidently, no mere formulæ. They were protests against the too early occurrence of what the donors plainly foresaw would happen sooner or later. We have one explicit reference to what did happen in this way from time to time, in the Nausārī grants of A. D. 915, which recite the fact that, on the occasion of his coronation, the Rāshtrakūṭa king Indra III. had himself weighed against gold, and, while still in the scales, gave away, not only Kurundaka and other villages together with twenty lakhs and a half of *drammas*, but also "four hundred other villages which had been confiscated by previous kings."<sup>15</sup> We also have an express statement in the records, that the Western Chalukya king Vikramāditya I. had occasion to restore grants to gods and Brāhmins, which had been confiscated by the confederate kings from the east and south who had invaded and conquered his territory and had retained possession of it for a time after the death of his father Pulakēśin II.<sup>16</sup> And we may refer the spurious Kāndalgaon grant (No. 27 in the list given at the end of this article), which purports to have been issued in the fifth year of Pulakēśin II., either to the period of the foreign occupation, as an attempt to prevent confiscation of a property the title to which could not be otherwise proved, or to the period after the restoration of the Western Chalukya power at Bādāmi, as an attempt to regain, or to fraudulently acquire possession of, the village which it claims. Again, towards the end of the eighth century A. D., the Rāshtrakūṭa king Dhruva had occasion to imprison the Gaṅga prince of Mysore, and the province was apparently administered for some fifteen years by foreign viceroys appointed by the Rāshtrakūṭa king. This occurrence, also, offered two opportunities for the fabrication and production of spurious title-deeds, — one for the deception

<sup>14</sup> *Loc. cit.* Proceedings, p. 268.

<sup>15</sup> *Jour. Bo. Br. R. As. Soc.* Vol. XVI, p. 226.

<sup>16</sup> *Jour. Bo. Br. R. As. Soc.* Vol. XIX, p. 268.



of the Rāshtrakūṭa governors during that period, and the other for the deception of the Gaṅga princes when their authority had been restored to them by Gōvinda III. On the downfall of the Rāshtrakūṭa dynasty at the end of the tenth century A. D., there was another successful invasion of Western India, when the Chōlas occupied Mysore, which, otherwise, would have passed into the possession of the Western Chālukyas of Kalyāṇi, and overrun the southern parts of the Bombay Presidency. The records tell us that the Chōlas then destroyed temples, and slew Brāhmins and old men and children, and spoilt the caste of women, and did other wrongs. Of course, they also confiscated endowments, both religious and private. And some of the spurious records from Mysore and the south of Bombay may have been fabricated during the period of that occupation, in an attempt to prevent confiscation. But a more general occasion for the fabrication of them there probably occurred later on, in the second half of the eleventh century, when, as again we know from the records, the Chōla invaders were driven out, and the temples were rebuilt under the Western Chālukya kings, and there occurred a specially great opportunity to regain confiscated endowments and to acquire fresh ones.

Such were the reasons and the principal occasions for the fabrication of the large majority of the spurious records. The introduction of false historical statements into them, whether they were fabricated on such occasions or during the continuance of a dynasty, is also easily to be accounted for. The persons who fabricated the spurious title-deeds and certificates could not forge with any safety in the name of a reigning king or of one of his feudatories or officials, or even, under ordinary conditions, in the name of a very recent king of the same dynasty, or, again, of one of the feudatories or officials of such a king, unless the dynasty had suffered some reverse meanwhile. The frauds would have been detected at once, by the knowledge of local governors, or by an examination of the official records. The forgers were obliged to put forward a certain amount of antiquity. But they usually had not access to any of the official archives and chronicles. And so they had to draw upon whatever they might happen to know about past events, eked out by the power of their imagination and their ability to decipher any genuine grants that might be available to them as a guide. And this is why we meet, in these spurious records, sometimes with real kings with wrong dates attached to them, and sometimes with purely imaginary kings and fictitious pedigrees, and with alleged historical occurrences, to imitate the general style of the genuine records, which may occasionally have a basis of truth, but are nevertheless very likely even then to misrepresent occurrences of which only an imperfect memory can usually have been preserved by the people at large.

And that is the point of view from which we must regard the spurious records. We are considering them, of course, only in respect of their possible bearing upon history and all its surroundings, — putting them aside altogether, except in the general discussion of their nature and merits, in respect of the value that was intended to attach to them as title-deeds. The latter point of view is one which concerns, not the antiquarian, but only any Courts before which the ancient records may be produced as documentary evidence;<sup>17</sup> and, in that connection, it is only necessary to say, in respect of the spurious records, much the same as what has

<sup>17</sup> The generally prevailing belief in connection with the ancient records, whether on copper or on stone and whether genuine or spurious, is that they contain clues to hidden treasure. But they are sometimes produced before the authorities, or appealed to, in the expectation that they will still establish rights and privileges, and occasionally in the most absurd connection. The Pimpalner plates (No. 25 in the list) were produced with the idea that they would substantiate a claim to a Pāṇi's watan (see Vol. IX. above, p. 293). And the Harihar plates (No. 48) were produced before the Superintendent of the Inām Settlement in support of an alleged endowment by king Bukkarāya of Vijayanagara (see Vol. VII. above, p. 168). The two sets of plates in the Bangalore Museum were found, one (No. 49) among the records of the Chief Commissioner's office, and the other (No. 51) among the records of the Assistant Commissioner's court; the two sets of plates from Mallohalli (Nos. 50, 52) were produced in one of the Bangalore courts; one set of plates from the Gañjam district (No. 4) was received from the Collector; and the set of plates from the Karnul district (No. 8) was obtained from the Collector's office: no doubt, these six sets, also, had been produced and filed in support of some claims. In the Madras Presidency, in particular, most of the known copper-plate records seem to have come to notice in this way; see numerous entries, describing plates as being in various courts and offices, in the *Lists of Antiquities, Madras*, Vol. II. pp. 1 to 83.



already been said in respect of the genuine records, namely, that, whatever may have been accomplished by means of the spurious records originally, there can be but few cases, if any, in which they have not long ago lost all effective value as title-deeds, through the dying out of the families of original holders, through confiscation, through conquest, or through any others of the changes that attend the lapse of time. We deal with the facts recited in the ancient records, whether spurious or genuine, only from the historical point of view. Some of the spurious records certainly contain a good deal of purely imaginative genealogical and historical matter. But, except in the introduction of untrue dates, there are, — as has already been intimated, — no general grounds for assuming any deliberate falsification of such items of real history as may be referred to in others of them; for the simple reason that neither the recording of history, nor the wilful misrepresentation of it, was in any way a leading object in the fabrication of them. And there are undoubtedly some historical truths in some of the spurious records. For instance, the corrupt verse in the spurious Kurtakôti and Haidarabad grants (Nos. 30 and 39 in the list), which mentions the Pallava kings Narasimhavarman I., Mahendravarman II., and Paramésvaravarman I., in connection with the Western Chalukya king Vikramāditya I.,<sup>18</sup> is in perfect accordance with what we know, from other sources, regarding the actual history of the period, and in all probability represents an unskilful reading of the verse in some genuine record following a draft which has not yet come to our notice. But the Kurtakôti grant goes on to cite for Vikramāditya I. a date in A. D. 608 (or 610), nearly three-quarters of a century before his real time, which is not based in the same way on any genuine record and can hardly be attributed to even an unintelligent reading of a genuine date. So, also, the spurious Altēm grant (No. 35) puts forward for Pulakēśin I. a date, in A. D. 488, about the same distance before his real time; and the spurious Pimpalnēr grant (No. 25) puts forward a still more erroneous date, in A. D. 388-89, for a king Satyāśraya, by whom it certainly intends either Pulakēśin I. or his grandson Pulakēśin II.<sup>19</sup> We have to explain hereafter, why these particular exact years were selected in these three cases, and other similar specific years in some others of the spurious records.<sup>20</sup> For the present, we have only to say that, in some cases, the persons who drafted the spurious records very likely had a rough knowledge of the approximate periods that they ought to cite, and were helped thereby in the process in which they selected the exact years. But in other cases they were plainly actuated by only a general desire to establish as great an antiquity as possible for the charters under which they sought to claim. That is why we find the spurious Srirāṅpur inscription (No. 28), the framer of which had evidently not even a rough idea as to the period that he ought to select, putting forward so altogether absurd a date as that of A. D. 109 for a king Satyāśraya, by whom it, again, certainly means either Pulakēśin I. or Pulakēśin II. That is why we find the Bhīmankattī or Tirthahallī, the Bēgūr, the Kuppagaḍḍe or Sorab, and the Anantpur or Gauj grants (Nos. 41, 42, 43, 44) preposterously claiming to have been issued by the epic king Janamējaya, — one of them in, specifically, B. C. 3014. We find that, for the same reason, the forged grants of the Vijayanagara series usually purport to have been issued by Bukkarāya, the popularly accepted first king of the dynasty; and they further generally antedate even his real time by periods varying from one hundred to two hundred years.<sup>21</sup> And we find the same desire displayed even in modern times. At the temple of Mahālakshmi or Ambābāi at Kōlhāpur there apparently is, or formerly was, an undated inscription which mentions three Chālukya princes named Karṇa, Vētagidēva, and Sōmadēva, whom it connects with

<sup>18</sup> See my *Dynasties of the Kanarese Districts* (in the *Gazetteer of the Bombay Presidency*, Vol. I. Part II.), pp. 327, 362. This verse and the four verses that follow it have now been critically examined and restored by Prof. Kielhorn; see *Göttinger Nachrichten*, 1900, p. 341.

<sup>19</sup> Satyāśraya was a *biruda* of all or nearly all of the Western Chalukyas of Bādāmi. But it was certainly remembered best, in later times, as an appellation of the two Pulakēśins. — Regarding the date asserted by this record, see note 59 on page 216 below.

<sup>20</sup> For some general views on this point, see *Ep. Ind.* Vol. VII. p. 73. For an exact possibility in connection with the Kurtakôti date, see *id.* Vol. V. p. 175, note 1.

<sup>21</sup> See Vol. XXVII. above, p. 277.



Saṅgamēśwar in the Ratnāgiri district.<sup>22</sup> It was brought to notice, many years ago, by Bal Gangadhar Shastree, who obtained his first knowledge of it from the priests of the temple. And he has told us that, in the transcription which he received from one of those priests, there was interpolated an imaginary date, Śālivāhana-Saka-Saṁvat 60 (expired) = A. D. 138-39, for which, on inspection of the original, he found no authority whatever, and which, he recognised, had been inserted simply with a view to "assigning to the temple as high a degree of antiquity as possible."<sup>23</sup> It is, perhaps, in the dates, more than in any other details, that many of the spurious records are so untrustworthy as sources of history. But, though it was no object of the

<sup>22</sup> See *Dyn. Kan. Dist.* p. 457, and note 1. As stated there, neither my own man, nor Mr. Cousens' man succeeded in obtaining an impression of this inscription; they could not find it. And it is to be remarked that Major Graham, who published in 1854, nine years after Bal Gangadhar Shastree, while giving a translation of this record or alleged record (*Statistical Account of the Principality of Kolhapoor*, p. 479) which was certainly not borrowed from the Shastree's translation, did not present any text of it, though he did present texts of the other inscriptions dealt with by him, — giving a kind of reproduction of the original characters, from, apparently (see page 324), hand-copies made by a Native friend. Bal Gangadhar Shastree, however, said that the second transcription of it, obtained by him, was "carefully compared by myself with the original in the temple of Mahalakshmi, commonly called Ambābāi, the mother;" and, he added, "the analogy of the character would not justify me in pronouncing this inscription older than the tenth or eleventh century of Śālivāhana" (*Jour. Bo. Br. R. As. Soc.* Vol. II. p. 263); also, his translation is headed "Translation of an inscription on a stone in the temple of the goddess Mahalakshmi" (*Ibid.* p. 270), without, however, anything to shew whether it was on a structural part of the temple, or whether it was on a separate tablet. It is evident, therefore, that an original or alleged original, did exist in the Shastree's time, and was seen and believed in by him. As regards the merits of the record, we can only say that the versions given by the Shastree and by Major Graham do not put forward a fanciful date, and that there is no particular reason why there should not have been a prince Sōmadēva, claiming Chālukya descent, in the Kōṅkan, in, say, the thirteenth or fourteenth century A. D.; for, a set of copper-plates from Terwar, in the Ratnāgiri district, gives us a prince Kāmadvārāya, also represented as a Chālukya, with a date in the Raudra saka-saṁvat, Śaka-Saṁvat 1182 (expired), in A. D. 1260 (see *Dyn. Kan. Dist.* p. 466), and there does not seem to be any particular prima-facie reason for questioning it, unless one is perhaps to be found in the fact that it further describes Kāmadvārāya as "born in the lineage of the Kārpa of the Kālī age," which, however, may be the origin of, and not drawn from, the other local allusions to an alleged Chālukya king Kārpa. But, without a sight of the original or of an impression of it, it is not possible to arrive at any final conclusion as to whether any such record, as is alleged really exists or has existed at the temple of Mahalakshmi or Ambābāi, and much less as to whether it is genuine or spurious. — Rao Sahib V. N. Mandlik obtained from a friend at Kōḷhāpur some verses, "which form part of an inscription on the temple of Mahalakshmi," and of which he published the text, with a translation, in the *Jour. Bo. Br. R. As. Soc.* Vol. XI. p. 103. These verses say that from king Chālukya there sprang Kārpa, whose younger brothers were Nāga and Siṅghapa; they put forward for Kārpa the date of Śālivāhana-Saka-Saṁvat 30 (expired), — A. D. 108-109; they say that he built "this abode of Śrī" (the temple of Mahalakshmi), and that he built also a similar temple, of Mahalinga (Śiva), at Saṅgamēśwar in the Kōṅkan; they add that, after spending some years at Karavira (Kōḷhāpur) "in this pleasure-house of Kamalā (Lakshmi)," he went again to control the Kōṅkan; and after them there is a sentence which says that "these three verses have been written and set up at the temple of Karpāsvara in the holy Saṅgamēśvarakṣētra." The Rao Sahib has told us that "these verses have not been found on the walls of the present Karpāsvara temple" (*loc. cit.* p. 104). And no such record at Kōḷhāpur has been mentioned either by Bal Gangadhar Shastree or by Major Graham, or has, to my knowledge, been found there. Further, the Rao Sahib brought these verses to notice in connection with his account of the *Saṅgamēśvarasāhitya*, of which he has given us the text, with a translation (*loc. cit.* p. 107 ff.). This work asserts that in Śālivāhana-Saka-Saṁvat 10 expired, — A. D. 88-89, there was a king Śeṣhaputra. From him was born Śaktikumāraka, who reigned for twenty-five years. From him, Śimbakamudrika, who reigned for twelve years. From him, Indukiritin, who reigned for eighteen years. Then there came some kings, beginning with Brahman and ending with Chāluki, who covered thirty-four years. And Chāluki had three sons, Kārpa, Nāga, and Siṅghapa. Towards the end, the *Māhātmya* says that Kārpa established his rule at Rāmākṣētra in Śālivāhana-Saka-Saṁvat 100 expired, — A. D. 178-79 (verse 76), and that he, who had built the temple of Mahalakshmi at Karavira (Kōḷhāpur), built here (in Rāmākṣētra) the temple of Karpās (verse 80). And it asserts that he granted nine villages, specified, to the temple of Karpās (verses 72 to 74), and one to a temple of Sōmēśa, and one to temples of Sōmēśa and Kēdāra jointly (verse 75). This *Māhātmya* was evidently composed partly in order to magnify the reputation of the locality and to establish antiquity for it, and, no doubt, partly to account for the possession of, or to support a claim to, the villages named in it. The verses given to Rao Sahib V. N. Mandlik as forming part of an inscription on the temple of Mahalakshmi or Ambābāi at Kōḷhāpur, may be dismissed as simply a fanciful epitome of part of the *Māhātmya*, with the introduction of a date which does not even agree with that put forward in the *Māhātmya*.

<sup>23</sup> *Jour. Bo. Br. R. As. Soc.* Vol. II. p. 263. Through the same proclivity, perhaps, we must account for the date of Śaka-Saṁvat 732 (expired), — A. D. 810-11, — disbelieved by Mr. Sewell, — which has been put forward, in a transcript, as the date recorded in an inscription at Bāpatia in the Kistna district (*Lists of Antiquities, Madras*, Vol. I. p. 82, No. 16).



persons who fabricated them to falsify real history except perhaps in respect of dates, the spurious records cannot possibly possess, with reference to any of the details asserted by them, the authoritative value that attaches to the genuine records. It is obvious that, if we accept at all any of the historical statements put forward by the spurious records, we can only admit them with great doubt, and not as in any way conclusive without very considerable corroboration from the genuine records. And it is more likely that it would be safer, as regards the historical point of view, to set the spurious records aside as curiosities, with which we can do little more than determine, if it is ever found worth while, how far the true history was known to the persons who fabricated them. In the geographical and other lines of inquiry, they may perhaps be of some more use, not for the periods to which they refer themselves, but for the periods in which they were fabricated. For instance, from the spurious Altm grant (No. 35) we certainly gather some authentic information, for (speaking roughly at present) some time about A. D. 1000, regarding the local territorial divisions and the existence of certain towns and villages in the neighbourhood of Kôlhâpur.<sup>24</sup> But, even in such respects as these, the details given in the spurious records are not always trustworthy. For example, from one of the genuine records we know that about A. D. 900 the Kôṅgaṇṇa province was an eight-thousand province,<sup>25</sup> — that is to say, a province including, according to fact or tradition or conventional description, eight thousand cities, towns, and villages; whereas, the spurious grant in the British Museum (No. 55) describes it as a two-thousand province,<sup>26</sup> though it is not at all likely that the extent of it was altered between A. D. 900 and the time at which that spurious record was fabricated. We must, therefore, by no means place implicit reliance on the spurious records, even in connection with the miscellaneous items of information in respect of which they are more likely to be correct than in respect of historical details.

On page 214 ff. below, I give a list of the spurious records, as far as it can conveniently be completed up to date; without including the alleged Bôdh-Gayâ inscription, purporting to be dated in the Vikrama year 1005 in A. D. 948, which is probably only a modern fraud,<sup>27</sup> and the two specified above, — the Suradhênupura plates, and the plate in the Library of the Asiatic Society of Bengal, — which are certainly of absolutely recent fabrication, and the modern forgeries at Râmêshwaram seen, recognised, and mentioned by Dr. Burgess,<sup>28</sup> and any other records, obviously spurious if they ever did exist, in respect of which we really do not know whether they have actually existed or not.<sup>29</sup> I arrange the list according to the localities from which these records were obtained and at which most of them are still to be found. I include in the list some records as to the spurious nature of which there is really no doubt, though they may not yet have been actually proclaimed to be spurious. Of unpublished records, I include a few which are at my own disposal for publication. There are some others, unpublished, known to me, which I do not include, because they are not in my hands for publication, and I do not wish to anticipate whatever anyone, editing them, may wish to say about them. And I omit also a few records, as to the nature of which there may still be any possibility

<sup>24</sup> See Vol. XXIX. above, p. 273 ff.

<sup>25</sup> See page 3 above, note 10.

<sup>26</sup> Ep. Carn. Vol. IV., Hs. 92.

<sup>27</sup> Vol. XIV. above, p. 230.

<sup>28</sup> See Vol. XII. above, p. 315, note 2.

<sup>29</sup> From Kaliyûr in the Tirumakôḍlu-Narasipar taluka, Mysore district, we have (Ep. Carn. Vol. III., TN. 47) what purports to be a copy of a stone inscription which claims the grant of a village named Koppâl by a minister of an alleged king Vijaya-Vidyâ-Dêvarâya of Ânegundi (Vijayanagara) in the Piṅgala *saivata* era, Śâlivâhana-Śaka-Samvat 819 (expired), in A. D. 898. This document employs the expression Śâlivâhana-Śaka for a time nearly four centuries before the time for which the introduction of it into epigraphic records can be established (see Vol. XXVI. above, p. 150; I may remark, here, that the supposed instances of A. D. 1178 and 1181, from the Kurgôḍ inscription, set aside by Prof. Kielhorn as suspicious, do really not exist; the dates in the Kurgôḍ inscription present the usual expression Śaka-varsha, not Śâlivâhana-Śaka-varsha). And it uses declensional and conjugational forms, and expressions, which shew that it cannot have been composed before about A. D. 1450. It may be based on something fabricated about that time. Or it may be of much more recent invention. But we are told that the stone, on which the inscription is said to have been engraved, is not now to be found, and that the copy, being supplied by the people, cannot be relied on (*loc. cit.* Introd. p. 22). And so we can hardly treat it seriously and place it in the list of spurious records, the present or past existence of which is established.



of doubt. I am obliged to omit the numerous forgeries of the Vijayanagara series,<sup>30</sup> because I have as yet no knowledge of the details of them; apparently, they have not yet been published. And I am not able to include some spurious records, purporting to be of the time of the Rāshtrakūṭa king Kṛishṇa III., which are found in the neighbourhood of Saundatti in the Belgaum district;<sup>31</sup> they are so palpably spurious, and so seemingly uninteresting (or, at least, I thought so), that I did not take the trouble either to transcribe them or to make impressions of them.

The principle followed in framing the list has been to include in it, with the reservation stated above in the case of some unpublished specimens, all those records more or less ancient, as far as we can trace them and as far as a final decision can now be passed upon them, (1) which present as an essential part of themselves, not simply by quotation or by a mistake which is plainly attributable to mere careless blundering, some detail or another which involves something that is palpably not true, such, for instance, as a reference to a fictitious king as the authority from whom a record has emanated, or such as the attribution of a fictitious pedigree to a real king in similar circumstances, or such as a date, not necessarily wrongly recorded in respect of its details (a point that may or may not be of importance), which is known to be false, or can be recognised as false through its being incompatible with the evident true period and general nature of the particular record; (2) which, by the characters in which they have been written, or in any other way, shew that they are not original synchronous vouchers for the matters recited in them, and which also disclose some feature or another which makes us recognise that they are not reproductions, that have received the official imprimatur, of such vouchers; (3) which, in any way whatsoever, are to be recognised as having been put together in such circumstances that, whether they were drawn up from actually fraudulent motives or not, they can only be characterised as counterfeit documents which are essentially forgeries. There are plenty of records, — like the Managōḷi inscription of A. D. 1161 with a passage in it dated in A. D. 1142,<sup>32</sup> and like the Ablūr inscription of A. D. 1104 with a passage in it dated in A. D. 1101,<sup>33</sup> and like the Siyaḍōṇi inscription, in Central India, with passages in it which present no less than ten dates ranging from A. D. 908-904 to 968-69,<sup>34</sup> — containing passages of various dates, which, we can recognise, were not engraved on the stones consecutively from time to time according to the recorded dates, but were brought together and put on the stones, for the unification of titles, at the time of the latest date given in each case. Such records may be appropriately described in the terms applied by Prof. Kielhorn to the Siyaḍōṇi inscription, which he has defined as "a collective public copy of a series of deeds." The passages of them which contain the earlier dates, are not original synchronous vouchers for the matters recited in them. And they are not unquestionable and conclusive authorities for those matters; for the reason that mistakes may always be made in compiling such records. But when, as in the Managōḷi, Ablūr, and Siyaḍōṇi instances, we can see that the introduction of the passages containing the earlier dates has been more or less officially authorised, and there is nothing of an obviously suspicious nature in those passages, then we cannot well class the entire records as spurious records, and thereby stamp them as possibly of a dishonest nature. And, among records of this sort, there are some which include passages that do present false or fictitious matter, but which, nevertheless, are not to be classed as spurious on that account. For instance, at Aminbhāvi, in the Dhārwar district, there was, some fifty years ago,<sup>35</sup> a stone inscription of A. D. 1113, including a passage which asserts that grants were made to a temple there in A. D. 566 or 567 in the time of the Western Chalukya king Pulakēśin II. This false date, forty years before even the commencement of the reign of Pulakēśin II., was of course taken, together with the assertions connected with it, from some spurious record or incorrect archive. But there is nothing of a suspicious nature about that part of the record which belongs to the year A. D. 1113. We can see that the official who authorised the drawing up of the whole record in that year, accepted as genuine and correct the spurious record or incorrect archive relating to A. D. 566 or 567, and allowed it in good faith to be incorporated in the entire record. And there is no reason for stamping the entire record itself, put together in A. D. 1113, as a spurious record. So, also, at Kūḍlāpura, in the

<sup>30</sup> See page 212 below.<sup>31</sup> *Ibid.* p. 213.<sup>32</sup> See page 217 below, note 65.<sup>33</sup> *Ep. Ind.* Vol. I, p. 162.<sup>34</sup> *Ep. Ind.* Vol. V, p. 2.<sup>35</sup> See *Dyn. Kan. Distr.* p. 358, note 1.



Mysore district, there is an inscription,<sup>36</sup> which purports to have been written and engraved in A. D. 1148, and which includes a passage that asserts a previous grant of the village in A. D. 104 by "Koṅgaṇivarman, the first Gaṅga." Here, it is extremely doubtful whether the entire record is a genuine record, really drawn up in A. D. 1148. But we waive that point at present. And, assuming that the entire record was really drawn up in A. D. 1148, we have only to say that, in respect of the assertions about the year A. D. 104, it simply puts forward, in good faith, a false statement successfully palmed off on the officials of A. D. 1148 by someone who was interested in setting up a previous assignment of the village, and that the entire record is not to be stamped as a spurious record simply because it quotes that false matter; to which we have to add that historically, as regards the Gaṅgas, the entire record, whether genuine or not so, is worthless, except in perhaps shewing that, by A. D. 1148, the specific date of A. D. 104 had come to be connected with the imaginary Koṅgaṇivarman. Again, to take a somewhat different case, at Konnūr, in the Dhārwar district, there is an inscription,<sup>37</sup> written about the middle of the twelfth century A. D., which purports to record that the Rāshtrakūṭa king Amoghavarsha I. made certain grants to a temple at that village in A. D. 860. This record gives a true and correct date for Amoghavarsha I. But it misstates the relationships of some of the Rāshtrakūṭa kings whom it does mention, and omits others whom it ought to have included; and also, — probably from misinterpretation of some verse which we have not as yet found in a genuine record, — it places at the head of the Rāshtrakūṭa genealogy a purely fictitious person, whom it calls Pricchhaka-rāja. And, in view of these mistakes in connection with the Rāshtrakūṭas, we do not know how far it may be trusted in respect of what it says regarding the feudatory family of the Mukula princes. It does not, however, make any pretence of having been written and engraved on the stone in A. D. 860. It distinctly asserts that it is only a reproduction of a copper-plate charter, which, presumably, did claim to have been written and issued in A. D. 860, and quite possibly was so written and issued. We accept that assertion, and account for the mistakes in the record by assuming either inability to decipher the characters of the original charter correctly, or indifference about taking the trouble to read it carefully. And, therefore, while setting the record aside as unreliable for historical purposes, we do not stamp it as a spurious record in the sense in which the records included in the list are spurious. Again, at Naregal in the Rōṇ tāluṅka, Dhārwar district, there are two inscriptions<sup>38</sup> which might easily be taken as seeming to connect dates in A. D. 949 and 950 with the Western Chalukya kings Vikramāditya VI. (A. D. 1076 to 1126) and Perma-Jagadēkamalla II. (A. D. 1138 to 1149) and with a feudatory of those kings. But that is not their real purport. The first of them recites that, in the reign of Tribhuvanamalla (Vikramāditya VI.), and while the Sinda prince Permāḍi I. of Yelbarga was governing his hereditary territory, a religious discourse was held, in the course of which Permāḍi I. decided that every religious grant ought to have its charter.<sup>39</sup> And it then proceeds to state that, in Saka-Samvat 872 (current), in A. D. 949, a temple of the Mūlasthāna god was founded at Narayaṅgal, and a village-headman named Munḍeyara-Srivantagāvunḍa gave some land to a Brāhmaṇa for the purposes of that god, as a grant to the god Paramēśvara. This record does not really purport to connect the given date with Vikramāditya VI. and Permāḍi I. It only puts it forward as the alleged date of the founding of the temple, and of the granting of the first property that is claimed by the record. The second of these two records recites, according to strict interpretation, that, in the reign of Jagadēkamalla II., and while the Sinda prince Permāḍi I. was governing his hereditary territory, in Saka-Samvat 872 (expired), in A. D. 950, a resident of Nareyaṅgal, named Hiriyaḥannasina-Tippaṇayya, gave some land to a Brāhmaṇa for the god Tippaṇēśvara. By literal translation, this record does put forward the given date as a date of Perma-Jagadēkamalla II. and

<sup>36</sup> Ep. Carn. Vol. III., Nj. 110.

<sup>37</sup> Ep. Ind. Vol. VI. p. 25.

<sup>38</sup> Published, *Jour. Bo. Br. E. As. Soc.* Vol. XI. p. 224, No. 1, and p. 239, No. 2; and see *Dyn. Kan. Distr.* p. 575, and, regarding the details of the dates, Vol. XXIV. above, p. 12, No. 173, and p. 5, No. 144.

<sup>39</sup> The words, in text line 38 ff., — Permāḍidēvarasa . . . . . purātaseṃ-appa dhammanigaḷaṃ prati-pālisetta dhamma-prasaṅgaṃ-idda-lli dhammanigaḷa-ella sā(44) sanam-ḷaḷ-vēṛkkum-eṇḍu kārūṇyaṃ-ṇṇyā. — should be rendered by "Permāḍidēvarasa . . . . . while preserving the ancient ordinances, was kind enough, on the occasion of a discourse about religion, to say that there ought to be a charter for all religious gifts; and there-  
open." And then, to introduce what follows, there should be understood any such words as "it was placed on record that."



Permādi I., because it does not include the passage about the propriety of providing all religious grants with their charters. But it was obviously intended to be read in connection with the other record, and to be understood as implying that it was put on the stone under those same circumstances. And it, evidently, simply puts forward the alleged date of a grant made before the time of the above-mentioned king and prince. Accordingly, whatever may be the truth here, as in the Konnūr inscription, as to the alleged facts, these two records, also, are not to be classed as spurious records. On the other hand, there are two inscriptions at Lakshmēshwar (Nos. 37 and 38 in the list), written during the eleventh century A. D., which recite grants alleged to have been made to local temples in A. D. 687, 723, 730, 735, and 968-69, and which do not put forward any such explanation as that given in the Naragāli inscription, and do not suggest in any way that they are merely copies or substantial reproductions of original records, but read distinctly as if the various passages were written and engraved in those years. It is quite possible that these two records recite real grants, brought together for the unification of titles. And, to what has been already said elsewhere about them,<sup>40</sup> — in the way of pointing out that, though they are spurious records, they are questionable as dishonest ones only in so far as they may put forward fraudulent claims to property, and in so far as the writers of them may have substituted names of properties and grantees and other details, to suit their own purposes, for other names and details standing in original genuine charters, — it may be added that the omission to introduce the names of *sañcātara*s in the dates of the Western Chalukya passages of A. D. 687, 723, 730, and 735, is decidedly suggestive that genuine original charters may have been reproduced in those passages, and may have been transcribed correctly as well as intelligently. But we know, from the characters, that the various passages were not written and engraved on these stones at the times at which, from the absence of any hint to the contrary, they distinctly purport to have been written and engraved, and that, therefore, they are not original synchronous vouchers for the matters recited in them. Also, the irregular order in which the passages were arranged, indicates pretty plainly that these records were not drawn up under any official supervision: on one of the stones, there stands first a passage of A. D. 968-69, then there comes an undated passage, apparently intended to belong to the period A. D. 609 to about 642, and then follows the passage of A. D. 735; on the other, the passages stand in the order of A. D. 723, 730, 968-69, and 687. And further, that one of them which commences with the passage of A. D. 968-69, presents in that passage a part of the fictitious Western Gāṅga pedigree as an essential part of the record, and thus introduces matter which we know to be false and which shews that that passage was at any rate not simply reproduced from a genuine record of A. D. 968-69. And these facts stamp that record as a spurious one, and bring its companion into the same category. Again the Dēvagēri inscription (No. 29 in the list), which is referable to the tenth century A. D., probably records a perfectly genuine bit of local history of that period. But it is preposterously and falsely dated in A. D. 600; and it reads as if it was drawn up and engraved in that year. And these facts turn it into a spurious record. So, also, the Gaṭṭavādi inscription (No. 45) may recite items of local interest which are true and correct for the period to which it really belongs. But, whereas it was really drawn up and engraved at some time about A. D. 1000, it is falsely and still more preposterously dated in A. D. 192-93; and it reads as if it was drawn up and engraved then. And these facts make it, also, a spurious record.

In examining the list, we detect one noteworthy point in the fact that, out of a total number of fifty-nine spurious records, **only five are on stone (Nos. 23, 29, 37, 38, and 45); all the rest are on copper-plates.** The reason for this is not far to find. The stone records of India mostly stand in very conspicuous places. Even spurious records on stone would have to be exhibited in the same way. And, — except occasionally inside the precincts of temples, the establishments of which might include individuals qualified for each step in the manufacture of such records, — both the preparation and the erection of them would entail a great amount of publicity, and the connivance of many more persons, including at least village-officials, than those actually interested in the successful accomplishment of the fraud. On the other hand, the fabrication of a copper-plate charter, which remains in



obscurity in private hands until the time when it is actually wanted for production, is a hole-and-corner business, easily confined to one or two accomplices, — one of whom, the artisan who does the engraving of what is traced on the plate by the writer, need not know anything about the purport of what he is doing. And, for these reasons, the spurious records of India, or at any rate such of them as were fabricated from fraudulent motives, will, no doubt, always be found far more frequently on copper than on stone.

Another point which attracts attention, is, that, though the spurious records are found in many different provinces and districts, we have obtained a comparatively large number of them from Mysore. Out of the total number of fifty-nine, no fewer than nineteen (Nos. 41 to 59) come from that province and belong to it; while two more certainly (Nos. 10 and 40), — and perhaps also a third (No. 11), — belong properly to that same province, as they claim to convey villages in the territories from which the province has been formed, and they must have originated there and travelled from those villages to the places where they have been found.<sup>41</sup> Thus, twenty-one, at least, of the fifty-nine spurious records originated in Mysore.<sup>42</sup> And the spurious records of Mysore include some of the most barefaced specimens (Nos. 41 to 44), purporting to be nearly five thousand years old. It does not necessarily follow that the practice of fabricating spurious records was always more rife in Mysore than in other parts of the country: we can only compare the numbers of known specimens; and we do not know how many spurious records still remain to be discovered and allocated elsewhere as well as there. But the fact stands, that Mysore, or some particular part of it, has on various occasions been markedly prolific in the production of epigraphic forgeries, — roughly about nine centuries ago, and in connection with certain historical occurrences which have been glanced at above. And, apparently, some neighbouring part of the country has, somewhat later, been still more productive of the same class of documents; since Mr. G. R. Subramiah Fantulu tells us that the forgeries of the Vijayanagara series are probably nearly as plentiful as the genuine grants, which, he says, are themselves extremely numerous.<sup>43</sup>

And finally, fifty-six, at least, out of the fifty-nine spurious records shewn in the list, distinctly claim to be title-deeds of landed property. As has already been intimated, they are not necessarily all fraudulent title-deeds, fabricated in order to substantiate false claims. But, at the best, they are all spurious title-deeds, not issued by the authorities by whom they purport to have been issued. Thirty-seven of these spurious title-deeds (Nos. 1 to 11, 22 to 27, 30, 32 to 36, 39, 40, 42

<sup>41</sup> We have a pointed instance of the way in which copper-plate records are liable to travel, in the Vakkaléri plates, which contain a charter issued by the Western Chalukya king Kirtivarman II. in A. D. 757 (*Ep. Ind.* Vol. V. p. 260). The grant was made, and probably the plates themselves were prepared and issued, at a camp at a certain town in the Shölápur district; namely, at Bhandāragavittage on the northern bank of the Bhimarathi, which is the modern 'Bhundarkowteh' of the Indian Atlas sheet No. 40 (1852), and the 'Bhandar Kavtha' of the same sheet, N.E. (1886), — (representing, no doubt, Bhandāra-Kaunthēn) — on the north bank of the Bhīmā, in lat. 17° 27', long. 75° 44', about twenty miles south-west from Shölápur. The charter conveyed a village in the immediate vicinity of Hāngal in the Dhārwar district. The grantee must have resided somewhere close to the property that was given to him, and must have had the plates in his possession at his residence. And the plates have eventually come to light from a village in a distant part of Mysore. — The fact is, the find-places of the copper-plate records frequently have no connection with the records themselves, and do not help us except in indicating the localities in which we may look first in endeavouring to identify places named in those records. The fact that a record on copper is found at a certain place, does not establish the sovereignty, in that part of the country, of the king who made or authorised the grant, unless the property itself, granted by him or by his authority, is identified there. And we shall have, some day, to rename all the copper records according to the properties that they conveyed. The so-called Vakkaléri plates would be more correctly described as the Sulliyūr grant.

<sup>42</sup> The records make this quite clear, even when the villages claimed by them cannot be actually identified.

<sup>43</sup> Vol. XXVII. above, p. 277. — We must, of course, await further information, before we can allocate the forgeries of the Vijayanagara series; we have to learn where they come from, and to determine the places in which they originated. — As regards any question of general comparison, according to the numbers actually before us, Madras presents, up to date, nominally twenty specimens (Nos. 2 to 21), without including any of the Vijayanagara series. The Madras Presidency, however, is a very large territory. Out of the twenty specimens obtained in it, one certainly (No. 10), and perhaps also another (No. 11), originated in Mysore. And ten others (Nos. 12 to 21) really reduce themselves to only two separate and distinct acts of forgery, — one represented by the two plates dated in A. D. 1086, and the other by the eight plates dated in A. D. 1089. — The Bombay Presidency presents seventeen specimens (Nos. 22 to 38), spread over the Presidency itself and the Native States which are more or less inherent parts of it.



to 44, 46 to 48, 53 to 55, and 57 to 59) claim grants of entire villages. And nineteen of them (Nos. 12 to 21, 28, 31, 37, 38, 41, 49, 50, 52, and 56) claim allotments of land not amounting to entire villages. One other (No. 45) seems to be a record of the same kind, as it apparently claims to define and mark out lands set apart as the remuneration attached to the office of village-headman. And to this list of fifty-six or fifty-seven spurious title-deeds, we ought in all probability to add one more (No. 51); but we may set that aside as undetermined, on the grounds that the essential part of it is illegible. Only one of the total number of fifty-nine spurious records, namely the Dēvagēri inscription (No. 29), does not claim any landed property, but purports to be the certificate of the right to perform a certain sacrifice. Fifty-six, at any rate, of the fifty-nine shewn in the list, are spurious title-deeds. Fourteen of them claim religious grants. Of these one (No. 3) names a Saiva priest as the donee, on behalf of a village-god; one (No. 26) does not name any individual donee, but claims a village for the purposes of the worship of a form of Siva and for usufruct by ascetics residing in the temple of the god; another (No. 41) similarly does not name any individual donee, but claims the grant of a property to ascetics for the purposes of the worship of the god Sitārāma; five (Nos. 23, 24, 27, 32, and 34) claim grants of villages to Brāhmins for the purpose of the celebration of certain specified sacrifices; five (Nos. 31, 35, 37, 38, and 40) claim grants of villages and lands to Jain priests on behalf of Jain temples; and one (No. 57) claims the grant of a village on behalf of a Jain temple, perhaps with, perhaps without, the indication of a Jain priest as the actual donee. Forty-two of the records have no connection with religion, but claim properties on behalf of private individuals. One of them (No. 7) specifies a minister as the donee; one (No. 28) claims a grant of lands to village-headmen; two (Nos. 46 and 49) claim grants, to the son of a village-headman and to a banker or merchant, in recognition of prowess in battle; another (No. 48) claims a grant to the son of a village-headman in recognition of some personal service apparently rendered in battle; twenty-seven (Nos. 1, 2, 4 to 6, 8 to 11, 22, 25, 30, 33, 36, 39, 42, 43, 44, 47, 50, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 58, and 59) claim grants to Brāhmins for themselves; and the remaining ten (Nos. 12 to 21) claim other individual properties. And one more (No. 45), which, again, has no connection with religion, seems to claim property partly as a private and partly as an official holding, as it apparently purports to mark out and define land attached to the hereditary office of village-headman.

These remarks complete all that need be said for the present about the spurious records. There are certain other records, which are of doubtful authenticity or value. Some of them will probably, on fuller examination, have to be included in the list of spurious records. Some of them are, by their own admission, reproductions of original records; and we have only to decide how far the historical and other matters put forward in them may be accepted as authentic. And others of them, while not admitting that they are reproductions, plainly are such, with, in some cases, the evident introduction of matter that cannot have been in the originals. And there are also genuine records which have been tampered with, in order to make them serve purposes other than those originally intended by them. A pointed and easily recognisable instance of this last class of records, is the Sāmāṅgaḍ grant of A. D. 754.<sup>44</sup> It originally granted a certain specified village in the Koppara five-hundred district. The historical matter in the record has not been tampered with; nor the date of it; nor the name and other particulars of the original grantee; nor even the name of the district. But the name of the village that was granted, and the names of the villages mentioned in defining the boundaries of it, have been altered. And so, though we can identify the substituted villages, we are not able to say that the identifications are of any use, from the geographical point of view, in locating the district. The records of doubtful value will be dealt with on some subsequent occasion.

<sup>44</sup> Vol. XI. above, p. 108; and see *Dyn. Kan. Distrs.* p. 390. So, also, the Pāṭhan grant of A. D. 794 was tampered with in respect of the names, etc., of the grantees (see *Ep. Ind.* Vol. III. p. 108, note 7); and the Dēḷḷi grant of A. D. 940 was tampered with in respect of the village granted and its boundaries and district, as well as in respect of the name, etc., of the grantee (see *id.* Vol. V. p. 189, note 2). For a spurious record apparently treated in the same way, see note 47 on page 214 below.



## A LIST OF SPURIOUS INDIAN RECORDS.

## BENGAL PRESIDENCY.

## Gayâ District.

1. — The Gayâ plate, which claims that Samudragupta (Early Gupta) granted to a Brâhman, duly specified by his name and *gôtra* and *śākhā*,<sup>45</sup> a village named *Bôvatikâ* in the Gayâ *vishaya*, in the (Gupta) year 9, in A. D. 328. — Published, *Gupta Inscriptions*, p. 254.

## MADRAS PRESIDENCY.

## Gañjam District.

2. — The Chicacole plates, which claim that Dêvêndravarma, son of Anantavarman (alleged Eastern Gaṅga of Kaliṅganagara), granted to three hundred Brâhmanas, a village named *Tâmarachheru* in the Varâhavaranti *vishaya*, in the year 51 of the Gāṅgêya race, in A. D. 641-42. — Published, Vol. XIII. above, p. 273; and see *Dynasties of the Kanarese Districts* (in the *Gazetteer of the Bombay Presidency*, Vol. I. Part II.), p. 297, note 6.

3. — The Chicacole plates, which claim that Satyavarman, son of Dêvêndravarma (alleged Eastern Gaṅga of Kaliṅganagara), granted to a *Gurava* or Saiva priest, as an *agrahâra* of the *grāmadêva* or tutelary village-god and as a *Saivasthâna* or Saiva property, a village named *Târugrâma* in the Galela *vishaya*, in the year 351 of the Gāṅgêya race, in A. D. 941-42. — Published, Vol. XIV. above, p. 10; and see *Dyn. Kan. Distrs.* p. 297, notes 6, 8.

4. — A set of plates which claims that Prithivivarman, son of Mahindravarma (alleged Eastern Gaṅga of Kaliṅganagara), granted to a Brâhman a village, the name of which is doubtful, in the (?) Janôra *vishaya*.<sup>47</sup> — Published, *Ep. Ind.* Vol. IV. p. 198.

## Visagapatam District.

5. — The Alamanda plates, which claim that Anantavarman, son of Râjêndravarma (alleged Eastern Gaṅga of Kaliṅganagara), granted to a Brâhman a village named (?) *Medelâka* in the Tirikatn *vishaya*, in the year 304 of the Gāṅgêya race, in A. D. 894-95. — Published, *Ep. Ind.* Vol. III. p. 17; and see *Dyn. Kan. Distrs.* p. 297, note 6.

## Kistna District.

6. — The Pedda-Cherukûru plates, which claim that a king Vishṇuvardhana (Eastern Chalukya of Vengi; apparently Vishṇuvardhana II. is intended) granted to a Brâhman an *agrahâra* named *Ikshu* or *Ikshupura*, of which he was a resident.<sup>48</sup>

7. — A set of plates which claims that Vishṇuvardhana-Tâja (alleged Eastern Chalukya of Vengi) granted to a minister of his named Kuppenayya, of the Pallava lineage or of the lineage of Pallavamalla, a village named *Sripunḍi* (with perhaps some other properties) in the Velanânḍu *vishaya*.<sup>49</sup>

## Karnûl District.

8. — The set of plates which claims that Vikramāditya I. (Western Chalukya of Bādâmi) granted to a Brâhman two villages named *Agunṭe* and *Tebumjâura*. — Published, *Jour. Bo. Br. R. As. Soc.* Vol. XVI. pp. 229, 240; and see *Dyn. Kan. Distrs.* p. 365, note 1.

<sup>45</sup> Except when the contrary is noted, it may be understood that the records always give names and other details, sufficient to fix the identity of the alleged grantees more or less fully, and so to enable the holders of the records to establish their claims by producing pedigrees or other evidence.

<sup>46</sup> Here the alleged grantees are simply mentioned as "three hundred Brâhmanas of the Vâjasantya *charana* and many *gôtras*."

<sup>47</sup> There are some indications, in lines 8 and 12 to 14 of the text, that, in addition to the record being originally a fabrication, it was subsequently tampered with, so as to claim a property other than that which was at first claimed by it.

<sup>48</sup> This record is mentioned in Sewell's *Lists of Antiquities, Madras*, Vol. I. p. 84. I quote it, however, from ink-impressions, for which I am indebted to Dr. Hultzsch.

<sup>49</sup> I quote this record, also, from ink-impressions received from Dr. Hultzsch.



## North Arcot District.

9. — The Udayēndiram plates, which claim that Nandivarman, son of Skandavarman (alleged Pallava of Conjeeveram), granted to a Brāhman a village named Kañchivayil in the Aḍeyāra rāṣṭra. — Last published, *Ep. Ind.* Vol. III. p. 142; and see *Dyn. Kan. Distrs.* p. 320, note 6.

## Tanjore District.

10. — The Tanjore plates, which claim that Arivarman, i. e. Harivarman (alleged Western Gaṅga of Talakāḍ), granted to a Brāhman the village of Orekoḍu<sup>50</sup> in the group of villages known as the Maisunāḍu seventy, in the Prabhuva saṁvatsara, Śaka-Saṁvat 169 expired, in A. D. 248. — Published, Vol. VIII. above, p. 212; and see Vol. XXIV. above, p. 10, No. 166, and *Ep. Ind.* Vol. III. pp. 159 (No. 1), 161, 169, and Vol. V. p. 174.

## Coimbatore District.

11. — The Kōmaralīṅgam plates, which claim that Ravidatta (an alleged descendant of Punnātarāja or of the kings of Punnāṭa) granted to some Brāhmaṇs a village named Puṅgisoge in the east-central district in the Kuḍugūr nāḍ in the Punnāḍu viśaya, and other villages, or shares in other villages, named Koḷūr, Kodamūku, Dvatogeyanūr, Tānagundūr, and Paṭṭal.<sup>51</sup> — Published, Vol. XVIII. above, p. 362; and see *Ep. Ind.* Vol. III. p. 163, note 2.

Miscellaneous.<sup>52</sup>

12 to 21. — Ten plates in the Central Museum at Madras, of which the general purport is as follows. They recite that a certain Vira-Śaṅgudaiyān (alleged Chōḷa) had constructed an agraḥāra for Aḷakaiyyar, Aḷakayyar, or Aḷakappayyar, and an agraḥāra for Dirunipuram-Kiḍaṇamāchchariayan; but another king came and destroyed the agraḥāras, and, on the sites of them, dug a tank, and constituted a district named Pañchappennēnāḍu, Pañchappanāḍu (or something like that), consisting of four divisions, one of which was a village named Mantaveṭṭu, Mantavēḍu (or something like that).

<sup>50</sup> This is the modern Varakōḍu, in the Mysore district and tāluka.

<sup>51</sup> Kōmaralīṅgam, or Kumārālīṅgam, is the 'Comarigum' of the Indian Atlas sheet No. 62 (1840), in lat. 16° 29', long. 77° 25', in the south of the Coimbatore district. The record, however, has not necessarily any connection with that part of the country, except in respect of having been found there. And the details given in it distinctly allocate it elsewhere. — Punnāḍu or Pūnāḍ is well known as the name of a six-thousand province, — (on the point that it was a six-thousand, not a ten-thousand, see *Ep. Ind.* Vol. VI. p. 63, note 7), — which was a division of the territories of the Western Gaṅgas of Talakāḍ. The Punnāḍu or Pūnāḍ six-thousand included some of the extreme southern parts of Mysore, below the Lakshmantīrtha and the Kāvēri, inclusive of the Guḍḍupēt tāluka. The Kuḍugūr nāḍ of this spurious record seems likely to be identical with the Kuḍugu nāḍ of certain other records. An inscription of A. D. 1315 (*Ep. Carn.* Vol. IV., Gu. 58) places in the Kuḍugu nāḍ the village of Kannāḡāla, in the Guḍḍupēt hōbji, which appears to be the 'Canagaula' of the Indian Atlas sheet No. 61 (1833), and the 'Kannagal' of the same sheet, N.W. (1894), about six miles towards the south-west from Guḍḍupēt. An inscription of A. D. 1497 (*ibid.* Gu. 11) speaks of "the Terakapāmbē nāḍ which is the Kuḍugu nāḍ." Terakapāmbē still exists, as a town about six miles east of Guḍḍupēt. And it thus becomes possible that the Kodamūku or Koḷamūku of the spurious record may be the modern 'Kodasoge,' about seven miles towards the south-east from Guḍḍupēt. This identification, of course, cannot be looked upon as at all final; especially, as we cannot find, in that neighbourhood, any others of the villages mentioned in the record. And we have still to decide whether the Punnāḍu or Pūnāḍ six-thousand was the whole of the Punnāḍu country, or was only a part of it. However, the record specifies "the people of the ninety-six-thousand viśaya," that is to say the Gaṅga-vāḍi ninety-six-thousand of the Western Gaṅgas, as the witnesses to the grants asserted by it. And this closely connects the record with Mysore. — The grant purports to have been made when Ravidatta was encamped at a town named Kitthipura, probably by mistake for Kirtipura. This town is not necessarily to be placed either in the Kuḍugūr nāḍ or in the Punnāḍu viśaya. Mr. Rice has proposed (*Mysore*, revised edition, Vol. I. p. 312, note 6, and Vol. II. pp. 223, 260) to identify it with the modern Kittūr, a large village on the right bank of the Kabbani, about seven miles south of Heggadēvankōṭe in the Mysore district, and twenty-seven miles towards the west-north-west from Guḍḍupēt. And, as there is an inscription at Kittūr, dated in A. D. 1079 (*Ep. Carn.* Vol. IV., Hg. 55), which speaks of the place as "the eternal town Kirtimahānagarapura which is Kittūr," the proposal seems likely to be correct.

<sup>52</sup> A remark in *Archaeol. Surv. South. Ind.* Vol. IV. p. 137 indicates that there are three more spurious copper-plate records in the Museum at Madras, the contents of which are still to be made known. And the same volume seems to include three other spurious records on copper; namely, page 107, No. 20, a plate in the District Court of Madras, which purports to be dated in A. D. 1533; page 152, No. 12 of the plates in the Madras Museum, which purports to be dated in A. D. 1456; and page 181, No. 25, not dated; they do not appear to contain any matter of any particular interest from the historical point of view.



And they then either claim the subsequent re-allotment of portions of the said village, or else specify portions of it as belonging to alleged descendants of alleged original grantees.<sup>53</sup> Two of these plates connect with Vira-Sangudaiyān the date of Kaliyuga-Saṁvat 4187 (expired) and Saka-Saṁvat 1008 (expired), in A. D. 1086; and the other eight give a date three years later, in A. D. 1089. — Published, *Archæol. Surv. South. Ind.* Vol. IV. p. 137 ff.

### BOMBAY PRESIDENCY.

#### Kāthiāwār.

22. — The Dhiniki plates, which claim that Jāikadēva (of the Saurāshtra country) granted to a Brāhmaṇ the village of Dhēnikā<sup>54</sup> in the Bhūmilikā *maṇḍala*, in Vikrama-Saṁvat 794 (expired), in A. D. 738. — Published, Vol. XII. above, p. 151; and see Vol. XVI. p. 197, and Vol. XIX. p. 369, No. 190, and the concluding remarks about it on p. 371.

#### Kaira District.

23. — The Umētā plates, which claim that Dadda II. (Gurjara of Broach) granted to a Brāhmaṇ for sacrificial purposes the village of Nigudā<sup>55</sup> in the Kamaṇīya sixteen-hundred *bhukti*, in Saka-Saṁvat 400 (expired), in A. D. 478. — Published, Vol. VII. above, p. 61; and see Vol. X. p. 279, Vol. XVII. p. 184, Vol. XVIII. p. 91, and *Dyn. Kan. Distrs.* p. 312, note 7.

#### Broach District.

24. — The Ilāḍ plates, which claim that Dadda II. (Gurjara of Broach) granted to a Brāhmaṇ for sacrificial purposes the village of Raiva<sup>56</sup> in the Akulēśvara *vishaya*, in Saka-Saṁvat 417 (expired), in A. D. 495. — Last published, Vol. XIII. above, p. 115; and see Vol. X. p. 279, Vol. XVII. p. 193, note 37, Vol. XVIII. p. 91, Vol. XXIV. p. 10, No. 165, and *Dyn. Kan. Distrs.* p. 312, note 7.

#### Khāndēsh District.<sup>57</sup>

25. — The Pimpalner plates, which claim that Satyāśraya (*i. e.* Pulakēśin I. or II.; Western Chalukya of Bādāmi) granted to some Brāhmaṇs the town of Pippalanagara,<sup>58</sup> in Saka-Saṁvat 310 (expired), in A. D. 388-89.<sup>59</sup> — Published, Vol. IX. above, p. 293; and see *Dyn. Kan. Distrs.* p. 344, note 6.

#### Nāsik District.

26. — The Nirpaṇ plates, which claim that Tribhuvanaśraya-Nāgavardhana, son of Dharāśraya-Jayasinhavarman (alleged younger brother of Pulakēśin II.; Western Chalukya of Bādāmi), granted the village of Balegrāma<sup>60</sup> in the Gōparāshtra *vishaya* for the worship of the god Kapālēśvara and for usufruct by the ascetics<sup>61</sup> residing in the temple of that god. — Last published, Vol. IX. above, p. 123; and see *Dyn. Kan. Distrs.* p. 357, and note 1 on p. 358.<sup>62</sup>

<sup>53</sup> Some of them name the alleged holders; the others apparently leave it to be assumed that the person who could produce one of the plates should be taken as the possessor of the property named in it.

<sup>54</sup> This is the ruined village, known as "old Dhiniki," in the Okhāmaṇḍal division; and Bhūmilikā is Bhūmlī. Bhūmbhīlī, or Ghūmlī, a deserted capital in the Barja hills (see Vol. XII. above, pp. 152, 153, 154).

<sup>55</sup> This is the modern Nagod, near Kaurj or Kāmrej (Kamaṇīya) which is somewhere near Surat (see Vol. XVII. above, p. 184, and note 5).

<sup>56</sup> This is the modern Rāyamāl, in the Auklēshwar tāluka (see Vol. XVII. above, p. 193, note 37).

<sup>57</sup> See also note 69 to No. 33 on page 217 below.

<sup>58</sup> This is the modern Pimpalner itself, the head-quarters of the Pimpalner tāluka.

<sup>59</sup> The explanation of this date may possibly be found in the Kalachuri or Chēdi era, with the epoch of A. D. 248-49, which, we know, was still current in the northern territories of the Western Chalukyas of Bādāmi up to A. D. 739; for, A. D. 248-49 + 310 = A. D. 558-59, in the true period of Satyāśraya-Pulakēśin I.

<sup>60</sup> This is the modern Belgson-Tarājhā, in the Igatpuri tāluka.

<sup>61</sup> No names or any other details are given.

<sup>62</sup> The characters of this record are good; and the language and orthography are mostly correct. But the record allots to Pulakēśin II. the well known charger of his son Vikramāditya I., Chitrakaptha, which, moreover, it misnames Kapthachitra. And, if only for that reason, the record must now be finally relegated to the list of spurious records. The Dharāśraya-Jayasinhavarman whom it puts forward, seems to have been evolved out of the real person of that name, a son of Pulakēśin II.



## Ratnâgiri District.

27. — The Kandalgaon plates, which claim that Pulakêśin II. (Western Chalukya of Bādâmi) granted to a Brâhman for sacrificial purposes a village named Pirigipa in the territory of Rêvatidvîpa,<sup>64</sup> in the fifth year of his reign, in A. D. 614. — Published, Vol. XIV. above, p. 330; and see *Dyn. Kan. Distrs.* p. 358, note 1.

Belgaum District.<sup>65</sup>

28. — A stone inscription at Srirâṅgpur near Saundatti, which claims that Satyâśraya of the Chalukya race (meaning, no doubt, Pulakêśin I. or II.; Western Chalukya of Bādâmi) granted some land to the village-headmen of Modâlûr<sup>66</sup> as remuneration for the discharge of their duties, in the Vilambin *saṁvatsara*, Saka-Saṁvat 31 (expired), in A.D. 109. — Not yet published.

## Dhârwar District.

29. — A stone inscription at Dêvagéri, which records that the *Mahâsâmantâdhipati* [Sâ]ntivarman, of the Mâtûra race, came to the village of Palarûr in the Kâlayukti *saṁvatsara*, Saka-Saṁvat 522 (expired), in A.D. 600, and granted to the villagers the right to perform a certain sacrifice, in return for their supplying forage for his horses and elephants. — Not yet published; noticed in *Ep. Ind.* Vol. V. p. 172, and note 2.

30. — The Kurtakôṭi plates, which claim that Vikramāditya I. (Western Chalukya of Bādâmi) granted to a Brâhman the village of Kurutakûṇṭe<sup>67</sup> in the Belvola *vishaya*, in Saka-Saṁvat 530 (or 532) expired, in A. D. 608 (or 610). — Published, Vol. VII. above, p. 217; and see Vol. XVIII. above, p. 285, *Dyn. Kan. Distrs.* p. 365, note 1, and *Ep. Ind.* Vol. V. p. 176, note 1.

31. — The Sûḍi plates, which claim that Bûtuga II. (Western Gaṅga of Talakâḍ), at the request of his mistress Dîvalâmbâ, granted to a Jain some land at Sâṇḍî<sup>68</sup> in the Sulvâtavî seventy (i. e. the Kisukâḍ seventy) for the purposes of a Jain temple at that village, in the Vikârin *saṁvatsara*, Saka-Saṁvat 860 expired, in A. D. 938. — Published, *Ep. Ind.* Vol. III. p. 158; and see Vol. XXIV. above, p. 187, No. 75, note 13, and *Ep. Ind.* Vol. V. p. 167, note 2.

## Miscellaneous.

32. — The set of plates, in the Library of the Bombay Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society, which claims that Dharaśēna II. (Maitraka of Valabhî) granted to a Brâhman for sacrificial purposes a village named Nandîsaraka or Nandîsaraka in the Kantâragrâma sixteen-hundred *vishaya*, in Saka-Saṁvat 400 (expired), in A. D. 478. — Published, Vol. X. above, p. 277.

33. — A set of plates,<sup>69</sup> which claims that a king Kṛishṇa (evidently intended, as mention is made, before him, of Dantidurga, Amôghavarsha, Gôvinda, and Padigadêva, i. e. Baddigadêva, Vaddigadêva, to be Kṛishṇa III., Râshtrakûṭa of Mâlkêḍ) granted to eighty-four Brâhman<sup>70</sup> a village or other place named Khairôḍhishthâna, in Saka-Saṁvat 633 (current), in A. D. 710. — Not yet published.

<sup>64</sup> Rêvatidvîpa was a territory which took its name from the ancient form of the name of the modern Rêḍi in the Vengurla tâluka (see *Dyn. Kan. Distrs.* p. 347, and note 2).

<sup>65</sup> At Hirê-Kunâmi and Sattigeri in the Parasgaḍ tâluka of this district, and at Surkôḍ or Sarkôr in the neighbouring Râmdurg State, there are spurious copper-plate charters, without dates, which purport to have been issued by a king Kṛishṇa-Kanharâ who is intended for the Râshtrakûṭa king Kṛishṇa III. They have been noticed in *Dyn. Kan. Distrs.* p. 550, note 6. But I have not any further details about the contents of them.

<sup>66</sup> This is the modern Madlûr, close to Srirâṅgpur. — The record does not put forward the names of the village-headmen.

<sup>67</sup> This is the modern Kurtakôṭi itself, in the Gadag tâluka.

<sup>68</sup> This is the modern Sûḍi itself, in the Rôḡ tâluka.

<sup>69</sup> Apparently from Khândâh or somewhere in that direction. They were sent to me, for examination, by the Rev. J. E. Abbott, in 1887. As regards the date put forward in them, with Saka-Saṁvat 633 (expressed in words) there is coupled the Sârvadhâri (i. e. Sârvadhârin) *saṁvatsara*. But Sârvadhârin would be S.-S. 613 current by the northern luni-solar system, or S.-S. 611 current according to the southern luni-solar system. The name appears to be a mistake for Sâdhâraṇa, which would be S.-S. 633 current according to the southern luni-solar system.

<sup>70</sup> No names or other details seem to be given.



## Baroda State.

34. — The Bagumrā plates, which claim that Dadda II. (Gurjara of Broach) granted to a Brāhmaṇ for sacrificial purposes the village of Tatha-Umbarā<sup>71</sup> in the Tatha-Umbarā *śhāra*, in Saka-Saṃvat 415 (expired), in A. D. 493. — Published, Vol. XVII. above, p. 183; and see Vol. XVIII. p. 91, Vol. XXIV. p. 11, No. 170, and *Dyn. Kan. Distrs.* p. 312, note 7.

## Kōlhāpur State.

35. — The Aḷtēm plates, which claim that Pulakēśin I. (Western Chalukya of Bādāmi) granted to a Jain priest for the purposes of a Jain temple at Alaktakanagari (Aḷtēm), the chief town of a seven-hundred district in the Kuhunḍi *vishaya*, allotments of land at Narindaka and other villages, and also Rāvika and three other entire villages,<sup>72</sup> in the Vibhava *saṃvatsara*, coupled with Saka-Saṃvat 411 expired, by mistake for 411 current or 410 expired, in A. D. 488. — Published, Vol. VII. above, p. 209, with a lithograph in Vol. VIII. p. 340; and see *Dyn. Kan. Distrs.* p. 344, note 6, and Vol. XXIX. above, page 273.

36. — A set of plates from Waḍgaon, which claims that a king Amōghavarsha, by whom it means Indra III.<sup>73</sup> (Rāshtrakūṭa of Mālkāḍ) granted to a thousand and one Brāhmaṇs<sup>74</sup> the village of Yeleyavāpi<sup>75</sup> in the Mallaka thirty in the Karahāṭa four-thousand *vishaya*, in Saka-Saṃvat 720 expired, in A. D. 798. — Not yet published; noticed in *Dyn. Kan. Distrs.* p. 416, note 6.

## Miraj State.

37. — The stone inscription at Lakshmēshwar, within the limits of the Dhārwar district, which claims that Nōḷambāntaka-Mārasimha II. (Western Gaṅga of Talakāḍ) in Saka-Saṃvat 890 (expired), in A. D. 968-69, and Vikramāditya II. (Western Chalukya of Bādāmi) in Saka-Saṃvat 656 expired, in A. D. 735, granted allotments of land at Puligeṇe or Pulikaranagara, *i. e.* at Lakshmēshwar itself, to Jain priests for the purposes of Jain temples at that place, and that Durgasakti (alleged Sēndra), in the time of Satyāśraya, meaning, apparently, Pulakēśin II. (Western Chalukya of Bādāmi, A. D. 609 to about 642), granted some land for the purposes of one of the same temples.<sup>76</sup> — Published, Vol. VII. above, p. 101; and see *Ep. Ind.* Vol. VI. p. 80 f., and page 211 above.

38. — Another stone inscription at Lakshmēshwar, which claims that Vijayāditya (Western Chalukya of Bādāmi) in Saka-Saṃvat 645 expired, in A. D. 723, and again in S.-S. 651 expired, in A. D. 730, and Nōḷambāntaka-Mārasimha II. (Western Gaṅga of Talakāḍ) in S.-S. 890 expired, in A. D. 968-69, and Vinayāditya (Western Chalukya of Bādāmi), in S.-S. 608 expired,

<sup>71</sup> This is the modern Bagumrā itself, in the Palsāpa tāluka of the Nausāri district; see where published, page 184.

<sup>72</sup> For the identification of almost all the villages, in the neighbourhood of Aḷtēm, see Vol. XXIX. above, p. 273 ff.

<sup>73</sup> I have previously treated this record as claiming to have been issued by Amōghavarsha II., son of Indra III. (*Dyn. Kan. Distrs.* p. 416, note 6). The case, however, is as follows. The record takes the genealogy from Danti-durga to Indra III. Then, after two verses about him which contain nothing of any importance, there comes the passage:—*Yas-cha . . . śri-Kirtinārāyaṇa . . . śri-Manujatrinētra . . . śri-Rājamārttanābh . . . śri-Rajakanda[r\*]ppaḥ samabhavat Sa cha paramabhajitārakaḥ śrīmad-Amōghavar-shadēvaḥ . . . Yeleyavāpi-nāma-grāma[m\*] mahārājadhīrājah . . . dattavān.* And, comparing the corresponding passages in the Sāṅgī grant of A. D. 933 (Vol. XII. above, p. 256, text line 23, and p. 251, line 35 ff.) and the Kharḍa grant of A. D. 972 (*ibid.* p. 265, line 26, and p. 266, line 37 ff.), we now see that the record puts forward Amōghavarsha, wrongly, — with Kirtinārāyaṇa and Rājamārttapḍa and Rajakandarpa, correctly (see *Ep. Ind.* Vol. VI. p. 176), — as a brūda of Indra III., and that it thus claims to have been issued by Indra III. — It may be added that the record asserts that, when he made the grant, Amōghavarsha, *i. e.* Indra III., had come to Kurunda for the festival of his coronation. This place is mentioned, in the same connection, as Kurundaka, in the Nausāri grants of Indra III., issued in A. D. 915. It is evidently the modern Kurundwāḍ, about twenty-three miles on the east of Kōlhāpur.

<sup>74</sup> The alleged grantees are mentioned as "Mādhavachauveradikshita of the Kannaḍa lineage and the Kāśyapa *gotra*, together with a thousand Brāhmaṇs;" no other details are given.

<sup>75</sup> This is the modern Yelēvi, in the Tāgaon tāluka of the Sātara district.

<sup>76</sup> In this case, no individual grantee is named.



in A. D. 687, granted allotments of land at Puligere or Pulikaranagara to Jain priests for the purposes of a Jain temple at that place. — Noticed, Vol. VII. above, p. 111; and see *Ep. Ind.* Vol. VI. p. 80 f., and page 211 above.

#### NIZAM'S DOMINIONS.

39. — The Haidarabad plates, which claim that Vikramāditya I. (Western Chalukya of Bādāmi) granted to a Brāhmaṇa a village named Chintakunṭha in the Kanna vishaya. — Published, Vol. VI. above, p. 75; and see *Dyn. Kan. Distrs.* p. 364 (No. 4) and note 8, and *Göttinger Nachrichten*, 1900, p. 341.<sup>77</sup>

#### PROVINCE OF COORG.

40. — The Merkara plates, which claim that Avinita-Koṅgaṇimahādhira (alleged Western Gaiga of Talakāḍ) granted to a Jain priest for the purposes of a Jain temple at Talavananagara, i. e. Talakāḍ, the village of Badaneguppe<sup>78</sup> in the Eḍenāḍ seventy in the Pūnāḍu six-thousand, in the (Saka) year 388 (expired), in A. D. 466. — Published, Vol. I. above, p. 363, and, *Coorg Insars.* p. 1; and see *Mysore Insars.* p. 282, Vol. XXIV. above, p. 11, No. 169, and *Ep. Ind.* Vol. III. pp. 160 (No. 4), 162, 168, 170, and Vol. V. p. 174, and Vol. VI. p. 66, note 7.

#### MYSORE STATE.

41. — The Bhimankaṭṭi or Tirthahalli plates, which claim that the epic king Janamājaya granted to the ascetics (presumably Brāhmaṇas) of the locality,<sup>79</sup> for the purposes of the worship of the god Sitārāma, some land constituting a property named Munivṛindakshētra<sup>80</sup> in the place called Sitāpura-Vṛikōdarakshētra on the west of the Tuṅgabhadra, in the Plavaṅga saṃvatsara, the year 89 (current) of the Yudhishtira-Saka or era of Yudhishtira,<sup>81</sup> in B. C. 3614. — Published,

<sup>77</sup> When I edited this record, in 1877, I considered that, at any rate as far as line 34, the characters appeared to be genuinely antique (Vol. VI. above, p. 75). More recently, in 1895 or 1896, I have said that, in consequence of the type of the characters and the partial corruptness of the language, the authenticity of this grant is not altogether free from suspicion (*Dyn. Kan. Distrs.* p. 327, note 4, and p. 364, note 8). Prof. Kielhorn has expressed the opinion that the mistakes in the verses do not justify the suspicion that the plates may be a forgery, and that the case with which the true readings can be restored tends to prove that the verses were taken from a correct copy of the grant (*Göttinger Nachrichten*, 1900, p. 345). We may waive that point. But, while the record is, no doubt, an early fabrication and may quite possibly refer to a real grant, the bad shapes of the characters, and the irregularities in the writing, — which are not affected in their general features by the fact that the lithograph is a manipulated reproduction, and not an actual facsimile, — suffice to shew that the record is not the original, synchronous, and official voucher for the matters set forth in it. And it must, therefore, be finally stamped as spurious.

<sup>78</sup> This village still exists, under the same name, in the Chāmrājnagar tāluka of the Mysore district.

<sup>79</sup> Their names, etc., are not put forward.

<sup>80</sup> Tirthahalli is the head-quarters of the Tirthahalli tāluka in the Shimoga district, on the north bank of the river Tuṅga, about thirty-five miles above its confluence with the Bhadrā. The Bhimankaṭṭi maṭh is four miles higher up the river, above Tirthahalli (see *Mysore*, revised edition, Vol. II. p. 486). And the passage defining the boundaries enables us, with the help of the details shewn in the Indian Atlas sheet No. 42 (1827), to locate just there the Munivṛindakshētra, which is defined as being, amongst other things, on the west of the Tuṅgabhadra, meaning here the Tuṅga) as it flows to the north.

<sup>81</sup> According to the popular view, as exhibited in the Native almanacs of the present day, the era of Yudhishtira is the first three thousand and forty-four years of the Kaliyuga, that is to say, the period from the beginning of the present age in B. C. 3102 to the commencement of the so-called Vikrama era in B. C. 58; see, for instance, the passages about eras in the introduction to Ganpat Krishnaji's *Pañchāṅg* for Śaka-Saṃvat 1799 (expired), = A. D. 1877-78. On the other hand, according to the astronomer Vriddha-Garga, as reported by Varāhamihira (died A. D. 587) in his *Bṛhat-saṃhitā*, xiii. 2, the duration of the era of Yudhishtira was two thousand five hundred and twenty-six years; and Kallapa, quoting Varāhamihira's verse in his *Rājatarāṅgī*, i. 56, shews, by a previous verse, 52, that by him at least, in A. D. 1148-49, it was understood that the era began (and the commencement of the reign of Yudhishtira took place) two thousand five hundred and twenty-six years before the commencement of the Śaka era in A. D. 77; that is to say, that the era began in B. C. 2449 or 2448 (see Vol. XVIII. above, p. 66). The mention of the Plavaṅga saṃvatsara in the date put forward in this record, shews that the date was put together according to the popular view, with B. C. 3102 as the commencement of the era. — Buchanan has mentioned two inscriptions at the temple of Madhukēśvara at Banawāsi in North Kanara, of which, according to the accounts of them given to him, one is dated in the year 168 of the era of Yudhishtira and claims that



Vol. IV. above, p. 333; and see Vol. I. p. 378, *Pāli, Sanskrit, and Old-Canarese Inscriptions*. No. 30, *Mysore Inscriptions*. p. 251 and *Introductory*. p. 70, and *Mysore* (revised edition), Vol. II. p. 427.

42. — The Bēgūr plates, which claim that, at the beginning of the *śarpayāga* or snake-sacrifice, Janamējaya granted ten villages<sup>82</sup> to a thousand and three-hundred Brāhmanas<sup>83</sup> of Bēgūru in the northern Eḍenāḍu seventy in the Banavāsi twelve-thousand province. — See Vol. VIII. above, p. 91, *Mysore Inscriptions*. *Introductory*. p. 70, and *Mysore* (revised edition), Vol. II. p. 427.

43. — The Kuppagaḍḍe or Sorab plates, which claim that, at the point of the snake-sacrifice called *pūrnāhutisamaya*, Janamējaya granted the ten villages which constituted the village of Pushpagaḍḍe<sup>84</sup> to two thousand Brāhmanas<sup>85</sup> of Pushpagaḍḍe in the Eḍenāḍu seventy in the Banavāsi twelve-thousand province.<sup>86</sup> — See Vol. I. above, p. 375, Vol. VIII. p. 91, *P. S. O.-C. Inscriptions*. No. 32, *Mysore Inscriptions*. p. 238 and *Introductory*. p. 70, and *Mysore* (revised edition), Vol. II. p. 427.

44. — The Gauj or Anantapur plates, which claim that, at the point of the snake-sacrifice called *pūrnāhutitadāgasamaya*, Janamējaya granted the twelve villages which constituted the village of Gautamagrāma<sup>87</sup> to thirty-two thousand Brāhmanas<sup>88</sup> of Gautamagrāma in the Śāntajige

a grant of land to the god Madhukanātha was made by 'Simhuna Bapa' of the family of Yudhishtira, and the other is dated in Vikrama-Saṁvat 96 (*Journey through Mysore, Canara, and Malabar*, Vol. III. p. 231). He has also mentioned (*ibid.*) three inscriptions at Baḷagāmi in Mysore, of which two were represented to him as being dated in the reign of Yudhishtira himself, and the third was represented as being dated in Śālivahana-Saka-Saṁvat 90 in the reign of 'Tronetra Cadumba.' And he has said (*ibid.* p. 411) that the Jains of Śrāvapa-Belgoḷa gave him a copy, on palm-leaves, of what they said was a copy of a record on copper dated Kaliyuga-Saṁvat 600 in the reign of 'Rājā Mulla, king of the South.' It is difficult, however, to say whether these statements really indicate the existence of any such spurious records, or whether they are simply based on ignorant or fraudulent readings of genuine records of probably about the eleventh century A. D., or on gratuitous insertions or additions as in the case of the imaginary date inserted in a reading of one of the Kōlhāpur inscriptions (see page 206 f. above). — Mr. Sewell has mentioned an inscription on stone at 'Vupputura,' in the Kistna district, "professing to date from the 2,000th year of the Kaliyuga, and to be a grant of a village by 'Fripetra Pallava' (*Lists of Antiquities, Madras*, Vol. I. p. 85). We have, however, no further details of it.

<sup>82</sup> The full text of this record has not been published; and so the names of the ten villages are not yet available for identification. There is, however, no reason for expecting to find them anywhere except in the immediate neighbourhood of Bēgūr itself, which is in the Shikārpur tāluka of the Shimoga district.

<sup>83</sup> Names, etc., are put forward only in respect of four of them.

<sup>84</sup> As can be recognised from an identification of some of the ten villages themselves, and of some of the surrounding villages named in the passage defining the boundaries of them, Pushpagaḍḍe was the former name of Kuppagaḍḍe itself, which is in the Sorab tāluka of the Shimoga district.

<sup>85</sup> Names, etc., are put forward only in respect of four of them.

<sup>86</sup> In Vol. I. above, p. 375, this record is represented as claiming to have been issued in "the year 111." That, however, is only based on a supposition that, in the expression *kaḷakawutkalita*, the syllables *ka*, *ṭa*, *ka* mean 1, 1, 1, according to the Kaṭapayādi system (for which, see Vol. IV. above, p. 207). In the same way, a suggestion has been made that the *ka*, *ṭa*, *ka*, *ṃ* imply 1, 1, 1, 5, giving a clue to Śaka-Saṁvat 1115 (expired), = A. D. 1193-94, as the real date of the concoction of this record and some others in which the same expression occurs (see *Mysore Inscriptions*. *Introductory*. p. 71, and *Mysore*, revised edition, Vol. II. p. 427). But we have no reason to suspect anything of the kind. — It seems, by the way, doubtful now, whether the above-mentioned expression should be divided, as hitherto, into *kaḷakam* and *utkalita*, 'unbound, loosened, opened, blossoming, appearing,' etc., or whether we should divide it into *kaḷaka* and *mutkalita*, — a word with the sense of 'sent, impelled,' which Prof. Tawney has brought to notice in his translation of the *Kaṭhāśāstra*, Pref. p. 22. In either case, however, the meaning is simply "a camp was pitched," as remarked on a previous occasion (Vol. XIV. above, p. 141).

<sup>87</sup> As can be recognised from an identification of nearly all the surrounding villages named in defining the boundaries of the property that is claimed, Gautamagrāma is the modern Gauj itself, which is in the Shikārpur tāluka of the Shimoga district.

<sup>88</sup> Names, etc., are put forward only in respect of four of them. — These thirty-two thousand Brāhmanas of Gautamagrāma are a reproduction or imitation of the thirty-two-thousand Brāhmanas or *Mahājanas* of Tālgund, in the Shikārpur tāluka, who are mentioned in records of the eleventh and twelfth centuries A. D. at Tālgund; the records speak of them as *dvātriṁśat-sahasra-dvija-saṁāja*, "the congregation of thirty-two-thousand Brāhmanas" (*P. S. O.-C. Inscriptions*. No. 219, line 46-47, and see *Mysore Inscriptions*. p. 192), and *mūvattirchchhāṣṣāṣṣa-mahājanasaj*, "the thirty-two-thousand *Mahājanas*" (*ibid.* line 53), of *Sthāpugūḍhagrāma* (Tālgund); and one of them (*P. S. O.-C. Inscriptions*. No. 221, and see *Mysore Inscriptions*. p. 196) attributes the origin of them to "thirty-two households of Brāhmanas (*vīra*), purified by twelve-thousand *agnihōtra*-sacrifices," whom Mukkappa-Kaḍamba brought to the south from the *agrahāra* of Ahichchhatra and established at the great *agrahāra* of Sthāpugūḍhapura, which he made.



thousand in the Banavāsi twelve-thousand province.<sup>80</sup> — See Vol. I. above, p. 377, and the text and lithograph in Vol. III. p. 268. Vol. VIII. p. 91, *P. S. O.-C. Inscr.* No. 31, *Mysore Inscr.* p. 232 and *Introd.* p. 70, and *Mysore* (revised edition), Vol. II. p. 427.

45. — **The Gaṭṭavāḍi stone inscription**, which claims that, during the reign or rule of a certain Erehavemṣāḍi, the village-headman and others<sup>80</sup> of Goṭṭevāḍi united for, apparently, the purpose of **defining and marking out lands that were set apart as remuneration for the duties of the office of village-headman**, in the Aṅgiras *saṁvatsara*, coupled with Śaka-Saṁvat 111, by mistake for 114 (expired), in A. D. 192-93. — Published, *Ep. Carn.* Vol. III., Nj. 199; and see *Dyn. Kan. Distrs.* p. 301, note 1 (No. 1).

46. — **The Tagadūru plates**, which claim that Harivarman (alleged Western Gaṅga of Talakāḍ), granted to the son of a village-headman, as a reward for prowess displayed in the battle of Heñjeru, **a village named Abbāgāl**<sup>81</sup> in the Torebaḍagarenāḍu *vishaya*, in the Vibhava *saṁvatsara*, coupled with Śaka-Saṁvat 188 expired, by mistake for 170 expired, in A. D. 249.<sup>82</sup> — Published, *Ep. Carn.* Vol. III., Nj. 122; and see *Dyn. Kan. Distrs.* p. 301, note 1 (No. 2).

47. — **The Muḍiyanūr plates**, which claim that Malladēva-Nandivarman (alleged Bāṇa) granted to twenty-five Brāhmaṇs<sup>83</sup> **the village of Muḍiyanūr**<sup>84</sup> in the Hodali *vishaya*, in the Vilambin *saṁvatsara*, Śaka-Saṁvat 261 (current), in A. D. 338. — Published, Vol. XV. above, p. 172; and see Vol. XVII. p. 339, and Vol. XXIV. p. 10, No. 167. — This record is, in part at any rate, a palimpsest.

48. — **The Harihar plates**, which claim that an unnamed son of Viṣṇugōpa (alleged Western Gaṅga of Talakāḍ) granted to the son of a village-headman, in recognition of some service rendered by him in apparently the battle of Heñjeru,<sup>85</sup> **the village of Dēvanūr**<sup>86</sup> in the Kārenāḍ district, in the Sādhāraṇa *saṁvatsara*, coupled with, apparently, Śaka-Saṁvat 272 (expired), in A. D. 351. — Published, Vol. VII. above, p. 173; and see *Mysore Inscr.* p. 293, Vol. XXIV. above, p. 181, No. 4, note 3, and *Ep. Ind.* Vol. III. pp. 159 (No. 2), 162, 170, and Vol. VI. p. 74.

49. — **The plates, in the Museum at Bangalore**, which claim that Vira-Nonāmba (alleged Chālukya of Kalyāṇapura) granted to a leading banker or merchant of a village named **Haruhāḍi**<sup>87</sup> in the Kundunāḍu seventy in the Gaṅgavāḍi ninety-six-thousand province, in recognition of prowess displayed in the battle of Heñjeru, **some lands** (at that village), in the Tāraṇa *saṁvatsara*, Śaka-Saṁvat 366 (expired), in A. D. 445. — Published, Vol. VIII. above, p. 94; and see *Mysore Inscr.* p. 296 and *Introd.* p. 70, *Mysore* (revised edition), Vol. II. p. 427, Vol. XXIV. above, p. 9, No. 163, and *Dyn. Kan. Distrs.* p. 467.

50. — **The Mallohalli plates**, which claim that Koṅgaṇirāja or Koṅgaṇimahārāja, son of Mādhava II. (alleged Western Gaṅga of Talakāḍ) granted to a Brāhmaṇ **some land** which is perhaps

<sup>80</sup> In Vol. I. above, p. 377, this record, also, is represented as having been issued in "the year 111." Note 85 above, however, applies here again.

<sup>81</sup> No names are put forward.

<sup>82</sup> The name Torebaḍagarenāḍu means "the district on the north bank of the river." The village claimed, Abbāgāl, is either Chik-Abbāgālu or Doḍ-Abbāgālu, near the north bank of the Kāvēri, and about four miles on the east of Sosile which is in the Tirumakūḍlu-Narasipūr tāluka of the Mysore district.

<sup>83</sup> Or, we might say, "in Śaka-Saṁvat 188 expired, in A. D. 267, coupled with the Vibhava *saṁvatsara* by mistake for the Vyaya *saṁvatsara*."

<sup>84</sup> Names, etc., are put forward only in respect of four of them.

<sup>85</sup> Some of the place-names mentioned in this record are not unique. But, as was pointed out by Mr. Rice (Vol. XV. above, pp. 172, 174), the village claimed is Muḍiyanūr itself, in the Muḍbāgal tāluka of the Kōlār district.

<sup>86</sup> The text has *Hē[ñ]jeru=iridhu(du)*, "having pierced Heñjeru."

<sup>87</sup> As was pointed out by Mr. Rice (Vol. VII. above, p. 171), this is Dēvanūr in the Naṅjangūḍ tāluka of the Mysore district.

<sup>88</sup> This is, most probably, the 'Halvadi' of the Indian Atlas sheet No. 63, S. W. (1892), in the Maṇḍya tāluka of the Mysore district.



specified as lying below the tank of a village named Milur, in the *Jaya saṁvatsara*, the twenty-ninth year of his reign. — Published, Vol. V. above, p. 136; and see *Mysore Inscr.* p. 289, and *Ep. Ind.* Vol. III. pp. 160 (No. 3), 162.

51. — The plates, in the Museum at Bangalore, which claim to record a charter issued, in the third year of his reign, by Koṅgaṇimahārāja, son of Koṅgaṇimahādhīrāja son of Mādava II. (alleged Western Gaṅga of Talakād): the concluding portion of this record is said to be quite illegible; but the last words of the legible portion make it practically certain that it claimed to record a grant of some kind or another to a Brāhmaṇ who was a resident of a town named Mahāsēnapura.<sup>98</sup> — Published, Vol. VII. above, p. 174; and see *Mysore Inscr.* p. 294, and *Ep. Ind.* Vol. III. p. 160 (No. 5).

52. — The Mallohalli plates, which claim that Durrinīta (alleged Western Gaṅga of Talakād) granted to a Brāhmaṇ a property called *Īśvarasthāna* at a village named Bempur<sup>99</sup> in the *Kejale nād*, in the *Vijaya saṁvatsara*, the thirty-fifth year of his reign. — Published, Vol. V. above, p. 138; and see *Mysore Inscr.* p. 291, and *Ep. Ind.* Vol. III. pp. 160 (No. 6), 163.

53. — The Hosūr plates, which claim that Satyāśraya, *i. e.* Pulakēśin II. (Western Chalukya of Bādāmi), at the request of an alleged daughter or son named Ambērā or Ambēra, granted to thirty-one Brāhmaṇs<sup>100</sup> a village named Periyāla in the *Koṇikal viśhaya*. — Published, Vol. VIII. above, p. 96, with a lithograph in Vol. IX. p. 304; and see *Mysore Inscr.* p. 298, and *Dyn. Kan. Distrs.* p. 358, note 1.

54. — The Hallegere plates, which claim that Sivamāra I. (Western Gaṅga of Talakād) built a bridge or dam across the Kijine river on the north of Keregōḍu in the *Keregōḍu viśhaya*,<sup>101</sup> and took two villages named Kodugoḷa and Belkare on the south of that river and two villages named Bembappāl or Bembappāl and Puṇṇasepatti on the north of the river, and made of them a village named Pallavataṭṭaka, and divided that new village into sixty-six shares, which he then granted to thirty-one Brāhmaṇs, in Saka-Saṁvat 635 expired, in A. D. 713, in the thirty-fourth year of his reign. — Published, *Ep. Carn.* Vol. III., Md. 113; and see *Dyn. Kan. Distrs.* p. 301, note 1 (No. 3).

55. — The plates, in the British Museum, which claim that a certain Eregāṅga, who may be represented as a governor under Sivamāra I. (Western Gaṅga of Talakād) or may perhaps be intended for Sivamāra I. himself, divided into three shares and granted to Brāhmaṇs<sup>102</sup> a village named Panekōḍupādi,<sup>103</sup> which — (we must understand from the record) — was in either the Torenāḍu five-hundred, or the Koṅgaṇnād two-thousand,<sup>104</sup> or the Male thousand. — Published, Vol. XIV. above, p. 229; and see *Ep. Ind.* Vol. III. pp. 160 (No. 9), 163, 169.

56. — The Hosūr plates, which claim that Sripurusha-Muttarasa (Western Gaṅga of Talakād) granted to a Brāhmaṇ some lands at four villages named Elarṇ-Gūḍalūr, Maṇiyāchi-Gūḍalūr, Paṇuvi, and Sripura, in Saka-Saṁvat 684 expired, in A. D. 762. —

<sup>98</sup> This town is mentioned again, as the residence of one of the alleged grantees, in the Hallegere plates, No. 54 below. The name may be another form of the name Kārttikēyapuram, which occurs in the case of a village in the Kārveṇinagar zamindārī in the North Arcot district, Madras, or it may be the Sanskritised form of some vernacular name now beginning with *doḍḍa* or *hīrē*.

<sup>99</sup> This may be 'Bevur' in the Closepet tāluka of the Bangalore district; or it may be 'Begur,' in the Nela-māgala tāluka of the same district.

<sup>100</sup> No names are given; we are only told that thirteen of them belonged to the *Ātrēya gōtra*, five to the *Kauṣka gōtra*, three to the *Kāśyapa gōtra*, three to the *Kaundinya gōtra*, three more to the *Kāśyapa gōtra*, two to the *Sāvannika (Sāvarṇika) gōtra*, one to the *Bhāradvāja gōtra*, and one to the *Saunaka gōtra*.

<sup>101</sup> It seems likely that the Keregōḍu of this record is Keregōḍu in the Maṇḍya tāluka of the Mysore district.

<sup>102</sup> The original actually says "to the Kāśapa (Kāśyapa) gōtra," — meaning, no doubt, to some Brāhmaṇs belonging to that gōtra; no other details are given.

<sup>103</sup> This is probably the modern 'Hanagod,' on the Lakshmantirra river, in the Hupsūr tāluka of the Mysore district.

<sup>104</sup> This was really an eight-thousand province; see page 208 above.



Published, *Madras Jour. Lit. Sc.*, 1878, p. 138; and see *Mysore Inscr.* p. 284, Vol. XXIV. above, p. 11, No. 171, *Ep. Ind.* Vol. III. pp. 160 (No. 7), 170, and *Dyn. Kan. Distr.* p. 302, note 2.

57.—The **Dēvarhaḷḷi plates**, — formerly known as the Nāgamaṅgala plates, — which claim that Sripurusha-Muttarasa (Western Gaṅga of Tāḷakāḍ), at the request of Paramagūḷa-Prithuvi-Nirgundarāja, granted for the purposes of a Jain temple called Lōkatilaka<sup>100</sup> founded by Kundāchchi, wife of Paramagūḷa-Prithuvi-Nirgundarāja, at a town or village named Sripura, a village named **Ponnaḷḷi** in the Nirgunda *viśaya*, in Saka-Saṁvat 698 expired, in A. D. 776-77, in the fiftieth year of his reign. — Published, Vol. II. above, p. 155, and *Ep. Carn.* Vol. IV., Ng. 85; and see *Mysore Inscr.* p. 287, and *Ep. Ind.* Vol. III. pp. 160 (No. 8), 163, 164.

58.—The **Gaṅḡām plates**, which claim that, with the consent of the *Yuvarāja* Mārasimha-Ereyappa, alleged son of Sivamāra II. (Western Gaṅga of Tāḷakāḍ), two alleged Pallava princes Nijarāma and Nayadhira, sons of Kali-Nolambādhirāja-Kolliyarasa, granted to a Brāhmaṇ a village named **Tipperūr**. — Published, *Ep. Carn.* Vol. IV., Sr. 160.

59.—The **Gaḷigēkero plates**, which claim that Raṇavikramayya, alleged son of Rājamalla Western Gaṅga of Tāḷakāḍ), granted to a Brāhmaṇ a village named **Koḷa-Nellūr**. — Published, *Ep. Carn.* Vol. IV., Yd. 60.

## NEW RESEARCHES INTO THE COMPOSITION AND EXEGESIS OF THE QORAN.

BY HARTWIG HIRSCHFELD, Ph.D., M.R.A.S.

(Continued from p. 183.)

### CHAPTER IX.

#### Medinian Revelations up till the Battle of Badr.

FEATURES common to Meccan and Medianian revelations — Differences of both classes — Muhammed's attitude towards the Jews — Revelations of the period.

The features common to Meccan and Medianian revelations are few but important. They comprise — similarity of diction and form, the same aggressiveness of tone, the tenets of the religion and the doctrines of its ethical code. If we had no other critical aid, it would frequently be quite impossible to distinguish between Medianian and later Meccan revelations. Moslim authors on the subject are unreliable, if not directly misleading, and the anecdotes which they relate in connection with many revelations must be received with caution. Medianian addresses, like the Meccan ones, abound in declamatory, narrative, and parabolical passages. Many of these have been handed down as Medianian, though it is doubtful if they should so be classified, and there is not sufficient evidence to justify their removal from their present position in the official text. The legislative revelations are less difficult to place, as those bearing on ritual (except some on prayer and almsgiving), or legal matters are of distinctly Medianian origin.

The Medianian portions of the *Qorān* must not be criticised from the same standpoint as the Meccan ones, on account of the altered circumstances under which they appeared. It is impossible to get a clear insight into the events connected with the Meccan sermons; therefore so far as they are concerned, we have no satisfactory background to work upon. The case is different as regards the Medianian revelations, which are illustrated by facts recorded in exegetical and historical works. Unfortunately the authors of these works were remarkable for religious zeal, rather than for their capacity for distinguishing between truth and fiction, whilst many of the authorities on whom they relied were not always veracious. Thus, a large number of Medianian revelations have been linked with persons and

<sup>100</sup> No individual grantee is named, unless we are to understand that the village was actually conveyed to the Jain priest Vimalachandrachārya, at whose suggestion the grant purports to have been made or the temple was built.



affairs with which, in reality, they had no connection, whilst the resemblance between various military expeditions is responsible for a certain confusion which defies all attempts at disentanglement. We may hope to be more successful in matters exegetical, and it must be conceded that the better a passage is understood the greater is the chance of ascertaining to what it refers, and the place to which it belongs in the order of revelations.

Another difference between the two chief portions of the *Qorân* is due to the change which had taken place in the author himself. His aims were not precisely the same as they had been. Whilst the teachings promulgated in Mecca affected the church exclusively, many of the Medinian ones were devoted to the organisation of the State. Without the Hijra Islâm would probably never have outstepped the limits of a religious sect, and might at best have lingered on within an insignificant and powerless minority. **Muhammed's merit as founder of the State is not less than as the creator of the faith.** The most powerful ethical idea cannot be effective for any length of time, unless it is established on a material basis, because those who are called upon to uphold and propagate it, are in most cases actuated by personal interests and inclinations. The people who will accept the true and the ideal for its own intrinsic value alone are rare, but many will receive it when tendered in a gilded casing, or when they are compelled to do so. In Medina, Islâm was fortunate enough to be able to employ both methods in the furtherance of its objects, and this is the secret of its rapid progress all along the line.

Finally, in contradistinction to the Meccan revelations, the Medinian ones unfold the network of the **hierarchic constitution**, comprising religious as well as administrative measures. Under the care of Moslim theologians it developed into a minutely worked out code of laws which, similarly to the Jewish one, holds the whole life of the believer under its sway, drawing purely legal matters within the province of religious decision. The first impulse towards this course of action in Islâm was, however, given by Muhammed himself. For, without it he would not have been able to achieve the most urgent reforms. By intermixing juridical expositions with pastoral admonitions<sup>76</sup> he placed the former above the ancient customs of his country.

There are, however, other circumstances, which could not fail to affect the general tone of Muhammed's utterances as soon as he entered the precincts of his new abode. Having been invited to come by many of the leading citizens, his life was not only safe, but he became possessed of a worldly power which was absolute within the circle of his admirers. His wish was a command, his censure condemnation. Speaking with the authority of a man who was blindly obeyed, his eloquence lost its excited character, and assumed the calm tone of a legislator. "Obedience to Allâh and His Messenger" is the *Leitmotiv* of nearly all Medinian speeches.

As for the new adversaries of Islâm, they were divided into two large groups of very different nature. Those Arabs who adhered to the old pagan belief were not such fanatic opponents as the Meccans, because Islâm endangered no institution which was a source of wealth or influence to them. Only sundry chiefs, who feared that the spread of Islâm might deprive them of their power, offered individually an obstinate resistance. Many antagonists belonging to this class, not having the courage to resist the growth of Islâm openly, agitated against it secretly, whilst showing outward submission, but even they saw the power slip gradually out of their hands. It did not take the Prophet long to recognise the real attitude of the "**Hypocrites**," as he styled them, and the trouble they gave him during the whole remainder of his life is faithfully reflected in the virulent rebuffs he administered to them from time to time.

The foes Muhammed feared most were the **three Jewish clans**, which had settled in and around Medina. Circumstances had not only favoured the spread of their faith among the Arabs, but had also drawn the ties of kinship closer through intermarriage with their pagan compatriots. By keeping in touch with their religious literature they had gradually acquired the leadership in spiritual matters, and they still maintained it, although their temporal influence had received a severe check shortly before Muhammed crossed their path.<sup>77</sup>

<sup>76</sup> Cf. *Q'ra.* ii. 282 sqq. and often.

<sup>77</sup> *Beiträge*, p. 47 sqq.



Wherever the Jews wandered, in the *Diaspora*, they took with them at least those portions of the Old Testament, which form part of the liturgy. These not only comprise the Pentateuch, but also such sections of the Prophets, as were selected for Haftārôth, the Psalms<sup>78</sup> and the Five Scrolls.<sup>79</sup> One of the consequences of this practice was the preservation of the Hebrew language both for prayer and study, and however much most Jews of the Hijâz may have adopted manners and customs of the Arabs, and although many lived in great ignorance,<sup>80</sup> Hebrew was never forgotten among them. Of this unmistakable evidence exists. From a tradition repeated on various occasions by AlBokhârî<sup>81</sup> we gather, that the Jews in Arabia read the Tôrâh in Hebrew, but interpreted the same to the Moslems in Arabic. — From this, first of all, we may conclude, that the Pentateuch — probably the whole of the Old Testament — was studied and publicly interpreted in the [Beth] "Midrâs."<sup>82</sup> When Muhammed heard of this, he was so perplexed, that he did not know, at first, what policy to pursue. He therefore simply forbade his followers either to confirm or to refute the Jewish interpretation, giving as his reason that the Jews had altered the law, written the Tôrâh with their own hands, and stamped the same as God's original work.<sup>83</sup> The less discreet Abu Bakr, however, could not abstain from entering the shool-house by force and assaulting the Rabbi engaged in teaching.<sup>84</sup> From these traditions which receive confirmation from yet another one,<sup>85</sup> we gather, that the Jews in Medina not only practiced writing, but made copies of the Tôrâh, and endeavoured to work upon the Moslems in private and public discussions. From the concluding words of the tradition mentioned above, as well as from many verses of the *Qorân*, it is certain that they also had at their disposal the Mishnâh, which is traced back by Rabbinical teaching to oral communication given to Moses on Sinai as a supplement to the written Law.<sup>86</sup>

From several almost literal quotations from the O. T. in the *Qorân* the question arose, whether an Arabic translation of the former existed in Arabia. Whilst Sprenger<sup>87</sup> is convinced that this was the case, or that at any rate certain portions of it had been translated, Prof. De Goeje, in a recent article,<sup>88</sup> arrives at a negative result. The latter theory is undoubtedly correct. Had such a version existed, Muhammed would have certainly succeeded in procuring one, and his renditions of Biblical passages would consequently have been more verbal, and less intermixed with *agâdic* ornamentation. Since this was not the case, we must assume that he gained the bulk of his Biblical knowledge from intercourse with the people. In his earlier years he may have had opportunities of seeing Hebrew books, but, not being a skilled reader, misread several words.<sup>89</sup> These he subsequently rendered in a corrupt fashion. He had scarcely set foot in Medina, when he took pains to display before the Jews a grand knowledge of the Bible and later Jewish writings, which he had picked up secretly.

It is almost certain that the Jews in Arabia were acquainted with an Aramaic version — either Targûm or P'shittâ — of the Pentateuch. Through Talmudical channels Aramaic elements penetrated their religious terminology, and even their name *Yahûd* is an Aramaic form.<sup>90</sup> We may gather from

<sup>78</sup> The Tôrâh and Psalms are further mentioned in the verses of the Jewish poet AlSammâk in his dirge on Ka'b b. al Ashraf who had been assassinated by order of Muhammed. Cf. B. E. J. VIII. p. 22.

<sup>79</sup> As to Canticles cf. Ch. II.

<sup>80</sup> *Qorân*, ii. 73.

<sup>81</sup> IV. pp. 221, 250.

<sup>82</sup> Hish. p. 362. Through misunderstanding on the part of some traditionists the term *midrâs* is applied to the lecturing Rabbi, Hish. pp. 354 and 378; cf. *Beitr.* p. 52.

<sup>83</sup> Bokh. *ibid.*; according to *Qôr.* ii. 73.

<sup>84</sup> Hish. *ibid.*; B. E. J. *ibid.* p. 13.

<sup>85</sup> Hish. p. 393. The Jews made Muhammed umpire in an adultery case, but opinions disagreeing, Abd Allâh b. Salâm (see below) had a copy of the Tôrâh brought, and pointed the verse out which commanded the culprit to be stoned; *Beitr.* p. 54. Although this tradition must be taken with caution, because of its tendency to make Abd Allâh prominent, the kernel seems to be genuine.

<sup>86</sup> Abôth, I. 1.

<sup>87</sup> L. c. I. p. 132.

<sup>88</sup> *Semitic Studies* in memory of Dr. A. Kohut, p. 180 sq. The quotations given in this article as well as in that of M. Schreiner, *ibid.* p. 495 sqq., only give a small fraction of the material existing on this question. — Ps. cxi. 10; cf.

AlMaidâni, *Ar. Prov.* iii. p. 29. بَدَأَ الْحِكْمَةَ خَوْفَ الرَّبِّ Prov. i. 7; Cantic. v. 2; cf. Hish. p. 375, Kémil ed. Wright, pp. 77, 741; AlShahr. p. 165 l. 2 fr. b. — Deutr. xxxiii. 2. The same verse, differently translated, see Schreiner, *ibid.* p. 503, according to Almâ verdi. Cf. Ibn Hâzam, Ft. I., who gives numerous translations from the Pentateuch, and J. Q. B. xiii. p. 222 sqq.

<sup>89</sup> See Ch. I.

<sup>90</sup> See Ch. II.; also *sabb* (Sabbath) represents the Aramaic form.



this that the Arab Jews possibly exercised a certain indirect influence on the construction of the Talmud. Some paragraphs in the Mishnah refer exclusively to the Jews of the Peninsula. It was considered lawful for them to live in Bedouin tents,<sup>91</sup> and their women were permitted to go out on Sabbath wearing a veil.<sup>92</sup> The Talmud also alludes to the custom of circumcision among Arabs,<sup>93</sup> and twice mentions Arab foot gear.<sup>94</sup>

The maintenance of the spiritual — and probably also commercial — intercourse with the centres of Jewish culture in Palestine and Babylon prevented the process of assimilation beyond the external conditions of life, although as far as these were concerned it was complete. At this period the Jewish standard prayers had long been settled, and it is certain that they also constituted the prayers of the Arab Jews, probably in the original Hebrew. These Jews, however, did not produce any liturgical compositions of their own, at least none survive either in Hebrew or in Arabic. But they have left a large number of poems in pure Arabic, containing a few allusions to Biblical books.<sup>95</sup> Otherwise these poems do not differ in style and tone from those of the pagan Arabs, and are of about the same stamp. Finally it is to be remarked that they preferred Arab names to Hebrew ones, and in a list handed down by Ibn Ishâq only few specifically Jewish names are to be found.<sup>96</sup> This corresponds to a custom found among Jews everywhere in the diaspora, but in Arabia it was more prevalent, because they numbered among themselves many proselytes who did not change their names or those of their children when converted.

There is a good deal of evidence that the art of writing was practised to some extent among the Jews of North Arabia, and that not only they themselves wrote Arabic in Hebrew square characters but also several Christian Arab tribes who lived near Syria.<sup>97</sup> Other Arab reports trace the invention of the Arab alphabet back to the same origin.<sup>98</sup> A tradition handed down in the name of Zeid b. Thâbit, Muhammed's secretary, informs us that the latter ordered him to learn the *kitâb*<sup>99</sup> of the Jews, which he did in two weeks so satisfactorily, that he wrote to the Jews [letters dictated to him by Muhammed] and read the letters they wrote to him. From this we can safely conclude that in North Arabia Arabic was written in square characters long before any other form was used, and it is only in continuance of this custom that Jewish authors of Arabic works during the Middle Ages used the same. The majority of Jews living at present in Arabic-speaking countries have little or no notion of the Arabic alphabet.

In spite of the wealth and influence ascribed to the Arab Jews, they could never forget that they were living in exile; for before the rise of Islâm they were frequently reminded of this fact by buffets and petty tyrannies.<sup>100</sup> This position must have been anything but pleasant, because they were always longing for Messianic deliverance. The two Arab tribes of AlAus and AlKhazraj, their fellow-citizens in Medina, were perpetually at loggerheads, and the various Jewish inhabitants were distributed on both sides. Being rather inclined to peaceful handicraft, palm-culture, and trade, these everlasting feuds and occasional raids on their property were not to their taste, and they used to say: "The time is near, when a prophet is to come, whom we will follow, and with his help we will defeat you." Moslim tradition connects this word of hope somewhat remotely with Muhammed, and it is possible, that the rumours of the new prophet, which had reached the ears of the inhabitants of Medina, were looked upon by some Jews as the culmination of their hopes. But the essence of the tradition is probably only an echo of some paragraphs in the Jewish prayer-book which refer to a Messianic future. However, as soon as the Median Jews heard of the Meccan prophet, they considered it

<sup>91</sup> Ohol. xviii. 10.

<sup>92</sup> Abôd. Zar. 27<sup>vo</sup>; Yeb. 11<sup>vo</sup>. Arabs called "Tayyittes" because the tribe of Tayy was the one nearest to Babylon (cf. Beitr. p. 49).

<sup>93</sup> Yeb. am. 102<sup>vo</sup>; Sabb. 112<sup>vo</sup>.

<sup>94</sup> Cf. Benan, *Hist. des lang. Sém.* I. p. 348; Sprenger, l. c. I. p. 131.

<sup>95</sup> *Fihrist*, p. 4, where groups of Hebrew (or Syriac) letters are mistaken for names of persons.

<sup>96</sup> Evidently not "book," but "writing." The tradition is given Khamis, I. p. 424.

<sup>97</sup> E. g., by the Ghassanide prince Abu Jubeila (about 500) and by AlHârith b. Abi Shamir who pillaged Kheibar (about 530); cf. R. E. J. VII. pp. 172-5.

<sup>98</sup> Sabb. vi. 4.

<sup>99</sup> Cf. R. E. J. VIII. p. 11.

<sup>100</sup> Hish. 286 and 374.



worth while to make enquiries concerning his person and mission, but the accounts of these enquiries and their results as given by tradition are so eccentric that they deserve little credence,<sup>2</sup> at least as regards many of the details. Now if the Medinian Jews were interested in Muhammed, he was at least equally concerned about them, and sought to win them over either by persuasion or force. Shortly before the Hijra six Medinian Arabs made a pilgrimage to Mecca. Muhammed at once questioned them whether they were friends of the Jews.<sup>3</sup> When invited in the following year to emigrate to Medina, it appears that one of the conditions made by Muhammed was that the alliances with the Jews should be dissolved.<sup>4</sup> From the resistance which Muhammed experienced from the Meccans who were ignorant in religious matters, he could easily gauge what a struggle was in store for him with the "People of the Book." The friendly sentiment he expressed towards the Jews in some of the earliest Medinian revelations<sup>5</sup> seems to have been an attempt to soothe a dangerous rival, rather than a desire to show sympathy for a cognate faith. Also the Jews on their part are said to have made enquiries about the new Messias, but what they had learnt on this occasion, as well as what they found out later on personal observation, showed that a struggle was imminent. Muhammed's having come to Medina by invitation must have led him to believe that the pagan population of that city would be won over with comparative ease. He was aware that the Jews lived in exile, and languished under the wrath of Allāh. This conviction furnished him the cue for remonstrances, and he was not loth to remind them as often as possible that they were "cursed." The alleged friendly attitude Muhammed assumed towards the Jews is peculiarly illustrated in the following list of abusive titles which he hurled at them during the Medinian period:—

- Sūra ii. 6.<sup>6</sup> Allāh has sealed their hearts.  
 8. They try to deceive Allāh.  
 9.<sup>7</sup> In their hearts is sickness.  
 11.<sup>8</sup> Doers of evil.  
 13.<sup>9</sup> Satans.  
 15.<sup>10</sup> Those who buy error for guidance.  
 17.<sup>11</sup> Deaf, dumb and blind.  
 82.<sup>12</sup> Allāh has cursed them.  
 259. Their patrons are Tāgūt.<sup>13</sup>  
 iii. 177. They have murdered the prophets undeservedly.<sup>14</sup>  
 iv. 53. They devise lies against Allāh.<sup>15</sup>  
 v. 85. The bitterest foes of the Believers.  
 xlvii. 27. Those who turn their backs, after guidance has been manifested to them.  
 lvii. 15. Allāh is wrath with them.

In addition to these unflattering epithets we have to mention others of a more general character such as: "Those who disbelieve," which refers to Jews and Christians indiscriminately, or "the Possessors of the Book," those to whom the Book (or the "Knowledge") was given, and finally: "The worst of beasts in the eyes of Allāh are the unbelievers" (viii. 57).<sup>16</sup>

One of the most frequent of the derogatory descriptions of the Jews is that "Allāh has cursed them." With this Muhammed evidently wished to show off his acquaintance with those passages of

<sup>2</sup> Cf. R. E. J. 45. p. 191 sq.

<sup>3</sup> Hish. 296-8; 293.

<sup>4</sup> Ibid. 296.

<sup>5</sup> Q. ii. 49; cf. v. 73.

<sup>6</sup> Already in Meccan revelations, e. g., vi. 46; cf. xlii. 23 with the variation: "sealed his hearing," xiv. 22.

<sup>7</sup> Only in Medinian passages. This confirms the verses lxxiv. 31-34 to be Medinian. Cf. Isaiah i. 5.

<sup>8</sup> Cf. V. 201; v. 69 and xvii. 4, altogether about 30 times in the Qorān.

<sup>9</sup> See Goldziher, *Abhandlungen*, p. 106 sq.

<sup>10</sup> With the variation: "they barter my signs away for a little price," ii. 38, 73, 169; v. 48, 105; ix. 97, cf. Romans i. 25.

<sup>11</sup> Cf. V. 166, xlvii. 25. Ḥassān b. Thābit, *Dīwān*, p. 45, l. 8. فهم عمي من القرية بور

<sup>12</sup> With the variation: "the curse of Allāh is upon the infidels," ii. 83 and often, cf. iv. 55, xlvii. 25.

<sup>13</sup> Cf. V. 65.

<sup>14</sup> Cf. ii. 85, iii. 77; Lam. ii. 20; Matth. xxiii. 34.

<sup>15</sup> Cf. iii. 83; also vi. 21, 93, 145 (Meccan), etc.

<sup>16</sup> Refers also to the Jews; cf. iv. 54-5 and below.



the Pentateuch which deal with the subject,<sup>17</sup> in order to impress upon them the feeling that they were forsaken by God, but had now an opportunity of being redeemed if they acknowledged his mission.

After these preliminary remarks we now enter upon the discussion of the **Medinian revelations**, and begin with those which, form *Sūra ii.*, and which, according to both ancient and modern authors, represent the oldest speeches held in Medina. As to the first section (vv. 1-19a) the Moslim Commentators leave undecided whether it refers to the Jews or "Hypocrites,"<sup>18</sup> but since the latter are not mentioned in the whole of the *sūra* at all, it is probable that in the section in question the former are alluded to.<sup>19</sup> It is hardly likely that these "Hypocrites" were prominent at that time. Cant is always slow to detect. Those Medinians who, from political motives, had embraced Islām whilst waiting an opportunity to shake it off again, were careful to appear as good Moslems in Muhammed's eyes, and we cannot wonder if he was somewhat credulous. A positive evidence, however, also exists that the verses in question refer to the Jews.<sup>20</sup> Verse 6 is a reproduction of Isaiah vi. 6, and vv. 10-11 repeat the old reproach launched against the "Sons of Israel" in a Meccan revelation (xvii. 4). Finally the phrase (v. 12), "shall we believe as fools believe?" evidently reproduces words actually spoken by some Jews who ridiculed Muhammed, whilst the "Satans" (v. 13) represent the Rabbis who abetted such behaviour. The two parables, with which the address concludes, are similar in tendency to that which precedes.

The portion following (vv. 19b-37) is in no way connected with the address just discussed, since v. 24 in which the use of the minutest animals in illustration of parables<sup>21</sup> is justified, cannot refer to *mathals* mentioned in the verses 16-19a which deal with fire and lightning. Nöldeke is inclined to reckon this address as belonging to the Meccan period, but the renewed challenge (v. 21), to produce anything like the *Qorān*, is evidently directed against the Jews. In v. 25 Muhammed denounced certain practices of the Jews, it having appeared to him that they had broken laws laid down in the *Tōrah*.<sup>22</sup> This was the old reproach of having altered the Law, and it gave Muhammed an opportunity of saying that they "did evil on earth."<sup>23</sup> After this the story of Adam<sup>24</sup> is repeated with such details as could only be appreciated by a Jewish audience. The words: "We celebrate Thy praise and hallow Thee" (v. 28), recall the words of the "sanctification" in the Jewish prayer-book.<sup>25</sup> To this speech another is joined in which the *Banū Isrāil* are addressed (vv. 38-58), but where the **Jews** are meant. They are told that they "recite the Book." This probably refers to the custom of reading portions of the Bible during public worship. They are also reminded of the miraculous delivery of their ancestors from Pharaoh's bondage (vv. 46-47), of Moses' forty days' stay on the mountain, of the making of the golden calf (v. 48),<sup>26</sup> and the grant of the protecting clouds, the Mannah and the quails. Then follows a verse (55) which has puzzled all interpreters, and has not even yet been satisfactorily explained.<sup>27</sup> I now believe that the Commentators are right in considering that the 'city' mentioned in the verse refers to Jerusalem, whilst the words, "enter ye the gate worshipping, and say *hitta*, we might forgive you your sins," describe the moment when the High Priest on the Day of Atonement entered the "Holy of Holies" in the Temple.<sup>28</sup> The word *hitta* is probably taken from the formula of confession of sins recorded in the *Mishnāh* (*Yômā* iii. 8; iv. 2; vi. 2). The "alteration"<sup>29</sup> for which Jews are again blamed in connection with this matter is probably of liturgical character, since the formula just alluded to has a different text in the ordinary prayer-book, but Muhammed lost no opportunity of repeating the hackneyed reproach as often as possible.

<sup>17</sup> Levit. xxvi. 14-43; Deut. xxvii. 15-26; xxviii. 15-68.

<sup>18</sup> V. 13 permits a reference to the "Hypocrites," but see v. 71.

<sup>19</sup> Nöldeke, *Q.*, p. 128, refers v. 1-19a (قَدَسِير) to the "Hypocrites" and therefore places the address in the earlier part of the year 2 H. — V. 8-9 and 13 need not be referred to the *munāfiqūn*, because they can just as well aim at the Jews.

<sup>20</sup> Cf. V. 17 and vi. 46.

<sup>21</sup> Cf. Ch. VIII.

<sup>22</sup> Cf. Ch. VIII.

<sup>23</sup> This expression probably caused the address to receive its place in the *sūra*.

<sup>24</sup> Cf. vii. 16-18, v. 26-41, xvii. 23-63, xx. 115, xxviii. 71, 86.

<sup>25</sup> So called *Qadūshā*.

<sup>26</sup> See Geiger, *l. c.* pp. 154-5; cf. vii. 147-155. V. 52 was misunderstood by Geiger. In the *Qorān* it is the people who desire to see God, whilst Muhammed confounded Exod. xx. 19 with xxxiii. 18 and Numb. xvi. 33-35.

<sup>27</sup> My own previous endeavour (*Beiträge*, p. 54) included.

<sup>28</sup> Levit. xvi. 12; *Mishnā*, *Yômā*, v. 1. *Qor.* iv. 153: the same command is given in connection with the words we held over them the mountain at their compact.

<sup>29</sup> The Commentaries endeavour to explain the "alteration" in a different way.



The compilers of the *Qorân* have placed between this address and the following one a verse (59) which stands detached, and represents an attempt to bring Jews,<sup>30</sup> Christians and "Sabaeans" on a line with Believers. The same verse, though shorter by a few words, occurs again in a longer speech (S. v. 73), where it has equally little connection with the text. The verse can only be explained as a casual remark made at a moment when Muhammed relaxed his hostile attitude, and hoped to win dissenting monotheists by kindness. It is very improbable that Muhammed spoke in this way more than once, or later than the second year. The verse is, therefore, instructive to show the way in which the *Qorân* was compiled. It was kept in memory, and communicated to the compilers in two slightly varying versions, which both had places allotted to them in Medinian speeches. There can be no doubt that the verses v. 71-88<sup>31</sup> also belong here, containing, as they do, a call to the prophet to preach, which resembles that in the earlier Meccan period. There was ample reason for the repetition of that call. In Mecca Muhammed had preached only to his own people. The Medinian audience, however, was less homogeneous, and included numerous Jews and Judæo-Arabs. Lest these should imagine that his ministry was addressed exclusively to the pagan inhabitants of Medina, the "Messenger" is commanded to preach (v. 17); for if he did not do so, Allâh would not hold him free from men. The next verse shows that these words were also meant for the "Possessors of the Writ," who were sadly in want of a new message, since they neglected to "stand fast by the Tôrâh and the Gospel and what had been revealed to them by their Lord." The preacher is quite aware that his appeal will only increase their rebellion and unbelief, but must not feel annoyed at it (*ibid.*). As to the Jews, they had, in spite of the covenant made with them, either disbelieved, or murdered their prophets<sup>32</sup> (v. 74), being struck with blindness and deafness (75). In a similar manner the Christians fell into disbelief by identifying Allâh with the *Masih*, whilst the latter had only taught them to worship Allâh, his and their Lord (v. 76). Allâh cannot be One of Three, but only One (v. 77), and the Son of Mary is but a Messenger like those before him (v. 79). One sees clearly that v. 73 forms a complete contrast to all verses just discussed, and owes its place among them only to some accident. The rest of the speech is in the same tone, except that in the last verse (85) the Jews are styled the bitterest foes of the Believers, whilst the Christians stand as "nearest in love to the Believers." This spark of kind feeling towards the Christians is undoubtedly due to the gratitude Muhammed felt for the King of Abyssinia for having protected a number of early Meccan Believers in Islâm. Muhammed perhaps flattered himself that this hospitality was only the beginning of still closer relations, and possibly an ultimate acceptance of Islâm. It is further probable that the words in question were also meant for the Christian Arabs, some of whom had been moved to tears when hearing recitations from the *Qorân* (v. 86). This assertion was probably based on a real incident out of which Muhammed made as much capital as possible (v. 87-88).

The address (S. ii. 60-77) which seems to come next consists of various sections, each of which begins with the phrase: We "took" a covenant with you (vv. 60, 77, 78, 87).<sup>33</sup> The whole sermon records laws given to the Israelites, but the speaker first recalls their transgression which brought about the transformation of the desecrators of the Sabbath into apes (v. 61). The interpretation of this verse has caused considerable embarrassment both to the traditionists and modern authors. Geiger has remarked that in Jewish writings no trace is to be found of such transformation.<sup>34</sup> The Talmud speaks of the transformation of a class of sinners into apes and evil spirits,<sup>35</sup> but I doubt whether Muhammed knew of this legend. The matter seems to me to rest on a misunderstanding on the part of the compilers, or those who copied the revelations from the original notes. The word in question, *qiradatan* [قِرْدَاتٍ], is recorded in the dictionaries as plural of *qird*, meaning an ape. If we read *qirdân* [قِرْدَانٍ], "vermin" (and in the architype of that passage the difference between these two readings was probably difficult to distinguish), the verse would be a mistaken rendition of Exod.

<sup>30</sup> As to the term *الذِينَ هَادُوا* see Ch. II.; *Beitraege*, p. 16.

<sup>31</sup> V. 73 on account of v. 72, "Possessors of the Writ."

<sup>32</sup> Cf. ii. 85, iii. 177, and above.

<sup>33</sup> V. 77 has "the children of Israel;" v. 87 repeats: "and we held the mountain over you" (cf. iv. 153), which is taken from the Midrâsh that God when giving the law on Sinai took the children as a pledge (*Shir Hashirim R.*)

<sup>34</sup> L. c. p. 184.

<sup>35</sup> Sanhedrin, fol. 109vo.



xvi. 20, 24. The mistake was probably caused by the circumstance that the transformation of living human beings into apes seemed much more fitting than into worms. Now the reason of the transformation is, in the *Qorán*, disobedience in connection with Sabbath, which is the same cause as mentioned in the Pentateuch. Instead of the food left over night, Muhammed has the disobedient persons transformed. The words, "those who go too far," are perhaps a rendering of Exod. xvi. 29, and refer to a given space of ground in the sense of the Rabbinical interpretation (*Mishnáh, Erúbin*, ii. 3). The tales invented by the Moslim traditionists for the purpose of explaining the verse do not concern us now any further.

It is rather surprising to observe the knowledge which Muhammed suddenly betrayed regarding the ordinance of the "red heifer" (v. 68-69), as this practice had fallen into desuetude long before his time. Whoever taught him about it probably also explained the purpose of that ritual. Muhammed, however, seems to have forgotten this, and confounded the cow of Numb. ch. xix. with the calf of Deut. xxi. 1-9. The reason for reproducing this law in a very broad dialogue seems to be that it left an impression, that even Moses himself had occasionally to ask information from God (Numb. ix. 8 and ch. xxvii.). — Attached to this passage is the reproach (v. 69) that the people had "hardened their heart so that it was like a stone or even harder for verily of stones are some from which streams burst forth, etc.," which comparison is but a reflex of Exod. xvii. 6; Numb. xx. 10.<sup>26</sup>

"Some of you," Muhammed continued (v. 70), "hear the speech of Alláh, then they alter the same." This verse stands in connection with another (v. 87) which probably belongs to the same sermon, and contain the following words: "They say 'we have heard,' but disobey (*sami'nd wa-áqainá*)."

On a somewhat later occasion (S. iv. 48) we read the same reproach, viz., some Jews (*min alladina hádú*) alter the words from their places<sup>27</sup> and say: *we have heard but disobey*, and hear! that which cannot be heard,<sup>28</sup> etc. (49). But had they said: *We have heard and obey*,<sup>29</sup> and hear! and look upon us! it would have been better for them and more upright, etc.

The verses just quoted throw a flood of light upon the way which Muhammed had pursued to gain his knowledge of the Pentateuch. The reproach that the Jews had altered the Law becomes a standing phrase, but the strange rebuke that they should have bluntly admitted shirving disobedience to the divine command is much more than a reminiscence of the frequent murmurings of the people of Israel in the desert, and the censures passed upon them in consequence. We have here a most interesting misinterpretation of the words of the Pentateuch (Deut. v. 27) *wesháma'nú we'ásinu*<sup>30</sup> "and we will hear and do [it]." Muhammed had, on some previous occasion, heard, or possibly read, these words, and from their resemblance to Arabic words thought that he understood them. He therefore identified '*ásinu*' with Arabic *áqainá*<sup>31</sup> which gives the opposite sense. Now it appears that some years later Muhammed became aware of his mistake. To correct it was, however, impossible, since the true version did not suit his purposes at all. He therefore replaced the faulty word by "we obey," placing this avowal into the mouth of the Believers "who believe in Alláh, His angels, His Books, and His Messengers (we make no difference between any of His Messengers) and they say: We hear and obey" (S. ii. 285), etc. The Commentators see in this verse an allusion to those Medinian pilgrims who had an interview with Muhammed shortly before the Hijra,<sup>32</sup> and invited him to exchange his place of abode with theirs. It is, however, clear that Muhammed owed the correction of his mistake to some converted Jew. The verse in question can not therefore have been revealed till the year 8 or 9 of the Hijra, or shortly before Muhammed's death.

<sup>26</sup> Cf. v. 16.

<sup>27</sup> من مواضعه. The word *الكلم* is according to AlDáni one of those in which the *Alif* prolongation is omitted. AlBeidhāvi also records the reading *الكلم*; see v. 16.

<sup>28</sup> *فبصر سمع* Palmer: "Do thou listen without hearing" does not render the original accurately.

<sup>29</sup> Cf. ii. 235, see below; cf. v. 10; xxiv. 50.

<sup>30</sup> Likewise instructive for the pronunciation of sibilants: see Ch. VI.

<sup>31</sup> Cf. V. 247 where Moses says to the Israelites *هل عسىتم*, and xlvii. 24.

<sup>32</sup> See I. Hish. pp. 236-238. S. v. 11 seems to refer to the same persons.



The next address (vv. 98-115) contains the verse on which the principle of Abrogation<sup>43</sup> is based, and touches also upon a subject which formed an important factor in Muhammed's subsequent conduct towards the Jews, *viz.*, his discussions with the Rabbis. These controversies have been preserved in a large number of traditions, but many of them were made in order to serve as explanations for verses in the *Qorân* not accounted for otherwise. By comparing himself to Moses (v. 102) who also had to listen to questions asked in a rebellious spirit,<sup>44</sup> Muhammed removed the chance of any disrespect which might have resulted from such questions, and turned the affair into another proof of his prophethip. "Do you," he asked, "wish to question your Messenger, as Moses was questioned in former times?" The Jewish custom of restricting the use of the name of God,<sup>45</sup> alluded to above, led the Prophet to make a grave charge of irreverence (v. 108). He represented this self-imposed restriction as a law forbidding the name of God in places of worship, and took the same opportunity of intimating the necessity of changing the *Qibla* from Jerusalem to Mecca (v. 109).<sup>46</sup> In another address delivered for a similar purpose, corrupted Christianity and Judaism are contrasted with Abraham's pure monotheism.<sup>47</sup> On the ground of this supposition, and in spite of the anticipated objection of "the fools among men" (v. 130), the alteration of the *Qibla* was made law (vv. 138-147).<sup>48</sup>

With v. 163 commences a series of ritual prescriptions<sup>49</sup> which comprise things lawful or unlawful for food, the law of retaliation or the acceptance of a fine instead, the rules concerning the will of a dying person, and the regulations for the fast of *Ramadhân*. The prohibition of "eating" solid food during this month concludes with a metaphorical admonition not to "eat your wealth among you vainly" (v. 187).<sup>50</sup>

There can be no doubt about the date of the group of regulations (introduced by the phrase: "They will ask thee"),<sup>51</sup> which now follows, because one of them refers to the raid which Abd Allâh b. Jahsh undertook at the behest of Muhammed two months before the battle of Badr, towards the end of the month of Rajab. Muhammed saw himself obliged to condone the violation of the sacred month as best he could. It is more difficult to fix the right date of the regulations contained in the vv. 224-243,<sup>52</sup> as it seems that they were placed here solely on account of their legislative character.

The next address (vv. 274-268) was, like the preceding one, delivered with a view to teach contempt of death in the struggle with the Meccans whom Muhammed had now resolved to attack. Believers must devote their lives as well as their fortunes to the holy cause. The various paragraphs of the sermon are illustrated with instances from the records of the past. Verse 244 evidently stands in connection with 261, both containing recollections of the vision of Ezek. ch. xxxvii.,<sup>53</sup> and teaching the revival of the dead by the will of Allâh. The sketch of the election of Saul which is confounded with the story of Gideon, and of David's combat with Goliath, have a similar tendency. A set off against the rather feeble tone of the exhortation is the fervent style of verse 256 which, under the name "Verse of the Throne," is held as one of the holiest revelations of the *Qorân*.<sup>54</sup> The speaker reminds his hearers of Abraham who informed his aggressor without fear, that it was Allâh who revived the dead, and was therefore favoured with the vision related in Gen. ch. xv. This

<sup>43</sup> See Ch. I.<sup>44</sup> Probably alluding to Exod. v. 12-21; Numb. xiv. 3; Ch. XVI., etc.<sup>45</sup> It is hardly justifiable to refer the verse to the Ka'ba and the endeavours of the Qoreish to prevent Muhammed from holding a service there in the sixth year after the Hijra. The text speaks of "places of worship." The phrase,

أَنْ يَذْكُرَ فِيهَا اسْمَهُ, recalls Exod. xx. 24.

<sup>46</sup> See Nöldeke, p. 131.<sup>47</sup> V. 128-135; V. 129, cf. 134.<sup>48</sup> Vv. 148-157 are justly placed by Nöldeke after the battle of Uhud, but v. 153 belongs to a much later revelation on pilgrimage (see also vv. 186-199). Muhammed not only performed the ceremonies himself when he made the pilgrimage in the year 7, but encouraged others to follow his example. See Moslim quoted by Sprenger, III. 522, rem. As to V. 154 see I. Hish. p. 382.<sup>49</sup> Nöldeke only mentions three, but there are four.<sup>50</sup> Nöldeke regards V. 184 as a fragment of a long revelation, but this is not necessary.<sup>51</sup> See AlBeidh., etc. Sprenger, III. 107 sq. Nöldeke detaches vv. 212-3 but without valid reason, as they form an introduction to v. 214. The subtlety of the discussion is characteristic of the situation.<sup>52</sup> V. 241, see Nöldeke, p. 134.<sup>53</sup> See Palmer, and Beitraege, p. 80.<sup>54</sup> V. 257<sup>a</sup> should be compared with Abôth, II. 23: Make not thy prayer compulsion.



tale, however, is in so far modified, as "the two birds," although divided in many pieces, are brought to life again. The importance of spending one's fortune for the purposes of the holy war is finally illustrated by two parables.<sup>55</sup>

The section vv. 269-281 hardly offers any clue as to its date. The repeated admonition to give alms only explains the reason of its place after a speech of similar tendency. V. 271 seems to be an answer to some Jewish scoffer who had told the fugitives that Islām would keep them in poverty for ever. "The devil" is one of those mentioned in v. 13. The allusion that the evil-doers have no helpers (*ansār*, v. 273) is evidently an attempt to draw the Median Moslems, who had received the honouring title of *Ansār*, away from their Jewish allies. The latter Muhammed was not bound to guide (v. 274). These words perhaps belong to the period following the battle of Badr, when affairs already began to assume a more settled aspect. The regulations with regard to money transactions mentioned in the same speech seem to belong to a time, when the spoils of victory had increased the wealth of the Believers.

(To be continued.)

# AN UNPUBLISHED XVIIIITH CENTURY DOCUMENT ABOUT THE ANDAMANS.

BY R. C. TEMPLE.

SINCE communicating Capt. John Ritchie's remarks on the Nicobars to this *Journal* under the title of "An Unpublished Document about the Nicobars, *ante*, Vol. XXIX. p. 341, I have discovered that it formed part of a MS. in the India Office entitled "*Remarks upon the Coast and Bay of Bengal, the outlets of the Ganges and interjacent rivers, according to Surveys by John Ritchie Hydrographical Surveyor to the Honourable the United India Company.*" This MS. now numbered C. 10, is endorsed on the cover as follows:— Captain Ritchie's Nautical Remarks for which I have given a Receipt to the Secretary the 25th March 1820. Jas. Horsburgh." It relates to the work done by Ritchie in 1771.

The contents of the MS. are as follows:—

Contents.		PAGE
No. 1.	Point Palmiras, and the Road of Ballasore, with the tract of Ships into it...	1-17
	The Braces, and Entrance of Hugly River, with remarks on the Pilotage...	17-29
	Rivers, from Hugly to Rymongull, and their outlets, <i>etc.</i> ...	30-46
No. 2.	Rivers from Rymongull to the Megna, with the nature of the Coast and Islands, at the east corner of the Bay ...	47-67
	Coast of Chittigong with the Islands shoals, <i>etc.</i> , of Kirttupdea ...	67-72
	Tempests, to which the head of the Bay is subject, with two examples of their force and effects ...	73-80
	Present state of the navigation of the Bay, with remarks upon Chittigong, considered as a place of shelter for ships ...	80-84
	Coast of Aracan ...	85-94
	Coast of Ava, Cape Negrais, <i>etc.</i> , <i>etc.</i> ...	94-104
No. 3.	Preparis and Cocco Islands ...	105-110
	Great Andaman Islands, together with the situation of Narcandam with respect to Negrais, <i>etc.</i> ...	111-126
	Little Andaman Island ...	127-129
	Carnicobar, and Nicobar Islands, with the fine Harbour Noncovery ...	130-143
	Some remarks on Particular Places, at the West side of the Bay of Bengal ...	145-152

<sup>55</sup> Vv. 263, 265, 267, see Ch. VIII.



For the present purpose I shall content myself with communicating the contents of pp. 111-129 relating to the Andamans and Narcondam, nowadays included in the Administration of the Andaman and Nicobar Islands.

To his general volume Capt. Ritchie prefixes some quaint introductory remarks in the self-depreciatory fashion of his day, which are here reproduced:— "Prefatory to the remarks, it is necessary to observe, that the first part relative to the head of the Bay of Bengal; from point Palmiras to the southern extremity of the Coast of Chittigong, are observations, made in the Course of a regular Survey: it is hoped therefore, that these will be found tolerably complete, the latter part, which begins with the coast of Aracan, contains broken remarks upon a running survey: these are very lame, but if the writer should ever be enabled to make any addition to them, the most trivial parts shall be expunged, to give place to others of greater importance. As to the language, *the Will must be taken for the deed*, the writer being very sensible of his inability that way. Writing is neither his talent, nor profession, and the remarks, in *their present form*, are only the work of a few days."

**Great Andaman Island together with the Situation of Narcondam with respect to Negrais, etc.**

**Great Andaman Island**,<sup>1</sup> is situated from 11° 20', to 13° 35' north Latitude, being 135 miles long, and how broad I cannot tell; at the South end where I had opportunity to examine it, the width at a mean is about 20 miles, but towards the middle it must be a great deal broader. The Island is generally mountainous, and in some places very high, particularly a double peak'd hill at the east side [**Saddle Peak**], which I have seen at 70 miles distance the whole Island is covered, or rather loaded, with **Timber**, except where the hills are nearly perpendicular, and there the rains washing the earth down, shews it to be of a reddish colour.

There is, no doubt, continued soundings between the **Cocos**, and **Andaman**; altho we had one cast with no ground, at 80 fathams. The eastern part, of the north end of the Island, bears from the middle of little **Cocco** S. 25 W<sup>t</sup>, and the distance is 30 miles. I do not here mean, the little Island [**Landfall Island**], at the north end of Andaman, which lies in the same direction from Cocco, but the distance to it is only 23 miles: it is said that there is a very good passage [**Clough Passage**] between Andaman and this Island, but I can say nothing of it from my own knowledge. The bank which joins Cocco's and Andaman, extends about 25 miles to the eastward of the Islands, in the parallel of the passage, but along the east side, of the Andaman, there is no soundings at the northern part; except perhaps, very near the land, where it has not yet been sounded. The course of the shore for about 20 miles from the north end of Andaman along the East side, is S.  $\frac{1}{2}$  E<sup>t</sup> nearly: this part seems to be broken into divisions, if we might judge from the two mouths, or inlets, which appear upon the eastern shore [**Cadell Bay** and **Port Cornwallis**]. The land hereabout is high, and very scraggy, rising almost perpendicular from the water. In the Latitude 13° north, there is a very fine inlet [**Stewart Sound**], with two Islands at its mouth; the northernmost of which is pretty large and rises gradually on all sides, to a moderate hill; it is every where covered with trees, very thick; and at a distance, appears as if only covered with grass. The Southern Island is very small, with open scraggy trees upon it. The inlet bends round to the southward, behind a point upon the left hand side of entrance, and seems to promise a good Harbour [**Bacon Bay**]. It was my intention, to examine this place closely, altho' I had much to do, and little time to do it in; but happening to come to it in the evening, and there being no soundings in the offing, nor any probability, that we could get into anchoring depth before night, or rather before dark; we were obliged to ply in the offing, untill morning, and daylight shew'd us, that we were drove 10 miles to the southward by a Current: this untoward circumstance, was unlucky enough at this juncture, and we endeavoured to repair it by Plying to windward, for two days, and nights, under every sail the Vessel could bear; it was all in vain, the wind and current was too much to struggle with; and

<sup>1</sup> [The five main islands forming to this day "the Great Andaman" were to Ritchie all one island. — Ed.]



the Weather became so threatening, that we were obliged to provide for the safety of the vessel and ourselves, in case of an easterly gale. — Just to the southward of the inlet, the land juts out, into a round point to the eastward, and rises into a high steep hill [*Mt. Diavolo*]; if the depth be moderate there will be found, a good Anchorage by the shore, between this point and the inlet, for the S. W. monsoon; and indeed, this inlet might be as easily examined, in that monsoon, as in the northern one.

Before I proceed, it may be usefull to settle a point, which hitherto has been only guess'd at; I mean the Situation of the Island *Narcandam*: this is a high mountain, rising almost perpendicular out of the sea, and is used as a mark, to direct ships from the southward, for *Negraia*, or *Syriam River*. The north Peak of the Saddle hill, upon *Andaman*, we observed to be in the Latitude  $13^{\circ} 10' N.$ , it bears S.  $13^{\circ}$  wt. distance 50 miles, from little *Cocco Island*, and by collecting the Meridian distances, from Island to Island, between this peak and *Cape Negraia*, as I have stated the Situations, it will appear, that the whole meridian distance between these places, is 72 miles; and that they lie SSW., and NNE. from one another, very nearly. The observed Latitude of the Peak of *Narcandam* is  $13^{\circ} 23'$  North, consequently the difference of Latitude, between the Peak of the Saddle, and it, is only 13 miles. The journal of Wednesday 9<sup>th</sup> of January 1771, Says, that at noon the Latitude observed was  $13^{\circ} 32' N.$ , The Peak of *Narcandam* bearing S.  $79^{\circ} E.$ , and the Peak of the Saddle upon *Andaman* S.  $59^{\circ} W.$  By this Position, the meridian distance, between the Vessel and *Narcandam*, was 46 miles: and between the vessel, and Saddle 37 miles: making in all 83 miles, for the meridian distance of the Peaks; and by the difference of the Latitudes, they must lie,<sup>2</sup> N.  $81^{\circ}$  east, and opposite, distance 84 Geo. miles. It may be worth observing, that by a run from the north end of *Andaman*, to *Narcandam*, and estimating the distance of the vessel, from the shore at each Island, our log gave 82 miles, for the distance between the Islands, which was exceedingly neer the truth. As a proof that the saddle upon *Andaman* is very high;<sup>3</sup> I shall just observe, that the journal of the just mentioned day says, that at Sunset the peak of the Saddle bore S.  $69^{\circ} 30' W.$ , and that of *Narcandam*, EbS. 14 or 15 miles distant, at this rate we must have been 70 miles from the Saddle at the time. Since the difference of Meridians of the *Cape Negraia*, and the Saddle hill of *Andaman*, is 72 miles; and that of *Narcandam*, and Saddle hill 83 miles; it follows, that the meridian distance between *Cape Negraia*, and *Narcandam*, is only 11 miles: and so much, the latter is to the eastward of the former; the bearing, therefore, is N.  $4^{\circ}$  West and opposite, and the distance 152 miles. I might here give the Situation of *Syriam bar*, from *Narcandam*; but as I have already said, that the information I have, about the extent of the Coast of *Pegu*, is only that *French manuscript plan*; it is, I think, the best way to let every Navigator, settle this point for himself, 'till better authorities can be obtained.

From the elbow before mentioned, in Latitude  $12^{\circ} 50'$  north, to what we have called *Diligent Strait*, the course of the Shore, is South a little Westerly; and in the Latitude  $12^{\circ} 38'$ , there is a fair bay not very deep [*Cuthbert Bay*], but the land is high all about it, and would be a tollerable good anchorage in the SW. monsoon: from the South point of this Bay, begins a fine bank of Sand, and mud; which runs off SE. upon this bank, we had the first soundings about the east side of the Island; (except at the north end which I have mentioned) and the depth, at about 2 miles from the land, is between 20, and 25 fathams; it is consequently, fine anchoring ground, in the SW. monsoon.

Between the Latitudes  $11^{\circ} 55'$ , and  $12^{\circ} 15'$ , north, lies a great Cluster of Islands,<sup>4</sup> detached from *Andaman*, by a Passage, which in the plan, is mark'd, *Diligent Strait*.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>2</sup> Author's f. note. — Major Rennell, Surveyor Gen<sup>l</sup>, informed me that he had made a mistake, in the copies of my plans which were sent to Europe; and had placed *Narcandam*, a whole degree from its proper situation.

<sup>3</sup> [Saddle Peak is 2,400 ft. and *Narcandam* 2,336 ft. — Ed.]

<sup>4</sup> [Originally named *Ritchie's Archipelago* but now unhappily *Andaman Archipelago*. — Ed.]

<sup>5</sup> Author's f. note. — It was the *Diligent Snow* we had; She was once a packet boat to England.



This place is an excellent harbour for ships of all demensions, at any time of the year; the narrow of the Strait, is in the Latitude  $12^{\circ} 10'$  north, and is less than a league over; the southern part is a Spacious Bay, fit for the whole Navy of England to Ride in, the northern part has three small Islands, with a spit of hard ground in it, but nevertheless is a very good harbour, which we experienced for five days in very bad weather. As this circumstance gave us the only opportunity we ever had, of seeing any of the natives of Andaman, I shall relate it nearly as it stands [in] my *Journal*. On the 16<sup>th</sup> of January 1771, at 3 in the afternoon, we anchored in the northern part of Diligent Strait, in 19 fathom water, and soft ground. At 1 o'clock of the morning, of the 17<sup>th</sup>, Came on, a very heavy squall of wind, and rain, attended with much Thunder, and lightning, from the S. E. quarter; the strength of the squall, continued about half an hour, at which time the wind abated, but the rain continued; and in short it seems that for all that day, and the two succeeding ones, it rained without intermission,\* and, at times, the wind was boisterous and squally. During all this time we saw no boats, nor was there the least appearance of houses, or cultivation, any where upon the land about the place; in the nights indeed, the shore was lighted up with hundreds of Torches, which made an appearance, as if we were in the middle of a great Lake, surrounded by houses lighted up. The morning of Sunday the 20<sup>th</sup> was fine weather, and at 8 o'clock a Canoe paddled off, from one of the eastern Islands, and came very near us; we made what signs we could to them, to come on board; this they took little notice of: and fearing lest they should give us the slip, I order'd our boat to be hauled up, at the side opposite to that where the Canoe was and manned with European Seamen, the moment the people in the Canoe saw our boat put off, they took to their paddles, and with all their might, pulled towards the nearest land: they were soon overtaken, and two of them jumped into the sea, and swam to the shore with amazing swiftness, the other two (for there were only four men) staid in the Canoe, and struck at our people with their paddles. An old lascar, who had been a prisoner in Aracan, and who pretended to understand the Birmah language, at his own request, was sent in the boat as a linguist; this man went into the Canoe, and stood between the two people; but while he spoke to the man before him, the other behind, took up a torch made up of Rushes and Dammer,<sup>†</sup> and after blowing it up as much as he could, held it to the Lascar's bare breech; the poor old fellow roared out in a horrible manner, and leaped into the sea, to cool his posteriors: the boats crew could easily have prevented the firey attack, made upon the lascar's hinder parts; but a little mischief and a great deal of mirth suited them best. When the two Strangers were brought on board, surely never were people more terrified; they were two lads about 14 years of age; and no doubt, thought that they would be immediately sacrificed: despair was strongly painted in their faces, and neither of them could support their weight, but fell upon the deck, as if they had lost the use of their limbs; a very little time however, brought them too; fear, and terror, gave place to wonder, and amazement! their countenances cleared up, and we could soon perceive, that the observations they made, were mixed with a degree of pleasure. Boiled rice was offered them to eat, but this they only turned over with their hands, and certainly, did not know what it was: I then thought of coconuts, and had some open'd for them; this they eat greedily of; but I observed that of one nut, which was not opened in their Presence, they would not eat; this convinced me, that they dreaded poison. They soon found the use of their legs, and being convinced that we intended to do them no injury, began to walk about, and stare at every thing in the vessel; the difference of colour between the Europeans, and lascars, was a matter that took up much of their attention. Between 10, and 11 o'clock, another Canoe paddled off towards us, and when they came near, we made the two lads call to the men in it, and they soon came alongside, and were only two, an elderly man, and a lad; the latter came in immediately, but the old fellow made some difficulty; two lascars went over to help him up, and got him upon the *Bends* of the vessel; but he turned short about, and caught each of the lascars by the neck, under his arms; and plunged into the Sea! they went down altogether, for about a minute of time,

\* Author's f. note. — This will appear to be strange weather, for the Bay of Bengal, at this time of the year.

† Author's f. note. — There must be a great deal of this resinous substance produced upon the island.



and then the lascarrs came up on each side of the old man at some distance; they said he was the devil and much stronger than 10 men. The old man swam about for a little time, and then went forward to the Cable, and came up of his own accord. He stared at every thing, as much as the young ones had done, and several times tried to pull the ring bolts out of the decks; and roar'd, and whoop'd like the American wariours. Sometimes he laid his hands upon the great guns, crying Coo,—Coo,—Coo. At 11 o'clock we spied two large Canoes, paddling off, from where the two men swam on shore, these had 8 men in each; and we soon perceived, that they were war boats; for the upper end of their paddles, were bows; they being in this form <sup>s</sup> ~. They came pretty near, but not alongside, and were carefull to expose their paddles to our sight, as little as possible; we had no doubt, but they came with an intent to rescue the two lads that we took in the morning; however they shewed no menacing Signs; but lay by at small distance, and talked to the two lads; and sometimes with the old man, who now became perfectly satisfied with his treatment. I had given those we took, peices of coarse cloth to wrap round them; for these people were all stark naked: and when they seemed desirous of going into the Canoes, to their friends, they were permitted to do so; but they no sooner got into the Canoes, then they threw the peeces of cloth into the old canoe that they were taken in; and leaving it behind, they pulled toward the shore, with great swiftness. The old man and his comerade were still on board, nor did they seem under the least apprehension of being detained; but they laughed very heartily to see the others in such a fright. I gave them some nails, and bits of old Iron, which pleased them much; and about 3 in the afternoon, they went into the Canoe, and tried hard to pull the Chain plates from the vessels side, they went astern when this would not do, and dragged strongly, and long, at the rudder chains; but these were too well fixed; and at last, they went towards the shore at an easy rate, looking at their nails, and singing all the way.

There were only 20 in all of these **Andamaners**, which we saw; and all of them were **Cafferries**; <sup>9</sup> it wooley heads be the characteristic of **cafferries**: their noses were not flat, like the Africans; but they had thick lips, as these have; and if all the inhabitants of this great Island, be of the same cast; it is not to be doubted but they are a race of people, very distinct from those of the adjacent countrys.

Trifling as this account is, it is all I am able to give concernin[g] the natives of Andaman; for no other of them came near us, while we were about the Island, and our time was so very limited that we could not enter into any close enquiries; besides, at that time I did suppose, that the Island would have afterwards been further enquired into, respecting its harbours, produce, inhabitants, and every thing else, necessary to be known.

The coast of Andaman Island, from Diligent Strait, to the South end, is S. 15° degrees, West; the land is regularly high, untill near the south end, and there are several inlets upon this side, the most remarkable of which, is not far from the south end, in Latitude 11° 30' north; and as we afterwards found, that there is another inlet upon the west side, nearly opposite to this, it should seem that the Island is cut thro' here; <sup>10</sup> at any rate, I think, it promises a good harbour, and I hope some one will in time Enquire into this matter.

At the South east corner of Andaman, lie three small Islands [**Cinque Islands**], but very high, and like the rest, covered with trees; they are nearly in a line SbW., and NbE., the near[est] being about 2 miles from Andaman; we went through this pass [**Manner's Strait**], (as our tract shews) and had no ground at 40 fathams; there was a strong current in it, which look'd like brakers; I mention this, that any ship taken short by bad weather, or otherwise, may run thro without fear, if there be occasion. The south end of Andaman, is beset with great rocks; which however, do not extend to any great distance from the land, for the soundings here, as in other places, I must refer to the tract prick'd in my plan; and hope the Navigators who may have occasion to come this way, will not hold me accountable for any changes of depth, they may happen to meet with at a distance from that tract: they will remember, that soundings are very variable, at small distances in rocky ground,

<sup>9</sup> [This is roughly the form of the Andaman bow when unstrung. — Ed.]

<sup>10</sup> [Old Anglo-Indian for Kafir, Caffre, meaning any black man, negro or negroid. — Ed.]

<sup>11</sup> [He means here Macpherson's Strait, dividing Rutland Island from S. Andaman. — Ed.]



and that our knowledge of this Island is very superficial. The land of Andaman, at the South end rises gently on all sides, to a moderate high Peak [The Whale Back], with some hummocks about it; the whole is evenly covered with trees, and has a very pleasant appearance. At the S. W. corner of the Island, and detached from it, by a Channell 4 miles broad, lies a patch of great black rocks under water; on which, we had no less than 7 fathams water, with sudden overfalls of two or three fathams. I have marked our tract over it, and it does not appear to be dangerous; however, I wish that ships may avoid it, at all times, because, among such great pointed rocks, there may be some much nearer the surface of the water, than any that we met with. The channel between this bank and the Island, is fair soft ground, having 13 or 14 fathams water in it. NWbW. from the south west corner of Andaman, lies a fine low Island covered with trees; it is a league long, and two miles broad; and if we may judge from the multitude of lights seen upon the shore at night, it is well inhabited; this Island is marked **N. Sentinel** in the plan; and is between the Latitudes  $11^{\circ} 32'$ , and  $35'$  N. a ship may anchor in very good ground, at the east side of it, in the S. W. monsoon, should there be occasion. Between the Latitudes  $11^{\circ} 24'$ , and  $11^{\circ} 41'$  N., at the west side of Andaman, there are eight Islands of different magnitudes [The Labyrinth Islands], for the Situation of all which I refer to the plan, only observing that the land is much indented here, and there appears to be good harbours for the N. E. monsoon; particularly where  $\frac{33}{27}$  is marked [Port Mouat]; and a little farther to the southward, within side the Islands where the *Inlet*, or what I suppose to be a passage thro' the Andaman is [Macpherson's Strait]. I have traversed the whole ground over, westward of these Islands, as far to the northward, as the Latitude  $12^{\circ}$  N., and have marked the soundings regularly, upon the Plan, to which I must refer for the depths, and only observe that the bank is fine soft oozy ground. The land about this place is not so mountainous as at the east side; it appears hummocky, and Scraggy, with fine redish cliffs near the shore [Port Campbell]; but the whole is covered with trees, except where the hills are too steep for any thing to grow upon them. We saw here multitudes of lights every night, and I have no doubt but the whole of this great Island is well inhabited; but what is somewhat singular, we saw not any thing like a house or habitation upon the Island, nor so much of a landing place clear of wood, as the men could stand upon: I do not mean to insinuate that there is no such thing; on the contrary, there must, I think, be plenty of both; but the nature of our trip would not allow time for minute enquiries, as I have already mentioned. We were obliged to leave Great Andaman, without making farther discoveries about it, the gale set in strong at N. N. E., and obliged us to *beat*, under close reef'd Topsails against a current, with the Vessel laid gunwall too; so that in twenty four hours we could not gain a league; and it being then the 29<sup>th</sup> of January, it became necessary to proceed to the southward, in pursuance of our orders, but before I quit the subject of this Island, I shall, I hope, be excused, if I offer the following observations.

And first the great Andaman is, evidently, an Island of a very different nature, from what it has hitherto been represented; for all had agreed, to make it a place where no soundings could be obtained, and consequently no anchorage had about it. The natives it was said, were a terrible cast of people, who came out in their Canoes and attempted to board every ship that came near the Island; that they shot their arrows to a great distance, and seldom missed their mark. Now very little, if any thing at all of this is true; for except at the east side, between the Latitude  $12^{\circ} 30'$ , and  $13^{\circ} 30'$  North, we have had soundings every where near the land; Anchorage, we had almost every night, when we chose to bring too, and that was very often. The people may be dexterous perhaps, but they are not fierce; and we could observe, by their observations upon our guns, that they knew the use of them; and had, no doubt, been taught it in a manner, that does no great honour to those, who were their preceptors.<sup>11</sup> Until a farther examination of this Island takes place, the only use my remarks can be of, is confined to ships in distress, or those who would skreen themselves for a few days, from tempestuous weather: in such cases, they may be very usefull; and to such, I recommend them, but there are other matters, not less worthy of attention, altho we can only guess at them; I mean, the probability of getting excellent timber for building, upon this Island. Timber is an

<sup>11</sup> [Probably Malays. The italics are the Author's. —Ed.]



article, which all the Company's Settlements about the Bay, are destitute of, especially the kinds which serve the purposes of ship-building and Fortification. **Andaman** offers fair, to supply this article plentifully, if we may judge by the quantity it is loaded with; there is variety of grounds upon the Island, high, and low; and who would doubt of there being variety of Timber, surely it is an object worth enquiring into; considering the vast sums, sent annually to Pegu, for this very article; and the disadvantageous, not to say dishonourable manner, in which **the Peguers** treat us. If ever the French take possession of **Andaman**, we shall then see the value of it; the Island in general, is naturally disposed to be fortified and a little art, properly bestowed, may produce *Moora's*, and *Harannah's* enough; it is difficult to fix an Idea of the importance of this Island, in the minds of those who have not seen it; and yet its situation and extent bespeaks attention, when considered in a political light; for who does not know that our *restless Neighbours* want only ground to build their *Indea* projects upon: there is here ground enough, to occasion subsequent differences; and a *Mauritius* in the Bay of Bengal might become troublesome.

**Little Andaman Island** is separated from the *Great one*, by a passage 9 leagues broad; I have mark'd it **Duncan's passage**, because a Captain Duncan is said to have sailed thro', between these Islands many years ago. The small Islands and soundings in this passage, are marked upon my Plan, to which I must refer, as I must also, for the situation of the **southern Sentinel**. The Island itself, is situated between the Latitudes  $10^{\circ} 30'$ , and  $10^{\circ} 52'$  north, being full 7 leagues long, and barely three leagues broad, bearing from the south end of great **Andaman**, S.  $8^{\circ}$  Wt. This Island is low, and flat, at the north end, and rises gradually to the southward, where it is a kind of flat hill. In a little Bay at the west side of the Island, there is a very good Anchorage for the N. E. monsoon; here ships may Anchor in 12 fathams water [**Ekiti Bay**], within half a mile of the shore, there is a sandy beach here upon which we saw five or six people, walking about. The land here is totally covered with trees, but I think the soil must be very different from that of the great Island. At the S. W. corner of little **Andaman**,  $2\frac{1}{2}$  leagues distant, lies a patch of great rocks [**Dalrymple Bank**] with about 9 fathom water upon them; they are not dangerous, as far as we saw, but a look out should be kept here about, because there is no sounding at a small distance to the south and westward of them, there is between 15 and 20 fathams water, with very coarse ground, between this patch and the Island.

At the south end of Little **Andaman**, there is no soundings within less than a mile of the land, to the westward; but the bank projects further off at the S. E. corner; there is also, reefs of rocks above water, at this end, but these run no great way off, and in the Plans I have marked their utmost extent. In all the old Plans, this Island is drawn as two Islands, lying near one another: I will venture to say, that the Person whoever he was, that gave the sketch of little **Andaman** in that manner, had never seen the Island, except perhaps, at a great distance: and the same may be said of Great **Andaman**, for with respect to both, the only thing that the old Charts are right in, is that there are Islands somewhere about the places assign'd in them.

Little **Andaman** agrees exactly with the descriptions given of **Barbadoes** when it was first discovered; the demensions, the face of the Island, and the Climate, agree; and I have not the least doubt, but the former would be equally fertile with the latter, if equal pains were taken to make it so: in its present state there are many inhabitants upon it, I should suppose, from the many lights seen on it in the night: what the ground produces, for their subsistence, I cannot say; doubtless, they have food in great plenty, of whatever kind it be; and foreign invaders have not yet disturbed their peacefull habitations.

I now proceed to the **Island Carnicobar**. **N. B.** **Barren Island** is not mentioned here because it was too far out of our way to make any enquiry about its situation in so very little time as was allowed us.



## THE SATRUNJAYA MĀHĀTMYAM.

(A contribution to the history of the Jainas by Professor Albert Weber.)

EDITED BY JAMES BURGESS, LL.D.

It was intended to include among the "Papers on Satrunjaya and the Jainas" (*ante*, Vol. II. pp. 14 f., 134 f., 193 f., 258 f., 354 f., and Vol. XIII. pp. 191 f., 276 f.) the analysis of the *Satrunjaya Māhātmyam* prepared and published by Prof. Weber, now many years ago. The following translation was made, and also an analysis of other portions of the work was made from the Sanskrit, by Mr. Kṛishṇa Sāstri Godbole, in extension of the contents of the "Beitrag."

Dr. Weber's introductory remarks on the origin of the Jainas and the date of the *Kalpasutra*, etc., are now no longer of special interest, and are therefore omitted. For the rest the German work is followed (from p. 14), with the additions just referred to in square brackets. — J. B.

The *Satrunjaya Māhātmyam* professes to have been written by a Jaina teacher — *Dhaneśvara*, at *Valabhi*, under the protection of *Silāditya* who is said to have reigned 477 years after *Vikramārka*, who again is placed 470 years after the *Nirvāṇa* of *Vira*. [These data would place it in A. D. 421; but as *Silāditya* I. ruled so late as A. D. 605, this date cannot be accepted; and the work bears internal evidence that is against any very early date for it. Still its contents are valuable for its mythological lore and its philological features.]

The work is placed in the mouth of the last Jina, called *Vardhamāna* or *Vira*, who, on the occasion of a solemn assembly upon the *Satrunjaya* itself, at the request of *Indra*, relates the legends connected with the mountain sacred to *Rishabha*, the first Jina. In this, however, he takes a very wide sweep so as to include not only the strictly Jaina myths, relative to the history of their principal patriarchs, such as *Rishabha* and his family, together with *Ajitasvāmin*, *Sānta*, *Nemi*, *Pārśva*, but he also brings in the whole Brahmanical series of myths of the history of *Rāma*, as well as of the contest of the *Kurus* and *Pāṇḍus* and the story of *Kṛishṇa*, and parts of these are metamorphosed in a highly arbitrary style; but the details belonging specially to the *Purāṇa* cycle are wanting.

On the whole the language of the poet is noble and powerful and compares worthily with that of the *Bhāṭṭikāvya*, which also claims to have been composed at *Valabhi* during the reign of one of the four *Śrī Dharasenās*, — which of them is uncertain (*Bhāṭṭik.* xxii. 35). As may readily be imagined, many words are met with in *Dhaneśvara*, not only applied in peculiar senses belonging to Jaina terminology — like *saṅgha*, *saṅghapa*, *saṅghapati*, *saṅghēśa*, *chaitya*, *tīrtha*, *uddhāra*, *samavasaraṇam*, i. 201, 204, xiv. 65,<sup>1</sup> *deśanā*, xiv. 65, 74, 339, *sāmya*, xiv. 71, 72, *samyaktva*, xiv. 67, 75, 80, *mithyātva*, xiv. 79, 80, 340-41, *mithyātvin*, xiv. 175, 224, 232, *śūtray*, xiv. 21, 55, 70, etc., — but also many other peculiarities of language. Such are the application of *itaḥ itaś cha* at the beginning of a new section, e. g., i. 64, 222, 511, ii. 454, iii. 4, v. 3, vii. 1, ix. 4, 99, etc., — *ekavala* for *kevala*, e. g., i. 17, 368, 388, 401, etc., whilst *kevala* is used along with it partly in quite a special sense, *conf.* xiv. 64, *kevalin*, x. 140, and partly also in the usual signification, as in x. 141, 147; — the *√ld* (which *Westergaard* had vouched for only in the *Bhāṭṭikāvya*), xiv. 149, 166, 298 (?); — *apāchi*, 'south,' i. 56, 283; — *angin* = *dehin*, xiv. 32, 336; — the simple denominative forms, like *kimkaranti*, xiv. 40, 81, *jalati pīyūshati*, *abjati*, *mitranti*, xiv. 81, 82. Grammatically the periphrastically formed perfects *ikshatuḥ*, x. 137, and *juḍgáratuḥ*, x. 168, are remarkable; also the *Parasmaipadam* in *√iksh* is irregular, — it is, however, to be met with still oftener, e. g., x. 171, xiv. 142 (*ikshishyati*); 181 (*ikshyasi*). So also *udeejishyati*, xiv. 234; *ushishyati*, xiv. 140; *tapishyati*, xiv. 179; *asimat*, xiv. 91; *vimushayan*, xiv. 343; *śnāpya* for *śnāpayitvā*, x. 156. But the passage x. 163 — *tām eva na smarāmy asmi*, is specially interesting: compare with it the similar examples in *Böhtlingk-Roth*, p. 536. As is known the four composite aorist forms of the Sanskrit, along with several verbal forms of the *Prākṛit* and *Pāli* have originated from a like juxtaposition and terminative

<sup>1</sup> Wilson, Mackenzie Coll. Vol. I. p. 150.



combination of the auxiliary verb . . . . Generally the work yields rich material to the Lexicon also by its the rarely used words which it employs, — *e. g.*, *asūryampaiyā*, *mattavāraṇa*, *pushpadantau*, *etc.* The frequent confirmation of a statement by the concluding assertion that the contrary is not the case, — is a peculiarity of the style, — *x.* 96, *xiv.* 95, 262, 289. The juxtaposition of homophonous words is extremely frequent, *e. g.*, *i.* 30, 50, 165, 294, 380-82, *ii.* 6, 8, 13, 17, *etc.*, real plays upon words are also not rare, as in *i.* 3, 6, 26, 44, 56, 160, *etc.*, but nowhere are these so strained and forced as in late poetry.

#### SARGA OF CHAPTER I. (526 vv.).

*Ahāryairīdhaneśvarasūrivirachite mahātīrthasātrunjayamdhātmye giri-Kaṇḍumuni-ḍhaga-ratsama (va) saraṇadeśano-dyānavarṇano nāma prathamah-sargaḥ*, — describing the mountain, the history of Kaṇḍumuni, the solemn session of Vira, his sermon, and his description of the groves.

The poet begins with a laudatory invocation of the five principal Jinās:<sup>3</sup> of Yugādhīa (the first), Śānti (the 16th), Nemi, Pārśva, and Vira (the three last); in *v.* 6 venerates his predecessor Puṇḍarika; and in *v.* 7, addresses his devotion to all Jinas — Ādiśvara at their head, to all Munis, Puṇḍarika,<sup>3</sup> *etc.*, and to the beings called Śaśanadevi (Hemach. 46). In 8, 9, he relates that, at the desire of Yugādhīa, (his) gaṇa-leader Puṇḍarika had formerly composed a *Mdhātmyam* of the Śaṭrunjaya in 100,000 *pāda*, and that at the direction of Vardhamāna (his) gaṇa-leader Sudharman had made an abstract from it, and (*v.* 10) from this abridgment consisting of 24,000 verses, Dhanesvara — humiliating the Buddhists by means of the system of yielding<sup>4</sup> — had composed his work (*vv.* 11-15) by command of Śīladitya<sup>5</sup> the king of Saurāṣṭra and ruler over eighteen princes. Then follows (*vv.* 16-25) a short panegyric of the mountain and its propitiatory power, after which the narrative begins:

Formerly Vardhamāna (Vira) surrounded by the Vṛndāraka (gods, Hemach. 88), visited Śaṭrunjaya. Then the seats of the Viḍaujas (Indra, Hemach. 171) quaked, impelling them as it were to bow before the Jina<sup>6</sup> (*v.* 27). Sixty-four of them, namely, 20 Bhavanasyendra (Hem. 90), 32 Vyantarādhipa (Hem. 91), 2 Jyotirindra (H. 92), and 10 Ūrdhvalokanivāsin approached in haste with their attendants and vented their admiration of the mountain, describing it (26-48) and its environs (49-63). According to this it has 108 summits: Svānagiri, Brahmagiri, Udarya, Arbuda, *etc.* Fourteen rivers belong to it — the Śaṭrunjaya (*v.* 738, 749) [flowing from the hill to the eastern sea, that is, the gulf of Khambāyat and a stream from Talāḷā hill falls into it], — the Aindri, Nāgendri, Kapilā, Yamalā, Taladvajī (54), Yakshāṅgi (or Kapardikā — on the north), Brāhmi, Māheśvari, Śābhramatī, Sadvalā, Varatoyā, Ujjayantikā, Bhadrā. Also various groves are upon it, — on the east is the Sūryodyānam (see 511; *ii.* 3, 599, 602); on the south the Svargodyānam; on the west the Chandrodyānam; on the north the forest Lakṣmīlīlāvilāsam. Likewise certain lakes (*saras*), the Aindram — (formerly made by Dhanada at the request of Saudarmaendra).

<sup>3</sup> Probably the five Paramārthins mentioned in *x.* 82, *xiv.* 203, 237.

<sup>4</sup> Not in Hemachandra, but see *v.* 6, 8, 409, *xiv.* 186, and compare Purnahapūṇḍarika in Hemach. 696, as the name of the 6th black Vāsudeva.

<sup>5</sup> "Syāddedāvidavastataḥ — on the strength of the system of admitting as possible," — see Hemach. 25, 681. 'Scepticism' which is distinctly negative and doubting, can hardly be meant by this word, as Boettlingk-Rieu translate it in *v.* 681, but on the contrary the admission that the opponents may possibly also be right; consequently it implies only an abnegation of the unconditional orthodoxy of one's own opinion; see Wilson, *Fiśna Purāṇa* (Hall's ed.) Vol. III. p. 209. A similar resignation, it is true, belongs to the Buddhists in general, but it appears to be characteristic of the Jains, who, by means of it, placed themselves as to dogma midway between the *śaśtikā*, Brāhmins, and the *nāstikā* or *śākyavāddinā*, Buddhists; it also explains the circumstance of their being able to live peaceably among the former, to whom they accommodated themselves also in matters of caste, whilst the latter were obliged to yield.

<sup>6</sup> The MS. has in all cases the short *i*, probably by mistake, since *śīlā*, 'stone' is not meant, but *śīlā*, 'virtue.'

<sup>7</sup> Or, is *jina* *nānam* to be explained from *jina* (acc. plur.), rather than from *jina*, so that the *vṛndāraka* would also be included? *s. v.* 165.



the *Bhāratam* — by Bharata, the first Chakravartin; the *Sarah Kapardiyakshasya* (*conf.* xiv. 210 f.); the *Sarvatīrthāvatāram*,<sup>7</sup> etc.

"That wise Muni there performs his penance; listen attentively to the history of his wonderful life!" continues the poet (v. 64), without intimating who speaks (also v. 163) or who is addressed: this immediately follows the praise of the mountain sung by the gods, as an argument for its holiness, without, however, belonging to that praise. The poet, as it were, interrupts the gods, and now the legend follows in all its circumstantiality as far as v. 164.

Formerly there was a wicked king in Chandrapura named Kaṇḍu.<sup>8</sup> [On account of his virtues in a former birth, he had obtained great wealth; but he became consumptive (*kshaya*) and emaciated in body. As he sat in his court surrounded by wicked persons and considering how he might annoy others, a leaf of the *Kalpaprīksha* fell before him, on which was written the verse —

धर्मादधिगतैश्वर्यो धर्ममेव निहति यः ।

कथं दुःखान्वतिर्भावि सस्वामिद्रोहपातकी ॥ ७५ ॥

From religion obtained — wealth; religion, too, who destroys,  
How can it be well with him? this benefactor-destroying sinner!

The king understood that his disease was the fruit of his sins and reflected that he had been caught in the net of this world by the bait of wealth. Leaving his royal state in the night Rāja Kaṇḍu went out wishing death. While he was considering whether he should throw himself into the sea or take the *Bhairava* leap,<sup>9</sup> a cow (named Surabhi) attacked him furiously. Kaṇḍu in anger cut the cow in two with his sword; but from it arose a female figure of terrible aspect with red eyes, who challenged Kaṇḍu to fight. At first he scornfully refused, but at length fought and was defeated. Then he sorrowfully asked himself, — "Why did I fear the cow when I had come out to die? I have only added another sin." The Dev, then addressed him, — "Ah sinner you remember religion now; but your heart is not free from evil. I am your Kula-devi *Ambikā*, come to test you, and I find that rage still burns in you. Go to places of pilgrimage in many countries, when the time for religious service comes, will tell you." She disappeared, and Kaṇḍu, conceiving some hope from her appearing to him, set out on pilgrimage, and at length reached Mount Kollāka. In the last watch of the night, a *Yaksha*, his enemy in a former birth, appeared. His aspect was terrible and he carried a mace in his hand. Addressing the Rāja in anger, he said, — "Lust-blinded man, you killed me and took away my wife; do you remember? Think upon your *Ishā-deva*, you must die." The Rāja's passions had become subdued and he made no answer; and the *Yaksha* seized him and bearing him through the air took him to a mountain cave where he confined him and beat him cruelly. Kaṇḍu considered that he was thus expiating his former sins. Sometimes the *Yaksha* exposed him on a pinnacle, sometimes cast him into the sea, sometimes on a thorn bush; and at last left him in the cave. The Rāja, as the fruit of his good deeds in a former life, recovered, and he considered that his sufferings were but the leaves of the tree of evil which he had planted, and that the flowers and fruit of it had yet to appear in a brute birth or in hell. Thus repenting, he went in search of a place of pilgrimage]. And as he wandered, the protecting goddess of his race (*gotradevi*) *Ambikā* (v. 108) or (as in 129) "*śāsanasundarī* (*conf.* *śāsanadevī*, v. 7, and *Hemach.* 46) *tasyā'mbā*" appeared and advised him to go on pilgrimage to *Satrunjaya*, — ["There your sin will be destroyed. Because of the devotion

<sup>7</sup> The Yatis at *Satrunjaya* point out the *Aindra*, and *Bhārata* Kuṇḍas; the *Kavad* or *Kapardiyaksha-sarovar*; and the *Sūrya* and *Chandra* Kuṇḍas. — J. B.

<sup>8</sup> Does he stand in any relation to his Brahmanic namesakes? Or have the Jainas adopted him only for their own glorification?

<sup>9</sup> A rock over a precipice on Mt. *Girnār*, called also *Rāja-melavāna-pathar*; see *Notes of a Visit to Somnāth, Girnār, etc.* (1869), p. 47; *Bomb. Gazetteer*, Vol. VIII. p. 441. — J. B.



of your ancestors, I sent you the verse; now I show you a place of pilgrimage. Except at Śatrunjaya, your sins, which are deserving of hell, cannot find remission. By the conquest of your anger you are now worthy to go thither. It is the *chauri* of those who would marry *mukti*: you will there obtain liberation." He then set out under a vow of fasting till he reached the mountain.]

On his way he met a Mahāmuni who fully instructed him. By the ascent of the mountain he overcame his enemy sin<sup>10</sup> (160), and now after long and severe penances he is about to obtain true knowledge and with it, at the same time, liberation. "Thus have I (who?) heard, O ye gods! from the mouth of Śrīmat Śimandharasvāmin, when once I went to Kshetram Mahāvīdeham (163, s. v. 295). Any and ever so great a sinner is pardoned by adoring Śrī Śatrunjaya and, like this Kaṇḍu, becomes a partaker of perfection" (v. 164).

Still more gods advanced (165) to do obeisance to the Jina; then an extended description of the solemn assembly, also Ripumalla son of the Gohil rāja, of the Yādava race, lord Gīri-Durga (ii. 8) appeared to worship. We again find him in ii. 660, when Vira points to him and says to Surapati (Indra) "to his (Śūryamalla's) race this king Ripumalla belongs, who, living there by the side of the Ratvata mountain will through (i. e., after) three existences arrive at liberation." Did the poet perhaps intend a compliment to a contemporary prince or to one of the 18 vassals of Śīlāditya?<sup>11</sup> . . . . (See beginning of Ch. II.)

Now when all were seated according to rank (223) greedy to suck in with their ears the nectar of the words which they were about to hear from Vira; Saudharmendra first begins to praise him (224-43); whereupon follows a sermonising exhortation by the Jina (244-65) on the pious ecstasies of the assembly; then Saudharmendra — always indefatigable for what is good — by the appearance of the Śatrunjaya-tīrtha, by the arrival of the lord, by the statue (*archā*) of Śrī-Yugādjīna (Rishabha), by the milk-dropping *Rājādāni* tree,<sup>12</sup> by the two shoes (*pāduka*) placed under it, etc., is incited to propose to Vira the astounding questions (269-73): — "What salvation, and how may it be obtained on the mount? When did the mountain originate? By what pious person was this new temple built here? By whom was this image (*pratimā* — statue) lovely as moonshine made? Who are the two gods standing sword in hand at the door before the lord (Rishabha)? Who are the two figures on his right and left? And who are the other gods? Also that solitary *Rājādāni* tree? Whose are the two footmarks (*pāduka*) under it? What kind of peafowl<sup>13</sup> image is this? And who is the *Yaksha* standing here? Who is the goddess that enjoys herself here? And who are the *Munis* assembled here? What rivers and mountains are these? And the trees? To what *Mṛti* does that tank there belong? And the other wells? And whence came this sap-well? (*rasakūpi* — mineral spring), gem-cave? Whence these grottoes? And who are these five men with their wives made of plaster?<sup>14</sup> Who are the people chaunting the superlative virtues of Nābheya (1st Jina, Rishabha)? What mountain is that to the south and how did it originate? What summits and towns around it are these? How does the sea come here — from thence? What *Purushottama* (Jina) has been here? How long would they yet stay? How long will this mountain yet maintain (?) itself? How many exaltations,<sup>15</sup> most wise one, will yet occur here (274-86)?"

<sup>10</sup> A play upon words with the name of the mountain, containing at the same time its true explanation.

<sup>11</sup> Śīlāditya is styled *Artsundhṛva* (v. 14), but Ripumalla merely *Surdhṛvadeśādhi*, and otherwise *Gīridurgā*.

<sup>12</sup> Gujarātī *Rājya*; Hemachandra makes the *Rājādāni* synonymous with the *Priyā*, and Böhtlingk and Rien thought it to be the *Buchanania latifolia*. Dr. Bhāu Dājl identified the *Rājya* or *Rājya* as the *Mimusops hexandra* (Roxb.). — See *Temples of Śatrunjaya*, p. 21, 12 — J. B.

<sup>13</sup> On the sacredness of the peafowl among the Jains, see Wilson, *Vish. Pur.* (Hall's ed.) Vol. III. p. 208, and below, ii. 20.

<sup>14</sup> Or is *lepanīrmita* simply — 'painted.'

<sup>15</sup> The word *uddhāra* is a real Proteus, sometimes it means some one's spiritual elevation, sometimes the founding, raising glorifying Jaina sanctuaries by someone, and often both are melted into each other; likewise the verb *uddhar* itself. The MS., however, reads almost throughout *udhar*, *udhāra*, as *vārdhā* for *vārdhā*.



These questions, to some extent, embrace the contents of the entire *Satrunjaya Mahatmyam*, as it were, in a nut shell, and at the same time give a fairly comprehensive view of the theatre of the work, namely the mountain itself. The two *pāduka* under the Rājādāni-tree are the symbol of the dominion of Yugaḍiśa (*conf.* x. 159) just as in the *Rāmāyaṇa*, ii. 123, Lharata, places the two shoes of Rāma upon the throne vacant in his absence.

Fortunately, in his answer Vira takes a wide sweep, by which we learn much that is interesting.

"This part of the world (*dvīpa*) which is 100,000 *yojanas* broad is called Jambūdvīpa, because the eternal Jambū tree stands on it,<sup>16</sup> which, with the abundance of its creepers, dances, as it were, for joy because Jaina-chaityas are in its twigs." According to the Jains the inhabited world consists of "two and a half continents and two seas" (*Kalysūtra*, Stevenson's tr. p. 94), "namely, Jambūdvīpa, Dhātuki-khaṇḍa, and Urdha-Pushkar, and the salt and fresh water sea, — all our earth." So also Hemachandra in his explanation to 1074, places Dhātukikhaṇḍa and Pushkaravaradvīpārḍhe<sup>17</sup> beside Jambūdvīpa (in which the same regions and mountains are said to exist as in Jambūdvīpa, only in double numbers). The same division seems to be the origin of *jambūdruchaityeshu*, *dhātukīrīkṣhe*, *pushkaradvīpachaityeshu*, 342-43. Probably these two and a half continents are meant by the expression *trikhaṇḍa*, x. 318, xiv. 309. Colebrooke also mentions these three names only, though he speaks of "numerous distinct continents" of which the world consists. The Brāhmins, as we know, have seven *dvīpas*, among which are Jambūdvīpa and Pushkaradvīpa; with them Dhātuki appears as the name of a prince (*Vishṇu Pur.* Hall's ed. Vol. II. p. 201) from whom one of the two regions (*varsha*) of Pushkaradvīpa took its name, — the other from his brother Mahāvira. Among the Jains, however (see v. 343), the *dvīpa* appears to be so called from a dhātuki-tree,<sup>18</sup> as Jambūdvīpa from the *jambū*<sup>19</sup> upon it.

"There are six mountain ranges (*varsha*-holders) which are measured (i. e., their inner limits are defined) by seven regions (*varsha*). These are called, — Bhāratam,<sup>20</sup> Haimavatam, Harivarsham, Videhakam, Rāmyakam, Airāyavatam and Airāvātam. The six mountains are Himavant, Mahāhimavant, Nishadha, Nilavant, Rūpya and Sikharin, which touch the eastern and the western seas, and are adorned with *chaityas* (292-94). The same data are found in Hemachandra's scholium, 946-47, in Böhtlingk-Rieu, p. 377, — only there we read Irānyavata and (Colebrooke, Vol. II. p. 223) Airāvata, Nīla, and Rukmin (for Rūpya). In the text itself he enumerates only Bharatāni, Airāvātāni and Videhaḥ, assuming all else as known, — which is at least surprising: did the names seem too obsolete or partly abnormal? In v. 1074 he similarly gives only the *laukika* names of the *dvīpāntara* seas. The seven *varshas* of Jambūdvīpa recur also in the *Purāṇas*; but there they stand in a different order and partly have other names (Wilson, *Vish. Pur.* Hall's ed. Vol. II. p. 111) such as Bhāratam, Kimpurnsham, Harivarsham, Ilāvṛitam, Rāmyakam, Hiranyamayam, Uttarakuru. Hence the first, third, and fifth names agree with those above; the second is different; in Hiranyamayam and Ilāvṛitam the radical forms of Airāyavatam and Airāvātam are probably presented. Videhakam corresponds to Uttarakuru, which, according to Hemachandra 946, includes the Kurus, since it gives *Kurū vīnd* as *Karmabhūmi*, and since the Kurus with the other four *varshas* not enumerated have to pass as *phalabhūmis*. Besides, Videhakam is regarded as the centre of the whole of Jambūdvīpa, being according to the Brāhmins formed by Ilāvṛitam. The reason for this preference for Videha<sup>21</sup> with the Jains (as with the Buddhists, who also call one of their four *dvīpas* by it) is probably a historical one, the remembrance that Buddhism originated among the Videhas

<sup>16</sup> Wilson, *Vish. Pur.* (Hall's ed.) Vol. II. pp. 116-11.

<sup>17</sup> Only half of Pushkaradvīpa is accessible to mankind, the remoter half being separated by an impassable range of mountains called Mānushottara parvata (Colebr. *Ed.* Vol. II. p. 222). Similarly with the Brāhmins. See Wilson, *Vish. Pur.* (Hall) Vol. II. pp. 201 f., 239, where the mountain is called Mānasottara (see below, v. 340).

<sup>18</sup> *Griśia tomentosa*.

<sup>19</sup> *Eugenia jambolana*.

<sup>20</sup> Usually written here with short d.

<sup>21</sup> Conversely the Vaidehas appear as an unclean caste in Manu; see *Hist. Senak. Liter.* p. 276.



(also Jainism). Mithilā the town of the pious Janaka is considered the principal residence of Vira (Kalpasutra, p. 91; Berlin Cat. Sansk. MSS. p. 372). In the Purāṇas the six mountains are called, — Himavant, Hemakūṭa, Nishadha, Nila, Sveta, Śrīngin, where the 2nd and 5th names are quite different. Nilavant for Nila (so also Hemach. in schol. 947) and Śikharin for Śrīngin, are only variants. The serial order remains the same. The addition — "which touch the eastern and the western sea," corresponds to the salt (*lavaṇa*) sea of the Purāṇas, which surrounds Jambūdvīpa on all sides. In material points, therefore, this entire description agrees with the Purāṇas, whilst that of the Buddhists is quite different. They have four *deīpas*; in their midst is Meru and round it seven circular mountain ranges, which, however, have quite different names. (Sp. Hardy, *Man. of Budh.* pp. 4, 12; *Ind. Stud.* Bd. III. S. 123.)

"In the middle of Mahāvīdehakhaṇḍa rises a golden mountain adorned with 100,000 summits, called Meru, 100,000 *yojanas* in height, and is on the navel of the earth. It is ornamented with a crown of eternal Arhat-chaityas shining with the splendour of jewels" (295-96). This is quite as in the Purāṇas, only Hāvrītam is mentioned as the respective *varsham*.

"The Bhāratam varsham we regard as the producer of purity,<sup>22</sup> because its inhabitants strove after purity even in the time of the Duḥshamās.<sup>23</sup> There, among all countries the land of Surāshṭrā is markedly pre-eminent; in it sin is scared to shame, all plagues are absent, and men are united together in love" (297-98). The name Surāshṭrā appears almost throughout as feminine; compare also Ptolemy's *Συραστρηνη*. The land seems to have been early distinguished by its Brahman civilization: comp. *Ind. Stud.* Bd. III. S. 220. Here naturally it is characterized as the chief seat of Jainism and designates, as in Ptolemy, the peninsula of Gujarāt in which Satrunjaya, as well as Valabhi, is situated. From its position, this district has always been extremely accessible to Western influences. Thus, for example, according to native legends the princes of Udayapura, the capital of Mewar, are said to be descended from a Byzantine princess Maria, daughter of the emperor Maurice (A. D. 583-602 — consequently a contemporary of Śilāditya I.) the spouse of a son (or rather grandson) of Nushirvan the Great (A. D. 531-79) converted to Christianity, who had fled to India and there founded a kingdom (Tod, *Ann. of Rājasthan*, Vol. I. p. 236 f.). Accordingly it would not be in itself impossible that Christian elements may have early mixed with Jainism in the same way as with Kṛishṇa worship, which originated exactly here. Wilson has already (*Macken. Coll.* Vol. I. p. 347) ascribed to the same source some legends of Salivahana who ruled at Pratiṣṭhāna on the Godāvāri.

Next follows (298-327) an elaborate panegyric of this province and to it is joined a similar one about Mount Satrunjaya itself, which forms, as it were, the crown of it, and expiates many sins even by only thinking upon it (328). Of its 108 names twenty-three are given (331-35), viz., Satrunjaya itself, Puṇḍarika, Siddhikshetram, Mahābala, Surasaila, Vimalādri, Puṇyārāsī, Śrīyāhpadam, Parvatendra, Subhadra, Dridhasakti, Akarmaka, Mukti-geham, Mahātīrtham, Śāsvata, Sarvakāmada, Pushpadanta, Mahāpadma, Prithvipīṭham, Prabhoḥpadam, Pāṭalamūla, Kailāsa, Kshitimaṇḍanamāṇḍanam. Of all these, Hemachandra (1030) mentions only two, Satrunjaya and Vimalādri. Among these Puṇḍarika, Siddhikshetram (Siddhādri, Siddhabhūḍrīt) are specially often used in the work, and the others but seldom.

"Whatever purity may be obtained in any other artificial places of pilgrimage (*ārtha*), towns, groves, mountains, etc., by prayers, penances, vows, gifts, and study, tenfold as much is

<sup>22</sup> A play upon words, *Bharatam*; *bharitam* is probably formed from *bhara*, 'load,' like *tardhita* from *tārdha*.

<sup>23</sup> This is the penultimate spoke of the *anarsarpit* period, see Hemach. 131, Böttlingk-Rieu, S. 303. The ooder reads here *duḥkāmā*, as in xiv. 165, 318, 323b (also Colebrooke, Vol. II. p. 215), *duḥkāmā*, xiv. 314, and only in 322a, *duḥshamā*. The context with *duḥkha* (*dukha*) appears also in "*ekāntam mahāduḥkīnam yavat*," xiv. 98, by which the *ekānta duḥshamā* is designated, and it is perhaps really questionable whether this derivation is not to be preferred to Hemachandra's from *duḥ* (that is *du*) + *śamā*. A *taddhita* affix *mā* is certainly extremely uncommon.



obtained in Jina places of pilgrimage; a hundredfold as much at the *chaityas* of the Jambú tree (comp. 291); a thousandfold as much at the eternal *Dhātuki*-tree, at the lovely *chaityas* of Pushkaradvipa at Mount Anjana.<sup>24</sup> Yet tenfold more is acquired at the Nandisvara, Kundaladri, Mánushottarapurvata;<sup>25</sup> proportionately ten thousandfold more at the Vaibhara<sup>26</sup> (358; v. 953; xiv. 100) Sam(m)etadri,<sup>27</sup> Vaitādhya (ii. 349), Meru, Raivata<sup>28</sup> and Ashtāpada (see vi. 358; Colebrooke, Vol. II. p. 208; according to Hemach. 1028, — Kailāsa). Infinitely more, however, is obtained at once by the mere sight of Satrunjaya. Lastly all that is secured by devoting one's self to the worship of it is unspeakable" (341-46). Besides this and other sacred mountains mentioned here and in what follows, there are yet Girināragiri (ii. 8, xiv. 89), Śrīśaila (xiv. 89), Chandraprabhāsa (xiv. 89, 254).

To this is annexed a list of the 21 mountains belonging to the same range with Satrunjaya. viz., Satrunjaya itself, Raivata, Siddhikshetram (322, a name of Satrunjaya), Sutirtharāj, Dhanka, Kapardin (52, 61), Lauhitya, Tāladhvaja (50), Kadambaka (v. 714), Bāhubali, Mārudeva (*śringa Sri Mārudevādya*, 500, and viii. 699), Sahasrākhyā, Bhagīratha, Ashtot-taramatakūṭa, Nageśa, Satapatraka, Siddharāj, Sahasrapatra, Puṇyārāsi Surapriya, Kāmadāyin (352-54). Satrunjaya is the name of the principal summit upon which all *tirthas* — Meru, Sammēta, Vaibhāra, Ruchaka (Wilson, *Vishṇu*, Vol. II. p. 117), Ashtāpada, etc., are united (357).

Next follows a long eulogium of the mountain under the name of Puṇḍarīka. Only towards the end of the chapter (from 496 and ff.) does Vira turn to a cursory reply to some of the questions put before him in detail, many of them he ignores; they are answered, however, in the later portions of the work. According to v. 499 the two figures on the right and left of the lord Rishabha are the first *gaṇa* leaders — Śrī Puṇḍarīka (xiv. 86, and above v. 6-8).

#### SARGA OF CHAPTER II. (662 vv.).

*Mahīpāla Mahīpālacharita* varṇano nāma, — describes the history of the prince Mahīpāla.

Surendra, having now heard the speech of the Bhagavant, is filled with great joy and respectfully requests him to recount the other separate histories also; and firstly that of the lake at the Śūrya grove mentioned at the end of the first chapter (v. 511).

Vira now begins a long story which has nothing whatever to do with the subject in hand, and he returns to Indra's question only as far on as v. 598. Such is generally the method of the whole work. Satrunjaya with its sanctuaries always forms the mere background, which occasionally becomes more prominent and here and there it is quite largely dealt with. But the mythic and fabulous tales claim the principal interest. But why the history of Mahīpāla<sup>29</sup> should here take precedence of all the other stories, even of that of Rishabha himself, the patron divinity of the mount, is difficult to explain, unless we suppose the poet to have had some special personal motive. Hence I suspect he intends to pay a compliment to the king Ripamalla (*ante*) by the glorification of his ancestor.

<sup>24</sup> See Böhtlingk-Roth, s. v.

<sup>25</sup> See above.

<sup>26</sup> The Vaibhāra is mentioned by the Buddhists of the Southern school also; see Schol. to *Dhammapadam*, v. 188.

<sup>27</sup> Colebrooke, Vol. II. pp. 212-13: Sammēya or Samet-Sikhara, called Pārasnāth is among the Bengal hills, in Hazaribāgh, Lat. 23° 58' N. long. 86° 11' E. Its holiness is great in the estimation of the Jains, and it is visited by pilgrims from the remotest parts of India. The last Jina but one obtained Nirvāṇa on it.

<sup>28</sup> Raivata (Girnār) is mentioned (852) as the second of the summits belonging to Satrunjaya, in v. 868, x. 8, as the fifth of them. The Sargas x.-xii. of the *Satr. Māh.* are devoted entirely to its glorification, and therefore bear the special title of *Raivatādhikāle-Māhātmya*. It is the same as Ujjayanta (x. 110, Hemach. 1031); Wilson, *Fish.* Pur. Hall's ed. Vol. II. p. 141, note; Colebrooke, Vol. II. p. 212; Lassen, Bd. III. S. 542. Nemi is specially worshipped on it.

<sup>29</sup> Mahīpāla was the name of more than one of the kings of Junāgadh or Girnār; one Mahīpāla, known as Rāo Kavāt, ruled A.D. 1245-79; another about 1430; and there may have been earlier princes of the name. — J. B.



In *Śrī Surāshtra*, beneath mount *Girināra* (*Girnār*, xiv. 89) is the town of *Giridurga* adorned with Jaina temples. There once lived *Sūryamalla* a descendant of *Samudravijaya* of the *Yādava* race, a pious and valorous lord. His spouse *Sastilekhā*, a devout worshipper of *Śrī Nemi*, once, when her husband had gone on a Jaina pilgrimage to the mountain, saw a peafowl playing with her young. By this the desire of children was stirred in the lady; her husband advised her to address her prayers to this intent to the Jina. In consequence, through the grace of "*Ambā, jagadambā, Mother, of the mother of the world,*" they soon had two sons, *Devapāla* and *Mahipāla*.

According to the Jaina ideas (i. 7; *Hemach.* 44-46) each Jina has his own "*Śāsanadevī* or goddess, who does his bidding." Among the 24 names of these<sup>20</sup> given by *Hemachandra*, is *Ambikā* belonging to the 22nd Jina, *Nemi*, the same as is here spoken of; hence this *Ambikā* must be meant by "*Ambā jagadambā.*"<sup>21</sup> We shall meet with her frequently in the work (v. 200, x. 150, 152, 157, 158, xiii. 320; comp. also above i. 108, 129). Though this whole Jaina idea may quite naturally be referred to the Brahman worship of the *mātara*, — especially *Ambikā*, the spouse of *Siva*, and all the more so since other names of this last are also met with among the 24 *śāsanadevīs* (e. g., *Kālikā, Mahakālī, Chandā*); at the same time one is strongly tempted also to think of Christian elements contributing here, the influence of which abstractly has already been remarked on, and in *Surāshtra* as the most advanced post of Jainism geographically, must be considered possible. The Buddhists know nothing of similar *Buddha* halves.<sup>22</sup> As the Jaina teaching was particularly favoured by the female sex (conf. remarks on xiv. 94, 95), in conformity with its general character for mildness, it seems to have assigned a higher position to the sex, in favour of which the view regarding the *śāsanadevīs*, may be a testimony. But as the Brahman example shows, a sexual connection is not necessary here. While female goddesses, however, which generally obtain a prominent position in the post-vedic pantheon of the Hindus, are constantly advancing in an ascending development (comp. the *Śākta*), the position of the wife, on the other hand has, strangely enough, sunk more and more deeply.

*Mahipāla* distinguished himself in every respect above his brother *Devapāla*. Among the numerous adventures which he met with when roaming about in the forest, his conquest of the Rakshas *Mahākālā*,<sup>23</sup> whom he subsequently instructed in the true law (160 f.) is told in much detail (141 ff.).

"Avoid injuring, exercise pity, observe the eternal ordinance even with [thy] own body bring aid to creatures" (186).

"Against an enemy even exercise not enmity, neither for [one's] own advantage" (188).

Here we have quite Buddhist ethics . . . . Of course it is easily conceivable that in spite of the dogmatic *ahimsā* among Buddhists and Jains, there was no want of enmity towards those of another religion, but it never became a dogma.

The *Yaksha* (or *Rakshas*), greatly pleased, promised to *Mahipāla* that henceforth "the god Jina, the pious teacher, and the pity-enforcing law, should continue his constant Triad" (191). Here is the Buddhist triad, — *Buddha*, the *Saṅgha* and *Dharma*.

<sup>20</sup> These *Śāsanadevīs* are also known as *Yakshapris*; see the list in *Ind. Ant.* Vol. XIII. p. 276. — J. B.

<sup>21</sup> 'Mother of the world' or *jagatām ambī*, 'of the worlds,' as the Jinās themselves are called — *trijagadyakṣas*. In these extracts from the *Satr. Māh.* I find only *Chakreśvarī*, the *śāsanadevī* of the first Jina mentioned; but in i. 7, they are spoken of collectively.

<sup>22</sup> *Buddhāvāsadevā*, the guardian angel of *Śākyamuni* who brought about his conversion, — is perhaps the nearest analogue to these devīs. — J. B.

<sup>23</sup> This name has probably been selected in allusion to *Śiva* worship.



Now the prince resolves to look round him in the world. After a few days he arrives at the town of **Sundara** (199), where he lies down to rest under trees at a Chaitya dedicated to **Ambikā**. Startled, he delivers **Gūṇa-Sundarī** (240) daughter of **Kalyāṇasundara** (238), king of **Kalyāṇa-kāṭaka** in the **Kanyakubja** country (237), and of **Kalyāṇasundarī** (239), from the hands of a **Vidyādhara** who had carried her off through the air intending to kill her; he conquers the **Vidyādhara** in combat, converts him, and causes him to take the maiden back to her father's house. The **Vidyādhara** then relates his own history (349 f.). On mount **Vaitāḍhya**, in the town of **Ratnapura**, lived king **Mañichūḍa**, the father of **Ratnaprabha** and **Ratnakānti**, etc. Hereupon the prince proceeds to **Kalyāṇakāṭakam** in order to assist at the self-choice of **Gūṇasundarī** (367). He gains her in the subsequent competition (when the author puts into his mouth a remark inimical to the adherents of the **Sāṅkhya** doctrine, — 383), and starts with her on his homeward journey (453). On the road, however, in the country of **Mālava** (454), his rivals attack him with **Naravarman** at their head (389, 411, 416, 476). He overcomes them all, subjects them to himself, and sends all to their homes (476), himself also returning to his country.

Other stories are also inserted, such as that of king **Trivikrama**, son of **Trisāṅku** of **Śrāvastī** (275), and of king **Srinivāsa** of **Sripura** (547) who killed a **Rishi** in the forest and there built (578), as an expiation of the deed, a four-faced [*chaumukha*] temple of **Srisānti** the (16th) **Jināśyaka** (254), but nevertheless he descended to the seventh hell (*saptamīṇa narakāvanin*).

As already mentioned, **Vira** reaches only at v. 598, his short reply to **Indra's** question concerning the **Sūrya** grove below **Satrunjaya**. The sun-god had once devoted himself there to the service of the **Jina** during 60,000 years: hence the name. The water of the well in it, called **Sūryāvarta**, is consecrated by the nectar of the aspect of the statue of **Nabheya** statue placed there. **Vidyādhara Mañichūḍa** with his friend (**Mahipāla** ?) proceeded also at the spring festival to the **Vimalāchala** (**Satrunjaya**) and worshipped the **Jina**, visited the **Sūryavana**, honoured the **Nabheya** statue in it, and took away some of the water from the holy well (603).

After king **Mahipāla** had lived 104 years, he abdicated his government and surrendered his kingdom to his son **Sripāla** (*conf. Mac. Coll.* I. 152, II. 113; *Vers. d. Berlin Hdschr.* 1362) and the **Sindhu** country with **Jaladurga** to his nephew **Vanapāla**. [**Devapāla** had married **Vanamālā**, the daughter of **Naravarma Rāja**, and died at **Satrunjaya**, leaving a son **Vanapāla**.] **Mahipāla** then withdrew with his spouse to the **Satrunjaya**, where, being instructed by the **Mani Srikirti**, he became at the end of his life a partaker of liberation (from separate existence).

"To this race [of **Vanapāla**], O **Indra**, belongs this king **Ripumalla** whose spirit is consecrated by great glory and virtue. This highly favoured one, dwelling by the side of **Raivata**, will assuredly attain liberation (660) through (i. e., after) three (further) existences."

#### SARGA OF CHAPTER III. (822 vv.).

**Sri Kāṣhabhasvāmī janmarājyābhishheka-dikshā-kevalotpatti<sup>24</sup>-Bharatadigvijaya-bhāratīdikshā-tatputra-rājyadānavarṇano nāma**: describes the birth and coronation of **Rishabhasvāmin** the first **Jina**, his consecration and attainment of true perception, the conquest of the various parts of the world by **Bharata**, the consecration of his brother and the surrender of the kingdom to the sons.

<sup>24</sup> *Shvetāmlikāśmṛitā*. ccd.



[Bharata, the son of Rishabhadeva, ruled in Ayodhya. He led an army north from Satrunjaya, and engaged in battle with a Mlechha rāja of great power. In the first battle Bharata was defeated, in the second the Mlechha rāja was beaten and fled to the river Indus "as a child in distress flies to his mother." Bharata was preparing to pursue him, but the Mlechha sought the aid of Megha Kumāra, who attacked Bharata's army for seven days. At last Bharata sent a yaksha against Megha-kumāra, who satisfied the latter that he could not prevail, and brought him to pay obeisance to Bharata. Upon this Bharata returned home. His minister Sukheṇa afterwards took a fort north of the Indus between the sea and the mountains.]

Vira now continues uninterrupted to relate to Indra the origin of the wonderful excellence of the Śatrunjaya tirtha during the Avasarpinī period (2, 3). Here in Jambūdvīpa, in the right half of the Bhārata (varsha), in the middle region between Gaṅgā and Sindhu, was Vimalavāhana, the first of the ancestral fathers. His son was Chakshushmant, father of Abhichandra, whose son Prasenajit was the father of Marudeva also called Nābhi, and from the womb of his spouse Marudevi the lord of the world took birth by means of his omnipotence, at the end of the third spoke of the Avasarpinī period (4-8) under the name of Rīshabha or Vṛīshabhasena (225).

The *Purāṇas* also mention Nābhi and Marudevi as the parents of a Rīshabha, but attribute to Nābhi himself another descent (namely with Agnidhra the son of Priyavrata for his father,—Wilson, *Vish. Pur.* Vol. II, pp. 100-103). We find Vimalavāhana again as the name of the last prince of the fifth spoke (xiv. 318-19), so that the first and the last prince bear the same name and perhaps purposely so! Prasenajit appears in the *Rāmāyana*, I. 70, as the eleventh descendant of Ikshvaku (otherwise in *Vishn. Pur.* Vol. III. p. 265 f.) and uncle of a Bharata. According to Wilson (*Vish. Pur.* Vol. IV. pp. 171 n.), this was the name of the father of Sreṇika, who was a contemporary of Vira. The Buddhists also recognise a contemporary of Buddha of this name, but with him also a much younger prince, the father of Nanda (Burnouf, *Introd.* 2nd ed. p. 320). The *Purāṇas* thus name even Suddhodana's (Buddha's) grandsons (*Vish. Pur.* Vol. IV. p. 170 f.). Hence it appears not improbable that the Jāinas made use of this name, highly respected among the Buddhists, so as to secure for the pedigree of their Rīshabha a well sounding point of attachment. — The same is probably the case with Marudeva, who is mentioned in the *Purāṇas* (*Vish. Pur.* Vol. IV. p. 168) as the twelfth ancestor of Suddhodana (Buddha). The *Rāmāyana* mentions one Maru (i. 70) as the eighth ancestor of Rāma; so i. 71 (*Vish. Pur.* Vol. III. p. 331) as the eleventh ancestor of Sita. The *Vishṇu Purāṇa* quotes a Maru as the 24th descendant of both of them, "who, through the power of devotion is still living in the village called Kalāpa, and in a future age will be the restorer of the Kshatriya race in the solar dynasty. (*Vish. Pur.* Vol. III. p. 325.)

Besides other children<sup>35</sup> by other wives Rīshabha had, by his spouses Samāṅgalā and Sunandā, a twin pair by each; by the former (65) Bharata and Brahmi (*sādevī*, 264, 269), by the latter (67) Bāhubali and Sundarī (*śravakā*, 265, 269); comp. Wilson, *Mack. Coll.* Vol. I. pp. 145-6. It is his image erected by Bāhubali (xiv. 177, 266) which imparts peculiar sanctity to Satrunjaya, and accordingly we find the two summits of the mountain in question called after his mother Marudevi (or odeva) and after his son Bāhubali (i. 353); compare also Bharatam saras (i. 60). — The Brahmanic legend of Rīshabha's final anchorite life (*Vish. Pur.* Vol. II. p. 130 f.) has, as the *Bhāgavata Purāṇa* asserts (see Wilson's note, p. 104), most probably given rise to the entire view of him by the Jāinas as their first Jina. Stevenson (*Kalpa Sūtra*, pref. xv., xvi. and 99) not only took him for a really historical personage, but to be also the ideal founder of Jainism: Pārśvanātha to be the real founder, inasmuch as he "practised austerities in very ancient times, which the Jāinas in after ages imitated."

<sup>35</sup> E. g. Draviḍa, vii. 1; Kuru, x. 399.



## SARGA OF CHAPTER IV. (671 vv.).

*Bharata Bāhubalisanāma*—describes the combat of the two brothers Bharata and Bāhubali.

Vira continues his narrative to **Sakra**, and speaks next of a pilgrimage of **Bharatādhipa** to the holy mountain.

[**Sri Somayasa** son of Bāhubali built the temple of **Rishabha Deva**.]

## SARGA OF CHAPTER V. (982 vv.).

*Sri Bharatatirthayātrātrihoddhāra* (°*dvāra* Cod.) *varṇano nāma* : represents the pilgrimages and pious foundations of **Bharata**.

"As thou hast just heard of his victory over the external enemy, listen now to the victory of **Chakrin**<sup>36</sup> over the internal enemy, to his *tīrtha*-perfection and to his presence at all (i. e., to his pilgrimages to all *tīrthas*?)."

This chapter treats very particularly of **Satrunjaya** and the **Jaina** shrines (comp. i. 60) erected on it by **Bharata**, as well as of **Raivata** (759, 868) that is **Ujjayanta** (732, 930), **Kādambakagiri** (714), **Vaibhārakagiri** (953), etc.

[On the 15th of **Chaitra** the great **Muni Puṇḍarika** become a *siddha*; from that day the 15th of **Chaitra** became a holiday and the mountain received the name of **Puṇḍarika** (53).

(Persons going to the *tīrtha* : — When the hill comes in sight the **Saṅghvi** should perform the *pañcāṅga* *namaskāra*, the other members of the **Saṅgha** following him. If a person returns from the van with the information that the hill is in sight, he should be presented with gifts for the good news. Then gifts of gold, silver, etc., should be thrown towards the hill. Then descending from their conveyances, the pilgrims should perform *pañcāṅga* and worship the hill as the feet of **Jina**. When the *saṅgha* halts there, the pilgrims must fast; next day they should dress themselves handsomely after bathing, and, accompanied by their wives, and taking with them their household goods, they should prepare to visit the temples on the mountain. They should carry with them incense; the women should sing *gītas*; and gifts should be made to beggars. The **Jati** should precede and the **Saṅghvi** should follow him. They should take *naivedya* and garlands of flowers. First, they should worship the mountain, then the *saṅgha*. They should cause *nāṭakas* to be performed at the temples; the **Saṅghvi** and his wife should be worshipped; and the **Saṅgha** should feast and listen to the **Guru's Dharmakathā**. The **Saṅgha** should ascend the mountain next day carrying with them instruments of music; they should rest at the **Chelam sarovara**.)

[When **Bharata** came to the **Satrunjaya tīrtha** he founded **Ānandapura** on the borders of **Saurāshtra** and built there a temple of **Rishabhadeva**. He presented it to his relative **Saktisimha**, who then ruled in **Saurāshtra**. **Bharata** repaired an old tank he found there which was afterwards called **Bhārata kuṇḍa**.

["**Bharatādhipa** gave **Saurāshtra** for the worship of the *Tīrtha*; and from that day this country was called **Devadatta** in the earth region" (42). "What hill is this which shines before, in the **Vayu** direction? asked **Bharata**. In reply **Saktisimha** said (81) 'lord, of old **Vidhyabhṛt Baraṭa**, of wicked mind and with *rākshasi* skill, made his residence here (82). That wicked **Rakshasa Baraṭa**, O lord, seized this great and famous mountain, giving it his own name. This wicked one — terrible, surrounded by the terrible — he heeds not my orders. By his sky-going power he travels in the air, he injures the country." Hearing this, the angry **Chakrin** spoke to **Sukheṇa**, — "To conquer him, lay the **Chakrin's** order on the head of the charioteer — the general." Coming forth in a chariot, as if he would seize the car of the sun, the

<sup>36</sup> **Bharata** is the first *chakravartin*. Hemach. 692.



general arrived (83-85). Perceiving **Bartaka asura** with many **Rākshasas**, he prepared for battle. In a moment encountering and binding the **Rākshasas**, he cast down their leader in his own chariot. The rest fled, and **Sukheṇa** having obtained the victory speedily before the **Chakrin's** feet at **Baivata** threw down the **Rākshasa**, — humbled, and sorely downcast, tightly bound and with bursting veins. Having seen him, the merciful **Saktisīmha** then spoke, — "You planted the **asura** root of life-destruction; and that tree of sin has borne these flowers; its fruit will be **Naraka**. If even now you will abandon the destruction of life, — if you will obey my order, I will permit you an escape from fear: in truth I will obtain your release" (86-91). "O lord!" spake the **Rākshasa**, "I will make your order my head-ornament." The **Rāja** caused him to be released by the **Chakrin**. The **Rākshasa** also in his mountain began with joy to build temples, lofty as **Meru**, to **Adinātha** and **Arishtanemi** (93-94).]

SARGA OF CHAPTER VI. (296 vv.).

*Srī Vṛishabhasvāmīrī Bharatesanivṛṇāśhāpoddhāra (dvāra Cod.)rī Sūryayaśascharitararṇano nāma*, — describes the *nirvāṇam* of **Vṛishabhasvāmin**, of **Bharata**, the consecration of the (mountain) *Ashṭāpada* (comp. i. 342 and Colebrooke, Vol. II. p. 208), the walk [in life] of **Sūryayaśas** (the son of **Bharata**).

After **Bharata** had rejoiced **Somayaśas**, the son of **Bāhubali** (x. 303) and others, by a donation of land and dismissed them (3), he again turned towards the government.

The death of **Vṛishabhasvāmin**, etc. (17 ff.).

As from **Vṛishabhasvāmin** the **Ikshvāku** race descended, so that of the **Sūryayaśas** is from **Sūryayaśas** (285). On the **Somayaśas**, see x. 303.

From **Bharata** arose **Ādityayaśas** (**Sūryayaśas**) and further **Mahāyaśas**, **Atibala**, **Balabhadra**, **Balavīrya**, **Kīrtivīrya**, **Jalavīrya**, and **Danḍavīrya** as the eighth.<sup>37</sup> Throughout [the life of ?] these men the **Srāddha**-celebration lasted (288-9).

From **Bharata** downwards all his descendants were pious princes as far as **Ajitasvāmin**, the second **Jina** (viii.), and erected **Tirthas** and built **Jaina Chaityas**.

SARGA OF CHAPTER VII. (400 vv.).

*Drāviḍa-Vālikhilla-chāritratīrthoddhāravaraṇano nāma*, — represents the walk [or life] of **Drāviḍa**, and **Vālikhilla**, and also the **Tirthas** erected by them.

A son of **Vṛishabhasvāmin** was also called **Draviḍa**, from whom the **Draviḍa** country, fertile in grain, takes its name. His two sons **Drāviḍa** and **Vālikhilla** fell out with each other and made war, but afterwards they were reconciled (171) and undertook pilgrimages to **Satrunjaya**. This chapter treats also of **Danḍavīrya** (see above).

[**Hastinī-devī** destroyed all the temples on the **Satrunjaya** and retired to **Hastisenanagara**. She was a flesh eater and was accompanied by many false religionists.<sup>38</sup>]

SARGA OF CHAPTER VIII. (724 vv.).

*Srī Ajitasvāmin-rī Sagara-rī-Sāntijina-Chakradharādīmahāpuruṣatīrthoddhāravaraṇano nāma*, — describes the **Tirtha** establishments of **Ajitasvāmin** (the 2nd **Jina**), **Sagara**,<sup>39</sup> **Sānti** (16th **Jina** and at the same time the fifth **Chakravartin**), **Chakradhara**,<sup>40</sup> and of other great men.<sup>41</sup>

<sup>37</sup> The *Purāṇas* have quite different names for these. See Wilson, *Vishnu Purāṇa*.

<sup>38</sup> [This seems to point to a foreign raid from **Dehl**. — J. B.]

<sup>39</sup> Second **Chakravartin** of **Hemach**. 692 ff.: the first is **Bharata**.

<sup>40</sup> **Chakradhara** is not a title here (as in x. 401) but a name; comp. 722, *nirvāṇam Sāntindhasya śruteḥ chakradhara*.

<sup>41</sup> **Mahāpuruṣa** corresponds here to the *śalākāpuruṣa* of **Hemach**. 700.



The birth of Ajitasvāmin in Ayodhya from Jitasatru and Yasomati,<sup>43</sup> is described in detail, like that of Rishabha (in iii.) and of Pāreva (in xiv.). The usual dreams indicate to the mother the high honour which is conferred on her (25). Fifty-six Dikkumāryas arrive in haste to venerate her (30), and Saudharmendra himself took him in his lap (35); the father gave to him the name Ajita and to the other son the name of Sagara.

SARGA OF CHAPTER IX. (589 vv.).

(In this the *Srisatrunjaya mātmyeprathamah khaṇḍah* ends.) *SriRāmaprabhīṭimahā puruṣavarṇano nāma*, — describes Rāma and other great men.

Whilst hitherto, as relates to Rishabha and Bharata, we had only to deal with personalities of the Jaina legend itself, we now reach the appropriations from Brāhmaṇ legends by the Jainas, which have been made, partly at least, in a very arbitrary way. In this the principal object seems to be to refer all these ancient heroes back to Rishabha as their ancestor, from whose two grandsons Sūryayāsa and Somayāsa the solar and lunar races are derived. The Hari-race (see Colebrooke, Vol. II. p. 207; Wilson, *Mack. Coll.* I. 153) is a branch of the latter.

Vira continues: "listen further, O Sakra, to the history of this Ikshvākuvāṇṣa, as also to that of the mountain. I tell the histories of Sri Suvratajinaendra (the 20th Jina, comp. x. 320), of Nārāyaṇa,<sup>44</sup> Rāma and Bāvaṇa.

After many kings in the family of the Ādityas had passed, the Ayodhya prince Vijaya<sup>45</sup> ruled; by his wife Himachulā, he had a son named Vajrabāhu, who begat Purandara; and he begat Kirtidhara. His son Sukośala abdicated the government in favour of his pregnant wife, and became an ascetic (7). After Naghusha, Sodāsa, Sīṅharatha, Brahmaratha, Hemaratha, Sataratha, Vāriratha, Induratha, Ādityaratha, Māndhātā, Virasena, (Virāsana, MS.), Prati-manyu, Padmabandhu, Vimanyu, Kuveradatta, . . . . Kaku(t)stha, Raghu, Anarāyaṇa, Aja, Anantaratha, we come (92) to Daśaratha. Of these names but few are known to the Brāhmanic pedigrees of the *Rāmāyaṇa* and *Purāṇas* (Lassen, *Ind.* I. p. iv. ff.; Wilson, *Vish. Pur.* Vol. III. p. 314), which Brāhmanic genealogies, however, do not agree with one another, and the order of succession differs in them. Here, probably, we have to deal in all three instances only with invented names, which except in a few merely general traits cannot be expected to agree.

To Daśaratha, in addition to his three wives Kausalyā, Kekayātmejā, and Sumitrā, a fourth is here ascribed, namely Suprabhā, who becomes the mother of Satrugna, whilst Sumitrā bears only Lakshmaṇa. Rāma is called Padma, and Lakshmaṇa — Nārāyaṇa (94-98, — we should rather expect the reverse): the former is the name of the ninth Chakravartin in Hemachandra (v. 693), as also of the eighth white Bala<sup>46</sup> (demigod), *ib.* 698 (the ninth is called [Bala]Rāma); the latter that of the eighth black Vāsudeva (Ardhachakravartin, Schol. to v. 695), *ibid.* 697, whose enemy is Laukesh, *i. e.*, Rāvaṇa, *ib.* 699. The *Satr. Māh.* does not seem to know anything of a similar classification (after Vāsudeva, Bala); on the other hand *chakradhara*, *chakrabhrīṭ*, occur in the sense of *chakravartin*, see x. 401, 403, also *chakrin*, i. 2, v. 2, vi. 3, x. 143, 728. The *Kalpasūtra* has the names of Vāsudeva, Baladeva (Stevenson, pp. 36, 65).

Prince Janaka of Mithila is here called Vāsavaketu son of Vipulā and of the Harivaṇśa (v. 99).

Rāma's sons are called Lavaṇāṁkuśau (548). . . . .

(To be continued.)

<sup>43</sup> Elsewhere the Jainas give Vijayā as her name.

<sup>44</sup> *i. e.*, Lakshmaṇa, see below.

<sup>45</sup> Name of the second White Bala, Hemach. 698.

<sup>46</sup> The Bala in v. 698 of Hemach. is the elder brother (*agraja*) of Vāsudeva.



A COMPLETE VERBAL CROSS-INDEX TO YULE'S HOBSON-JOBSON  
OR GLOSSARY OF ANGLO-INDIAN WORDS.

BY CHARLES PARTRIDGE, M. A.

(Continued from p. 160.)

- Budulscheri; ann. 1718: *s. v.* Pondicherry, 546, i.  
 Budzart; ann. 1866: *s. v.* Budzat, 93, i.  
 Budzat; *s. v.* 93, i.  
 Budzo; ann. 1770: *s. v.* Buddha, 91, i.  
 Budzoism; ann. 1770: *s. v.* Buddha, 91, i.  
 Budzoists; ann. 1770: *s. v.* Buddha, 91, i.  
 Buf; ann. 1585: *s. v.* Buffalo, 93, ii.  
 Bufalo; *s. v.* Buffalo, 93, i; ann. 1589: *s. v.* Buffalo, 94, i.  
 Buff; *s. v.* Buffalo, 93, i; ann. 1598: *s. v.* Buffalo, 94, i.  
 Buffala; ann. 1808: *s. v.* Buffalo, 94, i.  
 Buffali; ann. 1631: *s. v.* Tumasha, 717, i.  
 Buffalo; *s. v.* 93, i (twice) and ii (7 times), *s. v.* Anaconda, 16, ii, 17, i, *s. v.* Dewally, 238, ii, *s. v.* Hump, 327, ii, *s. v.* Elephant, 796, ii, 797, i, *s. v.* Numerical Affixes, 832, ii; ann. 7: *s. v.* Anaconda, 757, i; ann. 1350: *s. v.* Martaban, 428, i; ann. 1522: *s. v.* Coco-de-Mer, 177, ii; ann. 1590: *s. v.* Aracan, 758, ii; ann. 1630 and 1644: *s. v.* 94, i; ann. 1663: *s. v.* Neelgye, 476, i; ann. 1666 and 1689: *s. v.* 94, i; ann. 1711: *s. v.* Pariah, 514, ii; ann. 772: *s. v.* Zebu, 747, i; ann. 1806: *s. v.* Gour (a), 298, i, 3 times; ann. 1810: *s. v.* 94, i; ann. 1824: *s. v.* Gyanl, 309, ii; ann. 1878: *s. v.* 94, i, twice.  
 Buffalo-bandy; ann. 1800: *s. v.* Bandy, 44, ii.  
 Buffalo-demon; *s. v.* Mysore, 467, i.  
 Buffalo-hide; *s. v.* Dubber, 253, i.  
 Buffalo Point; *s. v.* Rogue's River, 849, ii, twice.  
 Buffalo's Hump; *s. v.* Balasore, 760, i.  
 Buffalo tongues; *s. v.* Buffalo, 93, ii.  
 Buffalow Point; ann. 1711: *s. v.* Rogue's River, 850, i.  
 Buffe; ann. 1560: *s. v.* Laos, 385, ii; ann. 1585: *s. v.* Buffalo, 93, ii; ann. 1586: *s. v.* Tiger, 703, i.  
 Buffle; *s. v.* Buffalo, 93, i; ann. 70: *s. v.* Buffalo, 93, ii, twice; ann. 1585: *s. v.* Buffalo, 94, i.  
 Buffol; ann. 1626: *s. v.* Cavally, 135, ii; ann. 1630: *s. v.* Calavance, 110, ii.  
 Buffoll; ann. 1630: *s. v.* Lime, 394, i.  
 Bufta; ann. 1883: *s. v.* Bafta, 35, ii, twice.  
 Bug; *s. v.* Chints, 155, i, twice.  
 Bug-bear Liquors; ann. 1690: *s. v.* Coffee, 180, i.  
 Bugerow; ann. 1780: *s. v.* Budgerow, 92, i.  
 Buggalas; ann. 1842: *s. v.* Buggalow, 94, ii.  
 Buggalow; *s. v.* 94, i, *s. v.* Budgerow, 91, ii, *s. v.* Dhow, 243, ii, *s. v.* Sambook, 595, ii; ann. 1883: *s. v.* Dhow, 791, i.  
 Buggasses; ann. 1688: *s. v.* Bugis, 95, ii.  
 Buggese; ann. 1811: *s. v.* Bugis, 95, ii.  
 Buggess; ann. 1783: *s. v.* Bugis, 95, ii.  
 Buggesses; ann. 1783: *s. v.* A Muck, 15, i, *s. v.* Bugis, 95, ii, *s. v.* Swallow, 671, i.  
 Buggoses; ann. 1758: *s. v.* Bugis, 95, ii.  
 Buggy; *s. v.* 94, ii, 3 times, 768, i, twice, *s. v.* Bandy, 44, ii, *s. v.* Khanna, 366, i, *s. v.* Calash, 770, ii; ann. 1773: *s. v.* 95, i; ann. 1780: *s. v.* Banyan (I) b, 49, i, *s. v.* 95, i, twice; ann. 1781: *s. v.* Hanger, 312, ii; ann. 1782: *s. v.* 95, i, *s. v.* Caffer, 109, *s. v.* Toorkey, 710, ii, twice, *s. v.* Slave, 856, ii, twice; ann. 1784, 1793 and 1824: *s. v.* 95, i; ann. 1827: *s. v.* Pawl, 842, ii; ann. 1829: *s. v.* Horse-keeper, 324, ii; ann. 1837: *s. v.* Lat, 389, ii; ann. 1838, 1848 (twice) and 1872: *s. v.* 95, i; ann. 1876: *s. v.* Jennyrickshaw, 351, i; ann. 1878 and 1879: *s. v.* 95, i.  
 Buggy-connah; *s. v.* Khanna, 366, i.  
 Bughrukcha; ann. 1838: *s. v.* Budgrook, 768, i.  
 Buggy; ann. 1796: *s. v.* Tussah, 721, i.  
 Bugi; *s. v.* Swallow, 671, i.  
 Bugis; *s. v.* 95, i, *s. v.* Celèbes, 137, ii; ann. 1685: *s. v.* Upas, 730, ii; ann. 1849: *s. v.* A Muck, 15, ii; ann. 1878: *s. v.* 95, ii.  
 Bugisses; ann. 1682: *s. v.* Upas, 730, i.  
 Bugle; *s. v.* Buffalo, 93, i.  
 Bú-f; *s. v.* Tea, 690, ii.  
 Buitenzorg; *s. v.* Batavia, 54, i.  
 Bujra; ann. 1830: *s. v.* Budgerow, 92, i; ann. 1860: *s. v.* Paunchway, 522, i.  
 Bukor; ann. 1753: *s. v.* Sucker-Bucker, 858, ii.  
 Bukehee; ann. 1823: *s. v.* Buxee, 104, ii; ann. 1827: *s. v.* Buxee, 769, i.  
 Bukeheesh; *s. v.* Inaum, 329, ii.  
 Bukehey; ann. 1793: *s. v.* Buxee, 104, i.  
 Buktshy; ann. 1811: *s. v.* Buxee, 104, i and ii (3 times).  
 Bukyne; *s. v.* Tamarind, 580, ii.



- Bulbul; *s. v.* 95, ii, 7 times; ann. 1784: *s. v.* 95, ii; ann. 1813: *s. v.* 95, ii, 96, i; ann. 1848: *s. v.* 96, i.
- Bulchund; ann. 1683: *s. v.* Cazeer, 137, i, *s. v.* Gentoo, 280, ii.
- Bulela; *s. v.* Myrobolan, 465, i.
- Bulgar; *s. v.* 96, i; ann. 1624, 1673, 1680 and 1786: *s. v.* 96, i.
- Bulgary; ann. 1623: *s. v.* Bulgar, 96, i.
- Bulger; ann. 1759: *s. v.* Bulgar, 96, i.
- Bulghār; ann. 1811: *s. v.* Bulgar, 96, i.
- Bulghār; *s. v.* Bulgar, 96, i.
- Bulhari; ann. 1811: *s. v.* Bulgar, 96, i.
- Bulkut; *s. v.* 96, ii.
- Bullera; ann. 1885: *s. v.* Talook, 861, i, twice.
- Bull 'Id; *s. v.* Eed, 259, i.
- Bullion Cloth; ann. 1711: *s. v.* Perpetuano, 843, i.
- Bullock's-heart; *s. v.* Custard-Apple, 220, i.
- Bullock's heart; 221, ii, footnote.
- Bullumteer; *s. v.* 96, ii.
- Buluchis; ann. 1211: *s. v.* Bilooch, 71, i.
- Buluh; *s. v.* Bamboo, 40, ii, *s. v.* Wanghee (1), 740, i.
- Bulu swangy; *s. v.* Wanghee (1), 740, i.
- Bumba; *s. v.* 96, ii.
- Bumbalo; ann. 1813: *s. v.* Bummelo, 97, i.
- Bumbaloes; ann. 1785: *s. v.* Bummelo, 97, i.
- Bumbast; ann. 1566: *s. v.* Ormesine, 492, ii.
- Bumbello Point; *s. v.* Bummelo, 97, i.
- Bumbelo; ann. 1810: *s. v.* Bummelo, 97, i.
- Bumbelow; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Bummelo, 97, i.
- Bummalow; ann. 1877: *s. v.* Bummelo, 97, i.
- Bummelo; *s. v.* 96, ii, twice, *s. v.* Bombay Duck, 78, i, *s. v.* Buckshaw, 89, ii, *s. v.* Ducks, Bombay, 253, ii.
- Būn; *s. v.* Coffee, 178, ii.
- Bunaras; ann. 1790: *s. v.* Masalipatam, 429, ii.
- Buncal; *s. v.* Tael, 675, ii, twice.
- Buncho; ann. 1573: *s. v.* Coffee, 179, i.
- Bunchy; ann. 1628: *s. v.* Coffee, 179, ii.
- Bunco; *s. v.* Buncus, 97, i; ann. 1711: *s. v.* Buncus, 97, i, twice.
- Buncus; *s. v.* 97, i, *s. v.* Cheroot, 144, ii; ann. 1760: *s. v.* 97, i.
- Bund; *s. v.* 97, i and ii, *s. v.* Dowle, 251, i, *s. v.* Compradore, 782, i, *s. v.* Praya, 845, ii; ann. 1786: *s. v.* Poelbundy, 547, i; ann. 1810: *s. v.* 97, ii; ann. 1813: *s. v.* Bendameer, 63, i; ann. 1860, 1875 and 1876: *s. v.* 97, ii.
- Bund Amir; ann. 1850: *s. v.* Bendameer, 63, i.
- Bundelcund; ann. 1823: *s. v.* Thug, 697, ii.
- Bundelkhand; *s. v.* Coss, 203, i, *s. v.* Pindarry, 538, ii, *s. v.* Jeel, 811, i.
- Bund Emeer; ann. 1813: *s. v.* Bendameer, 63, i.
- Bunder; *s. v.* 97, ii, twice; ann. 1590: *s. v.* Arakan, 25, i; ann. 1673 and 1809: *s. v.* 97, ii; ann. 1877: *s. v.* Apollo Bunder, 24, i.
- Bunder-boat; *s. v.* 97, ii.
- Bunder Malunka; *s. v.* Madapollam, 406, ii.
- Bundobust; *s. v.* 98, i.
- Bundook; *s. v.* 98, i.
- Bundoo Sing; ann. 1756: *s. v.* Hackery, 310, ii.
- Bunduk; *s. v.* Bundook, 98, i, 3 times.
- Bunder; ann. 1825: *s. v.* Bunder-boat, 98, i.
- Bundur beat; ann. 1825: *s. v.* Bunder-boat, 98, i.
- Bunduri; ann. 1802: *s. v.* Coast, The, 172, i.
- Bundurlarce; ann. 1679: *s. v.* Larry-bunder, 816, ii.
- Bundy; ann. 1829: *s. v.* Bandy, 44, ii.
- Bung; ann. 1590: *s. v.* Bengal, 64, ii.
- Bungaleh; ann. 1590: *s. v.* Bengal, 64, ii.
- Bungalo; ann. 1780: *s. v.* Bungalow, 98, ii; ann. 1783: *s. v.* Cantonment, 121, ii; ann. 1793 (twice), 1794 and 1809: *s. v.* Bungalow, 99, i.
- Bungaleu; ann. 1872: *s. v.* Bungalow, 99, i.
- Bungalow; *s. v.* 98, i, 5 times, 768, i, *s. v.* Box-wallah, 83, i, *s. v.* Bungalow, Dawk-, 99, ii, see 156, i, footnote, *s. v.* Dawk Bungalow, 232, ii, twice, *s. v.* Singapore, 636, ii; ann. 1680: *s. v.* 768, i; ann. 1772: *s. v.* Sneaker, 645, i; ann. 1784 and 1787: *s. v.* 99, i; ann. 1810: *s. v.* Chaboetra, 139, i; ann. 1818 and 1824 (both twice): *s. v.* 99, i; ann. 1848: *s. v.* Achanoek, 2, ii; ann. 1849: *s. v.* Pitarrah, 540, ii; ann. 1862: *s. v.* Shela, 629, ii; ann. 1875: *s. v.* 99, ii.
- Bungalow, Dawk-; *s. v.* 99, ii.
- Bungarus; *s. v.* Polonga, 545, i.
- Bungarus caeruleus; *s. v.* Cobra Manilla, 173, i.
- Bungelo; ann. 1711: *s. v.* Bungalow, 768, ii.
- Bungelow; ann. 1711: *s. v.* Bungalow, 768, ii; ann. 1781-83: *s. v.* Bungalow, 98, ii.
- Bunghee; ann. 1826: *s. v.* Bungy, 99, ii.
- Bungkus; *s. v.* Buncus, 97, i.
- Bungy; *s. v.* 99, ii, twice, *s. v.* Halálcore, 311, ii, *s. v.* Mehtar, 433, i.
- Bunjār; *s. v.* Brinjarry, 88, i.
- Bunjara; ann. 1632: *s. v.* Vanjārās, 88, i, twice; ann. 1813: *s. v.* Vanjārās, 88, ii.
- Bunjarrah; *s. v.* Brinjarry, 88, i.
- Bunjarree; *s. v.* Brinjarry, 87, ii.
- Bunkur; *s. v.* Sayer, 605, i.
- Bonn; *s. v.* Coffee, 178, ii.
- Bunnayah; *s. v.* Bunow, 100, i.



- Bunnow; *s. v.* Bunow, 100, i, *s. v.* Foozilow, 272, i.  
 Bunu; ann. 1628: *s. v.* Coffee, 179, ii.  
 Bunow; *s. v.* 99, ii, *s. v.* Bobbery-pack, 76, i, *s. v.* Puckerow, 556, ii, *s. v.* Shampoo, 621, ii, *s. v.* Lugow, To, 820, i; ann. 1810: *s. v.* Mehtar, 433, i.  
 Bunru; ann. 1573: *s. v.* Coffee, 179, i.  
 Bunya; *s. v.* Banyan (1), 48, ii, *s. v.* Brahminy Bull, 85, i, *s. v.* Buckaul, 90, i, *s. v.* Hindoo, 316, i, twice, *s. v.* Kythee, 380, ii.  
 Buona-Bahia; ann. 1760: *s. v.* Bombay, 78, i.  
 Burabra; ann. 1335: *s. v.* Concan, 189, ii.  
 Buraghiagh; ann. 1767: *s. v.* Sonaparanta, 647, i.  
 Buraghiagh; ann. 1759: *s. v.* Caréns, 773, i.  
 Bûraghmah; ann. 1759: *s. v.* Burma, 101, i, *s. v.* Talapoin, 678, i.  
 Burampoota; ann. 1763: *s. v.* Munneepore, 827, i, 3 times.  
 Bûrân; *s. v.* China, 153, i.  
 Burdomaan; *s. v.* Burdwan, 100, i.  
 Burdwan; *s. v.* 100, i, twice, *s. v.* Adawlut, 752, ii, 753, i; ann. 1760: *s. v.* Chucklah, 780, i, *s. v.* Resident (a), 848, ii; ann. 1786: *s. v.* Poolbundy, 547, i; ann. 1790: *s. v.* Sayer, 605, ii.  
 Burce; ann. 1799: *s. v.* Jowaula mookhee, 354, ii.  
 Burger; *s. v.* Burgher (a), 100, i.  
 Burgher; *s. v.* 100, i, 768, ii, *s. v.* Badega (b), 34, ii; ann. 1807 and 1877: *s. v.* (a), 100, ii.  
 Burgundasses; ann. 1776: *s. v.* Zemindar, 748, ii.  
 Burhanpur; *s. v.* Bora, 79, ii.  
 Burial, Straits of; ann. 1790: *s. v.* Guardafui, Cape, 305, ii.  
 Bûridan; *s. v.* Bâlyar, 40, ii.  
 Burishki; *s. v.* Rice, 578, i.  
 Buri-Thabet; ann. 1247: *s. v.* Tibet, 699, i.  
 Burj-khâdî; *s. v.* Breech-Candy, 767, i.  
 Burkandâz; ann. 1850: *s. v.* Buxerry, 105, i.  
 Barkundauze; *s. v.* 100, ii, *s. v.* Budgerow, 91, ii, *s. v.* Buxerry, 104, ii, *s. v.* Duffadar, 253, ii, *s. v.* Peon, 528, i.  
 Burkundazes; ann. 1794: *s. v.* Burkundauze, 100, ii.  
 Burladorn; *s. v.* Datura, 231, i.

(To be continued.)

## CORRESPONDENCE.

## ASPECT OF HINDU WORSHIP.

TO THE EDITOR OF THE "INDIAN ANTIQUARY."

SIR, — At Vol. XXIX. p. 272, a question is asked regarding the Hindu aspect of worship at noon and evening and towards the north. I feel inclined to solve the problem contained in it thus:—

In the Vedic period, in which Nature alone in her bare outlines was the source of worship and when no work of representation was yet admitted into or invented by the admiring curiosity of the primal beings, there was but one single direction (i. e., if there was any at all), to which worshippers turned their faces at the time of offering their simple yet sincere prayers. The rosy dim light of the dawn and the immediately succeeding dazzling light of the sun impressed their images so vividly on their infant minds that they began to pour forth their natural feeling of adoration to these phenomena, regarding them as

so many deities in subsequent periods. During the whole Vedic period, moreover, though we find respectful mention made of other gods and goddesses, yet nowhere is to be traced any other direction to which the worshipper turned his face at the time of prayer. But as ritualistic tendency increased and forms were conjoined to prayers, in the succeeding ages of the *Brâhmana*, and more especially the *Sûtra*, days, the worshipper had to pay attention to other quarters as well. Then, according as the preëminence of certain deities was to be considered the chief factor of worship, directions were resorted to ceremoniously. Thus all the eight quarters of the universe are dedicated to eight — and even to more according to some writers — deities that are looked upon as presiding over them for fulfilling the objects in view of worshippers.<sup>1</sup> In a work, in which various quarters are assigned to various deities, it is stated that the god *Brahmâ*

<sup>1</sup> एषे विभक्त्य राज्यानि क्रमेण सपितामहः ।

दिशापालनय ततः स्थापयामास भारत ॥ १ ॥

एषेस्यां दिशि पुत्रं तु वैराजस्य प्रजापतेः ।

दिशापालं सुधन्वानं राजानं सोऽभ्येषचयेत् ॥ २ ॥

दक्षिणस्यां महात्मानं कर्देमस्य प्रजापतेः ।

पुत्रं राजपदे नाम राजानं सोऽभ्येषचयेत् ॥ ३ ॥

पश्चिमायां दिशि तथा रजसः पुत्रमध्युतम् ।

केतुर्धर्मं महात्मानं राजानं सोऽभ्येषचयेत् ॥ ४ ॥

तथा हिरण्यरोमाणं पर्जन्यस्य प्रजापतेः ।

उदार्च्यां दिशि दुर्धर्मे राजानं सोऽभ्येषचयेत् ॥ ५ ॥

तेरिदं श्रियिषां सर्वो सत्तर्द्धपा सपत्न्या ।

यथा प्रदेशमवापि धर्मेण परिपाल्यते ॥ ६ ॥



distributed bit by bit the portions of the universe, and appointed guardians of different directions. In consonance with this belief, prayer is offered to each in the direction consecrated by his residence. There is no rule of guidance, be it remarked in passing, for facing toward directions in the ordinary daily performances that are known as *Nitya Karmas*. In a *Kāmya* or *Naimittika Karma*, the worshipper has to invoke that deity from whom he intends to seek his boon with due ceremonials. In the former description, however, he has to pay some regard to directions and such other forms, but an unconscious neglect of any of them does not deserve to be met by any penalty. The turning of the devotee's face towards a particular direction depends, to a great extent, upon his choice of the deity. Siva, the supreme God of Destruction, is adored in the north, and the Sun, the vivifying agent of the animal and the vegetable world, is adored in

the east during the hours of morning. The latter is worshipped in the north when he is in his full meridian, and in the west, in his decline. A Brāhman, for instance, offers his *Arghya*, in the course of his performance of the *Sandhyā* ceremony, to the Sun in these three directions, the east, the north and the west, during mornings, noons and evenings. In funeral ceremonies, however, the deities that are invoked to preside over the ceremonies are worshipped in the south, because of its being dedicated to Yama, the God of Death.

The subject demands fuller treatment than can be given in a mere letter, and I hope to return more fully later on in a set paper.

Bhavnagar, S. S. MEHTA, B. A.

Bhagat's Street,  
5th Nov. 1900.

### MISCELLANEA.

#### THE POPULAR VIEW OF GANESA IN MADRAS.

Ganēsa, the God of Wisdom, and the eldest son of Siva and Pārvatī, is the remover of obstacles and difficulties, and the most popular of all the domestic deities of India. His shrine is in every Hindu village, and he is worshipped in every Hindu house. Every school-boy commences his lessons after making his usual prayers to Ganēsa. The following two prayers are usually given to him by a Brāhman boy:—

*"Gajānanaḥ bhūta ghaṇṭī sēvitum  
Kapītha jambu palāśtra bhakṣitum  
Umāntam śoka vindā kṛānam  
Namāmi Viṣṇūvarapādapaṅkajam."*

*"Mushikavāhaṇaḥ modaka hantā  
Chāmarakarṇā Vilambita nṛtrā  
Vāmana rūpā Mahāśvērāputrā  
Vignavimūyaka padmnamaste."*

Every merchant enters on his business after first propitiating this deity. In marriages and in every kind of religious ceremony Ganēsa is the first god whose help is invoked. Almost all the standard works in the Sanskrit and Vernacular languages begin with an invocation of the help of this God of Wisdom.

Ganēsa is represented as elephant in face and man in body. The elephant's head is the emblem of sagacity. He has four arms, and they hold an elephant's trunk, a mouse, mace, and *modaka* (rice-pudding). He wears a crown. His ears are adorned with jewels, and in the forehead he wears the *vibhūti* (the sacred ashes).

He is worshipped under different names, as Ganēsa, Gaṇapati, Vināyaka and Pillayar (Tamil), by all Hindus. In all the Saiva temples there is a shrine attached to him, and in the Vaiṣṇava temples he is worshipped as Tumbikai Alwar—the sage with the elephant's trunk—and as Viśvaksēna. He has also temples of his own in many places, and as the favourite son of Siva he receives honours equal to him. His image is adored by men and women alike with sincere devotion. He is, in fact, the personification of sagacity, shrewdness, patience and learning.

As an instance of his sagacity, it is popularly narrated that, when he was a child and playing in company with his brother Subrahmanya, Siva promised to present a mango-fruit to him who made a circuit round the world and returned first. Subrahmanya summoned his *vāhana* the peacock, mounted, and was ready for the journey. But Ganēsa calmly went round Siva, his father, and then demanded the fruit. "But you never went round the world," said Siva. "What is the world, but your own holy self. I went round you, therefore I went round the world," was Ganēsa's wise reply. Siva was, of course, convinced, praised Ganēsa for his shrewdness, and gave him the fruit, which, however, he shared with Subrahmanya.

The peculiarity of the worship of Ganēsa is that it is combined as it were with that of every other god and all sects unite in claiming him as their own. The largest temple built in South-



ern India in honour of Ganéśa is the famous and beautiful rock temple built in Trichinopoly known as the Uchchipillayar Kōvil.

Vinayakachavuti is the day on which Ganéśa was born — the fourth day of Bhādrapad, and on that day there is, of course, a birthday feast in his honour, and clay images of him are made for worship, as the worship of *mṛtika* or earth is enjoined by the *Śāstras*. In respectable families a magnificent image, richly gilt and adorned, is prepared and placed in the central part of the house and decorated with all kinds of flower garlands. Old and young bathe early in the morning and sit near the priest, who consecrates the idol by reciting incantations from his books and throwing on it red-coloured rice or *mantrak-shilas*. Food, sweetmeats and fruit are offered to the image, and the god is invoked to partake

of the offerings. In the evening the rest of the ceremony is performed by the master of the house through the priest, who invokes the god to bless the whole of the family and remove any calamity that may be threatening them during the year. The next evening the image is carried to a tank and committed to the water with expressions of regret for the departure of the god till the next year.

On the day of this feast, the Hindus are prohibited from looking at the moon; and if by accident they should see it, they get their neighbours to revile them in the hope that the calamity likely to follow may be limited to this abuse. This feast is observed with still greater pomp, conviviality and music in the Bombay Presidency, and kept up there for ten days.

K. SRIKANTA IYER.

## NOTES AND QUERIES.

### WEEPING AS A FORM OF GREETING.

AMONGST the Andamanese the well known method, often reported, of greeting a relative after a prolonged absence is to sit round him and weep audibly and visibly. Lately, while I was looking on at a scene of this kind with some Panjābi police, who were both Sikhs and Musalmāns, I was surprised at their telling me that weeping was a common method of receiving very near relatives after a long absence in the Panjāb also.

R. C. TEMPLE.

### CORRUPTIONS OF ENGLISH IN FORT BLAIR.

1. *Bis*, the Hindustani word for "twenty" is used by some of the convicts in giving their numbers; thus, when asked his name and number a man will reply:—"Bis 172." By this he means "No. 172 B." A good many years ago the numbering of the convicts was recommenced from the beginning and the second series were distinguished by the English letter B.

2. Among building terms the following are commonly in use:—*Halpilat* for wall-plate.

3. *Batan* for batten.

4. *Kinpōsh* for king-post.

5. *Kirnis* for screen.

R. C. TEMPLE.

### HINDU SUPERSTITIONS IN THE CENTRAL PROVINCES.

1. Some old women are always sweeping the house or yard although there is a saw against it:—

"As oft thy house or yard thou sweepest,  
So oft a dear one's loss thou weepst."

2. No woman will sweep out the house at night for fear of sweeping away Lakshmi, the goddess of wealth.

3. If the umbilical cord quickly falls from the child after birth it foretells liberality; if it is slow in doing so it foretells closeness.

4. Directly a child is born and before it is washed, one of the women present, usually an old member of the family, smiles on the child and besprinkles it with water. In doing this she has a two-fold object: to mould the character of the child to her own model, and to prevent any ill effects, should the child sneeze before it is cleaned. A sneeze in such conditions is a terrible thing, for it prognosticates a death among those who surround it, and in any case upsets the business of any one who happens to hear it.

5. It is a common practice to pass a newly purchased fowl three times round the domestic hearth. This is sometimes varied by taking a little salt and, after passing it three times round the fowl, throwing the salt into the fire. The object in either is the same. By this means the fowl is induced to stay at home, and there is no need to clip its wings or to keep it shut up for a time.

Nagpur.

M. R. PARLOW.



## NOTES ON INDIAN HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHY.

BY J. F. FLEET, I.C.S. (RETD.), PH.D., C.I.E.

## The Sindavāḍi country.

AN inscription at a temple called Jōḍakalaśadaguḍi, "the temple of the two similar pinnacles," at Sūḍi, in the Rōṇ tāluka of the Dhārwar district,<sup>1</sup> records that, on Sōmavāra (Monday) the full-moon day of the month Māgha of the Vikārin *saṁvatsara*, Śaka-Saṁvat 981 (expired, according to the southern luni-solar system of the cycle), — that is to say, in January, A. D. 1060,<sup>2</sup> — the Western Chālukya king Trailōkyamalla-Āhavamalla-(Sōmēśvara I.), having made a state progress through the south, and having conquered the Chōla, turned back, and, while continuing his progress,<sup>3</sup> at Puḷiyappayaṇaviḍu which was a village included in the Sindavāḍi nāḍi,<sup>4</sup> on the occasion of an eclipse of the moon, gave the village of Sivuṇṇr which was included in the Kisukāḍ seventy,<sup>5</sup> by a *tāmraśāsana* or copper-plate charter; and, having obtained it, the Mahāśāmantādhipati and Manererggaḍe, the Daṇḍanāyaka Nāgaḍēva, who had the *biruda* of Āhavamallanākēśari, "the lion of Āhavamalla," — and who was then governing the Kisukāḍ seventy, the Toragare sixty, and Bālgulikār-Iṭṭage and other (unnamed) *bhattagrāmes*, according to the *sarvābhyaṅtarasiddhi*, — gave the village of Sivuṇṇr by a *śilāśāsana*, or stone charter, to Sōmēśvarapaṇḍita, of the temple of the god Nāgēśvara, — founded by himself (Nāgaḍēva), and attached to (*pratibaddha*) the temple of the god Nāgarēśvara of the royal city or capital (*rājadhāni*) Sūḍi, — for the rites and repairs of the temple of Nāgēśvara, and for the feeding of ascetics, and other purposes.<sup>6</sup>

The Sindavāḍi country is mentioned again in an inscription of A. D. 1079 at Anantapur in the Shimoga district, Mysore, brought to notice by Mr. Rice,<sup>7</sup> which places in it an *agrahāra*, the name of which is given in the published translation as "Kambagāla Belgali," but in the original is really, — Mr. Rice has told me, — *Kaṇṇahagāra-Belgali*.

*Kaṇṇahagāra-Belgali* is easily identified with the 'Kunchagar Bellagul' of the Indian Atlas sheet No. 58 (1827), on the east bank of the Hagari-Vēdavati river, in lat. 15° 31', long. 77° 2', eighteen miles towards the north-west-by-west from Alūr, the head-quarters of the Ālūr tāluka of the Bellary district.<sup>8</sup>

With this identification established, we can see that the Sindavāḍi country included at any rate the Ālūr tāluka of the Bellary district, and doubtless also the Ādōni or Ādwāni tāluka, on the north of Ālūr, up to the Tuṅgabhadra. The name means "the country of the Sindas." And we shall probably find hereafter that the Sindavāḍi country included much

<sup>1</sup> Not published. A transcription is given in the *Elliot MS. Collection*, Vol. I., p. 144 ff. of the copy in the Library of the Edinburgh University, p. 86 b. ff. of the copy in the Library of the Royal Asiatic Society, London. I quote, however, from an ink-impression.

<sup>2</sup> Mention is made, further on, of an eclipse of the moon, which has to be taken in connection with the above details. The date, however, has not been recorded altogether correctly. On the specified full-moon day, there was a total eclipse of the moon, visible in India: but the day was not a Monday; it was Thursday, 20th January, A. D. 1060 (see Von Oppolzer's *Canon der Finsternisse*, p. 390, No. 3503, and Sewell's *Eclipses of the Moon in India*, p. xiv.). — A year later, there was a partial eclipse of the moon, visible in India, on Monday, 8th January, A. D. 1061; but this, though again the full-moon of Māgha, was in the Śarvarin *saṁvatsara*, Śaka-Saṁvat 982 (expired).

<sup>3</sup> *Dakṣiṇa-dīp-vijayaṇ-geyaḍu Chōlanāṇi jayaṇ-geyaḍu maguḷe bijayaṇ-geyyuttuḥ*. — Regarding the meaning of *vijayaṇ-gey* and *bijayaṇ-gey*, 'to go in triumph, to make a state progress; to visit,' see *Ep. Ind.* Vol. VI. p. 51, note 5. It is just possible, however, that, while rendering *bijayaṇ-gey* in that way, we should translate *vijayaṇ-gey* by 'to conquer,' at least in some passages.

<sup>4</sup> *Sindavāḍi-nāḍi beliya grāmaṇi Puḷiyappayaṇa-viḍiṇi*.

<sup>5</sup> *Kisukāḍ-ṣipattaga beliya Sivuṇṇr*.

<sup>6</sup> In connection with my remarks about *namas* and *vinamasa* in *Ep. Ind.* Vol. VI. p. 168, note 11, it may be noted that a verse in this record presents the word *dnamaṇa*, — *Siva-pada-yugaḷ-dnamaṇa-vidyārtthigalgaṇa*, "and for students who bow down to the two feet of Śiva."

<sup>7</sup> *Mysore Inscriptions*, p. 305.

<sup>8</sup> The prefix in the name serves to distinguish the place from 'Bader Bellagul,' thirty-two miles towards the north-east, and 'Kerra Bellagul,' forty-nine miles towards the east-north-east, and 'Huttee Bellagul,' nineteen miles to the south-east-by-east, from 'Kunchagar Bellagul.'



more than the territory indicated just above, and that the latter had some more specific name, marking it as a subdivision of the whole Sindavāḍi country. For, in the first place, immediately on the west of the Hagari-Vēdavati river there was a district known as the Ballakunde three-hundred, — taking its name from the 'Bullakoondy' of the map, in lat.  $15^{\circ} 32'$ , long.  $77^{\circ}$ , in the Bellary tāluka, but having Kurgōd as its chief town, — which, though in A. D. 1010 it was in the administrative charge of Iriya-Nolambādhirāja under Vikramāditya V., was in A. D. 1178 and 1181 in the possession of the Mahāmaṇḍalēśvara Piriya-Rāchamalla and his grandson the Mahāmaṇḍalēśvara Irmāḍi-Rāchamalla, son of Irmāṅga, belonging to one of the branches of the Sinda family that claimed descent from "the long-armed Sinda;" and another clear indication of the territory belonging to the Sindas seems to be furnished by the name of the 'Sindunoor' of the map, a town in the Nizam's Dominions, on the north of the Tunga-Whadrā, in lat.  $15^{\circ} 46'$ , long.  $76^{\circ} 49'$ .

Further, Puliyappayanaviḍu may now be safely identified with the 'Hoolybeade' of the map, three miles almost due north of Ālūr.<sup>9</sup> 'Hoolybeade' appears to be only an ordinary village, not a town. But Puliyappayanaviḍu is itself described in the record as only a village (*grāma*); and the map shews several large tanks, within easy reach from 'Hoolybeade,' as well as smaller ones at 'Hoolybeade' itself and at 'Toomlybeade' close by, which would make the locality convenient for the encampment (*biḍu*, *viḍu*) of an army.

We can also now identify the village of Sivunūr in the Kisukāḍ seventy. The boundaries of it are fully laid down in the record. The passage does not include any village-names. But it places on the south-west, west, north-west, and north, a stream called *perbaḷla*, "the big stream," and on the north-east the *uppina-paḷla*, "the salt stream."<sup>10</sup> The record entrusts the guardianship of the grant to the six *Gāvaṇḍus* and the eight *Seṭṭis* of Sūḍi, which indicates that Sivunūr must have been somewhere quite close to Sūḍi. This, and the mention of the two streams, suggests at once the 'Jeegulloor' of the Indian Atlas sheet No. 41 (1852), the 'Jigloor' of the Map of the Dhārwar Collectorate (1874), six miles west-south-west from Sūḍi,<sup>11</sup> and lying just south of the confluence of a large stream and a smaller one. And, whether we take the actual spelling of the modern name as Jigaḷūr or as Jigalūr, we can now recognise that the two names Sivunūr and Jigaḷūr or Jigalūr are in fact identical. For the occasional change from *s* into *j*, at any rate in composition, we have the authority of the *Sabdamaṇḍarapaṇa*, sūtra 68, the examples to which give us *pon + surige = poṇḷurige*, 'a golden knife or dagger,' *mun + sūr = muṇḷūr*, 'the front eaves of a house,' *mun + seṇagu = muṇḷeṇagu*, 'the front end of a female's garment,' and *tan + soḍar = tanjoḍar*, 'an extinguished lamp.' For the interchange of *n* with *l* and *ḷ*, we may quote the well known name of the Kaḷachurya king Bijjaṇa or Bijjala, and *baṇa*, *baḷa*, 'a branch of a family,' etc.,<sup>12</sup> and the variants *maṇal*, *malal*, *maḷal*, also *maral* and *malar*, all meaning 'sand, gravel.' For the interchange of *v* and *g*, the Rev. F. Kittel's Kannada-English Dictionary gives us *toral*, *tāl*, *togal*, 'the skin, a hide, leather;' and we may compare, from the same authority, the connection of *bēgu*, *bēhu*, 'spying,' with the Tamil and Malayāḷam *vēvu*; and we have a cognate interchange of *b* and *g* in *gombe*, *bombe*, 'an image, idol, puppet, doll,' and *goḷali*, *boḷali*, 'husk, chaff,' and *gobbuḷi*, *bobbuḷi*, 'a kind of Acacia.' The Sūḍi inscription of A. D. 1060 itself furnishes another instance of the interchange of *v* and *g*: among the enemies whom, it says, the

<sup>9</sup> Regarding certain erroneous proposals to identify Puliyappayanaviḍu with Huliyār in the Tumkūr district, Mysore, and Sivunūr with Savanūr, the chief town of the Native State of the same name within the limits of the Dhārwar district, — (the former has been repeated in *Mysore*, revised edition, Vol. I. p. 328), — reference may be made, if wanted, to *Dyn. Kan. Distr.* p. 441, note 6.

<sup>10</sup> On the south of Sivunūr it places — *gōḍaiya keṇeya teṇḷaṇa meyya baṇniya-maraḍa mug-guḍḍe*, — "three heaps (of stones) at a baṇni-tree (or, perhaps, three clusters of baṇni-trees) on the south side of the tank called Gōḍaiyakere, "the tank of the Gōḍai, or of the Gōḍaiś." The tank is not shown in the map, and perhaps does not now exist. For the word *gōḍaiś*, see *Ep. Ind.* Vol. VI. p. 255, and note 2.

<sup>11</sup> I take here, of course, as everywhere else, the distance from village-site to village-site. The eastern boundary of the lands of 'Jeegulloor,' 'Jigloor,' is only two and a half miles away from the southern half of the western boundary of Sūḍi.

<sup>12</sup> See *Ep. Ind.* Vol. VI. p. 258, and note 2.



*Dandānyaka* Nāgadēva conquered for his sovereign, it names Bhōja and the Gūrjara and Sēgūna; this Bhōja is the Paramāra king Bhōja of Dhārā;<sup>13</sup> and Sēgūna can only stand for the well known Sēvūna and denote the contemporaneous Yādava prince of the Sēṇa, Sēvūna, or Sēvaṇa country, in the direction of Nāsik and Khāndēsh.<sup>14</sup> And the inscription of A. D. 980 at Sogal, in the Belgaum district,<sup>15</sup> presents the ancient name of that place in the forms of Soval and Sōl. We have also a cognate change illustrated by the passing of the old name Bempūr into the modern form of Bēgūr.<sup>16</sup>

#### The Kisukāḍ seventy district.

I have described the **Kisukāḍ seventy** as a small district of which the chief town was Paṭṭadakal, the ancient Kisuvoḷal and Paṭṭada-Kisuvoḷal, in the Bādāmi tāluka of the Bijāpur district,<sup>1</sup> and, again, as the country round Paṭṭadakal in the Bijāpur district.<sup>2</sup> There can be no doubt that Paṭṭadakal was the original capital of the district; and it was probably always its real capital. The district included, however, other towns of considerable importance. And the reference to Paṭṭadakal alone does not give a sufficiently accurate idea of the position and extent of the district. These two points will be made clear in the present note.

Paṭṭadakal is mentioned by both the forms of its name in the Paṭṭadakal inscription of A. D. 1163, of the time of the Sinda prince Chāvuṇḍa II. That prince is there described as ruling, — together with the princes (*kumārā*), that is to say, his sons Āchidēva III. and Permāḍi II., — the Kisukāḍ seventy, the Bāgaḍage seventy, the Keḷavāḍi three-hundred, and other (unnamed) districts. The record first introduces Paṭṭadakal, in prose, as **Paṭṭada-Kisuvoḷal**, and describes it as the *āḷikeya-paṭṭaṇa* or "town of government" of Dēmaladēvi, the *priyavasi* or "senior queen" of Chāvuṇḍa II., and of the prince (*kumāra*) Āchidēva III.<sup>3</sup> It then mentions the town four times, in verse, as simply **Kisuvoḷal**;<sup>4</sup> and the first of these four passages places it in the **Kisukāḍu nāḍu**, which, again, it locates in the Kuntala country. And then again, in prose, it mentions it once more as **Paṭṭada-Kisuvoḷal**, the *rājadhāni-paṭṭaṇa* or "royal town" which Dēmaladēvi and Āchidēva III. were governing,<sup>5</sup> and, further on, once more as **Kisuvoḷal**, "which had caused itself to be called the Dakṣhiṇa-Vāraṇāsi or Benares of the South," — in connection with "the god Vijayēśvara of Kisuvoḷal who was a most glorious incarnation (or local form) of the god Viśvēśvara."<sup>6</sup>

This god **Vijayēśvara** was the god to whom the grants registered in this record were made, and was the god of the temple at which the record itself stands, though that temple has come to be now known as the temple of Saṅgamēśvara.<sup>7</sup> There are two records on pillars, structural and still standing parts of the temple, referable to approximately the period A. D. 875 to 900, which mention the god by the corrupt names of **Bhijayēśvara** and **Bijēśvara**.<sup>8</sup> A record on another structural part of the temple, — on the west wall of the centre hall, on the right or north side of the door leading into the shrine, — and referable to a somewhat earlier date,

<sup>13</sup> See *Dyn. Kan. Diṣṭra*. p. 441.

<sup>14</sup> Noticed, *id.* pp. 423, 553.

<sup>15</sup> *Dyn. Kan. Diṣṭra*. p. 305; and, more recently, *Ep. Ind.* Vol. V. p. 166.

<sup>16</sup> *Jour. Bo. Br. R. As. Soc.* Vol. XI. p. 272; and text lines 52 to 56. — The date of this inscription has not been correctly recorded. The passage gives certain details in "the Subhānu saṁvatsara, which was the one thousand and eighty-fourth of the Śaka years." But Śaka-Saṁvat 1084 (expired) was the Chitrabhānu saṁvatsara; and Subhānu was Ś.-S. 1085 (expired). If we accept the Śaka year, the date should fall in May, A. D. 1162; while, if we accept the saṁvatsara, it should fall in May, A. D. 1163; but the details do not work out correctly for either year (see Prof. Kielhorn's examination of the date, Vol. XXIV. above, p. 15, No. 187). As it is more likely that a mistake should be made in respect of the number of a Śaka year than in the name of a saṁvatsara, it seems best in cases like this, in which the matter cannot be decided finally either way, to follow the saṁvatsara, and, accordingly, to treat the present record as a record of A. D. 1163, rather than of A. D. 1162 or, somewhat inconveniently, of A. D. 1162 or 1163.

<sup>4</sup> *Ibid.*; and text lines 57, 59, 61, 62.

<sup>5</sup> *Ibid.* p. 273; and text lines 65, 66. Viśvēśvara was a form of Śiva, especially as worshipped at Benares.

<sup>7</sup> See Vol. X. above, p. 169, and *Ep. Ind.* Vol. III. p. 3.

<sup>8</sup> Vol. X. above, p. 170, Nos. 112, 113. — It is, however, possible that, in the first form, the *bh* may be a mistake for a damaged *v*, misread and wrongly dealt with in preparing the lithograph.

<sup>14</sup> See *id.* p. 511 ff.

<sup>15</sup> See *Ep. Ind.* Vol. VI. p. 45.

<sup>16</sup> *Dyn. Kan. Diṣṭra*. pp. 430, 572.

<sup>5</sup> *Ibid.*; and text lines 62, 63.



mentions the god, again not quite correctly, as *Vijēśvara*.<sup>9</sup> And we learn from the *Paṭṭadakal* inscription of A. D. 754 that the temple was founded, as a temple of the god *Vijayēśvara*, by the Western Chalukya king *Vijayāditya* in the period A. D. 696 to 733-34.<sup>10</sup> The record of A. D. 1163 thus proves that *Kisuvōḷal* and *Paṭṭada-Kisuvōḷal* were the ancient names of *Paṭṭadakal*; and it places *Paṭṭadakal* in the *Kisukāḍ* seventy; and it shews that, at any rate at that particular time, *Paṭṭadakal* was the seat of government, that is to say the chief town or capital, of the district.

*Paṭṭadakal* is immediately on the north or left bank of the *Malparbhā* river, about eight miles towards the east by north from *Bādāmi*, the head-quarters of the *Bādāmi tāluka* of the *Bijāpur* district. Close on the north of it, there are large ranges of hills, stretching out to the north-east, north-west, and west, as well as to the north, very difficult to traverse even along the few paths and roads that have been opened out, and with but few village-sites in them even in the present day. The range, or some particular high hill in it, is mentioned in line 71 of the record of A. D. 1163, by the name of *Parvalabēṭṭa*, as forming the northern boundary of the first allotment of land that was made. And the same passage shews that towards the east the lands of *Paṭṭada-Kisuvōḷal* extended as far as the lands of *Ayyavōḷe*,<sup>11</sup> which is the modern *Aihoḷe* in the *Hungund tāluka*, about eight miles north-east-half-east from *Paṭṭadakal*. And we may take it that the district of which *Paṭṭada-Kisuvōḷal* was the capital, included the whole of the narrow strip between the hills and the *Malparbhā*, from opposite *Aihoḷe* on the north-east to the ford near *Banaśamkari* on the south-west. But, in consequence no doubt of the natural features of the country on the north of *Paṭṭadakal*, the greater part of the *Kisukāḍ* district lay on the south of the *Malparbhā*.

It is not unlikely that the district included *Aihoḷe*, which is on the south bank of the *Malparbhā*. An inscription at that village, dated in A. D. 1169-70, mentions *Bijjala* and *Vikrama*, the sons of the *Sinda* prince *Chāvūṇḍa II.* by his wife *Siriyādēvi*, as then ruling the *Kisukāḍ* seventy, the *Bāgaḍage* seventy, and the *Keḷavāḍi* three-hundred.<sup>12</sup> The essential part of this record being lost, we can only speculate as to what the contents of it may have been. But it presumably registered a grant of land at *Aihoḷe* itself to some temple at that village. If so, the introductory part places *Aihoḷe* in one or other of the three specified districts. And then, as *Aihoḷe* was certainly not in either the *Bāgaḍage* or the *Keḷavāḍi* district, it can only have been in the *Kisukāḍ* district. This, however, cannot be taken, for the present, as more than a probability. The other records at *Aihoḷe*, as far as they have been explored, do not seem to help: the earlier ones, which are the better preserved, belong to the period before the time when the country was divided into an elaborate system of districts and provinces; the later ones are a good deal damaged and more or less fragmentary, and they require to be examined again to see if any geographical information can be found in them.

About eight miles towards the south-south-east from *Aihoḷe* there is the village of *Arasibīḍi*, — the '*Arsubidda*'<sup>13</sup> of the *Indian Atlas* sheet No. 58 (1827), in lat. 15° 54', long. 75° 59', — also on the south of the *Malparbhā* and in the *Hungund tāluka*; from *Paṭṭadakal* it lies about nine miles east-south-east-half-east. Inscriptions at *Arasibīḍi*<sup>14</sup> mention the place as *Vikramapura*. And one of them, dated in A. D. 1053, tacitly, but unmistakably, places it in the *Kisukāḍ* seventy. It describes the Western Chalukya princess *Akkādēvi* as ruling the *Kisukāḍ* seventy; and it then records grants of land, on the south of the village, that were made to the forty-two *Mahājanas* of the

<sup>9</sup> This record has been mentioned in *Ind. Ant.* Vol. X. p. 169. I quote from an ink-impression obtained since that time.

<sup>10</sup> *Ep. Ind.* Vol. III. p. 6.

<sup>11</sup> We have probably to understand, however, that the actual boundary between the two villages was the river *Malparbhā*.

<sup>12</sup> Vol. IX. above, p. 97.

<sup>13</sup> The *u* (meaning, usually, the short *a*) in the second syllable of the name as presented here, must be due to a carelessly written *ee*.

<sup>14</sup> A separate note on the contents of them will be given hereafter.



*brahmopuri* or Brāhmap's quarters of the *rājadhāni* or royal city or capital Vikramapura. And such a coupling of the two names Kisukāḍ and Vikramapura can only mean that **Vikramapura-Arasibīḍi was in the Kisukāḍ seventy**. And it may be added that an inscription of A. D. 1074-75 at Sūḍi, mentioning Vikramapura as the place at which the Western Chālukya king Sōmēśvara II. laved the feet of a certain priest in making grants to a temple at Sūḍi, does explicitly place it in the Kisukāḍ seventy.<sup>15</sup> It may also be added that a passage of A. D. 1047, in another of the Arasibīḍi inscriptions, places in the Kisukāḍ seventy a village named **Gāṇada-Hājār**,<sup>16</sup> which is evidently the 'Ganuduhal' of the map, three miles on the south-east of Arasibīḍi.

Thirteen miles or so towards the west-south-west from Arasibīḍi, there is the village of **Bēlūr**, in the Bādāmi tāluka, also on the south of the Malparbhā, and about seven miles south-south-west from Paṭṭadakal. The Bēlūr inscription of A. D. 1022<sup>17</sup> in the same way tacitly, but unmistakably, places Bēlūr, which it mentions as the **Pērūr agrahāra, in the Kisukāḍ seventy**. It, again, refers to Akkāḍēvi as governing the Kisukāḍ seventy. It then records that she founded a hall (*śāle*) of the god Traipuruṣa<sup>18</sup> at the Pērūr agrahāra, and that houses and lands at Pērūr were granted for the purpose of feeding and clothing (and housing) the five-hundred students of that hall. And here, again, the coupling of the two names of Kisukāḍ and the Pērūr agrahāra can only mean that **Pērūr-Bēlūr was in the Kisukāḍ seventy**.

The next step takes us further south to Sūḍi and its neighbourhood, in the Rōṇ tāluka of the Dhārwar district. Sūḍi lies about fifteen miles towards the south-south-east from Paṭṭadakal. Close on the west-south-west of it is the village of Jigaḷūr or Jigalūr, which we have identified with the ancient Sivunūr which the record of A. D. 1060 specifically places in the Kisukāḍ seventy.<sup>19</sup> And Sūḍi itself is specifically placed in the Kisukāḍ seventy by the spurious Sūḍi grant, purporting to be dated in A. D. 938, which mentions Sūḍi as Sūḍi or Sūḍi, a *nagari* or city which was the chief town, or a chief town, of the **Sulvātavi seventy villages**.<sup>20</sup> We know now that Sulvātavi is the Sanskritised form of the name Kisukāḍ.<sup>21</sup> And, though I do not at present find in any of the genuine records at Sūḍi a passage which explicitly places Sūḍi in the Kisukāḍ seventy, still there are ample reasons for which we need not hesitate about accepting the statement of the spurious grant on this point. Whether the record is really correct, even for the particular period to which it belongs, in describing Sūḍi as the chief town or capital of the seventy district, — if, indeed, it really does so, instead of simply putting it forward as one of the principal towns of the district, — is open to question. Various other records, however, at Sūḍi, describe it as a *rājadhāni* or royal city, and thus mark it as a place of leading importance. And one of them, the record of A. D. 1060, also styles it, in verse, a *puravara*, 'a best of towns, an excellent town, a chief town.'

The next step takes us to Nīḍagunḍi, in the same tāluka, — the 'Niddigoonda' of the Indian Atlas sheet No. 58, and the 'Needgoondie' of the Map of the Dhārwar Collectorate, — four and a half miles south of Sūḍi. An inscription at Nīḍagunḍi, dated in A. D. 1076, mentions this village as the **agrahāra Nīḍagunḍi**, and specifically places it in the Kisukāḍ seventy.<sup>22</sup>

Two other records take us about twelve miles towards the south-south-west from Sūḍi. They are the two inscriptions of A. D. 1122 and 1144 at Koḍikop, a hamlet of Naregal in the

<sup>15</sup> Kisukāḍ-śippattara baḷiya Vikramapuradoḷ.

<sup>16</sup> Kisukāḍ-śippattara baḷiya sarvbaḷa(rva)namasyam-ḍi biṭṭa bāḍaṣ Gāṇada-Hājār.

<sup>17</sup> Vol. XVIII. above, p. 270.

<sup>18</sup> Viś., the triad composed of Brahman, Viṣṇu, and Śiva. — The meaning probably is that she founded a hall attached to the temple of those gods.

<sup>19</sup> Page 258 above.

<sup>20</sup> Ep. Ind. Vol. III. p. 184.

<sup>21</sup> See page 264 below.

<sup>22</sup> Kisukāḍ-śippattara baḷiya-agrahāraṣ Nīḍagunḍi. — Another inscription at Nīḍagunḍi, of the period A. D. 1156 to 1167, styles the village a *mahāgrahāra* or "great agrahāra." A later one, of A. D. 1222, on the same stone, elevates it still further, and speaks of it as an *anādi-agrahāra*, "an agrahāra that never had any beginning, an agrahāra that had existed from time immemorial." And another inscription, of A. D. 1229 or 1233, describes it in the same way.



Rôṇ tāluka. They mention Koḍikop as Kīru-Nareyaṅgal or the lesser Nareyaṅgal, in distinction from Naregal itself which is mentioned in the earlier of them as Hiriya-Nareyaṅgal. And they specifically place Kīru-Nareyaṅgal in the Kisukāḍ seventy.<sup>23</sup>

And the last record that we can at present utilise with confidence in this matter, takes us about thirteen miles to the west of Sūḍi. It is an inscription at Rôṇ, dated in A. D. 1179.<sup>24</sup> It specifically places in the Kisukāḍ district the village of Hiriya-Maniyār.<sup>25</sup> And statements in the record shew that this is the modern 'Heereh Munnoor,' 'Hereh-Munnoor,' of the maps, four and a half miles on the west of Rôṇ. At the same time, Rôṇ itself, though lying directly between Sūḍi and 'Heereh Munnoor,' 'Hereh-Munnoor,' was apparently not in the Kisukāḍ district. An inscription at Rôṇ, on a *virgal* or monumental tablet of a hero, dated in A. D. 942,<sup>26</sup> speaks of the Western Gaṅga prince Būtuga II., — whom it describes as the *Mahāmaṇḍalika* Permanaḍi-Būtayya, the brother-in-law (*bhāra*) of Kannaradēva-(Krishṇa III.), — as governing the Gaṅgavāḍi ninety-six-thousand, the Beḷvola three-hundred, and the Purigere or Puligere three-hundred. And this statement has the effect of placing Rôṇ in one or other of those three territorial divisions, and, of course, in the Beḷvola three-hundred.<sup>27</sup>

It is true that another inscription at Niḍaḡuṇḍi, dated in A. D. 1174, would place in the Kisukāḍ seventy Erambarage,<sup>28</sup> which is the modern Yelbarga in the Nizam's Dominions, — the 'Yelboorga' of the Indian Atlas sheet No. 58, in lat. 15° 36', long. 76° 4', — twelve miles towards the south-east from Sūḍi. In one of the introductory verses, it says that in Kuntala, — Kisukāḍu-nāḍu sayyina nele rājāsirppud-adaḷoḷu bhuvana-stuta-rājadhāni cheluvina kaṇiy-ād=Erambaravi(ge)<sup>29</sup> Sīṇḍa-kul-āśrayav-oppi tōrugum, — "there shines the Kisukāḍu district; in it there is seen agreeably the capital, praised in the world, Erambarage, a place of beauty, the abode of the family of the Sindas." And somewhat similarly, but perhaps more appropriately, another inscription at Niḍaḡuṇḍi, dated in A. D. 1229 or 1233, speaks of — Kisukāḍa eppattara voḷage rājadhāni ensida Erambarage, — "Erambarage, which has caused itself to be called the capital, or a capital, in the seventy of Kisukāḍu." But, though Erambarage-Yelbarga is mentioned in various records as a capital (*neleṇṇiḍu* and *rājadhāni*), in connection with which the Sinda princes are described as ruling sometimes the Kisukāḍ seventy alone, and sometimes that district along with the other component parts of their territories, no other passage has been met with, explicitly placing Erambarage, or tending to place it, in the Kisukāḍ seventy. Towards the south-east corner of the Kisukāḍ seventy, there intervened between it and Erambarage, a smaller district known as the Kariviḍi or Karimidi

<sup>23</sup> *Jour. Bo. Br. R. As. Soc.* Vol. XI. pp. 251, 257.

<sup>24</sup> Elliot MS. Collection, Vol. II., Edin. p. 221, Lond. p. 93 b; corrected in respect of the date from an ink impression.

<sup>25</sup> *Kisukāḍu-nāḍa baṭiya bāḷaṇ Hiriya-Maniyār.*

<sup>26</sup> Not published; I quote from an ink-impression. The tablet is at the house of Puḷappaganḍa bin Irappaganḍa.

<sup>27</sup> We know that Būtuga II. held also the Kisukāḍ seventy (see page 265 below). And the omission of that district in this record, tends to make the ordinary purport of the passage all the more specific.

<sup>28</sup> This name was originally read by me, in publishing the Naregal inscriptions, as 'Rambarage' and 'Rambarage,' in circumstances that would justify that reading. I afterwards found that the name had been read somewhat more correctly as 'Yerabaragi' by Sir Walter Elliot. The exact correct form of it, Erambarage, — or, as actually written in the particular record, Yerambarage, — was first disclosed by an inscription at Aihole (Vol. XII. *Lit. Sc.* Vol. VII. p. 267, and *Jour. R. As. Soc.*, F. S., Vol. IV. p. 15). — As regards the modern form of the name, of determining which by local inquiry I have not had an opportunity, the 'Yelboorga' of the Indian Atlas, and of Thornton's *Gazetteer of India*, Vol. IV. (1854), points of course to Yelbarga, rather than to the Yelbarga which, after some hesitation, I now adopt. Another name with the same ending, in connection with which there is an equal amount of uncertainty or variety of practice, is that which, in my opinion, is probably in its correct form Kalbarga. I notice that Major King has shewn 'Yelbarga' and 'Kalbarga' in the map which illustrates his history of the Bahmani dynasty (see Vol. XXIX. above, p. 4), but in his Index to the map has given 'Yelburgā' and 'Kalburgā.' — Since writing the above, I have noticed that the Bālbōdh text of the *Extracts from the Pishwā's Decrees, Political Matters*, p. 10, presents Kalabarage, exactly as we should expect.

<sup>29</sup> At first, Erambaravi was written and engraved here. The ja was then corrected into ba. But the vi was left unaltered.



thirty. An inscription at Aihole distinctly mentions a district called the *Erambarage naḍ*.<sup>30</sup> And we may, think, safely dismiss any idea that Erambarage was in the Kisukāḍ district according to its strict and original limits.

We thus see that the Kisukāḍ seventy district included at least three towns of leading importance, Paṭṭadakal, Arasibīḍi, and Sūḍi. Each of them is spoken of in the records as a *rājadhāni*. And each of them was, no doubt, liable to be the seat of government for the district from time to time. But the most ancient of them, — or, at any rate, the one for which we can actually prove the greatest antiquity, — was Paṭṭadakal. The existence of this place, under the name of *Kesuvoḷala*, is carried back to A. D. 602, at which time it was only an ordinary village, granted, with nine others, to the god Makuṭṣavarānātha of one of the group of temples now known as Mahākūṭa;<sup>31</sup> and it seems to be mentioned as *Kisuvoḷal* or *Kisuvoḷal* in the Paṭṭadakal inscription of A. D. 754, or in a slightly later addition to that record.<sup>32</sup> The ancient temples and inscriptions at Paṭṭadakal<sup>33</sup> prove it to have been a place of great consequence from at any rate the period A. D. 696 to 733-34, and in fact indicate that that was the time when it rose to importance. And the word *kisū*, which figures so prominently in the names both of the town and of the district, indicates pretty plainly, in conjunction with the other facts, that the town was first made a local capital, and that the territory then attached to it was fitted with a name which should match the name of the capital and also should suit the nature of the territory.

Regarding the etymology and meaning of the names of the district and its chief town, the following remarks may be made. The full name of the town was Paṭṭada-Kisuvoḷal. By that name alone can the modern name Paṭṭadakal be accounted for. But that name was evidently of somewhat late invention, as it cannot at present be carried back earlier than A. D. 1163, — by the inscription of that year noticed on page 259 above. The prefix *paṭṭada* is the genitive case singular of the word *paṭṭa*, evidently used here in the sense, given to it in the Rev. F. Kittel's Kannada-English Dictionary, of "the frontlet or fillet, with a golden tablet, with which a king is decorated at coronation and his principal wife at the time of marriage." That it is to be taken in this way, is in fact shewn by a verse in lines 58, 59 of the record of A. D. 1163, which speaks of the town as "the *paṭṭavardhana-nīlaya*, or abode for giving increase by the *paṭṭa*, i. e. the coronation-place, for Nṛga, Nahusha, Nala, Purūravas, Sagara, and other kings."<sup>34</sup> And this point again indicates the paramount importance of Paṭṭadakal among the leading towns of the district. Whether, however, the termination *kal* in the modern name represents *kal*, *kallu*, 'a stone,' and points to some particular stone on which it was customary to perform the ceremony of conferring the *paṭṭa*, or whether it is simply an abbreviation of *Kisuvoḷal*, is doubtful. In the other part of the

<sup>30</sup> Vol. XII. above, p. 99.

<sup>31</sup> Vol. XIX. above, p. 20.

<sup>32</sup> *Ep. Ind.* Vol. III. p. 3.

<sup>33</sup> For an account of the temples, reference may be made to Dr. Burgess' *Archæol. Surv. West. Ind.* Vol. I. pp. 28 to 33, and Plates. For the early inscriptions, see Vol. X. above, p. 162 ff. — It is, perhaps, rather curious that not one of the early inscriptions at Paṭṭadakal itself seems to introduce the name of the town; but the explanation may be found in the fact that they are all explicit enough in their purport without that detail. One of them, of the period A. D. 733-34 to 746-47 (*loc. cit.* p. 164, No. 100), mentions "this district," and thus seems to indicate that a territory, attached to Paṭṭadakal as the chief town of it, had then been defined. — A passage which would put forward a date in A. D. 536 or 567 for the Western Chalukya king Pulakēśin II., and which was reproduced from some spurious record in an inscription of A. D. 1113 which was in existence some fifty years ago at Amlbhāvi in the Dhārwar taluka (*Kūliet MS. Collection*, Vol. I., Edn. p. 672), mentions the town as "Kisuvoḷal, a *nelevidu* and *rājadhāni* on the bank of the Malaprabhā." The spurious Kurtakōti grant, which would put forward a date in A. D. 603 (or 610) for Vikramāditya I., son of Pulakēśin II., mentions it as "the *mahānagara* or great city Kisuvoḷal" (Vol. VII. above, p. 220, text line 21).

<sup>34</sup> Something of the same kind seems to be hinted at in the Maragūḷi record of A. D. 1161, in the first part, dated in A. D. 1142, which speaks of Kisuvoḷal as the hereditary capital of Kattiyarādēva in connection with the *paṭṭada* *Chalukya* or "crowned or royal Chalukya" (*Ep. Ind.* Vol. V. p. 20). And there appears to be a distinct allusion to this meaning of the name in the *Malā-Basavapurāṇa* of Singirāja, which says (see Dr. Kittel's *Nīṣavaraṇa's Canarese Prosody*, *Introd.* p. 31) that "after nine Naudas, after ten Gupta kings, after twenty-one thrones of the Moreyas (*sic*), and after twenty-seven Kāḍamba kings, the town of Paṭṭakal (*sic*) had had twenty-seven crownings of the assemblage of the Chalukya (*sic*) rulers." — We may compare the *paṭṭa-Jinālaya* or "Jain temple for the coronation" of the Raṭṭas, which is mentioned in the Saundatti inscription of A. D. 930 (*Jour. Bo. Br. R. As. Soc.* Vol. X. p. 204, text line 2).



name, — the original complete name, — Kisuvolal, volal is the form, in composition, of *poḷal*, *hoḷal*, *poḷal*, *hoḷal*, 'a dwelling-place; a town, a city.' As regards the first component, *kisu*, I must withdraw a suggestion that I made in 1881, that it may mean 'a ruby.'<sup>35</sup> As has been mentioned above, we have now obtained the Sanskritised form of the name Kisukāḍ, namely, *Sulvāṭavi*.<sup>36</sup> Here, the Sanskrit *aṭavi* is simply the translation of the Kanarese *kāḍ*, *kāḍu*, 'a forest, a jungle, a wild;' and *sulva* is the *taddhava*-corruption of the Sanskrit *śulva*, *śulba*. We have to take *sulva*, here in its meaning of 'copper,' which is the nearest approach to the meanings of *kisu*, which are 'redness; a dark-red or coppery colour.' And, as one of the records at Arasibīḍi, dated in A. D. 1053, registers the grant of, among other things, "sixty-four *mattars* of *kisuvina-bhūmi* or red land," we may probably finally explain the *kisu* in the names of Kisuvolal and the Kisukāḍ district as having reference to the red-sandstone of the hills near Paṭṭadakal and Bādāmi, and to the red soils which are abundant enough in that part of the country and are met with, though perhaps not so frequently, in that part of the Dhārwar district which was included in the Kisukāḍ seventy. As regards the *kesu* which we have, quite unmistakably, instead of *kisu* in the oldest form of the name of the town, Dr. Kittel's dictionary gives such a word only as the name of a certain plant: but Reeve and Sanderson's dictionary gives it as an ancient Kanarese word meaning 'red, purple;' and I suppose that we may accept it as an established variant of *kisu*.

As regards the extent of the Kisukāḍ seventy, we have seen that it reached on the south as far as Koḍikop in the Rōṇ tāluka, about twenty-five miles from Paṭṭadakal. At that point, it intruded somewhat into the Belvola district; for, the Koḍikop record of A. D. 1122 places in the Belvola three-hundred both Nareyaṅgal, that is to say Naregal, which it describes as the chief town of a group of twelve villages and which is from half a mile to a mile on the east of Koḍikop, and also Abbegere, which is about three miles towards the west-north-west from Koḍikop. And Koḍikop was doubtless the furthest village included in the Kisukāḍ seventy in that direction.<sup>37</sup> The western boundary must have run up from Koḍikop more or less due north as far as the north-east corner of the lands of Rōṇ, very likely following the eastern boundaries of Abbegere and Rōṇ. At that point, it must have turned west, along the northern boundary of Rōṇ. It then turned south, far enough to include 'Heereh Munnoor,' 'Hereh-Munnoor.' And very probably it then followed the course of a large stream called Hirē-Halla, which runs northwards on the west of that village and flows into the Malparbhā about four miles on the west of Belūr. On the north, the Kisukāḍ district doubtless included, as has been already remarked, the whole of the narrow strip of land between the Malparbhā and the hills on the north of Paṭṭadakal, from the ford near Banāṣaṅkarī on the south-west of Paṭṭadakal to some point opposite Aihoḷe on the north-east. And probably the boundary-line here either was the southernmost range of those hills, or else was constituted by some well-defined natural features along the back of that range. At any rate, the district cannot have extended far in that direction. To the west and north-west of Paṭṭadakal, there was the Keḷavāḍi three-hundred district. On the north and north-east of that, there was the Bāgaḍage seventy. And a record of A. D. 1049 at Sirūr,<sup>38</sup> about ten miles almost due north of Paṭṭadakal, places that village, which it mentions as Sripura, in a group of villages known as the Ponugunda thirty, which evidently took its appellation from the original name of the modern

<sup>35</sup> Vol. X, above, p. 163. The word for 'ruby' is, really, not *kisu* alone, but *kisugal*.

<sup>36</sup> From the spurious Sāḍi plates, published in *Ep. Ind.* Vol. III. p. 158 ff. In lines 71 and 83 of the text, and in the translation on page 184, read *Sulvāṭavi*, instead of the *Suldhāṭavi* there given by me. The ancient subscript Kanarese *v* and *dh* are often liable to be confused. It is the recognition of the Sanskritised name which has shewn that, in the passages in question, I ought to have taken the sign as meaning *v*.

<sup>37</sup> The next village is Kōṭumachgi, in the Gadag tāluka, two and a half miles to the south-west from Koḍikop. The Koḍikop record of A. D. 1122 mentions it as Ummachige; and the record of A. D. 1144 seems to mention it as Umachige. At Kōṭumachgi itself there are two records of A. D. 1112 and 1142 (*Elliot MS. Collection*, Vol. I., Edin., pp. 513, 764, Lond. pp. 328, 481) which again mention it as Ummachige, the latter of them also describing it as an *agrahāra*; but the transcriptions do not shew any geographical details.

<sup>38</sup> I quote from an ink-impression.



Hungund, the head-quarters of the Hungund taluka. Towards the east, the Kisukāḍ district very likely included Aihole, as we have remarked above, and certainly included Arasibīḍi. And the eastern boundary probably ran more or less due south from Arasibīḍi along the present dividing-line between the Bijāpur and Dhārwar districts on the west and the Nizam's Dominions and the outlying Mudhōl property of Gajēndragāḍ on the east, and, passing round the 'Atkerra' or 'Halkeree' of the maps, in the Rōn taluka, so as to include that village in the seventy district, joined there the southern boundary, which then ran along the northern boundary of the lands of Naragal to meet the lands of Kīru-Narayāṅgal, *i. e.* Koḍikop, as, at that time, a separate village.

In respect of the history of the Kisukāḍ seventy district, we have the following facts. The existence of the district, under the name of Kisukāḍ and as a seventy district, is carried back to about A. D. 949-50 by the subsidiary record on the top of the stone at Ātakūr containing the inscription dated in that year. That record tells us that the Rāstrakūṭa king Kṛishṇa III. gave the Kisukāḍ seventy, along with the Banavāsi twelve-thousand, the Belvola three-hundred, the Puligere three-hundred, and the Bāgenāḍ (or Bāgaḍage) seventy, to the Western Gaṅga prince Būtuga II., as a reward for killing the Chōḷa king Rājāditya.<sup>39</sup> And the Hebbāl inscription, dated in A. D. 975, may doubtless be taken as carrying back the existence of the district to an earlier date, — probably about A. D. 910, — because it recites that, in the time of Kṛishṇa II. (between A. D. 878 and 911-12), Amoghavarsha-Baddegadēva, the father of Kṛishṇa III., gave the Kisukāḍ seventy, along with the Puligere three-hundred, the Belvola three-hundred, and the Bāge (or Bāgaḍage) seventy, to Būtuga II. as the dowry of his wife Rēvakanimmaḍi, the elder sister of Kṛishṇa III.<sup>40</sup> In A. D. 997, the district was in the administrative charge of the *Mahāsāmanta* Tailapanāṅkakāra-Bhīmarasa, who was then governing the Banavāsi twelve-thousand, the Sāntāḷige thousand, the Kisukāḍ seventy, and the Samasi-Guḍigere *agrahāra*, under the Western Chālukya king Taila II.;<sup>41</sup> and the same person was still holding it in A. D. 1005, when he was governing the Kisukāḍ seventy, the Banavāsi twelve-thousand, and the Sāntāḷige thousand, under Irivabedaṅga-Satyāśraya.<sup>42</sup> In A. D. 1010 the Kisukāḍ seventy was being administered by the Western Gaṅga princess Akkādēvi, under her elder brother Vikramāditya V.;<sup>43</sup> and she was still governing it in A. D. 1023 under her younger brother Jayasīma II.<sup>44</sup> A record of A. D. 1045 mentions it as being in the hands of the *Mahāmāṇḍalēśvara* Siṅgaṇadēvarasa, who was then ruling the Kisukāḍ seventy, the Maṇḍa[li thousand], the Banavāsi twelve-thousand, and the Sāntāḷige thousand, up to the western ocean, under Sōmēśvara I.<sup>45</sup> But in A. D. 1050, under the same king, it was again in the charge of Akkādēvi, who was then governing the Kisukāḍ seventy, the Toragare sixty, and the Māsavāḍi hundred-and-forty;<sup>46</sup> and she was still administering the same three districts, under the same king, in A. D. 1053 or 1054.<sup>47</sup> In A. D. 1089, in the time of Sōmēśvara II., the Kisukāḍ seventy was being ruled, together with the Nōḷambavāḍi thirty-two-thousand province, by a certain Siṅgaṇadēva, whose full appellation seems to have been Nōḷamb-*[ādhirāja-Permana]ḍi-Siṅgaṇadēva*, and who had the hereditary title of "lord of Kāñchīpura the best of towns."<sup>48</sup> In A. D. 1076, still in the time of Sōmēśvara II., the Kisukāḍ seventy

<sup>39</sup> *Ep. Ind.* Vol. VI. pp. 53, 57.

<sup>40</sup> *Ep. Ind.* Vol. IV. pp. 351, 354. — Regarding the probable ultimate reason for which the specified districts had to be again given to Būtuga II. by Kṛishṇa III., see *id.* Vol. VI. p. 52, note 3.

<sup>41</sup> An inscription at Tāḷgund in Mysore; *P. S. O.-C. Insers.* No. 214, and see *Mysore Insers.* p. 196: see also *Ep. Ind.* Vol. VI. p. 254.

<sup>42</sup> An inscription at Kannēshwar in the Hāngal taluka; *Elliot MS. Collection*, Vol. I., Edin. p. 34, Lond. p. 18 b.

<sup>43</sup> An inscription at Sūḍi; *Elliot MS. Collection*, Vol. I., Edin. p. 37, Lond. p. 22, where, however, only a very fragmentary transcription is given, and the passage mentioning Akkādēvi and the Kisukāḍ seventy is not included. I quote from an ink-impression.

<sup>44</sup> The Belūr inscription; Vol. XVIII. above, p. 275.

<sup>45</sup> Another inscription at Tāḷgund in Mysore; *P. S. O.-C. Insers.* No. 216, and see *Mysore Insers.* p. 204.

<sup>46</sup> Another inscription at Sūḍi; I quote from an ink-impression.

<sup>47</sup> Another inscription at Sūḍi; I quote, again, from an ink-impression.

<sup>48</sup> Another inscription at Sūḍi; I quote, again, from an ink-impression.



was in the hands of a *Mahāmaṇḍalēśvara* Siṅga, who may be identical with the person mentioned just above or may be the Sinda prince Siṅga, younger brother of Āchugi I.; and, at the same time, Suggaladēvi, daughter of Sōmēśvara I., and younger sister of Sōmēśvara II., was governing the Nidagundi *agrahāra*, in the Kisukād seventy, according to the *tribhōgābhyan-tarasiddhi*.<sup>49</sup> A passage dated in A. D. 1085, in one of the records at Arasibīḍi, is the first which definitely connects the Sindas with the Kisukād district; it recites that, in the specified year, in the time of Vikramāditya VI., there was a certain *Mahāsāmanta* Barmadēvarasa, son of Sindarasa, who belonged to the Sinda family and had the hereditary title of "lord of Bhōgavātipura the best of towns," and that Barmadēvarasa's *suṅkavergade* Barmaṇa made an annual allotment from the *suṅka* or customs-duty of the *manneya* and the *panndya* of the locality, for the support of the members of the establishment of the Jain temple called Goṇadabēḍaṅgiya-Jinālaya at Vikramapura:<sup>50</sup> this passage, however, does not establish more than that a member of the family of the Sindas had some local authority at Vikramapura-Arasibīḍi. A passage dated in A. D. 1087, in another of the records at Arasibīḍi, mentions a certain *Mahāsēndhipati* and *Danḍanāyaka*, the *Mahāsāmantaśhipati* Lavarasa, "who had the favour of the goddess Mahālakṣmī,"<sup>51</sup> and who was then governing the Kisukād seventy and the Karivīḍi thirty, under Vikramāditya VI.<sup>52</sup> An inscription at Sūḍi mentions a certain *Mahāsāmanta* Daḍigarasa, son of Guṇḍarasa, — who was descended from Lōkarasa of the Bālivamśa, lord of the Daḍigamaṇḍala country, — as making a grant in A. D. 1113 or 1114, from some local property belonging to him, to a temple at Sūḍi;<sup>53</sup> but the record is much damaged, and it cannot be said, at present, whether this Daḍigarasa had the administrative charge of the district: he may perhaps have been a prince of the Daḍigavāḍi country in Mysore, possessing some outlying property at Sūḍi, just as, we know from the Ātakūr inscription, Bātuga II. gave to Maṇalera a village in the Belvola district, in addition to the Ātukār group of twelve villages in the Maṇḍya tāluka, Mysore.<sup>54</sup> The next record shews the district in the hands of the Sindas of Yelbarga. It is the Koḍikop inscription, dated in A. D. 1122, which tells us that the *Mahāmaṇḍalēśvara* Āchugi II., of that family, was then, as a feudatory of Vikramāditya VI., ruling the Kisukād seventy, and Nareyaṅgal which was the chief town of a group of twelve villages in the Belvola three-hundred, and Abbege, and some other (unnamed) towns.<sup>55</sup> And the district seems to have continued in the possession of the Sindas from that time. The other Koḍikop inscription tells us that in A. D. 1144 Permāḍi I., son of Āchugi II., was ruling the Kisukāḍu *nāḍ*, the Bāgaḍage *nāḍ*, the Keḷavāḍi *nāḍ*, and the Nareyaṅgal *nāḍ*, as a feudatory of Perma-Jagadēkamalla II.<sup>56</sup> The Paṭṭadakal inscription shews that in A. D. 1163, Permāḍi's younger brother Chāvṇḍa II., — in conjunction with the princes (*kumārār*), that is to say his sons Āchugi III. and Permāḍi II., — was ruling the Kisukād seventy, the Bāgaḍage seventy, the Keḷavāḍi three-hundred, and other (unnamed) districts, and that his *piriyarasi* or senior wife Dēmaladēvi, and Āchugi III., were exercising local powers of government at Paṭṭadakal.<sup>57</sup> Another of the Nidagundi inscriptions, which refers itself, without any specific date, to the reign of the Kaḷachurya king Bijjala, that is to the period A. D. 1156 to

<sup>49</sup> An inscription at Nidagundi in the Bōṇ tāluka; noticed in *Dyn. Kan. Distr.* p. 574. — From the records at Sūḍi and Nidagundi, it appears probable that the words *ḍāna tainam Siṅga-mahitaja-pati* in line 21 of the Paṭṭadakal inscription of A. D. 1153, were not really intended to introduce, as they certainly do if interpreted simply as they stand there, a second Siṅga or Siṅha as a younger brother of Bamma son of Āchugi I., but refer back to the Siṅha who is mentioned in line 18 as one of the younger brothers of Āchugi I.

<sup>50</sup> Elliot MS. Collection, Vol. I., Edin. p. 71, Lond. p. 43; endorsed by my own reading of the original record.

<sup>51</sup> This is somewhat suggestive of a connection with the Śilāhāras of Karhād, whose family goddess was Mahālakṣmī.

<sup>52</sup> Elliot MS. Collection, Vol. I., Edin. p. 127, Lond. p. 77 b; endorsed, and corrected in respect of the name of the thirty district, by my own reading of the original record.

<sup>53</sup> I quote from an ink-impression.

<sup>54</sup> *Jour. Bo. Br. R. As. Soc.* Vol. XI. p. 251.

<sup>55</sup> *Ibid.* p. 258. The original record might be examined again, to ascertain, if possible, whether any particular place is named, in line 13, as the seat of government of Permāḍi I.

<sup>57</sup> *Ibid.* p. 272. Regarding the date, see note 3 on page 259 above.

<sup>56</sup> *Ep. Ind.* Vol. VI. p. 52.



1167, speaks of Chāvūṇḍa II. as governing the Kisukāḍ seventy, the Bāgaḍage seventy, the Keḷavāḍi three-hundred, the Nareyaṁgallu twelve, and the Kariviḍi thirty, according to the *tribhōgābhyanterasiddhi*, and ruling at the capital (*nelevidu*) of Erambarage. The Aihole inscription mentions Bijjala and Vikrama, who were the sons of Chāvūṇḍa II. by his other wife Siriyādēvi, as ruling the Kisukāḍ seventy, the Bāgaḍage seventy, and the Keḷavāḍi three-hundred, in A. D. 1169-70.<sup>58</sup> Another of the Niḍagunḍi inscriptions mentions Bijjala again, as governing in A. D. 1174 Erambarage, which it would place as a capital (*rājadhāni*) in the Kisukāḍa *nāḍu*.<sup>59</sup> An inscription at Rōṇ mentions Vikrama as ruling at the capital of Erambarage, and governing the Kisukāḍ seventy according to the *tribhōgābhyanterasiddhi*, in A. D. 1179, under the Kaḷachūrya king Saṅkama.<sup>60</sup> And, finally, another of the inscriptions at Niḍagunḍi, which refers itself to the reign of the Dēvagiri-Yādava king Siṅghaṇa, mentions his *Mahāpradhāna*, the *Mahāpasāyita*, *Paramarivāsina*, and *Bāhattaravijōgādhipati*, the *Sarvādhikārin* Vāsudēvanāyaka, as ruling, in A. D. 1229 or 1233.<sup>61</sup> Erambarage, "which had caused itself to be called the capital, or a capital, in the seventy of Kisukāḍ."<sup>62</sup> The Sinda princes had evidently then passed away.

#### The Kariviḍi thirty district.

This small district has been mentioned on page 266 and just above, under the date of A. D. 1087 and the period A. D. 1156 to 1167. The Niḍagunḍi inscription of the latter period presents in two forms the name of the town from which, evidently, the group of villages took its appellation. In lines 49 and 50, it describes the Sinda prince Chāvūṇḍa II. as governing the Kisukāḍ seventy, the Bāgaḍage seventy, the Keḷavāḍi three-hundred, the Nareyaṁgallu twelve, and the Kariviḍi<sup>1</sup> thirty, according to the *tribhōgābhyanterasiddhi*, and ruling at the capital (*nelevidu*) of Erambarage. The object of the record is to register various grants to a temple of the god Dāsēśvara at Niḍagunḍi. Lines 79 to 85 register grants at Niḍagunḍi itself, made by Chāvūṇḍa II. and the *Uroḍeya* or village-chief of Niḍagunḍi. Lines 85 to 90 register grants at a village named Siriguppe, made, in one case by Chāvūṇḍa II. in conjunction with the *Uroḍeya* of Siriguppe, and in the other case by Chāvūṇḍa's sons Bijjala and Vikramāditya in conjunction with the same *Uroḍeya*. And then lines 90 to 94 register a grant which was made, in the presence of the sixty-eight (*Mahājanas*) of the great *agrahāra* Karimiḍi, by the *Mahāmaṇḍalēśvara* Hermaḍidēvarasa, — meaning Permaḍi II., another son of Chāvūṇḍa II., — in conjunction with the *Mahāpradhāna*, the *Danḍanāyaka* Aḥaṇayya.

This last grant consisted of an allotment in the *daśavandha*-lands<sup>2</sup> of Chāvūṇḍa II. and

<sup>58</sup> Vol. IX. above, pp. 98, 99.

<sup>59</sup> On this point, see page 262 f. above.

<sup>60</sup> Elliot MS. Collection, Vol. II., Edin. p. 221, Lond. p. 93 b; corrected in respect of the date from an ink-impression. This record does not contain anything tending to place in the Kisukāḍ seventy Rōṇ itself, which (see page 262 above) was apparently in the Belvola three-hundred.

<sup>61</sup> This record is rather curiously dated in the Vijaya *samvatsara*, coupled with the Śaka year 1152. Vijaya was Śaka-Samvat 1152 current, — A. D. 1229-30, according to the northern luni-solar system of the cycle, which, however, had long ceased, by that time, to be in use in that part of the country. According to the southern luni-solar system, then in use there, Vijaya was Ś.-S. 1156 current (1155 expired), — A. D. 1233-34. The remaining details of the date are *Ādityavāra* (Sunday), coupled with the full-moon day of the month Chaitra. And these details happen to be correct for both the years. On the first occasion the given *tithi* ended at about 12 hrs. 54 min. after mean sunrise (for Ujjain) on Sunday, 11th March, A. D. 1229. On the second occasion, it ended at about 11 hrs. 58 min. on Sunday, 27th March, A. D. 1233.

<sup>62</sup> On this point, see page 262 f. above.

<sup>1</sup> In the penultimate syllable, the vowel may be either the short *i* or the long *f*; there is nothing in this record, or in the Arasibīḍi record of A. D. 1087, to mark it either way. We ought perhaps to take it as the long *f*, as is the case in the name of Arasibīḍi. But the etymology of both the names is not settled yet.

<sup>2</sup> We have already met with the word *daśavandha* in the *śaḍbhava*-form *daśavandha*; see page 107 above, and note 12. The present record gives it twice in the form *daśavandha*, and once in the form *daśavanda*. It is the Sanskrit *daśabandha*, which occurs in *Mānavadharmasūtra*, viii. 107, in the sense of 'a tenth part of a total sum.' C. P. Brown's Telugu-English Dictionary (1852) gives *daśabandha*, *daśavandha*, as meaning 'an *inām*, or copyhold, taxed at one-tenth of the produce.' And H. H. Wilson's Glossary of Indian Terms (1835) gives *daśabandha* (by mistake for *daśabandha*), as meaning 'a deduction of one-tenth of the revenue, on account of compensation for some public work, as the construction of a tank, etc.' The Madras Manual of the Administration, Vol. III. p. 260, has followed Wilson's explanation of the meaning.



Āchanayya, which were in the *daśavandha*-lands, measuring three hundred *mattars*, of the village of Karimiḍi. In the specification of the boundaries of this grant, we are told that the eastern boundary-mark was a *līṅga*-*kallu*, or stone marked with a *līṅga*, on the west of the limit of the lands of Muduvaḷal. And we can now see that Kariviḍi or Karimiḍi is the 'Kurumudi' of the Indian Atlas sheet No. 58 (1827), in the Nizam's Dominions, five miles on the west of Yelbarga, and about the same distance south-east-by-east from Niḍaḡuṇḍi. About a mile and a half on the north-east of 'Kurumudi' there is 'Moodola,' which answers to the Muduvaḷal of this record and the Muduvoḷal of one of the Naregal inscriptions.<sup>3</sup>

It is thus evident that the Kariviḍi or Karimiḍi thirty was a small district lying, in part, between Yelbarga and the south-east corner of the Kisukāḍ seventy district. The village of Siriguppe, mentioned above, is evidently the 'Sirugoopa' of the map, about six miles north-by-west from 'Kurumudi.' Subsequent passages in the same record mention two other villages, capable of identification. One of them is Koḍaganūr, which is evidently the 'Goodugunoor' of the map, five and a half miles on the north of 'Kurumudi.' And the other is Māgere, which is plainly 'Mageyru,' about four miles towards the north-by-west from 'Kurumudi.' These three villages are to the east of the boundary of the Rōṇ tāluka. And they were, doubtless, all in the Kariviḍi or Karimiḍi thirty, though the record does not actually say so.

#### ON THE HISTORY OF RELIGION IN INDIA, — A BRIEF REVIEW.

BY ALBRECHT WEBER.

(Translated from the original German by G. A. G.)<sup>1</sup>

THE great charm of the science of Natural Philosophy lies in the opportunities which it affords for the observation of gradual coming into existence, — for the investigation of the development from first to last of a single germ. So also, in the study of the history of Religion, we are enabled to follow the different phases undergone by an idea from its first inception to its culminating point. But between the two cases there is this great distinction; that, while in the domain of Nature everything develops from that which is simple to that which is perfect, in the history of Religion it is often exactly the reverse. Here, that which is at the beginning is not only simple: it is also The Better, The Right, The True. But, in the course of its development, foreign elements continue to make their influence felt, till, when we reach our goal, we are frequently confronted with something altogether opposed to the propositions from which we started. Superstition has made itself master of the situation, and, like the fabled mermaid, we see 'a lovely maiden ending in an ugly fish.'

No land in the world is so full of instruction in regard to the origin and development of religious ideas as India. Its colossal literature, reaching as it does over several thousands of years, presents to us, in rich abundance, and ready for examination, specimens of each stage of their progress from the earliest times to the present day.

Through it we are led directly back to the Indo-Teutonic period. The time and locality of this are, it is true, still veiled in the most complete darkness. When we talk about it we can only deal with periods of thousands of years, and each step that we make on this ground is feeble and insecure. Some writers, such as Adelbert Kuhn and Adolf Pictet, have indeed attempted to construct a picture of the primitive Indo-Teutonic times, but on each occasion criticism has shown how difficult it is to attain to any certain results. It is to the labours of Otto Schrader that we are specially

<sup>2</sup> See *Jour. Bo. Br. R. As. Sec.* Vol. XI. pp. 237, 238. The real modern form of the name must, of course, be Mudhōḷ, as in the case of the chief town of the Mudhōḷ State, which, from the only guide then available, namely the mention of "the road to Muduvoḷal," was then wrongly put forward by me as probably being the Muduvoḷal of the record.

<sup>1</sup> In submitting to the readers of the *Indian Antiquary*, this translation of Professor Weber's admirable monograph, — the summary, so to speak, of one of the many sides of his learning and his genius, — the translator can only express his regret that it has not been found possible to entrust the task to the hands of one more worthy to deal with it, by reason of his greater familiarity with the subjects treated of, and with the language in which it is composed. The translation has been revised by the author.



indebted for enlightenment in regard to this question. In former times it was universally assumed that the original seat of the Indo-Teutonic race should be sought for in Asia, either on the Caucasus or on the Hindû Kush. A more recent opinion maintained with equal decision that this locality must be looked for in Europe itself; nay, some went so far as to say, in Germany. The steppes of south Russia, on the banks of the Don and of the Volga, have also been suggested; while, quite lately, we have been led back again to the old theory, and have had Armenia and the country round the Oxus and the Jaxartes pointed out to us as the place of origin.

Aided, however, by a comparative study of vocabularies, and, more especially, of habits, customs, and conceptions typical of a people's everyday life, we can draw a picture of the state of civilisation in which the primitive Indo-Teutonic people existed; and this picture shows them to us, not, it must be admitted, in a remarkably high state of material culture, yet still in possession of deep-seated spiritual theories and beliefs regarding their relations to the divine Powers of Nature under whose rule they felt themselves to lie.

These purely symbolical conceptions of Nature bear witness to the existence of a sympathetic power of comprehension, and display, beside all the terror inspired by that Nature's resistless forces, a grateful recognition of its magnificence and of its beauty. The battles of the good powers against those hostile ones, who grudgingly desired to withhold from Man the heavenly moisture and fire, the heavenly light, had in olden times already formed the subjects of poetic efforts.

It is thus that in the Vedic texts of the Indians (not only in the hymns of the *Rik-saṁhitā*, but also in many of those fragments in the *Atharva-saṁhitā* which serve as explanatory introductions to the incantations that form the subject of a hymn, and even in the incantation formulæ themselves), we find a rich accumulation of material, which leads us directly back to the conceptions of ancient Indo-Teutonic times. 'Comparative Mythology,' which once entangled many by its magic, is nowadays fallen into the deepest discredit; for its professors carried their conclusions too far, and insisted on the direct relationship of certain proper names, which further investigation showed was not capable of proof. In spite, however, of its having been convicted of various clearly proved mistakes, we must still admit the accuracy of its main contention that in primitive times there already existed a well-established theory regarding the mutual relationship between Gods and Mankind, and that habits and customs, nay, even formulæ and litanies, which communicated human wishes to the Divine Powers, whose assistance they were devised to induce, were already in full currency. The Terrors of the Night, — the Rescue from them by the Breaking of the Dawn, — the Light of the Day, advancing in its victorious power, — the Thrusting Aside of all those heavenly phenomena which, in the shape of the Black Clouds, the Storm-wind, the Thunder and the Lightning, throughout the day menaced the human heart, — the Departure of the Day, and the Inbreak of the Night, — all these were deeply and warmly experienced and were described with lively fancy in the olden time. So also for the occurrences of human life, for Birth, Upgrowth, Youth, the Course of Life, and Death; for the Relations of Sex and of the Family; for the life in House and Field, in Plain and Forest, there existed the most manifold conceptions regarding the dependence of mankind and his powerlessness before that which stood outside and above him.

It is true that but few of the Divine Personalities of this period can be discerned with absolute clearness. Some authorities go so far as to maintain that the only real Indo-Teutonic deities which can be identified are a 'Heaven-Father' and a pair of youthful Gods, the Dioscuri, and that as to the latter we are not even able to describe clearly their peculiar functions. When, however, we confine our attention to the so-called Aryan period, we find ourselves treading on much firmer ground. This period represents the time when the European members of the Indo-Teutonic race had already separated from the Asiatic ones, who later became Iranians and Indians, and while these last still dwelt together as one people, — the Aryans.<sup>2</sup> For this period we are in possession of a double

<sup>2</sup> The word *arya* literally means 'the befriended.'



set of literary authorities. For the Indians we have the *Vêda*, and for the Iranians the *Avesta*, both of which point back to similar or identical conceptions and conditions of existence.

From these we learn that, in this Aryan period, mankind had already advanced beyond the ancient nature-symbolism, and had made the first step in the course of his progress therefrom towards grouping together into one conception the various divine powers with which he was confronted.

It came to be in this way. There was a deity whose origin rested on this nature-symbolism, and to whom, in order to make up the sacred number seven, six companions were given. Together with these he appears as the Bearer of the Divine Order, — the Vedic *ṛita*, and Zend *asha* for *arta*.<sup>3</sup> A Semitic influence has recently been suggested as acting in the conception of this group, which has been thought to show a relationship with the seven planets; but this point of connexion has not as yet been satisfactorily proved, more especially as the *Vêda* shows no trace of any knowledge of these heavenly bodies. Besides this, the descriptions of this holy Group of Seven are of very different characters in the two sources of our knowledge, and the older form of belief is clearly that shown in the *Vêda*. According to it there stands at the head of these Seven, who were themselves known as *Āditya* (i. e., the Free or the Eternal), a Heaven-God who bore the name of *Varuṇa*. The identification of this name with that of the Greek *Ouranos* has been rejected by some recent authorities on comparative grammar, and it is true that, according to strict phonetic laws, *Varuṇa* can only represent a Grecian *Oranos*. On the other hand, in the first place, this form, '*Oranos*,' does occur in a Greek dialect,<sup>4</sup> and in the second place, proper-names do not appear to follow strictly the general phonetic laws of comparative grammar.

At any rate, even if we are to abandon the equation of *Varuṇa* with *Ouranos*, there can be no manner of doubt about the former word being the name of a Vedic God of the Heavens.<sup>5</sup> Moreover it is very simple to derive his later restricted relationship to the waters, the rain or the sea from his relationship to the Aërial Ocean. It is, moreover, the Night-sky, the nocturnal vault of heaven, which is represented by *Varuṇa*, who mounts his chariot adorned with brazen columns when the sun sets. The universe 'covered' by him lies under his protection. He is omnipresent; by his spies, the stars, he sees all that is hidden; he has, too, in his service female spirits,<sup>6</sup> from whom nothing is concealed. He is the avenger and punisher of all injustice. Where two discourse one with another, there is *Varuṇa* between them. In the *Vêda* there stands by his side his companion *Mitra*, the kindly God of the Day-sky, who mounts his golden chariot at the first gleam of dawn and acts more especially as the protector of all human contracts.<sup>7</sup> He hardly ever appears except in company with *Varuṇa*, while *Varuṇa*, on the other hand, in token of his supremacy, is often glorified without any mention of his companion. A pure nature-symbolism lies at the root of the conception of these two divinities, which has, however, in the case of both, developed in the direction of ethics, — the face turned in the direction of mankind. In the case of the five remaining *Ādityas*, who indeed are seldom referred to, this ethical relationship is carried still further, so as to entirely exclude the original background of nature-symbolism.

The corresponding group of seven holy beings which we meet in the *Avesta* possesses, as compared with that of the *Vêda*, a distinctly secondary character. It belongs to a later period, and, as it stands, is the direct creation of an inspired prophet, Zarathustra. The *Ahura-mazda* who stands at their head is certainly derived from the Vedic *Varuṇa*, a god to whom, in the *Vêda*, is especially given the title of *Asura*, the Living One.<sup>8</sup> But *Ahura*'s six companions are purely

<sup>3</sup> Perhaps connected with the Greek *arête*, virtue (?).

<sup>4</sup> In Lesbian, — according to a kind verbal communication from Johannes Schmidt.

<sup>5</sup> To this group should also be referred '*Father Zeus*,' *Diespiter*, *Dyaush pitar*; also the Greek *Trito* (*Tritogeneia*), Vedic *Trita*; and the explanation of the Greek *Almon* by the Vedic *asman*.

<sup>6</sup> The name of the Greek *Erinyes* corresponds to the Vedic *saranyū*, the fleet, the pursuer.

<sup>7</sup> Perhaps owing to a popular etymological connexion with the root *mith*.

<sup>8</sup> This word is derived directly from the root *as*, which appears to have originally indicated 'lively motion.' When conjugated in the 4th class it means simply 'to throw, to shoot,' but in the 2nd class it has developed the more general signification of 'to be.'



speculative, formations. Mithra is no longer one of them, although in other respects he occupies in the Avesta a prominent position close to him.<sup>9</sup>

Beside this tendency towards the idea of monotheism in the conception of the Deity, there also appears to have existed in the Aryan period, in a kind of contradiction to it, a tendency towards what may be called **anthropomorphism**.<sup>10</sup> While the exaltation of the man who 'thinks' to the rank of an eponymous hero — Father Mann, Mannus, (?) the Greek Minos — appears to belong to the original Indo-Teutonic age, we have in the Aryan period the change of the Dawn-Genius (*Vivascant*) and his twin children, the passing day and the night (*Yama* and *Yami*), into purely human personalities. Yama is described in the Vêda as the first of those who died, and hence stands at their head as their king. In the Avesta, in combination with Ahura, he appears as king and representative of mankind in general. So also the Son of the Waters, *Aptya* (in Zend *Āthwya*) or *Trita* (*Traitana*) (in Zend *Thrita*, *Thraetaona*), 'The Third,' i. e., probably the Heavenly Ocean considered as the third stage of the Heavens, is turned in the Avesta into a hero. In the case, however, of other similar names, such as *Kārya Usana* (Zend *Kara-Uš*), *Āyāsya* (Zend *Āyehye*), we cannot as yet observe any tangible symbolical conception of Nature as their basis.

As a third characteristic of the Aryan period we must notice the special prominence given to two sacrificial rites, viz., the **worship of fire**, and the reverence paid to a certain plant which produced an **intoxicating drink**. Fire worship developed so independently in Iran and India that it is evident that only its first beginnings belong to the common Aryan period. The Vedic name for fire, as well as for the fire-god, *Agni*, is it is true identical with the Latin word *ignis*, but we are in no way entitled to assume a common deification or a common special fire-worship from this similarity of appellation. This name is altogether unknown to the Avesta, and, on the other hand, the Avesta name for fire, *atar*,<sup>11</sup> does not occur in the Vêda.

Equally certain is the identity of the Vedic *sōma* with the Avestic *haoma*. In all likelihood, as far back as the Indo-Teutonic period, people had an intoxicating drink prepared from honey, the Vedic *madhu* (*mathu*), mead: Greek *methy*, wine.<sup>12</sup> But, besides this, the Aryans knew already another intoxicating mucilage (compare the German word *Seim*), which they squeezed out from the juicy stalks of a plant, and which they consumed the same day without further preparation. They named it *sōma*, or in Zend *haoma*, from the root *su*, to press out.<sup>13</sup> We should at once identify this intoxicating 'yellow' juice, which was obtained from a 'mountain' plant with flexible tendrils, with that of the

<sup>9</sup> Mithra had already gained such great popularity in the Aryan period that Zarathustra could not deprive him of his independent position by the side of Ahura. He still remained as a folk-deity along with him, and even concomitant with the monotheistic position claimed for Ahura by the followers of Zarathustra. He was ultimately raised to the dignity of the Sun-god and his influence became extended far and wide. The Magi appear to have been the chief preachers of the worship of Mithra, while the adherents of the cult of Ahura bore the name of *ātarvān*, or "fire priests." The Mithra-worship spread itself through Greece as far as Gaul and Rome, and, to the east, advanced even into India.

<sup>10</sup> This tendency, which makes historical personages, Kings and Epic Heroes, out of the old gods, became especially prominent in later times in Iran.

<sup>11</sup> Query, from the root *ad*, to consume? For *at-tar* with pre-Zendic compensatory lengthening of the vowel. The change must have taken place in pre-Zend times, for according to the rules of that language, *at-tar* would become *actar* (see *Sitzungsberichte der Berl. Ak.* 1891, p. 815). A trace of the word has, by the way, been suggested as existing in the Latin atrium (fire-place). At any rate the Avesta name of the fire-priest, *ātarvān*, unmistakably reappears in the Vedic proper-name *Ātharvān* in spite of the irregular aspiration. This aspiration, indeed, appears in this word with some frequency in manuscripts of the Avesta, even when the *r* does not directly follow the *t*.

<sup>12</sup> The word means either, passively, a mixture, or, actively, perplexing, intoxicating. The Latin *madidus*, drunk is probably connected with it. Regarding the *matu* in (?) *matuta*, a name of the dawn, vide post, note 20. The idea of *sweetness* seems to have been first attached to the word in India. See *Sitzungsberichte der Berl. Ak.* 1892, p. 790, Note 9. Compare, however, the Old Bulgarian *medu*, honey and wine, and the Lithuanian *midus*, honey.

<sup>13</sup> This root appears to have had two pronunciations, one with *u*, and another with *i*. Compare *si-ch*, to sprinkle, to strain (German *seihen*); just as there is another pair of roots, *su* or *si* meaning 'to sew.' The German *Seim*, a hem (Sanskrit, *sīman*; Greek *hēma*), which is connected with the latter double root *su* or *si*, has an instructive counterpart in *Seim*, mucilage (*sōma*, *haoma*). See *Sitzungsberichte*, loc. cit., — and also 'Königsweihe,' 1893, p. 26, note 7.



grape, were not the supposition barred by the information recorded regarding the process employed in its preparation; and we are still in uncertainty as to what plant was meant. The drink must, however, have been a very pleasant one, and much admired for its intoxicating, magic, power; for it was adored as a deity both in the Vêda and in the Avesta. So far as regards the Avesta, the deification of the Haoma is as little an essential part of its teaching as that of Mithra or of the Water-God *Apām napât* (Vedic *apān napāt*), etc., and can only be explained by the theory that these Gods stood in so great popular favour among the Iranians, that Zarathustra, the Prophet of the Avesta, and his followers, were compelled to adopt them in order to secure the general acceptance of their own doctrines among the mass of the people.

Finally, in a fourth direction we come upon instances of very close connexion between the Vêda and the Avesta, which go back to the common Aryan period, but in regard to which each occupies a different position. A whole series of Vedic names for good gods appears in the Avesta applied to demonic, evil, beings. Thus, we have *Indra* (or with the variant *Andra*); *Násatya*, Zend *Náonhathya*; *śarva*, Zend *śaurva*; *hari*, Zend *zairi*. This is specially the case with the very words for 'god' and 'demon' themselves, — Vedic *dēva*, Zend *dēva*; Vedic *asura*, Zend *ahura*, — each member of each pair having a contrary meaning. Some writers have had no hesitation in discovering in this difference the origin of the separation of the Aryans into Indians and Iranians. In other words they have traced this separation back to a religious impulse, and have maintained that the Iranians, under the influence of their prevailing monotheistic tendencies, had changed their old nature-gods into demons and devils. So far as regards the Avesta, *i. e.*, so far as concerns the followers of Zarathustra, there may be a certain amount of truth in this theory, but their time is far later than that of the division of the Aryans. That must be set at a much earlier period. Within Iran, there were a number of very different developments, as is borne witness to by the retention of the nature-gods *Mithra*, *apām napât*, etc., already mentioned. Above all, the words *dēva* and *asura* are both used in the Vêda in the same good sense as in the Avesta, — the word *Asura*, moreover, only in this manner throughout the older parts of the Vêda.<sup>14</sup> Thus, long after the separation no difference in this respect existed between the two peoples, and it first became general in historic times, after long continued propinquity and a contact which meanwhile was in part unfriendly. In fact in the texts of the second Vedic period, the so-called *brāhmaṇas*, there appear a number of legends concerning the differences of ritual between the groups of the *ādityas* and the *aṅgirasas*, in which the former are victorious, as the champions of the Right Observance, while the defeated *aṅgirasas* may be taken as the maintainers of Irano-avestic views. In the same way, we can explain similar legends regarding the contest between the *dēvas* and the *asuras* in which the latter appear as the elder sons of the Creator (*Prajāpati*). Note, too, that *Kāvyā Usanas* (who corresponds to the Avesta *Kava Uç*) is mentioned in these texts as the Teacher and Representative of the *asuras*.

It has been recently suggested that the division of the Aryans should be referred rather to political than to religious grounds; namely that the Aryans who were settled in the northern portion of the hitherto common land, influenced by the monarchical institutions which had been already adopted by their Semitic neighbours, may have been themselves persuaded to embrace a similar political condition, and, so led, still further, to monotheistic tendencies. On the other hand, their brethren in the southern tracts of their country, still living a nomadic life, were for this reason induced to wander further, and hence invaded India. As a matter of fact, in the Vedic texts there is no mention of large, established, kingdoms. All that we hear of are numerous small clans, each of which has its own leader. It is not till the second Vedic period, in the just-mentioned *brāhmaṇa* texts, that there is any reference to great kings and kingdoms. Moreover, this immigration did not take place under theegis of the group of seven speculative deities who had already been placed at the head of the pantheon in the Aryan seats; but under the leadership of the gods symbolical of Nature, who from ancient times had protected them from hostile powers, and who now, in accord with the warlike progress of the people, advanced again to the foreground. This leads us now more specially into the time of the Vêda, and on to the Land of India.

<sup>14</sup> It is an interesting fact that the word *asura* has two meanings in the Avesta, a good and a bad one, while in the Vêda it is used with only the former sense. Cf. the remarks in regard to the Vedic *Kāvyā Usanas* which follow.



At the time to which we owe the songs and texts of the Vêda arranged in the form in which we have them at present, the occupation of India by the Aryans was already a completed fact, — it belonged to the past. But various references contained in it, which are in part contemporary with the events with which they deal, show us each phase of occupation, and lead us backwards step by step. A good portion of the older hymns was not composed in India itself, but in the North-Western border-lands, on the banks of the Indus and its affluents, or even still more to the west or north-west, in actual Iranian or Turanian neighbourhoods.<sup>15</sup> The later songs and other texts lead us from the Indus, across the Sarasvati, eastwards up to the Sadânirâ, the Ganges. The names of the points of the compass (behind = West, before = East, left = North, right = South) mark the direction of their course. 'Left' (northern) is also indicated by a word which means 'above,' while 'southern' is not indicated in the older texts by 'right,' but by words which mean 'below,' 'netherly.' Each of these has significance in connexion with the descent of the Aryans from the North-West into India.<sup>16</sup>

It is only in the latest Vedic texts that we find the first few traces<sup>17</sup> of the conquest of the south, the Deccan, by the Aryans, for in reality this belongs to the epic or Buddhistic period.

Now, the development of the religious conceptions of the Aryans went hand in hand with their geographical expansion over India.

At the time at which the existing text of the *Rik-saṁhitā* was compiled, Agni, the god of fire, and *Indra*, the god of the thunderstorm, stood at the head of the Vedic Olympus. The great majority of the songs which compose the collection are dedicated to these two deities, but in such a way that the god of the priestly sacrificial services takes precedence of the god of the warlike mass of the people in the number of hymns dedicated to each, and that therefore the hymns to Agni always stand at the commencement of each section (*maṇḍala*) of the collection.<sup>18</sup> With regard to their mythological importance,

<sup>15</sup> Compare the names showing a connexion with Iran, which are found in so late a document as the list of teachers in the *Vāṣiṣṭa-brāhmaṇa* of the *Sāma-vêda*.

<sup>16</sup> It is also characteristic that in the allotment of the four points of the compass, each to the guardianship of a tutelary divinity, which we find in the later Vedic texts, the south (and the later we go, the more decidedly) is made over to Yama, the god of death. This probably refers either to the deadly climate of the south or to powerful opposition on the part of the wild aborigines.

<sup>17</sup> In a passage in one of the *Brāhmaṇas* the *Andhras*, who in later times are the chief representatives of Brahmanical culture in the south, are mentioned as a barbarous people. The name of the Deccan river, *Godavari*, is altogether formed on Vedic models.

The river-name *Rudra*, of which the same may be said, occurs in the *Brāhmaṇa* of the White *Yajur-vêda*. In this passage mention is made of a prince of that locality who was expelled from a kingdom which his family had already held for ten generations.

The reference to the Hare in the Moon in the *Yajus* texts is based on the form which the spots on the full moon assume only in the Deccan, where the 'Man in the Moon' resembles a hare.

Also the legends of *Agastya* (Canopus) and *Triśāṅku* (the Southern Cross) lead us to the Deccan.

At the time of the *Periplus* the most southerly point of the Deccan was known under the name of *Komara* (the Cape Comorin of today), which brings us back to a title of the bride of *Siva*, which, though a secondary one, already occurs in one of the *dravyaka* texts of the *Yajur-vêda*.

Several of the metonyms ending in *putra* which occur in a list of teachers in the white *Yajur-vêda* turn up again, in the inscriptions of the *Andhra-bhṛitya* or *Chāḍuka* dynasties, as names of kings who flourished in the first centuries of the Christian era. (These kings appear to have taken the names of their *gurus*; *Gautamī-putra*, *Vāsiṣṭhī-putra*, *Hārīti-putra*, etc. See *Indische Studien*, iii, 486.)

The name, *Mādhyandina*, of a school of the white *Yajur-vêda* is probably capable of being identified with the *Mediandinos* of *Arrian*.

<sup>18</sup> On the whole, the arrangement of the hymns in the *Rik-saṁhitā*, as we have it now, depends on what may be called literary-scientific principles, i. e., the attempt to group the then existing hymn-material, first, genealogically, according to the families of the singers, and, then, according to certain other fixed principles. What was the occasion of this editing, and when it was completed, are matters about which we are still entirely in the dark; but we may perhaps be permitted to suggest that the motive of self-preservation on the part of the *Brāhmaṇas* had a share in it, or, in other words, that this compilation was intended as a means of defence against attacks. It appears likely that such attacks could only have come from Buddhism. The texts of the second Vedic period seem, in fact, to stand already directly under the influence of Buddhist doctrines (see *Sitz-Ber. d. Berl. Akad.* 1897, pp. 597-98). For the texts of the third Vedic period, the so-called *sūtra*-texts, this is certain.

All Vedic texts were originally handed down from one generation to the next by verbal tradition only, and not in writing. The existing code is as it was left by the last hand, and was preceded by numerous preliminary codifications, traces of which are now preserved only in quotations from them. In opposition to J. Halevy, I do not consider that the secondary fixation of the text in anyway prejudices the age or genuineness of the materials contained in it.



however, their position is reversed. As a subject of legend, Indra comes more to the foreground than does Agni. Fire, in its activities and its effects, is too much an object of the senses, too material, too palpable, for its deity ever to play a great mythic rôle. Only its mystic generation by the friction of two pieces of wood, and the downward leap from heaven of the lightning-fire out of the cloud-waters, as well as with its sudden disappearance back again within them (its 'Flight into the Waters') form the subjects of mysterious stories. The part taken by fire in the expulsion of the darkness of Night, with its attendant demons, lies too plain before our eyes, and gives no occasion for myths. Nor is the leading part which it plays at a sacrifice less a matter of fact. The gods are brought down from heaven to the earth by means of the flashing flames, and it acts as a messenger between gods and men, carrying up to the former the offerings of the sacrifice, and, in exchange, bringing down to the latter the favour of the deities.

Much more thoroughly does Vedic Myth occupy itself with Indra, the god of the thunderstorm, whose personality is neither visible nor tangible, and can only be gathered from his deeds. Now, these deeds are accomplished, partly in the far distance, in the war with the heaven-climbing cloud-giants, whom he hurls down back with his thunderbolt, and partly, too, close at hand, in spiritual wise, as he stands by the Aryan people and helps it to conquer the new seats for gaining which it has wandered forth, and to crush the opposition of the aborigines whom it pictures as hostile demons. Indeed, to such an extent do these two phases of his activity go hand in hand, that they often overlap each other, and it is not always easy to say distinctly which of the two is being alluded to. The intoxication caused by his quaffing the cups of *Soma* offered to him by his Aryan protégés strengthens him and encourages him in his valorous deeds, just as it acts on them themselves as they follow his example in drinking it, and under his leadership complete the conquest. He is thus peculiarly the favourite national god of the Aryans during their migration into India. His name appears to mean 'the Strong,' 'the Mighty,' 'the Lord' (compare *ina*, strong, from root *in*, to pervade, to prevail), and probably first gained its full force in the Vedic period, though, in the related form *andra*, it occurs already in the Avesta.

These two chief representatives of Divine Power well illustrate the contrast between the opposing forces of the immigrating Aryans and of the Aborigines with whom they fought and whom they dubbed sometimes as 'the sacrificeless ones' ('the ones who do not sacrifice aright'), and sometimes (from their darker skins and general personal appearance) as 'the noseless ones,' *i. e.*, evidently, 'snubnosed.' By their side there stands a numerous body of other deities, the conceptions regarding whom are based upon the most diverse relations. Among them we may first mention *Pûshan*, who can be considered as a kind of representative of the 'Plebs,' of the common folk, as compared with the *Agni* of the priests and with the *Indra* of the warrior class. He is the God of Roads and of Cattle, who leads the advancing nomad to the right place for him to erect his temporary habitation, and points out the right road by which the cattle are to be taken forth to pasture. In contrast with the *soma*-drinking Indra, what are offered to him are groats, gruel, and porridge, the food of the common people, and hence the myth describes him jokingly as 'toothless.' It is also said of him that he cohabits with his sister and even with his mother, which probably refers to similar immorality among the wandering folk. In the *Rik-saṁhitā*, which we may fairly say was intended more for the sacrificial service of the higher classes and of the rich, there are not many hymns dedicated to this deity of the common people, but in the ritual formulas, whose composition we can fairly place at about the commencement of the second Vedic period, *Pûshan* regularly appears by the side of *Savitri* and the two *Āsvins*, and is described as he by whose 'two hands' everyone, who at a sacrifice has anything to perform with his own hands, carries out his duties successfully; so that every action of that sort connected with a sacrifice appears to be consecrated by his assistance.

Equally old, and equally the property of the people is the form of the divine 'Artist,' *Tvasṭri*, who always appears accompanied by celestial 'females,' his assistants in his work. On the whole, however, his name occurs but seldom. By his side, or, rather, opposed to him as rivals, and even surpassing him in skill, stands a group of three demi-god Smiths (*Ribhu*), who seem to represent the creative power of Nature during the three periods, the past, the present, and the future.



While Pūshan and these other gods have no peculiar nature-symbolism for their basis, and their forms appear rather to be products of speculative imagination, this is even more the case with another deity who occupies a prominent place in the songs of the *Rik-saṃhitā* beside Agni and Indra. His name, **Savitṛi**, which means 'the Impeller,' 'the Stimulator,' is as a rule accompanied by the word *dēva*, god, divine. Hence it was still understood as an ordinary adjective, and, as such, occasionally appears as an epithet of Tvashṭri. It is generally explained as a personification of the life-generating, creative, power of the sun,<sup>19</sup> but to this recent objections have been raised which, so far as the original meaning of the word is concerned, have considerable force. The 'God' Savitṛi appears much rather intended to replace Varuṇa, who had been thrust into the background by the promotion of the folk-god, Indra. During the migration of the Aryans into India, Varuṇa's lordship over gods and men has been exactly transferred to Savitṛi. The monotheistic speculations which had already arisen in the Aryan period had not been altogether suppressed in the ranks of the emigrants to India. The train of thought, on the contrary, progressed, till it appears to have centred itself round the sun, whose rays we should probably understand under the symbols of the 'golden hands' of Savitṛi, and of his arms upraised in blessing.

Although many, and indeed some of the most beautiful, hymns in the *Rik-saṃhitā* are dedicated to Savitṛi, he did not acquire his supreme importance till the commencement of the second Vedic period, at the time when the oldest ritual formulæ came into existence. 'On the stimulation (command) of the divine Savitṛi, with the arms of the twin Aśvins, with the hands of Pūshan' (see above), so runs the formula of consecration dating from this time, with which nearly every sacrificial action must be commenced. Similarly, the prayer recited by the teacher on the reception (*upanyanam*) of a young pupil, which calls upon the 'God' Savitṛi 'to stimulate our thoughts,' and which under the name of the sacred *sāvitṛi*, is still in daily use up to the present time, can probably be referred back to this period.

Among the deities of the *Rik-saṃhitā*, which depend upon pure nature-symbolism, the most prominent are the two **Aśvins, the Dawn, and Rudra**. The first named pair of gods, which has long been identified with the Dioscuri, can, as we have seen, be traced back to the primitive Indo-Teutonic period. In the Vēda it is more especially their place in the morning sky<sup>20</sup> which is of importance, a circumstance which is not of equal significance in the case of the Dioscuri, although it appears to be proved to have belonged to the original conception of the pair. For this reason, and more particularly because the two Aśvins always appear as rescuers from the terrors of the night, they have lately been identified with the constellation of Gemini<sup>21</sup> acting as the morning star at the time of the winter solstice, when this was of special significance. Attempts, based on this theory, have been made to fix, both chronologically and geographically, the original home of the Indo-Teutonic family, and we are led by it to the 4th millennium before the Christian era<sup>22</sup> as the period, and to Armenia and the country below the Caspian Sea as the site.<sup>23</sup>

Along with them, in the older hymns, the Dawn, who figures as their beloved, is celebrated with warmth and poetic animation, the source of the singers' inspiration being more particularly her eternal youth and beauty.

<sup>19</sup> Just as Tvashṭri is a personification of its 'fashioning' power.

<sup>20</sup> Can the description of the two Aśvins as *mādhvī* (fond of *madhu*), *mādhvīchī* (wandering in *madhu* — the feminine form in both cases is remarkable) have any connexion with the use of the word *madhu* to mean 'the morning mist'? See *Sitz-Ber. d. Kgl. Ak. d. Wissensch.* 1898, p. 575. Or, to go still further, can we also connect the name of the Roman goddess *Matuta* (*matutinus*) Aurora with *madhu* (*mathu*)? I admit that hitherto it has usually been connected with *maturus*, early, or with *maus*, in the morning (*maus, bonus*). The root *manā* also reappears with an unspirated tenuis in the Latin *mentula* (Sanskrit *manthā*, *manthava*, a churning stick).

<sup>21</sup> The usual explanation of the Aśvins and the Dioscuri by the morning and the evening stars destroys their twinning. Moreover the planets concerned, Mercury and Venus, owing to their different periods of revolution round the sun, continually interchange their rôles, and only occasionally appear in the heavens on the same day, the one as the morning- and the other as the evening-star. In short, the circumstance that occasionally on two successive days one appears as the evening- and the other as the morning-star, can hardly be accepted as a reason for their being represented as a pair of twin deities.

<sup>22</sup> This is, it is true, a long time ago, but that is hardly an impediment.

<sup>23</sup> See *Sitz. Ber. d. Kgl. Ak. d. Wissensch.* 1898, p. 565.



While these two deities, the *Aśvins* and the Dawn, became more and more indefinite and gradually retired into the background, whether referred to directly or in mythic legend, as the Aryans wandered further into India, *Rudra*, on the other hand, is the god who represents a direct connexion between the *Vēda* and the period which followed it. In the former he appears as a malevolent personality, whose power was greatly feared. The storm-wind, which he represents, is personified in him as the raging horde, which tears up and carries all things off with it as it rushes shrieking through the air. The winds (*Marut*) are indeed also held in high honour as the warlike companions and helpmates of *Indra*, and their power is at the same time strongly insisted upon; but *Rudra*, and his companions, the *Rudras*, are without that placable element which allows the activity of the *Maruts*, on account of their association with *Indra*, to appear as benevolent to mankind. With the 'howling' *Rudra* horror and anguish outweigh every other feeling. Men implore him for forbearance; he is not only a subduer of the demons, like the *Maruts* clustered round the god of the thunderstorm, but is feared as a terrifying demon himself, whose very name it is hardly safe to mention. Nevertheless he has also a kindly, healing, side to his character; for he chases the evil miasmas, and hence counts as a remedy-bringing physician. On this account, principally, but also, no doubt, with euphemistic intent, in order to propitiate him in advance, he, together with his sister and spouse, is appealed to with every kind of endearing appellation. He is the deity who leads us over from the Vedic to the Epic Olympus, the intermediate stage in the progress from the one to the other being found in the formulæ collected in the texts of the *Yajus-saṁhitā*, which belong to the second period of Vedic literature.

This second Vedic period, in which the entire sacrificial ritual was alike developed and established, was also the time of the rise and consolidation of the brahmanic polity, and of the brahmanic hierarchy. The conquest of their new domicile in India had intensified among the immigrant Aryans the feeling of unity of race in contrast with the aborigines. The opposition which they encountered compelled them to close fellowship. The sacrifice, with its hymns and peculiar customs, formed a strongly defined frontier-line against everything of a foreign nature. Those who were skilled in and administered it, secured through it the favour of the gods, whose goodwill was absolutely necessary in the battles with the children of the soil. Armed with this authority, these men by virtue of their office stood at the head of the nation. Even the people of the higher classes and the rich, for whose benefit they principally interceded with the gods, became more and more subordinated to them. Through intermixture with the aborigines hybrid castes arose and were gradually marked off. The reception of princes and of the more important families of the latter into the Aryan community contributed still greater influence to the priests who contrived it. It finally came to this, that they alone appeared as the proper depositories of the divine commands, nay, even of the divine power, inasmuch as through their sacrifices they could actually exorcise and compel the gods to be their obedient servants. Like the gods themselves, so also the entire nation from the princes downwards fell into a condition of absolute submission; while, on the other hand, when princes did so subject themselves, in return for this complacency, they were helped by the priests to the complete possession of royal power over the remaining portion of the people. The old god of the masses, *Indra*, under whose auspices the Aryans had made their victorious entry into the new land, was thrust aside, and in his place there came forward as representative of the magic virtue of the priestly formulas, and, as a consequence, of the priestly pretensions, a new divinity, *Bṛhaspati*.

In a similar manner the forms of the remaining gods became exchanged. The old divinities based on nature-symbolism, it is true, still remained in existence, and continued to prevail still further but they found no natural, genuine, development. The new forms of deities of this period all belong to the class of imaginative speculations, including a large number of names ending in *-pati*, i. e., 'Master of . . .', like the *Bṛhas-pati* just mentioned.

While the number of thirty-three gods, meaning by this merely a large but indefinite total, originated<sup>24</sup> in Aryan, or even in Indo-Teutonic, times, this number was now systemati-

<sup>24</sup> See Kuhn's *Zeitschrift für vergleichende Sprachforschung*, xiii. p. 125.



cally fixed in its details, and different groups of deities were imagined, each of which appeared as representative of one or other of the three worlds (eight *Vasus* of the earth, eleven *Rudras* of the air, and twelve *Ādityas* of the heaven).<sup>25</sup> In addition to these there were numerous other groups, the *Viśvé devās*, All-gods, and so forth. The Manes, also, 'the Fathers,' who, as interesting themselves in the welfare of their descendants, were considered worthy of having sacrifices and oblations assigned to them, were divided into manifold groups. The classification of the gods according to the three worlds under three ruling divinities, Agni, Indra or Vāyu, and Sūrya, now comes into the foreground. This Triad gradually became concentrated into a Unity, whether it was that each was considered as a different stage of development or as a different expression of the powers of one simple, mighty, *ātman* (soul, spirit), or that all three had entirely fallen under the supremacy of the Savitri (see above) who had taken the place of the ancient Varuṇa, and who now, in his turn, appeared under the new name of *Prajā-pati* or *Brahman*.

Here it is that we approach the conceptions of the gods which were current in the epic period. On the one hand, the tendency towards monotheism formed itself in the priestly schools into a complete pantheism, that found its goal in the theory of an 'Absolute' which it indicated by the neuter word '*Brahman*;' and, on the other hand, amongst the laity, the same direction of thought took, in correspondence with the needs of its votaries, concrete, sectarian, forms, and began to clothe certain of the popular divinities already existing with attributes of the highest might. The gods actually selected for this distinction were the two which represented the earth and the atmosphere, — Agni and Indra (or Vāyu). This, however, so took effect, that to the epithets and legends which centred round the name of Agni there adhered also those belonging to the Vedic Rudra, and from this combination, with the addition of some further popular ingredients, arose the mighty form of *Siva*. Similarly, to the fables and legends attached to Indra and Vāyu there accreted those dealing with *Vishnu*, a deity who plays but a small rôle in the Vēda, and whose original significance is still somewhat indistinct, but whose name now superseded those of the other two.

The development of the conceptions of these divinities seems to have been specially favoured by the *Brahmans* with the object of utilising them to meet a powerful foe who had in the meantime arisen against them in their own ranks. The degradation of the ancient gods under the dominion of the priests, and the weighty pressure of the Brahmanical hierarchy upon all ranks of the people, which had abolished the old healthy joy in living that made men pray to the gods for a life of a hundred years, and which taught instead that earthly life was but misery and woe from which the only release was flight, led ultimately to a tremendous reaction. A certain king's son, who had made himself master of all the wisdom of the priests, renounced his princely rank, and at the age of thirty years appeared under the name of *Buddha*, 'the awakened,' as a wandering preacher to the common folk. With a bold stroke he gave to everyone the right to free himself through his own exertions from the misery of life and from the further states of existence expected after death. The success which he gained in his mission was immense, although it was really but a kind of intoxication, by which the people could find no permanent happiness, and from which, compelled by the imperious necessity of stilling the needs of their hearts, they soon returned to the creations and imaginations of the past in the very manner which has just been described.

Moreover, Buddhism itself did not long retain its original, absolute, negation of everything divine, but on its part also advanced to the deification of its own creations.

At the same time we get by it the first, indeed we may say the only, certain fixed point in the chronology of ancient India; a fact which is of course for us of altogether inestimable value. In the

<sup>25</sup> It is still doubtful what ideas lie at the bottom of these definite numbers. This is more especially the case in regard to the eight attributed to the *Vasus*, concerning whose very attributes we have but the vaguest indications (originally it was Agni, but later it was Indra, who was their leader). The number eleven given for the *Rudras* may refer to the eleven directions (the four main points of the compass, the intermediate ones, the zenith, the nadir, and the centre). The twelve *Ādityas* may be based on a reference to the twelve months of the solar year.



inscriptions of a king named **Piyadasi**,<sup>26</sup> who confessed the teaching of Buddha and sent forth missionaries to spread his doctrines, there are mentioned the names of different Greek kings,<sup>27</sup> the successors of Alexander the Great, as his contemporaries (or vassals), from which we are enabled to fix his time as the middle of the third century before our era, and the time of Buddha as about two hundred years earlier. From this point, therefore, are we enabled to calculate backwards the progress of the entire preceding historical development.

But it is not only their Buddhistic contents which lend such high chronological importance to these edicts of **Piyadasi**, and make them, owing to the certainty of their date, the only possible starting point of all investigations into the history of the civilisation and literature of India: their outer form, the characters and language in which they are written, stamps them also as such.

They, in short, represent the oldest form of Indian writing, from which it can be traced downwards even to the present day, stage by stage, through numerous modifications. This refers, indeed, to only one of the two forms of writing in which the edicts have been preserved to us, — the so-called 'lapidary' form. The other form, which is a cursive script, was confined to a small area. It was formerly called the Aryan character, after the region in which it was found, and occurs not only in inscriptions, but also on coins, and even in manuscripts. It is named *kharoshthi*, i. e., 'asses' lips' (!), but according to Alfred Ludwig, this name is really derived from the Semitic root *kharath*, to scratch in. The script is a corruption of a Syrian form of writing of the fourth century before Christ.

The 'lapidary' character goes back to a much earlier period. Its general appearance is so like the ancient Greek alphabet that its first decipherer, James Prinsep, explained the latter as Indian writing turned topsy-turvy. Otfried Müller took an exactly opposite standpoint, in which he has latterly been followed by J. Halévy. Georg Bühler's enquiries, however, which are based on an earlier treatise of mine that was written in the year 1855, show that the truth is that the similarity of the two characters is merely a proof of their having been borrowed at the same time (about 800 B. C.) from an ancient Semitic alphabet, on each case through the intermediary of the Phœnicians, and that here we have a very useful synchronism, which fits in admirably with the other loans which India seems to have taken from Semitic sources.

Of even greater importance for Indian history is the language of these edicts. They are couched neither in the dialect of the Vêdas nor in Classical Sanskrit, but in the vernacular of the people, and, further, in two or three not very widely separated dialects. The reason for this was probably the desire that their contents should be as widely known as possible, which would not have been the case to the same extent if they had been composed in Sanskrit.<sup>28</sup> Sanskrit and the vernaculars represent two concurrent stages of growth of the ancient Vedic speech which were contemporaneously developed. Sanskrit is a form of speech, current only in the circles of those who learned it, which grew out of the study of the Vedic texts, and was brought into its existing shape by being made subject

<sup>26</sup> No prince in the whole history of the world, not even Constantine or Charlemagne, did so much for the religion which he professed as did Piyadasi (or Aśoka). He published his religious edicts in all parts of his great kingdom, embracing the whole of Hindōstān, on isolated rocks and pillars. The Buddhist synod held in the seventeenth year of his reign dispatched missionaries to every point of the compass, even to foreign countries. His own son, prince Mahinda, led such a mission to Ceylon, which from that time became the head quarters of Buddhism, whence, subsequently, it spread itself over the Indian Archipelago and Further India.

<sup>27</sup> *Antiyoka* = Antiochus; *Antikini* (a mistake of the engraver for *Antikona*) = Antigonus; *Maka* = Magas, *Turamaya* = Ptolemaios, i. e., Ptolemy. See *Indische Studien*, iii. 168, 169. The last of these identifications (compare the English pronunciation of the Greek word *Psyche*, as 'Saike') is of exceptional interest. It allows us to recognise the name of Ptolemy in the *Asura-maya*, who appears in the *Mahābhārata* as the artist of the gods in the place of the ancient *Tvaṣṭri*, and who is in later times mentioned as the first representative of Indian astronomy; so that under him we find concealed both the prince famed for his magnificent royal buildings, and also the later, equally illustrious, astronomer of the same name.

<sup>28</sup> We can gather that Piyadasi's desire that the contents of his edicts should be widely known was at least as strong as his intention that the published copies should last as long as possible, from the fact that he proclaimed his edicts in all parts of his great empire on rocks, pillars, and the like. It follows that the knowledge of writing must at that time have been very widely extended.



to fixed rules of grammar; while the vernaculars of the people represented the regular continuation of the old Vedic language through dialectic changes. Here, also, although it is impossible to specify any definite chronological period as necessary for the change, as well as for the difference of culture which we remark between the Vêda and these inscriptions, centuries are required in order to arrive, stage by stage, at the level of the vernacular of the edicts from the form of speech of the Vedic texts. With regard to this, however, it is of the greatest interest to note that the names, which in the Buddhist legends are mentioned as those of contemporaries of Buddha, are identical with the names which appear in the third stage of Vedic literature, — the period of the so called *sûtras*, — as those of its recorders. Moreover, this very word, *sûtra*, was applied by the Buddhists themselves to denote the oldest stage of their own literature.

The sketches of the conditions under which Buddha's life was passed, which we find in these *sûtras*, present to us a very clear picture of the state of India in his time, from both a political and a social point of view, and, by their simplicity and sobriety, leave for the most part an impression of being thoroughly trustworthy. Buddha's activity as a wandering preacher was principally spent in eastern India, in Magadha, but now and then extended into the Deccan. The country appears as still divided amongst different petty kings and princes, although there are already mentioned some great cities about whose foundations legends are related.

Buddhism exercised an important influence on the development of the Indian people. The appeal to the free-will of mankind, by which each individual was summoned to take into his own hands his fate in his next existence, and even to free himself altogether from the pains of existence itself, and which was addressed to everyone without exception of rank, caste, or even sex, — for women fell within its range, — did not fail to awaken and stimulate the powers, hitherto dormant and oppressed, of all, and especially of the lower, classes.

It happened that the time of the high-tide of Buddhism coincided with that of the opening of the land to foreign influence, especially to the influence of Hellenic culture. While the spiritual discoveries of the Brahmanical hierarchy were jealously confined to their own schools, Buddhism spread not only among every section of its own people, but also showed itself, partly as courteous and compliant towards foreign influence, and partly even as developing a missionary activity beyond the frontiers of its own land.

Here arises the question, which has been so much discussed of late, whether any traces of Buddhist teaching and ideas can be traced in the narratives of our gospels. The essential elements of Christianity would not suffer from such a discovery. The gospel that men are the children of God, which alone of all religions in the world gives that which is needed by the human heart to enable it to face all the necessities of life, is so absolutely different from the ground-principles of Buddhist doctrine, that such historical relations could not interfere with it in any way; but at present none have been determined with any certainty.<sup>29</sup> The date of the composition of the existing Buddhist canon, whether in the recension of the Northern or of the Southern Buddhists,<sup>30</sup> has not yet been fixed so distinctly as to enable us to build any firm conclusions upon them.

<sup>29</sup> The position of the *saṅgha*, or, as we may translate it, 'the congregation of the faithful,' as the highest ecclesiastical authority in the Buddhist Trinity has a solid foundation in definite regulations to that effect, while the Avesta *Fravashis* (substratums of the souls) of the believers, as well as the 'Holy Ghost' of the Christian Trinity, have nothing of the sort. By the bye, the placing of 'The Son' before 'The Father' in the final verse of the second epistle to the Corinthians, xiii. 13, which lies at the bottom of our modern prominent worship of the second Person of the Trinity, corresponds to the position which the Brâhmapa texts give to the priestly *edâk* (Latin *rex*), i. e., the *logos* as a cosmic principle, over *Prajâpati*. 'If there is anything higher than *Prajâpati*, it is the *Vâch*.' See *Ind. Stud.* ix. 479.

<sup>30</sup> Neither of the two can pretend to represent the recension of the canon as established at the third church-council held in the time of Piyadasi, which, moreover, was almost certainly only orally compiled, and in another dialect, namely that of Magadha, or Eastern India, in which Buddha is said to have preached. But both contain very much that is old and authentic, and that, of course, more especially in the portions which are common to both. It must, however, be admitted that the southern canon, which was fixed, according to its own tradition about 80 B. C., by being put into writing in Pâli, a dialect of western India introduced into Ceylon by Prince Mahinda, has a much stronger claim to authenticity than the northern one, which itself professes to have been prepared under King



In India itself Buddhism reached a high state of prosperity. It was, however, in the end entirely expelled after having endured for about a thousand years, and it is now coming back again into the country as an importation from outside. But, before its expulsion, in the same manner as the Reformation upon Catholicism, it had reacted very favourably upon Brahmanism. It had substantially lessened the number of the bloody sacrifices of animals, and had operated towards the gradual disuse of the custom of widow-burning and the total discontinuance of human sacrifices (see *Sitz. Ber. B. Akad.* 1897, pp. 597, 598). It has, however, also exercised a most baneful influence in this very direction, as it has sensibly contributed to the absolute sacredness in which the life of the cow is held, to the abstention from flesh-food, and to the universal adoption of the practice of vegetarianism. Through this the physical strength of the Indian people has been very seriously affected. Ever since, it has been the prey of foreign invaders, to whom, in the time of Alexander the Great it had been able to exhibit so powerful a resistance.<sup>31</sup>

When Buddhism was expelled from India, there remained behind it a closely related sect, that of the **Jains**. The origin of this sect is still in the dark. According to some, who base their opinion more especially on the fact that the name of their founder is the same as that of a teacher who is mentioned in Buddhist legends as an opponent and as a predecessor of Buddha, the Jain sect must be considered to be pre-Buddhistic. According to others, it is merely the earliest schism from Buddhism itself, and too much weight is not to be laid on the identity of name, as the traditions regarding the personalities of the founders of the two religions agree in all essential particulars. However that may be, this sect has itself become divided into two groups, which, as is the case in all disagreements between two brother-religions, hate each other cordially. These groups are known as the **Digambara** (the naked: literally 'those whose garments are only the quarters of the sky') and the **Svêtâmbara** (clothed in white). It is only the canon of the latter which is known at the present day, and it exists in colossal dimensions. The Digambara appear to be the more ancient, for not only in the *Rik-saṃhitā* itself (x, 136, 2), is mention made of 'Wind-girdled Bacchantes,' *munayō vātaraśanās*, but they also appear to be referred to in the well-known accounts of the Indian 'Gymnosophists' of the time of Alexander the Great. Even at the present day we see mendicant Sivites wandering about as naked Yōgins, probably as successors of the companions of Rudra.

Besides their sacred canon, the Jains are also possessors of a great profane literature, especially strong in narratives, in which they even rivalled the Buddhists, although also there in a secondary position. Judging from its contents and form (the language is a dialect far more modern than, for instance, Pāli) as well as from the traditional accounts of its composition, their canon cannot be dated before the fifth century of our era.

The development of the Jain sect belongs moreover to a time and to a locality in which the personality of **Krishṇa** was still popular as that of a heroic prince.<sup>32</sup> He was then celebrated as a royal scion of the tribe of Yādavas who dwelt at Dvārakā in western India; and he had not yet attained to the rank of a demi-god as we see him in the *Mahābhārata*, nor had the shepherd legends, more especially

---

Kanishka about 40 A. D., and is couched in a corrupt form of Sanskrit. At the same time we have for portions of the latter some very old Chinese translations, which also claim to go back to the first century after our era, but whose contents and form still await examination. (The Tibetan translations, it should be observed, belong to a far later date.) See *Indische Studien*, iii, 140, and *Indische Streifen*, iii, 421. The Neo-platonic doctrine of emanation, in regard to the to on, of Plotinus, essentially agrees with a similar theory advanced in a philosophic hymn of the *Rik-saṃhitā* (x, 29). One is tempted to put forward the name of Plotinus's teacher, Ammonius Saccas (d. about 240 A. D.), as simply a representative of the Egyptian (Ammonius) and Indian (Sakka = Pāli Sakka, a name of Śākyamuni Buddha) wisdom.

The Orphic golden egg is met in the *Vēda* (see *Ind. Stud.* xviii, 12 and 18). The attempt to connect Pythagoras with Buddha fails owing to the higher antiquity of the former. See the same, pp. 120 and 463 and ff.

<sup>31</sup> It is well known how Buddhism turned into peaceful nomads the Mongolian hordes, who in the thirteenth century devastated the whole of Iran, western Asia, and south-eastern Europe, till the German sword bade them halt at Liegnitz (April 9th, 1241). Under Buddhist influence the same people now refuse to shed the blood of any animals, though they do not hesitate to consume flesh which had been slaughtered by others.

<sup>32</sup> Can this special connexion with Krishṇa have had such influence that Jainism was able to remain in India, while Buddhism was expelled from it?



the tales of his amours with the herd-maidens, which have been incorporated in the modern Krishna-myth, yet been attached to him. It therefore reaches back to a time which preceded the composition of the existing recension of the great epic.<sup>33</sup>

Although Buddhism is essentially contemporary with the third period of Vedic literature, that of the *sūtras*, while the second is that of the creation and the development of the hierarchical Brahmanism as an opponent of which it came into being, we apparently find traces of it already in the latest products of this second period. For the literature of this age, as well as that of the first or *samhitā* period, shows itself on closer inspection to be the *final* result of a series of connected attempts, which had been preceded by a great number of similar texts. These were at first in every case orally preserved and it was only in the course of time that they were set down in writing. This is also true to a like extent of the phase of literature which, on the side of Brahmanism, directly follows that of the Vēdas, namely the *Epic*. The Indian epic was also in the olden times merely handed down from mouth to mouth, and hence its first beginnings have been lost. In the texts of the Brāhmanas, at the various occasions afforded by the ritual, we find mentioned works of an epic nature, which already existed in a definite form (they were divided into *parvans*), and dealt with mythic occurrences relating to men, demigods, and gods. Again, in the Epic as we have it now, there lie embedded narratives, in both prose and verse, which we can look upon as fragments of older texts. Their antiquity is proved by the fact that the subject matter often refers to the resistance which the members of the royal caste offered to the growing preponderance of the Brahmanical hierarchy; but unfortunately these are fragments and nothing more. It has even been conjectured that the existing contents of the *Mahābhārata* in no way conform to those of the poem in its original form, — that the victors in the present recension were not the primitive victors, — but that there has been a secondary recasting of<sup>34</sup> the whole work in favour of the former, by which the rôles have been interchanged. This recasting must of course have been done in a very thorough fashion, if it was done at all. The theory is that the original saga described the war between the Kurus and the Panchālas, the latter being aided and represented by the Pāṇḍavas, a tribe with which they had marriage connexions. By these last, moreover, we should have to understand a wild mountain people of northern India which ruled in Hindōstān about the time of Buddha. During the sovereignty of these Pāṇḍavas the epic would have been changed into a poem in their praise (see *Indische Studien*, ii. 402 and ff.). Simultaneously with this, there would also have occurred the transformation of the Vedic into the Epic Olympus, in which the chief deities are Siva and Vishṇu, in such a manner that the person of the latter came most prominently forward, having in some way still unknown to us superseded the ancient Indra. This supersession was assisted by Vishṇu's identification with Arjuna, an additional name of Indra, and with a human hero peculiar to the west of India entitled Krishna to whom we have already referred.

We have, moreover, chronological touch with the invasion of Alexander for the time of the *epos*, just as we have it for that of Buddhism. We have seen that in the edicts of Piyadasi the names of Grecian Kings of the time of the Diadochi are distinctly mentioned. In the same way in the *Mahābhārata* we find the heroes of the poem in close and friendly connexion with certain Yavana kings, who are not, it is true, referred to directly by Greek names, but who nevertheless bear appellations, which seem to stand in some relationship to them. Compare 'Bhagadatta' and 'Apollodotos,' 'Dattāmitra' and 'Demetrius,' and others. Now, as they are mentioned as ruling in the very localities in the north-west of India which were under the sway of the Diadochi, there can be little doubt that the compilers of the epic knew these princes as their own contemporaries and hence brought

<sup>33</sup> The *Mahābhārata*, in its existing Krishna-Vishṇu-ite recension, probably belongs to the first centuries of our era. At least, a work of this name, and of similar extent (100,000 verses, — it originally consisted of only 8,800), is already mentioned in an inscription of the second half of the fifth century. See Bühler, *Sitz. Ber. Berl. Akad.* 1897, p. 596 note.

<sup>34</sup> The epic itself tells us that it originally consisted of only 8,800 verses. The contents of the existing version extend to 100,000 verses and are, as we have just seen, vouched for by an inscription of the 5th century.



them into connexion with their epic heroes. Nay more, it is possible that under the name of the Yavana king Kasêrumant, we may perhaps find concealed the name of the Roman Caesar.<sup>35</sup>

The reference made by Megasthenes, who resided for long in Pataliputra in the character of a Grecian ambassador, to the Indian Hercules and his daughter Pandaia, can be best explained as a misunderstanding of the epic stories of Krishna and of Draupadî the spouse of the Pândavas.<sup>36</sup> If we add to this the statement of the Periplus that in his time the southern point of India (Cape Comorin) was known as *Komara*, evidently because there was there a temple of Kumâri, the wife of Siva, we have a tolerably secure date for the oldest phase of the epic deities. From this point, both backwards as well as forwards down to the present day, we can trace, stage by stage, the growth of the later divinities, each developing from its preceding form.

Thenceforward, the worship of **Siva** and the worship of **Vishnu** have remained the leading forms of religion in India, although much that is foreign has been added to them, partly amalgamating itself with them, and partly remaining as unaltered accretions.

We have seen that the figure of Siva is derived from those of the ancient fire- and storm-gods, and for this reason his worship from the first has borne the twofold character of an especial sacrificial holiness as well as of terror. In the same way there has since been added to it whatever in any way corresponds to or can be connected with either of these two characteristics. On the other hand, the worship of his spouse, Ambikâ, who was originally the sister of Rudra, has mainly developed in the direction of the terrible.

Moreover, in a fashion as yet wholly inexplicable, **phallic worship** has also been connected with the cultus of Siva, and has attained enormous dimensions.<sup>37</sup> According to the Greek accounts of an Indian embassy to the court of the Emperor Heliogabalus, we learn that at the commencement of the third century A. D. honour was paid to an androgynous form of the god. This is the more remarkable, as in contrast with it there also runs a strongly ascetic thread through the legends relating to Siva (compare Kâlidâsa in the prologue to one of his dramas<sup>38</sup>), which gives the worship of this god a distinct ascendancy over the lascivious, sensual, character of the cultus of Vishnu.

Among the oldest and most important of the beings that surround Siva is 'the Lord of Troops,' **Gaṇa-pati** or **Gaṇêśa**, a name which was originally borne by Rudra (Siva) himself, and which refers to the 'howling troops' of his companions, the Winds. In later times he was promoted to an independent personality, as lord of the troops of pious devotees,<sup>39</sup> who glorify Siva as they sing and dance before him at the evening temple-service. He has finally developed into the god of learning, and, as a symbol of his wisdom, has been endowed with the head of an elephant. At his side, retaining the original character of the raging storm or of the devastating fire, stands **Skanda**, the War-god, in whose name we may perhaps recognise a reflex of the name of Alexander the Great, who burst into India like a veritable god of war.<sup>40</sup> The word means literally 'springing,' 'leaping,'

<sup>35</sup> So also in the name of the King 'Jalauka,' who according to the Kashmir chronicle fought with the Yavanas, it is possible that there lies hidden a corruption of the name of the Yavana king 'Seleucus.'

<sup>36</sup> So, long ago, Lassen.

<sup>37</sup> Priapic genii (*kumbhânja*, *kumbhânuhka*) are mentioned by the Buddhists, and in the *Âtharva-saṁhitâ*. They probably belong to the lower strata of the people. They have been combined with the *śiśuânja* who are twice referred to in the *Ṛik-saṁhitâ*. Is it possible that the word *guhya* as a name of the yakshas, the guardians of the subterranean mineral treasures of the god of wealth (i. e., of the special companion of Siva), is to be connected, not with *guhya*, concealment, but with *guhya*, pudendum?

<sup>38</sup> Thus translated in German verse:—

'Der da, obwohl ein Leib mit seiner Gattin,  
'Hoch über sinnentrückten Büßern steht.'

<sup>39</sup> The word *gaṇa*, a troop, finally acquired the additional meaning of 'one who belongs to these troops.'

<sup>40</sup> We know that the shortening of the name of Alexander to Skander, which is now customary in the East (as if the first two syllables *Ale-* were considered to be the Arabic article *al*), was already current in the time of Alexander himself, from the fact that when his soldiers reached the *Chandrabhâga*, a tributary of the Indus, they mutinied, and refused to cross it. They took the name as 'Sandarophagos,' 'Alexander-devouring,' and saw therein a bad omen. Alexander had to retrace his steps from here.



it is the name of a childish illness, and could scarcely without some special reason become adopted as the name of the deity of battles. He passes as a son of Siva, that is of fire (probably the fire of war), a fact which is explained by an obscene legend (a class of stories in which India is by no means wanting).

The God of Love, who, too, is mixed up in legend, also shows traces of what is possibly Hellenistic influence. It is true that, with his 'bow and arrow' he is already a popular form in the later Vedic period, but in still more recent times he presents conceptions which strongly remind us of the Greek Eros. These conceptions have either been borrowed by the Greeks from the Indians, which is difficult to believe, or the reverse: it is hardly imaginable that both nations should have independently developed such peculiar conceptions of the god. In India his banner is a fish, *makara*, just as Eros has a dolphin. Thus, he appears in a sculpture in an Orissa temple of the 7th century A. D. as a half-grown boy, squatting by a dancing girl who supports herself with the right hand on a fish's tail, exactly like Aphrodite with Eros and the dolphin. We have the evidence of the author of the *Periplus* to tell us that 'pretty girls' were sent as articles of merchandise from Alexandria to India, and it is easily conceivable that these, with their *métier*, brought with them also the deities whom they served.

Siva's spouse, who is originally represented as starting back in horror from the sight of blood, has in later times become a divinity who has to be appeased with human sacrifices.

Time was when Sivism and Vishnuism fought hard with each other, but the struggle against Buddhism, and, later, against Islâm, has welded the two parties into one: only now and then does the old quarrel burst into flame at the present day. Common to both is the absolute abandonment of self to the deity selected for adoration,<sup>41</sup> whose favour, together with the complete expiation of all sins, the worshipper secures by austerities of every kind, under certain circumstances extending even to suicide by casting oneself under the wheels of the cars bearing the image of the god while it is being carried about in solemn procession. These are, however, but rare occurrences. In general, so corrupt has the conception of the godhead become, that the mere recitation<sup>42</sup> of a short formula of belief or of a string of names applied to the divinity which is the object of worship, is considered to be sufficient, without further trouble, for gaining his favour, for the expiation of every sin (even to the murder of one's parents), and for securing eternal happiness.

It is certainly astonishing how, with a general forgiveness of sins so easily earned, a moral life can still exist among the Hindûs. In the end, human nature has triumphed over the fictions of a wild imagination, and these are only the leading strings with which priests know so well how to guide the faithful, and above all the sinners. Nowhere is the power of the priests so strongly and so deeply rooted as in India. The spiritual leaders of the various sects exercise the most absolute authority among their respective followers, and the privileges which they enjoy are, in part, almost incredible.<sup>43</sup> They depend merely on the consent of their adherents. No temporal power extends itself in protection over them. Anyone *could*, if he had the strength to do so, bid defiance to their ban. But nobody attempts it. The whole nation is so deeply sunk in these ideas, and so strongly forged are the iron chains which bind it, that every attempt to arouse it, whether made by

<sup>41</sup> In this complete abandonment of self (*bhakti*) towards the chosen god, which is common to the Indian sects, the influence of Christianity has been suspected by scholars so early as H. H. Wilson. It must be admitted that it forms a violent contrast to the low position occupied by the gods at the close of the Vedic period and the commencement of Buddhism. Nearly connected with this is the doctrine of predestination of the elect, according to which those only can attain to a knowledge of the *âtman* (i. e., God) whom He has Himself elected; while, according to the other more usual doctrine, every one who knows God, attains by that very fact to unity with Him.

<sup>42</sup> The Buddhists have carried this to the furthest extreme in their 'prayer-wheels,' with the aid of which they turn round and round strips of paper inscribed with the name of the god or with a sentence addressed to him, an act which is considered as efficacious as saying a prayer.

<sup>43</sup> The deification by adherents and pupils of those who have reduced any particular doctrine to a clear issue, is really, from the point of view of a pure recognition of the Deity, a kind of blasphemy: but the sentiment lies deeply rooted in humanity, as a tribute of grateful recognition of the spiritual elevation of prophets and of teachers, and as an humble admission of one's own weakness and imperfections. See *Sitzungsberichte der Berliner Ak. d. Wissensch.*, 1897, p. 603.



great spiritual reformers, of whom indeed India has had no lack,<sup>44</sup> or by external pressure, has been pre-doomed to failure. The latter indeed has only welded the bonds more securely, and even the reformers, or at least their successors, have soon discovered that it is more convenient to submit themselves to the incense of adoration, than to raise the stolid masses to a higher level.

So, too, the foreign religions which, each in its turn, sought and found entrance into India, have failed to cause any material alterations in this picture. They either found themselves confined to a small circle, or else they too as they became more widely extended fell in course of time under the same curse — partly of the creations of a too luxuriant imagination, and partly of a pleasant indolence which allowed itself to be roused only occasionally to some altogether special height of exaltation.

Vishnuism has found its official expression more particularly in the two great epics, — the Mahābhārata and the Rāmāyana, — and in the Purāṇas; while Sivism has done so partly in the same works, and partly in the '*Tantras*,'<sup>45</sup> a series of texts about which very little is yet known. These Tantra-texts, however, appear to stand in a peculiarly close relationship to Northern Buddhism, although, on the other hand, it is just this Sivism which seems to have been the energetic opponent of Buddhism, and to have effected its expulsion from India.

The practice, also, of magic and witchcraft which flourishes to so great an extent in India stands in a remarkably near connexion with these *Tantras*.

Finally, Sivism appears to have been supported for a period more by the goodwill of the princes than by that of the Brāhmins. A great part of the profane literature, especially the dramatic poetry, belongs to it, or, at least, to men, like Kālidāsa, whose names show that they are its followers.

The real foundations of Vishnuism are still in darkness. In the so-called *Trimūrti*, or divine Trinity, Vishnu represents the *preserving* power of God; Śiva, the *destroying*; and Brahman, the *creating*: but in the practical Vishnuism, Vishnu combines in himself several very heterogeneous ingredients. In the first place, he is a Deity of the older part of the Vēdas. Almost the only fact related concerning him therein is his striding over the three worlds in three steps, which is probably a metaphor for the instantaneous illumination of the whole universe by the beams of the rising sun. The later myth, which, however, occurs so early as in the texts of the *Brāhmaṇas*, speaks of Vishnu on this occasion as a dwarf when he performed the miracle. Again, the huge bird, *Suparna*, who destroys the snakes (*i. e.*, the darkness), and who in later times is known as Vishnu's steed, *Garuda*, is probably also to be understood as a symbol of the sun; so also, the discus, which is esteemed as Vishnu's peculiar emblem. May we also explain Vishnu's name, *Hari*, which the Avesta knows as the name of a Demon, *Zairi*, as meaning 'the Golden,' and connect it with the solar luminary? This word appears in the Vēda in the closest connexion with Indra,<sup>46</sup> and would hence lead us to the second stage of the foundation which lies below the Vishnuism of the epic poems, namely to Indra (*Arjuna*) himself and to the *Krishna* who became identified with him in some manner which we must confess has not yet been explained. To this, in the third place, is to be added what may be called the speculative matter, which, in agreement with the theory of the *Trimūrti*, points him out as the bearer of the universe. First, his identification with the *Puruṣa Nārāyaṇa*, or the Spirit moving on the face of the waters; — his winter repose on *Sēsha*, the great world-serpent; — and, above all his ten *avatāras*, literally 'descents,' *i. e.*, incarnations of the Deity in the bodies of human beings

<sup>44</sup> E. g., Rāmānuja, Nānak, Chaitanya, and others, down to the most modern times.

<sup>45</sup> These texts deal more specially with the female half of Śiva, his spouse, who under the names of *Durgā*, *Bhavāni*, *Kālī*, and so forth, is adored as his *śakti*, or energetic power.

<sup>46</sup> It is true that Indra himself does not bear this name; but not only are his hair, his beard, his jaws (? the visor of his helmet), described as *hari*, but even his general appearance (*varpa*), his deeds (*vrta*), and his race (*jāti*). This is certainly very remarkable, for in later times Indra's colour is said to be *nīla*, dark-blue, blue-black (compare *indra-nīla* as a name of the sapphire). This is, indeed, also the colour of Vishnu, and specially of *Krishna*, although it is exactly this name, *Hari*, which is particularly applied to them.



or even of lower animals,<sup>47</sup> either to protect the world against the illwill of demons or for the moral renewal of mankind. Among these incarnations there stand in the foreground those of **Rāma** (7) and **Kṛishṇa** (8); indeed these two figures have become the objects of such fervent sectarian adoration, that we may well assume the possibility of the influence of external elements.

In the personality of **Rāma** it is probably **Buddhist influence** which we have to recognise. Indeed, Buddha himself appears as one of the last (the 9th) incarnations of Vishṇu; and the final one, which is still to come, — that of **Kalkin**, — is easily connected with the Buddhist teachings regarding the Buddha **Maitrēya** who is yet to be awaited in the future.<sup>48</sup> Although the original conception of **Rāma** may have at base some sort of connexion with either nature-symbolism or the progress of civilisation, this does not preclude us from assuming that the Buddhist ideal of a prince, as he ought to be, influenced the development of **Rāma's** personality. It is exactly by the adoption of this conception, and by its adaptation to mythical figures, which were at the time popular among the mass of the people, that the Brāhmanas succeeded in wresting the leadership from the hands of the Buddhists. The cold atheism of the Buddhist doctrines could not permanently satisfy the needs of the human heart, and the folk returned again to their old penates, which, by the clever connivance of the Brāhmanas, were presented to them in new and more attractive forms. So far as the cult of **Rāma** was concerned, this is peculiarly the case with regard to the old Vedic figure of his spouse, **Sītā**, a mythical personification of the plough-furrow, who was appropriated for his worship in order to gain its acceptance among women.

For this it was important that a great poet, **Vālmiki**,<sup>49</sup> took these popular materials and wrought them to expression in his **Rāmāyaṇa**, perhaps under the influence of the Homeric sagas, but, if so, certainly in an entirely independent manner. After him, and more especially since the time of **Rāmānuja** in the 11th century, the worship of **Rāma** has been secure, and at the present date forms one of the most popular religions in India.

Exactly similar to that of **Rāma** has been the fate of **Kṛishṇa-worship**, but, to all appearance, it is the influence of Christianity which has acted on the special development of this religion.

Owing to the great number of persons who bear this name ('the black'), it is rather difficult to determine which of them is to be considered as the original object of the cult. His intimate relationship in the Epic with its chief hero **Arjuna** ('the white') leads us to suspect the existence of some

<sup>47</sup> The following are the ten incarnations of Vishṇu :—

1. As a *Dwarf* Vishṇu strode over the three worlds in three steps, and thus secured its possession to the Gods.
2. As a *Fish* he led the ark of Manu, the Indian Noah, during the great flood over the earth.
3. As a *Tortoise* he supports the universe.
4. As a *Bear* he rescued the earth from the bottom of the sea.
5. As *Parvāṇa Rāma* he destroyed the warrior caste which was hostile to the Brāhmanas. (After their removal, the Brāhmanas were better able to come to terms with the princes and kings of the noble families of the aborigines.)
6. As the *Man-lion* he destroyed the evil demon *Hiranyā-Kasipa*, 'Gold-throne,' who threatened the Gods.
7. As **Rāma** he vanquished the Demon-king **Rāvaṇa** of **Lāṅkā** (Ceylon), who either represents the aboriginal civilisation hostile to the Aryans or (?) the Buddhism taken to Ceylon by Prince **Mahēndra**.
8. As **Kṛishṇa** he vanquished the Demon-prince **Kaṁsa** (his maternal uncle).
9. As **Buddha** he accomplished the destruction of all heretics and wicked people.
10. As **Kalkin** he will appear at the end of the world, mounted on a white horse, as the Messiah of the future.

The first four of these incarnations rest on Vedic legends. The fifth and following are connected with historical occurrences. (Regarding No. 6, see *Indische Studien*, ix. 65.) That a god should take the form of an animal or of a man in order to carry out some definite design, is a circumstance which probably reappears in almost every myth or religion; but that he should do it for the salvation of the world, whether of the earth or of mankind, is a conception peculiar to the Indian *avātāra*-system and to Christianity. Which of the two has borrowed the idea from the other may still be a matter for discussion, but under any circumstances it is quite certain that its full systematisation in India is a secondary process.

<sup>48</sup> Compare here the similar teaching of the Jains, who, like the Brāhmanas, name their future Messiah **Kalkin**, and make him ride on a white horse. So, also, the Christian legends concerning the *Paraclete*.

<sup>49</sup> This name occurs among the teachers named in a *sūtra*-work attached to the black *Yajur-vēda*. After him also the patronymic of the reputed author of the *Mahābhārata*, **Vyāsa Pārāśarya**, occurs in the lists of teachers of the White *Yajur-vēda*. Thus, both epics are connected with the close of the Vedic period.



mythic foundation, the more so as Arjuna appears in the Yajur-vêda as a by-name of Indra, 'Day and night,' which are occasionally referred to in the Vêda as 'the black day,' *ahah kṛishṇam*, and 'the white day,' *ahar arjunam*, at once suggest themselves to us, but this identification does not fit in other particulars. So also the explanation of the name Gôvinda by the Vedic legend of the discovery of the stolen herds of cows, representing either the light or the waters, gives us little help.

At the same time, this last suggestion does not seem to be altogether without importance, as it points to a relationship with Indra, who is also called Gôvid in the Vêda. Kṛishṇa's connexion with cattle and cowherds must most probably contain an ancient allegorical kernel of myth, as it reaches back into olden time. The Buddhist legends bring the names Gôpâ, Yaśôdharâ, Yaśôdhâ, Nandâ and Râdhâ, Kâlikâ and Kubjikâ, which appear so prominently in the Legends about Kṛishṇa, into connexion with Buddha also, and this is doubtless of extreme importance for proving the antiquity both of these names and of their allegorical significance.<sup>50</sup>

But, on the other hand, there must also have been a certain warlike personality of the name of Kṛishṇa, of the lineage of the Yâdavas and also known under the name of Vâsudeva, who was remembered from of yore as a brave and at the same time crafty and cunning hero, celebrated in many sagas, and who hence achieved the honour of being enrolled as a kind of demigod among the founders of a valiant tribe.

Under the name of Kṛishṇa Dêvakîputra, 'the son of the female gambler,' there appears in an old *Upanishad* (the *Chândôgya*) an inquisitive disciple, the scion of a warlike tribe. At the time of the composition of the older portions of the Mahâbhârata, and when the Jaina legends were in course of formation (see above), this semi-divinity seems to have enjoyed especial honour. It is evidently on him that Megasthenes bases his account of the Indian Heracles.

Now, when Christianity, by whatever way it arrived (see below), became known to the Indians, the similarity of the names of Kṛishṇa (which in southern India is pronounced Kṛishtna, with a *t*)<sup>51</sup> and of Christ seems to have given rise to the identification of the two personalities, and to have caused the transfer of the stories regarding our Lord, the birth of the Babe in the manger, and so forth, to Kṛishṇa, whose mother's name, Dêvakî, it may be remarked, can also be interpreted as meaning 'the Divine One.' 'It thus happened that, owing to the sensuous phantasy of the Indians, the legends of the birth of Christ among the shepherds and of his childhood spent amidst them have given rise to the most passionate, the most licentious, descriptions of the love adventures of Kṛishṇa among the herd-maidens, — an alteration which is deeply rooted in their (the Indians') character. In consequence of this misunderstanding and of these misinterpretations, the introduction of the conception of Christ as the companion of the shepherds has done immense harm to Indian morality.'<sup>52</sup> As a matter of fact, the cult of Kṛishṇa with its extravagant imaginations forms a striking contrast to the rigorous asceticism which forms the keynote of that of Siva. On the other hand, it has developed among its followers a gentleness of disposition, a believing faith, which has bred within their hearts a habit of the most sincere resignation to the divine will.

The directions for the ritual of the festival in honour of Kṛishṇa's birth show their foreign origin by the sharp contrast in which they stand to the legendary accounts of the god's nativity. According to the latter his mother gives away her child immediately after his birth, in order to save him from the attempts of his uncle Kâmsa to seize him;<sup>53</sup> but the ritual makes her lie peacefully and happily in her 'lying-in room' in the cowherd's house, holding the suckling child to her bosom, — like the 'Madonna Lactans,' — with herdmen and herdmaidens round her glorifying her and singing her praises, an ox and an ass by her side;<sup>54</sup> and the redemption-bringing star in the Heaven.

<sup>50</sup> See my review of Senart's very thorough presentation of these cycles of myths in *Indische Streifen*, 1875, III. 428.

<sup>51</sup> In Bengal it is even stronger. Kṛishṇa is there pronounced Kṛishtô. — TRANS.

<sup>52</sup> *Zeitschrift der deutschen morgenländischen Gesellschaft*, 1882, VI. 97.

<sup>53</sup> This, after all, reminds us of Herod's slaughter of the innocents.

<sup>54</sup> See my treatise on Kṛishṇa's Birth-Festival, 1888, pp. 338, 339. Cf. ante, Vol. III., 1874, pp. 21, 47, and VI. 1877, pp. 191, 231, 349. The passage referred to is to be found in Vol. III., p. 47.



The observance of the feast of the birth of Christ in connexion with that of His baptism is traceable in Egypt from the second half of the fourth century up to the year 431 A.D.;<sup>55</sup> and it is natural to assume that it was about this time that the transfer of this kind of festival<sup>56</sup> to India took place, and, with it, the other connected materials which point to Christian legends and conceptions in the story of Kṛishṇa. Two ways lay open for this communication. In the first place Indian travellers, merchants, and the like, may have come to Alexandria.<sup>57</sup> There they may have learnt about Christianity, and on their return home may have transferred its legends to their own Kṛishṇa, whom they already worshipped in India as a demigod. In the second place Christian missionaries may have gone to India, and have found there among the Kṛishṇa worshippers a good soil for the propagation of their doctrines. Traces of Christian teaching have even been sought by some in the *Bhagavad-gītā*. In the twelfth century the Patriarch of Antioch still appointed the Katholikos for Romogyri (Rāmagiri) in the Deccan, and when the Portuguese discovered India they found Syrian Christians on the Malabar Coast, whom they tried to convert by force.<sup>58</sup>

The period during which the Grecian successors of Alexander, and, after them, the Indo-Scythians, reigned in North-Western India had not only procured admission for Hellenic, and, in later times, Christian, conceptions, but had also directed towards India the followers of the Iranian cult of Mithra, and, curiously enough, had there introduced their sun-worship, also in connexion with the worship of Kṛishṇa. The name of their priests, Maga, was transferred in later times also to the adherents of the teaching of Zarathustra, when, in order to escape Islamic persecution, they similarly settled in western India. These latter, coming in great numbers, founded independent communities and colonies (not without also attracting to themselves some Brāhmaṇical Paṇḍits), and still flourish vigorously under the name of 'Parsees'; while, on the other hand, the Magas seem to have visited the country as missionaries only, and were partly adopted, probably together with some members of the other stratum of the Iranian immigrants, into the ranks of the Brāhmaṇs themselves under the name of 'Śākadvīpiya-Brāhmaṇas.'

While the influences of Hellenic, Christian, and Iranian culture and religious conceptions were essentially only of internal importance, and have as a rule concealed their traces as much as possible, so that it is often rather difficult to recognise them beneath the overgrowth of Indian individuality,<sup>59</sup> Islām, which forced its entrance with all the prestige of violent conquest, has been accompanied by

<sup>55</sup> *Op. cit.* 337, 338. *Ante*, III. 47. <sup>56</sup> The naming of the child forms an integral part of the festival in India also.

<sup>57</sup> The *Mahābhārata* contains a detailed account of the sea-royage of an Indian sage to the 'White Island' or Island of the White' (*śvītoḍḍipa*), where he learned about the monotheistic adoration of Kṛishṇa (see *Indische Studien*, I. 400, II. 400), (others had already done so before him).

Galenos in Hippocr. *Epidem.* III. Tom. xvii. pars I. p. 603, ed. Kuhn (I am indebted to Hermann Diel for this quotation) tells us of an Indian physician who lived and studied in Alexandria. It would be interesting if the new papyrus-finds in Egypt were also to contribute something on this point. It is probable that we may expect many new discoveries from this source regarding the first centuries after Christ and the time immediately preceding.

<sup>58</sup> Only the other day the Newspapers circulated the intelligence that 15,000 Christians of the vicinity of Bombay, probably descendants of those who were expelled from Goa by the Portuguese, had dropped the connexion they had hitherto held with Antioch, had turned to Russia, and had petitioned for a pope to be sent to them. See *Protestant*, 1899, p. 32.

<sup>59</sup> When adopting such materials the Indians have generally shown great independence, and have so thoroughly disguised them under Indian garments that they have become almost unrecognisable. Two examples belonging to the most modern times are classic examples of this. At the eighth Oriental Congress held at Stockholm in the year 1869, the late regretted H. H. Dhruva of Baroda read an account of a newly discovered Sanskrit translation of Euclid's Elements of Geometry in fifteen books, which, according to his description, actually contained also the lost books. But all that remained of the original was the order of the contents and the substance of the examples. All the rest was Indian. About seven years ago I received a new Sanskrit drama from Southern India, the author of which expressly described it as founded on a Shakespearean play (it was the *Midsummer Night's Dream*). Without this distinct statement it would have been a difficult task to discover this origin. The whole dress of the piece is altogether Indian. If, then, this occurred in a case in which the author prides himself and lays emphasis on the foreign origin of his work (he evidently wished to give it a certain air of distinction, and to earn some reward from the English Government in recognition of the fact), how easily can we understand to what an extent this was the custom in former times when, so far from the same motives existing, there was every inducement to conceal the non-indigenous nature of the source.



great external success. At the present moment it numbers more than thirty millions of natives of India amongst its followers. It has even been accepted by the Brāhmins (and given the lowest place) in an official list of the Indian sciences, the thirty-two *vidyās*, under the name of the *yāvanāṃ matam*. It cannot be denied that, on the one hand, it has succeeded in increasing the physical powers of its adherents, — mainly owing to its permitting the consumption of flesh, — and that, on the other hand, by freeing them from the superstitious idolatry of the Hindūs, and from the bonds of the caste system, it is well adapted to raise them to a spiritually higher level. It has not, however, been able to resist the enervating influence of the Indian climate, or the custom of adoring, or, rather, deifying, holy personages, which is nowadays well nigh universal in that country.

Exactly the same fate also threatens a modern Indian sect, which, while it is the direct result of the Monotheism of Islām, has in the course of time turned its followers into the most active opponents of that faith, and still occupies a prominent position in this respect. I mean the sect of the Sikhs founded by Nānak at the end of the 15th century. They furnish the bravest soldiers to the Indian army, but are equally in danger of falling into that slavish submission to their spiritual preceptors, or *gurus*, which is now universal in India.

The only Indian sect which has kept itself free from this worship of preceptors as if they were divine creatures is one which arose in the present century, — that of the Brahmos. But it appears to be now dying out, and for that very reason. Its claim, after all, to represent a system which is a pure product of the Indian soil, is unfounded. In reality it is imbued with the genius of Christianity; but it has treated this throughout in such an independent and unrestrained spirit that it has kept itself free from the dogmatic accretions which centuries have spread over the teaching of Christ, and deserves to be pointed out as a good expression, though concealed under a veil of Pantheism, of Christian principles. If, as appears to be almost certain, its days are numbered, it would be a thing to be lamented in the highest degree. But we see now-a-days even among ourselves, in Europe and America, how people are turning more and more to the cult of 'The Man of Power,' of 'The Master Nature,' till they have actually developed a system of 'Master-morality,' and how the Rights of the Individual are insisted upon in more and more exaggerated language as a necessary result of the opposition to the fever for social equality. Thus, we need not be surprised if in India, where from ancient times the deification of the Man who has out-topped the common herd has been the rule, we find this principle, so destructive of all spiritual freedom, still victorious over it.

For India we can hope no salvation so long as, on the one hand, it has not absolutely broken with this traditional habit, and, on the other, the physical power of its people is not given new life and strengthened by the re adoption of flesh as food. In regard to the latter, the Musalmāns and the Sikhs have already made good progress; but as yet their example has not borne much fruit.

### THE SATRUNJAYA MĀHĀTMYAM.

(A contribution to the history of the Jainas by Professor Albert Weber.)

EDITED BY JAMES BURGESS, LL.D.

(Continued from p. 257.)

SARGA OR CHAPTER X. (936 vv.).

*Śrī Satrunjayayamāhātmyāntarbhūta Raivatāchalamāhātmye Bhīmasena-Harivaṇśa-Pāṇḍa-vatpatti-Kṛishṇa-Nemiśajanmavarṇano nāma*, — describes the history of Bhīmasena of the Harivaṇśa, the origin of the Pāṇḍavas, and the birth of Kṛishṇa and Nemiśa (the 22nd Jina).

Sections x. to xii. describe the history of the Pāṇḍavas in its main features connected with that of Kṛishṇa, as this again is with that of Nemiśa, the Jina worshipped on Raivata or Girnār. These *sargas* are therefore called by the separate title of *Raivatāchalamāhātmyam*, because the holy places of that mountain (i. 345-52) are glorified in them.



["Salutation to Arha! May he protect us who knows and sees all, who is easy to be obtained, and removes the troubles of all men, who is honoured by all the gods, possessed of all qualities, witnessing actions like the sun, is infinite," etc.]

In the introduction Indra respectfully saluting Mahāvira says, — "Lord! for our instruction thou hast related the history of Satrunjaya, referring to the principal summits, whereby I have been purified. But this mountain has 108 peaks (i. 34), among which twenty-one are principal summits (i. 352-54), which thou hast prominently mentioned; I would now hear the account of the most famous one for the purification of all creatures (2-5).

Accordingly the lord of the triune world begins with the description of the fifth summit of the Siddhādri, namely Raivata (7-8).<sup>46</sup> [It yields the fifth knowledge (*pañcama jñāna*), i. e., salvation to worshippers. Gifts and offerings made here from the heart are productive of benefits in this world as well as in the next. The merit acquired here causes the accumulation of the sins incurred in several transmigrations in this world to dissolve as the heat of the sun melts butter. Here sages who eat not but pass their days in devotion, as well as the gods, daily worship Nemi. Here Apsarās, numerous divine beings — Gandharvas, Siddhas, Vidyādhara, etc., always worship the Jina Nemi. Beasts mutually hostile, as cats and mice, lions and elephants, serpents and peacocks, live in harmony on this mountain. All the planets, daily appearing to rise and set, move round Nemi to worship him. All the seasons are to be seen here at all times. The tanks, among which Gajendrapada is chief, are filled with nectar by the gods. This Raivata, when remembered, gives happiness; when seen, removes misery; and when touched yields what is desired. Of such a mountain, O Indra, hear the story (41).

The Indra of former days, accompanied by the gods, made a pilgrimage to Satrunjaya on the 15th of Chaitra Suddha, and came to the Raivata mountain to praise Nemi on the 15th of Vaiśākha Suddha. After bathing the image with water from the holy tanks, rivers, and lakes, and having worshipped it he came out of the temple; and as he came out a *deva* approaching him said there was a Muni on the mountain sitting on the *jñānāsīla* (stone or rock of knowledge), honoured by men, sages and gods, and engaged in performing severe austerities. Hearing this Indra came to the Jñānāsīla and saluting the Muni, sat down before him; then the gods with him asked who this Muni was and why he was practising such austerity. Indra, by meditation, knowing his history, answered them (49).]

As an argument for its expiatory power, he relates the story of Bhīmasena, the spoilt son of king Vajrasena of Śrāvastī and of Subhadrā (50-227). The contents are interesting in many respects.

Bhīmasena went so far in his wickedness as to kill his own father, because, in consequence of a complaint of the citizens, he had been punished by him. After his parricide the inhabitants angrily expelled him and installed his younger brother [Jayasena] as king (64). The prince roamed about and arrived (73) in the town of Prithvipura in Magadha, where, after many thefts, he at length found service with a merchant Īśvaradatta (77) with whom he went to sea. After a month the ship suddenly grounded during the night upon coral banks, and all endeavours to float it again failed. The provisions and water became exhausted by degrees, and the merchant was just preparing to meet his death in the waves, when suddenly a parrot arrived, informing them in a human voice of his being the tutelary divinity of the mountain that was in sight. There was still a means of escape left: one of them must sacrifice his life by swimming to the mountain and there scaring the Bhāraṇḍa-birds.<sup>47</sup> By the current of air

<sup>46</sup> Very considerable additions to Prof. Weber's analysis have been made to this *sarga*. — J. B.

<sup>47</sup> The Bhāraṇḍas are called *kṣāpakaśiṇāḥ*. Does this possibly mean "desert birds"? We find them again in the *Mahābhārata*, as flying swiftly (?), xii. 3357, 3519, and as singing pleasantly and endowed with a human face, xii. 6325 (comp. *Ind. Stud.* Bd. III. S. 149). In the *Panchatantra* (p. 263, 18 ff.) a Bhāraṇḍa appears as a sea bird with a double head. [Comp. the birds in the *Vak islands of the Arab. Nights*. — J. B.]



produced by the flapping of their wings when flying, the ship would float (88). In consequence of *Īśvaradatta's* appeal to his men, *Bhīmasena* offers for 100 *dīnāra* to undertake the hazardous feat. It succeeds, the ship floats and of course *Bhīmasena* is left behind on the mountain. The helpful parrot, however, points out a remedy for him also: he is to throw himself into the sea, where a fish will swallow him and swim to the shore. Should the fish not be inclined to vomit the passenger, he is to thrust an herb given him by the parrot into its throat, when it would open wide, and he would walk out upon the shore.<sup>48</sup> It happened as the bird had predicted, and in this way *Bhīmasena* reached the island of Ceylon (*Saiñhalam tām*, 97). After wand[er]ing about for a while and quenching his thirst from water-holding trees, he met a Brāhmaṇa mendicant (*tridaṇḍin*,<sup>49</sup> 99) who invited him to accompany him to a mine of precious stones (*ratnakhāni*) upon this *dvīpa* *Sinhala* (112) where he promised him rich treasures. t[*Bhīmasena* thinking one in a Muni's dress must be a good man went with him.] On the road he 100 *dīnāra* were spent on travelling expenses. When they reached the mine, the Muni, on a new-moon day (*vadya* 14th) let *Bhīmasena* down into it by means of a cable (v. 115b, 116a are wanting in the MS.), drew up the precious stones the latter collected, and cutting the cable, abandoned him to the guardian *deva* of the mine, and ran away (118). Hereupon *Bhīmasena* wandered about in the pit in great distress. He met a very lean man, was addressed by him in a friendly way, and asked whether he also, like himself, had fallen a prey to his greed for jewels, through the instrumentality of the wicked penitent. When *Bhīmasena* had replied in the affirmative to these questions, and had asked him how he might again get out, — he was told that the goddesses of heaven would come next morning at dawn to worship *Ratnachandra*, the god of the mine, with song and dance and other means, and when the guardian's attention would be wholly absorbed with the songs he might use the opportunity to creep out stealthily with the servants of the goddesses. Next morning all this happened, and in a few days *Bhīmasena* arrived at *Kshitimaṇḍana* the capital of *Sinhala* (129). There he entered the service of a merchant, but as he could not leave off his old propensity for thieving, he was soon caught and led to the post. There *Īśvaradatta* recognised him as his deliverer, obtained his liberation and took him on board his ship, which soon afterwards arrived at *Prithvipura* (134). On landing *Bhīmasena* met and related his adventures to a foreigner who solaced him, and together they started on a visit to the *Rohana* mountain. On their way they soon came to a hermitage and bowed themselves to the old Muni *Jaṭila* by name. Exactly at the same moment a disciple of the latter, called *Jāṅgala*, descended from the air, saluted his teacher, and replied to his question that he was come from visiting *Saurāshtrā*, where he had, with the *Jaina* worshippers, assisted at the ceremonial on the *Satrunjaya* and *Ujjayanta* mountains (140), the sanctuaries on which were glorious beyond all description. He was particularly rejoiced by the glory of *Ujjayantādri* (142), by the worship of which even a mean person might attain all felicity and exaltation, as *Asokachandra* had done (143). This *Asokachandra* was a poor serving man of the *Kshatriya* caste in the town of *Champā*. Being tired of his house affairs he wandered about, and in one of his rambles saw some *Jaina* penitents and asked them how he might remedy his misfortunes; on their reply that in this world man was tossed about by the force of *karman* (i. e., former works: entirely the Buddhist idea and name for destiny), and that he could not liberate himself from this incarceration in *karman* except by devout adoration of *Raivatādri* (148). He started for it, and after a penance of several days there the goddess *Ambā* (the *śāsanadevī* of *Nemi*, worshipped on *Raivata*) gave him a touchstone (*spariṣṭalam*) the contact of which changed iron into gold (150). Returning home, he engaged servants, soon gained a kingdom, and enjoyed all pleasures. But in course of time he became

<sup>48</sup> A grotesque appropriation of 'Jonah and the fish,' which is met with twice elsewhere (see *Ind. Skizzen*, S. III.) in Indian myths, only as late, however, as the twelfth century, namely in *Rājatarangīnī*, iv. 503, and *Kathāsarikā-gara*, xxv. 47, or Tawney's transl. Vol. I. p. 207.

<sup>49</sup> Doubtless a certain animosity must have led to the choice of this name for a man who was a deceiver as the sequence shows.



tired of all this which he had obtained by the grace of **Ambika** (153), for forgetting whom he repented, and went to **Satrunjaya** with his people. After worshipping the Jina there, he went again to **Raivata** (155), where he piously adorned and worshipped the statue of **Nemisa** and of **Amba**, *jagatām ambā*; and as he had now already reigned 300 years by the grace of the god and of **Ambikā**, he determined henceforth to betake himself to the feet of **Sri Nemi**, and to leave the kingdom to his son. He sent him and his people back to **Champā**; and then took consecration (*dīkṣā*) and by pure devotion he soon obtained salvation (*śivam*).<sup>50</sup>

[In concluding, **Jāṅgala** said he saw all this with his own eyes and therefore regarded this mountain as a holy place (*mahātīrtha*) which might give to the worshippers, though sinful, every sort of wealth in this world and a best place in the world to come.]

By this story of **Jāṅgala**'s all the penitents were greatly rejoiced, also the stranger as well as **Bhīmasena**. Both of them, however, continued their pilgrimage to the **Bohana** (167-8) and watched there throughout the night in prayers to the divinity of the mountain; in the morning arriving at a cave, they struck in it (dug?) and obtained two jewels (*ratne*—169), and set out to sea. Once standing at night on deck, **Bhīmasena** noticed the moon and taking his jewel in his hand compared its appearance with it, but lost it by dropping it into the water (171) [when he fainted and began weeping. Seeing this those on board the ship and the sailors came round him and using fans and water restored him to sense, when he told them of the loss of his jewel in the sea, and requested them to stop the ship to search for it]. His companion offered him his own jewel and consoled him saying that **Raivata** was also here still and there was no occasion for complaining (179). Taking consolation from the words of his friend, and both having crossed the sea they wandered along the shore towards **Raivata**, losing on the way the other gem and everything they had by thieves. Fatigued, without clothing or nourishment, but nevertheless resigned to their fate, they met a Muni on their journey, to whom they paid their respects and complained of their lot:—

As without water a cloud, a body without life, |  
as a flower without fragrance, without a lotus a watertank || (185)  
As without her brilliancy the Moon, as without voice the Sanskrit |  
noble birth without modesty, piety without science ||  
As without house a housewife, prudence without reserve |  
as the night without moonlight, and as a temple without image ||  
As love without youthful strength, as a leader without armies |  
as a race without a noble son, as riches without liberality ||  
As statute without compassion, oratory without truth |  
as the face without eye, so — without property is Man || (189).

[The Muni hearing this, felt pity for them and told them they had not acquired merit in their previous life (*pūrvajanma*) and hence suffered misery. Birth in a noble family, good fortune, peculiar felicity, wealth, long life, fame, knowledge, a pleasing wife, horses, elephants, servants, command, and empire, — corporeal beings obtained only through their meritorious actions (*dharma*); but they should not suffer an untimely death, but visit the **Raivata** mountain which yields to its worshippers what they desire (190 f.). Then turning to **Bhīmasena** he said that in his former life he had teased a Muni for 18 *ghatikas* (7 hours) and in consequence he had been so long in misery.]

<sup>50</sup> Here evidently synonymous with *nirvāṇam*, comp. i. 6, 23; ii. 8, 388; vi. 293; ix. 533, etc.



He now promises to him that the fortunate turn of his destiny was shortly impending; and he is yet to adorn the world with Jina temples, and none will exist equal to him in felicity (198). Thus comforted, the two pilgrims continue their journey to Raivata (199). Arriving there in course of time **Bhīmasena** found his younger brother **Jayasena**, in the Arhat temple there, who had gone on pilgrimage with his councillors, etc. (200), and who received him joyfully, immediately abdicating the dominion, which he had only held in pledge for him. His subjects also were rejoiced at his return; and now he ruled most excellently, spreading blessings and happiness around him [having erected Jina temples everywhere in memory of his parents whom he had foolishly killed], having appointed his brother to be **Yuvarāja** (crown-prince) and his faithful companion to be his treasurer (219).

[Once he happened to see in a garden a **Vidyādhara** worshipping Jina, and learning from him — in answer to his question — that he had come thither from the **Satrunjaya** and **Ujjayanta** mountains, he remembered the obligations he was under to the **Raivata** and was sorry for his ingratitude.] He then surrendered the government to his brother **Jayasena** (223) and set out with a small following to **Raivata** as a hermit (237). [On his way he visited **Satrunjaya** where he erected a Jaina temple called **Ashtāhnikā**, and thence he came to **Raivata** and there worshipped the image of **Nemi**, attending to the fourfold duty of liberality, good nature, austerity, and faith; and being instructed by **Jñānachandra Muni**, he conducted himself religiously and became a Muni. At the conclusion of this account all the gods reverently worshipped Jina and went to their respective places.]

As **Nemi**, the Jina first established by **Bharata** upon **Raivata**, belongs to the **Harivāṇsa**, an account of the history of this race is attached (236-37).

Next follows a tale about king **Sumukha** in **Kaśāmbī** (239), who fell in love with **Vanamālikā**, the wife of **Virakuvinda** (268). His minister **Sumati**, with the help of an ascetic sister (*parivrajikā*) named **Ātreyikā**, procured her for the king (270).

[**Virakuvinda** went mad, and was seen one day by the pair in rags and pelted by the children. They then repented, but were both instantaneously killed by lightning. But in virtue of their mutual love, they were reborn in the town of **Harivarsha** and were called **Hari** and **Harini** and lived happily in union. **Virakuvinda**, after the death of the **rāja** and **Vanamālā** became quiet and giving himself to religious duties, died and was reborn in the **Saudharmakalpa** as a god named **Kilvishika** (sinful). Remembering his former birth and seeing the **rāja** and **Vanamālā** reborn as a pair, in anger carried them to **Champāpuri** (300).]

The princes descending from **Somyāśas** (vi. 3) the son of **Bāhubali** and grandson of the **prathamasthāmin**, **Vṛishabha**, are called **Somavāṇśya**, and form the Lunar race. To them belongs **Sreyāṇsa** (the 11th Jina) (303-4). [He first pointed out the duty of liberality by offering to **Yugādīśa** the juice of sugar-cane (*ikṣhu*), whence he and his descendants were called **Aikshvaku** in the **Avasarpini** age. After him succeeded in order **Sārvabhūma**, **Subhūma**, **Sughoṣa**, **Ghoṣavardhana**, **Mahānandī**, **Sunandī**, **Sārvabhadra**, **Subhakar**, and other kings unnumbered, some of whom attained *mukti* and others *svarga*. The last king of this line was **Chandrakīrti**, who obtained *svarga* but left no heir. Then while his subjects were assembled to consider the government, the god **Kilvishika** appeared in the air and bid them not lament for the death of their king but accept **Hari** and **Harini** timeously brought by him as their king and queen, and supply them with liquor, flesh and fruit. So saying, and blessing them he disappeared.]

King **Hari** was then consecrated with ceremony in the temple of **Sitalasthāmin** (the 10th Jina). From him descended the **Harivāṇsa** (312). [He conquered the whole earth and married several kings' daughters.]

To him **Harini** bore **Prithvipati**, who was followed by **Mahāgiri**, **Himagiri**, **Vasugiri**, **Giri**, **Mitragiri** and **Suyāśas**. All these princes were rulers of the three divisions (*trikhaṇḍa*) of



the earth, zealous Jains, leaders of *Saṅghas*, some of whom obtained directly the *nirvāṇam*, and the others at least *svarga* (318-19). Then as an appendix (*prasaṅgāt*) "the history of the 20th Arhant, *Suvrata*" is related: he belonged to this *Harivaṃśa* and was the son of the Magadha king *Sumitra* in *Rajagrāha* (320 ff.).

[*Sumitra's* queen was *Padmādevī*, possessed of all inward and outward good qualities. She observed in the latter part of the night of the 15th of *Srāvaṇa* the fourteen great dreams indicating the birth of a Jina, and perceived lord *Prāpata* descend from the 10th *Devaloka*. She was delivered of a son *Munisuvrata*, on the 8th of *Jyeshṭha-vadya* in the *Srāvaṇa* nakshatra. His birth was celebrated by *Indra* and the gods as well as by his father *Sumitra*. This prince married *Prabhāvatī* the daughter of king *Prabhākara* of *Prithvipura*, and after enjoying every kind of pleasure he had a son named *Suvrata*. Placing his son on the throne, *Munisuvrata*, along with other (1,000) kings, obtained *dīkṣhā* on the 10th of *Phālguna śuddha* in *Srāvaṇa* nakshatra, and on the 10th of *Phālguna-vadya* at *Srāvaṇa nakshatra* a temple was built of the lord *Munisuvrata*, which was celebrated by *Indra* and the gods. The lord then set out on foot to instruct the world, and arrived at *Pratishṭhāna* (*Paithāna*); there he discovered (by meditation) that a horse, who had been his friend in the previous life, was to be killed in the morning at an *Aśvamedha* (horse sacrifice) to be performed in the town of *Bhṛīgukachha*, and immediately started off, and on the way took rest for a moment at *Siddhapura*, where consequently a temple was erected at dawn by king *Vajrabhrīt*. Early in the morning the lord reached *Bhṛīgukachha*, a distance of 60 *yojanas*, and took his station in the *Korapṭaka* forest, where he was revered by gods and by *Jitāśatru*, the governor of the town accompanied by his army and the horse. The Muni then taught the assembly thus:—"This world is a terrible wilderness; here, surrounded by evil beasts, a helpless being or sojourner is tormented by demons; while walking in the divine path he is tied with four ropes and annoyed by a wicked forester; and he is defended only by a pious and honoured man. To protect the helpless is religion and a duty calculated to give all happiness, etc." The preacher being asked by *Jitāśatru* whom this advice benefitted, he replied—"no one except the horse." King *Jitāśatru* said, "Master, who is this horse, that has obtained virtue—though a beast?" The muni replied:—"In the past existence I was a king of *Champā* and this friend of mine was then my councillor by name *Matisāguru*; but engaging in bad deeds, he died and after several transmigrations he became a dishonest grocer named *Sāgaradatta* in the city of *Padmīnikhaṇḍa*, and formed a friendship with a *Srāvaka* called *Jinadharmā*. They learnt from a Jaina teacher of the advantage a man obtains by erecting an Arhat temple of jewels, gold, or earth, namely the destruction of all his evil deeds in the next life of the builder of such a temple. Accordingly *Sāgaradatta* erected an excellent Jina-temple outside the town, placing an image in it, and also a lofty Siva-temple to the east of it. On a summer day he went to the Saiva temple where he observed the worshippers taking white ants out of *ghī* pots and crushing them under their feet. He felt uneasy and began to clean the temple with his own cloth. The chief worshipper continuing his work told him he was perhaps deceived by white-clad heretics as he vainly pretended to protect insects by unseemly means. *Sāgaradatta* thought with himself that these highly honoured but wicked men would ruin themselves and their master (i. e., himself). He died and became this horse of yours; but in virtue of the merit he had acquired in his former life by erecting a temple to the Jina, I have come to save him (365).

Hearing this account, the horse remembered his former life, and fasting in meditation for seven days, he expired and became a god in the eighth heaven—named *Sahasrāra*. But while meditating he (the god) remembered his former life and coming down to earth, he placed an image of *Munisuvrata* in the centre of the gold temple at *Champā* and an image of a horse at *Bhṛīgukachha* and so fulfilled the desires of the followers of *Munisuvrata*. From that time *Bhṛīgukachha* became celebrated for its holy place called *Aśvavabodhaka*. So also the *Narmadā*, from *Suvrata* Arhant having bathed in it, became a holy river with power to make the helpless to become lords.



The Arhant then went to **Satruñjaya**, and, by walking to them, made all its summits holy places. Then he went to **Bhṛīgukachha**, **Sauripura**, **Ohampā**, **Patishthānapura**, **Siddhapura**, **Hastināpura**, etc., and lastly to the top of **Sammata Sikhara**, accompanied by 1,000 munis. There he obtained *Muktipada* (salvation) on the 9th Jyeshtha-vadya, Srāvana nakshatra. This muni lived altogether 30,000 years, of which for 7,500 years he was a prince, 7,500 a ruler, and 15,000 a sage. Here ends the story of **Suvratasvāmin**, who was followed by his son **Suvrata** and other kings of the **Harivaṁśa** (384).

King **Vasu** of the **Harivaṁśa** ruled at **Mathurā** on the banks of the **Yamunā** and was followed by his son **Brīhatdhvaja** and others, the last of whom was **Yadu**, the progenitor of the **Yadavas**. His son **Sūra** had two sons named **Sauri** and **Suvira**. King **Sūra**, placing **Sauri** on the throne and appointing **Suvira** crown-prince, obtained *dikshā*. **Sauri** giving over the kingdom of **Mathurā** to his younger brother, went to the **Kusāvarta** country which he ruled and founded **Sauryapura** as his capital. There he became the father of **Andhakavṛishni**, and others. His brother **Suvira**, likewise, gave up the kingdom of **Mathurā** to his eldest son **Bhojavṛishni** and went to **Sindh**, where he became king and founded **Sauvira** in the **Sindhu** country as his residence. **Sauri** afterwards surrendered the government of **Kusāvarta** to **Andhakavṛishni** and went to **Supārśva**, a mountain supporting **Meru**, where he became a disciple of the **Pratiṣṭamuni** and obtained bliss.]

The son of **Bhojavṛishni** in **Mathurā** was **Ugrasena**, the father of **Kaṁsa** (606-68). On the other hand, **Andhakavṛishni** in **Sauryapura** had ten sons by **Subhadra** who were called **Dasārhaḥ**, — 1. **Samudravijaya** father of **Nemi** (712) or **Arishtanemi** (846, 48, 76), 2. **Akshobhya**, 3. **Stimitta**, 4. **Sāgara**, 5. **Himavant**, 6. **Achala**, 7. **Dharaṇa**, 8. **Pāraṇa**, 9. **Abhichandra**, 10. **Vasudeva**, the father of **Kṛishṇa** by **Devaki**, daughter of **Devakanṛipa** (681, 698) and of (**Bala**) **Rāma** by **Rohiṇi** (679), besides other two daughters (*anujā*) **Kuntī** and **Mādrī**, wives of **Pāṇḍu** (397). Here little agrees with the Brahmanic data: on the other hand, however, the birth, etc., of **Kṛishṇa** is related materially in the same way as in the *Purāṇas*. His wives were — 1. **Rukmiṇi** the sister of **Rukmin**, with whom he eloped by the strength of his arm; 2. **Jāmbavati**, daughter of the bird (!) **Jāmbavant**, whom he carried off, conquering her father while she was bathing in the **Jāhnavi**; 3. **Lakshmaṇa**; 4. **Susīmā**; 5. **Gauri**; 6. **Padmāvatī**; 7. **Gāndhārī**; — so according to 933-35, where eight wives are spoken of, but only seven are enumerated: the eighth is **Satyabhāmā**, mother of **Bhānu** and **Bhāmara** (821). The *Purāṇas* know only of the four (emphasized), — for the others they have different names.

Not less discrepant is the pedigree of **Daryodhana** and of the **Pāṇḍavas**, given in 399 ff., who do not even belong to the **Somavaṁśa**, but are directly derived from a son of **Vṛishabhasvāmin** called **Kuru**! From **Kuru** the **Kurukshetram** is said to derive its name, as from **Hastin** the town of **Hastināpura**. From **Hastin** descended **Viśvavirya** and also **Sanatkumāra** (the fourth **Chakravartin**), and **Santi**, **Kunthu**, **Ara**, who were at once *tīrthakṛit* (16th to 18th **Jinas**) and *chakradhara* (5th to 7th **Chakravartins**; — see *Hemach.* 693), and then **Indraketu**, **Kirtiketū**, **Vairikulāntakṛit** (or is this an adjective and not a proper noun?), **Subhavirya**, **Suvirya**, **Anantavirya**, his son **Kṛitavirya**, and the 8th *chakrabhṛit*, **Subhāma**. After innumerable other princes had passed — downwards everything agrees fairly well with the *Purāṇas* — **Sāntanu** was born.<sup>51</sup>

[Once, dressed in a dark blue coat, he went into the forest to hunt, accompanied by huntsmen and dogs. In pursuit of a deer he left his companions and saw a high temple of gems on the banks of the **Gaṅgā**. Surprised by the beauty of the place he entered and, having saluted the image of **Yugādjina**, he was about to ride off on his elephant when he noticed a very beautiful woman. Enquiring who she was, he was told she was the daughter of king **Jahnu** and named **Gaṅgā**, and how one

<sup>51</sup> From this point to the end of this Sarga is almost entirely a condensed version, not given by Prof. Weber. — J. B.



**Chāraṇamuni** had told her father that king **Sāntanu** of **Hastināpura** would marry her on the bank of the **Gaṅgā**, and that, after the muni left, **Jahnu** had built this temple and kept his daughter to worship **Yugādhiṣa**. Now **Sāntanu** had come to fulfil the word of the Muni. Hearing this **Gaṅgā** smiled and said to **Sāntanu** that after her marriage she would stay with him only so long as he would regard her wish. **Sāntanu** assented to this and married her in presence of the Jina. Her father too, being informed, came in haste to celebrate the nuptial festival, and, remaining a few days, returned with his retinue. While the couple was there alone, two Munis came down from the sky to worship the Jina. The king enquired of their residence, etc., and was told they were **Vidyādhara Munis** — pilgrims to holy places to worship Jinās, and that after visiting **Sammata**, **Arbuda**, **Vaibhāra**, **Ruchaka**, **Aśtāpada**, and others, they had been to **Satrunjaya** and **Raivata**, and that on going to the fourth summit (of **Raivata**) named **Kāñchana**, they saw some one as brilliant as the sun worshipping **Nemi**. He told them he had once been a Kshatriya living at **Sugrāma** near the **Raivata**; but possessed of an evil mind he began to annoy the pilgrims, beating them and telling lies, and, as a punishment, he was attacked by an incurable disease called *lūtā*.<sup>52</sup> Fortunately he heard from a Muni the account of this holy place, and accordingly came to this **Kāñchana** summit and was gradually freed from his physical and mental ailments by bathing in the waters of **Udayanti** and worshipping **Nemi** in the temple of king **Bharata** (after whom this land of India was once called **Bharatakhanda**). At length he died in meditation and obtained this shining body with divine powers. But remembering his obligations to this holy place, he returned to reside here, and by daily worship of the Jina, he would become *kevala* or a Muni and obtain *mukti*, and again come to abide by **Nemi** as **Siddhi Vināyaka**.<sup>53</sup> At the conclusion of this account of himself and of the sacred place, he ascended into the sky.

The twain (**Sāntanu** and **Gaṅgā**) after worshipping the Jina happened to notice this beautiful jewel temple, and thought of going to some other tirtha. After the departure of the Munis, **Sāntanu** was inclined to visit **Kāñchana**; but his retinue having come he returned home with them in pomp and pleasure (464).]

**Sāntanu** was the father of **Gāṅgeya Bhishma** by **Gaṅgā**, of **Chitrāṅgada** by **Satyavati**, and of **Vichitravīrya**.

[On account of his fondness for hunting against her wish and counsel, **Gaṅgā** with her son **Gāṅgeya** went back to her father's. **Sāntanu** regretted his loss and went distracted; but being consoled by his ministers he passed 24 years. King **Jahnu** received his daughter graciously, and taught **Gāṅgeya** every science and art. By the religious instructions of a Jaina preacher he became a **Srāvaka** and went to the place where his mother had been married to pass his days in religion and devotion. **Sāntanu** sometime after came thither a-hunting, and **Gāṅgeya**, seeing the birds and beasts in the forest agitated by the king's dogs and huntsmen, came out of the temple armed, and seeing the king among his huntsmen, addressed him, — "O king, you being lord of the earth, ought to protect the innocent and punish the guilty; this being your duty, how can it be said you are a king while you kill helpless animals? As you allow no wrong to be done within the limits of your kingdom, so do I in this forest." But finding the king regardless of his admonition, with his arrows he killed some of the huntsmen and distressed the rest, when the king challenged him to a duel. While they were fighting **Gaṅgā** hearing of it from a servant came thither in haste and blaming the king for his fondness for the chase, informed him that his antagonist was his own son. The king then with affection embraced his son, who had fallen at his feet, and requested his wife to forgive him and resume her place with her son. She replied that, as he did not keep his promise, she would not live with him, but he might comfort himself in the company of his humble, dutiful and learned son whom she had come to see. Then in spite of the entreaties of her husband and son she left for her father's. The king glad at obtaining his son but sorry for his separation from his wife returned home. **Sāntanu** afterwards, on one of his excursions, went to the banks of the **Yamunā**, where a most handsome girl caught his eye; on enquiry he learnt that she was the daughter of the head fisherman, a **Sarasvatī** in knowledge, a **Lakshmi** in beauty, a

<sup>52</sup> Said to originate from the bite of a poisonous insect.

<sup>53</sup> A divinity of wisdom and wealth to fulfil the desires of the worshippers of **Nemi**.



Kalpavriksha at home, and a maiden who had not found a worthy husband. The king returning sent his wise counsellors to request the fisherman to give him his daughter in marriage; but the fisherman refused compliance, adding that the connexion between a high and a low family was unsuitable, that his daughter, though made queen, would not be so respected as one born in a high family, and, moreover, the king had an able son to succeed him so that his daughter's children would have neither respect nor authority. Hearing this the king was depressed; but his son **Gāṅgeya**, when he heard it, went personally to the fisherman and asked his daughter for the king, saying he would respect and treat her just as his mother **Gāṅgā**, and that for long he had been *viraktu*,<sup>54</sup> and consequently her son, being his younger brother, would succeed the king; and to remove any chance of his (**Gāṅgeya**'s) sons forcibly depriving her son of the government, he vowed before the **Sunand Deva** to remain celibate, and they (the **Devas**) showered down flowers and named him **Bhishma** because of his *bhishma-vrata* or hard resolution.

The fisherman then was pleased and gave him the following account of his daughter. There was a king, he said, named **Ratnasekhara** of the town of **Ratnapura**, who had this daughter by his wife **Ratnavati**. But the infant immediately after birth was stolen, and, by some **Vidyādhara**, left on the banks of the **Yamunā**; when a voice from the sky declared her parentage, her name **Satyavati**, and her destined husband **Saṁtanu**. Hearing this voice, he took her home and cared for her as his own (563). **Gāṅgeya** having thus obtained the fisherman's consent, returned joyfully home to tell the king of it. **Saṁtanu** praised his son's admirable and noble conduct, but for a while was ashamed of his erotic desires. Afterwards on a propitious day he married **Satyavati**, and had by her two sons named **Chitrāṅgada** and **Vichitravīrya**. The king then gave up hunting, visited **Satrunjaya** and other tirthas and piously breathed his last. **Chitrāṅgada** was placed on the throne by **Bhishma**, but, disregarding the advice of the latter, he went to fight with a mighty **Gandharva** named **Nilāṅgada** and was killed. **Bhishma** then inaugurated **Vichitravīrya** as king and taught him the arts and sciences. But on account of his reputed low birth, he was not invited by the king of **Kāśi** to the *svayamvara* of his three daughters — **Ambā**, **Ambālā**, and **Ambikā** (**Ambālikā**). **Bhishma**, in wrath, went in person and by force carried off in his chariot all the three maidens, defeated the assembled kings who opposed him, and came back to **Hastināpura** to give them in marriage to his younger brother.]

**Vichitravīrya** had (483-84) 1. by **Ambikā** the blindborn **Dhṛitarashṭra**, the husband of **Gāndhārī** and of her seven sisters (640) and father of **Duryodhana** (749); 2. by **Ambālā**, of **Pāṇḍu**, — by **Kuntī** and **Mādrī** (639) the father of the five **Pāṇḍavas** (743 ff.); and 3. by **Ambālikā** of **Vidura** the husband of **Kumudīnī** daughter of **Devakanṛpa** (642) who died of syphilis.

[The ministers thinking **Dhṛitarashṭra** unfit, because of his blindness, made **Pāṇḍu** king under whose rule the country flourished. One day in summer he went out to look at the scenery of the woods, and being much pleased and walking on, he saw a man under a mango tree constantly looking at a picture and covering it again with his cloth. **Pāṇḍu** taking it from him found it to be a representation of a beautiful woman, and learned that it was of **Kuntī** the daughter of king **Andhakavṛishni** of **Sauryapura** and sister of the ten **Arhas**, who was perfect in every way but unmarried, as not having found a fit husband, and that it was drawn by him to please his sight. **Pāṇḍu** then paid for the picture and went home with it. After passing some days quietly, through modesty but in pain and anxiety, he went out again to divert his mind with the woodland scenery, but wandered in vain for ease; seeing, however, a man senseless and nailed to the ground near a line of **Champaka** trees, he went up to him and found a sword before him and two rings of medicinal plants. Applying one of them to his body, the nails came out of the ground restoring him to his senses; and applying the other his wounds filled up and he was perfectly healed. On enquiry he told the king that he was **Anilagati** the master of the **Vidyādhara**s, and was deprived of his wife by **Asanivān**, another **Vidyādhara**, whom he consequently pursued and was ultimately left in the condition the king found

<sup>54</sup> 'Indifferent' to worldly things.



him in. The Vidyādhara requested Pāṇḍu his deliverer to accept both the wonderful plants and a ring by means of which he could go in a moment wherever he wished, with a promise to be near him when remembered. The king then returned home, thinking on him and Kuntī (620).

The painter from whom king Pāṇḍu got the picture of Kuntī, went to Sauryapura, and, in presence of Kuntī informed the king of the greatness and learning of Pāṇḍu. Kuntī was so pleased with the account that she determined to marry him. She could not from modesty, disclose her mind to her father, and like a lotus in a waterless country she lost her bloom. Having no hope of getting Pāṇḍu as a husband, she went into a garden to hang herself, and prayed to the family goddesses with joined hands: — "O mothers! helpless I now die for Pāṇḍu; none else but Pāṇḍu would I have in this life for husband. Be pleased to tell him this after my death, and give me this very Pāṇḍu as my lord in the next life." Kuntī then put round her neck the noose to strangle herself; but Pāṇḍu arrived, by the aid of the ring given him by Anilagati, and recognising her from the picture he had, at once he cut the noose replacing it with his arms. Kuntī seeing her husband was overjoyed and married him with the *Gāndhārva-vivāha* rite.<sup>85</sup> She conceived by him and told her husband; but both returned to their respective homes, she keeping her condition secret. When she gave birth to a male child, as a matter of necessity, it was put in a box and thrown into the Gaṅgā. The box was carried down to Hastināpura, where a charioteer named Sūta found and, opening it, saw a child bright as the sun on a clear day. He carried it home with delight and gave it to his wife Rādhā as his own. The child was named Karna, and as he grew up he became a favourite of the king Pāṇḍu by reason of his qualifications (638).

Andhakavṛiṣṇi learning of his daughter's affection towards Pāṇḍu gave her to him in marriage. Pāṇḍu afterwards got Mādri the daughter of the king Madraka at her *svayamvara*. Subala of Gandhāra had eight daughters, the first of whom was Gandhārī, and a son Sakuni, and, as instructed by his family goddess, he gave the daughters in marriage to Dhṛitarāshtra. Vidura also the third son of Vichitravīrya married Kumudini the daughter of king Devaka (643).

King Andhakavṛiṣṇi handed over his government to his son Samudravijaya, became a disciple of Supratishṭha-muni and attained *śivakṛī*. Samudravijaya was a liberal, humble, devout man, who supported learning, ruled his country justly, and erected very many lofty temples of Jina. His wife Siva by name was equally good (665).

At Mathurā the king Bhojavṛiṣṇi placed his son Ugrasena on the throne and became a devotee. Ugrasena's wife was Dhārāṇī. Once he asked a Brāhmaṇa ascetic who was observing a month's fast to dine at his house on the day of its completion; but from pressure of business he forgot to invite the Brāhmaṇa on the proper day, who consequently had to continue fasting for another month. Ugrasena again invited him to dine for *pāraṇā* (breaking the fast) and again forgot the day. This being thrice repeated the ascetic died, and to avenge himself entered the womb of Dhārāṇī, who, after conception, longed to eat her husband's flesh. Concluding that the child would be her husband's enemy, she put it into a box of *kāñśya* (bell-metal) and threw it into the Yamunā. The box was recovered by a grocer at Sauryapura, who seeing in it a male child, luminous as the sun, and which he named Kaṇsa, as it was found in a *kāñśya* box, he nursed it. The grocer, observing that Kaṇsa, as he grew up, daily beat the other children, thought him unfit for his business and gave him to Samudravijaya. Kaṇsa reached maturity in the palace where he became a favourite with Vasudeva, the king's younger brother (671).

In Rājagṛīha ruled Jarāsandha son of Brīhadratha over the *trikhaṇḍas*. Once he sent Vasudeva along with Kaṇsa against his enemy Simharatha, who was defeated and brought bound on a cart to Rājagṛīha. Jarāsandha for this offered Vasudeva his daughter Jivayabā in marriage. But Vasudeva, having learnt from some astrologer that she would be destructive to the families both of her father and husband, told Jarāsandha that his enemy had been defeated and brought there by Kaṇsa and not by himself, — and therefore it was Kaṇsa who deserved this favour from the king.



**Jivayasa** accordingly became the wife of **Kaṇsa**, who afterwards recalling his previous life and enmity to **Ugrasena** who was now his father, seized the kingdom of **Mathurā**, with **Jarāsandha's** permission, and put his father in prison. **Atimukta**, the younger brother of **Kaṇsa**, seeing his father in prison, relinquished worldly desires and obtained *dīkṣā* (religious consecration). Thus **Kaṇsa** became king of **Mathurā**; and the **Dasarahas** — **Samudra** and his brothers, with **Jarāsandha's** leave, went to **Sauryapura**. Prince **Vasudeva**, becoming suspicious of **Jarāsandha**, travelled for a while and on the way married several (a hundred) daughters of petty kings, some for their learning, others because they chose him. Then he went to the *svayamvara* of **Rohiṇi** and obtained her in presence of **Samudravijaya** and all the **Yādavas**. He then came to **Sauryapura** and by **Rohiṇi** had a son **Balarāma**, **Balabhadra** or **Baladeva**. Afterwards, through the importunity of **Kaṇsa** he married **Devaki**, the daughter of **Devaka**. At the marriage festivity **Jivayasa**, the wife of **Kaṇsa**, got drunk, and while dancing, she noticed the Muni **Atimukta**, her husband's brother, whom she embraced erotically, when he pronounced the curse that **Devaki's** seventh child would kill her husband and father. At this imprecation she left the Muni in sorrow and privately informed her husband of it. **Kaṇsa**, believing that the Muni's word would not fail, gave liberal gifts and honours to **Vasudeva**, and obtained a promise from him to make over the first seven children of **Devaki** as soon as born (688).

**Devaki's** first six children, on their birth, were carried off by a Deva — sent by **Indra** — to a woman named **Sulasā**, and her dead children, born simultaneously, were brought back to **Devaki**. These being sent to **Kaṇsa** were dashed by him against a stone. In his way the first six children — named **Anikayasa**, **Anantasena**, **Ajitasena**, **Nihutari**, **Devayasa**, and **Satrasena**, were preserved in the house of **Sulasā**. After this, **Devaki**, having bathed on her fourth day, dreamt at midnight of a lion, the sun, an elephant, etc., and conceived; then at midnight of the 8th *Srāvaṇa-vadya*, she gave birth to a male child of a dark blue colour, when **Kaṇsa's** guards were fast miraculously asleep; and **Vasudeva**, at his wife's desire, took the child to **Gokula** and gave it to **Yaśodā** the wife of **Nanda**, bringing back her daughter born at the same time, and with delight gave it to **Devaki**. The guards, when awake, took that girl to **Kaṇsa**, who, thinking the word of the Muni had failed, and fearing nothing from her, cut her nose and sent her back to **Devaki**. The child at **Gokula** grew under the care of goddesses and was called **Kṛṣṇa** from his (*kṛṣṇa*) dark blue complexion. At play he killed two giantesses — **Sakuni** and **Pūtana** and a giant — **Sakaṣa**, — and uprooted the twin growing **Arjuna** trees.<sup>68</sup> Hearing of such deeds by her son, **Devaki** visited **Gokula** frequently with other women. And to protect him **Vasudeva** kept his son **Balarāma** at **Gokula** (702).

At **Sauripura**, **Sivā** the wife of **Samudravijaya**, dreamt at dawn the fourteen great dreams, and at the very time, the 12th of *Kārtika-vadya*, **Chitrānakshatra**, a great sage descended from a chariot of the **Aparājita** gods and entered her womb. Then, at midnight of the 5th of *Srāvaṇasuddha*, **Chitrānakshatra**, she gave birth to a child of dark colour with the mark of a conch; then on the top of **Meru** the fifty-six **Dikkumāris** and sixty-four **Indras** celebrated the birth of the **Jina**. **Samudravijaya** also celebrated the event and gave his child the name of **Arishtanemi** (the 22nd **Jina**). He was nursed by a crowd of **Apsarās** and waited on by gods who had assumed his age at **Indra's** command. After this **Samudravijaya** went into the garden to amuse himself, when **Indra** seeing the **Svāmi** in the lap of his mother joyfully saluted him and said to the gods that **Samudravijaya**, in whose house the **Svāmi Nemi Tirthaṅkara** had appeared as a son, was indeed meritorious and happy, praising the lord exceedingly for his bravery. Some of the gods present answered **Indra** that his praise of the boy before them was unseemly for they had once dried up the whole ocean and had pulverized great mountains with ease; and desiring to see the strength of the **Jina**, they had come to the garden consecrated by him. There they saw the boy caressed by people, some saying "live long," some kissing him, some holding his fingers, some making him laugh by nodding their heads, etc. When, afterwards, they found the **Jina** in his cradle resting alone, they carried him off by stealth up into the sky. When they had gone some thousand kos up, the lord in meditation, knew what they were about, and to

<sup>68</sup> The sons of **Kubera** — **Nalakubera** and **Maṇigriva** — changed into trees by the curse of **Nārada**.



convince them of his powers, sunk them several thousand kos below the ground. Seeing their plight **Indra** pitied them, and coming to **Nemi** requested him to deliver them, as they had committed this fault through ignorance; and, after liberating them and putting the lord in his cradle, **Indra** returned to **Svarga**. **Samudravijaya** and others witnessing the power of **Nemi**, were highly pleased and returned home, celebrating a festival befitting the occasion in the **Arhan** temple. Henceforward the lord grew up protected by the gods under orders of **Indra** (737).

In **Hastinapura**, **Gāndhārī** the wife of **Dhṛitarāshṭra**, being pregnant, longed to ride on an elephant, to kill enemies, to imprison people, and to fail in respect to elders, quarrelling with all **Kuntī**, the wife of **Pāṇḍu**, seeing in dreams Mount Meru, the Sun, the Moon, the ocean of milk, and **Lakshmi**, had a fortunate conception and longed to do pious actions; and, on a propitious day, when the five planets were in superior conjunction she gave birth to a child, when the gods showered flowers in the house and a voice from the sky was heard that this child would possess all pure qualities — mercy, liberality, etc., that he was a **Dharmaputra** (son of religion). King **Pāṇḍu** celebrated his son's birth and called him **Yudhisṭhira** (great in war). Again **Kuntī** saw in dreams a flowering **Kalpataru** planted by the Wind in her own garden, and accordingly had an excellent pregnancy (*garbha*). **Gāndhārī** became impatient at her long carriage, etc., and after thirty months bore an immature child which was kept in a box for six months; and as he had given his mother so much trouble, he was named **Duryodhana**. In the third portion of the night of his birth, **Kuntī** was delivered of a son, who, by a heavenly voice, was named **Bhīma**. Once king **Pāṇḍu** with his wife went to a mountain for pleasure, when **Bhīma** fell from his mother's arms and as his firm body struck the stones, they were pulverized as rice by a mill; and *devas* taking him up not in the least bruised, delivered him to his mother. **Kuntī**, on the occasion of her third conception saw, in her dreams, **Indra** riding on his elephant, and longed to kill **Dānavas** with arrows; and in due course she bore a child when the gods showered down flowers, beat drums, **Apsaras** danced, and a voice from the sky declared the child to be the son of **Indra** named **Arjuna**. By his other wife **Mādrī**, king **Pāṇḍu** had also two sons **Nakula** and **Sahadeva**; thus he was the father of five sons, while his elder brother **Dhṛitarāshṭra** had a hundred, all brave but wicked (763).

**Kuntī** once went on pilgrimage to the city of **Nāśikya** and built there a temple of **Chandraprabha-svāmī** (the 8th *Tīrthāṅkara*) and, after consecrating his image in it and performing other meritorious deeds, she and her husband returned home. Since then **Nāśikya** has become a holy place. It is said of it that "those who fall prostrate to the 8th *Tīrthāṅkara* at **Nāśikya** obtain knowledge (of salvation) and so a first place in the next life" (766).

**Kaṇsa**, learning from an astrologer that he would be killed by **Kṛishṇa**, who had already slain several demons — **Keti**, **Haya**, **Khara**, **Mesha**, **Vṛisha**, and **Ariṣṭa**, and being desirous to see his enemy, began the **Sāruga** bow ceremony, — offering his sister **Satyabhāmā** to any one able to use the bow. When none was found able to bend the bow, **Anādhṛishṇi** the son of **Vasudeva**, set out for **Gokulā** in a chariot, and resting there for the night, at dawn in company with **Kṛishṇa** he started for **Mathurā**; but on the way his chariot was stopped by a tree, which his companion uprooted and threw aside; he (**Anādhṛishṇi**) was astonished at his strength and took him on to **Kaṇsa's** dwelling, where he took up the bow but failed to fix it, at which the assembled princes and **Satyabhāmā** laughed. Then **Kṛishṇa**, in a rage set the bow in a moment and **Satyabhāmā** resolved to marry him. **Anādhṛishṇi** boasted that it was he who strung the bow, and was sent home by his father **Vasudeva** who was afraid of **Kaṇsa**. To discover his foe **Kaṇsa** invited all the kings to witness the athletic contests. **Kṛishṇa**, who had once killed the serpent **Kaliya** in a pool of the **Yamunā**, went with **Balarāma** to see the sport. An elephant called **Padmotara**, set free by **Kaṇsa** was killed by **Kṛishṇa**, and another, named **Champaka**, by **Balarāma**, who pointed out **Kṛishṇa** to all assembled — to **Samudravijaya** and the others, as also to **Kaṇsa**, who became inflamed with rage. Then came into the assembly two wrestlers — **Chanura** and **Mushtika**, when **Balarāma** and **Kṛishṇa** left their seats, — the first killed **Mushtika**, and the second the other. **Kaṇsa** at this became excessively angry and called with a loud voice "O base herdsmen! kill them quickly and **Nanda** who protected them, and those



also who are their friends." To this **Kṛishṇa** replied with eyes as red as fire — "O **Kaṇsa**, don't you see my strength yet? Defend yourself first and then do what you please to **Nanda** and others." So saying he left his seat like a lion and holding **Kaṇsa** by the hair dashed him on the ground. Then came the servants of **Kaṇsa** to slay **Kṛishṇa**, but they ran in all directions when they saw **Balarāma** coming with a tent pole in his hand to beat them. **Kṛishṇa** killed **Kaṇsa** stamping on his head, and threw him out of the arena. Then came the warriors and kings, dependents of **Kaṇsa**, to contend with **Kṛishṇa**, but fled when they saw **Samudravijaya** and other kings ready to oppose them.

Placing **Ugrasena**, the father of **Kaṇsa** on the throne of **Mathurā**, **Samudravijaya** and the others returned to **Sauripura**. **Jivayātā**, grieved at her husband's death, went to **Rajagriha**, resolved to destroy the whole **Yādava** clan. To **Jarāsandha** she told the whole story in the most pitiful way, and he consoled her, sending king **Somaka** to **Samudravijaya** to demand **Balarāma** and **Kṛishṇa**. He was received by **Samudravijaya** and the others and delivered the message that **Balarāma** and **Kṛishṇa** having killed **Kaṇsa** had made themselves enemies to the family and ought not to be allowed to remain in the kingdom but should be sent to **Jarāsandha**. To him **Samudravijaya** replied that, **Jarāsandha** being grieved for the death of his son talked so, but was not he (**Somaka**) ashamed to demand **Balarāma** and **Kṛishṇa** who were to the **Harivaṅsa** as eyes to the body: "Go and tell **Jarāsandha** not to follow the course taken by **Kaṇsa**, his son-in-law, by awakening a sleeping lion." **Somaka** then left in haste lest he should be killed by **Balarāma** and **Kṛishṇa**, and related the whole to **Jarāsandha** (802).

Afterwards **Ugrasena** gave his daughter **Satyabhāmā** in marriage to **Kṛishṇa**; and on the second day of the marriage, **Samudravijaya** collected all his kinsfolk and enquired in their presence, of **Krośhṭuki**, the best of astrologers, as to the result of their quarrel with **Jarāsandha** a powerful king. He was told that **Rama** and **Kṛishṇa** would in course of time slay their enemies and become rulers of the *trikhaṇḍas* of **Bharatavarsha**; but meantime they should retire to the shores of the western sea, and as soon as they reached it the enemy would begin to suffer losses, and that they should settle where **Satyabhāmā** should be delivered of twin sons. Accordingly, **Samudravijaya** with eighteen *karors* families of **Yādavas** crossed the **Vindhya** mountains (809).

**Jarāsandha** on hearing **Somaka's** reply, got into a rage, but his son **Kāla** said:—"Father, what are these **Yādavas** before me, if permitted I alone will get at them whether they be in heaven, in the fire, or in the sea, and will slay them or not return home to show my face." **Jarāsandha** sent him with his brother **Yavana** and five hundred kings with large armies. Seeing **Kāla** approach like **Kāla** (death), the protecting goddesses took various forms to deceive him. Somewhere in the **Vindya-chala** were formed innumerable funeral pyres and a woman appeared wailing. On being asked by **Kāla** the cause of her lament, she said that in fear of **Jarāsandha** the **Yādavas** were all in despair, and hearing of the approach of the prince **Kāla**, they entered the funeral piles and were turned to ashes: in this pile were burnt the ten **Arhas**, **Balarāma**, and **Kṛishṇa**, and she in sorrow at the death of her relations, was about to burn herself, and so saying she entered the fire. Thus deceived by the illusion of the goddesses and remembering his pledge to his father **Kāla** leaped into the fire and was consumed. Then his brother **Yavana** and the others returned and informed **Jarāsandha** king of **Magadha** of the death of all the **Yādavas** and also of prince **Kāla** (818).

The **Yādavas**, much pleased at this, went on to **Saurāshṭra** and encamped to the north-west of **Girnāra**, where **Satyabhāmā** gave birth to two sons — **Bhānu** and **Bhāruara**. Then the **Dakṣiṇas** worshipped **Jina** on **Girnāra** mountain and so purified themselves. **Kṛishṇa**, on a propitious day, fixed by **Krośhṭuki**, bathed and worshipped the ocean-god, and performed the 8th *tapa*; on the 3rd day, at night, the ocean-god came to **Kṛishṇa** and asked with joined hands why he was remembered; he then presented to **Kṛishṇa** a conch called **Pañchajanya**, and to **Balarāma** the conch **Sughoṣha**, and to both necklaces of jewels and clothes. **Kṛishṇa** in his reply said he had come in time, as the capital of the former **Vasudevas**, now covered over by water, was required for a habitation. Hearing this the ocean-god went and told **Indra**, when **Indra** directed **Kubera** to build a town for **Kṛishṇa**. The town was built by **Kubera** in a single day with numberless palaces of one,



two, three, and many storeys, with innumerable temples of Arhant, and with lakes, wells, tanks, etc. Twelve *yojanas* was the length and nine the breadth, with a surrounding wall of gold and gems and with four round towers, like mountain tops, at the four corners. After completing this beautiful town like Indra's and called **Dvārakā**, in the morning **Kubera** gave to **Kṛishṇa** a suit of yellow clothes, a crown, the very precious gem *Kaustubha*, a necklace of 27 pearls, the *Sāruga* bow, the sword *Nandana*, the elc<sup>t</sup> *Kaumodaki*, and the chariot *Garudadhvajā*. To **Balarāma** he gave a suit of black clothes, a pe<sup>o</sup> a garland of flowers, the *tulasa*, etc., the chariot *Tāladhvaja*, a bow, a plough; to **Arishta** he gave a necklace, bracelets, a very precious garland, the earrings *Chandrasūrya*, a suit of white clothes, and a jewel of great splendour; he gave to **Samudravijaya** the sword named *Chandrarahāsa*, a suit of the best clothes, and a chariot; to **Mahānemi** he gave a chariot — *Garudadhvajā*, a spear with a thousand points, a suit of clothes, and a *Kaustubha* gem; to **Rathanemi** — a bow, an arrow, and a garland; and to the relatives and friends, he gave clothes and weapons according to their dignity. Then **Kubera** and the other gods with the *Yādavas*, etc., crowned **Kṛishṇa** and **Balarāma** as kings. They governed this newly settled country in conjunction with the *Dasārhas* and with the advice of **Samudravijaya**. At **Dvārakā** the lord **Arishtanemi** gradually grew into a young man (847).

**Indra** with delight, in presence of the gods, described the peculiar merit of **Nemi**, men whose of them, questioning his word, came instantly to the world and assuming human forms settled in a town named **Suradhārāpura** at the foot of mount **Raivata**. Then they began destroying trees in the gardens and annoying tradesmen and others on the roads. These complaints reached **Anādhṛishṇi** the eldest son of **Vaśudeva**, and he without **Samudravijaya's** sanction, or that of any of the elders, went hurriedly with the instruments of war against the supposed mortals, but was defeated and carried to **Suradhārāpura**. Then **Samudravijaya** collected a large army, when **Balarāma** and **Kṛishṇa** requested to be allowed to go in his stead. They too were defeated and carried off prisoners. The people were greatly alarmed when they saw **Rāma** and **Kṛishṇa**, unconquerable by men, demons, and gods, thus carried off. Then **Kṛishṇa's** wives went to their brother-in-law, **Nemi**, and said humbly that he, being a *Jina*, a *Tirthaṅkara*, was of unlimited power, and that though his brothers had been carried off he was unmoved and his valour would be of no account unless it were shown now. **Nemi** considered for a while and then came out to the assembly, when **Samudravijaya** who was about to proceed against his enemies was brought back by **Kroshtuki**, who told him his efforts would be fruitless as these enemies could be defeated only by a *Tirthaṅkara*. In the meantime **Mātula** the charioteer of **Indra** had brought a chariot by his master's orders and told **Nemi** to mount. He did so with the weapons of war and completely defeated the gods. **Indra** came down and praised him greatly, requesting that he would pardon the gods for their folly. The gods bowed when they saw **Indra** and prostrated themselves to the *Tirthaṅkara*, who, pardoning them, went to **Suradhārāpura** and released **Anādhṛishṇi**, **Balarāma** and **Kṛishṇa**. **Indra** requested the lord to take them to holy places — **Satrunjaya** and others for their benefit. The lord, sitting in the *vimāna* of **Indra**, went with them to **Satrunjaya**, told them its history, and thence came to **Girnāra** and then to **Dvārakā**. Leaving **Nemi** and his brothers there, **Indra** and the others went to their respective abodes (932).

Next **Kṛishṇa**, on the advice of **Nārada**, goes to **Vidarbha**, and carries off **Rukmini** the sister of **Rukmin**; and so on, much as in the Purāṇic legends.]

#### SARGA OF CHAPTER XI. (416, vv.).

*Rairatāchalamāhātmye Pāṇḍavadyūtakṛīḍāvanarāsādivarnano nāma*, — representing the game at dice, the forest life of the *Pāṇḍavas*, etc. In the invocation in v. 1, **Nemi** is expressly designated as the 22nd Arhant, in the same way as in x. 320, we find **Suvrata** named as the 20th. On the whole the contents agree with the *Mahābhārata*.

#### SARGA OF CHAPTER XII. (664 vv.).

*Rairatāchalamāhātmye Pāṇḍavādīśaṅ grāmavarṇano nāma*, — represents the war of the *Pāṇḍavas*, etc.



It begins with the delivery of **Duryodhana** from the power of the **Vidyābhrit** king **Chitrāṅgada**, who had in vain prohibited the former from entering the **Dvaita** lake in the **Dvaitavanam**, where he had himself encamped while pursuing the **Pāṇḍavas**,—and as he nevertheless did so in company with his brothers, he dragged him away. Their wives turn beseechingly to **Yudhishthira**, and beg of him as the son of **Dharma**, to forget their offences and have pity on them. Thereupon, at **Yudhishthira**'s command **Arjuna** liberates them, conquering **Chitrāṅgada**. After that **Duryodhana** is still uncivil and does not salute **Yudhishthira**, but is, however, forcibly made to incline himself, whereupon the former embraces him and dismisses him kindly. The **Pāṇḍavas** are consequently here set up as a model of **Jaina** ethics.

Death of **Jarāsandha** (652).

#### SARGA OF CHAPTER XIII. (720 vv.).

**Srī Nemidīkṣhājñānanīrṇāṇa-Pāṇḍavodhārādīvarṇano** (dvārā, Cod) *nāma*,—describes the consecration, wisdom, and *nirvāṇam* of **Nemi**, and also the pious foundations, etc., of the **Pāṇḍavas**.

**Kṛishṇa** and his wives take much pains (83 seqq.) to excite erotic desires in **Nemi**; in which the former exhibits a pretty libidinous view of life and appears provided with all those epithets applied to him among **Brāhmanas**, and specially as he is directly styled **Vishṇu** (99, 318), thus **Sarṅgin** (87), **Sarṅgapāni** (88), **Hari** (90), **Gadādhara** (111), **Hṛishikēsa** (105), **Achyuta** (106), **Govinda** (108, 112), **Pitāmbara** (86); also his 16,000 wives are mentioned (*conf. Vish. Pur.* Vol. IV. p. 112; Vol. V. pp. 82, 105).

After long resistance **Nemi** agrees to marry, and **Kṛishṇa** himself selects a wife for him, namely **Rājimati**, the daughter of **Ugrasena** (108). Description of the wedding (120 seqq.), which, however, remains fruitless. After one year **Nemi** goes on pilgrimage to the **Uttarakurus** (173).—*ārohanavidhiṃ vyadhāt*.

Prophecy of **Nemi** (320-405) on the 2,000 years after his *nirvāṇam*, by a merchant named **Ratna**, under the direction of **Amba**, concerning the future bringing and adoring of his statue and temple on **Raivata**, etc.

#### SARGA OF CHAPTER XIV. (343 vv.).

**Srī Pārśvanāthādīmahāpuruṣasachcharitavarṇano** *nāma*,—describes the pure walk of **Pārśvanātha**, and of other great men.

First to v. 97, the history of **Pārśvanātha**. To the king **Aśvasena** in **Vāpāraśi** (*sic!*) after the usual fourteen dreams<sup>47</sup> by his spouse **Vāmā** was born **Jineśvara Pārśva** (2-9); this son, in conformity with his father's order, afterwards married **Prabhavati**, daughter of king **Naravarman** (11). Once he recalled a wandering Ascetic **Kaṭha**, who followed the system of corpse penitence (?) from his exhibition (?) of a snake tormented by smoke. The snake surrounded by flames and expiring at the appearance of **Pārśva** (comp. i. 4) as **Seabhrapati** (**Nāga** prince), was reborn under the name of **Dharaṇa**,<sup>48</sup> and **Kaṭha** as the **Asura Meghamālin** (12-14). After the expiration of the 30th year of his life, the lord (**Pārśva**) was seized with a longing for consecration, which he obtained along with 300 (*triśati*) princes. He observed the first castigation<sup>49</sup> in the **Kādambarī** forest upon the **Kaligiri**

<sup>47</sup> On these fourteen dreams which the mother of an Arhat sees, comp. *Kalpasūtra*, pp. 25, 26, 42, 52, 65. As the 15th Trisala herself appears in Stevenson's frontispiece. According to Wilson, *Mack. Coll.* Vol. I. p. 148, there are sixteen dreams, as among the Buddhists; S. Hardy, *Man. Budh.* p. 3.

<sup>48</sup> And his faithful servant,—see continuation. Hence it comes that the emblem of **Pārśva** is a serpent (v. I and Hemach. 48) and that pronouncing his name is an antidote against snakes (I. 333). His very name **Pārśva** was derived from the circumstance (v. 9) of his mother, when she was pregnant, with him, having seen at her side a serpent crawling (*serpenti serpentem*).

<sup>49</sup> Thus probably is *śyotsarga* (81, 819) to be understood? Comp. "neglected his body," *Kalpa Sūtra*, p. 86.



on the brink of a tank (19). The **Anga** king who came here to reverence him, no longer found him; to console him the gods made a statue of the lord, nine *hastas* in height. The **Angarāja** founded a temple there, which was from that time known by the name of **Kalikunḍam**, and is celebrated for its holy qualities (to 30). The next castigation the lord kept in **Sivapuri** (i. 382) in the **Kausāmbaka** forest. **Dharaṇa** (the Nāga prince) quickly approached to worship him and held his outspread neck (*phaṇa*) over him as an umbrella. From this the town of **Ahichhatra** derived its name (31-35). During the sojourn of the lord at **Rājapura**, **Īśvarabhūpa** came to venerate him, and was informed of his former births and built there a lofty temple and, in commemoration of his former birth, set up a cock-statue, — since which time the *tīrtham* is called **Kukkūṭeśvaram** (36-40). On the occasion of another *kāyotsarga* of the lord, the **Kāthāsura** (who had already been his enemy during ten births) tried in vain to frighten him and disturb his devotions by storms of thunder and showers of rain.<sup>60</sup> On the contrary he (*Meghamālin*) was obliged to seek protection from **Pārśva** against the servants sent out by **Dharaṇa** for the defence of the lord, and thereafter he became his faithful servant along with **Dharaṇa** himself (41-62). Then in the **Kāśivana** the lord attained the true perception (*kevalam*, — see *Kalpa Sūt.* 20) on the 84th day and began his office as preacher. **Aśvasena** and other princes, **Vamā**, **Prabhāvatī**, and other ladies, became ascetics; **Hastisena** and others, along with their wives, chose the right path; **Aryadatta**, etc., were hīsten sages (*sūri*). He wandered about in the world, creating sanctuaries wherever his foot touched the ground (till v. 69). Thus he came also to **Satrunjaya**, the most glorious *tīrtha*, where, like the first Arhant, he praised its height. The lord, of the triune world abode also upon **Raivata** and the other summits, and then returned to **Kāśi**. In presence of **Hastisena**, his relative, and of the *surendras* who came to him (73), he began, with his voice which embraced all languages, a discourse in praise of **Satrunjaya** (till 83). Hereupon **Hastisena** had himself consecrated as a *saṅghapati*, and went on pilgrimage to **Satrunjaya**, erecting there fresh *chaityas* on every summit, — as also on **Chandraprabhāsa** (254), **Sriśaila**,<sup>61</sup> and **Girināragiri** (89), — everywhere giving rich presents; then he returned to **Kāśi**.

"Into the number of *vartins* (otherwise called *āchārya*, *sādhu*, *yati*) 20,900 men were incorporated; into that of the *vartinis* (also called *sādhei*) 38,000 women; 164,000 was the number of *śrāvakas* 349,000 (or 377,000 ?) that of the *śrāvikās*." The female portion<sup>62</sup> is here considerably predominant, which is interesting. For an activity of 70 years (25,550 days) the numbers are not very enormous, — about 22 converts daily, — they are, however, after all, like **Pārśva** himself, perhaps only imaginary.

After the *bhagavant* had protected the world for 100 years, he betook himself to the **Sammata Sāla**,<sup>63</sup> and was there delivered by monthly fasts called *nirvṛttah* (comp. *nirvṛitti* — *nirvāṇam* in v. 290). **Sri Hastisena** also gave over the government to his son and withdrew to **Satrunjaya** (99).

"Now, O **Surarāja**," continues **Vira**, I have told thee of all the *munis* and *saṅghopatis* who were zealous about erecting *tīrthas*. Listen also respecting those who shall come after us till the *ekānta mahādūḥkin*!"<sup>64</sup> (98) — This prophecy (all verbs are in the future tense) extends to v. 324, to which a panegyric of **Satrunjaya Puṇḍarika** is added as far as v. 335: the same forms also the contents of v. 99 which constitutes the transition to the prophecy, which begins at v. 100:—

<sup>60</sup> Possibly this is the subject of some of the sculptures in **Jaina Caves** at **Elura** and elsewhere. — See *Cave Temples*, pl. lxxvi. — J. B.

<sup>61</sup> Respecting another mountain of this name, see **Wilson**, *Vishnu Pur.* Vol. II. p. 141; Vol. V. p. 118; *Arch. Sur. South. Ind.* Vol. I. p. 7. — J. B.

<sup>62</sup> So also in *Kalpa Sūtra*, p. 93, where, in the enumeration of **Vira's** disciples, there are also found 36,000 female with 14,000 male ascetics, and 318,000 female lay adherents with 159,000 male laics. (These numbers steadily diminish from about the sixth to the last **Jina**; **Padmaprabhāsa** credited with 420,000 *sādhvis*, 330,000 *sādhus*, 503,000 *śrāvikās*, and 176,000 *śrāvakas*. — J. B.)

<sup>63</sup> See i. 345, 358; **Colebrooke**, Vol. II. pp. 212-13. According to **Stevenson**, p. 96, — **Sikhara**. [So also *Ratnasāra*, II. p. 713. — J. B.]

<sup>64</sup> *Hemach. śāntiādūḥkama*.



"When we shall have obtained the *Vaibhāra*, then also prince *Srenika*, on our advice, undertaking a pilgrimage, will there (upon *Satrunjaya* ?) and in the town (—erect ? Here the finite verb is wanting, since we can scarcely be allowed to construe v. 100 with 101: hence, probably, a verse is left out in the MS. ?) *chaityas*." The sense seems to be:— that *Srenika*, the friend of *Vira*, is to compare with *Hastisena* the friend of *Pārśva*; and as the latter, after *Pārśva*'s demise on *Sammetādri*, had withdrawn to *Satrunjaya*, so *Srenika*, also, would do the like after *Vira*'s decease on the *Vaibhāra* (i. 345). The *Kalpasūtra*, however, knows nothing of such a decease on *Vaibhāra*, but places *Vira*'s death at *Pāpauri* (*Pāvāpuri*): is *vaibhāram*, 'unburdening,' perhaps to be taken appellatively in the sense of *nirvāṇam*, *mukti* ? Possibly this idea has originated the name for the mountain itself.

"Three years 8½ months after our *nirvāṇa*, O *Sakra*, the law-confusing *pañcamāra* will occur"<sup>65</sup> (101) . . . "466 years and 45 days after this, in accordance with the directions of *Siddhasena*, will *Vikramārka* expiate the earth in conformity with the Jina doctrine, and abolishing my era will introduce his own"<sup>66</sup> (102-3) . . .

Then follows a long story (to 280) of a pious merchant *Bhāvaḍa*, his son and grandson:<sup>67</sup>— *Bhāvaḍa* *Seth* will arise in *Kāmpilyapura*— a *Srāvaka*. [His wife will be *Bhāvalā* they will be poor. Two *sādhus* will come to their house, and *Bhāvalā* having entertained them, will enquire when she will obtain wealth. One of the *sādhus* will answer that she must purchase a mare that will be brought to her for sale. She tells her husband and he buys the mare, which gives birth to a foal. *Tapan Rāja* purchases the foal for three lakhs, and with the money *Bhāvaḍa* trades successfully in horses.] In return for a present of unicoloured horses he obtains from *Vikramārka* (124) the town of *Madhumatī* (*Dakṣiṇa*. 158-5) with twelve other towns in *Saurāṣṭra-maṇḍala* (125): *Bhāvaḍa* enters the town in triumph and there a son is born to him, whom he calls *Jāvaḍa* (132). In remembrance of this he builds a temple of *Vira* (135-6) in a newly founded town called *Ābhāpuri* [and an *apsara*]. When the boy had attained maturity (or the age of 5 years ?) *Bhāvaḍa* sends his wife's brother to *Kāmpilyapura* [where many of his caste reside] to find there a wife for him (139). Passing the night on his journey at the foot of *Satrunjaya*, in *Ghāṭagrāma*, he sees *Suṁlā*, the daughter of *Sūra* [who is beautiful as an *apsara-devatā*, and after enquiring as to her gotra and name] asks her for his nephew. [*Sūra* is dejected at the idea of his inability to celebrate so high a marriage. His daughter laughing, protests that she will marry no one who shall not first answer four questions to be proposed by her. The messenger carries her home with him rejoicing. *Bhāvaḍa*, hearing what has occurred, is greatly astonished, and taking *Jāvaḍa* with him goes to the Jina's temple with his relatives. *Suṁlā* is pleased with *Jāvaḍa*'s appearance and proposes her queries]: these are concerning the definitions of "the four *puruṣārthas*— subjects of human purpose"— "What is the meaning of *dharma*, of *artha*, of *kāma*, of *mokṣa*" (154)? [The youth replies:— "*dharma* is to worship the Jina; *artha* is to keep quite free from destroying life, from robbery, enmity, vain desire (*bhōḥa*), sorrow (i. e., care for misfortunes happening in this life); *kāma* is desire of worldly pleasure and love; *mokṣa* is to subdue the mind and be freed from the body, and to purify the soul (159). The *kanya*, hearing this throws over his neck the war *mālā* and the wedding is celebrated (161). After some time shall have passed, and *Bhāvaḍa* shall have gone to heaven, *Jāvaḍa* shall, like *Dharma*, protect his own city (164).]

Now follows a highly remarkable interlude (165-67).

"On account of the evil influence of the *Duḥkhamā* age, the power of the *Mudgalas* will seize upon the earth by force, overflowing it like a stream of the ocean. Enveloping the land, they will seize cows, grain, riches, children, women, men of the middle, lowest, and highest conditions (in

<sup>65</sup> According to Colebrooke, Vol. II. p. 215, *Vira*'s death is dated 3 years and 8½ months before the close of the fourth age (called *Duḥkhamā Sukhamā*) in the great period *avarapīṭ*.

<sup>66</sup> It may be noted that this statement, if accurate, would place the death of *Vira* in 521 B. C., or about 43 years before that of Buddha if we place his in B. C. 478. — I omit some of Dr. Weber's remarks here and just above. — J. B.

<sup>67</sup> I venture further to insert some additions from an analysis of this *sarga*, thereby expanding Prof. Weber's résumé. — J. B.



Saurāshtra, Kachha, Lāṭa, etc., as they advance. Then ordering the various castes to resume their respective occupations, the Mudgalas will distribute great riches, which they will bring into the country<sup>65</sup>. . . . Even then Jāvaḍa Seth — of all things provident, and careful of his religion, shall acquire wealth (168), and collecting round himself his own caste, in one locality — as in an *Āryadeśa*, he will there erect my temple to which the Munis wandering in Āryan and non-Āryan countries shall flock and be respectfully revered by Jāvaḍa. Hearing them say "during the *pañchamāra*, the *tīrtha* founder is Jāvaḍa," he shall ask them whether by this Jāvaḍa he himself or another is meant (172); he shall receive the reply — "The guardians (lords) of Puṇḍarika in course of time became malicious, living on flesh and intoxicants, and drew a circuit (?) round Puṇḍarika of 50 *yojanas*; whosoever oversteps it falls into the hands of the evil Kapardayaksha (175: see 246), therefore *Sri-yugāḍijñesvara* cannot be worshipped; but now the time has again arrived to exalt him, and thou art the fortunate one. Endeavour to preserve the image of the first holy lord founded by Bahubali (see 266) by the religious worship of Chakresvari-suri."<sup>66</sup> Accordingly she appears to him after a month's penance, and directs him to go to the town (*drāṅga*) of Takshaṣilā, and there to arrange with prince Jaganmalla: there, before the *dharmachakram*, he will perceive the image of the Arhat (*ārhatam bimbam*), and through her favour he will establish a great *tīrtha* as a mark for *sudharman* (orthodox believers)<sup>70</sup> (182). He also succeeds, really by means of bribes, in gaining the favour of the prince of Takshaṣilā so as to be permitted to carry away in cars the image of Rīṣha-bhasvāmin, as well as of Puṇḍarika (see i. 499) and he succeeds in bringing them into the *Saurāshtra māṇḍala*, near to his city of Madhumatī (191). He had before this sent ships freighted with goods to Bhoṭa,<sup>71</sup> Mahāchīna, and China. These had been driven by adverse storms to the golden isle, *Suvarṇad(v)īpa* [where they find that the dust of the ground turned to gold when a fire was lighted, and they had filled the ships with the dust of the islands], and now the whole eighteen came in. A messenger informed Jāvaḍa just when he arrived in the vicinity of the town that they had reached after an absence of 12 years, and another brought the news of the arrival of *Sri-Vajrasvāmin*.<sup>72</sup> Without noticing the former he proceeds to salute the latter. While he was still absorbed in the contemplation of Vajra, a god descends from the skies, illuminating the firmament, and appearing like a flash of lightning, and bending before him, says (201):— Lord, I was formerly Kapardin [Kapardhin] the son of Sukarman Rāja of "Tīrthamānāpura, wicked and abandoned to drink; hear how I was saved by thee when I was about to be precipitated into the abyss of my wickedness. [You kindly presented me with the *naukara mantra*, so that I was delivered. I kept the vows you prescribed.] One day I was sitting in the Chandraśhāla with my wife and sipping the Kādambari wine. While thinking of the *naukara*, a snake writhing in the talons of a bird [*śukani*, Guj. *samali*] dropped poison into my cup as I lifted it (207). Not perceiving it,<sup>73</sup> I drank and was thereby deprived of my senses, nevertheless I continued to mutter the *mantra* until I died. I then became a *Yakshadeva* and at present am called Kapardi Yaksha,<sup>74</sup> and am attended by a lakh of Yakshas

<sup>65</sup> Prof. Weber discusses the Mudgalas, who are apparently placed in an early age, for Jāvaḍa dies only 108 years after Vikramaka (v. 280). But possibly the Muhammadans are intended, and they first appeared in Gujārat in Sam. 1080, under Mahmūd of Gaznī. The inventory of the temples at Satrunjaya states that the *gratimā* of Ādiśvara in the great temple of the Vimalavastī Tūk was made by Jāvaḍa Sēh in Sam. 1018. A slight change in the last figures of this date — a copyist's ordinary mistake — would place this 13th *uddhara* or restoration immediately after Mahmūd's iconoclastic raid. This episode is either a later addition to the work, or else — and not improbably — the whole work is a comparatively late fabrication. — J. B.

<sup>66</sup> This is the *Sāvanadevī* of the first Jina (Hemach. 44), also one of the 16 *Vidyādevyas* is so named by Hemach. 239.

<sup>70</sup> According to this account, the restoration of Jaina worship took rise from Takshaṣilā on the Upper Indus which is a surprising piece of information.

<sup>71</sup> Of course Bhoṭa, Tibet, cannot be reached by sea.

<sup>72</sup> Vajra is the name of the last of the seven *Daśapūrvins*, Hemach. 34 (comp. Schol. Böhlingk-Rieu. p. 239), who would thus fall into the last third of the 2nd century A. D. [But as Jāvaḍa must be placed in the 11th cent. such an identification cannot be assumed. — J. B.]

<sup>73</sup> The same story occurs in the *Vetālapañcāśatikā* and in Sindibad, see *Ind. Stud. Bd.* III. p. 350. A similar event is mentioned in *Introd. to Kūpa-Sūtra*, p. 12.

<sup>74</sup> Homonymous, not identical with the one mentioned, vv. 175, 246. [Guj. *Kāvada Yaksha*.]



and able to perform any work ; therefore, O Svāmi direct what work I shall accomplish." [In his four hands he held a net, a goad, a *mātuliṅga* flower, and a garland. He sat on an elephant. His body shone like gold, and he was attended by many *devas* and *yakshas*.] **Vajra Svāmi** extolled the height of **Siddhadrī** (Śatrunjaya) and encourages Jāvaḍa to go thither on pilgrimage and to erect *tīrthas* ; and that himself and the Yaksha will assist him. **Jayamati** the wife of the keeper of Siddhāchal (Jāvaḍa) had fever, but Vajrasvāmi cured her by a glance [as the sun removes the darkness of the night. Kāvada Yaksha conquered the *devas* who opposed obstacles to the ascent of Śailendra with the image of the **Bhagavant**. They arrived at **Adipura**. The evil *devas* shook the mountain of Śatrunjaya, as the wind shakes the leaves. Sri Vajra with *akshata*, flowers, and water caused the mountain to remain stationary. The Sri Saṅgha on a day fixed by Sri Vajraguru, placing the image before them, ascended the mountain with much music. The **Mithyatvi-devas** opposed many obstacles, but were overcome by Vajrasūri and the Yaksha.] Vajra, "by wind, dispels the clouds created by them ; their wind, by the mountain ; their mountain by wedges (*parinā*, marg. note *rajra*) : their elephants by lions ; their lions by *Sarabha* ; fire by water ; snakes by birds."<sup>75</sup> The saṅgha found the mountain defiled with blood and bones, the temples fallen in, full of dust, and at the mercy of the winds. [Jāvaḍa causes the mountain to be cleansed till it was as pure as his own heart.] Then the Asura *devas* use the night for bringing back the car with the image of the Svāmin from the mountain. Next day, it is true, it is again carried up by the people of Jāvaḍa ; but in the following night it is again brought down ; and this is repeated for 21 nights continuously, until Vajrasvāmin makes an arrangement with the **Yaksha** and his following, steeling their members by the *vajra* formula, that they keep watch in the air, and Jāvaḍa and his wife praying to **Ādijina** and remembering the five *Parameshthi*, go to bed under the car by the side of the wheels ; and himself remains with the whole *saṅgha*, children and women, beside the image, thinking on **Ādijina**, till the morning. On the morrow (245) they carry the image successfully to the temple, and next take care to purify and expiate the sanctuary. The former **Kapardin** (see 175), surrounded by a few Asuras, conceals himself inside the former image, and as Jāvaḍa now causes it to be taken out and the new one to be installed, the Asura-swarm is fixed and entranced by the formulas of Vajrasvāmin, so that it cannot rush upon him ; but it raises so dreadful a noise that the earth with its mountains begins to vibrate like a wave of the sea, trees and temples fall down, and the mountain itself is split in two pieces — a southern and a northern summit, — and every body loses their senses except Vajra, Jāvaḍa and his wife. At the direction of Vajra the Yaksha **Kapardin** takes the *vajra* into his hand threatening the Asura with it, and the former **Kapardin** escapes affrighted to the bank of the (*nandra*?) sea, where he assumes another name in **Chandraprabhāsakshetra**<sup>76</sup> (254).

Then Vajra will institute the new temple service (to 259). Jāvaḍa and his wife mount to the summit of the temple to erect the banner,<sup>77</sup> and he praises his destiny, by which he is successful in his arduous task, in which Vajrasvāmin had acted as his teacher, and in consequence of whose injunction, Kapardin had assisted him. From their very advanced age both husband and wife are so overwhelmed with joy at this event that their hearts break. The **Vyantara** gods immediately take up the two bodies and throw them into the sea of milk. Then **Chakresvari** (s. 177, 180) approaches their son **Jājanāga**, who is waiting with the congregation, and informs them of what has happened, consoling them in suitable words. **Jājanāga** worshipping the Jinas upon Raivata and other mountains, and erecting *chaityas* everywhere, in every way follows the paternal example. — The decease of Jāvaḍa will take place at the end of the 108th year of **Vikramāditya** (280).

<sup>75</sup> For the first part of of these comp. Panchat. III. 12.

<sup>76</sup> According to v. 89, this Chandraprabhāsam is in the neighbourhood of Śatrunjaya, so that the demon was not exorcised to any great distance. Possibly Chandraprabhāsa is nothing else but Prabhāsakshetram (see *Mahābh.* iii. 5909), as *Somanātha* is called. The subject here then may be a struggle between Śaivism and Jainism in Gujārat, until the latter was aided from Takashāsilā.

<sup>77</sup> Conf. *Prabandachintāmani*, tr. by C. H. Tawney, p. 135, and note. — J. B.



"After some time will have elapsed, the Bauddhas, by their wisdom influencing the princes, and difficult to be conquered by opponents, will gain the ascendancy, put aside all other systems, and, introducing their own doctrine into the world, will annihilate all *tīrthas* (Jaina sanctuaries)" (282).

"Then *Dhaneśvara* arose, the moon of the lunar race, the wise teacher, endowed with the qualities of the gods,<sup>75</sup> and instructing *Silāditya*, the lord of the town of *Vallabhi*, in the purifying Jaina teaching, causes him to expel the Bauddhas from the country and to erect a multitude of *chaityas* at the various *tīrthas*.—*Silāditya* who brings the law to a fresh bloom, lives 477 years after *Vikramārka*" (286).

Now the prophecy of *Vira* ought strictly to conclude here, since he could not well give information about things occurring after the time of the author. In spite of this, as far as v. 324, many indications follow which are certainly historical . . . in v. 200, 1,914 years after *Vira* and mentioned, and consequently 967 years after *Silāditya* and *Dhaneśvara*, and in v. 305, still 86 years are added?<sup>76</sup> . . . .

"But afterwards *Kumārāpāla*, *Bāhaḍa*, *Vastupāla*vid (?) will be the first in battle, and mighty in this system of doctrine (287). Then the princes will be *Mlecchhas*, their ministers covetous, the people deviating from their customs and endeavouring to cheat each other" (288) . . . .

As far as v. 312, very particular details follow about a king *Kalkin* (and his son *Datta*) . . . . After *Vira*'s death 1,914 years, on the 8th of *Chaitra*, about the *vishṭi* time, there will be (born) in *Pāṭaliputra*, a *Mlecchha* son, called by the names—*Kalkin*, *Chaturvaktra*, *Rudra* (? *Rudra*). Then in *Mathurā*, both the temples of *Muśalin* (*Balarātna*) and of *Kṛṣṇa* will fall in, like an old tree torn down by a storm. The seven plagues<sup>77</sup>—fear, loss of smell and taste, death, discord between princes, innumerable inauspicious omens,—will occur. That *Kalkin* will become king at the end of the 36th year and will cause the golden *stūpa* of king *Nanda* to be dug up. Greedy of treasure, he will dig through the whole town (*Pāṭaliputra*), and will obtain great riches, whereby a *Lagnadevi*, stone cow, will be found to torment the *Munis*, so that many of them will leave the city. *Kalkin*, angrily persecuting the *Jina* *Rishis*, will be forcibly opposed by the town-divinities. Then a rain of 17 days will inundate the city. *Kalkin*, the sage *Prātipada*, and many other believers (*saṅgha*) and unbelievers (*lokaḥ*), will save themselves, but others will be carried away by the flood. Then *Kalkine* by means of the *Nanda* treasure, will rebuild the city, and prosperity will prevail for fifty years. Near his end, however, the evil *Kalkin* will fall upon the *Jains* by means of heretical ——— (?) *Prātipada* the sage, and many believers will have to undergo great sufferings. *Sakra*, himself, trembling on his seat will assume the form of a *vipra* (*Brāhmaṇ*), in order to convert him: but as *Kalkin* does not yield, in spite of all admonitions, he will be killed by *Sakra*, after the completion of the 86th year of his life. His son and successor *Datta*, instructed by *Sakra* himself in the *Jina* doctrine, will erect many *Arhat-chaityas* under the direction of *Prātipada*, and also make pilgrimages to *Satrunjaya*. In the whole *trikhaṇḍa* (probably "all the three *dvīpas*") in the *Bharata* (*varsha*) in town and village, in hamlets and market towns, in mountain and valley, in *Aryan* and non-*Aryan* countries, king *Datta* will cause *Jaina* temples to be erected and will always follow the direction of the *Guru*, careful to harm none. Then also prosperity and abundance will rule everywhere, princes enjoy awe, ministers will be benevolent, and the people observe the law.

Thus the *Jina* religion will uninterruptedly prevail<sup>81</sup> until the end of the *Pañchamārka* (313). But further, in the *Duḥṣamā* the people will entirely abandon the law (*dharma*), will live but short

<sup>75</sup> The poet is not at all shy of decking himself out as much as possible.

<sup>76</sup> I have omitted portions of Prof. Weber's remarks here, as being now rather out of date. — J. B.

<sup>77</sup> See Böhtlingk-Roth under *thi*, where only six plagues are given from *Parāmāra*.

<sup>81</sup> According to this does the *Pañchamārka* include about 2,000 years? It begins (v. 101) 3½ years after *Vira*'s death; now *Kalkin* is born 1,914 years after *Vira*'s decease; to this add 86 years of his own life, making exactly 2,000. Thus only 3½ years remain for *Datta* during the *pañchamārka*.



lives, will be consumed by diseases, and oppressed by taxes. The kings will be covetous, thievish, and cowardly, the women will be immoral, and the villages like cemeteries. Shamelessly and pitilessly will the people insult teachers and the gods, and will sink lower and lower. The last good ones (persons) during the *Duḥṣhamā* in the *Bhārata* (*varsha*) will be the teacher (*āchārya*) *Duḥprasaha*, the female teacher (*sūdevī*) *Phalguśrī*, the pious (*śrāvakā*) *Nāgila*, the pious (*śrāvikā*) *Satyakri*, the king *Vimalavāhana*, the minister *Sumukha*. Under the direction of *Duḥprasaha*, king *Vimalavāhana* will also undertake a pilgrimage to the *vihāra* *Vimalādri*. Then people will be only two hands high, and will live only 20 years; the clouds will only do their duty here and there, but mostly not at all. *Duḥprasaha* will spend 12 years at home, 8 years in *vrata*, and will lastly exercise the law by the eighth meal (? by eating only the 8th meal or once in 4 days: see *aṣṭamakālīka*, *Manu*, vi. 19).

In succession — on the forenoon, business; at noon, royal duty; and afternoon, fire will cease (to be alimeted?).

Thus the *duḥṣhamā* will last 21,000 years. The same measure will hold for the time of the *ekānta duḥṣhamā*, when men will shamelessly dwell in caves and will eat fish (324).

The *Satruñjaya* also will then be only seven hands high, and will reach its former height only in the *Utsarpinī* period (325). Exaggerated praises of it are then annexed (to 335).

"Having thus raised the nectar of perception over the creatures, *Vira* became silent (336) and descended from the top of *Vimalāsaila* (339): his listeners also dispersed themselves to their respective abodes."

The conclusion consists of four verses in which the poet boasts of his work, asks forbearance for errors that may have crept into it, and for uncanonical data (*utsutram*), craves the protection of *Ādijina* for it; again glorifies himself as its author, humiliator of the *Saṅgata* (Buddhists), moon of the ocean of the lunar race; and *Śilāditya* as the ornamental jewel of the *Yāduvaṇśa*. Lastly, he desires continued duration for his work so long as the good law of the *Jainas*, extending emancipation to humanity, watches upon earth, and sun and moon rise to dispel obscurity.

## \* NOTES ON THE SPIRIT BASIS OF BELIEF AND CUSTOM.

BY SIR J. M. CAMPBELL, K.C.I.E., I.C.S.

(Continued from p. 200.)

### SECLUSION.

Two widespread laws or practices, Seclusion and Ceremonial Purification, seem to find their explanation and origin in the belief in evil influences, of which belief the dread of the Evil Eye is the strongest and most lasting illustration. The practices both of Seclusion and of Ceremonial Purification have the twofold object (a) of guarding, and (b) of guarding against the person to whom the practice is applied. Of (b), that is, of the need of protection from the person to whom the rule of seclusion is applied, the dread of the glance of the newly awakened, of which details have been given in the preceding Note on the Evil Eye, is an example. During the spirit-haunted hours of darkness, the sleeper is apt to be invaded by nightmares, dreams and other evil spirits. When the sleeper awakes the night spirits gather in his eyes, and pass along his waking glance into the first object on which his glance falls. To prevent this spreading of evil influences the half-awake Hindu and Indian Moslim is careful to let his first glance fall on some guardian substance, gold, silver or iron, into which the evil guests in his eyes pass and are prisoned. Should his waking glance fall on a man, the man on whom the glance falls



will sicken. So in the eighteenth century the half-awake Scottish Highlander said in Gaelic:—"Let God bless my eye and my eye will bless all I see. I shall bless my neighbours and my neighbours will bless me."<sup>52</sup> Similarly in parts of Scotland (1690), a man who on waking looked at his cow and praised her fatness ran the risk of causing her destruction.<sup>53</sup> Persons who under these or other conditions become sources of evil influence have to be guarded against: in the interest of their neighbours. Such persons should be secluded. Of (a), the guarding of the person to whom the rule of Seclusion is applied, an example occurs in the care taken to eat food in private in order to save the eater from the risk of strange glances. Again, the belief that in a crowd evil influences abound makes it advisable that persons susceptible to evil influences should be secluded.<sup>54</sup> The widespread feeling against infants, women and sovereigns appearing in public is an example of this rule. Among the tribes of the White Nile who dread the blast of the envious eye, those who have a beautiful child or a fine horse or camel expose them as little as possible to the outsider's gaze.<sup>55</sup> Plutarch says:—"A Greek mother is afraid to let the father gaze at his child for fear the child is fascinated."<sup>56</sup> Fathers are apt to harm their infants not only by their gaze of affection, but by coming home spirit-laden from mixing in crowds and passing road-meetings and other spots where spirits gather. The avoiding of this spirit-laden risk by making the father stay at home and keep quiet seems the origin of the practice known as the *couvade*, that is, the lying-in father.

The care taken in many countries to guard the sovereign from the glances of the crowd is illustrated by the sixteenth century Mexican practice of drawing a felt screen in front of the king when he dined.<sup>57</sup> In Dahomey in Central Africa, when the king dines, the commoners turn their backs.<sup>58</sup>

If the ruler has to be secluded from evil glances still more should the Guardian or object of worship be secluded. In India, the *Pārl* and the Jain ministrant secludes the sacred Fire or Saint from the evil influence of his breath by wearing a cloth over his mouth. When a Hindu worships his house gods he closes his eyes and holds his left hand in front of his closed eyes. In saluting a saint the Egyptian Moslim holds his hand in front of his face like an open book.<sup>59</sup> Among the Romans the sacrificer veiled his face with his robe:<sup>60</sup> and the singers of sacred hymns veiled their faces.<sup>61</sup> Of later European tribes the Longobards shot backwards at the holy skin.<sup>62</sup> In the sixteenth century, the Peruvians covered their eyes when adoring sacred objects. And, in sacrificing, the Peruvian priest kept his eyes on the ground and his back turned to the god.<sup>63</sup> As the Hindu worshipper, the Roman sacrificer, and the Peruvian priest turned their eyes from the object of worship, so among many tribes the women serve the men with averted faces. The Dahoman wife averts her head when she gives her husband food or drink.<sup>64</sup> Mexican women turned their backs on the men when they gave the men drink.<sup>65</sup> Among many Hindu women to veil and turn away the face is a sign of respect. In fifteenth century England, when a witch was arraigned, she went with her back towards the judge. The judge had to make many crosses when the witch came near the bar.<sup>66</sup>

Of the special occasions on which seclusion is enforced — partly to prevent the person secluded causing harm, partly to prevent the person secluded receiving harm — the seasons of birth,

<sup>52</sup> Guthrie's *Old Scottish Customs*, p. 196.

<sup>53</sup> Dalrymple's *Darker Superstitions of Scotland*.

<sup>54</sup> The Classic Greeks and Romans were impressed with the risk of possession which attended mixing in a crowd. Heliodorus, Bishop of Thraee (A. D. 380), treats the subject at length. Compare Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 33.

<sup>55</sup> Bergboff in *Pall Mall Gazette*, 1st May 1899.

<sup>56</sup> Dalrymple's *Darker Superstitions of Scotland*, p. 14.

<sup>57</sup> Spencer's *Descriptive Sociology*, Vol. II. p. 32.

<sup>58</sup> Burton's *Dahomey*, Vol. I. p. 245.

<sup>59</sup> *Arabian Society in the Middle Ages*, p. 71.

<sup>60</sup> Ramsay's *Roman Antiquities*, p. 341.

<sup>61</sup> Pater's *Marius*, Vol. I. p. 11.

<sup>62</sup> Grimm's *Teutonic Mythology*, Vol. III. p. 1117.

<sup>63</sup> *Descriptive Sociology*, Vol. II. p. 25.

<sup>64</sup> Burton's *Dahomey*, Vol. II. p. 43.

<sup>65</sup> *Descriptive Sociology*, Vol. II. p. 34.

<sup>66</sup> Reginald Scott, *Discovery of Witchcraft*, p. 23.



coming of age, and mourning are the most marked. The seclusion of the mother and child after a birth may be mainly with the object of guarding the mother and child. At the same time the enforcing of purifying rites after birth implies the belief that only after purification can the secluded mother return to her ordinary duties without the risk of harming others. The seclusion on coming of age, especially the seclusion of a girl reaching womanhood, though generally considered to be enforced for the girl's protection, is, at least among the earlier tribes, as the Kolosh or American Eskimo, in great measure the result of the dread that if she is not secluded the spirits that haunt the girl may take possession of others.<sup>67</sup>

The rules of seclusion connected with marriage may seem a part of the distrust created by the favourite practice of marriage by capture. Thus among North-Indian Moslems the bride is hid from the bridegroom and his relations before the marriage.<sup>68</sup> Among the Nerfooreans of New Guinea and among the Zulus of South-East Africa, between betrothal and marriage, the bride and her relations avoid the sight of the bridegroom.<sup>69</sup> These practices may be traceable to suspicion aroused by marriage by capture. Still that some of the seclusion rules observed before and after marriage are not connected with hostility caused by marriage by capture appears from the other Nerfoorean practice that for four days after marriage the husband must leave his wife's chamber before daybreak.<sup>70</sup> This Cupid-Psyche rule is widespread,<sup>71</sup> as is natural in a practice based on two such important experiences as the spirit-laden state of the wakening eye and the blasting power of the sweet gaze or glance of affection.

The seclusion of mourners may seem too suitable to call for or to justify special explanation. Still death and mourning is so leading a spirit season and the rites that mark the condition of mourners are so important and so minute that it seems difficult to suppose that the object of the seclusion of mourners is not, like the object of other mourning ceremonies, to avoid evil influences, partly on behalf of the mourner, partly on behalf of others. The mourner wants special care, since mourners are liable to hysteria and other seizures, that is, in early thought, to possession. Therefore the mourner should not go into a crowd or along streets or near graveyards or other places where spirits gather. Therefore the mourner should stay at home. Nor should the mourner receive visitors, since visitors are likely to be spirit-laden. That in the interest of others, the mourner should be secluded follows from the belief that mourners are haunted by the spirit of the dead or by other spirits which gather at seasons of death and mourning. If mourners mix with others evil influences may pass along their glance into those they meet. Therefore, in the interest of others not less than in their own interest, mourners should be secluded.

The importance attached to the rule of seclusion suggests that the original use of veils, masks and curtains is as shelters from evil glances. The women of Turkestan wear dark thick veils of horse-hair.<sup>72</sup> According to Mr. Elworthy,<sup>73</sup> the eastern practice of veiling women cannot be solely due to male jealousy. The women's reluctance to uncover shows the true reason (that is, a fear of the evil-laden public gaze). So the New Caledonian girl, when she reaches womanhood, binds a fringe of shell and bones across her eyes to prevent sorcerers harming her.<sup>74</sup> The European bride wears a long full veil as her position of honour makes her admired and envied and, therefore, specially open to the assault of evil influences. The mask is worn partly to guard the wearer from evil influences, partly to coax the mask spirit into the wearer. When he performs a religious dance, the American Eskimo wears an eyeless mask. The object of the eyeless mask is to seclude the mask-spirit who enters the dancer. For so fierce is the spirit that if the mask had an eye the spirit darting through the eye would blast the onlookers.<sup>75</sup> That the object of **Temple Curtains** and of **Bed Curtains** is to keep off evil influences is in agreement with the practice of the Jews of Tunis who hide their male infants behind a curtain.<sup>76</sup>

(To be continued.)

<sup>67</sup> Compare Reclus' *Primitive Folk*, p. 64.

<sup>68</sup> *St. James's Budget*, Jan. 8th, 1887, p. 16.

<sup>69</sup> Instances of the rule are given in Lubbock's *History of Civilisation*, p. 81.

<sup>70</sup> Schuler's *Turkestan*, Vol. I. p. 124.

<sup>71</sup> *Journal Anthropological Society*, Vol. II. pp. 206, 207.

<sup>72</sup> Elworthy, *The Evil Eye*, p. 462.

<sup>68</sup> *Indian Antiquary*, Vol. X. p. 43.

<sup>69</sup> *Op. cit.*, loc. cit.

<sup>70</sup> *The Evil Eye*, p. 429.

<sup>71</sup> Compare Reclus, *Primitive Folk*, p. 91.



A COMPLETE VERBAL CROSS-INDEX TO YULE'S HOBSON-JOBSON  
OR GLOSSARY OF ANGLO-INDIAN WORDS.

BY CHARLES PARTRIDGE, M. A.

(Continued from p. 254.)

- Burma; *s. v.* 100, ii, twice, 768, ii, *s. v.* Bear-tree, 58, i, *s. v.* Beriberi, 66, ii, twice, *s. v.* Capelan, 121, ii, *s. v.* Commissioner, Chief, 184, i, *s. v.* Coomry, 194, ii, *s. v.* Crow-pheasant, 214, i, *s. v.* Dammer, 228, ii, *s. v.* Dow, 251, i, *s. v.* Earth-oil, 258, ii, *s. v.* Flowered-Silver, 271, i, twice, *s. v.* Ganza, 278, i, *s. v.* Geeko, 279, ii, *s. v.* Jhoom, 351, ii, *s. v.* Kulá, 378, ii, *s. v.* Laos, 385, i, *s. v.* Madura, 408, i, *s. v.* Mandalay, 420, i, *s. v.* Mergui, 434, i, *s. v.* Nirvána, 480, ii, *s. v.* Non-regulation, 481, ii, *s. v.* Panthay, 510, i (twice) and ii, (A), 511, i, twice, *s. v.* Parabyke, 512, i, *s. v.* Parsee, 516, i, *s. v.* Polo, 544, ii, *s. v.* Poongee, 547, i, *s. v.* Pra, 551, i, 3 times, *s. v.* Rangoon, 574, i, *s. v.* Salwen, 595, ii, *s. v.* Seemul, 610, ii, *s. v.* Shao, 622, i (twice) and ii, *s. v.* Shikhó, 627, i, *s. v.* Talaing, 677, i, *s. v.* Tamarind, 680, ii, *s. v.* Tavoy, 687, ii, *s. v.* Tical, 699, i and ii, *s. v.* Upper Roger, 732, ii, *s. v.* Viss, 739, i, 3 times, *s. v.* Wood-oil, 741, ii, *s. v.* Zillah, 749, ii, *s. v.* Caréns, 772, ii, *s. v.* Caryota, 773, ii, *s. v.* Chobwa, 778, ii, *s. v.* Lotoo, 819, ii, *s. v.* Munneepore, 826, ii, *s. v.* Musk-Rat, 827, ii; ann. 1541: *s. v.* Abada, 1, i; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Mandarin, 421, ii; ann. 1763: *s. v.* Munneepore, 827, i; ann. 1855: *s. v.* Pra, 551, ii, *s. v.* Munneepore, 827, ii; ann. 1879: *s. v.* Butler, 102, ii, *s. v.* Gym-Khana, 310, i; ann. 1880: *s. v.* Beriberi, 67, i.
- Burmah; *s. v.* Burma, 100, ii; ann. 1763: *s. v.* Munneepore, 827, i, twice; ann. 1793: *s. v.* Burma, 101, i, *s. v.* Munneepore, 827, i.
- Burmahs; ann. 1763: *s. v.* Negrais, 829, ii; ann. 1835: *s. v.* Polo, 544, ii.
- Burman; *s. v.* Dagon, 226, ii; ann. 1759: *s. v.* Caréns, 773, i; ann. 1795: *s. v.* Cassay, 131, i; ann. 1827: *s. v.* Munneepore, 827, ii, twice; ann. 1855: *s. v.* Kulá, 378, ii, twice, *s. v.* Munneepore, 827, ii; ann. 1882: *s. v.* Shikhó, 627, i.
- Burman-Chinese; ann. 1876: *s. v.* Cash, 129, i.
- Burmas; ann. 1755: *s. v.* Baloon, 40, i.
- Burmese; *s. v.* Burma, 100, ii, twice, 101, i, *s. v.* Gong, 295, ii; ann. 1759: *s. v.* Burma, 101, i.
- Burnai; *s. v.* Borneo, 80, ii.
- Burné; *s. v.* Borneo, 80, ii.
- Burnea; ann. 1614: *s. v.* Borneo, 81, i.
- Burra-Beebe; *s. v.* 101, i.
- Burra chokey; ann. 1772: *s. v.* Choky (b), 158, ii.
- Burrah-bibiship; ann. 1848: *s. v.* Burra-Beebe, 101, i.
- Burra-khana; *s. v.* 101, ii.
- Burrampooter; *s. v.* 101, ii, 768, ii, *s. v.* Jeanye, 350, ii, 4 times, 351, i; ann. 1793: *s. v.* 101, ii, 102, i.
- Burra-Sahib; *s. v.* 101, ii.
- Burra tomacha; ann. 1840: *s. v.* Tumasha, 717, i.
- Burrawa; ann. 1816: *s. v.* Tiff, To, 701, i.
- Burrel; *s. v.* 102, i.
- Burro Beebe; ann. 1807: *s. v.* Burra-Beebe, 101, i.
- Bursatti; ann. 1880: *s. v.* Bursautee (b), 102, i.
- Bursautee; *s. v.* 102, i.
- Burtukān; *s. v.* Orange, 491, i.
- Burung-dewata; 72, i, footnote.
- Bus; *s. v.* 102, i, *s. v.* Caravan, 124, i; ann. 1853: *s. v.* 102, i.
- Busbudgia; ann. 1757: *s. v.* Budge-Budge, 768, i.
- Buserook; ann. 1672: *s. v.* Budgrook, 92, ii.
- Bushire; *s. v.* 102, i, *s. v.* Factory, 264, i, *s. v.* Jask, 345, ii, *s. v.* Reshire, 847, ii.
- Bussar; ann. 1638: *s. v.* Bazaar, 57, i.
- Bussera; ann. 1683: *s. v.* Congo-bunder, 783, i.
- Bussoro; ann. 1747: *s. v.* Bussora, 769, i.
- Bussora; *s. v.* 768, ii, *s. v.* Vaccination, 733, i; ann. 1786: *s. v.* Overland, 495, ii; ann. 1813: *s. v.* Hummaul, 327, ii.
- Bussorah; *s. v.* Factory, 264, i.
- Bustard; *s. v.* Florican, 270, ii; ann. 250: *s. v.* Adjutant, 4, ii; ann. 1807: *s. v.* Florican, 270, ii; ann. 1824: *s. v.* Florican, 271, i; ann. 1850: *s. v.* Chickore, 149, i; ann. 1862: *s. v.* Florican, 271, i, twice.
- Bustee; *s. v.* 102, i.
- Bustū; ann. 1350: *s. v.* Cowry, 209, i (twice) and ii.



- Butea frondosa*; *s. v.* Dhawk, 241, ii.  
*Butgeri*; *s. v.* Buxerry, 104, ii.  
*Butgeros*; *s. v.* Buxerry, 104, ii.  
*Butias*; ann. 1819: *s. v.* Bish, 78, i.  
*Butica*; *s. v.* Boutique, 82, i, twice; ann. 1554:  
*s. v.* Boutique, 82, i; ann. 1567: *s. v.* Boticeer,  
 81, ii.  
*Butkadah*; *s. v.* Pagoda, 500, i.  
*But-kadah*; *s. v.* Pagoda, 498, ii, 499, i, 3 times.  
*Butler*; *s. v.* 102, ii, *s. v.* Compradore, 188, ii;  
 ann. 1555: *s. v.* Horse-keeper, 324, ii; ann.  
 1616, 1689, 1782 and 1789: *s. v.* 102, ii;  
 ann. 1810: *s. v.* Consumah, 191, i; ann.  
 1878 and 1879: *s. v.* 102, ii.  
*Butler-English*; *s. v.* 102, ii.  
*Butler English*; *s. v.* Pigeon English, 536, ii.  
*Butler-Konnah-Sircar*; ann. 1810: *s. v.* Compradore, 189, i.  
*Butta*; ann. 1753: *s. v.* Buddha, 767, ii.  
*Butteca*; ann. 1742: *s. v.* Boutique, 82, i.  
*Butteekh*; *s. v.* Pateca, 518, ii.  
*Butty wood*; ann. 1762: *s. v.* Cowry, 210, i.  
*Bwart*; *s. v.* Compound, 187, i.  
*Buwa*; 573, i, footnote.  
*Buwa-zangi*; *s. v.* Coco-de-Mer, 177, i.  
*Buweih*; *s. v.* Bendameer, 62, i.  
*Buxar*; *s. v.* Buxerry, 769, i.  
*Buxarries*; ann. 1850: *s. v.* Buxerry, 105, i.  
*Buxary*; ann. 1755: *s. v.* Buxerry, 769, i.  
*Buxee*; *s. v.* 102, ii, 103, ii, 769, i, *s. v.* Gyclong,  
 309, ii; ann. 1697: *s. v.* Hubble-bubble, 326, i.  
*Buxees*; *s. v.* Bucksheesh, 89, ii; ann. 1810:  
*s. v.* Bucksheesh, 89, ii; ann. 1853: *s. v.*  
 Bucksheesh, 90, i.  
*Buxeiro*; *s. v.* Buxerry, 104, ii.  
*Buxerriés*; ann. 1761: *s. v.* Buxerry, 104, ii.  
*Buxerry*; *s. v.* 104, ii, 769, i; ann. 1748 and  
 [misprint for Buxaries] 1755: *s. v.* 104, ii,  
 769, i; ann. 1761 (twice) and 1788: *s. v.* 104, ii;  
 ann. 1794: *s. v.* Burkundauze, 100, ii.  
*Buxery*; ann. 1749 and 1755: *s. v.* Buxerry,  
 769, i.  
*Buxey*; ann. 1753 and 1763: *s. v.* Buxee, 104,  
 i; ann. 1766: *s. v.* Buxee, 769, i.  
*Buxey Connah*; ann. 1766: *s. v.* Buxee,  
 69, i.  
*Buxi*; ann. 1701: *s. v.* Buxee, 104, i; ann.  
 1702: *s. v.* Shoe of Gold, 628, ii; ann. 1760:  
*s. v.* Bucksheesh, 89, ii.  
*Buxis*; ann. 1759: *s. v.* Bucksheesh, 767, i.  
*Buxo*; *s. v.* Buxerry, 104, ii.  
*Buxshi*; ann. 1861: *s. v.* Buxee, 104, ii.  
*Buxy*; ann. 1616: *s. v.* Firmaun, 270, i; ann.  
 1615: *s. v.* Buxee, 104, i; ann. 1753: *s. v.*  
 Chuttanatty, 780, ii; ann. 1756: *s. v.* Buxee,  
 104, i.  
*Buxy-ship*; ann. 1756: *s. v.* Buxee, 104, i.  
*Bay-em-dear*; ann. 1836: *s. v.* Bayadère,  
 763, ii.  
*Buyukdereh*; *s. v.* Cheenar, 143, i.  
*Buzar*; *s. v.* Sayer, 604, i.  
*Buzio*; ann. 1586: *s. v.* Cowry, 209, ii.  
*Buzurg*; *s. v.* Budgrook, 92, ii; ann. 1720-30:  
*s. v.* Budgrook, 93, i, twice.  
*Buzurg*; *s. v.* Budgrook, 92, ii.  
*Buzzar*; ann. 1672: *s. v.* Bazaar, 57, i; ann.  
 1673: *s. v.* Madras, 407, ii.  
*Buzzard*; ann. 1780: *s. v.* Florican, 270, ii.  
*Byde Horse*; *s. v.* 105, i, twice, 769, ii; ann.  
 1785: *s. v.* 105, i.  
*Bygarry*; ann. 1800: *s. v.* Begar, 61, i.  
*Byin*; *s. v.* Shinbin, 627, i.  
*Bylee*; ann. 1813: *s. v.* Hackery, 311, i.  
*Byndamyr*; ann. 1475: *s. v.* Bendameer, 62, ii.  
*Byoharā*; *s. v.* Bora, 79, ii.  
*Byohariyā*; *s. v.* Bora, 79, ii.  
*Byopāri*; *s. v.* Bayparree, 763, ii.  
*Byram*; ann. 1615: *s. v.* Beiramee, 61, ii, *s. v.*  
 Corge, 197, i; ann. 1813: *s. v.* Beiramee, 61, ii.  
*Byramee*; *s. v.* Beiramee, 61, i.  
*Byrampaut*; *s. v.* Beiramee, 61, i, *s. v.* Piece-  
 goods, 535, ii; ann. 1750-60: *s. v.* Shalee,  
 620, i.  
*Byte Koal*; ann. 1785: *s. v.* Dhaw, 243, ii.  
*Byza*; ann. 1568: *s. v.* Viss, 739, i.  
*Byzantine*; *s. v.* Apricot, 24, i, *s. v.* Daroga,  
 788, ii.  
*Byzantium*; *s. v.* Chicane, 145, ii, 146, i, 147, i,  
*s. v.* Umbrella, 725, i.  
*Byze*; ann. 1568: *s. v.* Viss, 739, i.

## C

- Caahiete*; ann. 1615: *s. v.* Coffee, 179, ii.  
*Caba*; ann. 1689: *s. v.* Cabaya, 106, i.  
*Cabaia*; ann. 1598: *s. v.* Cabaya, 105, ii.  
*Çabaio*; *s. v.* Sabaio, 851, ii; ann. 1510: *s. v.*  
 Sabaio, 852, i.  
*Cabay*; ann. 1760: *s. v.* Turban, 719, ii.  
*Cabaya*; *s. v.* 105, ii, *s. v.* Shanbaff, 623, ii;  
 ann. 1540, 1552, 1554 and 1572 (twice): *s. v.*  
 105, ii.  
*Cābaya*; *s. v.* Comboy, 183, ii.



- Cabaye; ann. 1610 and 1645: *s. v.* Cabaya, 105, ii.  
 Çataym Hydalcay; ann. 1516: *s. v.* Sabao, 852, i.  
 Cabeça; ann. 1716: *s. v.* Nabób (a), 467, ii.  
 Caberdar; ann. 1665: *s. v.* Kubberdaur, 378, i.  
 Cabie; ann. 1585: *s. v.* Cabaya, 105, ii.  
 Cabob; *s. v.* 106, i, 769, ii; ann. 1673 and 1689: *s. v.* 106, i.  
 Cabol; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Cabul, 106, ii.  
 Cabook; *s. v.* 106, i, 769, ii, *s. v.* Laterite, 390, i; ann. 1884: *s. v.* 106, i, 769, ii; ann. 1860: *s. v.* 106, ii, *s. v.* Laterite, 390, ii.  
 Cabool; *s. v.* Cabul, 106, ii.  
 Cābūl; *s. v.* Cabul, 106, ii.  
 Caboque; ann. 1617: *s. v.* Satsuma, 602, ii.  
 Cabos negros; *s. v.* Gomuti, 295, i.  
 Cabouco; *s. v.* Cabook, 106, i.  
 Caboul; ann. 1665: *s. v.* Chebuli, 142, ii, *s. v.* Afghan, 754, ii; ann. 1676: *s. v.* Afghān, 5, i.  
 Cabo-Verde; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Moluccas, 441, i.  
 Cabul; *s. v.* 106, ii, *s. v.* Chebuli, 142, ii; ann. 1594: *s. v.* Souba, 649, ii; ann. 1754: *s. v.* Yaboo, 744, i; ann. 1793: *s. v.* Hindoo Koosh, 316, i; ann. 1842: *s. v.* Ayah, 31, ii; ann. 1856: *s. v.* 106, ii.  
 Cābūl; *s. v.* Cabul, 106, ii.  
 Cabuly; ann. 1665: *s. v.* Chebuli, 142, ii.  
 Caçabe; ann. 1536: *s. v.* Salsette (a), 594, ii; ann. 1538: *s. v.* Supāra, 663, ii; ann. 1548: *s. v.* Cusbah, 219, ii; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Parell, 513, i.  
 Cacalacca; *s. v.* Cockroach, 175, i.  
 Caca-laccas; ann. 1631: *s. v.* Cockroach, 175, i.  
 Caçanares; ann. 1606: *s. v.* Cassanar, 130, ii.  
 Cacandar; *s. v.* Ganda, 799, ii, twice.  
 Caçaneira; ann. 1606: *s. v.* Cassanar, 130, ii.  
 Cacao bean; *s. v.* Numerical Affixes, 832, i.  
 Cacao-pods; *s. v.* Numerical Affixes, 832, i.  
 Cacaroeh; ann. 1577: *s. v.* Cockroach, 781, i.  
 Cacatoris; ann. 1705: *s. v.* Lory, 398, ii.  
 Caccabis; *s. v.* Chickore, 149, i.  
 Caccabis chukor; *s. v.* Chickore, 148, ii.  
 Cacha; ann. 1617: *s. v.* Catechu, 133, ii; ann. 1644: *s. v.* Chunk, 141, i.  
 Cachan-fu; ann. 1545: *s. v.* Tea, 689, ii.  
 Cachar; *s. v.* Polo, 544, ii, *s. v.* Munneepore, 826, ii, 3 times, 827, i; ann. 1854: *s. v.* Eaglewood, 258, ii.  
 Cache; ann. 1615: *s. v.* Cutch, 222, i.  
 Cachemire; ann. 1760: *s. v.* Shawl, 624, ii; ann. 1832: *s. v.* Cholera, 159, i.  
 Cachh; ann. 1590: *s. v.* Arab, 24, ii.  
 Cachi; ann. 1440: *s. v.* Jack, 337, ii.  
 Cachi; ann. 1440: *s. v.* Jack, 337, ii.  
 Cachmir; ann. 1665: *s. v.* Shawl, 624, i.  
 Cacho; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Laos, 385, ii; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Catechu, 133, ii.  
 Cachô; ann. 1516: *s. v.* Catechu, 133, ii.  
 Cachoonda; ann. 1760: *s. v.* Catechu, 133, ii.  
 Casis; ann. 1538: *s. v.* Casis, 130, i, twice; ann. 1539: *s. v.* Ujungtanah, 725, i; ann. 1580 and 1582: *s. v.* Casis, 130, ii.  
 Caciz; *s. v.* Casis, 130, i; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Casis, 130, ii; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Lār (c), 386, ii; ann. 1567 and 1688: *s. v.* Casis, 130, ii.  
 Cacizius; *s. v.* Casis, 130, i.  
 Cackerlakke; ann. 1775: *s. v.* Cockroach, 175, i.  
 Cacollā ceguer; ann. 1563: *s. v.* Cacouli, 107, i.  
 Cacollā quebir; ann. 1563: *s. v.* Cacouli, 107, i.  
 Çacor; ann. 1190: *s. v.* Chickore, 149, i.  
 Cacouli; *s. v.* 106, ii, twice, 769, ii.  
 Cactus; *s. v.* Custard-Apple, 221, i; ann. 1824: *s. v.* Babool, 33, i.  
 Cactus Indica; *s. v.* Prickly-pear, 553, ii.  
 Cacullā; ann. 1563: *s. v.* Cacouli, 107, i.  
 Caddie; ann. 1682: *s. v.* Naib, 470, i.  
 Caddy; *s. v.* 107, i, *s. v.* Tea-caddy, 692, i; ann. 1792: *s. v.* 107, i.  
 Cadegi Hindi; ann. 1690: *s. v.* Malabathrum, 415, i.  
 Cadet; ann. 1648: *s. v.* Cot, 205, i.  
 Cadès; ann. 1461: *s. v.* Cazee, 137, i.  
 Cadet; *s. v.* 107, i, 3 times; ann. 1763, 1769 and 1781 (twice): *s. v.* 107, i; ann. 1853: *s. v.* Griffin, 303, i.  
 Cadet Barrack; *s. v.* Cadet, 107, i.  
 Cadi; *s. v.* Cazee, 136, ii; ann. 1650: *s. v.* Shabunder, 618, ii; ann. 1673, 1763 and 1824: *s. v.* Cazee, 137, i.  
 Çadi; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Lack, 382, i (3 times) and ii.  
 Cadij; ann. 1590: *s. v.* Talisman, 679, ii.  
 Cadileseheri; ann. 1590: *s. v.* Talisman, 679, ii.  
 Cadini; ann. 1338: *s. v.* Cazee, 136, ii, *s. v.* Talisman, 679, ii.  
 Cadira; ann. 1624: *s. v.* Jogee, 352, ii.  
 Cadjan; *s. v.* 107, i, *s. v.* Ollah, 485, i; ann. 1727 and 1809: *s. v.* (a), 107, ii; ann. 1827: *s. v.* Cornum, 786, ii; ann. 1839: *s. v.* (b), 107, ii; ann. 1860: *s. v.* (a), 107, ii.  
 Cadjang; ann. 1680: *s. v.* Cadjan (a), 107, ii.  
 Cadjee; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Cazee, 137, i.  
 Cadjowa; *s. v.* 769, ii.  
 Cadju; *s. v.* Cashew, 129, i.



- Cadungaloor; ann. 1570: *s. v.* Cranganore, 211, ii.
- Cael; *s. v.* 107, ii, see 413, i, footnote; ann. 1298: *s. v.* Betel, 67, ii; ann. 1516: *s. v.* 108, i.
- Caell; ann. 1498: *s. v.* Cael, 108, i.
- Cæsalpinia; *s. v.* Brazil-wood, 86, i.
- Cæsalpinia pulcherrima; *s. v.* Gold Mohur Flower, 293, ii.
- Caesalpinia sappan; *s. v.* Sappan-wood, 600, i.
- Caesalpinia sepiaria; *s. v.* Mysore Thorn, 467, i.
- Café; ann. 1558: *s. v.* Coffee, 179, i.
- Cafari; *s. v.* Ananas, 18, i.
- Cafaros; ann. 1616: *s. v.* Firinghee, 269, ii.
- Caffaloes; ann. 1630: *s. v.* Caffa, 109, i.
- Caffer; *s. v.* 108, i, 770, i, *s. v.* Cafiristan, 109, ii, *s. v.* Pegu, 525, i; ann. 1404: *s. v.* 770, i, ann. 1799: *s. v.* 109, i.
- Caffer's fruit; ann. 1726: *s. v.* Rambotang, 573, i.
- Caffettino; ann. 1843: *s. v.* Sugar, 655, ii, 4 times.
- Caffila; ann. 1638: *s. v.* Vanjārās, 88, ii; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Caffa, 109, i.
- Caffre; *s. v.* Caffer, 108, i, twice, *s. v.* Sura, 663, ii; ann. 1514: *s. v.* Nicobar Islands, 478, ii; ann. 1563 and 1572: *s. v.* Caffer, 108, ii; ann. 1781: *s. v.* Majoon, 411, i; ann. 1800: *s. v.* Caffer, 109, i.
- Caffree; ann. 1814: *s. v.* Seedy, 610, ii.
- Caffro; ann. 1614: *s. v.* Caffer, 108, ii.
- Caffila; *s. v.* 109, i, 770, i, *s. v.* Julibdar, 357, ii; ann. 1552 and 1598: *s. v.* 109, i; ann. 1613: *s. v.* Macareo, 403, ii; ann. 1623 and 1672: *s. v.* 770, i.
- Caffila; ann. 1596: *s. v.* Chetty, 145, i, *s. v.* Caffa, 109, i.
- Cafir; *s. v.* Caffer, 108, i.
- Cafiristan; *s. v.* 109, ii.
- Cafre; ann. 1552, 1572, 1582 and 1610: *s. v.* Caffer, 108, ii; ann. 1615: *s. v.* Pyke (b), 567, ii; ann. 1616: *s. v.* Firinghee, 269, ii.
- Cafstan; ann. 1572: *s. v.* Cabaya, 105, ii.
- Cafura; *s. v.* Camphor, 116, ii.
- Caga; ann. 1821: *s. v.* Gogo, 293, i.
- Cagiu; ann. 1672: *s. v.* Cashew, 129, i.
- Cagni; ann. 1796: *s. v.* Congee, 190, ii, twice.
- Çagus; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Sago, 590, i.
- Cahar; ann. 1810: *s. v.* Kuhár, 378, i.
- Cahila; ann. 1444: *s. v.* Cael, 108, i.
- Cahoa; ann. 1610: *s. v.* Coffee, 179, ii.
- Cahua; 178, ii, footnote, *s. v.* Cuddy, 215, ii; ann. 1628: *s. v.* Coffee, 179, ii.
- Cahue; *s. v.* Cacouli, 106, ii; ann. 1615: *s. v.* Coffee, 179, ii.
- Cahute; *s. v.* Cuddy, 215, ii.
- Caibo; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Batta (b), 55, ii.
- Cail; ann. 1298: *s. v.* Cela, 108, i.
- Caille; ann. 1508: *s. v.* Aljofar, 755, ii.
- Cailpatnam; ann. 1672: *s. v.* Taticoria, 721, i.
- Caimãe; ann. 1566: *s. v.* Caimal, 770, ii.
- Caimai; ann. 1606 and 1634: *s. v.* Caimal, 770, ii.
- Caimal; *s. v.* 770, ii; ann. 1504 (3 times), 1566 and 1606: *s. v.* 770, ii.
- Caiman; ann. 1539, 1598 and 1672: *s. v.* Cayman, 136, i.
- Cain; *s. v.* India, 330, i, twice.
- Caique; *s. v.* 109, ii.
- Caire; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Giraffe, 289, ii, *s. v.* Porcelain, 549, ii.
- Cairena; ann. 1535: *s. v.* Pergunnah, 539, i.
- Cairo (n. p.); *s. v.* Chicane, 146, ii, *s. v.* Coffee, 179, i, *s. v.* Shabunder, 618, i; ann. 1271: *s. v.* Giraffe, 289, ii; ann. 1298: *s. v.* Sugar, 655, ii; ann. 1336: *s. v.* Giraffe, 289, ii; ann. 1343: *s. v.* Sugar, 655, ii; ann. 1498: *s. v.* Tenasserim, 696, i; ann. 1504-5: *s. v.* Pardao, 838, i, 840, ii; ann. 1520: *s. v.* Doombur, 792, ii; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Caleefa, 112, ii; ann. 1580: *s. v.* Adam's Apple, 3, ii; ann. 1835: *s. v.* Deloll, 235, ii; ann. 1837: *s. v.* Shabunder, 619, i; ann. 1877: *s. v.* Malabar, 412, ii.
- Cairo (s.); *s. v.* Coir, 180, i; ann. 1510, 1553, 1563 and 1610: *s. v.* Coir, 180, ii; ann. 1690: *s. v.* Coir, 181, i.
- Cairo, Grand; ann. 1538: *s. v.* Pelir, 523, ii; ann. 1541: *s. v.* Peking, 526, i; ann. 1781: *s. v.* Overland, 495, ii.
- Cair-yarn; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Coir, 181, i.
- Cais; ann. 1625: *s. v.* Jam, 810, i, twice.
- Çais; ann. 1853: *s. v.* Syce, 673, ii.
- Caisse; *s. v.* Cash, 128, i.
- Caia; ann. 1578: *s. v.* Cashew, 129, i.
- Caixa; *s. v.* Cash, 128, i, twice; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Jeetul, 349, ii, twice; ann. 1598: *s. v.* Cash, 128, ii.
- Caixem; ann. 1538: *s. v.* Kishm, 370, i.
- Cajan; *s. v.* 109, ii, twice, *s. v.* Calavance, 110, ii; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Cadjan (a), 107, ii, twice; ann. 1707 and 1716: *s. v.* Cadjan (b), 107, ii; ann. 1719: *s. v.* Gentoo (b), 281, ii; ann. 1860: *s. v.* Bandy, 44, ii.
- Cajanus Indicus; *s. v.* Dhall, 241, ii.



- Cajanus indicus; *s. v.* Cajan, 109, ii.  
 Cajava; ann. 1645: *s. v.* Cadjowa, 769, ii, twice.  
 Cajéput; *s. v.* 109, ii.  
 Cajoo; ann. 1875: *s. v.* Cashew, 129, ii.  
 Cajori; ann. 1753: *s. v.* Kedgere, 812, ii, twice.  
 Cajus; ann. 1598: *s. v.* Cashew, 129, i.  
 Caksen; *s. v.* 110, i.  
 Calaat; ann. 1676: *s. v.* Killut, 368, ii.  
 Calabash; ann. 1862: *s. v.* Tom-tom, 708, ii.  
 Calabashes; ann. 1738: *s. v.* Brinjaul, 87, i.  
 Calabria; *s. v.* Caravel, 124, ii.  
 Calafate; *s. v.* Calputtee, 114, i.  
 Calafattare; *s. v.* Calputtee, 114, i.  
 Calaffates; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Calputtee, 114, i.  
 Calais; ann. 1583: *s. v.* Tavoy, 687, ii.  
 Calaim; *s. v.* Calay, 111, i, twice; ann. 1606:  
*s. v.* Calay, 111, ii; ann. 1614: *s. v.* Quedda,  
 568, i.  
 Calain; ann. 1583: *s. v.* Tavoy, 687, ii; ann.  
 1646: *s. v.* Calay, 111, ii.  
 Calaluz; *s. v.* 110, i; ann. 1525: *s. v.* 110, i,  
*s. v.* Manchua, 420, i; ann. 1539 and 1552:  
*s. v.* 110, i.  
 Calamander; 156, i, footnote; ann. 1834: *s. v.*  
 Calamander Wood, 110, i.  
 Calamander tree; ann. 1825: *s. v.* Calamander  
 Wood, 110, i.  
 Calamander Wood; *s. v.* 110, i, 770, ii.  
 Calamba; ann. 1613: *s. v.* Calambac, 110, ii.  
 Calambaa; ann. 1539: *s. v.* Battas, 55, ii, *s. v.*  
 Calambac, 110, ii.  
 Calambac; *s. v.* 110, i, 770, ii.  
 Calambac; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Calambac, 110, ii.  
 Calambuco; ann. 1551: *s. v.* Calambac, 110, ii;  
 ann. 1554: *s. v.* Mace (b), 405, i.  
 Calamente; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Diul-Sind, 247, ii.  
 Calaminder; ann. 1777: *s. v.* Calamander Wood,  
 770, ii.  
 Calaminder wood; ann. 1813: *s. v.* Calamander  
 Wood, 110, i.  
 Calamine; ann. 1797: *s. v.* Tootnague, 711, i.  
 Calaminham; ann. 1541: *s. v.* Abada, 1, i, twice,  
*s. v.* Peking, 526, i.  
 Calaminth; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Toolsy, 710, i.  
 Calamja; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Mangelin, 423, i, twice.  
 Calamus; *s. v.* Rattan, 574, i and ii.  
 Calamus rotang zalacca; ann. 1768-71: *s. v.*  
 Salak, 852, ii.  
 Calamute; ann. 1612: *s. v.* Gallevat (b), 276, ii.  
 Calandrella brachydactyla; *s. v.* Ortolan, 493, ii.  
 Calangari; *s. v.* Pateca, 519, i.  
 Calapa; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Sunda, 659, ii.  
 Calappus marinus; ann. 1680: *s. v.* Coco-de-  
 Mer, 178, i.  
 Calara; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Diul-Sind, 247, ii.  
 Calash; *s. v.* 770, ii, twice; ann. 1702: *s. v.*  
 Presidency, 553, i, twice, *s. v.* 771, i, twice.  
 Calash-top; *s. v.* Buggy, 94, ii.  
 Calata; *s. v.* Killadar, 814, ii.  
 Calatafimi; *s. v.* Killadar, 814, ii.  
 Calavance; *s. v.* 110, ii, twice, *s. v.* Cajan, 109,  
 ii, *s. v.* Gram, 800, ii; ann. 1719: *s. v.* 110, ii.  
 Calay; *s. v.* 111, i, *s. v.* Galle, Point de, 275, i,  
 see 569, ii, footnote, *s. v.* Tootnague, 711, i;  
 ann. 1583: *s. v.* Tavoy, 687, ii; ann. 1610:  
*s. v.* Budgrook, 92, ii; ann. 1614: *s. v.*  
 Quedda, 568, i.  
 Calayata; ann. 1527: *s. v.* Curia Muria, 217, i.  
 Calayn; ann. 1610: *s. v.* Calay, 111, ii.  
 Calbet; ann. 1404: *s. v.* Caluat, 771, i.  
 Calcatix; ann. 1328: *s. v.* Crocodile, 213, ii.  
 Calcatix; 213, ii, footnote.  
 Calcedonie; ann. 1506: *s. v.* Cambay, 115, i.  
 Calcula; *s. v.* Calcutta, 771, i; ann. 1726: *s. v.*  
 Achánock, 2, ii.  
 Calcuta; *s. v.* Calcutta, 771, i.  
 Calcutta; *s. v.* 111, ii, 771, i, twice, *s. v.* Achánock,  
 2, ii, *s. v.* Adjutant, 4, ii, *s. v.* Anile, 22, i, twice,  
*s. v.* Apollo Bunder, 23, ii, *s. v.* Bankshall, 46,  
 i, *s. v.* Banyan (1) b, 48, i, *s. v.* Barrackpore,  
 53, i, *s. v.* Bearer, 58, i, *s. v.* Beer, 59, ii, *s. v.*  
 Bhikty, 70, i, *s. v.* Black, 74, i, twice, *s. v.*  
 Burdwan, 100, i, *s. v.* Bustee, 102, i, *s. v.* Buxee,  
 103, ii, *s. v.* Chackur, 139, ii, *s. v.* Chander-  
 nagore, 140, ii, *s. v.* Chinsura, 154, ii, *s. v.*  
 Chowringhee, 165, i, *s. v.* Churruck Poojah,  
 169, ii, *s. v.* Chuttanatty, 170, i, 5 times,  
*s. v.* Cockup, 175, i, *s. v.* Coco-de-Mer, 177, i,  
*s. v.* Consumah, 190, ii, *s. v.* Cowry, 208, ii, *s. v.*  
 Cranche, 211, i, *s. v.* Cranny, 212, i, *s. v.*  
 Cuttanee, 224, i, *s. v.* Dam, 227, ii, *s. v.* Ditch,  
 246, ii, *s. v.* Doorga pooja, 250, ii, *s. v.*  
 Dubash, 252, ii, *s. v.* Dumdum, 254, ii, twice,  
*s. v.* Durwaun, 256, ii, *s. v.* Factory, 264, ii,  
*s. v.* Gardens, 278, ii, *s. v.* Gour (c), 298,  
 ii, *s. v.* Hoogly, 321, ii, twice, *s. v.* Hooka,  
 322, ii, *s. v.* Hulwa, 327, i, *s. v.* Hurcarra,  
 327, ii, *s. v.* Jackal, 338, ii, *s. v.* James  
 and Mary, 342, ii, *s. v.* Jaun, 346, i, *s. v.*  
 Jennye, 350, ii, *s. v.* Jutka, 362, ii, see 362,  
 ii, footnote, *s. v.* Kedgere, 364, ii, *s. v.*  
 Mahratta Ditch, 410, i, twice, *s. v.* Mango-fish,  
 424, ii, *s. v.* Mofussil, 435, ii, twice, *s. v.*  
 Monkey-bread Tree, 441, ii, twice, *s. v.* Mort-



- de-Chien, 451, ii, *s. v.* Mosquito, 453, i, *s. v.* Mugg, 455, ii, *s. v.* Nuddeea Rivera, 482, ii, *s. v.* Palankeen, 502, ii, *s. v.* Pepper, 529, i, *s. v.* Pergunnahs, 530, i, twice, *s. v.* Polo, 544, ii, see 558, i, footnote, *s. v.* Putchock, 564, ii, 3 times, *s. v.* Rum-johnny (a), 584, ii, *s. v.* Rupee, 586, ii, *s. v.* Ryot, 588, i, *s. v.* Saligram, 593, i, *s. v.* Sayer, 605, i, 3 times *s. v.* Seer, 611, i, *s. v.* Shan, 623, i, *s. v.* Sudder (a), 653, ii, *s. v.* Sudder Court, 653, ii, twice, *s. v.* Sunderbunds, 660, i, *s. v.* Tahseeldar, 676, i, *s. v.* Tamarind-fish, 681, i, *s. v.* Achánock (1), 752, i, *s. v.* Adawlut, 752, ii, 753, i, 754, i, *s. v.* Bayparree, 763, ii, *s. v.* Budge-Budge, 767, ii, 768, i, *s. v.* Chandernagore, 776, ii, *s. v.* Chinsura, 778, i, *s. v.* Counsillee, 785, i, *s. v.* Dengue, 789, i, twice, *s. v.* Devil's Reach, 790, ii, *s. v.* Diamond Harbour, 791, ii, *s. v.* Kidderpore, 814, i, *s. v.* Kuttaur, 815, ii, see 828, i, footnote, *s. v.* Satigam, 854, i, *s. v.* Vizier, 866, i; ann. 1666: *s. v.* Banyan (1), 48, ii, ann. 1680: *s. v.* Bungalow, 768, i; ann. 1698: *s. v.* 111, ii, *s. v.* Zemindar, 748, i; ann. 1716: *s. v.* Dustuck, 257, ii; ann. 1727: *s. v.* 112, i, *s. v.* Suttee, 670, i and ii; ann. 1742: *s. v.* 112, i; ann. 1750-52: *s. v.* Turkey, 720, ii; ann. 1751: *s. v.* Muxadabad, 463, ii, *s. v.* Sayer, 854, ii; ann. 1752: *s. v.* Verdure, 738, i; ann. 1753: *s. v.* Harry, 313, i, *s. v.* Chuttanatty, 780, ii, twice; ann. 1754: *s. v.* Harry, 313, i, *s. v.* Pariah-Arrack, 515, ii; ann. 1755: *s. v.* Tom-tom, 708, ii; ann. 1757: *s. v.* Covenanted Servants, 207, ii, *s. v.* Mahratta Ditch, 821, ii; ann. 1759: *s. v.* Bulgar, 96, i, *s. v.* Caffer, 108, ii, *s. v.* Cheroot, 144, ii, *s. v.* Kittysol, 371, ii, *s. v.* Molly, 440, i; ann. 1760: *s. v.* Xerafine, 744, i, twice; ann. 1762: *s. v.* Zemindar, 868, i; ann. 1763: *s. v.* Beegah, 59, i; ann. 1765: *s. v.* Cutcherry, 223, ii, *s. v.* Shaster, 624, i; ann. 1768: *s. v.* Coltery (s.), 182, i; ann. 1771: *s. v.* Dawk, 232, i; ann. 1776: *s. v.* Respondentia, 577, i, *s. v.* Zemindar, 748, ii; ann. 1778: *s. v.* Zemindar, 748, ii, *s. v.* Slave, 856, ii; ann. 1780: *s. v.* Banyan (1) b, 49, i; ann. 1781: *s. v.* Banyan (2), 49, ii, *s. v.* Caffer, 108, ii, *s. v.* Doria, 251, i, *s. v.* Hanger, 312, ii, *s. v.* Manjee, 427, i, *s. v.* Sikh, 633, i; ann. 1782: *s. v.* Bandel, 760, ii, *s. v.* Bheesty, 765, i, *s. v.* Black Town, 766, i, *s. v.* Daye, 788, ii; ann. 1784: *s. v.* Budgerow, 92, i, *s. v.* Corge, 197, ii; ann. 1786: *s. v.* Banyan (1) b, 49, i, *s. v.* Cowry, 210, i, *s. v.* Sunderbunds, 661, i, ann. 1793: *s. v.* Cazee, 776, i; ann. 1794: *s. v.* Kunkur, 379, i; ann. 1795: *s. v.* Meeana, 432, ii; ann. 1796: *s. v.* Dawk, 232, i and ii; ann. 1799: *s. v.* Mustees, 828, i; ann. 1804: *s. v.* Palankeen, 504, i; ann. 1809: *s. v.* Jungle, 359, i; ann. 1810: *s. v.* Banyan (1) b, 49, ii, *s. v.* Bocha, 76, ii, twice, *s. v.* Dhow, 243, ii, *s. v.* Garry, 279, i, *s. v.* Kitmutgar, 371, i, *s. v.* Chowringhee, 779, ii; ann. 1811: *s. v.* Boliah, 76, ii, *s. v.* Soorky, 648, i; ann. 1825: *s. v.* Cantonment, 121, ii; ann. 1827: *s. v.* Ticca, 706, i; ann. 1830: *s. v.* Qui-hi, 568, i; ann. 1833: *s. v.* Sicca, 638, i, twice; ann. 1845-6: *s. v.* Sikh, 633, ii; ann. 1848: *s. v.* Achánock, 2, ii, *s. v.* Bandanna, 43, i, *s. v.* Chowringhee, 779, ii; ann. 1850: *s. v.* Buxerry, 165, i; ann. 1851: *s. v.* Martaban, 429, i; ann. 1862: *s. v.* Putchock, 565, i; ann. 1863: *s. v.* Shaitan, 619, ii; ann. 1872: *s. v.* Mahratta Ditch, 410, i; ann. 1875: *s. v.* Bafta, 35, ii, *s. v.* Bandanna, 43, ii; ann. 1876: *s. v.* Black Act, 74, ii, *s. v.* Tussah, 721, i; ann. 1878: *s. v.* Bayparree, 763, ii, 3 times; ann. 1880: *s. v.* Jackal, 339, i, *s. v.* Patcharée, 518, i; ann. 1883: *s. v.* Dessaye, 237, i, *s. v.* Naga, 469, ii; ann. 1885: *s. v.* Talook, 861, i.
- Calcutta, De; ann. 1697 and 1698: *s. v.* Zemindar 748, i.
- Calcutta Course; *s. v.* Respondentia, 577, i.
- Calcutta hen; ann. 1750-52: *s. v.* Turkey, 720, ii.
- Calcutta hump; *s. v.* Hump, 327, ii.
- Caldes'd; ann. 1674: *s. v.* Chouse, 164, ii.
- Cáile; *s. v.* Panicale, 510, i.
- Calèche; *s. v.* Calash, 770, ii.
- Calechut; ann. 1502: *s. v.* Porcelain, 549, i.
- Calcut; 64, i, footnote; ann. 1343: *s. v.* Maldives, 418, i; ann. 1475: *s. v.* Calicut, 113, ii; ann. 1498: *s. v.* Benjamin, 65, ii, *s. v.* Cael, 108, i, *s. v.* Cranganore, 211, ii, *s. v.* Moor, 446, i, *s. v.* Pegu, 525, i; ann. 1500: *s. v.* Capucat, 772, ii; ann. 1501: *s. v.* Factor, 263, i, twice; ann. 1503: *s. v.* Amuck, 756, ii; ann. 1510: *s. v.* Capucat, 122, i, *s. v.* Narsinga, 474, i; ann. 1516: *s. v.* Ollah, 485, i; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Malabar, 412, ii, *s. v.* Zamorin, 745, ii; ann. 1563: *s. v.* Betel, 67, ii, *s. v.* Moor, 446, i, *s. v.* Saffron, 589, ii, *s. v.* Zamorin, 745, ii; ann. 1572: *s. v.* Calicut, 113, ii, twice, *s. v.* Cannanore, 121, i, twice; ann. 1579: *s. v.*



- Calico, 113, i; ann. 1602: *s. v.* Malabar (A), 413, i; ann. 1608 and 1673 (twice): *s. v.* Calico, 113, i; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Beypoor, 68, ii, *s. v.* Opium, 489, ii, *s. v.* Tara, 862, i.  
 Calcutt; ann. 1627: *s. v.* Calico, 113, i.  
 Calcutta; ann. 1782: *s. v.* Calcutta, 112, i.  
 Calcuttische; *s. v.* Turkey, 720, i.  
 Calcuttische Hahn; *s. v.* Calico, 113, i, *s. v.* Turkey, 719, ii.  
 Calcuttisch hun; ann. 1627: *s. v.* Turkey, 720, i.  
 Caledonia, New; ann. 1885: *s. v.* Dengue, 789, ii.  
 Caleefa; *s. v.* 112, i, *s. v.* Maistry, 410, ii.  
 Calceoon; *s. v.* 112, ii.  
 Calefacere; *s. v.* Calputtee, 114, i.  
 Calcluz; ann. 1613: *s. v.* Calaluz, 110, i.  
 Calcm; ann. 1552 and 1613: *s. v.* Calay, 111, ii.  
 Calcm; ann. 1513 and 1552: *s. v.* Salaam, 592, i; ann. 1563: *s. v.* Melique Verido, 823, i; ann. 1611: *s. v.* Salaam, 592, i.  
 Calcm; ann. 1570: *s. v.* Sappan-wood, 600, i.  
 Calcm; ann. 1590: *s. v.* Zirbad, 750, i.  
 Calcm; ann. 1516: *s. v.* Calambac, 110, ii.  
 Calfader; ann. 1620: *s. v.* Calputtee, 114, i.  
 Calfadeur; ann. 1620: *s. v.* Calputtee, 114, i.  
 Cali; ann. 1795: *s. v.* Pali, 505, ii.  
 Calicut; ann. 1505: *s. v.* Japan, 344, i, twice.  
 Calico; *s. v.* 112, ii, *s. v.* Bafta, 35, i, *s. v.* Calamander Wood, 110, i, *s. v.* Comboy, 183, ii, *s. v.* Gingham, 287, ii, *s. v.* Long-cloth, 395, ii, *s. v.* Madapollam, 406, ii, *s. v.* Myrobalan, 465, ii, see 535, i, footnote, twice, *s. v.* Piece-goods, 535, ii; ann. 1592 (7 times), 1602, 1604 and 1612: *s. v.* 113, i; ann. 1616: *s. v.* Canaut, 118, ii; ann. 1622: *s. v.* Dhoty, 243, i; ann. 1670: *s. v.* Long-cloth, 819, ii; ann. 1707: *s. v.* 113, i; ann. 1725: *s. v.* Chintz, 155, ii; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Xerafine, 743, ii; ann. 1812: *s. v.* 113, ii; ann. 1883: *s. v.* Bafta, 35, ii.  
 Calicoe; *s. v.* Calico, 112, ii; ann. 1627: *s. v.* Calico, 113, i.  
 Calicot; *s. v.* Calico, 112, ii.  
 Calicud; ann. 1627: *s. v.* Calico, 113, i.  
 Calicut; *s. v.* 113, ii, *s. v.* Calico, 112, ii, 3 times, 113, i, *s. v.* Capucat, 122, i, *s. v.* Caste, 131, ii, *s. v.* Catur, 135, i, *s. v.* Factory, 264, i, *s. v.* Fanám, 265, ii, *s. v.* Moor, 445, ii, *s. v.* Myrobalan, 465, ii, *s. v.* Ollah, 485, i, *s. v.* Pudipatan, 556, ii, *s. v.* Turkey, 719, ii, 270, i, twice, *s. v.* Zamorin, 745, i, *s. v.* Amuck, 756, ii, *s. v.* Tanor, 861, i, *s. v.* Tara, 861, ii, *s. v.* Topaz, 863, ii; ann. 1330: *s. v.* Sindabur, 635, i; ann. 1343: *s. v.* Quilon, 570, i, *s. v.* Shalee, 620, i, *s. v.* Zamorin, 745, ii; ann. 1442: *s. v.* Cael, 108, i, *s. v.* 113, ii, *s. v.* Malabar, 412, ii, *s. v.* Pandarāni, 508, ii, *s. v.* Zamorin, 745, ii; ann. 1498: *s. v.* Bengal, 64, ii, *s. v.* Capel, 121, ii, *s. v.* Ceylon, 139, i, *s. v.* Sambook, 595, ii, *s. v.* Sarnau, 601, ii, *s. v.* Sumatra, 658, i, *s. v.* Topee, 713, i, *s. v.* Xerafine, 743, i, *s. v.* Zamorin, 745, ii; ann. 1500: *s. v.* Capucat, 772, ii; ann. 1503: *s. v.* Amuck, 756, ii; ann. 1505: *s. v.* Myrobalan, 466, ii; ann. 1510: *s. v.* Cash, 128, ii, *s. v.* Nair, 471, i, *s. v.* Pandarāni, 509, i, *s. v.* Prow, 555, i, *s. v.* Quilon, 570, i, *s. v.* Shanbaff, 623, ii, *s. v.* Tank, 684, ii, *s. v.* Zamorin, 745, ii; ann. 1516: *s. v.* Calambac, 110, ii, *s. v.* Chalia, 139, ii, *s. v.* Country, 206, ii, *s. v.* Cranganore, 211, ii, *s. v.* Eagle-wood, 258, ii, *s. v.* Pudipatan, 557, i, *s. v.* Tanga, 682, ii, *s. v.* Zamorin, 745, ii, *s. v.* Zedoary, 747, ii, *s. v.* Tanor, 861, i; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Doney, 249, ii, *s. v.* Moluccas, 441, i; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Jam, 810, i, twice; ann. 1562: *s. v.* Capucat, 122, ii; ann. 1570: *s. v.* Chalia, 139, ii; ann. 1582: *s. v.* Nair, 471, i; ann. 1591: *s. v.* Calico, 113, i; ann. 1616: *s. v.* Zamorin, 745, ii; ann. 1665: *s. v.* Bafta, 35, ii; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Calico, 113, i, *s. v.* Palempore, 505, i, *s. v.* Tara, 862, i, twice; ann. 1676: *s. v.* Chintz, 155, ii, *s. v.* Turban, 719, ii; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Betel, 68, i; ann. 1750-52: *s. v.* Turkey, 720, ii; ann. 1794: *s. v.* Covid, 207, ii.  
 Calif; ann. 1298: *s. v.* Caleefa, 112, ii.  
 Califa; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Caleefa, 112, ii.  
 Calife; ann. 1253: *s. v.* Caleefa, 112, i.  
 California; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Borneo, 81, i.  
 Calimere; *s. v.* Coromandel, 198, i.  
 Calin; *s. v.* Calay, 111, i, twice, *s. v.* Tootnagne, 711, i; ann. 1610 and 1770: *s. v.* Calay, 111, ii; ann. 1780: *s. v.* Calay, 111, ii, *s. v.* Tootnagne, 711, i; ann. 1794-5: *s. v.* Calay, 111, ii.  
 Calinga; *s. v.* Kling, 815, i; ann. 60-70: *s. v.* Kling, 373, i, 4 times.  
 Calington; ann. 60-70: *s. v.* Kling, 373, i; ann. 70: *s. v.* Dravidian, 251, ii.  
 Calingula; *s. v.* 113, ii.  
 Caliph; *s. v.* Ameer, 11, ii, *s. v.* Caleefa, 112, i, *s. v.* Dawk, 231, ii, *s. v.* Dewaun, 239, i, *s. v.* Gudge, 307, i, *s. v.* Imaum, 328, ii, *s. v.* Maramut, 427, ii, *s. v.* Omrah, 486, i; ann.



- 1300: *s. v.* Punkah (b), 563, ii; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Sheeah, 625, i; ann. 1760: *s. v.* Caleefa, 112, ii.
- Caliphate; *s. v.* Imanum, 328, ii, *s. v.* Sheeah, 624, ii; ann. 636: *s. v.* Dewaun, 239, ii, 240, i; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Sheeah, 625, i.
- Caliphship; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Imaum, 329, i.
- Callamback; ann. 1618: *s. v.* Calambac, 110, ii, 770, ii.
- Callamedu; ann. 1753: *s. v.* Coleroon, 781, ii.
- Callawapores; *s. v.* Piece-goods, 535, ii.
- Callaym; ann. 1644: *s. v.* Tootnague, 711, i.
- Callery; *s. v.* Coltery, 182, i.
- Calceous; ann. 1823: *s. v.* Calceoon, 112, ii.
- Callian; ann. 545: *s. v.* Sūrath, 665, ii.
- Callianee; ann. 1825: *s. v.* Calyan, 114, ii.
- Callianpoor; ann. 1780: *s. v.* Bacanore, 34, i.
- Callico; *s. v.* Calico, 112, ii; ann. 1602: *s. v.* Kling, 373, ii; ann. 1604 (twice) and 1605: *s. v.* Calico, 113, i; ann. 1612: *s. v.* Bafta, 35, ii, *s. v.* Corge, 197, i; ann. 1616: *s. v.* Calico, 113, i, *s. v.* Calicut, 113, ii; ann. 1627: *s. v.* Cómaty, 183, ii; ann. 1630: *s. v.* Porcelain, 549, ii; ann. 1696: *s. v.* Bengal, 65, i; ann. 1711: *s. v.* Long-drawers, 395, ii, *s. v.* Orankay, 492, i, *s. v.* Turban, 719, ii; ann. 1720: *s. v.* Calico, 113, ii; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Mangalore (b), 422, ii; ann. 1785: *s. v.* Piece-goods, 535, ii.
- Callicutts; ann. 1616: *s. v.* Calicut, 113, ii.
- Calligo; ann. 1685: *s. v.* Muslin, 459, ii.
- Callimere; *s. v.* Factory, 264, i.
- Callin; ann. 1610: *s. v.* Budbrook, 92, ii.
- Callipatties; *s. v.* Piece-goods, 535, ii.
- Callivances; ann. 1814: *s. v.* Calavance, 111, i.
- Callvances; ann. 1752: *s. v.* Calavance, 111, i.
- Calmaria; *s. v.* Culnureea, 216, i.
- Calmendar; *s. v.* Calamander Wood, 110, i; ann. 1676: *s. v.* Chintz, 155, ii.
- Calmendār; 156, i, footnote.
- Calmuck; ann. 1871: *s. v.* Sling, 643, i.
- Caloche; *s. v.* Calash, 770, ii.
- Caloete; *s. v.* Caluete, 114, i; ann. 1606: *s. v.* Caluete, 114, ii.
- Calophyllum inophyllum; *s. v.* Poon, 547, i.
- Calotropis procera; *s. v.* Muddār, 454, ii.
- Calou; ann. 1600: *s. v.* Paddy, 496, i.
- Calpentyn; *s. v.* Putlam, 565, ii.
- Calputtee; *s. v.* 114, i.
- Calson; *s. v.* Prjannas, 566, ii.
- Caltagirone; *s. v.* Killadar, 814, ii.
- Caltanissetta; *s. v.* Killadar, 814, ii.
- Caluat; *s. v.* 114, i, 771, i.
- Caluete; *s. v.* 114, i.
- Calumbac; ann. 1631: *s. v.* Mort-de-chien, 450, i.
- Calumba-root; ann. 1850: *s. v.* Columbo Root, 781, ii, twice.
- Calumba root; *s. v.* Columbo Root, 183, i.
- Calumidiriya; *s. v.* Calamander Wood, 110, i.
- Calvar; ann. 1665: *s. v.* Mohwa, 439, ii.
- Calvete; ann. 1582: *s. v.* Caluete, 114, ii.
- Calyan; *s. v.* 114, ii, twice.
- Calyoon; *s. v.* Calceoon, 112, ii.
- Calyptanthus jambolana; *s. v.* Jambon, 342, ii.
- Camacaa; ann. 1375: *s. v.* Kincoab, 369, i.
- Camall; ann. 1350: *s. v.* Cumbly, 216, i, *s. v.* Hummaul, 327, i.
- Camall cloth; ann. 1350: *s. v.* Cumbly, 216, i.
- Camalli; 216, i, footnote.
- Camallos; ann. 1350: *s. v.* Hummaul, 327, i.
- Camallu; *s. v.* Hummaul, 327, i.
- Camara; *s. v.* Cumra, 216, ii; ann. 80-90: *s. v.* Jangar, 343, i.
- Camara del Rey; ann. 1578: *s. v.* Conicopoly, 190, i.
- Camarão; *s. v.* Gombroon, 294, ii.
- Camarij; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Cot, 205, i, *s. v.* Zamorin, 745, ii.
- Camarix; ann. 1598: *s. v.* Carambola, 123, i, twice.
- Camariz; ann. 1563: *s. v.* Carambola, 123, i.
- Camatarra; ann. 1498: *s. v.* Sumatra, 658, i.
- Çamatra; ann. 1526: *s. v.* Sunda, 659, ii; ann. 1542: *s. v.* Pegu, 525, ii.
- Cambaba; ann. 1555: *s. v.* Java, 348, ii.
- Cambaet; ann. 1298: *s. v.* Cambay, 115, i.
- Cambaia; ann. 1535: *s. v.* Camboja, 115, ii, *s. v.* Lanchara, 384, i; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Banyan (1), 48, ii; ann. 1563: *s. v.* Opium, 489, ii, *s. v.* Mogul, The Great, 437, i; ann. 1568: *s. v.* Delhi, 234, ii; ann. 1570: *s. v.* Sunda, 659, ii; ann. 1584: *s. v.* Indigo, 334, i, *s. v.* Koot, 375, ii, *s. v.* Sucket, 652, ii; ann. 1598: *s. v.* India of the Portugese, 333, i; ann. 1613: *s. v.* Sind, 634, ii; ann. 1623: *s. v.* Daman, 228, i.
- Cambaia cloth; ann. 1615: *s. v.* Comboy, 781, ii.
- Cambaicam; ann. 1588: *s. v.* Catur, 135, i.
- Cambaico; ann. 1563: *s. v.* Acheen, 3, ii.
- Cambaiete; ann. 1563: *s. v.* Cuscuss, 787, i.



## CORRESPONDENCE.

## THE DIPAK RÂGA.

TO THE EDITOR OF "THE INDIAN ANTIQUARY."

SIR, — In the *Indian Antiquary*, Vol. XXIX. p. 392, a query is reproduced from *Panjab Notes and Queries*, 1883, regarding the nature of the Dipak Râga. I send you the following notes regarding the characteristics of this and a few other Râgas from the Native point of view, which, I hope, will interest your readers.

There are a few legends about this Râga, which has been wrongly called the 'Lamp Râga.' *Dîpaka* means that which illuminates.

One such story says that the sacred lamps of a certain temple in Mysore, having been extinguished owing to the negligence of the priest to supply them with oil, were suddenly illuminated, when a well-known musician began to sing this Râga.

The *Ain-i-Akbari* relates a story where the Emperor Akbar commanded his chief court-musician, Nâyak Gôpâl, to sing this Râga. "He endeavoured to excuse himself, but in vain; the Emperor insisted on obedience. He therefore requested permission to go home and bid farewell to his family and friends. It was winter when he returned, after an absence of six months. Before he began to sing, he placed himself in the waters of the Jamnâ till they reached his neck. As soon as he had performed a strain or two, the river gradually became hot and at length began to boil so that the agonies of the unhappy musician became unsupportable. Suspending for a moment the melody thus cruelly extorted, he sued for mercy, but sued in vain. Akbar wanted to prove more strongly the power of the Râga. Nâyak Gôpâl renewed the fatal song. Flames burst with violence from his body, and, though immersed in the waters of the Jamnâ, he was consumed to ashes." Such is the fatality attaching in the public mind to this Râga!

It is not clear what meaning is to be attached to the fantastic conceptions in which some of the Râgas are clothed by our ancient musicians. The *Râmâyana* relates a story, where one of the seven daughters of a Rishi (who are figuratively referred to as the seven notes) dropped down dead as soon as a note peculiar to her was sung out of tune by

Hanumân, whose pride of his musical abilities was thus humbled by Râma. Perhaps this is only an allegorical way of insisting on the value of singing in tune.

Varali is a Râga which is not taught directly by the teacher, as such teaching is supposed to make his education incomplete. This has to be learnt from hearing it sung. Sir W. Ouseley in his *Essay on the Music of Hindustan* writes: — "Mia Tousine, a wonderful musician in the time, of King Akbar, sang one of the night-ragas at mid-day; the powers of music were such that it instantly became night, and the darkness extended in a circle round the palace as far as the sound of his voice could be heard."

Ahîri is another Râga which is supposed to have a similar mystic influence. The singer is supposed to go without food for the rest of the day. A certain musician, defying the power of the Râga, betook himself to a public inn where the local Râni herself served the guests with food. As he was about to be served, he burst forth in his extreme joy at the sight of the food, exclaiming that he had, at last, conquered Ahîri. This being the name of his hostess, she felt insulted, disappeared and caused her husband to punish him. But he was set at liberty when he related to him the story of the mysterious influence of the Râga.

Mêgharâjîni is a Râga which is supposed to be capable of drawing forth rain from the clouds, if sung elaborately.

These are all superstitions which have encrusted themselves round the musical science in the course of its gradual development. Perhaps they are only calculated to give an idea (in a more or less esoteric way) of the nature and characteristics of each Râga. The early travails of the pioneers of sciences may contribute to the amusement of the aimless dilettante, but to the real student of history, they are the landmarks of progress through which the sciences have passed.

C. TIRUMALAYYA NAIDU.

"Ganasrama," Triplicane, Madras,

13th January 1901.



## NOTES AND QUERIES.

A SPECIMEN OF MODERN DOMESTIC  
HINDUSTANI.

" . . . . *Sāhib nē bhējā dō tarakkī dō pērū*  
*chār chirid : khānsdmān ke hāth men dēnā? . .*  
Sāhib has sent two turkey cocks and two  
turkey hens, four birds : to be given over to the  
*khānsdmān?*"

Here the English turkey in the guise of tarakkī  
does duty for the cock bird, while the correct  
vernacular *pērū*, meaning precisely the same  
thing, does duty for the hen.

R. C. TEMPLE.

## CORRUPTIONS OF ENGLISH — HANGLING.

My kitchen lately required some repairs to the  
roof, and as these were being delayed I made  
some enquiries from the cook, and received the  
following reply :— *kuchh nahfā hūā* ; hanging  
*abhi nahfā dīdā* : nothing has been done ; the  
angle-iron has not yet come.

R. C. TEMPLE.

## MOTURPHA.

THIS now practically obsolete term still appears  
in the annual budget for the Andaman Islands.  
*E. g.*, in the Revenue items of the Estimate for  
the year 1900-01 is :— "Moturpha (house-tax)  
collections." The old moturpha, moturfa, of  
the Madras Revenue was not a tax on houses but  
on professions and trades. It was abolished  
finally quite thirty years ago. The vernacular  
word is muhtarafa: *Ar. hirfa*, a handicraft.

R. C. TEMPLE.

## BOGUS ANGLO-INDIANISMS.

IN Mr. Pringle's notes to the *Madras Consultations* for 1681, p. 64, occur the following remarks :— "Grall. (general) The clerical mark of abbreviation which in the manuscript crosses the duplicated l seems to have misled the Editor of *Notes and Extracts*, Vol. II., on pages 16, 22, 44, 56 and 62 of which the bogus word gratt will be found." This note is made *à propos* the entry on p. 1 of the *Consultations* :— "At a Consultation, the Journall of the Grall Bookes of Accotts : passed." The word *Generall* or abbreviated *Grall* meant usually a "general letter." Thus: on p. 10 we find "At a Consultation, the Grall: letter to the Company read, some additions made and

signed." On p. 39 :— "At a Consultation, the several books of accounts and registers for July and Gen<sup>l</sup> to Surat and the Honble Comp<sup>y</sup> : were read and passed." On p. 41 :— "A Gen<sup>l</sup> rec<sup>d</sup> from Metchp<sup>m</sup>."

I have since come across another good instance of the manufacture of bogus words. This time in MS., clearly through the ignorance or carelessness of the clerk employed in copying. In a MS. Account of the Andaman Islands 1793, by Lieut. Stokoe (India Office, E. I. C., Home Series, Miscell. 388), there occurs this somewhat remarkable passage :— "The only quadrupeds we have seen are Hogs, Rats and the Johnneumon: the two former commit constant depredations in our garden and granary : the Guinna, a four-footed Animal of the Lizard Tribes, destroys our Poultry, etc."

Here the copyist has misread and mistranscribed the original writer's *Ichneumon* and turned it into *Johnneumon* and also the writer's *Guiana*, a common contemporary form of *Iguana*, and made it into *Guinna*.

R. C. TEMPLE.

## TARRYAR.

IN the existing Madras village the talārī or taliyary has a fixed position. He is the head village watchman whose duty it is to detect offences, guide travellers and so on. He is always a Pariah. In the revenue administration of the province he is also the village peon and assists the village headman in collecting the revenue officially.

1680. — The Peons and Tarryars sent in quest of two soldiers who had deserted from the garrison returned answer that they could not light of them, whereupon the peons were turned out of service, but upon Verona's intercession taken in again and fined each a month's pay and to repay the money paid them for Battee, also the Pedda Naigu was fined in like manner for his Tarryars [the pedda naigu would be the village headman]. — *Mad. Consult. in Notes and Extracts*, p. 3.

R. C. TEMPLE.



## NEW RESEARCHES INTO THE COMPOSITION AND EXEGESIS OF THE QORAN.

BY HARTWIG HIRSCHFELD, PH.D., M.R.A.S.

(Continued from p. 232.)

## CHAPTER X.

## Political Speeches.

CONSEQUENCES of the battle of Badr — Regulations on the distribution of the booty — Revelations on the events of the period — Charges against Jews and Christians — Battle of Uhud — Disposition of conquered property forms an important precedent — Revelations on the Event — Composition of *Sūra* iv.

The defeat of the Qoreish forces at Badr was not only a personal triumph for Muhammed, but also of the greatest importance for the further development of the Moslim Commonwealth. Muhammed's position was improved in every way, yet he did not, as might have been anticipated, break forth into hymns of thanksgiving, or even deliver a triumphant address. It is true that he immediately attributed the victory to Allāh, but it is characteristic that his first address dealt prosaically with the distribution of the spoils.<sup>56</sup> This was, however, due to the force of circumstances, as many believers were thus relieved from extreme poverty and repaid for the sacrifices they had made for the faith before the Hijra. The expedition had been undertaken with a view to acquire wealth, and this having been achieved, other thoughts were, for the moment, banished from the minds of the victors. This is significant for the condition of Islām at that juncture, as it proved that everything was considered lawful which helped to injure or frighten the enemies of the Prophet.

On the other hand it must be admitted that the financial side of the matter had to be settled at once, and perhaps Muhammed did not act entirely in accordance with his own inclinations when taking this in hand first. Many of the conquerors cared much more for a large share in the spoil than for the glory of the faith. Quarrels seemed inevitable. From the opening words of the first speech dealing with the affair, we gather that questions on the subject of the distribution had actually been addressed to Muhammed, who alludes to them in the following words (*Sūra* viii. 1a): "They ask thee about the spoil; say: the spoils are Allāh's and His Messenger's."

This was a most important decision to make. If the spoils remained the property of "Allāh and His Prophet," the latter was free to dispose of them according to his own judgment, and to grant rewards to such persons as he thought proper. The decree was exceedingly statesmanlike, as it not only prevented quarrels, but also created a precedent for lines of conduct in future cases of conquest by Moslims of movable or landed property. Thus the consequences of the battle of Badr form an important factor in the development of Muhammedan law of property.<sup>57</sup>

The chief cause of the Qoreish defeat was the lack of discipline in their army. This seems to have been noticed by Muhammed, who lost no time in calling the attention of the Believers to the duty of strict obedience to Allāh and His Messenger (v. 16-3). He could not refrain from remarking on those Medinians who, in spite of their faith, had refused to join the expedition (v. 5), and blamed those also who were satisfied with making a raid against a caravan, whilst endeavouring to escape a meeting with its armed escort.<sup>58</sup> Such timidity was all the more unexpected, as Allāh had promised to assist the believing corps with a thousand angels (v. 9) to cast dread in the hearts of the infidels (vv. 10-12). At a critical moment during the battle, when Muhammed's sharp eyes detected that the enemy was

<sup>56</sup> See I. I. p. 476. — Muhammed chose the expression أنفال (pl. of نفل) on purpose. The Commentators explain it as a grant from Allāh (عطيته من الله ونفل), see Al Beidhāwi.

<sup>57</sup> See Sachau, *Authentic Quellen des mohammedan Rechts*. Ao. Vienna, 1870, p. 699 sqq.; Yahyā b. Adam, *Kutub Al Kharij*, ed. Juynboll, p. 5.

<sup>58</sup> Wellhausen, *Mohammed in Medina* (Al Vāqidi), p. 77, incorrect.



on the point of retreating, he took up a handful of sand, and threw it at them. The victory must have seemed a real miracle to those who witnessed it, and one of Muhammed's dearest wishes was thus fulfilled. He had been favoured with a miracle! Muhammed had no desire to pass for a great general, and was better served by ascribing the victory to Allāh. The handful of gravel which he had thrown at the enemy<sup>59</sup> would not have decided the skirmish "had Allāh not thrown" (v. 17). It is not difficult to perceive that the superstitious Meccans, discouraged by having lost many of their leaders in single combat, turned their backs on what they feared to be witchcraft. They found themselves once more opposed to the man who, a few years previously, could be insulted with impunity, but who now commanded a well disciplined army (vv. 15-26).

It is but natural that after such a miraculous turn of events Muhammed recalled to his mind the humble and perilous position he and his friends were in before the emigration to Medina. He now took an opportunity of admonishing Believers to be grateful to Allāh, and faithful to His Apostle (v. 26-27). One of his most dangerous enemies, Al Naḍr b. Al Hārith, who had repeatedly ridiculed his tales by imitating him, had been taken prisoner. I believe it was for his and his fellow-captive Oqba b. Moeit's special benefit that Muhammad revealed vv. 30-31: "And when the infidels were crafty with thee to detain thee a prisoner, or to kill thee, or to drive thee forth, they were crafty; but Allāh was crafty too, and Allāh is the best of the crafty. And when our Signs were rehearsed to them, they said: We have heard [it] already; if it pleased us, we could tell the like, *verily these are nothing but old folks' tales.*"<sup>60</sup> — The fate that awaited the two prisoners seems to be predicted in v. 35: "Now taste the punishment for your disbelief."<sup>61</sup> They were executed during the return to Medina.

The next piece (v. 42-46) is the fragment of an address also on the topic of the battle. His first regulation with regard to the spoil Muhammed now amended, so that in future **one fifth should be assigned to the church.**<sup>62</sup> The statement that Allāh had shown the Prophet in a dream before the battle the number of the enemies smaller than it was in reality, was evidently an afterthought. Another speech devoted to the same subject draws lessons for the guidance of believers on future occasions (vv. 47-49), and warns the "Hypocrites" (v. 51), the Jews,<sup>63</sup> and the Meccan army, which Muhammed very effectually compared to Pharaoh and his host (vv. 52-56).

Then follows a short address (vv. 57-70) which, I believe, does not refer to the battle of Badr, but to the expedition against the Banū Qainoqā. These were among the signatories of the treaty which was concluded between Muhammed on one side, and the pagan inhabitants of Medina and the Jews on the other, but a pretext was easily found for charging a section of the latter with having violated the compact (vv. 57-58).<sup>64</sup> The war preparations alluded to in v. 62 cannot refer to the Qoreish, because they were to be made against "unknown infidels," and such who endeavoured to betray the Prophet (v. 64). The enemies Muhammed here had in mind were only to be found in Medina in the ranks of the Jews and those Arabs who, from political motives, assumed outwardly a friendly attitude towards Islām. The stout resistance the Jews offered to all his endeavours to convert them,<sup>65</sup> is portrayed in the same verse: "Didst thou spend all that is on earth, thou couldst not reconcile their hearts, etc." The invitation to the Moslim warriors to fight the Jews is then expressed in a slightly modified reproduction of Lev. xxvi. 8 (v. 67). When the Banū Qainoqā had surrendered, Muhammed intended to have them all massacred (v. 68), but yielding to the demand of Abi

<sup>59</sup> I. I. p. 445 with a curse; Vāqidi, p. 58.

<sup>60</sup> Sprenger, II. p. 390, seems to regard the passage as Meccan, but without reason.

<sup>61</sup> We should expect the Dual, but Muhammed did not address them direct, expressing himself in a more general way.

<sup>62</sup> These verses are referred by some authorities to the expulsion of the Banū Qainoqā (cf. Nöldeke, p. 138), but v. 43 seems to be against it; see also Yahyā b. Adam, p. 3.

<sup>63</sup> "Those in whose hearts is sickness" (v. 51).

<sup>64</sup> A' Beidhāwi wrongly refers the verses to the Banū Koreiza. The phrase *فَأَمَّا تَثَقَّفِ* is reproduced by Ḥassān b. Thābit, p. 6.

<sup>65</sup> Muhammed met them on the market place.



Allah b. Ubeyy, the recognised chief of the Medinian Arabs, whom he did not care to provoke unnecessarily, he merely expelled the vanquished tribe (v. 69),<sup>66</sup> and confiscated their property for the benefit of those who had taken part in the raid (v. 70).

The proceedings which Muhammed had taken against the Banû Qainoqâ were so plainly illegal, that he felt himself compelled to justify them by means of a divine revelation. Their punishment, he explained, was due solely to their treacherous conduct (vv. 71-72). Having thus weakened the hostile forces, the Prophet now took an opportunity of surveying the general situation in Medina, and of criticising the fraternal alliance which had, at his own instigation, been formed immediately after entering Medina between the believing inhabitants of the town and his fellow-fugitives. For some reason, probably in order to be able to deal with the Jews as he thought best, he suddenly dissolved their alliances (v. 74). He apparently felt strong enough also to make a slight distinction between the Medinian citizens and his aristocratic Meccan compatriots.<sup>67</sup>

The first portion of *Sûra* iii. must have been revealed soon after *Sûra* viii. The former statement, that Allâh had shown Muhammed in a dream the enemy to be smaller in number, is now changed into a "Sign" that the Moslim army appeared to the infidels twice its strength.<sup>68</sup> I believe also that a large portion of this *sûra* was delivered chiefly for the benefit of the Jews, or, at least, those **Judæo-Arabs whom Muhammed hoped to win through persuasion.** I would, therefore, date it prior to the expulsion of the Banû Qainoqâ. The leading ideas of the address seem to be that Islâm so nearly approached Judaism that the Jews should feel no scruples in recognising Muhammed as a true prophet. The conspicuous accumulation of formulas of Unification in a small compass (vv. 1,<sup>69</sup> 4, 16 *bis*) with *Huwa* instead of *Allâh*,<sup>70</sup> and with a supplement so familiar to Jewish ears as "the Living and Self-subsistent" is anything but accidental. In the same speech Muhammed mentions the *Tôrâh* (vv. 2, 43, 44, 58) and the Gospel (vv. 2, 43, 58) for the first time. The allusion to Pharaoh and his nation, standing as they do as the prototypes of wicked people, was calculated to resound nowhere more powerfully than in the minds of the Jews. When Muhammed says (v. 17) that in the eyes of Allâh the *Dîn*<sup>71</sup> is Islâm, "and those to whom the Book was given disagreed not until after that there was given to them knowledge," it is clear that he refers to the Rabbinical interpretation of the Law, on the basis of which the Jews used to argue with him (v. 18).<sup>72</sup> The verses 25-26 are rather out of place here, but they are so closely related to Jewish formulas of prayer, that it is not improbable that Muhammed inserted them in this speech intentionally. Whether the censure of the friendly intercourse between Moslems and Jews (v. 27) was originally inserted here, it is difficult to say, as it would have been more in place at the beginning of the open hostilities against the latter.

What was Muhammed's purpose in introducing the stories of the births of John and Jesus in a speech not addressed to Christians (vv. 30-43)? I believe his intention was the same as in the previous sermon, *viz.*, to show that in vital religious questions he stood on the same ground as the Jews, but had authority to "abrogate" part of what had been made unlawful for them (v. 44). "Jesus was a created being like Adam, whilst there is no God beside Allâh"<sup>73</sup> (vv. 52, 55). The pleonastic form of v. 57: "That we (Muhammed and the Jews) serve no other God than Allâh, and associate no one with Him," makes it manifest that Muhammed, when it suited him, was not loth to side with the Jews against Christians. Later on he also found an opportunity of doing the opposite.

<sup>66</sup> The verse is regarded as abrogating the preceding one. Nöldeke refers it to the spoils of the battle of Badr, but I cannot share his opinion.

<sup>67</sup> Nöldeke denies that v. 73 is abrogated by v. 76; cf. ix. 101.

<sup>68</sup> Refers either to viii. 9, 12 or to 45-46. See also الفرقان (iii. 2 and viii. 42); iii. 23 وعَرِّمُ فِي دِينِهِم cf. viii. 51; iii. 47 cf. viii. 30.

<sup>69</sup> V. 1 cf. ii. 256. *الحي* alone xl. 67.

<sup>70</sup> This again v. 55.

<sup>71</sup> See Ch. III. at the end.

<sup>72</sup> From v. 23 it appears that they answered Muhammed's hell fire threats with the Talmudical symbolism that the sojourn of the wicked in Gehenna only lasts twelve months; see *Rish Hash.* fol. 17<sup>ra</sup>.

<sup>73</sup> See xxxvii. 34.



On the basis of the strict monotheistic view common to Moslems and Jews he invites the latter to return to pure Abrahamism (v. 58), which was identical neither with [Rabbinic] Judaism nor with Christianity (v. 60). The purport of verse 65 is not quite clear to me, although the Commentators try to explain it. Whom should the Jews style "Believers" but their own people? The Commentators naturally think of the Moslems, and Muhammed may perhaps have meant that also, but the sentence seems to be the result of a misunderstanding on his part. It is not likely that one section of Jews should have encouraged another to profess the Islamic cult in the morning and to abjure it again in the evening.

"Those who barter away the covenant of Allāh and His faith for a small price" (v. 71) is one of the derogatory appellations given to the Jews by the Prophet. The threat that the persons thus described "shall have no share in the final world"<sup>72</sup> can only have been calculated to impress Jewish hearers, since the phrase is but the Muhammedan adaptation of a well known Rabbinical one. What Muhammed really aimed at in those remarks was an onslaught against the authority of the Rabbinical code, which he represents as claiming equal authority with the "Book." Some Jews, he says, pervert the Book in order to reckon to it what does not belong to it (v. 72). Whether, or not, Muhammed was convinced of this he at any rate wished to convey to the minds of Moslems, that the Jewish Rabbis, by making laws,<sup>73</sup> placed themselves on a level with God (v. 73), and desired to be worshipped. Allāh, however, never commanded men to take angels and prophets as Lords (v. 74). The point of this criticism lies in the terms *Rabbāniyyūn* and *arbāban* which are both to be interpreted as indicating the supremacy of Rabbinism.

It is not difficult to see how Muhammed imbibed the notion that Jews paid their Rabbis greater homage than was due to mortals. Not only was he aware that they performed many rites solely on Rabbinical authority, but he seems to have seen them pray at the supposed graves of Biblical prophets and pious men in general. In a tradition handed down by Al Bokhārī,<sup>74</sup> Muhammed is said to have remarked that Allāh had cursed the Jews because they used the graves of their prophets as places of worship. If this be true, he could not have foreseen to what extent such a custom was destined to prevail in the Moslim world.

Some scholars regard v. 79 as very late,<sup>75</sup> but there is no reason to place it much later than v. 17. Since the words are addressed to the Jews (see v. 81), their number and influence in Medina must still have been great enough to make it worth the Prophet's while to try and convert them (v. 85).<sup>76</sup> Verse 87 is supposed to have been the reply to a query addressed to Muhammed by some Jews. The authenticity of this question, with which I have dealt elsewhere,<sup>77</sup> is very doubtful. It is, therefore, not quite clear what Muhammed meant by this remark, except that he wished to parade his intimate acquaintance with the Pentateuch, and the passages in Gen. ix. 4 and xxxii. 33 in particular. By bringing one of their scrolls and reciting the verses in question they could convince themselves of the truth of his allegation. The next verse, which concludes the address, brands again post-Biblical prohibitions as "forging a lie against Allāh."

At about the same time as the first half of *Sūra* iii., *Sūra* xlvii. must have been revealed. V. 2, however, is out of connection with the verses 1 and 3, and altogether out of place here.<sup>78</sup> The compilers did not, perhaps, care to commence a *sūra* with a condemnation of the wicked. The victories gained hitherto are made the basis for admonitions and a censure of the Jews.<sup>79</sup> In v. 21 Muhammed

<sup>72</sup> *هَذَا يَوْمَ لَا يَخْلَقُ*

<sup>73</sup> A distinct allusion to the Jewish oral law is to be found in *تدريس* (Geiger, p. 51), see also *J. Q. R.* Vol. XIII. p. 223.

<sup>74</sup> Ed. Krehl, I. p. 118.

<sup>75</sup> Nöldeke, p. 141. His remark, that Muhammed regarded "true Christians" as believers, is incompatible with v. 52.

<sup>76</sup> Cf. Numb. xxii. 18, and Al Beidhāwī.

<sup>77</sup> *J. Q. R.* Vol. X. p. 105.

<sup>78</sup> v. 3 refers to *أَعْلَى أَعْمَالِهِمْ* v. i. cf. vv. 9 and 10. As to v. 2 see Ch. XIII.

<sup>79</sup> Palmer wrongly refers the words "those to whom has been given the knowledge" to Ibn Abbas, who cannot be meant by this verse.



settled the formula of the *Dikr* finally, and gave it for the first time with the introductory command: Know!<sup>82</sup> It is possibly modelled on verses like Exod. viii. 6, 18, ix. 14, or Deut. vi. 4. Verse 22 in so far differs from the similar one S. ii. 21, that in the former it is the Moslems,<sup>83</sup> who expect a special revelation with regard to the oppression of the Jews. From this we may gather, that the verse was revealed after the expulsion of the Banû Qainoqâ. It shows distinctly that Muhammed was resolved to exterminate all the Jews as soon as circumstances permitted. That the Jews were meant, is to be seen from the expression "those in whose heart there is sickness." In v. 23 we see the war against the remaining Jewish tribes decided upon, and their only escape from slaughter speedy conversion to Islâm. Their obstinacy is, then, described (vv. 25-29) in the usual phrases.<sup>84</sup> V. 32 refers to certain emblems<sup>85</sup> (probably connected with the Jewish ritual). The term *lathni-l-qawlî* probably alludes to the *chanting* of prayers and portions of the Pentateuch and Prophets read during service. The prayer-books of the Jews in Arabic-speaking countries show the word *lahn* at the headings of *Piyyûtîm* (hymns), in order to intimate the tunes to which they are to be sung. The Jewish custom of chanting prayers is as old as it is universal, and there is no reason to doubt that it also existed in Arabia at the time of Muhammed. The words in question may also refer to a habit of the Medinian Jews of intermixing the vernacular with Hebrew words, especially in discussions on matters religious. — Those Moslems, Muhammed continues, who might hesitate to take up arms against their former allies, are warned that their first duty is to obey Allâh and His Messenger (v. 35). Since success is certain (v. 36), there is no reason for any Moslim to be behind hand in contributing towards the cost of the expedition against the Jews (vv. 39-40).

The defeat which the Moslim army suffered at *Uḥud* in the third year after the *Hijra*, caused a momentary diversion in the constant denunciations of the Jews who, in their turn, were not loth to prejudice Medinians, Moslems and pagans alike, against Muhammed. The latter, seeing that his prestige was at stake, took pains to restore the same in a speech which fills out the rest of *Sûra* iii. He warned Believers against intimate relations with the enemies of Islâm (v. 114), and admonished them not to lose their faith in the revelations, which had assured them of final victory (v. 115). The misfortune over which their enemies rejoiced (v. 116) was chiefly due to the cowardice of two companies of the Moslim army (v. 118). In order to raise the spirits of his friends Muhammed reminded them again of the victory of Badr, even introducing this name into the revelations in questions (v. 119). The thousand angels who had assisted the Moslems on that occasion (S. viii. 9) is in this speech trebled (v. 120), but they would in the next emergency increase to five thousand (v. 121). Some of the following verses insinuate that the disaster may have been a punishment for "usury doubly doubled" exercised by Moslems (v. 125), and those who felt themselves guilty of this or other crimes (v. 129), must at once invoke Allâh's forgiveness (v. 127), and give alms (v. 128). Accidents had happened before (v. 131). Moslems were, therefore, not to give way to grief, and would be victorious in the end (v. 133).

The next group of verses (134-137) reminds Moslems to be always as ready to die for the cause of Islâm as they had been once before; and that no soul died save by permission of Allâh, and at its appointed time (v. 139). Before the last mentioned verse one is interpolated (v. 138) which has caused much comment among Moslim theologians.<sup>86</sup> The verse, which will occupy our attention later on, is nothing but a copy of S. v. 79a,<sup>87</sup> and not only disturbs the connection between vv. 137-139, but forms a complete contrast to v. 140, which speaks of prophets who did not show themselves weak even in the face of myriads of enemies. The reproach of cowardice is then repeated (v. 145). In order to make similar faintheartedness impossible for the future, Muhammed lays it down here as a principle that, had they all been in their houses, those who were fated to die, had gone forth to meet

<sup>82</sup> See Ch. II.

<sup>83</sup> Palmer read *الذين كفروا* which is not in the text; he also translated "a decisive *sûra*," but the text has

مُحْكَمَةٌ.

<sup>84</sup> See ii. 10, 11, 17, 247.

<sup>85</sup> See xlviii. 29 and Ch. VIII. end.

<sup>86</sup> Cf. Al Shahrastâni, *Milal*, p. 11; cf. *Beitræge*, p. 67, and Ch. XIII.

<sup>87</sup> See also iii. 150, 152.



their doom (v. 148). This verse gives manifest evidence that any fatalistic notions occurring in the *Qorān* are not the result of theological speculations, but were grown on purely political soil. It was necessary to render another defeat impossible, because Islām could not afford it. The demoralisation after Uhud was so great that the Moslems made Muhammed responsible, and charged him with having deceived his friends. He was obliged to defend himself against this accusation<sup>88</sup> (v. 155), but reminded his accusers that Allāh had sent a messenger to them out of their own midst (v. 158), and that their misfortune was their own fault. He described the situation very accurately in saying that "on that day they were far nigher to disbelief than to faith" (v. 160), but those who had suffered martyrdom, were not dead but alive, and enjoyed the pleasures of paradise by the grace of Allāh (vv. 163-168).

In close connection with this speech stands the next which is less severe and rather more hopeful in tone. To turn the general attention from the cheerless subject of the defeat, he makes use of a well worn device in launching another rebuke against the Hypocrites and Jews. In answer to the Prophet's request for funds to continue the war against the Meccans, they asked sneeringly whether Allāh was poor (v. 177). The question originated, according to tradition, with Finhās, a member of the expelled Banū Qainoqā, and is evidently only a reflex of Num. xi. 23.<sup>89</sup> Muhammed, however, taking the sarcasm seriously, placed this alleged blasphemy on a par with the old reproach that the Jews had "killed their prophets undeservedly" (*ibid.*). Not less sinful, he adds, is the assertion that Allāh had covenanted with them not to believe in a prophet until he had brought a sacrifice which the fire devoured<sup>90</sup> (v. 178). A remark of this kind, whether spoken in jest or earnest, was not founded on any condition laid down in the Old Testament, but entails an allusion to such passages as Jud. vi. 21, xiii. 20; 1 K. xviii. 31. Probably this fire (*alnār*) is purposely contrasted in one of the following verses with the illuminating (*almunīr*) Book (v. 181) and those who are removed from hell fire and brought into paradise (v. 182). — Further warnings addressed to the scoffing Jews (vv. 183-186), a fervent prayer, and admonitions to bear the situation patiently, conclude the *sūra*.

A more powerful lever than speeches was now applied to the drooping spirits of the Moslems by the expulsion of the second Jewish tribe, the Banū Al Naḍir, after Muhammed had caused their chief, Ka'b b. Al Ashraf, to be assassinated.<sup>91</sup> The Moslim bards hastened to celebrate these two events in various songs, and Muhammed himself was so rejoiced, that he composed a series of Hallelujah-Psalms. It is as such — and as imitations of Biblical ones, and Pss. cxlvi.-cl. in particular — that I regard the *Sūras*, lvii.,<sup>92</sup> lix., lxi., lxii., lxiv., all of which begin with the words; Praise Allāh whatever is in the heavens and in the earth." It is rather difficult to fix the order of succession of these five *sūras*, but this is of little account, as they were all composed at this period. Their poetic element is almost entirely confined to the superscription mentioned, the rest being prose, and we read the demand to give alms from the conquered treasures (lvii. 7). The victory alluded to in v. 10 is no other than the expulsion of the B. Al Naḍir.<sup>93</sup> The reverse previously sustained was still fresh enough in his mind to cause him to warn his friends not to exaggerate their joy (v. 22-23). The verses 24-28<sup>94</sup> refer to Muhammed's failure to get the Jews to contribute towards the fine to be paid for the slaying of two men of the Banū Āmir. The phrase (v. 24) "those who are niggardly, and bid men be niggardly" runs parallel to Abōth, v. 13, though only by accident. The verses seem to have been placed here because they form a contrast to several of the preceding ones (*e. g.*, 10, 11, 17), in which the topic of giving alms is discussed.

*Sūra* lix. begins with a reference to the expulsion of the Banū Al Naḍir.<sup>95</sup> The verses 2 and 3 look like an attempt to justify that act by stating that Allāh was responsible for it. If the banishment of those Jews had not been pre-ordained, their fate might have been much worse. So here Muhammed

<sup>88</sup> Nöldeke, p. 143, quotes the reasons given by traditionists.

<sup>89</sup> Perhaps also 2 K. vii. 2; cf. S. v. 69.

<sup>90</sup> See xvii. 92, and J. Q. R. Vol. X. p. 106.

<sup>91</sup> See the dirges of the Jewish poet Samamāk, *I. Hish.* pp. 657, 659.

<sup>92</sup> Nöldeke, p. 144 *et seq.*, rightly does not refer the *sūra* to the conquest of Mecca.

<sup>93</sup> *Ibid.* 147, lxiv. 11.

<sup>94</sup> See *I. Hish.* p. 652; Vākidi, p. 260.

<sup>95</sup> Nöldeke, p. 153; *I. Hish.* p. 654 *الْحِشْرُ بِأَسْرِهِ*.



makes use again of the fatalistic principle, but this time to exculpate an act of open violence. More than this, he had caused the palm groves of the Jews to be cut down and burned.<sup>96</sup> This appeared to them a flagrant violation of the law in Deut. xx. 19, and seems also to have been condemned by public opinion. Muhammed was so conscious of the outrage he had committed, that he found it necessary to shelter those who had executed his will behind the command of Allāh (v. 5).

The consequences of this bloodless victory were even greater for the economy of the future State than the preceding ones. The estate of the Banū Al Naḍir had not been taken by "pressing forward with horse and camel, but Allāh authorised His apostle to give it to whom he pleased" (v. 6). In other words, whatever spoil was not taken in open warfare, but by surrender, became the property of Allāh and His Prophet. This furnished a very important precedent for future enlargement of Moslim territory by pact or cession. The new lands were the property of the realm.<sup>97</sup> The old inhabitants were left unmolested, but their produce filled the coffers of the state.

This new manner of distributing the spoil placed at Muhammed's immediate disposal large means to reward the poor and lowly, who had cast in their lot with him in Mecca. He declared that they had the first claim to a share in the booty (v. 8), in which the Anṣār were not to participate at all (v. 9). It is but natural that Muhammed now taunted the Hypocrites, who, after having encouraged the Jews to offer resistance, had left them in the lurch, so that they had to retire to their castles, and finally surrender (vv. 11-14). Such conduct subjected them to some very unflattering comparisons.

The middle part of the *sūra* being somewhat poor for a Hallelujāh-Psalm, Muhammed endeavoured to make at least the end as thrilling as the commencement. Now verse 21 shows clearly that the author had Ps. cxiv. in his mind which, though not being a Hallelujāh-Psalm itself, belongs to a group of Psalms which are known in the *Mishnah* under the name of *Hallel*, and which occupy an important place in the prayer-book. Through the pathos of this verse a faint regret is observable that the *Qorān* was not revealed upon a mountain which "would have humbled itself and been split for fear of Allāh."<sup>98</sup> Lest, however, any man should think that such a sight had ever presented itself to the eyes of man, Muhammed adds that he had only spoken in metaphor. Very impressive appear the two *tawhīds* and the profusion of divine epithets, many of which are borrowed from Jewish terminology,<sup>99</sup> whilst the "Hallelujāh" repeated in the last verse, leaves no doubt that the whole *sūra* forms a continuous sermon.

*Sūra* lxi. begins with a severe reprimand addressed to Believers "who say what they do not do," a thing which is very hateful to Allāh. The purport of this reproach, repeated twice, is not quite clear, although the Commentators connect it with a declaration on the part of the Moslims, that they were prepared to sacrifice both wealth and life for the sake of the faith. It appears, however, that Muhammed again alluded to the spiritless conduct of a part of the Moslim army at Uhud.<sup>100</sup> At any rate the recommendation given in v. 4, *viz.*, to fight in future "in closed ranks, as though they were a compact building,"<sup>1</sup> throws some light on the meaning of the two preceding verses. The chief function of v. 5 is to introduce v. 6, memorable on account of the new title *Aḥmad*, under which Muhammed states that he was announced by Jesus. I take this name as an attempt at an Arabic rendering of *Messias*, and to find that formation of the root *HMD*, which would most appropriately express the character under which Muhammed wished to be known to the following generations. From this we may conclude that he was not called Muhammed, at least not till several years after the Hijra.<sup>2</sup> V. 7 refers again to the Jews who try to extinguish "the light of Allāh with their mouth." The certainty Muhammed expresses in the verses 9 and 13,

<sup>96</sup> See Bokhari, iii. 13.

<sup>97</sup> Sprenger, III. p. 164, regards the first portion of v. 7 as interpolated. Moslim authorities declare the verse to refer to other places than the territory of the B. Al Naḍir.

<sup>98</sup> Cf. Zach. xiv. 5; Ps. lxxviii. 9, xlviii. 5.

<sup>99</sup> E. g., *al-malik*, *al-quddūs*, *al-muḥaimin*, *al-jabbār*, etc.

<sup>100</sup> Cf. iii. 118 and above; v. 3 "most hateful in the eyes of Allāh;" v. 4 "Allāh loves those who fight in His cause."

<sup>1</sup> See Ch. VIII.

<sup>2</sup> See also the Bahāra legend in Ch. II.



that Islām would be victorious in the end "in spite of the objection of the infidels," proves the address to have been spoken after the banishment of the Banū Al Naḍir, when Muhammed was entitled to hope that, at least in Medina, no one would be able to withstand his rule. V. 14, being a re-echo of S. iii. 45, stands detached, and seems to have been placed at the end of this *sūra* on account of v. 6.

It is not difficult to recognise that the beginning of *Sūra* lxii. is closely connected with the conclusion of *Sūra* lix. The strenuous efforts Muhammed had to make, in order to find material for the psalmody is plainly visible. The *sūra* consists of two parts of unequal length, which are not in connection with each other. The first portion contains another of the well worn onslaughts against the remaining Jews, as bearers of the Rabbinical law in the shape of an insulting comparison.<sup>3</sup> The verses 6 and 7 are a repetition of S. ii. 88. The latter portion of the *sūra*, which discussed the duties of the "Day of Congregation,"<sup>4</sup> is said to owe its origin to the indignation of the Prophet who saw a caravan, led by unbelieving Medianian citizens, enter the city with great noise on Friday, and cause great disturbance among the worshippers.<sup>5</sup>

The descriptive element in the first portion of *Sūra* lxiv. is not indicative of Meccan origin, but of a feeble effort to revive the spark of enthusiasm proper for a psalm. The reminiscences of the defeat of Uhud<sup>6</sup> (v. 11) and the double admonition to be obedient (vv. 12 and 16) leave no doubt as to the place to which the *sūra* belongs.

It appears that *Sūra* iv. originally only consisted of the pieces vv. 1-45, 126-129 and 175<sup>7</sup> which treat of legal matters in connection with the rights of women and orphans, and the regulations of wills and bequests. The promulgation of these regulations could not have been undertaken without very careful preparation. It was dictated by the necessity for arranging the rights and duties of a growing community, many members of which had suddenly become wealthy, and which, owing to the various battles, numbered many widows and orphans, who had to be provided for by the commonwealth in whose service their natural supporters had lost their lives. It is therefore probable that the revelations in question cannot be dated earlier than the year five.<sup>8</sup>

Between the portions of the *sūra* under consideration the compilers have inserted a mass of revelations mostly belonging to the same period for which they could not find more suitable places. To this category belong the ritual precepts in v. 46, being reflexes of Levit. x. 9, xv. 16-18 increased by Rabbinical interpretations.<sup>9</sup> Then follows a vigorous attack against the Jews (vv. 47-72), which appears like an attempt at stamping the banishment of the Banū Al Naḍir as a religious duty. Muhammed endeavoured to demonstrate that the Jews had so far deviated from the teachings of the Tōrah by altering the same (vv. 48-49),<sup>10</sup> that they were no better than heathens. This, he said, might be deduced from the nearly divine homage they paid to their sages. The point is of importance. "Behold," he says (v. 53), "how they devise a lie against Allāh, and that is manifest sin enough (54). Do ye not see those to whom a portion of the Book was given believe in the *Jibt* and *Tāghūt*,<sup>11</sup> and say to the infidels: these are better guided in the way than those who believe [in Allāh and His messenger] (55)? These are those whom Allāh has cursed, and whom Allāh has cursed shall find no helper." — Nöldeke ascribes the words placed in the mouth of the people accused in this verse to some of the expelled Jews who betook themselves to Mecca, and tried to stir the Qoreish up to renew their hostilities against Muhammed.<sup>12</sup> This is, however, utterly improbable. Whence did Muhammed gain the knowledge that they had done so? "The infidels" of v. 54 are none others than the Jews

<sup>3</sup> See Ch. VIII.

<sup>4</sup> See Beidhāwi and Bokh. i. 224 according to Abu Hursira. It is alleged that Ka'b b. Loṣyy gave Friday the name 'Arṣūd, because the people used to congregate on that day. This tradition, which is given on uncertain authority, deserves no credit. *Arṣūd* or *Arṣūthā* is, in the Talmud, a name of Friday (*Jerush. Teruma*, viii. 10). It almost appears that Muhammed at first intended to use this term for Friday, but discarded it as he did with 'Ashūra. Later tradition, then, gave the word a pagan origin.

<sup>5</sup> See Al Beidhāwi.

<sup>6</sup> ربيع الثور, vv. 126 and 175.

<sup>7</sup> See Geiger, p. 88; Nöldeke, p. 147, is not convincing.

<sup>8</sup> Geiger, p. 56, not quite correct.

<sup>9</sup> See lvii. 22, iii. 147.

<sup>10</sup> See also Nöldeke, p. 145 sq.

<sup>11</sup> Cf. ii. 87, 98.

<sup>12</sup> Nöldeke, p. 149.



as a whole. The practice of the Rabbinical prescriptions, which went far beyond the bare laws of the Pentateuch, is termed by Muhammed *Tāghūt* in the Aramaic meaning of this word. Exactly the same idea is again expressed in v. 63, viz., that "they (the Jews) wish to refer their judgment to *Tāghūt*,"<sup>13</sup> i. e., they follow the decisions of the latter rather than that of the *Tōrah*. The word *Jibt* (which does not occur again) has evidently a similar meaning, and belongs to those terms which Muhammed misread from his notes, and distorted beyond recognition. — It is unfortunately not clear whether Muhammed, at any time, met Jews who entertained ideas propagated later on by the Karaites, but as a believer in the *Tōrah* he is so unmistakably Karaite, that this is not improbable.

The verses 73-86 were revealed shortly after the catastrophe at Uhud. Again Muhammed reminded Moslems that the disaster (v. 74) should by no means discourage them (vv. 78, 86), since death could occur at any time, but for this misfortune they had only themselves to blame (v. 81). The pieces 87-95 and *Sūra* v. 56-63<sup>14</sup> show Muhammed in possession of considerable power (v. 91),<sup>15</sup> and seem, therefore, somewhat later, viz., dating from the time of the siege of the Banū Kureiza (end of A. 4), and, according to the Commentators, the section iv. 96-105<sup>16</sup> is contemporaneous with them. The group of verses 106-115 is said to owe its origin to a theft committed by a Medinian, who eventually fled to Mecca. If this be true, the date of the revelation in question can be approximately fixed as having taken place after the conversion of the poet Ḥassān b. Thābit (A. H. 4), who in some verses,<sup>17</sup> alludes to this incident as well as to Muhammed's prophetic faculties. Greater difficulties are offered by the verses 116-125. It is, however, hardly justifiable to regard them with Nöldeke<sup>18</sup> as Meccan, because the "People of the Book" are mentioned in them (v. 122), without disparaging epithet or as "friends." The verses 130-133 are of quite uncertain date, and evidently placed here on account of v. 125. Just as uncertain is the date of v. 134, unless, as Nöldeke suggests,<sup>19</sup> it also refers to the affair of the theft, since the friends of the culprit gave false evidence in his favour. V. 139 forms the repetition of an old Meccan revelation,<sup>20</sup> and is now revealed evidently for a similar reason. The words that "Allah deceives the Hypocrites"<sup>21</sup> (v. 141) are, to say the least, drastic. The sermon to which this remark belongs only goes as far as v. 145. The verses that follow up to v. 151 are quite uncertain as to date, although v. 147 might be brought in connection with the adventure of Aisha, which took place in the year 4.<sup>22</sup> The furious onslaught against the Jews (vv. 152-168) must be somewhat older, because it contains many reminiscences of similar orations of the first year.<sup>23</sup> The same holds good for the remarks applied to the Christians (vv. 169-173).<sup>24</sup> Verse 174 stands detached, and is of controversial character. Some Commentators regard it as the last of the whole *Qorān*.

(To be continued.)

## THE SPRING MYTH OF THE KESAR SAGA.

BY A. H. FRANCKE.

*Translated from the Mémoires de la Société Finno-Ongrienne, No. XV., 1900,  
by George R. Heath.*<sup>1</sup>

### Preface.

IN the following pages one of the *Kesar Sagas*, which are commonly related by the people throughout Western Tibet, is introduced to the public, and a service thereby rendered to science, which will perhaps be of no insignificant worth. Various travellers and Tibetan explorers have

<sup>13</sup> Palmer: to them misprint.

<sup>14</sup> Nöldeke, p. 172, refers vv. 57-63 to the battle of Uhud, but in reality they refer to the "War of the Trench," A. H. 4, and the alliance with the B. Kureiza.

<sup>15</sup> See Nöldeke, p. 150, with slight differences.

<sup>17</sup> *Diwan*, ed. Tunis, p. 64 sq.; cf. I. Bish. p. 359, and Nöldeke, p. 151.

<sup>18</sup> P. 152.

<sup>19</sup> Treated more in detail in S. xxiv.

<sup>20</sup> S. vi. 67. <sup>21</sup> Cf. II. 52, 55, 60. <sup>22</sup> See Ch. VIII. <sup>23</sup> Nöldeke, p. 172.

<sup>24</sup> All the numbers are in accordance with those of the Tibetan original. The latter may be obtained at the Depot de la Société Finno-Ongrienne, Helsingfors, Finland.



often reported that so-called Kesar Sagas enjoy great popularity among the Tibetan people; but no one, as far as I know, has told us what the subject of these Sagas is. Even Waddell, who mentions a mythical **King Kesar** several times in his epoch-making book, *The Buddhism of Tibet*, can give no satisfactory information about his person and significance.

These pages will, I hope, prove the high scientific value of the Kesar Sagas, by shewing that they are one of the chief sources from which knowledge of the **pre-Buddhist religion of Tibet** may be drawn.<sup>2</sup>

An attempt has often been made to learn something about **Kesar** by setting about the translation of the long famous epics which bear this title. But up to the present no one has produced a complete translation. Such a work might well occupy a whole lifetime. If a translation of the whole should in the end be made, it would be of infinite value. Partial translations are not necessarily so, as the Buddhistic cast, which may be clearly discerned in the epic, renders the recognition of the mythological features unusually difficult. From a complete translation of the epic, a confirmation of the mythological ideas contained in the popular sagas may be expected. Until we have one, we are dependent on the sagas alone. That is not, however, to be regretted at the commencement; for the popular sagas are short, clear and free from Buddhistic influences.

The study of the **Spring Myth** leads quite naturally to the desire of becoming acquainted with the corresponding **Winter Myth**. I have now succeeded in discovering this also, and I hope soon to submit it in a German translation.

It has been already mentioned by others that the sagas treated here exist among the people in oral form. In this case, however, the question is not one of a free narration, which runs the risk of being altered in passing from mouth to mouth; but rather of matter learnt by heart, at the recitation of which (according to the respective versions) scarcely a word is altered. A girl of about sixteen years of age, in whose family the stories of Kesar are held in high esteem, related the following sagas slowly, so that the master of the Mission School she attended was enabled, under my supervision, to take them down word for word. This **First Manuscript** is the foundation of the accompanying Tibetan text almost throughout. In the comparison and confirmation of the text, as well as in the addition of some new features, a **Second Manuscript** has also been of great service. This was prepared for me by another Ladakhi who is able to write, and who went to the **Bedas** (a caste of musicians and popular entertainers), and wrote down literally what they related. The two manuscripts deviate a little from one another both in the form of the narrative and in the wording of the songs, but agree perfectly in everything essential.

Something remains to be said on the poetical form of the songs, which are interspersed in the narrative. We find in them different kinds of rhythm as well as of rhyme. The rhythms are almost always formed of trochees, which corresponds to the monosyllabic character of the language. Dactyls, however, also occur, especially when a suffix is added to a dissyllabic compound. The **sentence-rhyme peculiar to Tibet** is the one which occurs in almost all the songs (i. e., two or three sentences are formed in exactly the same manner, but different words

<sup>2</sup> There are sources of a very different character, from which Dr. Lanfer is drawing his knowledge of the Pre-Buddhist Religion of Tibet. I have had great pleasure in studying the following of his writings: *Klu'abun bzhulpa'i snyingpo*, *Mémoires de la Société Finno-Ongrienne*, No. XI., 1898. — *Über ein tibetisches Geschichtsbuch der Bonpo*, *Toung-Pao*, Série II., Vol. II., No. 1. — *Denkschriften der kais. Akademie der Wissenschaften*, Wien, Phil. Hist. Classe, Band XLVI., No. VII., *Ein Sühnedicht der Bonpo*. All these publications show a very far advanced type of the Pre-Buddhist Religion; they shew especially in the long lists of *klu's* or *uḡas*, what a body of priests has been able to make of it. From the Kesar Myths we may learn, on the other hand, what this religion has been to the ordinary man. It would certainly not be right to consider the Kesar Sagas as mere fairy-tales, told for the amusement of the people. This is shown most plainly by a comparison with the Ladakhi Wedding Ritual and the popular Bonpo Hymnal (*g'iṅ glā*), which run on the same lines as the Kesar Sagas and are both of a distinctly religious cast.



are placed in the corresponding positions). I have tried in the translation to imitate the sentence-rhyme as far as possible. With regard to the rhythms I have allowed myself greater freedom.<sup>3</sup>

Finally it should be pointed out that the language of the Tibetan text is not the classical, but the Ladakhi, dialect.

An Abridged Episode from the Kesar Saga.<sup>4</sup>  
Translation.

I.

The first Tale is the Tale of the Agus (heroes).

1. In the land of gLing there were once the wild Agus dPalle and Khromo and dGani. Because there was no king in the land of gLing, deep sorrow came over Agu dPalle. Agu Khromo was a bad man; he rejoiced at the unhappiness of the land. One day the wild Agus went to tend goats. 2. Then dBangpo-rgyab-bzhin also came from the upper kingdom of the gods to tend goats. All at once the black devil-bird appeared, and wanted to carry off the goats. 3. dBangpo-rgyab-bzhin changed himself into the white god-bird, and both fought. 4. The thought occurred to all the Agus:—"The black bird seems to be the devil-bird!" 5. Then Agu dPalle seized the sling, and sang this song:—

6. Oh Sling, thou many-coloured sling,
7. [My] mother spun thee in her time,
8. [My] mother plaited thee in her time,
9. When her child, myself, she carried.
10. Oh come, oh come thou oblong stone,
11. Hit sure, be there no escape!

12. So singing, he slung [the stone], and hit the black devil-bird on the wing, so that he died. 13. At this dBangpo-rgyab-bzhin rejoiced greatly, and in order to shew love to the Agus, he sang:—

14. Men of gLing, kindly are ye come,
15. dPalle, dGani, kindly are ye come,
16. A cow and a calf will I give you a hundredfold,
17. Foal and horse will I give you a hundredfold,
18. A laden pack-sheep will I give you a hundredfold,
19. Goat and kid will I give you a hundredfold,
20. A saddled horse will I give you a hundredfold,
21. A yak with the nose-ring will I give you a hundredfold!

22. When he had sung this song, the Agus said:—"All that is not necessary." 23. To Agu dPalle this thought occurred:—"The King of Heaven dBangpo-rgyab-bzhin has three sons; it would be good if he sent one son to the land of gLing as king." Therefore he asked:—  
24. "O give a child as chief to the chiefless land." When dBangpo-rgyab-bzhin heard that, he went back quickly to the upper kingdom of the gods.

II.

The second Tale is the Tale of dBangpo-rgyab-bzhin's three sons.

1. The king of the gods, dBangpo-rgyab-bzhin, had three sons, Donldan, Donyod and Dongrub. Because their father loved them very much, he did not like to send even one

<sup>3</sup> This sentence-rhyme is the same type of parallelism as has become known from Chinese popular poetry.

<sup>4</sup> The division into nine parts is my own.



to the land of gLing. 2. When therefore he came back to the upper kingdom of the gods, he ate nothing and sat there in anger. 3. Then his son Donldan brought his tea and his food, but the father ate nothing. Donldan said :—

" Father !

4. Has the wolf got at the sheep ?
5. Has the crow got at the breakfast ?
6. Was the sling lost at the hunt ?"

The father said : —

7. " The wolf has not got at the sheep,
8. The crow has not got at the breakfast,
9. The sling was not lost at the hunt.
10. But thou, my son, wilt thou go as chief to the chiefless land of gLing ? If thou goest, I will take the tea and the food !"
11. The son said : — " I shall not go !
12. If the dog is angry, the soup is left [uneaten],
13. If the king is full of wrath, the roast is left [uneaten] !"
14. Then came the son Donyod and said : — 15. " Father, eat the food and drink the tea !"
16. The father said : — " Thou, my son, wilt thou go as chief to the chiefless land of gLing ?"
17. The son said : — " I shall not go !

18. If the dog is angry, the soup is left [uneaten],
19. If the king is full of wrath, the roast is left [uneaten] !"

20. Then came Dongrub, the smallest of all, and asked :—

" Father !

21. Has the wolf got at the sheep ?
22. Has the crow got at the breakfast ?
23. Was the sling lost at the hunt ?"

The father said : —

24. " The wolf has not got at the sheep,
25. The crow has not got at the breakfast.
26. The sling was not lost at the hunt !
27. My son, wilt thou go as chief to the chiefless land of gLing ?"

28. The son said : " If I do not listen to the word of father and mother, to whose word shall I listen ? I shall go !" 29. Then the father took the tea and the food. Again great sadness came over the father, and he sang :—

30. [My] son Donldan, he is the heart of my thinking ;
31. It is not right to tear out one's heart and to give it to another !
32. [My] son Donyod, he is the tongue of my speaking ;
33. It is not right to tear out one's tongue and to give it to another !
34. [My] son Dongrub, he is the eye of my seeing ;
35. It is not right to tear out one's eye and to give it to another !"

36. Then spake the father : — " Before Dongrub goes to the land of gLing, all you [my] sons must have a race on horseback one day in the morning, 37. at midday play at dice,



38. and in the evening shoot arrows." 39. So they all had a horse-race in the morning, and the youngest son Dongrub won it. 40. At midday they played at dice, and the youngest son Dongrub won. 41. In the evening they shot arrows, and the youngest son Dongrub won. 42. Then came the time when the son Dongrub was to go to the land of *gLing*.

### III.

The third Tale is the Tale of Dongrub, who is fitted out for the land of *gLing*.

1. Before the son Dongrub went to the land of men, the high mother gave him a lesson, the high father gave him a lesson. Both said thus: — "Thou needest

2. A horse that always knows the way back,
3. A horse that knows how to fly high,
4. A knife to stab the wicked people,
5. A knife to stab Buddha,
6. An arrow that always knows the way back!"

7. Then said the mother: — "O yes, it is hard for Dongrub to go to the land of men!"

8. *rKyangbyung-dbyerpa* is certainly

9. A horse that always knows the way back,

10. A horse that knows how to fly high.

11. The knife 'Three-fingers-long' is certainly

12. A knife to stab the wicked people,

13. A knife to stab Buddha.

14. The blue *Srinyzhu* is certainly

15. A bow whose arrow flies back again." This is the lesson of the high mother: —

16. "*rKyangbyung-dbyerpa*, the high horse,

17. And moreover *Srinyzhu*, the blue bow,

18. Thou wilt find at the house of Uncle *brTandsin* the Red.

19. *Tsetse-ngangdmar* is on the pass;

20. Upon her, O Dongrub, thou wilt spring well

21. And of that, O Dongrub, thou wilt die."

22. So then the son went to fetch the horse, the knife, and the bow, and arrived before the house of *brTandsin* the Red. 23. There he saw the horse, whose four legs were fastened with chains. When the horse heard a man coming he sprang up. 24. Dongrub spake: — "Uncle, all hail! Give me the horse *rKyangbyung-dbyerpa* and the blue bow *Srinyzhu*! I, the son Dongrub, am going to the land of men. I have come here to greet my uncle!" 25. The uncle said: — "The horse *rKyangbyung-dbyerpa* is here; lead him away! the blue bow *Srinyzhu* is not here, but in *Agu Za's* hand!" 26. When he heard that, he went to *Agu Za's* house, leading the horse. 27. In the middle of the way was a white and a black pool. 28. As he was washing his hands in the black pool, another hand came out of the water, seized Dongrub's hand and held it fast. 29. Then said Dongrub: — "Who is it that seizes my hand?" 30. Out of the water a voice answered: — "Why art thou washing thy hands in our water?" When he heard that, Dongrub spake: — "Please, please let my hand go! I am in haste. I am going in order to become the chief of the chiefless *gLing-Land* and want to fetch the blue bow *Srinyzhu* from *Agu Za*." 32. Then it was said out of the water: — "As soon as thou cryest, saying, 'Agu



Za, [the giant] will swallow thee. Therefore I tell thee this: In Agu Za's body is the knife and the bow. So take the knife in the right hand and his heart in the left. Then if thou stab his heart, he will cry, 'Come out!' " 33. Then [he, she, it?] let Dongrub's hand go, and vanished in the water.

34. When Dongrub arrived at Agu Za's house, the Agu put his hand out at the window, seized Dongrub and ate him up. 35. So Dongrub sat in the body [of the Agu], and seized the knife with the right hand. In the left he took the heart, and stabbed. 36. Then Agu Za cried: — "Who is in my body? Come out!" 37. Dongrub said: — "My good Agu, am I not the son of the king of heaven, rGyabbzhin? When I am going as chief to the chiefless land of gLing and want to greet the Agu and ask him for the blue bow Srinyzhu, the Agu seizes me and swallows me." 38. Then spake the Agu: — "O my heart, all hail! I feel ill! Come out!" Dongrub answered: — 39. "My good Agu, wilt thou listen to my word? If thou listen to it, I will give thee sun and moon to eat for a year. Is that enough?" 40. The Agu said: — "It is enough, O my eye!" 41. Dongrub spake: — "Then I will come out through the Agu's pincal gland, and bring the whole brain out on to the head!" 42. The Agu requested: — "O my eye, please come out by the way thou wentest in!" 43. "Then I will come out at the Agu's sole." 44. "O my eye, rather than that come out by the way thou wentest in!" 45. Then Dongrub came out at the pit of the neck, and had the bow and the knife in his hand. He gave sun and moon to the Agu to eat for a year.

46. While he was going to the chiefless land of gLing, he arrived at the foot of a mountain, and saw the goat Tsetse-ngangdmar lying there. He sprang on to it. 47. The goat was frightened, and carried him on to the summit of three mountains. There it threw him down, and Dongrub died.

#### IV.

##### The fourth Tale is the Tale of Dongrub's birth on the earth.

1. When Dongrub had died, he changed himself into hail, and came down to the land of gLing. 2. There he was born to Gogzalhamo. 3. Although he was the high king of the land of gLing, he was born in lowly form. 4. His mouth was as large as a well, and [his] eyes black and ugly. 5. On the pillow of [his] mother there was some bad meal. The child suddenly got up, [and] went and ate some of the meal. 6. The mother said: — "He does not give himself time to grow, but eats meal [already]!" She clothed it with a piece of ass's sackcloth, tied a goat's-hair string around it, and put a stone upon it. 7. For the mother was ashamed of the child's lowly form. 8. At the same time the spouse bKur dmanmo from the kingdom of the gods changed herself into the mother dKar thigmo and went to prepare some soup for Gogzalhamo. 9. Mother dKar thigmo said: — "Well, Gogzalhamo, what has been born to you?" Gogzalhamo spake: — 10. "Of all that which was or was not born to me there is nothing left. It was born with ugly black eyes and a mouth like a well, and it ate meal without giving itself time to grow. I have clothed it with a piece of ass's sackcloth, and put a stone on it. There it is, under the stone!" Mother dKar thigmo took the child from under the stone, and the child said: —

12. "Kinder art thou than water, O Lady dKar thigmo, now listen!

13. Kinder than even [my] mother, O Lady dKar thigmo, now listen!

14. After the manner of men, a bowl should be filled with butter;

15. Gogzalhamo, however, threw to me buckwheat.

16. After the manner of men, the child should be put in the child-sack;

17. Gogzalhamo, however, put sackcloth around me.



18. A son is born to the mother! says he,
19. A son is born to Gogza! says he,
20. And he blows white bands up to the sky.
21. A son is born to the mother! says he,
22. A son is born to Gogza! says he,
23. And he blows red bands across the earth.
24. A son is born to the mother! says he,
25. A son is born to Gogza! says he,
26. And he blows blue bands down to the waters."

## V.

The fifth Tale is the Tale of Khromo, who sought to harm Kesar, the King of the Gods.

1. While this was going on, Agu Khromo heard that Kesar, the king of the gods, had been born to Gogzalhamo. 2. Therefore he said to seven priests from the east: — "In that cottage there is a child. If you can kill the child, I will give you half of [my] castle and land." 3. Then the priests from the east disguised themselves as beggars and went to Gogzalhamo's cottage. 4. Gogzalhamo thought: — "These seven men are beggars;" filled a golden and a silver plate for them, and brought it out. 5. The seven spiritual beggars said: — "We need neither a golden nor a silver plate. Give us the child! We want to teach it religion." Then Gogzalhamo gave them the child. 6. Then came Mother dKar thigmo, and cried: — "Gogzalhamo, to whom have you given the child away?" 7. Gogzalhamo answered: — "Seven priests, who said, 'We want to teach it religion,' have carried it off." 8. Then spake Mother dKar thigmo: — "How could you give the child away!" and Gogzalhamo ran to get back the child, till she met the seven beggars. 9. The beggars had bound the child's arms and legs with chains, had laid fire on his heart, and were pouring boiling water into his mouth. 10. When the mother saw that, she came before the seven beggars, and cried: — "Give me my child!" The child said: —

11. Fourfold I lie here not bound:
12. It is a sign: four enemies will fall.
13. On my heart I feel no flame:
14. It is a sign of flaming happiness.
15. Hot water I do not feel on my head:
16. It is a sign of tea, beer [and] milk to come."

17. As he sang this, the child said: — "*Hung* one, *hung* two!" broke the chains and ran to his mother. Then Gogzalhamo carried the child home. 18. But the seven priests from the east changed themselves into beetles and devoured the ashes of the fire.

19. So when Agu Khromo knew that the child was not yet conquered, he said: — "I will go myself;" [and] came and asked Gogzalhamo: — "Where is the child? Has he grown big?" 20. The child said: — "My good Agu, I am here!" Whereupon Khromo took the child out of the bed and carried him off. 21. There was a rock of poison there. Upon it he wanted to throw the child. But although Agu Khromo was able to whirl him round, he could not throw him on to the rock. 22. The child said: — "Swing me round, good Agu, do! Throw me off. do!" 23. The Agu said: — "I am tired, I cannot any longer!" 24. Whereupon the child cried: — "Now the Agu's time for whirling [me] round is past; now it is my turn!" [and]



saying this, he threw the Agu on to the poisonous rock. 25. As the rock was of fiery poison one side of Khromo body got burnt.

26. One day Agu dPalle, Agu dGani and Agu Khromo went hunting together, and killed a wild yak. To the place where they killed it the child came also. 27. The Agus said: — "Go, carry a whole leg at once to thy mother!" The child bit his teeth into a tendon of the leg, carried it off, gave it to his mother, and came back. 28. Then the Agus said: — "Take all the intestines and the inwards also to [thy] mother!" and sent him away. The child wrapped it all up in his hip-cloth, bit with [his] teeth into the upper end of the intestines, and carried it home to [his] mother. Then he returned. Agu Khromo became angry, threw the wooden poker [at him], and hit the child on the mole at the back of the neck, so that he fainted and fell to the ground. 30. Then said Agu dPalle to Khromo: — "He is also a member of our father's brothers. They will avenge him on thee!" Then Agu Khromo was frightened, and spake to the child: — 31. "Listen, Street-boy; get up, please! I will give thee the chief ford of a hundred fords." 32. The child asked: — "Wilt thou give it [to me], my good Agu?" and got up. 33. When the Street-child had received the chief ford of a hundred fords, it allowed no one to cross it. 34. One day as Agu Khromo was coming through the water at that chief ford, the Street-child cried: — 35. "Who is coming through the water there?" and threw a stone at Khromo. 36. Agu Khromo said: — "Ow, it is I!" and the child cried smilingly: — "Why didst thou not say that before, my good Agu?" 37. The Street-boy became very powerful. If no part of the mourning-feast was given to him, he let no funeral procession pass; and if no part of the marriage-feast was given to him, he let no marriage procession cross. All that he carried away, and gave it to Gogzalhamo.

# VI.

The Sixth Tale is the Tale of Maiden 'aBruguma, whom the Street-child met.

1. Now at that time the Street-child went to the upper Groma-field to gather *groma*<sup>6</sup> roots, and met there the maiden 'aBruguma and her handmaid Darlhagochochodma. 2. The Street-child found as many roots as a horse's head or yak's head is great, and made a loaf for himself out of them. 3. Maiden 'aBruguma and Darlhagochochodma found only one dry root each. 4. As they found no more, the handmaid said to the Street-child: — "Give our Lady 'aBruguma a piece of root-bread too!" 5. The Street-child answered: — "No, little sister, I must nourish my mother!" 6. Then he ate some of the root-bread before the two girls, and spake, "*Sindiremalag!*" While he said that, the loaf grew whole again, and he began to eat once more. 7. Then spake he: — "Now Maiden 'aBruguma shall also eat some. But as much as she eats must be brought back again. There, eat some!" 8. Maiden 'aBruguma ate half of the loaf and said, "*Sindiremalag!*" But although she said that, nothing came back. The mark of the teeth remained. 9. Then spake the Street-child: — "O thou daughter of Father brTanpa, O thou daughter of Mother Chorol! Give me back my bread! If I see a dog, the dog shall hear of it; if I see a man, the man shall hear of it!" 10. When Maiden 'aBruguma heard that, she thought he was angry, and spake to the Street-boy: — "To-morrow we are going to have a feast, and thou shalt take part in it!" 11. The Street-child asked: — "Shall I take part, little sister?" and 'aBruguma said: — "Yes thou shalt be there." 12. On the next day the Street-child went earlier than all [the rest] to 'aBruguma's house, and hid himself behind the upper door-beam. 13. So when all the people had come together to the feast, 'aBruguma said: — "Are we all here? Shut the door before the Street-child comes!" 14. Then the Street-child called out from the beam: — "I have already arrived, little sister!" 15. 'aBruguma spake: — "And I had just said that he had not come yet!" 16. He called out laughing: — "So I just heard [my] little sister say! If I see a dog, the dog shall hear of it; if I see a man, the man shall hear of it!" 17. Then spake 'aBruguma: — "Listen, Street-child, to-morrow we are going to give a friendly beer-banquet. All the Agus are going to come to it. Wilt thou also be there?"

<sup>6</sup> *Groma* is a species of *potentilla*.



18. He spake :— " Little sister, wilt thou listen to my word ? " The maiden said :— " I will listen to it." 19. He spake :— " Then thou must say this to **Agu dPalle** and the others :—

20. Who takes a drink of the beer of life, let him have children beyond measure !

21. Who takes a drink of the beer of blessing, let his life be like that of the gods !

22. Drink without touching the ten finger-tips,

23. And without wetting the silk of the tongue,<sup>6</sup>

24. Nor may'st thou knock the pearls of the teeth ;<sup>7</sup>

25. Drink with the soul,

26. Yea, drink with the heart !"

27. So the next morning, when all the Agus had come together, 'aBruguma brought the beer of friendship, came before **Agu dGani** and said :—

28. " Hail, on [thy] golden throne, O **Agu dGani**, now listen !

29. See this vessel, filled with thoughts and nine-fold buttered.<sup>8</sup>

30. Who takes a drink of the beer of life, let him be blessed with many children !

31. Who takes a drink of the beer of blessing, let his life be like that of the gods !

32. Drink without touching the ten finger-tips,

33. And without wetting the silk of the tongue,

34. Nor may'st thou knock the pearls of the teeth ;

35. Drink with the soul,

36. Yea, drink with the heart !"

Then spake **Agu dGani** :—

37. " Not wetting the tongue,

38. Not filling the stomach,

39. Not touching the hands,

40. How then shall I drink it ? Away with the bowl !"

41. Because he spoke so, the girl carried the vessel to **Agu dPalle** :—

42. " Hail on [thy] throne of shell, O **Agu dPalle**, now listen !

43. See this vessel, filled with thoughts and nine-fold buttered !

44. Who takes a drink of the beer of life, let him be blessed with many children !

45. Who takes a drink of the beer of blessing, may he live as long as the gods !

46. Drink without touching the ten finger-tips,

47. And without wetting the silk of the tongue,

48. Nor may'st thou knock the pearls of the teeth ;

49. Drink with the soul,

50. Yea, drink with the heart !"

<sup>6</sup> Literally :— And without tasting with the silken knots of the tongue.

<sup>7</sup> Lit. :— Not knocking the teeth like milk, like a rosary, like pearls.

<sup>8</sup> See explanation of the custom, under *Yar*. Dr. Lanfer asks for an analysis of this sentence. The Tibetan text is properly *buṅpa beampas don syrabla mis brgyabs dgu brgyabs shig yod*. This means literally : 'A vessel furnished with thoughts according to the meaning (*don*), smeared by men, smeared ninefold, such it is ; *brgyabs* is said instead of *yar brgyabs*, it is smeared with butter.



Then spake Agu dPalle :—

51. "Not wetting the tongue,
52. Not filling the stomach,
53. Not touching the hands,
54. How then shall I drink it ? Away with the bowl !"

55. Then 'aBruguma said to the Agus :— "Shall I ask the Street-child also ?" 56. The Agus spake :— "He is also a member of our father's brothers' [clan]. Ask him also, do !" 57. And 'aBruguma addressed him :— "Yes, listen, Street-child, give me thy bowl !" 58. The Street-child spake :— "Yes, certainly, little sister, just as thou hast said to the Agus, speak also to me !" So 'aBruguma sang :—

59. "Thou on [thy] wooden chair, thou Street-boy there, now listen :
60. See this vessel, filled with thoughts and nine-fold buttered !
61. Who takes a drink of the beer of life, let him be blessed with many children !
62. Who takes a drink of the beer of blessing, may he live as long as the gods !
63. Drink without touching the ten finger-tips,
64. And without wetting the silk of the tongue,
65. Nor may'st thou knock the pearls of the teeth !
66. Drink with the soul,
67. Yes, drink with the heart !"

68. Thereupon the Street-child said :— "Little sister, wait a little !" Then he threw the vessel towards the sky with his stick studded with dog's teeth, and drank the beer out of the sky. 69. While he drank it, he said :— "I feel how the Lord of Heaven, rGyabbzhin, is giving me a drink of the beer of friendship !" Then all the street-folk shouted :— "Now our Street-boy has got Lady 'aBruguma as bride ! Hurrah for Love !"

## VII.

The Seventh Tale is the Tale of 'aBruguma, who becomes Kesar's bride.

1. The Sovereign of Heaven had heard the shouting of the Street-child, and he came with the whole retinue of heaven and the retinue of the water-spirits, and held a horse-race with all the Agus. 2. The handmaid Darlhagochodma took Lady 'aBruguma to the race-course, and put her on a rock. 3. The handmaid said :— "To-day listen to my word : Upon whose horse thou canst jump at the race, his bride thou wilt be !

4. Listen to-day to the word of the servant,
5. Listen to Darlhagochodma's word !
6. To-day will the skin be pulled over thy ears ;<sup>9</sup>
7. Father brTanpa's daughter will receive blows !"
8. Then the king of Heaven, rGyabbzhin, came riding along, and 'aBruguma spake :—
9. "I know neither the man that is riding,
10. Nor even the swift horse underneath."

<sup>9</sup> Dr. Laufer asks for an analysis of this sentence. The Tibetan has : *rkya! rlon ni bumola rkya! shus blang yin*. The literal translation is : 'To the girl who is like a wet leather-bag, will be given a peeling off of the skin.' In my translation I made use of the corresponding German idiom.



Thereupon the handmaid said : —

11. "If thou knowest not the man that is riding,
12. Know, that is the King of Heaven ;
13. And the swift steed underneath
14. Is the god's horse, called the Bay.
15. Man and horse touch not, let them go ! If thou jumpest now, then thou committest a great sin against the gods !"

So 'aBruguma did not jump.

16. Then the **Earth-Mother**, sKyab abdun came riding along. Lady 'aBruguma spake :—

17. "I know neither the man that is riding,
18. Nor even the swift horse underneath."

The handmaid said :—

19. "If thou knowest not yet the man that is riding,
20. See, it is sKyabs bdun, the Earth-Mother ;
21. And the swift horse underneath,
22. That is the red earth-horse.
23. Rider and horse touch not, let them go ! If thou jumpest now, then thou committest a great sin against the earth !"

So 'aBruguma did not jump.

24. Then lCogpo, the **King of the water-spirits**, came riding along, and 'aBruguma spake :—

25. "I know neither the man that is riding,
26. Nor even the swift horse underneath."

The servant said :—

27. "If thou knowest not yet the man that is riding,
28. See, it is lCogpo, the Water-king;
29. And the swift steed underneath,
30. That is the blue water-horse.
31. Rider and horse touch not, let them go ! If thou jumpest now, thou committest a great sin against the water-spirits !"

So 'aBruguma did not jump.

32. Then all the **Agus of the land of gLing** came riding past, and 'aBruguma did not jump.
33. Last of all the **Street-child** came riding along. He had put off his humble form. He had a reddish-violet crown,<sup>10</sup> and [his] horse a short, reddish-violet mane. On the man's right shoulder the sun was rising, [and] on left the moon. 'aBruguma spake :—

<sup>10</sup> Tuft of hair (according to Dr. Lanfer and Jäschke's Dictionary).



34. "I know neither the man that is riding,

35. Nor even the swift horse underneath."

Then said Darlhagochodma : —

36. If thou knowest not yet the man that is riding,

37. See, it is Kesar, of gLing the King;

38. And the swift steed underneath,

39. It is the noble rKyangbyung dbyerpa.

40. Now if everything is well carried out, then all people will call me Gochodma [that is : She that fulfils]. If it is not carried out well, then I shall call myself Gomichod [that is : Unfulfilled]. Man and horse let not pass; seize them." 41. So when Kesar came riding on, Maiden 'aBruguma suddenly jumped on to the horse. 42. As the maiden jumped, Kesar put on his humble form again, caused a strong smell of lice, and changed the horse into a female Dzo with broken horns. 43. Then all the street-folk shouted : — "Hurrah for love! Lady 'aBruguma is our Street-boy's bride! Then 'aBruguma made the Street-child her bridegroom, and took him home.

#### VIII.

The Eighth Tale is the Tale of Kesar, who teases 'aBruguma.

1. One day 'aBruguma's mother spread the carpet out the wrong way round, so that it had the front edge towards the wall. 2. The Street-boy said : — "Where the front edge of the carpet is, there the face of the guest must also be," and sat down with his face turned to the wall. 3. Then spake Father brTanpa to 'aBruguma : — "The boy is nine times too clever; he will run away yet." 4. Therefore the maiden covered the Street-boy with a pot, turning it upside down.<sup>11</sup> 5. Now although the handmaid and the maiden herself sat before it keeping watch, the Street-child escaped without letting either hear anything. 6. Before the door he tore his upper garment in pieces near the place where the dogs were kept, killed a goat and poured its blood out. The entrails of the goat he wrapped round the teeth of the dogs. Then he fled into the innermost part of the valley. 7. When Father brTanpa saw that [before the door], he said to 'aBruguma : — "My daughter, go and look for him! The dogs have surely not eaten him!" Then 'aBruguma went to look for him all around on a hundred, [yea] a thousand mountains, and did not find him. 8. The maiden's dress tore right up to the collar. [Her] shoes tore from the sole right up to the top. 9. As she did not find him yet, she went to Agu dPalle and Agu dGani, and spake : —

10. "Thou on [thy] golden throne, Agu dGani, now listen!

11. Early in the morning I began to climb, and came on to the golden hill;

12. In the evening I descended, and came to the copper-field.

13. Did he then come for copper? I would now like to ask the Agu!"

Agu dGani spake : —

14. "If the dogs have devoured the Street-child,

15. Then will the skin be pulled over thy ears,

16. Then indeed will blows be laid on brTanpa's daughter!"

So 'aBruguma went to Agu dPalle, and spake : —

17. Thou on [thy] throne of shell there, Agu dPalle, then listen!

18. In the morning I began to climb, and came on to the silver hill;

19. In the evening I descended, and came to the lead-fields.

20. Did he then come for lead? I would like to ask the Agu!"

<sup>11</sup> Dr. Laufer's translation, 'she put him in a pot with his face underneath,' is impossible; this is the opening of the pot.



Agu dPalle said : —

21. "If the dogs have devoured the Street-child,

22. Then will the skin be pulled over thy ears,

23. Then indeed will blows be laid on brTanpa's daughter!"

24. Then spake 'aBruguma: — "Everybody says that!" and went to look for him again. Then she took a stone which had a hole [in it], looked through [it], [to see] whether she could see him, and caught sight of him in the innermost corner of the valley. 25. And he had the reddish-violet crown on, and [his] horse [had] the reddish-violet mane; he had put off his humble form, and was dancing around merrily. 26. Then the maiden ran as fast as ever she could, and reached the place where he was. 27. He said: — "Well, girl, from where hast thou come?" and gave her, in a piece of a broken cup, a loathsome lump of bad meal, which he had kneaded together. 28. He spake: — "If thou eatest this, I will run off again!" 'aBruguma ate it and said: — "Then go, good King, do!" He spake: — 29. "And thou, the rich daughter of a rich man, hast eaten up the whole bad dough. 30. If I meet a dog, the dog shall hear of it. 31. If I meet a man, the man shall hear of it!" 32. Then they both went back to Mother Gogzalhamo.

33. One day as the Street-boy was preparing a feast, he slaughtered many sheep and goats. 34. One skinned animal he hid in 'aBruguma's cloak, and said: — 35. "One skinned animal is missing! Who is the thief? Mother, thou hast surely not stolen it?" 36. The mother answered: — "Would I then take anything besides what thou hast given me?" 37. He spake: — "Handmaid, thou hast surely not stolen it?" 38. The handmaid answered: — "Would I then take anything besides what the king has given me?" 39. Then he spake to 'aBruguma: — "And thou wilt surely steal nothing, thou rich child of a rich man? Stand up now, and shake [yourself]!" 40. 'aBruguma said: — "Would I then take anything besides what the king has given me?" All at once she stood up, and as she shook [herself], it dropped out of her cloak. 41. The Street-child said: — "And thou hast stolen it, thou rich child of a rich man! I will not go with thee!" In this way he teased her.

## IX.

### The Ninth Tale is the Tale of the Wedding.

1. Mother Gogzalhamo spread out three carpets, one blue, one red and one white. Then she hung up three ribbons, one white, one red and one blue. 2. She spake to 'aBruguma: — "Shut [thy] eyes tight, take one out of all these ribbons, and go and sit down on one of the carpets! I shall wait for a dream." 3. So 'aBruguma shut [her] eyes tight, took a ribbon and went on to a carpet. 4. She took a blue ribbon, and came on to the blue carpet. 5. [Her] mother said: — "Now is Kesar, the King of the gods, thy portion. Later on the white tents of Yarkand will be thy portion!" This she spake prophesying. 6. In the same moment the Street-child had put on [his] lowly form again. 7. 'aBruguma spake to [her] mother: — "Give me back the man who was just here!" 8. [Her] mother said: — "I will go [and look for him] with thee." 9. The Street-child had been brought to the glorious castle, and been stripped of [his] humble body by [his] father's brothers. 10. Maiden 'aBruguma arrived before the castle and saw the horse rKyangbyung dbyerpa. 11. The horse spake: — "Lady 'aBrugu, enter!" 'aBruguma said: — "I have lost my former husband." 12. Then the horse took the maiden up with his teeth and threw her into the glorious castle. 13. Then King Kesar, got a golden throne, and 'aBruguma a throne of turquoise. 14. Now they were happy, and became stout. Three nights long they celebrated their wedding, and three days long they gave feasts. The tale and the story is at an end.

(To be continued.)



EXTRACTS FROM THE LOG OF A VOYAGE ALONG THE  
COAST OF INDIA IN 1746.

BY R. C. TEMPLE.

(Continued from p. 67.)

III.

LOG I.

I.

Text.

Log I. occupies 31 pp. of the MS.

Headlines to Pages.

The headlines vary with every few pages, and the four I have picked out below are typical:—

- (1) Ship Wake Captain Robert Norton from Calpie to Madrasso.
- (2) Transactions of board the Ship Wake Robert Norton Comm<sup>d</sup> from Calcute to Madrasso.
- (3) Ship Wake Robert Norton Comm<sup>d</sup> from Bengall to Madrass.
- (4) Ship Wake Robert Norton Comm<sup>d</sup> from Bengall towards Madrass.

The Log commences thus:—

*Friday, Aug. 15 1746.* Moderate Gales & squally weather with rain att 6 A. M. Weighed from Calpee |<sup>14</sup> att 11 D<sup>o</sup> Came too att Kedgerie with the BB<sup>15</sup> | Wind SEbE | Kedgerie trees NWbW. | found riding here a Dutch Sloop.

*Satdy 16.* The first & middle part of these 24 Hours fresh gales & Squaaly rainy Weather | this Day Capt Hutchenson return'd, haveing sprung a Leak & Oblig'd to go to Calcute | att 10 A. M. Came on board the Capt:<sup>16</sup> & Sloop Load'd with Bales & Bages of Rice | D<sup>o</sup> Hoisted them in | Stowit them Down the Hold.

*Sunday, Aug: 17.* . . . . att 8 A. M. Weigh'd from Kedgrie | Wind ENE.

*Monday, 18.* . . . . att 8 D<sup>o</sup> [A. M.] passed the upper Buoy of the barrebulle, att ½ past 9 the lower Buoy of the barrebulle WSW | att the same time the Buoy of the fair way to be seen of [off] the Deck.

*Tuesday, Aug: 19 1746.* . . . . att 8 D<sup>o</sup> [A. M.] Discharg'd the pilot | in 12 F & ½ past D<sup>o</sup> Carried away our Topmast<sup>17</sup> about 5 foote above the Cap: went Directly to work in Clearing the Rigging & by noon got Every thing ready to gett the other Topmast | the Carp:<sup>18</sup> Employ'd in fitting another topm<sup>19</sup> | Course per Compasse SSW.

From Wednesday, August the 20th, 1746, the Log is continued in due form, thus:—

H[our] | Course | Winds | Sound<sup>20</sup> | [date and remarks].

Extracts.

*Wednesday Aug: 20 1746.* 9 [A. M.] fair | saw the black pagoda, Dist. 8 Miles of us 11 [A. M.]. Jakernot Pagoda NW from y<sup>e</sup> Main Yard | fair Weather. 12 [noon]. Jakernot Pag: NbW & the E<sup>e</sup> most High Land on the Coast NW to WbN | Dist from y<sup>e</sup> Pag: 4 Lea(gues).

<sup>14</sup> This mark denotes that there is no stop in the text where one is necessary.

<sup>15</sup> I. e., the best bower anchor.

<sup>17</sup> I. e., the fore top-mast.

<sup>16</sup> This entry shows that the Captain did not write the log.

<sup>18</sup> I. e., the carpenter.



*Thursday Aug: 21 1746.* Att sunsett the Extrema<sup>(ms)</sup> of the Land from NbE to SWbW | the bluff point<sup>19</sup> to y<sup>e</sup> Northward of Gangam NW | [Dist:] of<sup>20</sup> Shoar 3 Leagues. Att sunrise the Land from SWbW to NbE | the High Land of Summerwarren being the Northern Extream | Dist of Shore ab<sup>3</sup> 7 Miles.

*Fryday Aug 22.* 3 [P. M.] hazey. 8 [P. M.] Pundy Rocks NbE. Att Noon the Land from NbW to the Dolphin's Nose | Dist of Shoar 4 Leagues.

*Saturday 23. 1746.* Att Orise [sunrise] the Land from SWbW to NNE. Bimlepatam flag staff WbN | of Shore 4 Miles | the Dolphin's Nose & Sugar loaf both in one WSW.

*Sunday Aug the 24 1746.* Came on board a Cattermaran from Beimlepatam. 9 A. M. Went away the Capt to Vizacquepatam | a ship in Vizaegupatam Road | SW Beimlepatam flagg | NNE the Sugar loaf.

*Monday August 25 1746.* 5 (P. M.) Came of a Cattermaran. found the Ship in the road to be the Loovain Capt Mackmath Bound to Bengall | a gives us an account that the 18 Instant he was obliged to run of out of the Madrass road the place being attack'd by eight sail of french Ship's und<sup>r</sup> the Command off Monsieur Lebourdenie.

*Tuesday Aug: 26 1746.* In Vizacquepatam Road. Att 9 P. M. sail'd the Loovain Capt Mackmath for Bengall . . . . att 8 A. M. sent the pinnace out after paddy Boats, passing by the Road & after firing a Gun they Both Brought too & Came in | att 11 D<sup>e</sup> sent the two Masters ashore to the Chief [of the Factory] after haveing inform'd us of a large Ship Cruizing of Ingeram.

*Wednesday 27 1746.* Land & sea Wind as Usual brought Sevrall paddy Boats & brought on Board there Masters, to Inform us wether they see any Ships of [off] Ingeram | they all say the Coast is Clear | Assures us there is no such thing as Any Cruizers on the Coast as far as Masulipatam . . . . Employed in stowing & unstowing the fore Hold & Warping the Ship Nearer the Barr in Case of being attack'd by an Enemy to run her ashore.

*Saturday 30 1746.* Att Orise the Ex off Land<sup>21</sup> ENE to NW | Dist of Shoar 3 or 4 Leagues | Dept of Water 18 F | Att 6 A. M. saw two large Ships right ahead wich oblig'd to bear away fear<sup>d</sup> them to be Enemy's | att 7 D<sup>e</sup> sent the pinnace w<sup>th</sup> orders if friends to make a Sign | all which was accordingly Done seeing first to Hoist Dutch Coulour. Att Noon the Land from P<sup>e</sup> Guard an ogre SWbW to ENE | the two ships SE & E | Distance of Shoare 3 or 4 Miles & from Ships 4 Miles.

*Sunday Aug: 31 1746.* Att 1 P. M. Came on board the pinnace from the Dutch Ships which Come from Batavia | Att Noon the Land from SWbW to the NWbW being P Gardeware | Dist of D 2 or 3 Leagues.

*Monday Sept 1 1746.* Att sun sett the N<sup>o</sup>most land being P<sup>e</sup> Gardeware | att Noon low Land . . . . Nassipore P<sup>e</sup> att the same time NWbN.

*Fryday Sept 5 1746.* Att sun rise saw the High Land of Carera. Att Noon land from the High Land of Carera | N. B. att 11 A. M. Standing in Shoar Came out of Stiff Clay into hard brown sand but presen<sup>22</sup> over again into soft ground | we take it to be the tail of the Armegon.

*Saturday Sept 6 1746.* Att sunrise the Body of the High Land of Carera bore NW | No other land to be seen it being Very Hazey.

<sup>19</sup> I cannot trace this spot in any of the sailing directions. Ganjam was practically abandoned as a port in 1815.

<sup>20</sup> We should read "off" here, and in all similar places.

<sup>21</sup> I. e., the extremes of land.



*Sunday Sept 7 1746.* Att Sunsett . . . the Highland of **Correra** NNW . . . this morning the pinnace went Speak with a paddy Boat in Shoar, but could gett no News from **Madras** . . . att sunsett a small river off of which lay Sevrall Boats att an Anchor bearing WSW.

*Monday Sept 8 1746.* When anchor'd att 4 P. M. the land bore from North SW | the High Land of **Corera** NNW | Dist of Shoar 3 or 4 Miles | Severall white build<sup>e</sup> all along this Shoar.

*Tuesday Sept 9 1746.* Came a Chilling from **Ramnepatam** but no Certain Intelligence from **Madras**.

*Wednesday Sept 10.* **Armigon Hill** att D<sup>o</sup> time [sunrise] SW.

*Thursday Sept 11 1746.* the peek of **Armigon Hill** WbS $\frac{1}{2}$ S . . . all this After[noon] regular sounding as pr Columns . . . att 9 D<sup>o</sup> [A. M.] the High Land of **pullicat** SSW.

#### Memorandum.

Since Our Entering this Chanel between the **Armigon** & the Shore (**Blackwood's Harbour**) We find nothing remarkable | all along we have had good Sounding but Deepest Water as We always Edged towards the **Armigon** Until this Morning when Drawing near the narrow Channell between the **Beef Chitricory** & the S<sup>o</sup>most end of the **Armigon** Shoal we found very uneven Soundings as p<sup>r</sup> Logg untill Deepening to 17 fm Gradually | **N. B.** If any Person should be for entering this Channell being bound to the N<sup>o</sup>w<sup>d</sup> it is best to keep along Shore untill the High Land of **Pulicat** bear from the two round lumps SWbW to the S<sup>o</sup>most of D<sup>o</sup> SW $\frac{1}{2}$ S and a small round Hillock before Spoken off WbN in an offing of 9 or 10 fm | this little Hillock is within the Sandy Beach & is the Best mark for going in when you bring it to the aforesaid bearings | Steer in NWbN & you'll have no less Water than 5 fm | but Several overfals which you Must not be Surpriz'd att | after you bring it to bear WbS $\frac{1}{2}$ S you may be sure you are Clear of the Land reif & tail of the **Armigon** | then shape Your Course Accordingly | you'll have hard Ground | untill the little Hill bears SWbW of you | then soft Clay between the Depths of 7 or 8 fm and 17 or 18 on the **Armigon**.

*Saturday Sept 13 1746.* Unregular Soundings. The High Land of **Pulicat** from y<sup>e</sup> **Kittle** Bottom SW to the 2 round lumps WSW.

*Sunday Sept 14 1746.* 9, 10, 11 (P. M.). Lay too whilst we sent a boat of provisions to y<sup>e</sup> **Vernon** | D<sup>o</sup> saw a large Ship on the Beam which (obliged us) to make whate sail we Can & leave the **Vernon** to Shift for themselves. 6 (A. M.). no land in sight. 7 (A. M.). the Ship **Vernon** two Leagues astern of us | Att Noon we Judge our Selves to be E $\frac{1}{2}$ S from **Ramnepatam** | Dist about 10 Leagues | the Ship **Vernon** about 3 Leagues astern. Att 4 P. M. fir'd 2 Gunns att a Vessell which we took for a paddy Boat, being Desirous to gett some Intelligence from **Madras** | & after haveing brought her too, found her to be the **Vernon**, who gives the unfortunate relation of the taking of **Madras** by the french on Thursday the 11th Instant after a seige of 4 days only, & not but 6 men kill'd att the most, & not above 8 Sail of french Ships | the 2 Biggest 60 Guns | the rest 30 each & old Ships formerly merch<sup>t</sup> Ships. — this Vessell haveing Drove out of the Road und<sup>r</sup> a spritsail as far as **pullicat**, & there Demand<sup>e</sup> a Small Supply of Water & provisions from the Dutch, but they wou'd not supply them with any, nor protect them, so that after haveing taking on board the Number of 100 Soldiers & Gunners who made there Escape from **Madras** after the takeing of the town Came out this morning In order to sail for the first port for Security, by which Unfortunate News we are Oblig'd to bear away to some other port.



## LOG I.

## 2.

## Geography.

The log shows that the ship started from Calpie on the Hughli on August the 15th, 1746, and then stopped at Kedgerie for the rest of the day and till the 17th. On the 18th it passed the upper and lower buoys of the Barrebulle and also the buoys of the Fairway, and went out to sea on the 19th. On the 20th the Black Pagoda and the Jakernot Pagoda were passed.

The ship now began to keep close into the coast, passing the Bluff Point, Gangam, Summer-warren and Pundy Rocks to Bimlepatam, where it anchored on the 23rd. Thence could be seen the Dolphin's Nose and the Sugarloaf (off Vizagapatam). Here the Captain left the ship for Vizacquepatam on the 24th, the ship itself following him on the 26th. At Vizacquepatam there arrived news of ships off Ingeram and Masulipatam. On the 30th a fresh start was made, passing Point Guardaware (Guard-an-ogre in one place), where a ship from Boetavia was spoken, Nassipore, and the high-land of Carera, to what "we take it to be the tail of the Armegon" on the 5th September. On the 7th "came a *chiling* from Ramnepatam." On the 11th the high-land of Pullicat is seen, and then there is a description of what is now known as **Blackwood's Harbour**, in which appear two queer places, the "Reif Chitricory" and "y<sup>e</sup> Kittle Bottom." At this place, on the 14th September they hear of the taking of Madras, and make sail again for the North.

It is to the elucidation of this Geography and of terms used above that I propose now to devote some space, by way of following up the history of each word, so far as I am able to trace it.

But first there is a point worth noting here. It will be observed that after leaving the Húghli, and making his way across the Balasore Roads, Captain Norton got into soundings off what are now known as the Juggernaut Pagodas and into sight of land, and that he stuck to land for the rest of the voyage towards Madras. It will be observed also that he started on the 15th August. One reason for this course is to be found in Dunn's *Directory*, a book of sailing directions, dated 1780.

Dunn says, p. 240 :—"From the middle of August to April ships may sail from Bengal to any part of the bay: but either earlier or later it is very difficult to get out of the river [Húghli]. Ships that are going only Eastward or Southward may sail 10 or 15 days later; but those who sail after the beginning of April for the Coast of Coromandel will find it difficult to get Westward and perhaps lose their passage. Ships that sail from Bengal in August or September to the Coromandel Coast will meet with unsettled weather; sometimes moderate and fair, sometimes hard squalls, thunder and much rain; the winds usually SSW and WNW and sometimes SSE. They should therefore keep in from 15 to 30 fathoms close along the shore of Orixá, Golconda,<sup>22</sup> etc., for the benefit of the currents that begin to run along the shore to the SW. The wind, by often blowing from the land, renders keeping near the Shore difficult, especially between Vizagapatam and Armagon, and standing off shore is sometimes very advantageous. Therefore, a ship ought, under these circumstances, seldom or never to go out of soundings."

In the course of elucidating the Geography of this MS., the system adopted for the identification of the geographical names and vernacular words is the safe one of giving their history *verbatim* from maps and books, from the earliest procurable quotations to the present day. But I have omitted forms and quotations, except where necessary, to be found in so well-known a work as Yule's *Anglo-Indian Glossary* (Hobson-Jobson).

## LOG I.

## 3.

## Anglo-Indian Terms.

The words and forms contained in this log are those given below alphabetically.

<sup>22</sup> I. e., of Orissa and the Northern Circars of the Madras Presidency.



The maps quoted are from a collection, in the present writer's possession, of maps of the 16th, 17th and 18th centuries, relating to India and the Far East. The following is a list of those quoted in these pages, so far as they relate to Log I:—

1642. — W. Blaeuw.

1644. — Hondius.

1674. — Sanson d'Abbeville.

1687. — Coronelli.

c. 1720. — Van der Aa; general and special maps following the travellers undermentioned:—

Lopo Suares d'Albezeria.

Fernando Peres d'Andrade.

Cesare Federici (Cæsar Fredericks).

Ralph Fitch.

William Methold.

Nuno da Cunha.

Alfonso d'Albuquerque.

Gaspar Balbi.

c. 1720. — Pierre Mortier.

1740. — Guillaume de l'Isle; and later Ed. 1781.

1764. — Croisey.

1765. — French, probably copy of de l'Isle.

1780. — Rennell.

I would like to say a good word here for the accuracy of the old maps as regards places on the coasts of India. Though they often give prominence to places now almost unknown, but once famous, and omit others then unknown, but now famous, in a way that is puzzling to the modern student, they did hit off the ports and places frequented by mariners with a degree of accuracy that is extraordinary, considering the means to hand.

#### Armagon, Armigon.

This place is not noted in Yule's *Glossary*.

1642. — Aremoga. — W. Blaeuw; map.

1644. — Aremogam. — Hondius; map.

1678. — Mr. [Streynsham] Master started on a land journey to Masulipatam *via* Pulicat, Armagon and Pettepolee. — Yule, *Diary of William Hedges*, Vol. II. p. cclxii. Streynsham Master observed in his official diary that "the name was Duraspatam." — Pringle, *Madras Consultations for 1683*, p. 140, n. 74.

1710. — There are several Places along the Coast to the Northward, which in former Times had Commerce abroad, but are now neglected and unfrequented. Armagon is one. — Alex. Hamilton, *East Indies*, Ed. 1739, Vol. I. p. 369.

c. 1720. — Armagon. — Van der Aa; map.

c. 1720. — Armego, Armegon. — Mortier; map.

1764. — Armegon. — Croisey; map.



1813. — **Armagon or Duraspatam** . . . . In 1625 the English obtained a piece of ground from the Naig or Chief of the District and erected a factory here, which they fortified . . . . On the acquisition of Madras, this place fell into decay. — Millburn, *Commerce*, Vol. II. p. 83.

1873. — In 1625 . . . . the first English Settlement on the Coromandel Coast . . . . The latter (i. e., the Company) gave to this **Durgarazapatam** the appellation of **Armaganulu** . . . . The salt used to be stated as exported from **Durgarazapatam** and **Armugam**. — Boswell, *Nellore District*, p. 440 f.<sup>23</sup> **Armeghon Shoal** is about 10 miles long. — Page 24.

1874. — **Armegon, Armogham or Doogoraspatam**. — Taylor's *India Directory*, p. 460.

1891. — **Armeghon**. — Admiralty Chart.

1893. — **Armegam (Arumugam, Tamil)**. Named after **Armoogam Moodelliar**, by whose assistance the first English Settlement on the Coromandel Coast, consisting of a factory defended by twelve pieces of cannon, was established at this place in 1628.<sup>24</sup> — *Madras Man. of Admn.* Vol. III. p. 41. **Doogaraupatan** . . . . **Skr. Dhruvarajapattana** and **Yuvarajapattana** . . . . called **Armegam** by the English. On the 24th September, 1761, on the removal of the establishment to **Chennacoopam**, the modern Madras, the place was abandoned. — Page 281.

#### Barrebullo.

This name is not noted in Yule's *Glossary*.

1703. — **Kitesall or Barabulla Trees** (in the 1701 Ed. of the Chart called **Parrasoli Trees**). — Yule, Early Charts of the Hùghli, in *Diary of W. Hedges*, Vol. III. p. ccvii. In the chart above quoted **Barabulla Head** is the name given to the shoal itself. I may also note here that whatever **Barabulla** may mean, **Parrasoli** and **Kitesall** (= **Kittysol**, see Yule, s. v.) both mean Umbrella, and the trees mentioned were meant to be called Umbrella Trees. This is shown by the following quotations: — 1761. — A chart of Chittagong by Barth. Plasted marks on the S. side of Chittagong R. an umbrella-like tree, called **Kittysol Tree**.<sup>25</sup> — Yule, s. v.

1780. — Rennell, in a Military Map dated Aug. 1780, mentions the **Barrabulla Flat** and both the **Upper and Lower Barrabulla Buoys**, and also the **Buoy of the Fairway**.

1809. — **Barabulla** and another parallel sand begin at the North end of the Eastern Brace, from whence they stretch Northwards nearly to Ingellee, having very shoal water on them, and  $2\frac{1}{2}$  or 3 fathoms in a channell that divides them, the **Barabulla** being the Easternmost of the two, and forms the West side of the old channell called the **Fairway**. — Horsburgh, *Sailing Directions*, p. 358. But on p. 360 we find "**Fairway or Western Channell** bounded . . . . on the West side by the **Barabulla** . . . . The 2nd or **Fairway Buoy** was generally placed 5 or 6 miles NNW from it, being then in the channell, a course was steered to the NN Eastward for the **Lower Buoy of the Barabulla**."

1874. — The **Barabulla** and other parallel and smaller sands . . . . **Western Channell**, formerly called the **Fairway**, is bounded . . . . on the W. side by the **Barabulla**. — Taylor, *India Directory*, pp. 475, 477.

#### Bengall.

This spelling is not in Yule's *Glossary*, but I cull the following examples from his *Diary of Sir William Hedges*: —

1677. — [We] have caused three draughts of the same [River Ganges] to be deliver'd, vizt: one unto Captain John Goldsborough in the **Bengall Merchant**. — Vol. III. p. cc.

1682. — Being arrived in the **Bay of Bengalla**, you are to sail up the river Ganges as high as **Hughly**. — Vol. III. p. cc.

<sup>23</sup> Pringle, *Mad. Consult.* for 1683, throws doubt on this derivation, Page 140, n. 74.

<sup>24</sup> This does not appear to be quite accurate. Vide Millburn, *Commerce*, Vol. II. p. 83: and Article, "**Doogaraupatan**," p. 231 of the *Manual* itself.

<sup>25</sup> Stevens, *Guide*, 1775, has, p. 120, "**keddy-salls**."



1703. — The rich kingdom of **Bengall**. — Chart in Vol. III. p. ccxx.

Also for this last year there is a contemporary quotation :—

1703. — The long Pepper grows chiefly in **Bengall**. — *Collection of Dutch Voyages*, p. 142.

#### **Bimlepatam, Beimlepatam.**

This name is not noted in Yule's *Glossary*.

1642. — **Bimliapatam**. — Blaeuw; map.

1644. — **Bimilipatan**. — Hondius; map.

c. 1720. — **Bimlepatam, Bimilpatam**. — Van der Aa; map.

c. 1720. — **Bimlepatam**. — Mortier; map.

1740 and 1781. — **Bimilipatam**. — De l'Isle; map.

1765. — **Bimilipatam**. — French map, probably de l'Isle.

1780. — From **Visigapatnam** and **Bimelipatnam** or **Bimilipatam** the coast runs NE 4½ leagues. — Dunn, *Directory*, p. 151.

1891. — **Bimlipatam**. — Admiralty Chart.

1893. — **Bimlipatam, Bimilpatam**, Hindustani [*i. e.*, Musalmán], **Bhimunipatamu**, Telugu. — *Mad. Man. Admn.* Vol. III. p. 96.

#### **Black Pagoda.**

This place is not noted in Yule's *Glossary*.

1676. — We sailed in sight of the **Black Pagoda** and the **White Pagoda**. The latter is that place called **Jaggernat**, to which the Hindues from all parts of India come on pilgrimages. — Streyusham Master's *Journal* in Yule's *Diary of W. Hedges*, Vol. II. p. ccxxxviii.

1764. — **Pagoda Noire**. — Croisey; map.

1780. — Four leagues EbN of **Jagrenat pagoda** is the **Black pagoda**, which at a distance (like the former) resembles a large ship under sail; but on a nearer view it loses somewhat of its magnitude. — Dunn, *Directory*, p. 153.

1809. — **Black Pagoda** stands at a small distance from the sea, and . . . . from the **Jaggernaut Pagodas** . . . . distant 14 miles. — Horsburgh, *Sailing Directions*, p. 353. Repeated in Taylor, *India Directory*, 1874, p. 468.

1877. — Anang Bhim Deo . . . . who reigned 1175 to 1202 A. D. . . . built the present temple of **Jagarnath** . . . . grand as this temple is, it falls far short of the marvellous structure, which was raised half a century later in honour of the sun at **Kanarak**, on the shores of the Bay of Bengal, nineteen miles North West of **Puri**. This temple known as the **Black Pagoda**, or rather this fragment, for it was never completed and is now in ruins, was raised by Linguliya Narsinh. — Hunter, *Statistical Acct.*, Bengal, Vol. XVIII. p. 185 f.

1891. — On the Admiralty Chart the **Black Pagoda** is shown as the **Baleswar Temple** between **Puri** and **Kanarak**.

#### **Betavie.**

See Yule's *Glossary*, *s. v.* **Batavia**. This is a queer spelling of this well-known place-name.

1619. — On the day of the capture of **Jakarta**, 30th May, 1619, it was certainly time and place to speak of Governor-General's dissatisfaction that the name of **Batavia** had been given to the Castle. — Valentijn, Vol. IV. p. 489, in Yule, *s. v.* **Batavia**.

1683. — This morning a great Dutch Ship passed by here from **Batavia** for **Palliacatt** (p. 43). On this Pringle notes, p. 138, n. 43 :— Previously **Jakarta**. — Pringle, *Mad. Consult.* for 1683.



1817. — The Division of **Batavia**, which comprises what formerly constituted the native province of **Jakarta** or **Jakarta**. — *Raffles, Java*, Ed. 1830, Vol. I. p. 10.

**Calcutte.**

See Yule, *s. v.* **Calcutta**.

1720. — **Colcote**. — Van der Aa; map.

1740. — **Colcota**. — De l'Isle; map.

1764. — **Golgota**. — Croisey; map. Cf. the French form **Golgotha** in 1702, in Yule, *s. v.* **Calcutta**.

1765. — **Colcota**. — French map, probably by de l'Isle.

1761. — **Colcota**. — Dezauche, Ed. of de l'Isle; map.

The following three forms, found on old maps as the names of places on the coast of Orissa, probably refer to **Calcuta** on the **Hughli** and not to **Calcutta**. See Yule, *Glossary*, p. 771.

1642. — **Calecota**. — Blaeuw; map.

1644. — **Calecota**. — Hondius; map.

1674. — **Cocala**. — Sanson d'Abbeville; map.

In 1739, or probably some 20 years earlier, **Calcuta** is thus referred to: — **Culculla**, a Market Town for Corn. — Alex. Hamilton, *East Indies*, Ed. 1739, Vol. II. p. 6.

**Calpee, Calpie.**

This place is not noted in Yule's *Glossary*.

1780. — **Culpee**. — Rennell; military map.

1875. — **Kalpi**, containing a large *bāsar* and market-place for the sale of rice grown in the interior. — Hunter, *Stat. Acct., Bengal*, Vol. I. p. 228.

1886. — Entering immediately below Diamond Harbour, or **Kalpi Creek**, about 6 miles further down. — Yule, *Glossary, s. v.* **Rogues' River**.

1899. — It is to be identified with the **Kulpee Creek**. — Yule, *Dairy of W. Hedges*, Vol. III. p. ccix.

1891. — **Kalpi Pag[oda]**. — Admiralty Chart.

**Carera, Correra, Corera.**

This place is not noted in Yule's *Glossary*.

1679. — 26th (April) about 7 in the morning we came to **Careda** . . . . The Towne is small and of meane thacht houses and narrow streets. — Streynsham Master's *Journal* in Mackenzie, *Kistna District*, p. 150.

1683. — Rundalela Shawhe [Bandau'llah Shah], Governor of **Carera** and thereabouts . . . . it is aged that as soon as with c(on)veniency we Settle a ffactory att **Carera**. — Pringle, *Mad. Consult.* for 1683, p. 72. On this Mr. Pringle notes, n. 85: — **Karadu**, North of **Ramapattanam** and a sea port: "the best town" in Streynsham Master's opinion, which he passed on his way Northwards from Madras (in 1676).

c. 1710. — **Carrera** has the Benfit of a large River that reaches a great Way into the Country. — Alex. Hamilton, *East Indies*, Vol. I. p. 369.



c. 1720. — **Kerare**. — Van der Aa; map.

c. 1720. — **Kanerere**. — Mortier; map.

1764. — **Cerare**. — Croisey; map.

1780. — Six leagues NbW from Divelan is **Cerara** or **Carera**, you may coast it in 8, 9 or 10 fathoms. To the northward of **Cerara** are two very thick woods and in the town a white pagoda. Within land are some high mountains which show themselves 10 or 12 leagues at sea in clear weather. — Dunn, *Directory*, p. 147.

1809. — Gondagam or Great Ganjam . . . . and 5 leagues further the River **Cerrara**, where there is a village and a pagoda . . . . Some of them [charts] place **Cerrara** in the latitude here assigned to Gondigam. — Horsburgh, *Directions for Sailing*, Vol. I. p. 345. Text repeated in Ed. of 1841, Vol. I. p. 599.

1891. — **Kareda** in the Admiralty Chart.

1893. — **Caraid, Kareda**, Telugu. From *kari*, Tel., black + *vidu*, Tel., town. Hardly any trade by sea now. Noted for its betel gardens. — *Mad. Man. Admn.* Vol. III. p. 126, s. v. Car.

#### Cattermaran.

This spelling is not given by Yule, s. v. **Catamaran**.

1685. — About 10 o'clock this morning 2 Black Fellows [*i. e.*, natives] on a **Cattamaran** came off to us with a Note . . . . By y<sup>e</sup> return of this **Cattamaran** I wrott to the President Gyfford. — Yule, *Diary of W. Hedges*, Vol. I. p. 181 f.

1685. — And that said letter be sent by a **Cattamaran** for expedition and duplicate overland. — Pringle, *Mad. Consult.* of 1685, p. 107, and n. 80.

1699. — On arrival in Madras Roads the following note from the Port Officer is delivered after usual custom by a messenger on a **catamaran**. — Yule, *Diary of W. Hedges*, Vol. III. p. xli. "In answer: to y<sup>e</sup>: **Catamaran** note" (p. xli).

1893. — **Catamaran, Kattumaram**, Tamil. Raft, consisting of three logs of very buoyant wood. — *Mad. Man. Admn.* Vol. III. p. 137.

#### Chiling.

An Indian trader. Yule's references to this obscure term (*s. v.* **cheling**) are only for 1667 and 1613. The reference in the text is therefore valuable. See also Yule, *s. v.* **Kling**.

The following quotations seem to give the whole history of the word, according to the view taken by Yule:—

1595. — A certain Black [native], a **Quillinman**, commonly called **Quillin Panjan**, or Long **Quillin**, came on board (p. 148) . . . . The Dutch being near Bantam, the same **Quillin Panjan**, Inhabitant of St Thomas of Meliaput a town situated on the Coast of the Coromandel [*i. e.*, Madras] the Governor's Interpreter came to meet them (p. 149) . . . . The **Quillins** merchants value them very much (p. 182) . . . . There you may see a Meeting early in the Morning of Merchants of all Nations . . . . **Quillins** (p. 188) . . . . The **Malains** and **Quillins** Merchants are Pawn-Brokers and lend money at a vast Interest (p. 198). — *Collection of Dutch Voyages*, Ed. 1703.

#### Chitricory.

This name is not given in Yule's *Glossary*.

1764. — **Cicarehoerie**. — Croisey; map.



1780. — From **Paliacata** to **Cicara-Hoeria** or **Sikari-hori** the coast runs NbW 8 leagues. Near this place is a reef, like that of **Trifou**,<sup>22</sup> which runs as far into the sea, but further along the coast . . . It is reckoned 26 miles from **Cicara-Hoeria** to **Armegon**. — *Dunn, Directory*, p. 146.

1873. — The upper part of **Pulicat Lake**, a little above **Sriharikota**. — *Boswell, Nellore District*, p. 25.

1893. — **Shreeharicote** . . . **Sriharikot**, Sanskritized from **chikireni**, Telugu, a tree, *albizzia amara*, + *kota*, Telugu, a fort; from the trees being abundant . . . A long low island or bank of alluvial and marine deposits, rising only a few feet above the water level [*i. e.*, **Armegon Shoal**]. — *Mad. Man. Admn.* Vol. III. p. 832.

#### Dolphin's Nose.

This name is not given in *Yule's Glossary*.

1780. — The **Dolphin's Nose**, which is on the Westernmost point of **Visiagapatam** Road. — *Dunn, Directory*, p. 308.

1813. — **Vizagapatam** is distinguished by the Headland called the **Dolphin's Nose**. — *Milburn, Commerce*, Vol. II. p. 90.

1891. — **Dolphin's Nose**. — *Admiralty Chart*.

#### Gangam.

This name is not given in *Yule's Glossary*.

1740. — **Gaujam**. — *De l'Isle*; map.

1764. — **Ganjam**. — *Croisey*; map.

1780. — **Ganjam**, called **Carepare** in the *Coasting Pilot*. — *Dunn, Directory*, p. 261.

1809. — In this space [**Ganjam**] are several small rivers and villages near the sea; that of **Caletar** or **Alatar** is  $3\frac{1}{2}$  or 4 leagues to the NE. — *Horsburgh, Sailing Dir.* Vol. I. p. 352.

1891. — **Ganjam**. — *Admiralty Chart*.

The old name for **Ganjam** thus discovered is valuable, for it is to be found on old maps and is not otherwise identifiable. Thus:—

1642. — **Caregare**. — *Blaeuw*; map.

1644. — **Caregare**. — *Hondius*; map.

1720. — **Carepare**. — *Mortier*; map.

#### Gardaware, Guard-an-ogre.

See *Yule, s. v. Godavery*.

1642. — **P. de Godonosa**. — *Blaeuw*; map.

1644. — **P. de Godonosa**. — *Hondius*; map.

1687. — **C. Guadavari**. — *Coronelli*; map.

c. 1720. — **Cuadavari, Goudewary**. — *Van der Aa*; map.

c. 1720. — **Cap de Guadavari**. — *Mortier*; map.

<sup>22</sup> 1841. — **Ennore**, called **Trifoo** and **Natoo** in some old charts and directories. — *Horsburgh, Sailing Directions*, Vol. I. p. 597.



1784. — Pointe de Godvarin. — Croisey; map.  
 1780. — From Narsapour to Point Godvarin or Gordware. — Dann, *Directory*, p. 149.  
 1809. — Point Gordeware or Gadavary. — Horsburgh, *Sail. Dir.* Vol. I. p. 318.  
 1813. — Point Gordeware or Godavery. — Milburn, *Commerce*, Vol. II. p. 89.  
 1874. — Gordeware or Godavery Point. — Taylor, *India Directory*, p. 463.  
 1891. — Godavari Point. — Admiralty Chart.  
 1893. — Godavery, Gôdavarî, Telugu. — *Mad. Man. Admn.* Vol. III. p. 312. The writer of this article clearly means to infer that the name is *goda + vari* = boundary river.

#### Ingeram.

This name is not given in Yule's *Glossary*.

1642. — Bingeraem. — Blaeuw; map.  
 1644. — Bingeraem. — Hondius; map.  
 c. 1710. — A little Way up in Corraung Bay is Angerang. — Alex. Hamilton, *East Indies*, Ed. 1739, Vol. I. p. 371.

1792. — Madras to Ingeram, 399 British Miles. — Rennell, *Memoir*, p. 326.  
 1813. — Up the river [Godavery] is the town of Ingeram, where the Company has a Chief, and where large quantities of piece-goods are manufactured. — Milburn, *Commerce*, Vol. II. p. 89.  
 1878. — Five miles to the south of Coringa are . . . . Injaram. At the latter place was one of the early settlements and a promising factory. — Morris, *Godavery District*, p. 41.  
 1893. — Inzaram . . . . near the mouth of the Godavery . . . . Factory founded in 1708, established in 1722, . . . . continued as a mercantile station till 1829. Formerly celebrated for its manufacture of long-cloth and for its trade in general (p. 372) . . . . The three early British Factories, Injaram, Bendamoorkunka and Madapollem, were situated near the Gowtamy, Vasishtha and Veinateyam mouths [of the Godavery] (p. 313). — *Mad. Man. Admn.* Vol. III.

#### Jakernot Pagoda.

For this much ill-treated name see Yule, *s. v.* Juggernaut.

1633. — Your opinion of sending A man to Gugernat Et setera places. — Letter in Yule, *Diary of W. Hedges*, Vol. II. p. clxxvii.  
 1689-79. — I have seen within some of these great Pagods a large cart and 2 horses with all their appurtenances cut out of an entire stone as bigge as most duncarts & horses & these they often bow to in representation of their God Jn<sup>o</sup> Gernaet<sup>27</sup> [? Janganat for Jagannâth] being as he is upon some festivals carried about in a large triumphant chariot most rarely carved painted & gilded by men of which in Order — [In margin "By what Name this Pagod is called"]. — MS., *Asia, wherein is contained y<sup>e</sup> scituation, comers, cus[toms] &c. of many Provinces Isles &c. in India Pers[ia] Arabia & y<sup>e</sup> South Seas*. — Experienced by me T: B[ateman]: in y<sup>e</sup> forementioned Indie [s] Viz<sup>t</sup> from Anno M. DC. LXIX. to M. DC. LXXIX.

1682. — Y<sup>e</sup> Captain being desirous to see y<sup>e</sup> Jagernot Pagodas for his better satisfaction, which we discovered this morning about 8 o'clock. — Yule, *Diary of W. Hedges*, Vol. I. p. 30.

1708. — Treats of the Sea-coast and some inland Countries in the ancient Kingdom of Orixa, by the Natives called Oria [Uṛiṣa, Orissa]; with an Account of the famous Temple of Jagarynat (p. 380). [Two truly wonderful illustrations follow of "The Temple of Jaggerenatt" and

<sup>27</sup> So spelt throughout MS.



"Jaggerynatt's Coach." The Temple is built in the Shape of a Canary Pipe set on End, about 40 or 50 Yards high, about the Middle is the Image of an Ox cut in one intire Stone bigger than a live one (p. 382). — Alex. Hamilton, *East Indies*, Vol. I.

c. 1720. — Jagernat. — Van der Aa; map.

c. 1720. — Jagannat. — Mortier, as the name of a Country North of Orixa [Orissa].

1740 and 1781. — Jagarnat. — De l'Isle; map.

1764. — Pagode de Jagrenat. — Croisey; map.

1765. — Jagarnat. — French map, probably by De l'Isle.

1780. — From Manikpatnam or Jagrenat or Jakaranat the course is ENE½E, distance 5 leagues . . . Jagrenat is one of the most celebrated pagodas in India. — Dunn, *Dir.* p. 153.

1792. — Madras to Jagarnaut, 719 British Miles. — Rennell, *Memoir*, p. 326.

1809. — Jaggernaut Pagodas are three circular buildings surrounded by several smaller ones. — Horsburgh, *Sail. Dir.* p. 358.

1874. — The Jaggernaut or Pooree Pagodas. — Taylor, *India Directory*, p. 468.

1886. — Juggernaut, a corruption of the Sanskrit Jagannātha, Lord of the Universe, a name of Kṛishṇa, worshipped as Vishṇu at the famous shrine of Puri in Orissa. — Yule, *s. v.*

1891. — Merely marked as "Temples" near Puri in the Admiralty Chart.

#### Kedgerie.

See Yule, *s. v. Kedgerree*.

1703. — Id. Kedgerye [but it is I. Kedegerye in the photo-litho. of the chart of 1703]; Kegeria of Hedges [1882]; 1701 Ed. of chart, Gajouri; Kidgerie of A. Hamilton [1739]; modern Kedgerree (Khijari or Kijari of the Imp. Gazetteer [1885]), but Khajūri (*i. e.*, Date-palm place) of the recent Port Trust Survey is perhaps right. The name is Cajoree in Bolt's Map of Bengal, c. 1770, and in Sayers' of 1778. — Yule, *Diary of W. Hedges*, Vol. III. p. ccviii. With regard to the spelling Kegeria attributed to Hedges, the actual spellings to be found in Yule's Ed. of the Diary are the following: —

1673. — Kedgerree, Vol. II. p. ccxxvii.

1683. — Kegeria Island and Kegeria River, Vol. I. p. 64; Kegeria, Vol. I. p. 67.

1684. — Kedgeria, Vol. I. p. 148; Kegeria, Vol. I. p. 172.

1685. — Kedgeria, Vol. I. p. 175.

1699. — Kedgerree, Vol. II. p. ccvi.

c. 1710. — It was inhabited by Fishers as use also Ingellie and Kidgerie, two neighbouring Islands on the West Side of the mouth of the Ganges. — Alex. Hamilton, Ed. 1739, Vol. II, p. 4.

1780. — This place in a Military map, dated Aug. 25, by Rennell, as Cudjeree I. and Cudjeree Road.

1809. — Europe ships used to moor in 6 or 7 fathoms close to the land at Kedgerree. — Horsburgh, *Sail. Dir.* Vol. I. p. 358.

1891. — Khijiri in Admiralty Chart.

#### Kittle Bottom.

This name is not in Yule's *Glossary*. It is a sailor's name for a round-topped or flat-topped isolated hill: in this case for a point in the Nagari Hills, North Arcot District. It has also been applied to a similar hill in Ceylon, thus: —

1809. — Baticole River. Far inland about 7 leagues to the Westward of the Friar's Hood, there is a round conical hill, called the Kettle Bottom. — Horsburgh, *Sail. Dir.* Vol. I. p. 322.



The quotations as regards the hill mentioned in the text are the following : —

1809. — Inland there is a high chain of mountains, called the high land of Pulicat or Pulicat Hills, at the Southern part having a small piece of table-land or hill called the Kettle Bottom . . . . A little to the Southward of the Kettle Bottom, there is a hill less elevated, remarkable by a small crooked nob on it bent over to the Southward and resembling a horn, which is called Naggerly Nose. — Horsburgh, *Sail. Dir.* Vol. I. p. 344 f. This information is copied *verbatim* in the Ed. of 1841, Vol. I. p. 597; and into Taylor's *Indian Dir.*, 1874, p. 460. Nagari Nose, Mukkukonda, Telugu, from *mukku*, nose + *konda*, mountain . . . . Highest peak in the Nagari Hills. — *Mad. Man. Adm.* Vol. III. p. 539.

1891. — Kettle Bottom, 2824 (ft), is shown due West of Pulicat and NE of Nagari in the Admiralty Chart.

#### Madrasse, Madrass, Madras.

See Yule, *s. v.* Madras. In the old maps the form, where the word occurs, is always Madras or Madraspatan.

1642. — Madraspatam occurs in a letter, dated 1642, in Yule's *Diary of W. Hedges*, Vol. III. p. clxxxii.

1692. — We have made a law for our Towne of Madrasse. — Yule, *Diary of W. Hedges*, Vol. II. p. cexlviii.

1692. — Anchored in Madrass Road. — Yule, *Diary of W. Hedges*, Vol. II. p. clx.

c. 1710. — Fort St George or Maderass, or as the Natives call it China Patam . . . . situated in one of the most incommodious Places I ever saw. — Alex. Hamilton, *East Indies*, Ed. 1739. Vo. I. p. 358.

1711. — The Black City call'd Ma'rass and sometimes by the Moors, Chinnepatam. — Lockyer, *Trade in India*, p. 4.

1733. — Orme's *History* spells Madrass throughout, and so does the reprint of 1861.

#### Masulipatam.

See Yule, *s. v.* Masulipatam. This has, in Indo-European history, been one of the most widely corrupted words of all. See great variations from the standard form in the notes to Log II.

c. 1720. — Masulepatam, Masulipatam, Masulepatnam, Masnipatam, Maselipatam. — Van der Aa; maps.

1740 and 1781. — Masalipatam. — De l'Isle; map.

1764. — Masulipatam. — Croisey; map.

1765. — Masulipatam. — French map, probably by de l'Isle.

1790. — To go to Masulipatan or Masulipatnam. — Dunn, *Directory*, p. 148.

1813. — Mausulipatam, this district forms the least of the grand divisions of the Circars. — Milburn, *Commerce*, Vol. II. p. 85.

1891. — Masulipatam. — Admiralty Chart.

#### Nassipore.

This name is not given in Yule's *Glossary*.

1612. — Mr. Floris went to Narsapur Peta. — Floris' *Journal* in Morris, *Godavery District*, p. 178 f.

1614. — As for our ship, the Globe, she is at present in the river of Yarsupurpeta. — Peter Floris, *Letter* in *E. I. C. Records*, Vol. II. p. 41.



1670. — The Ship that was to sail to Surat lay six Leagues lower at **Rosipor**. — Fernandez Navarette in Morris' *Godavery District*, p. 182.

1679. — The towns of **Madapollam**<sup>23</sup> and **Narsapore** joyned together. — Streynsham Master's *Journal* in Mackenzie, *Kistna District*, p. 141.

1681. — Resolved: the Chief and Council at **Madapollam** be ordered to sell Mr Fleetwood's great house at **Nauraspooram** for 365: Pagas. — Pringle, *Mad. Consult.* for 1681, p. 3. In n. 25 Mr. Pringle says: — **Narsapur** and **Madapollam** at the time of Mr Master's visit in April, 1679, formed one town. Mr Fleetwood had taken **Narsapur** on lease some year before.

c. 1710. — Next to **Matchulipatam** is **Narsipore**, where the English had a Factory for long Cloth. — Alex. Hamilton, *East Indies*, Ed. 1739, Vol. I. p. 371.

c. 1720. — **Narsapour**. — Van der Aa; map.

1764. — **Narsapour** and **Narsipelle**. — Croisey, map, shown by mistake as two separate places.

1780. — From **Massutipatan** to **Narsapour** the course is EbN $\frac{1}{2}$ N . . . . Opposite the river of **Narsapour** is another bank. — Dunn, *Dir.* p. 149.

1809. — **Narsapour** or **Narsipore Point**. — Horsburgh, *Dir.* Vol. I. p. 348.

1841. — **Narsipour**. — Horsburgh, Ed. of 1841.

1874. — **Narsapour** or **Narsipour Point**. — Taylor, *India Directory*, p. 462.

1878. — **Nursapore**, **Narasapuram** . . . . its Northern suburb is **Mada pollam**, **Madhavayapilem**, which is celebrated as one of the earliest places where the English established a factory. — Morris, *Godavery District*, p. 39.

1891. — **Narsapur**. — Admiralty Chart.

1893. — **Madapollem**, part of the present Town of **Narsapore**. — *Mad. Man. Admn.* Vol. III. p. 440.

#### Pulicat, Pullicat.

See Yule, *s. v.* **Pullicat**. The two widely divergent forms of this word are due to the concurrent Tamil and Hindustani forms thereof.

1612. — Obiama, Queen of **Paleakate** . . . . The Hollanders were afraid of their Castle newly built in **Paleakate** [on account of her committing suttee]. — Floris' *Journal* in Morris, *Godavery District*, p. 179.

1642. — **Paliacate**. — Blaeuw; map.

1644. — **Palecate**. — Hondius; map.

1679. — And with the gold some months past at **Pullicat**. — Streynsham Master's *Memoriall* in Morris, *Godavery Dist.* p. 190.

1681. — Returned from **Palicat** with a com[plimen]tall letter (p. 4). Alsoe Lingapa seises the **Policat** Marchants in the Country (p. 11). **Palicat**, **Pollicat** and **Pulicat** in the index. — Pringle, *Mad. Consult.* for 1681.

1682. — The ship **Golden Fleece** sailed out of this road and was driven down to leeward about as far as **Pollicat** about 6: a clock in the evening. — Pringle, *Mad. Consult.* for 1682, p. 5.

1683. — A letter from **Palliacatt**. — Pringle, *Mad. Consult.* for 1683, p. 38.

1684. — The Governor of **Pollyacatt**. — Pringle, *Mad. Consult.* for 1684, p. 114.

1687. — **Palecate**. — Coronelli; map.

<sup>23</sup> Whence **Madapollam** for a species of cotton cloth. See Yule, *s. v.*



1699. — For they stay at Pollecatt for this. — Yule, *Diary of W. Hedges*, Vol. III. p. xlv.
- c. 1710. — Settle at Policat on the Banks of a good River. — Alex. Hamilton, *East Indies*, Ed. 1739, Vol. I. p. 359.
- c. 1720. — Pulicat, Palliacatte, Pallecatte. — Van der Aa; maps.
- c. 1720. — Pulicat. — Mortier; map.
- 1740 and 1781. — Puliacate. — De l'Isle; map.
1765. — Palicate. — French map, probably by de l'Isle.
1780. — The Bank and River of Pullicatt . . . . Keep clear of the bank which lies off Palicata or Pallicatt . . . . The inland part is high land called by navigators the Mountains of Paliacata (p. 144). In land there are very high mountains called the High Land of Pullicatt (p. 197). — Dunn, *Directory*.
1782. — Paliacate (est renommé) par ses mouchoirs. — Sonnerat, *Voyages*, Vol. I. p. 24.
1792. — The Pullicate Lake is from the Jaghire Map. — Rennell, *Memoir*, p. 284.
1891. — Pulicat. — Admiralty Chart.
1893. — Pashavailcaud is Poolicat, "the old acacia forest." . . . . Poolicat; Paliyaghat, Hindustani, Pashaverkkadu, Tamil. — *Mad. Man. Admn.* Vol. III. p. 670 f. [The *z*h above = *h*.]

#### Pundy Rocks.

This name is not given in Yule's *Glossary*.

1685. — Reed a Generall (letter) from Vizagapatam, dated 2nd Instant, advising of a Town near them called Punde being ransackt and the Rt Honble Compas Godowns broa(k) upon and Page 330 of their Honrs taken away, being part of P 1000 sent thether to provide Rice. — Pringle, *Mad. Consult.* for 1685, p. 166. Mr. Pringle notes on this: — Probably the small Town Pundi in the (modern) Ganjam district.
1687. — Pondy. — Coronelli; map.
- c. 1710. — There are several other Places . . . . on the Coast that drive a small trade in Corn, Pondee, . . . . are the most noted. — Alex. Hamilton, Ed. 1739, Vol. I. p. 378.
- c. 1720. — Pondy. — Van der Aa; map.
- c. 1720. — Pondy. — Mortier; map.
1764. — Pondi. — Croisey; map.
1780. — Close in shore before the river of Pondy are 10 or 12 rocks (p. 152). One of our Europe ships going from Bengal to Vizagapatam in January, by not keeping off shore was forced to anchor several days off the high land of Baras or Pondy (p. 245). From Pondy to Barva or Barrar . . . . the distance is 5 leagues (p. 152). — Dunn, *Dir.*
1809. — About 5 leagues farther is the River Pondy or Poondy, having several rocks projecting from it to a considerable distance to seaward. — Horsburgh, *Sail. Dir.* Vol. I. p. 352.
1874. — Poondy or Pudi . . . . At the mouth of a small river . . . . The river Pondy or Poondy has several rocks projecting from it to seaward. Over this at some distance in country the High Land of Pondy is high and uneven. — Taylor, *India Dir.* p. 467.
1891. — Pundi. — Admiralty Chart.

#### Ramnepatam.

This name is not given in Yule's *Glossary*.



1683. — Upon advices that Alley and Au[bea]y [Interlopers] were att Palliacatt, as also by a letter recd from the Dutch there, advising that they intended to settle att Armagon, Ramapatam, Krishnapatam and Gungapatam, which are all under Lingapa's Government. — Pringle, *Mad. Consult.* for 1683, p. 54. Mr. Pringle's note on this is : — Ramapatam, Ramapattanam, midway between Madrass and Metchlepatam [Masulipatam]. The English and Dutch in turns possessed and abandoned small houses at this place (n. 75). Lingappa of Poonamallee was a Naik or Poligar, who rented the country round about from the Court of Hyderabad. — Crole, *Chingleput District*, 1879, p. 144.

1873. — Ramapatam. This is itself a small fishing village, but at the port there used to be in former years a fair coasting trade in grain and firewood. — Boswell, *Nellore District*, p. 19.

1891. — Ramapatam. — Admiralty Chart.

#### Sugarloaf.

1809. — The Dolphin's Nose may be plainly seen and the other hills around Vizagapatam : one of these to the Northward of the road is called the Sugar Loaf, but the highest is several leagues inland from the town. — Horsburgh, *Sail. Dir.* Vol. I, p. 351.

#### Summerwarren.

This name is not noted in Yule's *Glossary*.

c. 1710. — There are several other Places . . . on the Coast that drive a small Trade in Corn . . . Sunapore, are the most noted, but not frequented by Europeans. — Alex. Hamilton, *East Indies*, Ed. 1789, Vol. I, p. 379.

c. 1720. — Sonnewaren, Sonnewaron. — Van der Aa; maps.

1740 and 1781. — Sonnewaron. — De l'Isle; map.

1785. — Sonnewaron. — French map probably by de l'Isle.

1780. — From Barwa to Sommaveron or Ganjam. — Dunn, *Dir.* p. 152.

1809. — From this place (River Barwa) to Ganjam, the distance is about 12 leagues to N. Eastward : the coast between them containing the small river Sonnaverom nearest to Barwa. — Horsburgh, *Sail. Dir.* Vol. I, p. 352.

1874. — Sonapur or Soonapoorpettah . . . about 20 miles from Barwah. — Taylor, *India Dir.* p. 467.

1882. — Sonnapur, Sonnapuram . . . is now a port of no importance. — Maltby, *Ganjam District*, p. 41 f.

1891. — Sonapur. — Admiralty Chart.

1893. — Sonapore . . . now unimportant, although in 1768 the principle town in Ichapore province. — *Mad. Man. Admn.* Vol. III, p. 845.

#### Vizaquepatam, Vizegopatam.

This well-known name is not noted in Yule's *Glossary*. For differentiated forms of it see the notes on Log II.

1642. — Insipatam. — Blaeuw; map.

1644. — I. Bisipatam. — Hondius; map.

1684. — Returns to the Commissions given them to examine the differences att Vizagapatam. — Pringle, *Mad. Consult.* for 1684, p. 32.

c. 1720. — Wisagapatam, Visagapatam. — Van der Aa; maps.

c. 1720. — Visagapatam. — Mortier.

1740 and 1781. — Vasingepatam. — De l'Isle; map.

1764. — Visgiapatam. — Croisey; map.



1785. — Vasingepatam. — French map probably by de l'Isle.

1780. — Visagapatnam distinguishes itself by a great steep hill (p. 150). There are instances of ships that have stood as above till in the latitude of Vizagapatam (p. 258). Directions for Visagapatam Road (p. 308). — Dunn, *Directory*, p. 150.

1809. — Vizagapatam may be known by the bluff called the Dolphin's Nose. — Horsburgh, *Sail. Dir.* Vol. I. p. 350.

1891. — Vizagapatam. — Admiralty Chart.

1893. — Vizagapatam; Ishakpatan, Hindustani, Visakhapattanam, Telugu [from a temple to Visakha now washed away by the sea]. — *Mad. Man. Admn.* Vol. III. p. 988.

## LOG I.

### 4.

#### Blackwood's Harbour.

In the Log entries for September 11th, 1746, there is a curious and early note of the best method for entering Blackwood's Harbour, which lies behind the Armegon Shoal.

The native (Telugu) name for the anchorage is Monapālemurēvu, and it got its European and geographical name from Sir Henry Blackwood, who was Admiral on the Coast at the early part of the XIXth century and caused a complete chart of the Harbour to be made on the representations of Colonel de Haviland. It has wide entrances both on the North and South ends of the Armegon Shoal, and the present soundings are from  $4\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms on the mainland shore to 6 and 7 fathoms near the shoal. Such is the account in the *Madras Manual of Administration* (Vol. III. p. 98), 1893.

But Sir Clements Markham, *Indian Surveys*, 1871, p. 8, gives a somewhat different account, which is as follows: — Admiral Sir Henry Blackwood, having reported that H. M. S. *Leander* had been safely at anchor inside the Armegon Shoal, North of Madras, for four days during the Monsoon, Capt Maxfield was sent to investigate the capabilities of the place, which has been since called Blackwood's Harbour. He went there in 1822, on board the *Henry Meriton*, accompanied by Capt de Haviland, but the conclusion came to at the time was that its distance from Madras was an inconvenience that outweighed any advantage it might have as an anchorage. (See *Chart of Pulicat and Armegon Shoals by Capt Maxfield*.) In 1823, however, the Madras Government hired a schooner, called the *Mary Ann*, to ride out the Monsoon in Blackwood's Harbour as an experiment.

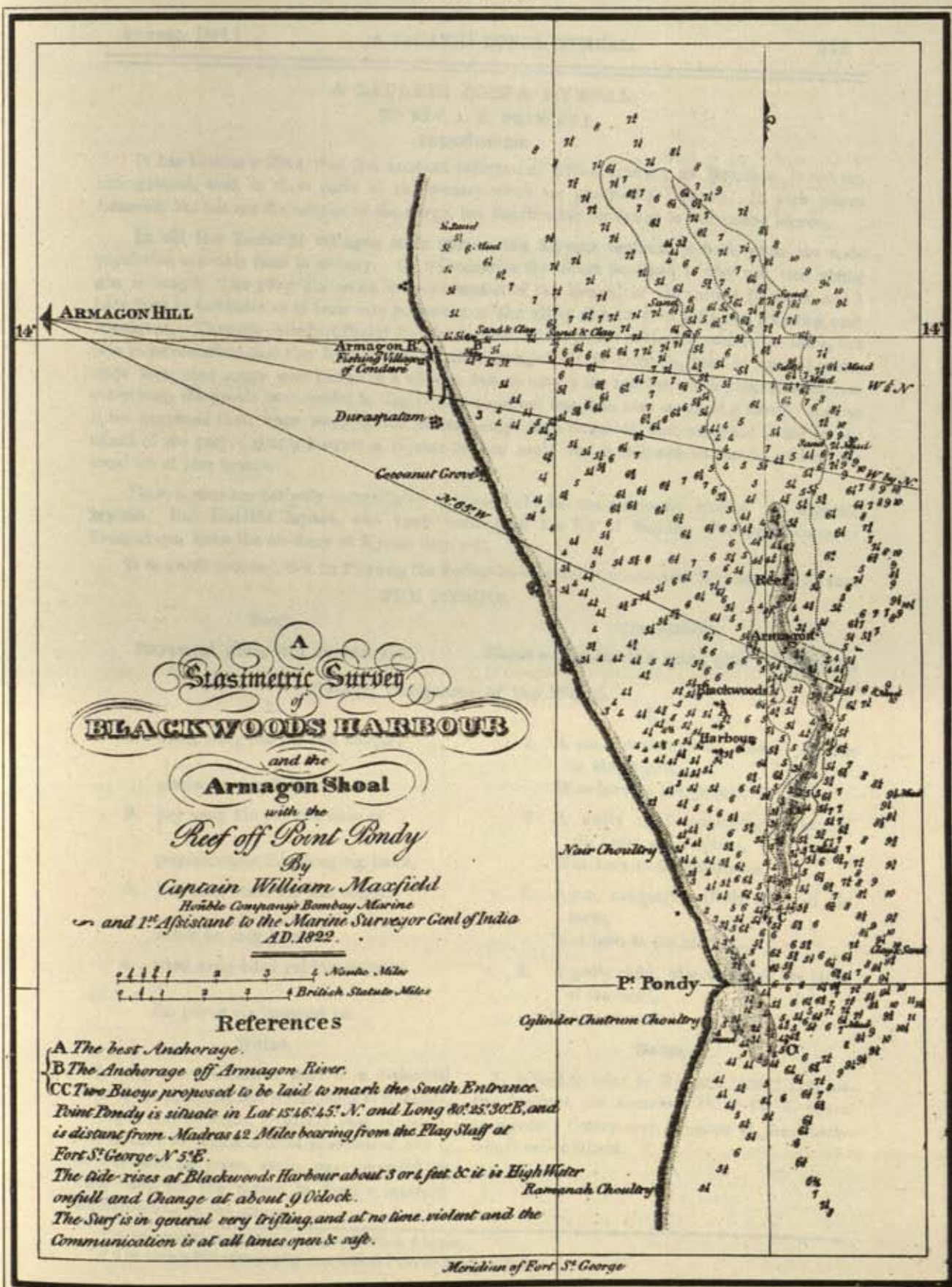
A practically lost copy of this Survey I accidentally unearthed in the map-room of the Royal Geographical Society, and have now the pleasure, through the courtesy of the Society, to reproduce it here.

Blackwood's Harbour naturally finds no place in Rennell's *Memoir*, 1792, nor in Horsburgh's *Sailing Directions*, Ed. 1809, where directions for sailing along the Coromandel Coast past Armegon or Duraspatam are given in Vol. I. p. 344 f. Indeed, Horsburgh, p. 345, says that the Armegon Shoal "is of considerable extent, but has never been regularly examined: between it and the main there is a channel with 5 and 6 fathoms." This is much what Dunn, *Directory*, 1780, p. 146, says: — "You find between the coast and this bank [Armegon] a large and exceeding fine channel, which extends N<sup>o</sup>E and S<sup>o</sup>W," and as to the danger of the place, Dunn says: — "You must be experienced herein, or else it is better not to venture."

We find the harbour, however, mentioned by name in the 1841 Ed. of Horsburgh, in a notice copied word for word into Taylor's *Directory*, 1874, p. 460, thus: — "Between the inner edge of the [Armegon] Shoal and the coast there is a space from 3 to 4 miles wide, now called **Blackwood Harbour**, with soundings from  $4\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms near the shore to 6 or 7 fathoms contiguous to the shoal, where ships might anchor with safety in the fair weather monsoon near the entrance of Armegon River, by passing round the north end of the shoal with the hill bearing  $W\frac{1}{4}S$ ."

(To be continued.)











## A LADAKHI BONPA HYMNAL.

BY REV. A. H. FRANCKE;

## Introduction.

It has become evident, that the ancient religion of Tibet, known as Bonchos, is not yet extinguished, even in those parts of the country which are professedly Lamaist. In such places Lamaism has become the religion of the clergy, but Bonchos has continued to live among laymen.

In all the Ladakhi villages each spring the Kyesar festival is held, when the male population exercises itself in archery. On this occasion the village band has to play and the *gling glu* is sung.<sup>1</sup> The *gling glu* seems to be a remnant of the hymnal of the ancient Bonchos, and I have been so fortunate as to come into possession of the *gling glu* of two villages, Phyang and Khalatse. They are entirely different from each other, although the subject in each is the same, but it is to be remarked that they both consist of nine songs. It is probable, that in ancient times more than nine songs were known in a village; but as nine is the number which predominates over everything, the people were careful to sing neither more nor less than nine songs at a time.<sup>2</sup> And so it has happened that, when many of the ancient songs were forgotten, nine remained living in the minds of the people, simply because a Kyesar festival could not be allowed to pass by without the usual set of nine hymns.

These hymns are perfectly unintelligible to anyone who has not previously studied the Kyesar Myths. But Ladakhi laymen, who know nothing of the life of Buddha, Padmasambhava or Tsongkhapa, know the life-story of Kyesar very well.

It is worth noticing, that in Phyang the Spring-hero's name is pronounced Kyesar, not Kesar.

## THE HYMNS.

## Text.

## Translation.

Phyanggi *gling glu* rnam yin.These songs are the *gling glus* of Phyang.

## Kyesar, Conqueror of the World.

## I.

## I.

1. steng nang lha yul kun nonpari  
amala bu zhig ltams.
2. yog nang klu yul kun nonpari  
gogzalhamola lha phrug rig ltams.
3. bar nang btsan yul kun nonpari  
amala bu zhig ltams.
4. bdud nang bdud yul kun nonpari  
lha phrug cig ltamssed lei.

1. A son, conquering the land of the gods  
in the heights,  
Was born to the mother.
2. A godly child, conquering the land of  
the lower water spirits,  
Was born to Gogzalhamo.
3. A son, conquering all the lands of the  
earth,  
Was born to the mother.
4. A godly child, conquering all the lands  
of the devil,  
Is born, hurrah!

## Notes.

## Notes.

1. etc., the termination *pari* is a dialectical form of the participle and corresponds to *mkhanni*.
2. *gogza* may be *gogsa*, a parallel case is *dagso*, 'now,' the *s* of which is often pronounced like *z*.
3. The word *bar btsan*, earth, was separated by *nang* only for the reason to form a sentence corresponding to the others.

1. is said to refer to Kyesar's victory over his two brothers, see *Kesarsage* II. 36-42. 4. refers to Kyesar's victory over the giant of the North, who is called *bdud*.

<sup>1</sup> A reference to this festival we have in VI. 5, 6 below.

<sup>2</sup> The people will always play nine sets of Polo, to finish a game.



## Lullaby to the Young Kyesar.

## II.

1. stod nang stodna, rgyallham chenmoi  
stangspola stod.
2. alodalotsele, singchen rgyalpoi stanga  
nang grospola stod.
3. stod nang stodna lei shellcam 'abrugumai  
mdzangspola stod.
4. alodalotsele, shellcam 'abrugumai shes  
nang mdzangspola stod.

## Notes.

1 and 3. *nang*, in; thus, if you praise in a  
praise; about *rgyallham* see *Kesarsage*, notes 2  
and 4. *alodalotsele*, lullaby. *nang*, within =  
mixed = together = and.

## II.

1. When you praise, praise the ingenuity  
of the great godly king.
2. *Alodalotsele*, praise the ingenuity and  
advice of the king, the great lion.
3. When you praise, praise the learning  
of 'aBruguma, his crystal wife.
4. *Alodalotsele*, praise the wisdom and learn-  
ing of 'aBruguma, his crystal wife.

## Notes.

It is remarkable how well the intellectual  
capacities of man and woman are characterised in  
this song: man as being productive, woman as  
reproductive.

## The Giant's Treasures.

## III.

bKur dman rgyalmos:

1. lungpai phushedna norbu chechung  
tsam 'adug.
2. lungpai phushedna norbu chechung  
tsam 'adug.
3. norbu chechebo sgola mi shongces yod lei.
4. norbu chungchungbo pangla mi shong-  
ces yod lei.

Dongrubkyis:

5. den 'adrai norbu buthsa ngarangla sal  
lei.
6. den 'adrai khyad norbu lagspai don-  
grubla sal lei.
7. alongthang yeigcig, buthsa ngarang  
yeigcig.
8. alongthang yeigcig, lagspai dongrub  
yeigcig.
9. buthsa ngarangla 'agrulbai 'agrullam  
cig sal lei.

## Notes.

3, 4. The reiteration of *che* and *chung* is  
due to the metre. 5, 6. The *n* of *den* is the initial  
silent 'a' of 'adrai, which is pronounced as a nasal  
with the preceding syllable. 6. *lagspa* = *legspa*.  
7, 8. *alongthang* = ring-plain. The mountains of  
Tibet and the Himalayas are supposed to be the  
centre of the earth: the navel, these hills are sur-  
rounded by a ring of plains. 5, 6, 9. *sal* = *steal*,  
give, respectful.

## III.

bKur-dman-rgyalmo says:

1. How many treasures there are in the  
upper end of the valley!
2. How many treasures there are in the  
upper end of the valley!
3. The larger ones do not fit in the door,
4. The smaller ones do not fit in the lap.

Dongrub says:

5. Such treasures give, please, to me  
[thy] boy!
6. Such treasures give, please, to good  
Dongrub!
7. There is one solitary Alongplain: there  
is myself, one solitary boy!
8. There is one solitary Alongplain: there  
is one solitary dear Dongrub!
9. Show me, thy boy, please, a way to walk  
along!

## Notes.

In the first part of the song the mother de-  
scribes the treasures to arouse Dongrub's covetous-  
ness. Then Dongrub starts in search of them  
and loses his way. In his difficulty he says the  
prayer, which forms part 2. According to the  
Winter Myth the giant of the North is in posses-  
sion not only of a girl, but also of great treasures.  
It is remarkable that in the eyes of his heavenly  
mother Kyesar remains always Dongrub.



## Praise of 'aBruguma.

## IV.

1. blama bzangpos chos salbas
2. ngai shescan lhamo cila men
3. blamas thamscad mkhyen mdzadpas
4. ngai mdzangscan 'aBruguma cila men
5. yari shes nang mdzangspo lei
6. alam mdun nyad kunla ngonned lei
7. 'oma rigskyi mkh'an 'agroma
8. yari shes nang mdzangspo lei
9. alam mdun nyad kunla tsha langssed lei
10. 'oma rigskyi mkh'an 'agroma.

## Notes.

2. *men* = *ma yin*, is not. 5. *yari* = *yaranggi* = *nyidranggi*, you, thou. 6. *alam*, all, a Purig word, *mdun nyad* is perhaps *mdun yad* = *yado*, companion or people. 7. The *n* in *mkh'an* is the nasally pronounced 'a of 'agroma. 9. *tsha langssed*, rising of envy.

## IV.

1. As the good Lama taught [her] religion,
2. Why should my wise goddess not be [wise] ?
3. As the Lama made her know everything,
4. Why should my learned 'aBruguma not be [learned] ?
5. Thy wisdom and learning
6. is known to all, who are before thee !
7. Oh, thou milk-white fairy !
8. Thy wisdom and learning
9. Is envied by all, who are before thee !
10. Oh, thou milk-white fairy !

## Notes.

Without doubting the historical character of *Srong-btsan-sgampo*, as well as that of his two wives, I feel inclined to believe that Bonpa mythology has added some fresh colour to their characters. *Srong-btsan-sgampo*'s two wives remind us of *Kyesar*'s two wives, above all, as regards their colour. 'aBruguma has lent her colour to the white *Tārā*; *Bamza* 'abumakyyid, the wife, first of the Giant, then of *Kyesar*, to the green *Tārā*. There is another parallel [within the two groups] as regards intellectual capacities. In both of them the husband is famous for his ingenuity, the wives for their learning.

In this connection I wish to draw attention to the following: (1) In *J. A. S. B. Vol. LX. Part I. No. 3, 1891*, Karl Marx, *History of Ladakh*, p. 116, note 13, we read the following interesting statement: 'In the *Gyalrabs*, *Gesar* (= *Kesar*) is referred to as one of the suitors of *Konggo*, the Chinese princess, who afterwards became the wife of *Srong-btsan-sgampo*.'

(2) Grünwedel, *Mythologie des Buddhismus*, note on *Abb. 116*; 'the crown of the green *Tārā* often shows the *Dhyānibuddha Amoghasiddha*. *Amoghasiddha* is the Tibetan *Dongrub*. *Dongrub* is the name of *Kesar* whilst dwelling in the North. It was in the North, where *Kesar* married his second wife.'



## The Almighty God-Father and God-Mother.

## V.

1. phred de yzarpoi 'ona rhab dela shorthabs rig 'adug
2. phred ni yzarpoi rhabla shorthabs rig 'adug lei
3. yabchen ababai 'ona bk'a stsalnas shorthabs rig med
4. 'abum khri rgyalpoi bk'a stsalnas shorthabs rig med lei
5. chu de chenmoi 'ona rabschenla bingthabs rig 'adug
6. chu ni chenmoi rabschenla rgalthabs rig 'adug lo
7. yumchen amabai 'ona bk'a stsalnas shorthabs rig med
8. 'abum khri rgyalmoi bk'a stsalnas shorthabs rig med lei

## Notes.

3, 7. the concluding *ba* in *ababai* and *amabai* was added only for the sake of the metre.

## VI.

1. yserri eranla aga bstadde nyemol ehils bsuala chen lei
2. dkarpoi glangpochela aga bstadde nyemol rta bsuala chen lei
3. khra skya dkarmola brdzuste nyemol barbanla chen lo.
4. yyumai phoronla brdzuste nyemol rab ysalla chen lo
5. khyogthong md'a phangs rtsebabo darung yod nang lei
6. dohela nachung zurri kha ldingmabo darung da yod nang lei.

## Notes.

1. *eran*, a horse from Iran, Persia. 2. *glang-pochela*, literally 'large ox,' is used nowadays for 'elephant.' In this connection it is probably a 'riding Yak.' 3. *barban*, the inside of a house; for *lo* see *yserri buzhang*. 4. *phoron* — *phorog*, crow; *rab ysall*, in Ladakhi not a balcony, but a large fine hall. 5, 6. *nang lei*, a concluding exclamation like *lei* and *lo*. 6. *dohela*, hallo! *ldingmabo*, means originally 'soaring.'

## V.

1. There is a means of escape from a rolling rock on a steep path,
2. Yes, there is a means of escape from a rolling rock on a steep path.
3. But there is no means of escape from the commandments of the Great Father.
4. There is no means of escape from the commandments of the king of the 100,000 thrones.
5. There is a means of escape on the ford of the great waters.
6. Yes, there is a means of escape on the ford of the great waters.
7. But there is no means of escape from the commandments of the Great Mother.
8. There is no means of escape from the commandments of the queen of the 100,000 thrones.

## Notes.

This song shows that the originally physiological deities have become ethical deities.

## Kyesar, Returning to 'aBruguma.

## VI.

1. Having saddled the golden steed, I will ride off to meet my friend.
2. Having saddled the white ox, I will ride off to meet my friend.
3. Being changed into a white falcon, I will go to the house of my friend.
4. Being changed into a turquoise crow, I will go to the hall of my friend.
5. The boys playing at arrow-shooting, Well, they are still here.
6. The girls, high on the edge of the roof, They are still here, hallo!

## Notes.

Kyesar is still undecided, in which of the four ways he ought to travel. The song proper is finished with v. 4; v. 5 and 6 are later additions. They express the idea, that in spite of Buddhism and Mohamedanism the Bon Religion is not yet extinguished and the Kyesar festival is still in vogue. At this festival the girls watch the boys at archery from the roofs of the houses.



## Kyesar, a Voluntary Saviour.

## VII.

1. nono rang miyulla skyodpa rig dgossug lei.
2. bu dongrub rang miyulla skyodpa rig dgossug lei.
3. sngamoi thasangna ngatanggis byaphran rig rtse yin lo
4. nyiyi angashar nang byaphran cig rtse yin lo
5. rgyalla rig songna cila rig chen lo
6. ngatang phamse ring songna mi cha nang kha med rig yin lo
7. ngatang rgyalces mannas pham mi shes lo.

## Notes.

1. *dgossug* — *dgos 'adug*. 3. *byaphran*, a little deed, *i. e.*, sham fighting. 5. *rgyalla* — *rgyalba*, conquer. 6. *phamse*, probably *phamste*; *khamed*, no sense.

## VIII.

1. ngazha rgyagar yulli mthong shescan yin lo  
om kyenang kyele
2. ngazha dpalbo yulli nyan shescan yin lo  
om kyenang kyele
3. ngazhas ma them menne gomparig mi shes  
om kyenang kyele
4. ngazhas mazho rig menne thungba rig mi shes  
om kyenang kyele
5. sula phanba rig menne ynodpa rig co mi shes  
om kyenang kyele.

## Notes.

The refrain of all verses '*om kyenang kyele*. was explained to me to have been in the original *om mkhyen 'ang mkhyen lei*, which might mean: Oh do take notice of this! 3. *ma them*, the 'mother threshold,' it is the one belonging to that part of the house, which is called *makhang*. *menne* — *mannas*, besides.

## VII.

1. The youngest son himself must go to the land of men.
2. The son Dongrub himself must go to the land of men.
3. In the early morning we will have a little tournament.
4. At the early rising of the sun we will have a little tournament.
5. If I should be victorious, why should I go?
6. If I am beaten, there is no sense in saying 'I will not go!'
7. But we do not know anything except being victorious: we do not know what it is to be beaten!

## Notes.

This song refers to *Kesarsage* II. 36-42. The three sons of the king of heaven have to fight each other. He who is beaten, must go to the earth. Dongrub, the youngest, in spite of his being victorious, goes of his own accord.

## VIII.

1. We know India from having seen it,  
*Om kyenang kyele!*
2. We know Nepal from having heard of it,  
*Om kyenang kyele!*
3. We do not know a step further than the threshold,  
*Om kyenang kyele!*
4. We do not know any beverage besides mother's milk,  
*Om kyenang kyele!*
5. We do not know of doing any harm, if it be not for somebody's advantage,  
*Om kyenang kyele!*

## Notes.

1. India is considered by some people to be 'aBruguma's fatherland. In this case the history of Srong-btsan-sgam-po's wives may have influenced 'aBruguma's history. This song should be placed before 'aBruguma's marriage to Kyesar. Some people place it after Kyesar's return from the north; but in that case there would not be much left of 'aBruguma's innocence; as she gave birth to two children by the king of Yarkand!



## The King of Yarkand's Entreaty for his Life.

## IX.

1. ngatang gling yulla chen dola gling  
yulla chen.
2. dbyarla gling yulla bsilimo rig yod dola  
rgyallham chenmo.
3. dgunla ngati horyulla drosa rig yinpas
4. ngatang horyulla chen dola sprulpai  
rgyalpole
5. m'a shespa rig songna nyidkyis bagaris  
shig snams dola rgyallham chenmo
6. m'a shespa dang m'a mkhaspa songna  
nyidkyis bagaris shig mdzad 'ang  
mkhyenpai rgyalpo!

## Notes.

3. *drosa*, a warm place. 4. *le*, respectful termination. 5. *bagaris* — *bakhshish*, gift; the *r* in *aris* is never pronounced, and no reason whatever can be given for this way of spelling the word. 6. *mkhyen* is used very frequently to honour a person, for instance *Sahib mkhyen*.

## IX.

1. We will go to the land of gLing:  
holloa. we will go to the land of  
gLing!
2. There it is cool in summer: holloa,  
great godly king!
3. Because our land of Hor is warm in  
winter,
4. We will go there then: holloa, incar-  
nated king!
5. If you are very wise, you will accept a  
present: holloa, great godly king!
6. If you are very wise and very clever,  
you will also give me a present, oh  
acknowledged king!

## Notes.

When this song is sung by the king of Hor Kyesar is kneeling on his breast and ready to kill him. The king of Hor pretends to be in good spirits all the same, for which reason he repeatedly sings *dola*, holloa! He cannot yet give up telling lies, for in Hor it is not warm in winter. Originally Hor seems to have been Mongolia; but now it is generally supposed to be Yarkand. In 5 the king of Hor offers his hidden treasures, and the present, which he hopes to receive in exchange of them, in 6, is his life.

A COMPLETE VERBAL CROSS-INDEX TO YULE'S HOBSON-JOBSON  
OR GLOSSARY OF ANGLO-INDIAN WORDS.

BY CHARLES PARTRIDGE, M.A.

(Continued from p. 318.)

Cambaloc; *s. v.* Nanking, 472, i, twice.Camballo; *s. v.* Factory, 264, ii.Cambalu; ann. 166—: *s. v.* Peking, 526, i.Cambaluc; *s. v.* Peking, 526, i.

Cambay; *s. v.* 115, i, 3 times, *s. v.* Babagooree, 31, ii, *s. v.* Bora, 80, i, twice, *s. v.* Bowly, 82, ii, twice, *s. v.* Candahar, 119, i, *s. v.* Comboy, 183, ii, *s. v.* Factory, 264, i, *s. v.* Macareo, 402, ii, 403, i, *s. v.* Mahi, 409, i, *s. v.* Mole-islam, 440, i; ann. 1830: *s. v.* Sindābūr, 635, i; ann. 1348: *s. v.* Candahar, 119, i, twice; ann. 1420: *s. v.* 115, i; ann. 1498: *s. v.* Sambook, 595, ii; ann. 1510: *s. v.* Surat, 664, ii; ann. 1516: *s. v.* Oatechn, 133, i, *s. v.* Dabul, 225, i, *s. v.* Delhi, 234, ii, *s. v.* Opium,

489, ii, *s. v.* Chicane, 777, i; ann. 1517: *s. v.* Deccan, 233, ii; ann. 1525: *s. v.* Googul, 296, i; ann. 1536: *s. v.* Mangalore (b), 822, i; ann. 1538: *s. v.* Godavery, 291, i, *s. v.* Salsette (a), 594, ii; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Surat, 665, i; ann. 1562: *s. v.* Balaghaut, 38, ii; ann. 1563: *s. v.* Koot, 375, ii, *s. v.* Maund, 431, ii; ann. 1568: *s. v.* Macareo, 403, i; ann. 1590: *s. v.* Tenasserim, 696, i, twice; ann. 1613: *s. v.* Dungaree, 255, i; ann. 1672: *s. v.* Cafla, 770, i; ann. 1674: *s. v.* 115, i; ann. 1814: *s. v.* Seedy, 610, ii.  
Cambaya; *s. v.* Pardao, 838, ii; ann. 1510: *s. v.* Narsinga, 474, i; ann. 1518: *s. v.* Gallevat (c), 276, ii, twice; ann. 1521: *s. v.* Nizamaluco,



- 830, ii; ann. 1522: *s. v.* Patola, 520, ii; ann. 1525: *s. v.* Chudder, 167, ii, *s. v.* Gogolla, 293, ii, *s. v.* Putehock, 565, i; ann. 1531: *s. v.* Gogo, 293, i; ann. 1533: *s. v.* Melique Verido, 823, i; ann. 1535: *s. v.* Satigam, 854, i; ann. 1541: *s. v.* Peking, 526, i; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Ganda, 277, ii, *s. v.* Macareo, 403, i, twice; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Madrafaxao, 406, ii, *s. v.* Sunda, 659, ii; ann. 1568: *s. v.* Opium, 489, ii; ann. 1572: *s. v.* Mogul, The Great, 437, i; ann. 1602: *s. v.* Gogo, 293, i; ann. 1611: *s. v.* Hing, 318, ii; ann. 1644: *s. v.* Macareo, 403, ii, *s. v.* Opium, 833, ii; ann. 1672: *s. v.* Cat's Eye, 774, ii; ann. 1710: *s. v.* Veranda, 737, ii; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Loongbee, 396, ii.
- Cambayatys; ann. 1610: *s. v.* Bankshall (a), 47, i.
- Cambayeo; ann. 1572: *s. v.* Mogul, The Great, 437, i.
- Cambaye; ann. 1610: *s. v.* Anile, 22, ii; ann. 1753: *s. v.* Diul-Sind, 792, i.
- Cambayen; ann. 1726: *s. v.* Comboy, 183, ii.
- Cambays; *s. v.* 115, i, *s. v.* Piece-goods, 536, i.
- Cambello; ann. 1615: *s. v.* Orankay, 492, i.
- Cambeth; ann. 1320: *s. v.* Cambay, 115, i.
- Camblet; ann. 1711: *s. v.* Perpetuano, 843, i.
- Cambodge; ann. 1878: *s. v.* Paddy, 496, i.
- Cambodia; ann. 1598: *s. v.* Laos, 385, ii.
- Cambodgiens; ann. 1869: *s. v.* Lungooty, 401, i.
- Cambogia; *s. v.* Chumpuk, 167, ii.
- Camboia; ann. 1535: *s. v.* Camboja, 115, ii, twice; ann. 1560: *s. v.* Laos, 385, ii; ann. 1652: *s. v.* Cochín-China, 174, ii.
- Camboja; *s. v.* 115, i and ii, *s. v.* Casbew, 129, i, *s. v.* Comar, 183, i, *s. v.* Eagle-wood, 258, i, twice, *s. v.* Factory, 264, ii, *s. v.* Panthay (A), 510, ii, twice, 511, i, *s. v.* Pra, 551, i, *s. v.* Shan, 622, ii; ann. 1520: *s. v.* Sutte, 668, ii; ann. 1535: *s. v.* Lanchara, 384, i; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Calambac, 110, ii, *s. v.* 115, ii; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Laos, 385, ii, *s. v.* Zirbad, 750, i; ann. 1572: *s. v.* 116, i; ann. 1613: *s. v.* Lan John, 384, ii; ann. 1615: *s. v.* Bamboo, 41, ii; ann. 1767: *s. v.* Sonaparanta, 647, i.
- Cambôja; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Champa, 140, ii.
- Cambojan; *s. v.* Pra, 551, i, *s. v.* Presidency, 553, i.
- Cambojans; *s. v.* Camboja, 115, ii.
- Cambolim; *s. v.* Cumbly, 216, i.
- Cambolin; ann. 1606: *s. v.* Cumbly, 216, i.
- Cambrie; *s. v.* Chintz, 155, ii, *s. v.* Grass-cloth, 301, i, *s. v.* Piece-goods, 536, i; ann. 1784: *s. v.* Kerseymere, 365, ii.
- Cameeze; *s. v.* 116, i, 771, i.
- Camel cloth; ann. 1350: *s. v.* Cumbly, 216, i.
- Cameleen; ann. 1813: *s. v.* Cumbly, 216, ii.
- Camelopard; *s. v.* Giraffe, 288, ii.
- Camelleopard; ann. 20: *s. v.* Giraffe, 288, ii.
- Camel-men; ann. 1845: *s. v.* Dhooly, 242, i.
- Camelopard; B. C. 29: *s. v.* Giraffe, 288, ii.
- Camelopardalis; ann. 380: *s. v.* Giraffe, 289, i.
- Camclopardalis; ann. 210: *s. v.* Giraffe, 289, i.
- Camelopardalus; *s. v.* Giraffe, 288, ii.
- Camel's hair; *s. v.* Cumbly, 216, i; ann. 1350: *s. v.* Cumbly, 216, i.
- Camerong; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Gombroen, 295, i.
- Camessa; *s. v.* Cameeze, 116, i.
- Camexu; ann. 1343: *s. v.* Maund, 431, ii.
- Camfera Fansuri; ann. 1298: *s. v.* Camphor, 117, i.
- Camfora; ann. 1506: *s. v.* Camphor, 117, i; ann. 1598: *s. v.* Bang, 45, i.
- Camisa; *s. v.* Cameeze, 116, i; ann. 1404: *s. v.* Cameeze, 771, i; ann. 1573: *s. v.* Cameeze, 116, i.
- Camises; ann. 1464: *s. v.* Cameeze, 116, i.
- Camisias; ann. 400: *s. v.* Cameeze, 116, i.
- Camjeverso; ann. 1531: *s. v.* Congeveram, 782, ii.
- Camlees; ann. 1690: *s. v.* Cumbly, 216, i.
- Camlet; ann. 1854: *s. v.* Suclát, 653, ii.
- Cammaks; ann. 1340: *s. v.* Kincob, 369, i.
- Cammoeca; *s. v.* Kincob, 368, ii; ann. 1340: *s. v.* Kincob, 369, i.
- Cammul-poshes; ann. 1718: *s. v.* Cumbly, 216, i.
- Camocan; ann. 1404: *s. v.* Kincob, 369, i, *s. v.* Kowtow, 377, i.
- Camocas; ann. 1330: *s. v.* Kincob, 369, i; ann. 1688: *s. v.* Kincob, 369, ii.
- Camocato; ann. 1474: *s. v.* Kincob, 369, i.
- Camolim; ann. 1498: *s. v.* Zamorin, 745, ii.
- Camorij; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Cotwal, 206, i.
- Camorim; ann. 1710: *s. v.* Pescaria, 531, i.
- Çamorim; ann. 1498: *s. v.* Zamorin, 745, ii.
- Çamorin; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Cerame, 138, i, twice; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Tanor, 861, ii, twice.
- Çamorym; ann. 1503: *s. v.* Peon, 528, i.
- Camotte; ann. 1618: *s. v.* Yam, 745, i.
- Camp; *s. v.* 116, i, twice, *s. v.* Campoo, 117, i, *s. v.* Compound, 186, ii (a and b), 187, ii; ann. 1875: *s. v.* Compound, 187, i.
- Campa; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Calambac, 110, ii.
- Campagna; *s. v.* Compound (a), 186, i.
- Campagne; *s. v.* Compound, 186, i and ii (b).
- Campaña; *s. v.* Compound (a), 186, i; ann. 1824: *s. v.* Compound, 188, ii.
- Campane; ann. 1608-10: *s. v.* Datura, 231, ii.



- Campanganghi; ann. 1522: *s. v.* Coco-de-Mer, 177, ii.
- Campanha; *s. v.* Compound (a), 186, i, twice.
- Campao; *s. v.* Compound (a), 186, i.
- Campar; ann. 1551: *s. v.* Calambac, 110, ii.
- Camphire; *s. v.* Mendy, 433, ii; ann. 1623: *s. v.* Camphor, 117, i; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Baros, 53, i; ann. 1776: *s. v.* Tyre, 724, ii.
- Camphor; *s. v.* 116, i (7 times) and ii (7 times), *s. v.* Ananas, 20, i, *s. v.* Baros, 53, i, 4 times, *s. v.* Malabathrum, 414, ii, twice, *s. v.* Sugar, 654, ii, *s. v.* Wood-oil, 741, i; ann. 920: *s. v.* Calay, 111, i; ann. 940: *s. v.* 116, ii; ann. 943: *s. v.* Cubeb, 214, ii; ann. 1150: *s. v.* Mace (a), 404, i; ann. 1200: *s. v.* Teak, 693, i; ann. 1224: *s. v.* Java, 348, i; ann. 1298: *s. v.* Betel, 67, ii, *s. v.* 117, i; ann. 1343: *s. v.* Myrobalan, 466, ii; ann. 1347: *s. v.* Hurtaul, 328, i, twice; ann. 1506: *s. v.* 117, i, 3 times, *s. v.* Tenasserim, 696, i, twice; ann. 1516: *s. v.* Borneo, 80, ii; ann. 1563: *s. v.* China (n. p.), 152, i, 3 times; ann. 1590 (3 times), 1726, 1786 and 1875 (3 times): *s. v.* 117, i.
- Camphora; ann. 1584: *s. v.* Borneo, 81, i.
- Camphre; *s. v.* Camphor, 116, ii.
- Camphre Fansouiri; ann. 1330: *s. v.* Java, 348, ii.
- Campinho; *s. v.* Compound (a), 186, i; ann. 1860: *s. v.* Compound, 188, ii.
- Campo; *s. v.* Campoo, 117, i, *s. v.* Compound, (a), 186, i (twice) and ii, (b), 186, ii, 4 times, 187, ii, see 263, ii, footnote; ann. 1500: *s. v.* Factory, 263, ii; ann. 1883: *s. v.* Campoo, 117, i.
- Campo Clin; ann. 1601: *s. v.* Kling, 373, ii.
- Campon; *s. v.* Compound, 187, i.
- Campon Bendara; ann. 1613: *s. v.* Compound, 188, i.
- Campon Chelim; ann. 1613: *s. v.* Cheling, 144, i, *s. v.* Compound, 188, i, twice, *s. v.* Kling, 374, i.
- Campon China; ann. 1613: *s. v.* Compound, 188, i, 3 times.
- Campong Malayo; ann. 1811: *s. v.* Compound, 188, ii.
- Campoo; *s. v.* 117, i; ann. 1800: *s. v.* Pultun, 846, i; ann. 1803: *s. v.* 117, i, twice.
- Campoy; *s. v.* Tea, 691, i.
- Campsay; ann. 1349: *s. v.* Macheen, 406, i.
- Camton; ann. 1535: *s. v.* Canton, 121, ii.
- Camucones; ann. 1704: *s. v.* Upas, 730, ii.
- Camysa; ann. 1498: *s. v.* Cameeze, 116, i.
- Can; ann. 166—: *s. v.* Peking, 526, i.
- Can, Great; ann. 1298: *s. v.* Sugar, 655, ii, twice.
- Canaca; ann. 1582: *s. v.* Gentoo, 280, ii.
- Canacappels; ann. 1672: *s. v.* Conicopoly, 190, i.
- Canacopola; ann. 1578: *s. v.* Conicopoly, 190, i.
- Canacopoly; ann. 1548: *s. v.* Conicopoly, 190, i.
- Canada; ann. 1563: *s. v.* Cuscusa, 787, i; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Mercall, 434, i.
- Canamellae; ann. 1220: *s. v.* Sugar, 655, i.
- Cananor; ann. 1506: *s. v.* Bahar, 36, i, *s. v.* Cannanore, 121, i; ann. 1510: *s. v.* Coir, 180, ii, 3 times; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Anchedita, 20, ii, *s. v.* Pattamar, 520, ii; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Narsinga, 474, i; ann. 1562: *s. v.* Dolly, Mount, 235, ii; ann. 1563: *s. v.* Saffron, 589, ii; ann. 1567: *s. v.* Jaggery, 341, i; ann. 1572: *s. v.* Cannanore, 121, i, twice, *s. v.* Cochin, 174, i, twice, *s. v.* Cranganore, 211, ii, *s. v.* Quilon, 570, ii, twice; ann. 1610: *s. v.* Bazaar, 57, i.
- Cananore; *s. v.* Factory, 264, i; ann. 1510: *s. v.* Narsinga, 474, i; ann. 1727: *s. v.* Cadjan (a), 107, ii; ann. 1767: *s. v.* Moplah, 448, ii.
- Cananoro; ann. 1503: *s. v.* Ormus, 493, i, twice.
- Canaquapelle; ann. 1580: *s. v.* Conicopoly, 190, i.
- Canara; *s. v.* Bacanore, 33, ii and footnote, *s. v.* Bamboo, 40, ii, *s. v.* Bateul, 54, i, *s. v.* Beiteul, 61, ii, *s. v.* Calyan, 114, ii, *s. v.* Canara, 117, ii, twice and footnote, *s. v.* Carnatic, 125, ii, twice, 126, i, *s. v.* Concan, 189, ii, *s. v.* Coomkee (a), 194, i, *s. v.* Coomary, 194, i, *s. v.* Corcopali, 196, ii, see 202, ii, footnote, *s. v.* Custard-Apple, 221, ii, *s. v.* Honore, 321, i, *s. v.* Jain, 341, ii, *s. v.* Mangalore, 422, i, *s. v.* Navait, 475, i, *s. v.* Parabyke, 512, i, twice, *s. v.* Poon, 547, i, *s. v.* Sarong, 602, i, see 665, ii, footnote, *s. v.* Wootz, 742, i, *s. v.* Canarin, 771, ii, *s. v.* Pardao, 837, ii, *s. v.* Sanguicer, 853, ii, *s. v.* Suttee, 859, ii; ann. 1538: *s. v.* Godavery, 291, i; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Deccan, 233, ii, *s. v.* Malabar (A), 413, i; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Concan, 189, ii, twice; ann. 1598: *s. v.* Canara, 118, i; ann. 1602: *s. v.* Pagoda (c), 502, i; ann. 1612: *s. v.* Raja, 571, ii; ann. 1614: *s. v.* Canara, 118, i, 3 times, *s. v.* Carnatic, 126, i; ann. 1615: *s. v.* Canara, 118, i; ann. 1616: *s. v.* Lingam, 395, i, twice; ann. 1623 and 1672 (4 times): *s. v.* Canara, 118, ii; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Carnatic, 126, i, twice; ann. 1726 and 1727: *s. v.* Canara, 118, ii; ann. 1760: *s. v.* Hendry Kendry, 314, i; ann. 1786: *s. v.* Gardee, 278, ii; ann. 1800: *s. v.* Bandy, 44, ii; ann. 1835: *s. v.* Poon, 547, i; ann. 1873;



- s. v.* Ceded Districts, 137, ii; ann. 1885: *s. v.* Seely, 855, i, *s. v.* Toucan, 863, ii.
- Cañara; *s. v.* 117, i.
- Canará; ann. 1552 (6 times) and 1572 (twice): *s. v.* Cañara, 118, i.
- Canaras; ann. 1602: *s. v.* Goa, 290, i.
- Canarese; *s. v.* Bacanore, 33, ii, *s. v.* Badega (b), 34, ii, twice, *s. v.* Bamboo, 41, ii, twice, *s. v.* Cañara, 117, ii, *s. v.* Carnatic, 125, ii, twice, *s. v.* Catochu, 133, i, *s. v.* Curry, 217, ii, *s. v.* Dravidian, 251, ii, *s. v.* Ginger, 286, ii, *s. v.* Gour (b), 298, i, *s. v.* Hullia, 326, ii, *s. v.* Jack, 335, ii, *s. v.* Malayalam, 417, i, *s. v.* Paddy, 495, ii, *s. v.* Papaya, 511, ii, *s. v.* Parbutty, 512, ii, *s. v.* Patola, 520, ii, *s. v.* Poon, 547, i, *s. v.* Wootz, 742, i, twice, *s. v.* Batta, 762, ii, *s. v.* Gaurian, 800, i; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Cañara, 118, i; ann. 1578: *s. v.* Datura, 231, i; ann. 1885: *s. v.* Seely, 855, i.
- Canari; ann. 1516: *s. v.* Cañara, 117, ii; ann. 1602: *s. v.* Kennery, 365, i.
- Canaries; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Moluccas, 441, i.
- Canarij; *s. v.* Cañara, 117, ii; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Cañara, 118, i.
- Canarim; ann. 1535: *s. v.* Cañara, 117, ii, 118, i.
- Canarin; *s. v.* 771, ii, twice; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Coco, 176, i; ann. 1563: *s. v.* Carambola, 123, i, *s. v.* Jack, 338, i, *s. v.* Saffron, 589, ii; ann. 1578: *s. v.* Mort-de-chien, 449, ii, 450, i; ann. 1672: *s. v.* Cañara, 118, ii.
- Canarine; ann. 1531: *s. v.* Bombay, 766, ii; ann. 1801: *s. v.* Gentoo, 281, ii.
- Canarium strictum; *s. v.* Dammer, 228, ii.
- Canat; ann. 1616: *s. v.* Canaut, 118, ii.
- Canatick; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Carnatic, 126, i, 3 times.
- Canaut; *s. v.* 118, ii, *s. v.* Fly, 271, i; ann. 1792 and 1793: *s. v.* 118, ii.
- Canay; ann. 1807: *s. v.* Cawney, 136, i, 3 times.
- Canbaya; 160, i, footnote; ann. 1543: *s. v.* Mosque, 452, ii; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Bombay, 77, ii.
- Canchanis; ann. 1799: *s. v.* Cuchunee, 217, i.
- Cancofly; ann. 1680: *s. v.* Conicopoly, 783, i, and ii.
- Cancofly; ann. 1680: *s. v.* Conicopoly, 783, i.
- Cancerlat; *s. v.* Cockroach, 175, i.
- Candahar; *s. v.* 118, ii, 119, i, twice, 771, ii; ann. 1676: *s. v.* Afghán, 5, i; ann. 1857: *s. v.* Hing, 318, ii.
- Candaharians; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Beirameg, 61, i.
- Candakeen; ann. 1613: *s. v.* Dungarce, 255, i.
- Candaor; ann. 1671: *s. v.* Candahar (a), 771, ii.
- Candar; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Candahar, 119, i.
- Candareen; *s. v.* 119, i, *s. v.* Mace (b), 404, ii.
- Canlaulah; ann. 1825: *s. v.* Calyan, 114, ii; ann. 1826: *s. v.* Ghaut (b), 282, i.

(To be continued.)

## MISCELLANEA.

## SPADES AND DRAGONS.

## A STUDY IN CURRENCY.

READERS of the commercial columns in the Indian daily papers will be familiar with the fact that the exchange rate of sovereigns is usually the subject of two quotations, "dragons" bearing a value that falls short of the price of other sovereigns by an anna or two. The Englishman, who has been accustomed to pay out his gold coins at home without considering whether they bear a dragon or a coat of arms on the reverse, is puzzled to find, now that sovereigns are coming into use in this country, that the market value of the coins varies with the device that they bear. It will, perhaps, be no less a subject for surprise to him to learn that these same sovereigns are commonly referred to by the natives who handle them as "guineas"—an epithet which at first seems a trifle misplaced; in fact, it may occur to him that the only reason discernible for calling a sovereign a guinea is that it is not a guinea; and he will be disposed to decide that this is hardly adequate.

With reference to the first of these conundrums, the differential value of sovereigns, varying in favour of those not bearing a dragon on the reverse, enquiries in the Bombay market have elicited the information that, in the opinion of many merchants and brokers of the Western Metropolis, the gold contained in the "spade" sovereigns ("spade" is a useful term for denoting the sovereigns stamped with the Royal arms on a shield of spade shape) is of better touch than that of the "dragons." The opinion is not confined to the bazars, but is shared by experts in currency questions. This conviction induces purchasers of these coins who intend using them for ornamental purposes, such as forming a necklace by stringing a number of them together, an ornament much affected by the fair-sex in India, to offer an anna or two more than the market rate for dragon sovereigns in order to secure the more favourite coin known as a spade guinea.

There is another reason why the "spade" sovereign is more appreciated for ornamental purposes



than its fellow. Musalmans prefer it on account of the "Sunnah" or behest of the Prophet which discourages the wearings of any effigy made in the likeness of a living thing, and equally forbids the possession of pictures or portraits capable of being so described. There was, it would seem, sufficient reason for the issue and enforcement of this behest in the early days of Islam. The conversion wholesale of many of the tribes of Arabia to the tenets of the Founder of this religion was not unoccasionally carried out with a rapidity that left some of the many new converts spiritually little changed in more than the name of their faith, and was for this reason marked by no little backsliding into idolatrous practices on the part of these half-fledged Muslims. These could not without difficulty at once divest themselves entirely of their early beliefs, dear to them through long practice and hereditary instinct. The primitive form of worship discarded by these converts would appear to have been of the nature of fetish-worship, that early stage in the evolution of religion which may perhaps be described as Pantheism in its esoteric aspect and exoterically Polytheistic, known in modern scientific language as Animism.

These "ex-Animists," then, were wont to carry about their persons rude images of their former gods, and, while seemingly bowing down to the Unseen Allah, would secretly worship the forbidden but more familiar deity of their forefathers. It was in order to strengthen these waverers and backsliders that the famous "Sunnah" against the use of pictures and effigies was promulgated by the Prophet.<sup>1</sup>

It will be seen that this "behest" furnishes a good reason why the orthodox Musalman should select the "spade" sovereign in preference to the "dragon." Critics may urge that the "spade" sovereign also bears an image, that of the Queen or her predecessor, on the obverse. This is true, yet it will be found to be in no way inconsistent with the explanation already given. The Sunnah aimed against images has, by a wise convention, been held not to apply to an incomplete effigy such as a head or bust alone. Expediency seems to have called for this latitude in the application of the law, for otherwise an orthodox Musalman would only be in position to receive payment in coin at a sacrifice of his religious scruples against the medium in which payment is tendered. Without wishing to libel the Mahomedan "in the street," the presumption may be hazarded that

his religious scruples would stand but a poor chance in such a contingency.

Thus, a preference for the metal from which they have been coined and the absence of St. George's famous battle scene from the reverse are possibly to no little extent responsible for the higher quotations or sovereigns of the spade type. Other reasons may be known to residents in India who have had their attention drawn to the subject of this note. I have not so far been able to discover them in Bombay. The origin of the term "guinea" for the sovereign, a name that is coming into use in many parts of the country where it was formerly unknown, on account of natives becoming for the first time familiar with sovereigns, a familiarity traceable to the working of the Currency Act which recently made them legal tender in India, is presumably to be explained as a survival from the days when guineas were in circulation. I learn from Captain Hudson, I. M. S., of Her Majesty's Mint in Bombay, that from 1760 to 1785 the guinea in circulation bore the effigy of George III. on the obverse, with inscription *Dei Gratia*; the reverse showing the Royal Arms, including the Fleur de Lys, and inscribed 1774, M.B.F. et H. Rex F.D., B. et L. D. S. R., J. A. T. et E. The arms were quartered on a scutcheon of irregular shape. From 1787 to 1798 a new guinea, bearing the same obverse and stamped in reverse with the Royal Arms in a spade, was in use. The inscription on the reverse was as before.

The modern spade sovereign is, therefore, sufficiently like its predecessor, the guinea, to suggest a reason for the use of the term by natives in describing it. By an extension of the word such as we are familiar with in the East, e. g., *kirkit* from cricket, and so applied to tennis and other games played with a ball, etc., "guinea" now denotes sovereigns of all designs — an instance of the development of the common noun which may be interesting to philologists as representing the process by which originally the common term was evolved in speech.

R. E. ENTHOVEN.

November 23rd, 1900.

[I understand that in Calcutta "guinea" has since the introduction of the Currency Act, come to mean a sum of fifteen rupees, just as "gold mohur" has long been made to stand for sixteen rupees and "pagoda" for three and half rupees. — R. C. TEMPLE.]

<sup>1</sup> This information has been kindly supplied by Khan Bahadur Fazlullah Latif.



## NOTES ON INDIAN HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHY.

BY J. F. FLEET, I.C.S. (RETD.), PH.D., C.I.E.

The places mentioned in the British Museum plates of Vira-Satyāśrayadēva.

THIS record has been published by me, with a lithograph, in Vol. XIV. above, p. 140 ff. It puts forward the name of a king Vira-Satyāśrayadēva, son of Gōvindarāya, whom it describes as the supreme lord of Kalyānapura the best of towns, as a son to the water-lily (flowering in the daytime) that was the family of the Chālukyas, and as born in the Sōmavamsa or Lunar Race. And it further describes him as reigning at Kalyānapura, and as being engaged, at the time when the record was issued, in a state progress through the southern territories,<sup>1</sup> in the course of which his camp was pitched<sup>2</sup> near (the temple of) the god Kopeśvara.

Kalyānapura is the modern Kalyāni in the Nizam's Dominions.<sup>3</sup> And the record thus represents Vira-Satyāśrayadēva as a descendant and successor of the great Western Chālukya kings, whose dynasty came to an end about A. D. 1190. It must be remarked that it is not quite certain that this record is a genuine one. All that can be said for the present, however, on this point, is, that there is no particular reason why there should not have been a prince Vira-Satyāśrayadēva, — in, say, the thirteenth or fourteenth century A. D.,<sup>4</sup> which is the period to which the composition of this record may be referred, — claiming Chālukya descent, and possessing a certain amount of power over some of the territories that had formed part of the Western Chālukya kingdom, though he certainly cannot have been actually reigning as a paramount king at Kalyāni.

The record goes on to recite that, on a specified day in the Bhāva *saṃvatsara*, with which, however, no year of an era is coupled,<sup>5</sup> there was granted, apparently by Vira-Satyāśrayadēva himself, a village named Selagāra, in a district called the Mirinje three-hundred kampāṇa, and in a group of villages described as the Koṅgulavali twelve.<sup>6</sup> It divides the whole village into certain properties. Of these, one, called the *manneya-sthalavṛitti*, seems to be specified as assigned to a certain Bhīmarāya, the *madahastipādarakṣhapālaka* or captain of the guards of elephants.<sup>7</sup> Another was set apart for the purposes of the *ashṭabhōga-tājā-svāmīya*. Others were assigned to the Mūlathāna god, to the Jinālaya or Jain temple, to the god Mailārādēva, and to the god Brahmādēva. Others were assigned to the *Nādgāruṇḍa* or headman of the group of villages, and to a certain Bīreyanāyaka, the *Mālī* or keeper of the garden of the Mūlathāna god, and to the *Sonnāra* or goldsmith, the *Deśrapāṭya* or gatekeeper, and the

<sup>1</sup> *Dakṣiṇa-dīśdvāra-digvijaya-yātrā*; see *Ep. Ind.* Vol. VI. p. 51, note 5.

<sup>2</sup> *Kaṭakam-utkalita*, or *kaṭaka mutkalita*; see page 220 above, note 36.

<sup>3</sup> See my *Dynasties of the Kanarese Districts* (in the *Gazetteer of the Bombay Presidency*, Vol. 1. Part II.), p. 335, note 1, and p. 427, note 3.

<sup>4</sup> See some remarks, in connection with Sōmadēva and Kāmavadēvarāya, in note 22 on page 207 above. — For some possibilities regarding the actual date of the present record, see the next note.

<sup>5</sup> The full details of the date are the Bhāva *saṃvatsara*, and Jyāishṭha *kṛishṇa* 7 coupled with Śaśvāra (Monday). — In A. D. 1274, in the Bhāva *saṃvatsara* according to the system current in the part of the country to which this record belongs, the given *tithi* began at about 14 hrs. 40 min. after mean sunrise (for Ujjain) on Monday, 26th May. But there is no apparent reason why the *tithi* should be coupled, for a time more than two hours after sunset, with the day on which it began. — In A. D. 1214, 1334, and 1394, the given *tithi* did not touch a Monday at all. — In A. D. 1454, the month Jyāishṭha was intercalary; and, in the second Jyāishṭha, the given *tithi* ended at about 12 hrs. 32 min. after mean sunrise on Monday, 17th June. But the acceptance of this result, or of any later one, would probably entail the stamping of the record as a spurious one.

<sup>6</sup> This part of the record might be taken, at first sight, as meaning that a grant was made of all the villages included in the group. But the real intended purport of the mention of the Koṅgulavali twelve seems to be simply to define further the exact subdivision, of the three-hundred district, to which the village of Selagāra belonged. The language of the record is ungrammatical.

<sup>7</sup> *Pādarakṣa* is explained in Monier-Williams' *Sanskrit Dictionary* as meaning, in the plural, 'armed men who run by the side of an elephant in battle to protect its feet.'



*Nāṭiya* or barber.<sup>8</sup> And the last assignment was made, according to the text, to the *anāmikā*. This word, however, which means 'the ring-finger,'<sup>9</sup> must be a mistake for *anāmika*, meaning the Mahārs, Māngs, Chāmbhārs, etc.

The record then proceeds to define the boundaries of Selagāra. And here it places, on the north-east, the junction of the three villages of Koṅgulavali, Borovali, and Selagāra; on the south-east, the junction of Madubāvi, Vorabali, and Selagāra; on the west-south-west, the junction of Beljavalike, Madakunike, and Selagāra; and, on the north-west, the junction of Koṅgulavali, Beluvanike, and Selagāra. In this passage mention is also made, in line 40, of a village named Virādhāravuna, somewhere on the east of Selagāra, and, in line 45, of a hill named Dharagiri or Baragiri, which touched the boundary of Madakunike and was somewhere between the south-east and the west-south-west, and, in line 49-50, of a hill named Andharāgiri, which was somewhere towards the west, and, in lines 50, 52, of a hill named Undraparvata, Undragiri, which was somewhere on the north-west.

Miriñje is, of course, the modern Miraj, the chief town of the Senior Miraj State in the Southern Marāṭhā Country, in lat. 16° 49', long. 74° 42', about twenty-eight miles towards the east-by-north from Kōlhāpur. And the Miriñje three-hundred kampaṇa of this record was perhaps the head-quarters subdivision of the Miriñje territory, which seems to be described elsewhere as a three-thousand province.<sup>10</sup>

Koṅgulavali is the 'Kongnoolee' of the Indian Atlas sheet No. 40 (1852), — the 'Kognoli' of the Postal Directory of the Bombay Circle (1879), and of the Deccan Topographical Survey sheet No. 90 (1883),<sup>11</sup> — the village-site of which is eighteen miles east-north-east from Miraj. The word *vali* represents, of course, *valli*, = *halli*, *palḷi*, 'a settlement, an abode, a hamlet, a village.' And we may take the old name of the village as Koṅgulavalli, and the modern name as Koṅganōḷi.<sup>12</sup>

Selagāra is the 'Surgul' of the Atlas sheet, and the 'Salgar' of the Postal Directory and the Topographical sheet, about one mile and a quarter on the south of Koṅganōḷi.<sup>13</sup> The name of Borovali has disappeared; and the lands of this village seem to have been incorporated into the eastern lands of Salgar. Madubāvi is 'Mudbawee,' 'Madbhav,' — standing, no doubt, for Madbavi, Madbhāvi,<sup>14</sup> — six and a half miles towards the south-south-east from Salgar: it is now separated from Salgar by the lands of 'Bomnāl,' 'Arlhatti,' and 'Shirur;' and some of these lands probably represent Vorabali, the name of which, again, has disappeared. Beluvalike or Beluvanike is 'Bellokhee,' 'Belankhi,' — of which the real spelling seems to be Belwanki, — three miles on the south-west of Salgar. The name of Madakunike, also, has disappeared, unless the village is represented by 'Mutkoonkee,' 'Matkunki,' about seventeen miles away towards the west-north-west from Salgar: that, however, with six or seven

<sup>8</sup> Read, more correctly, *Sṅār*, *Dvārapāla*, and *Nāṭal*.

<sup>9</sup> See Vol. IV. above, p. 85. The verse about the *anāmikā* is also to be found in Peterson's Second Report on Sanskrit MSS. p. 62, where it is quoted from the anthology of Harikavi called *Harikārtakā*.

<sup>10</sup> See Vol. XXIX. above, p. 277, note 22.

<sup>11</sup> One would think, at first, that this form of the name is purely a mistake. But Capt. West's *Memoir of the States of the Southern Maratha Country* (1869) mentions, in Appendix B., p. 84, a village named 'Kognolee,' which seems to be this one; and the *Postal Directory* presents both as 'Kognoli' and as 'Kongnoli' the name of another Koṅganōḷi in the Chikōḷi tāluka of the Belgaum district, about forty-six miles south-west-by-west from the one with which we are concerned. And it seems, therefore, that both forms of the name are really current.

<sup>12</sup> The name of the other Koṅganōḷi, in the Chikōḷi tāluka (see the preceding note), is certified in *Bombay Places* as being spelt with the dental *n* in the third syllable. But for that, I should have been inclined to take the *l* in Koṅganōḷi, also, as standing for *l*, and so to take the old name as Koṅgulavalli, passing into Koṅganōḷi; compare really means Beljavalike in the first passage.

<sup>13</sup> I take all the distances, of course, from village-site to village-site. The lands of Koṅganōḷi and Salgar touch each other.

<sup>14</sup> The Rev. F. Kittel's *Kannada-English Dictionary* gives only *śāḍi* as the *śāḍhara*-form of the Sanskrit *śāḍi*, 'a pond, tank, pool, well.' Reeve and Sanderson's *Dictionary* gives both *śāḍi* and *śāḍi*. And I know that, in the Belgaum district at any rate, the form *śāḍi*, with the aspirated *ḥ*, is used more freely than the other form.



other villages now intervening, seems almost too far away to be concerned in the present matter; and it appears more likely that the lands of the Madakupike of the record are now represented by the lands of the 'Kuktoli' of the Topographical sheet, about five miles towards the north-west-by-west from Salgar. The name of Virādharaṇa, again, has disappeared. Dharagiri or Baragiri seems to denote the range of hills, seen best in the Atlas sheet, which comes close up on the west to 'Lingnoor,' 'Lingnur,' seven miles towards the south-west-by-south from Salgar. Andharagiri is probably the isolated hill close on the north-west of Belwanki. And the Undraparvata or Undragiri must be the hill now known as Junā-Panhāla or Old Panhāla, about three and a half miles west-by-north from Salgar.<sup>15</sup>

The Koṅgulavaḷli twelve, originally belonging entirely to the Miriṅje country, seems to have been now very much split up in respect of ownership. According to the Topographical sheet, Koṅganōḷi belongs to the Junior Miraj State; Salgar and Junā-Panhāla belong to Sāngli; Madhāvi or Madbhāvi belongs to Ghōrpaḍe; and Belwanki belongs to the Athni tāluka.

As noted above, the record asserts that, when the grant was made, Vira-Satyāśrayadēva was encamped near the god Kopēkvara. This means that he was at Koppam, a famous battle-field of the Western Chālukyas and the Chōḷas. And I shall shew on another occasion that Koppam is the modern Khidrāpur, in the Kōlhāpur territory, near the confluence of the Kṛishṇā and the Dūdḥ-Gaṅgā. Not far away, there was Kūḍalsamgam, another famous battle-field of the same two foes. And in the same neighbourhood there was Karandai, which is the modern Inchal-Karāñji, where the Chōḷa king Rājakesarivarman-Vīrarājendra I. expected the Chālukya king Āhavamalla-Sōmēśvara I. to come in order to fight him once again at Kūḍalsamgam.<sup>16</sup>

#### The places mentioned in the spurious Waḍgaon plates.

This record is No. 36 in the list of Spurious Records on page 218 above. It deserves, for various reasons, to be edited. But it has not yet been so dealt with. And I quote it, chiefly for geographical purposes, from ink-impressions made by me in 1891, when the original plates were sent to me by Khān Bahādūr Meherjibhai Kuvarji Tarapurwala, Diwān of Kōlhāpur. The original plates were then in the possession of Bābaji and Raghu, sons of Kṛishṇa Tapklṛ, of Waḍgaon in the Aṭm subdivision of the Kōlhāpur State. And they were, presumably, returned to those same persons, when they were sent back by me.

The record claims, in the first place, a grant which, it asserts, was made by a Rāshṭrakūṣa king Amoghavarsha, by whom, however, it really means Indra III.<sup>1</sup> It says that he had come to Kurunda for the purpose of celebrating the festival of his coronation; that is to say, that he had come to Kurundwāḍ, which place is mentioned in the same way in the Nausārī grants of A. D. 915, which tell us that Indra III. was then at Kurundaka for the festival of his coronation.<sup>2</sup> And it claims that, on a specified day in the Bahudhānya saṁvatsara, Saka-Saṁvat 720 expired, falling in A. D. 798, after performing a mahāyāga or great sacrifice at the time of conquering the Dravida Rājendrachōḍa, he granted to a thousand and one Brāhmins, of whom only one is specified, namely Mādhavachauveradikshita of the Kannaḍa lineage and

<sup>15</sup> The *Gazetteer of the Bombay Presidency*, Vol. XXI., Belgaum, p. 551, speaks of this as the "Belvanki or Old Panhāla Hill," and places it "about six miles north-west of Athni," and mentions a cave in it, dedicated to the god Siddhēśvara. This account, however, seems to confuse it in some way with the hill at Belwanki. This latter hill is about sixteen miles towards the north-west-by-north from Athni. Junā-Panhāla is about eighteen miles from Athni, and more to the north-west. It is not included in the lands of Belwanki, which, in fact, it hardly touches at all. And the Topographical sheet shows it as having a temple of 'Girling.'

<sup>16</sup> See *South-Ind. Inscr.* Vol. III. p. 69, and note 2.

<sup>1</sup> See note 73 on page 218 above.

<sup>2</sup> *Jour. Bo. Br. R. As. Soc.* Vol. XVIII. p. 263. Kurundwāḍ is only about one hundred and seventy miles from the capital Mānyakhēta-Mālkhēḍ. — While awaiting the first proofs of this paper, I have noticed that the identification of the Kurundaka of the Nausārī records with Kurundwāḍ had already been suggested, doubtfully, in the *Gazetteer of the Bombay Presidency*, Vol. I. Part I. p. 132, note, where, however, the name was wrongly taken as Kurundaka. The local Waḍgaon record, though spurious, suffices to make the identification certain.



the *Kāśyapa gōtra*, — *Karahāṭa-chatusaśra*<sup>3</sup>-*viśay-āntarē* *Mallakagrāma-tridāsa-madhyē* *Kṛṣṇaverṇā-mahānadi-pūrvva-dig-bhāgē* *Yeleyavāpi-nāma-grāma*, — "the village named *Yeleyavāpi*, in the *Karahāṭa* four-thousand province, in the *Mallakagrāma* thirty, on the east of the great river *Kṛṣṇaverṇā*." The record asserts that the king gave the village as a *mahāgrahāra* or "great *agrahāra*," (to be enjoyed according to) the *tribhōgādhyantarasiddhi*, that is to say, on a joint tenure by *Brāhmaṇas*, by a god or gods, and by a private person,<sup>4</sup> and that he gave with it its hamlet called *Dvijapalli*, on the north of it, apparently consisting of twelve houses laid out according to the measure of seven cubits (*hasta*). And, in addition to saying that each of the *Brāhmaṇ* donees received twelve *nivartanas* of land, it mentions a tenement of one thousand *nivartanas* according to the rod (*daṇḍa*) of twelve spans (*vitasti*), which it specifies as *prabhūḍanya*, or "the property of the lord (of the village),"<sup>5</sup> and a tenement of four thousand *nivartanas*, which it specifies as *dēvadāya*, or "the portion of the gods."

The appellation *Kṛṣṇaverṇā* is already well known as one of the variants of the epigraphic name of the river *Kṛṣṇā*.<sup>6</sup> And we need say nothing further about the river here, except that, with the description of it in this record as *mahānadi*, "the great river," we have to compare the Kanarese word *perdore*, also occurring as *peldore*, again meaning "the great river," and used to denote the *Kṛṣṇā*, without even requiring to be attached to the name of the river.<sup>7</sup> Also, the *Karahāṭa* four-thousand is known as a territorial division which took its name from the ancient name of *Karhād*, the head-quarters of the *Karhād tāluka* of the *Sātārā* district.<sup>8</sup>

We have, therefore, to find the village, claimed by the record, somewhere within a reasonable distance from *Karhād*, and on the east of the *Kṛṣṇā*. And, with these facts to guide us, (and with the help of some of the details given in the passages in this record which define the boundaries of *Yeleyavāpi*, we find that *Yeleyavāpi* is the modern *Yelāvi*, — the 'Yellavee' of the Indian Atlas sheet No. 40 (1852), and the 'Yelāvi' of the Bombay Survey sheet No. 270 (1895), — the village-site of which is about five miles on the west of *Tāsgaon*, the head-quarters of the *Tāsgaon tāluka* of the *Sātārā* district, and three miles from the east bank of the *Kṛṣṇā*, and twenty-seven miles towards the south-east-by-east from *Karhād*.

Among the villages mentioned, and capable of identification, in the passage defining the boundaries of *Yeleyavāpi*, we have first *Nimbaṇi*, somewhere on the east of *Yeleyavāpi*; this is the modern 'Nimnee,' 'Nimṇi,' of the maps, the village-site of which is three miles south-east-by-east from *Yelāvi*, and the name of which we may safely take as *Nimṇi*. Mention is next made of a village named *Uragagrāma*, "the village of snakes," or *Pāṣāṇōragagrāma*, "the village of rock-snakes (?)," somewhere on the south of *Nimbaṇi*; <sup>9</sup> this name, in either form, seems to be a rather fanciful substitute for *Nāgagrāma*, which would be exactly represented by *Nāgaon*, also called *Nāgaon-Nimṇi*, about one mile south of *Nimṇi*. Further on, mention is made of a village named *Panasa*, somewhere on the north-west of *Yeleyavāpi*; this is

<sup>3</sup> Read *chatusaśra*.

<sup>4</sup> See Vol. XIX. above, p. 271.

<sup>5</sup> Mention is often made of the *Prabhū* of a village; for instance, in the cases of *Mādhava*, the *Prabhū* of *Māṇikyavāṇi* (Ep. Ind. Vol. V. p. 21), and *Ēchagāvūḍa*, the *Prabhū* of *Abbalūr-Abilūr* (ibid. p. 231). And we also have the mention of a *Mahāprabhū* of an *agrahāra* (ibid. p. 22). The office was evidently that of the *grāmādhipati*, referred to in *Mānavadharmasūtra*, vii. 115, which says: — "Let him (the king) appoint a lord of one village (*grāmaṇya adhipati*), and a lord of ten villages, and a lord of twenty, and a lord of a hundred, and a lord of a thousand." But, whether the functions of a *Prabhū* or *Grāmādhipati* of a village were the same as those of a *Gaṇḍa*, *Pāṭil*, or village-headman, or what they were, has not yet been made clear.

<sup>6</sup> See page 376 below.

<sup>7</sup> See Ep. Ind. Vol. V. p. 169, note 6, and Vol. VI. p. 258.

<sup>8</sup> See page 377 below.

<sup>9</sup> The text has *daśhinataḥ pāṣāṇōraḥ-nāma-grāma-pāśchimataḥ*, etc. The language of this part of the record is not altogether grammatical. And reference is made several times, further on, to such land-marks as *pāśhaṇa*, 'a stone,' *mah-ārūḍha-hasti-pāśhaṇa*, 'a stone bearing the representation of a great elephant with a rider on it,' and *pāśhaṇa-puṭja*, 'a heap of stones.' And so, perhaps, we ought to divide the text, and understand it as meaning 'a stone and the village named *Uragagrāma*.' But, if there is any Native term corresponding to our 'rock-snake,' then the name may certainly be taken as *Pāṣāṇōragagrāma*.



'Pulloos,' 'Palus,' about four and a half miles towards the north-west from Yelâvi. Further on, we have a village named **Yanduli** or **Yanduli**, somewhere on the north-east of Panaśa; this is 'Andlee,' 'Andhali,' three and a half miles towards the north-north-east from 'Pulloos,' 'Palus,' and six and a half miles towards the north-north-west from Yelâvi. And finally we have a village or hamlet named **Turuturapalli**, which seems to be represented by the modern 'Toorchee,' 'Turchi,' three miles north-east-by-east from Yelâvi.

Other villages mentioned in the same passage, are, **Utsavagrâma**, **Bhagnadhanurgrâma**, a deserted (*śūnya*) hamlet named **Thannambâpalikâ**, and **Tâvrachûlâgrâma**. These names, and that of the hamlet **Dvijapalli**, seem to have now disappeared. At any rate, the maps do not present anything answering to them.

So, also, the maps do not present any name answering to that of **Mallakagrâma**, the village from which the group of villages known as the **Mallakagrâma** thirty took its appellation.<sup>10</sup> And it does not appear that the name **Mallakagrâma** can be a translation of **Tâsgaon**. And it hardly seems likely that the name of **Tâsgaon**, can be a corruption of **Tisgaon**, 'thirty-village.' But the maps shew, about five and a half miles on the north of **Tâsgaon**, a large village called **Visâpur**, the name of which is capable of meaning 'twenty-town.'<sup>11</sup> It appears that the **Tâsgaon** jâgir, which existed prior to 1848, consisted of eleven villages.<sup>12</sup> And I suspect that, at some time or another, the original group of thirty villages was broken up into two groups, one of ten villages headed by **Tâsgaon**, and one of twenty villages headed by **Visâpur**, and that the name of **Mallakagrâma** then disappeared.

It may be added that, after the passage defining the boundaries of **Yeleyavâpi**, the record goes on to say that a certain **Subhatuṅga**, also called **Tuliga** and **Gaṇḍamârtaṇḍa** and perhaps **Kogaḍa** or **Kogaṇḍa**, laved the feet of **Varêśvarapaṇḍita**, and made certain allotments of land to various temples and for other purposes. By the name **Gaṇḍamârtaṇḍa**, we know that the record here means the **Râshṭrakûṭa** king **Kriṣṇa III.**,<sup>13</sup> a successor of **Indra III.** The details of these allotments, added together, amount to five thousand *nivartanas*. And this part of the record thus seems to put forward a subsequent redistribution of the two tenements of one thousand *nivartanas* and four thousand *nivartanas*, which, according to the first part, were reserved as *prabhusâmya* and *dêvadâya*. The record concludes by claiming to have been written by **Sarvadêva**, a servant of **Âghôvallabha** (*sic*) of the **Raṭa** (*sic*) lineage.

#### The places mentioned in the **Karhâḍ** plates of A. D. 959.

This record has been edited by Dr. Bhandarkar, with a facsimile lithograph, in *Ep. Ind.* Vol. IV. p. 278 ff. It recites that, on a specified day in the **Kâlayukta saṁvatsara**, **Saka-Saṁvat** 880 (expired), falling in A. D. 959, the **Râshṭrakûṭa** king **Kriṣṇa III.**, who was then encamped at **Mêlpâṭi**, granted to a great ascetic named **Gaganaśiva**, a pupil of the **Âchârya** **Îśanaśiva** who was the **Sthânapati** or head of the establishment of the god **Valkalêśvara** of **Karahâṭa** and had issued from the **Karahâṭa** succession (*of teachers*), a village named **Kaṅkêṁ** in a group of villages known as the **Kalli** twelve which was attached (*pratibaddha*) to the **Karahâṭa** province (*vishaya*). The boundaries of **Kaṅkêṁ** are specified. And we are told that they were on the north and east a river named **Kanhavannâ**, and on the south and west two villages the names of which, according to the published text, were [**Pêndu**]rêṁ and **Âḍhêṁ**.

**Mêlpâṭi** is the village which is still known as **Mêlpâḍi**, in the **Chittûr** taluka of the North Arcot district, Madras Presidency. The **Karahâṭa** of this record, however, is certainly the modern **Karhâḍ** in the **Sâtârâ** district, Bombay Presidency,<sup>1</sup> where the plates themselves were

<sup>10</sup> 'Mullengaon,' 'Malangâon,' a small village on the east bank of the **Agrâpi** river, about eleven miles on the east of **Tâsgaon**, does not seem to answer any of the required conditions. And 'Mulgaon,' 'Mâlgaon,' a large village about five miles north-east-by-east from **Miraj**, certainly does not.

<sup>11</sup> *Viśā* means 'an aggregate of twenty considered as an unit by simple men in counting or reckoning, a score;' for instance, *pâñch viśā rupayā*, 'five score rupees;' see **Molesworth** and **Candy's Marâṭhî Dictionary**, under *viśā*.

<sup>12</sup> See the *Gazetteer of the Bombay Presidency*, Vol. XIX., **Sâtârâ**, pp. 350, 353.

<sup>13</sup> See *Ep. Ind.* Vol. VI. p. 179.

<sup>1</sup> Regarding **Karhâḍ** and the **Karahâṭa** territory, see page 377 ff. below.



found in digging out the foundations of an old and dilapidated house. And we have to find the villages that are named in the record, somewhere within a reasonable distance from Karhād.

Dr. Bhandarkar was informed<sup>2</sup> that there is a village of the name of **Kaṅki**, now included in the Junior Miraj State, some miles to the south-east of Karhād; and also that that village is bounded on the south by a village named **Pandūr**, and on the west by a village named **Ādhi**. It was indicated to him that these villages are in the neighbourhood of a river now called the **Agraṇi**. He was further told that there is also a village of the name of **Kalli** in the vicinity. And, finally, he was told that the twelve villages of which Kalli is or was the chief, have now the following names : —

1, Kalli.	5, Ādhi.	9, Khaṭāv.
2, Kaṅki.	6, Salgar.	10, Nignūr.
3, Ājūra.	7, Bēkōṅki.	11, Pandrēgām̐v (Pandūr ?).
4, Sijūr.	8, Titūr.	12, Tāvāi.

This information is very circumstantial. But an examination of the details of it, with the help of maps, very soon shews that it is purely imaginative. The **Agraṇi** river is a small river the name of which figures as 'Agurnee' in the Indian Atlas sheet No. 40 (1852), as 'Agran' in the Bombay Survey sheet No. 270 (1895), as 'Agarni' in the Survey sheet No. 301 (1897), and as 'Agurni' in the Survey sheet No. 302 (1897). It rises near Khānāpur, which is twelve miles on the east of Viṭa (Viṭēm), the head-quarters of the Khānāpur taluka of the Sātārā district, and is about thirty-five miles on the east of Karhād. And, flowing southwards, it eventually joins the Kṛishṇā about eight miles on the south-west of Athṇi, the head-quarters of the Athṇi taluka of the Belgaum district. If Kaṅkēm is to be found on the Agraṇi, the only places where that river makes so decided a bend that it could form both the northern and the eastern boundaries of a village, are, near the 'Kuroolee' of the Indian Atlas sheet No. 40, the 'Karoli' of the Deccan Topographical Survey sheet No. 90 (1888), about eighteen miles north-east-by-east from Miraj, or else at the 'Kullotee' of the Indian Atlas sheet No. 40, the 'Kaloti' of the Bombay Survey sheet No. 301, twenty-five miles towards the east-by-north from Miraj. But neither there, nor anywhere else along the Agraṇi, do the maps present any names answering in any way to the four village-names given in the record.

We can, however, identify some of the twelve villages reported to Dr. Bhandarkar as constituting now, or having formerly constituted, the Kalli group. They are to be found in the Indian Atlas sheet No. 40 (1852), and the Deccan Topographical Survey sheet No. 90 (1888), and the Bombay Survey sheet No. 301 (1897). Taking everything together, it is quite obvious that Salgar is the village with which we have dealt on page 370 above, — the ancient Selagāra in the Koṅgulavalli twelve in the Miriṇje three-hundred *kampana*, — about one mile and a quarter on the south of Koṅganōḷi, which is eighteen miles east-north-east from Miraj. Ājūra is 'Ajoor,' 'Ajur,' seven miles on the east of Koṅganōḷi, and on the other side, the east, of the Agraṇi. Sijūr must be a mistake for 'Seepoor,' 'Sipur,' seven miles towards the south-west-by-west from Koṅganōḷi, or else for 'Seeroor,' 'Sirur,' six miles on the east of Koṅganōḷi. Bēkōṅki must be a mistake for 'Bellokhee,' 'Belankhi,' 'Belwanki,' already mentioned on page 370 above, four and a half miles south-west-by-south from Koṅganōḷi. Khaṭāv must be the 'Khuttao' of the Atlas sheet, — shewn, however, in the Topographical sheet as 'Kavtha,' — about eight miles on the south of Koṅganōḷi. Nignūr must be a mistake, either for 'Nagnoor,' 'Nágnur,' eight miles towards the east-south-east from Koṅganōḷi, and, with 'Ajoor,' 'Ajur,' on the east of the Agraṇi, or else for 'Lingnoor,' 'Lingnur,' eight miles south-south-west from Koṅganōḷi. Pandrēgām̐v (Pandūr ?) must be a mistake for 'Pandeogaon,' 'Pandegaon,' about three and a half miles on the east of Koṅganōḷi. And Tāvāi is 'Taose,' 'Tāousi,' a mile and a half beyond 'Nagnoor,' 'Nágnur,' and, with it and 'Ajoor,' 'Ajur,' on the east of the Agraṇi. This accounts for eight of the twelve names given to Dr. Bhandarkar. As regards Ādhi and Titūr, it can only be said that, while the Topographical and Survey sheets

<sup>2</sup> See *Ep. Ind.* Vol. II. p. 231.



give very full details, even of hamlets, and are not likely to have omitted any village-name that really exists, any names answering to *Āḍhī* and *Titūr* cannot be found, either anywhere in the locality to which the results shewn above fix us, or anywhere else except in the case of the 'Adhew,' 'Adhiv,' of the Indian Atlas sheet No. 40 and its quarter-sheet N. E. (1886), three miles north-north-east from Paṇḍharpur in the Shōlāpur district. It is quite plain, however, that Dr. Bhandarkar's informant in some way or another hit, more or less accurately, upon the group of villages which is referred to as the Koṅgulavali twelve in the British Museum plates of *Vīra-Satyāśrayadēva*. But the maps do not present, anywhere in the neighbourhood of Koṅganōḷi, any names answering in any way to the four villages-names given in the Karhāḍ record. There is no reason for thinking that the name Koṅgulavali, = Koṅgulavalli-Koṅganōḷi, may have been evolved out of the name Kalli, and that we may identify Kalli with Koṅganōḷi, and assume that the other three village-names given in the record do not now exist. And also, whether the grant purporting to have been issued by *Vīra-Satyāśrayadēva* is genuine or not, there are no reasons for refusing to accept the geographical details put forward in it, and for proposing to place the Koṅgulavalli twelve in the Karabāṭa country instead of in the Miriñje country.

A scrutiny of the above-mentioned and other maps, covering the whole of the territory which may by any possibility be considered as having been included in the Karabāṭa country, failed to enable me to identify the villages named, according to the published text, in the record. It then occurred to me to examine the record itself more closely. And the result is that I find that, while there is no doubt about the names Kalli and Kaṅkēm, the names of the other two villages have not been deciphered correctly.

First, as regards the name which has been read as [Pēṇḍu]rēm, = Pēṇḍurēm, in line 64. An examination of the characters *d* and *f* throughout the record, shews quickly that the second *akshara* is *ḥu*, not *du*. The first *akshara* is a rather anomalous one. The consonant does not resemble at all closely any *p* that I can find in the record. Nor can I find any exact likeness of it. It might be a badly formed lingual *p*; but that letter is hardly admissible as the initial of even a place-name. It might also be a badly formed *g*. But the closest similitude of it that I can find, is the *l* as it stands in *nabhasṭal-aika*, line 3, and in *kumud-āvalāṇḍa*, line 5. That is not the proper exact form of the *l*, which is illustrated clearly enough in the name of Kalli itself, in line 62, or, better still, in *kut-ōllās*, line 32, or, again, in *keḥiti-talē*, line 6, with a slight difference due to the prolongation downwards of the left-hand part of the letter. But there are several places in the record, in which the *l* was formed very indifferently. And it is easy to see how the form presented in *nabhasṭal-aika*, line 3, and *kumud-āvalāṇḍa*, line 5, was arrived at; namely, by omitting the centre stroke, clearly recognisable even in *tilakas-trailōkya*, line 3, which properly connects the left-hand and right-hand components of the fully formed *l*. Here, in the village-name in line 64, we have a very close approximation to the *l* of *nabhasṭal-aika* and *kumud-āvalāṇḍa*. It differs only in that the left-hand part of the body of the letter was formed rather too high; as the result of which, the *mātrā* or horizontal top-stroke could not be formed as fully as usual. It is quite certain that the consonant here is *l*. The long sweep down in the left-hand part of the *akshara* seems, — especially if we regard its disjointedness near the top, — to be certainly meant to mark the vowel *e*, expressed here according to the older fashion as also in *Kaṅkēm*, line 62, and in various other places, instead of according to the later fashion as in *Valkalē* at the end of line 59 and other places. And I therefore read this name as *Leṇṭurēm*, = *Leṇṭurēm*.

Secondly, as regards the name which has been read as *Āḍhēm*, also in line 64. The consonant of the second *akshara* is certainly, at first sight, somewhat like the *ḍh* which we have in *māḍh-ōlāra*, line 13. But it is at least not identical with it. We have, however, another similitude of it, though again not an exact likeness, in the subscript *chh* of this record, which is exhibited very clearly in *āchchhādāna*, line 61, and almost as clearly in *padasy-ēchchhatā*, line 52.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>3</sup> It occurs also in *krīṭa-chchhādyāna*, line 13, and *chchhātā*, line 67. But in those places the *akshara* was not at all well formed.



We have this form of the *chh* very clearly all through the Kaṭhēm plates of A. D. 1009, from the same part of the country, published in Vol. XVI. above, p. 15 ff., with a facsimile lithograph; see, in particular, the full form of it in *piāchha*, line 6,<sup>4</sup> and see also the combinations *chehh* in lines 23, 42, 49, and 68, and *yehh* for *chchh* in line 54. It is the form of *chh* from which the modern Nāgarī form was almost directly evolved. It differs from the epigraphic *dh*, — which we have again in *mādhāh* in line 50 of the Kaṭhēm record, where, however, it was not so well formed as it was in *mādh-ēddā* in line 13 of the present record, — essentially in respect of the open bend that formed the end of the *dh* being continued to make a closed loop with a kind of a tail below it. The facsimile of the present record shews, even without a magnifying glass, that there was the intention to complete the loop and form the tail here, but the engraver's tool was not properly driven home. It shews also a detail of a still more marked kind; namely, a loop in the upper part of the body of the letter, which makes the character a closer approximation, than even the *chh* of the Kaṭhēm record, to the modern *chh*. And, in short, it is quite certain that we have here an imperfectly formed *chh*, and that the name is *Āchhēm*, not *Ādhēm*.

Now, Karhād is at the confluence of the Koynā and the Kṛishṇā. We know, from various records, that the epigraphic name of the Kṛishṇā was *Kṛishṇavernā*, with the variants of *Kṛishṇavennā*, *Kṛishṇabennā*, and *Kṛishṇavēpi*; and the form *Kṛishṇavēpā* occurs elsewhere.<sup>5</sup> As has been stated by me in another place,<sup>6</sup> the name was evidently derived from the confluence of the Kṛishṇā and the Vēpā, also called Yēpā, at Saṅgam-Māhul three miles east of Sātārā, — just as the name of the Tuṅgābhadrā was derived from the confluence of the Tuṅgā and the Bhadrā. And, whether *Kanḥavannā* is an absolutely correct Prākṛit form of the name, or is not so, — (we should expect, rather, *Kanḥavannā*, with the lingual *ṇ*), — there can be no doubt that the *Kanḥavannā* of this record means the *Kṛishṇavernā*, that is the Kṛishṇā.

We must, therefore, now look for the places, mentioned in the record, along the west bank of the Kṛishṇā, at some point where there is so marked a bend in the river that it could form both the northern and the eastern boundaries of a village. The required point, presenting at the same time any equivalents of the names for which we are searching, can only be found opposite the 'Kaleh' of the Indian Atlas sheet No. 40 (1852), — the 'Kala' of the same sheet, N. W. (1896), and the 'Kāla' of the Bombay Survey sheet No. 238 (1887), — a large village on the Mad nullah, about six miles towards the south-by-west from Karhād, and two and a half miles away, at the nearest point, from the west bank of the Kṛishṇā. The name, thus presented in the maps, is no doubt really *Kālēm*. The Kṛishṇā, which below Karhād flows in the general direction of south-east-by-south, but with many bends, makes, opposite Kālēm, a very marked loop running two miles almost due east, two miles to the south, and two miles back towards the west. In this loop, the maps shew 'Atkeh,' 'Atka,' 'Ātka,' on the north, on what is there the south bank of the Kṛishṇā, and, on the south, the *khurd* or smaller or later 'Retreh,' 'Retra,' on what is at that point the north bank of the river, with the *budrēkh* or larger or older 'Retreh,' 'Retra,' on the opposite bank. The 'Atkeh,' 'Atka,' 'Ātka,' no doubt stands for *Ātkēm*. And I venture to take 'Retreh,' 'Retra,' as standing for *Retrēm*, with the lingual *ṛ*. *Retrēm-Khurd* doubtless owes its existence as a separate village,

<sup>4</sup> The disjointed appearance of the character here, and in other places, is due to the copper pressing upwards as the engraver's tool was driven along. This peculiarity is often noticeable in the copper-plate records; and it is useful in shewing where the formation of various characters began and ended.

<sup>5</sup> The form *Kṛishṇavēpi* occurs in also the *Viśṇupurāṇa*, see Wilson's Translation, Vol. II. pp. 130, 144; and a footnote by the editor on p. 130 tells us that "*Kṛishṇavēpā* seems to be almost as common a reading." Page 150 of the same presents the name *Kṛishṇavēpā* as if it were the name of a separate river. And page 152 mentions a Kṛishṇā, again as if it was a separate river. — I cannot help thinking, now, that one or other of the variants of the name ought to be found in the *Bṛihat-Saṁhitā*, xiv. 14, where the published text gives *kṛishṇavellāra*, which I have taken as meaning the river Kṛishṇā and the town of Vellāra-Ellōrā (see Vol. XXII. above, p. 182). In that case, the existence of the name would be carried back to the sixth century A. D.

<sup>6</sup> *Dyn. Kan. Distr.*, p. 334, note 2.



not to the acquisition of additional lands by Reṭrēm-Badrūkh, but to the establishment of a second village-site, for the convenience of the cultivators of that part of the lands of the original Reṭrēm which was cut off from the original village-site by the Kṛishṇā during the rains. The area included in this loop of the river is now occupied entirely by the lands of Ātkēm and Reṭrēm-Khurḍ. And the Survey map does not shew any name or site, even of a hamlet, representing the ancient Kaṅkēm. But I feel quite sure that we have here run to earth the places mentioned in the record. There is no reason why the ancient name Kalli should not pass into the form Kālēm. There is no difficulty about Leṇṭurēm passing into Reṭrēm; as instances of the interchangeability of *l* and *r*, we have Pērūr, which has become Bēlūr, and Kādalavaḷḷi, which has become Kādarōḷḷi,<sup>7</sup> and Nīrgunda, which has become Nīlgund.<sup>8</sup> And Ātkēm probably represents, not simply Āchhēm itself, but the two names Āchhēm and Kaṅkēm: the lands of the two villages were made one; and the double name Āchhēm-Kaṅkēm has been modified and contracted into one through some such form as Āchhēm, which would very likely come to be pronounced Ātskēm, just as, in a locality not far away, the two names Gālikuṭṭi and Hāḍalivāḍa seem to have doubled up into the modern 'Ghalwar,'<sup>9</sup> or 'Ghalvād,' which is, no doubt, a mistake of the Deccan Topographical Survey sheet No. 90 (1893) for 'Ghālṽād.'

The Karañjakhēṭa of this record cannot at present be conclusively identified. But, in view of all the circumstances, it seems likely that it may be the 'Kurunjeh' of the Indian Atlas sheet No. 40, the 'Karanja' of the Bombay Survey sheet No. 270 (1895), on the east bank of the Agrani, about thirty-eight miles towards the east-by-south from Karhād.

#### The Karahāṭa four-thousand province.

It will be convenient and useful to add here some remarks regarding the Karahāṭa territory, which, we know from other records, was a four-thousand province, that is to say, a province which included, according to fact or tradition or conventional acceptance, four thousand cities, towns, and villages.<sup>1</sup>

The province took its name from the ancient name of the modern Karhād or Karād, the head-quarters of the Karhād tāluka of the Sātārā district, Bombay Presidency, which is the 'Kurrar' of the Indian Atlas sheet No. 40 (1852), and the 'Karad' of the same sheet, N. W. (1896), and the 'Karād' of the Deccan Topographical Survey sheet No. 58 (1884), in lat. 17° 17', long. 74° 14', on the west bank of the Kṛishṇā, and at the confluence of the Koynā with that river. In the official compilation entitled *Bombay Places and Common Official Words* (1878), p. 47, the modern name of the town is certified as Karād, without the *h*. And I have until recently used that form. I have noticed, however, that the name is given as Karhād, with the *h*, in the Nāgarī text of the *Extracts from the Pēshwā's Diaries, Political Matters*, pp. 54, 86, 118. The double *rr* of the 'Kurrar' of the Indian Atlas sheet No. 40 of 1852 was evidently an attempt to represent *rh*. And I have considered it desirable to adopt finally the form Karhād, as the more correct and appropriate modern form.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>7</sup> See Vol. XVIII. above, pp. 271, 310. \* See *Ep. Ind.* Vol. VI. p. 98. \* See Vol. XXIX. above, p. 278, note 23.

<sup>1</sup> Regarding the numerical components in the ancient territorial appellations, see Vol. XXIX. above, p. 277, and note 18.

<sup>2</sup> It is to be hoped that the gentlemen who have in hand the compilation of these *Extracts*, will be very careful to present in the Nāgarī text the exact spelling, given in the original Diaries, of all names, whether of places or of people. It does not much matter how they may transliterate the names in the English abstract which they give below the Nāgarī text. The important point is that there should be extreme accuracy in reproducing the original spelling in the Nāgarī text. And, if that is duly attended to, these *Extracts* are likely to be of very great value from the geographical point of view, as well as in other respects. Meanwhile, I must remark that, on page 87, the Nāgarī text gives 'Ālaté,' with the long *ā*, which, if it really stands in the original, must be a mistake for Ālatēm, with the short *a* (see Vol. XXIX. above, p. 274, and notes 5). Also, on the same page, and in various other places, it gives 'Kōlhāpur;' whereas I doubt very much (see the same place) whether that form of the name is really to be carried back to any such time as A. D. 1740-41, which is the date of the extract on p. 87. I also notice that p. 32 gives 'Sāḷōkhī,' which is not consistent with the 'Sāḷōkhē' on p. 35.



The fullest form of the ancient name was *Karahāṭaka*. We have this form in prose in the *Sāmāgaḍ* plates of A. D. 754<sup>3</sup> and in the *Kōlhāpur* inscription of A. D. 1190,<sup>4</sup> and in metre in the *Sravaṇa-Belgoḷa* epitaph of *Mallishēga*, written not long after A. D. 1129, in a verse which tells us that the town was visited by *Samantabhadra*, and describes it as full of soldiers, rich in learning, and crowded with people;<sup>5</sup> and it occurs also in metre in the *Mahābhārata*, in a passage which speaks of *pāṣaṇḍa Karahāṭaka*, "the heretical *Karahāṭaka*."<sup>6</sup> The shorter form *Karahāṭa* also occurs both in prose and in verse; for instance, in prose in the *Karhād* plates of A. D. 959,<sup>7</sup> and in verse in the *Miraj* plates of A. D. 1058.<sup>8</sup> With the fuller form we have to connect two early *Prākṛit* forms of the name, which present also a metathesis, perhaps due either to the pilgrims not pronouncing the name clearly or to the writers of the records not listening attentively to the name that the pilgrims gave them; namely, *Karahakaṭa*, which occurs in one of the *Kuḍā* inscriptions,<sup>9</sup> and *Karahakata*, which is met with in one of the *Bharaut* inscriptions.<sup>10</sup> From the shorter form, we have the *Prākṛit* form *Karahaḍa*, which occurs, for instance, in the *Honwād* inscription of A. D. 1054,<sup>11</sup> which speaks of the province as the *Karahaḍa* four-thousand and in the *Nēsargi* inscription of A. D. 1219, where mention is made of *Karahaḍada hasta*, "the cubit of *Karahaḍa*."<sup>12</sup> As the town is evidently an ancient one, and seems to have been of great religious repute from early times, it is rather remarkable that no reference to it is apparently to be found in the *Bṛihat-Saṁhitā*, which in all probability does mention, as *Kollagiri*, the not far distant town of *Kollāpura-Kōlāpura-Kōlhāpur*.<sup>13</sup>

In the *Karhād* plates of A. D. 959, the *Karahāṭa* province is simply called the *Karahāṭa rishaya*. The *Honwād* inscription of A. D. 1054, however, specifies it as *Karahaḍa-nālcchāsira*, "the *Karahaḍa* four-thousand."<sup>14</sup> It is called *Karahāṭa-chatuḥsahasra-rishaya*, "the *Karahāṭa* four-thousand province," in the spurious *Wādgaon* plates.<sup>15</sup> And it is mentioned again as the *Karahaḍa* four-thousand in a rather curious reference to it in one of the *Mysore* records. This last is an inscription at *Harihar*, of about A. D. 1165.<sup>16</sup> It gives the traditional account, according to the view of one of the branches, of the origin of the *Sinda* family. It says that, from the union of *Siva* with (*the river*) *Sindhu*, there was born one son, to whom *Siva* gave the name of *Saindhava*, together with the protection of the king of serpents. Considering that, unless he drank tiger's milk, his son would not become a brave man, *Siva* graciously created a tigress; and so the child drank tiger's milk, and grew up. And *Siva* gave to his son the goddess *Mālatīdēvi*, to be his companion in war, and conferred upon him the second name of *Niḍudōḷa-Sinda*, "the long-armed *Sinda*." Then, saying that *Karahāṭa*, the *yōgapīṭha* or 'seat of contemplation,'<sup>17</sup> was the proper place for himself, he went there, and drove out all the kings of that place, and by the strength of his arm acquired the whole territory. And so he, the long-armed *Sinda*, "the lord of *Karahāṭa* the best of towns," governed many (unnamed) countries, including the *Karahaḍa* four-thousand. The peculiarity of this reference to the place, lies in its connecting the *Sindas* with *Karhād*. No other record, tending that way, or carrying them in that direction at all, is as yet known, with the exception of the *Tidgundi* plates of A. D. 1012;<sup>18</sup> that record gives us the name of a *Sinda* prince *Muñjarāja-dēva*, who is described in it as the lord of the *Pratyāṇḍaka* four-thousand country, regarding which see page 380 below.

<sup>3</sup> Vol. XI. above, p. 112, text line 33.

<sup>4</sup> *Ibid.* p. 199, verso 7, and see text line 21.

<sup>5</sup> See the verse, *Digvijayaparvan*, II. 31, 70, quoted by Dr. Bühler, in Vol. XIV. above, p. 333.

<sup>6</sup> *Ep. Ind.* Vol. IV. p. 296, text line 61-62; and it was used in the derivative *Karahāṭiya*, 'in, of, or belonging to, *Karahāṭa*,' in line 59.

<sup>7</sup> *Cave-Temple Inscriptions* (No. 10 of the brochures of the Archaeological Survey of Western India), p. 102, text line 11.

<sup>8</sup> *Id.* p. 16; and *Archaeol. Surv. West. Ind.* Vol. IV. p. 87, No. 18.

<sup>9</sup> Vol. XIX. above, p. 273, text line 44.

<sup>10</sup> See Vol. XXII. above, p. 182.

<sup>11</sup> See page 372 above.

<sup>12</sup> According to the *Tērdā* inscription of A. D. 1187, there were sixty-two of these *yōgapīṭhas*; see Vol. XIV above, p. 25, and text line 60.

<sup>13</sup> *Ep. Ind.* Vol. III. p. 305.

<sup>4</sup> *Ep. Ind.* Vol. III. p. 216, text line II.

<sup>10</sup> Vol. XXI. above, p. 228, No. 16.

<sup>11</sup> *Jour. Bo. Br. R. As. Soc.* Vol. X. p. 248, text lines 65, 67.

<sup>12</sup> Vol. XIX. above, p. 273, text line 44.

<sup>13</sup> P. S. O.-C. *Inscr.* No. 119; and see *Mysore Inscr.* p. 60.



Below Karhād, the Kṛishṇā flows, with many bends, past Wāḷwa (Wāḷwēm) and Sāṅgli, and near Miraj and Kurundwād, in the general direction of south-east-by-south as far as its confluence with the Dūdhgaṅgā, about fifty-six miles south-east-by-south from Karhād and thirty miles towards the west-south-west from Athṇī, the head-quarters of the Athṇī tāluka of the Belgaum district. There it makes a marked turn and takes an easterly direction, but again with many bends, as far as 'Biddree' in the Jamkhaṇḍī State, fifty-three miles towards the east-quarter-south from the Dūdhgaṅgā confluence and twenty-six miles towards the south-west from Bijāpur. Beyond that point, we are not concerned with the river on this occasion, as the Karahāṭa four-thousand province lay on the east and north of this part of the river Kṛishṇā between Karhād and 'Biddree.' Towards the east-south-east from Karhād, it extended almost as far as Bijāpur; for, the Honwād inscription of A. D. 1054, shews<sup>19</sup> that the Karahāṭa four-thousand there included a district, composed of three-hundred or two-hundred towns and villages, which took its appellation from the ancient Kaḷambaḍi, which is the modern Kaṇabaḍi or Kanabaḍi, Kaṇamaḍi or Kanamaḍi, and Kaḷabaḍi or Kalabaḍi, — the 'Kunburree' of the Indian Atlas sheet No. 40, and the 'Kalamadi' of the Bombay Survey sheet No. 301 (1897), — in the Athṇī tāluka of the Belgaum district, twenty-four miles north-east-by-east from Athṇī, twenty-two miles towards the west-north-west from Bijāpur, and about eighty-two miles towards the east-south-east-quarter-east from Karhād. And the spurious Wadgaon plates shew that, in its western part, the Karahāṭa four-thousand included the modern Yelāvi in the Tāsgaon tāluka of the Sātārā district, about five miles on the west of Tāsgaon, and three miles from the east bank of the Kṛishṇā, and twenty-seven miles towards the south-east-by-east from Karhād.<sup>20</sup> Also, between Honwād and Yelāvi it included Baḍachi, — the 'Burchee' of the Indian Atlas sheet No. 40, — about five miles on the east of Athṇī: for, the Kokaṭnūr Kaḷachurya record of A. D. 1174, though it does not actually mention the Karahāṭa province, places Baḍachi, which it mentions by the ancient name of Vattachi, in the Kaṇamwade district (*ilāsa*);<sup>21</sup> and this statement refers, of course, to the Kaḷambaḍi three-hundred or two-hundred, which we have mentioned, just above, as included in the Karahāṭa four-thousand. These are, apparently, the only places that we have at present, to identify and locate in the Karahāṭa four-thousand. I do not overlook the Kalli group of twelve villages, — mentioned in connection with the Karahāṭa province in the Karhād plates of A. D. 959, — which we have localised on the west bank of the Kṛishṇā.<sup>22</sup> This, however, is not in any way opposed to what has been said above; namely, that the Karahāṭa four-thousand lay on the east and north of the Kṛishṇā. The Karhād record explicitly describes the Kalli twelve, not as *antargata* or *antarvartin*, "lying in" the Karahāṭa province, but as *pratibaddha*, "attached to" it. And it is plain that the Kalli twelve was not in the Karahāṭa province proper, but was an outlying annexe to it. The reason for which it was made an annexe of the province, may very likely be found in the fact that Karahāṭa-Karhād, the capital of the province, is itself on the west bank of the Kṛishṇā, and in the probability that the Kalli twelve included, in addition to Ātkēm = Āchhēm-Kaṅkēm and Reṭrēm = Leṭṭurēm, the villages of 'Nāndlapur, Jakhinvādi, Kāpil, and Goleshvar,' which the maps shew as filling the space between the lands of Kālēm and the southern boundary of Karhād. We shall probably find hereafter that the rest of the territory on the west of the Kṛishṇā, from the Koyṇā on the north, or at any rate from below Kālēm, to the Vārṇā on the south, was a three-thousand or four-thousand province, taking its name from Vāḷavāḍa as the ancient name of the modern Wāḷwa.

The boundaries of the province can at present be only partially indicated. We require much more information, before we can work them out quite in detail. Meanwhile, however, the following points may be put together.

On the west, the boundary of the province proper, excluding the annexe of the Kalli twelve, must have been the Kṛishṇā, from Karhād as far as its confluence with the Yērjā, nine miles on the south-west of Tāsgaon, and about thirty-two miles towards the south-east-half-south from Karhād.

<sup>19</sup> Vol. XIX. above, pp. 238, 275.

<sup>20</sup> See page 372 above.

<sup>21</sup> See *Jour. As. Soc. Ind.* Vol. XVIII. p. 280, and p. 275, plate ii. b, the last line. <sup>22</sup> See page 377 above.



On the east of the province, there was the Tardavāḍi thousand, — the name of which also appears in the epigraphic records as Taldavāḍi, Taddavāḍi, and Tardhavāḍi,<sup>23</sup> — taking its appellation from a town which still exists as a small village, Taddewāḍi, on the south bank of the Bhīmā, about thirty-seven miles north-half-east from Bijāpur, and which is shown as 'Tuddehwarree' in the Atlas sheet No. 40 of 1852 and as 'Tadevadi' in its quarter sheet N. E. of 1886. The Tardavāḍi thousand included Bijāpur itself, and territory on the north-east, east, and south-east of Bijāpur, with which we are not concerned on the present occasion. We need only note here that we know from the Honwād inscription of A. D. 1054, mentioned above, that, on the west of Bijāpur, the Tardavāḍi thousand included Honwād itself, the ancient Ponnāvāḍa *agrahāra*, about nineteen miles almost due west of Bijāpur, and eight miles south-south-east from Kanabāḍi, which, as we have seen on page 379 above, was in the Karahāṭa four-thousand. The Honwād record places Honwād in, specifically, the Bāge fifty, a *kampana* or minor division of an unnamed six-hundred subdivision of the Tardavāḍi thousand. The Bāge fifty took its name, I suspect, from the 'Todulbagee' of the Indian Atlas sheet No. 40, the 'Tadalbāgi' of the Bombay Survey sheet No. 302 (1897), — belonging, I believe, to the Jamkhandi State, — about twelve miles almost due south of Honwād, and six and a half miles on the north of the place 'Biddree,' on the north bank of the Kṛishṇā, which has been mentioned, on page 379 above, as the point beyond which we need not go on the present occasion.<sup>24</sup> Looking to the general features and district details of the country, we may suggest, as the western foundary of the Tardavāḍi thousand, a line which left the Bhīmā at the point, about seven miles on the north-west of Taddewāḍi, where a small river called 'Boor' or 'Bor' flows into it, or perhaps which left the Bhīmā three miles north of that, opposite Bhaṇḍār-Kaūthēm,<sup>25</sup> and which then ran, in the general direction of south-south-west, somewhere on the west of Karājgi, on the east of Kanabāḍi, and on the west of Honwād, to join the Kṛishṇā at some point between 'Biddree' and 'Sirhaṭṭi' on the south of Kokaṇūr in the Athṇi tāluka. And part of such a line must have formed the eastern boundary of the Karahāṭa province.

On the north, the Karahāṭa province must have been bounded chiefly by another large province known as the Pratyāṇḍaka four-thousand. This province is mentioned in the Tiḍgundi plates of A. D. 1082, which name, as the ruler of it, Muñjarājādēva, of the Sinda family, and which have the effect of placing in it a group of villages known as the Vāyvada twelve, which included a village named Takkalikā.<sup>26</sup> The Pratyāṇḍaka country is also mentioned by Hēmadri, in the first *Prasasti* of his *Vratakhanda*, in a verse which describes the Dēvagiri-Yādava king Bhīllama as capturing a town named Srivardhananagara from a king called Antala, and vanquishing in battle the king of Pratyāṇḍaka, and putting to death Billapa the king of Maṅgalavēsh-taka.<sup>27</sup> As was recognised by Dr. Bhandarkar, Maṅgalavēsh-taka certainly denotes the modern Maṅgalvēdhēm, the head-quarters of an outlying subdivision of the same name of the Sāṅgli State, about forty-nine miles towards the north-north-west from Bijāpur. The other two names have not yet been identified. But I think that Srivardhananagara must have been the ancient name of some town near "the famous" double-peaked hill-fort of Rājmachī in the Western Ghats, about thirty-six miles towards the north-west-by-west from Poona, the two peaks of which are known as Manrañjan or Manōrañjan and Srivardhan.<sup>28</sup> And I feel confident that Pratyāṇḍaka is to

<sup>23</sup> See Vol. XIX. above, p. 269.

<sup>24</sup> Originally I suggested (Vol. XIX. above, p. 269) that this Bāge was probably Rāybāg, the ancient Hāvina Fāge, of the Kōlhapur State. But Rāybāg is on the south of the Kṛishṇā, and was in the Kūṇḍi three-thousand province.

<sup>25</sup> This is an old place, the ancient name of which was Bhaṇḍār-Gaviṭṭage; see page 212 above, note 41.

<sup>26</sup> See *Ep. Ind.* Vol. III. pp. 310, 311.

<sup>27</sup> See Dr. Bhandarkar's *Early History of the Deccan* (in the *Gazetteer of the Bombay Presidency*, Vol. I. Part II.), p. 238, and p. 271, verse 38.

<sup>28</sup> See the *Gazetteer of the Bombay Presidency*, Vol. XVIII., Poona, Part I. p. 4, and Part III. p. 435; also, the list of forts in the *Extracts from the Peshwa's Diariss, Political Matters*, p. 126, No. 45. In the Indian Atlas sheet No. 25 (1854), the names are shown as 'Rajmachee,' 'Murorunjan,' and 'Shirwurdhun,' in lat. 18° 49', long. 78° 27'. — There is a Srivardhan in the Jafjira State, a fortified town, and formerly at any rate of some importance, on the coast,



be identified, through some such form as Paratāṇḍa, with the modern Phaltan, the chief town of the Phaltan State, — the 'Phulton' of the Indian Atlas sheet No. 39 (1855), in lat. 17° 59', long. 74° 29', — about thirty-four miles towards the north-east-by-east from Sātārā, and fifty miles towards the north-north-east from Karhād.<sup>20</sup> And I strongly suspect that Vāyvaḍa denotes Wai, the headquarters of the Wai tāluka, a town of great sanctity on the north bank of the Kṛishṇā, about nineteen miles towards the north-north-west from Sātārā, and thirty-five miles to the west-quarter-south from Phaltan.<sup>21</sup> The Pratyāṇḍaka four-thousand, which must have been a considerably larger territory than the present Phaltan State, would be very appropriately bounded on the north by first the Nirā and then the Bhīmā, as far as some point near Paṇḍharpur, on the south bank, in the Sholāpur district, where it would meet the Maṅgalavēṣṭaka territory. On the south, it would be very appropriately bounded for the most part by the Māṇ or Māṇ-Gaṅgā river, which rises about fourteen miles on the south of Phaltan and flows into the Bhīmā between Paṇḍharpur and Maṅgel-vēḍhām; or it may have included the whole valley of the Māṇ, bounded on the south by a large range of hills running from north-west to south-east, down to somewhere near Ātpāḍi. And the Māṇ or Māṇ-Gaṅgā would appropriately form, in the lower part of its course, at least part of the northern boundary of the Karahāṭa province.

The southern boundary of the Karahāṭa province probably left the Kṛishṇā at its confluence with the Yērjā, nine miles on the south-west of Tāsgaon. At any rate, only at that point can we easily recognise a suitable dividing-line between the Karahāṭa territory and the Miriñje territory. The boundary probably left the Yērjā or the 'Kapur' nullah after no great distance, and, running south of Tāsgaon, struck the Agrāṇi river somewhere below 'Sowluj,' 'Sāvāj,' which is about twelve miles east-north-east from Tāsgaon. From that point, it most probably turned back along the Agrāṇi, and followed that river as far as its confluence with the Kṛishṇā about eight miles on the south-west of Athṇi; because, as we have seen above, Baḍachi, only five miles on the east of Athṇi, was in the Kaṇaṇvaḍe-Kajambaḍi-Kaṇabaḍi district, and the latter was a subdivision of the Karahāṭa province. And then, from the Agrāṇi confluence, it would naturally run east along the Kṛishṇā, until it met the western boundary of the Bāge fifty in the Tardavāḍi thousand, somewhere between Sirhāṭṭi, south of Kokaṭnūr, and 'Biddree.' This, at any rate, is certain; namely, that the Karahāṭa four-thousand province did not include any territory on the south of the Kṛishṇā. Near the south bank of the river, there are Rāybāg and Tērdāḷ. These two places were in the Kāṇḍi three-thousand province.<sup>22</sup> And close on the east of Tērdāḷ there was a district called the Bejugare or Bejugale five-hundred. We learn this from the poet Ranna,<sup>23</sup> who has told us that he was born in A. D. 949-50 at Muduvajalu, a village of the Jambukhaṇḍi seventy, which was in the Bejugare or Bejugale five-hundred, which was to the north of a stream flowing into "the great river" at Arekegaṭṭa to the south of Taddavāḍi. "The great river" is very well known now as an appellation of the Kṛishṇā.<sup>24</sup> Jambukhaṇḍi is easily recognisable as Jamkhaṇḍi,

about twelve miles south of Jaḍjirā. But it does not seem so likely that that can be the place mentioned by Hēmaḍri. — It is also possible that, by a translation of such a name as Sirivajala by Śrīvagara and with an insertion of vārḍhana, Hēmaḍri may have meant Sirwaj, a well-known place, with a group of early Buddhist caves, on the road from Poona to Sātārā, — the 'Sheerwal' of the Indian Atlas sheet No. 39 (1855), on the south bank of the Nirā, and about thirty miles almost due north of Sātārā. But it seems likely that Sirwaj may have been in the Pratyāṇḍaka territory.

<sup>20</sup> For the interchange of p and ph, we may perhaps quote the name of 'Phirangāi,' a favourite goddess of the lower classes at Kōlhāpur, the Sanskrit or Sanskritised form of which is said to be 'Pratyāṅgirā,' — meaning probably, Pratyāṅgirā, a form of Durgā; see the *Gazetteer of the Bombay Presidency*, Vol. XXIV., Kōlhāpur, pp. 309, 312, and Monier-Williams' *Sanskrit Dictionary*, under *prāṇi*, *praty*.

<sup>21</sup> The only apparent objection to this, is, that the map does not shew, in the vicinity of Wai, any place-name answering to the Takkalikā of the record. — Takkalikā might be 'Taklee,' 'Takli,' two and a half miles on the south-west of Paṇḍharpur. But no name answering to Vāyvaḍa is to be found there. — The suggestion that Takkalikā may be 'Takulkee,' about twelve miles north-west-by-west from Bijāpur, must certainly be discarded. There, again, there is no name answering to Vāyvaḍa. And, also, the position occupied by 'Takulkee' must have been in the Tardavāḍi thousand, or else in the Karahāṭa four-thousand.

<sup>22</sup> Regarding Tērdāḷ, see Vol. XXIX. above, p. 278 f.

<sup>23</sup> See Mr. Rice's *Karṇāṭakastambāvalī*, Introd. p. 23.

<sup>24</sup> See page 372 above, and note 7.



the chief town of the Jamkhandi State, about sixty-six miles towards the north-east-half-east from Belgaum. Mudvaḷalu is Mudhōl, the chief town of the Mudhōl State, on the north bank of the Ghatparbhā, about twelve miles south of Jamkhandi. "The stream flowing into the great river" is evidently the Ghatparbhā itself, which flows into the Kṛishṇā at a point about thirteen miles towards the north-east-by-north from Bāgalkōṭ in the Bījāpur district and thirty-six miles towards the east-south-east from Jamkhandi. And Arokegaṭṭa was perhaps the name of some pass over the two ranges of hills through which the Ghatparbhā flows from Bāgalkōṭ to its confluence with the Kṛishṇā. The name of the Beḷugare or Beḷugaḷe five-hundred probably has some connection either with Bilgi, the head-quarters of a mahāl in this angle between the Kṛishṇā and the Ghatparbhā, twelve miles towards the north-north-west from Bāgalkōṭ, or else with 'Gulgulleh,' an old village, of some size, on the south bank of the Kṛishṇā, twenty-three miles north-west from Bāgalkōṭ. But we require a more conclusive reading of the name, before we can do more than speculate about this point; at present we can only say that, if the real name was Beḷugaḷe, it may easily have passed into 'Gulgulleh,' through an interchange of *b* and *g* analogous to the actual interchange of *v* and *g* illustrated on page 258 f. above. This much, however, is certain; namely, that the five-hundred district, mentioned by Ranna, is thus localised. He has rightly described it as lying on the south of the Tardavāḍi territory. It suffices to fill up all the interval from the north-east corner of the Kūṇḍi three-thousand to the confluence of the Kṛishṇā and the Ghatparbhā. And thus it is certain that the Karahāṭa four-thousand province did not include any territory on the south of the Kṛishṇā.

## NEW RESEARCHES INTO THE COMPOSITION AND EXEGESIS OF THE QORAN.

BY HARTWIG HIRSCHFELD, Ph.D., M.R.A.S.

(Continued from p. 329.)

### CHAPTER XI.

#### Revelations on Muhammed's Domestic Affairs.

REVELATIONS beginning "O thou Prophet" — Marriage with Zeinab — Sermon on the *amr* — Refutation of the charge against *Āisha* — Regulations concerning women.

Every work on Moslim Tradition, or on the life of Muhammed, contains special chapters on his personal appearance and characteristics. These works, however, being written more with a view to promote the religious fervour of the reader than to chronicle facts, obscure this point rather than throw light upon it. The Qorān portrays the man Muhammed more faithfully than any Moslim biography. His real individuality, as well as the transformation of his character during an eventful career may be clearly traced from his own utterances. There we see how great qualities may be marred by grave faults.

Muhammed was undoubtedly conscious of his own weaknesses, and did what other men in prominent positions have done. He surrounded them with a halo. Among Muhammed's passions, an ever increasing love of the gentle sex was the greatest. Yet, in spite of his ideal calling, he did not endeavour to master it, but allowed it to increase with his years. What clearer sign is needed for the absolute sway he held over the minds of the Believers than his boldness in canonising his passion for women, declaring it to be under the special protection of Allāh (*amr*)? Muhammed's domestic affairs form the substrata of a series of revelations dating from the fifth year after the Hijra. They are externally distinguished by the introduction: *O thou Prophet!*<sup>25</sup> With very few exceptions<sup>26</sup> they refer to matrimonial matters, and form the least edifying chapter in the history of Islām.

<sup>25</sup> xxxiii. 1, 28 (44), 49, 50; lvi. 1; lxi. 1, 9. Lx. 12 also treats of women.

<sup>26</sup> viii. 65, 66, 71; ix. 74.



The Prophet of Allāh coveted Zeinab, the wife of his freedman Zeid b. Ḥāritha whom he had adopted, and wished to marry her. The two obstacles of her being a married woman and the wife of his adopted son (whom Arab custom made as near a relative as if he had been his real son) had to be removed, if the wish of Muhammed was to be fulfilled. This was, however, easy enough, if in the place of a personal desire, he gave expression to a divine command. Under these circumstances there was no choice left. Zeid had to divorce his wife, and Muhammed had to dissolve the paternal tie which connected him with his adopted son, and to marry Zeinab. The history of this interesting marriage is laid down in *S. xxxiii. 1-62*. Out of five sections of this sermon beginning with the words: *O thou Prophet*, four (vv. 1-8, 28-39, 49-52, 59<sup>27</sup>) treat on matters of Muhammed's Harem. The spirit of the revelations will be best demonstrated by translating one of them literally:—

(v. 7) Allāh has not made for any man two hearts in his inside, nor has He made your wives, whom you desire to repudiate, your [real] mothers,<sup>28</sup> nor has He made your adopted sons your [real] sons. Such is only your way of expressing it, but Allāh speaks the truth, and He guides in the right path."

He thus abolished the old formula of divorce. After this declaration Muhammed was free to marry Zeinab who, on this occasion, with all the present and future wives of the Prophet, received the honorary title "Mother of the Believers" (v. 6). The marriage having taken place in the year 5 of the Hijra, there is no doubt about the date of the address in question.

*Sūra xxxiii.* shows some traces of artistic arrangement for which, however, the compilers are alone responsible. The first and largest portion (v. 1-59) is so arranged that addresses to "the Prophet" alternate with those to "the Believers." Since the different sections of both classes belong to various periods, it is best to discuss them in the order of the events to which they relate.

Section vv. 28-39 also refers to the incident of the marriage of Zeinab. Muhammed now pretended to have advised her former husband not to part with his wife, but Allāh had decreed otherwise, and Zeid was rewarded for his compliance by having his name coupled with that of the Prophet in a special revelation (v. 37).<sup>29</sup>

If Muhammed had merely wished to obtain Zeinab for her own sake, he could probably have achieved this without invoking the aid of Allāh, but I believe that the incident was also meant to increase his prestige by placing him again on a par with one of the Biblical prophets. The marriage of a prophet by special divine command had a befitting precedent in the [symbolical] marriages of the prophet Hosea (i. 2, iii. 1-2), which Muhammed interpreted literally. Both cases have several points of resemblance. The wives chosen were not virgins, and the marriages had to serve as object lessons for the populace. The only redeeming feature in Muhammed's proceeding was his insisting on a proper divorce instead of the objectionable practice of pre-Islamic times. Now the short address which follows (vv. 44-47), being the only one superscribed: "O thou Prophet," and yet not referring to anything matrimonial, seems nevertheless to bear upon the same incident, and to teach that Muhammed is the herald of glad tidings and a warner, etc. It is unexpected, at this juncture, to see Muhammed again accredited as a prophet, but his words were apparently designed to pacify those supercilious Believers, who considered his behaviour in the affair of Zeinab a sign of human weakness where prophetic self-abnegation should have been. He, therefore, thought it proper to convince his people that in this case also he had acted as Messenger of Allāh. To this he attached a regulation regarding the provisions to be made for a Moslim woman married to a Believer, who wished to divorce her before consummating the marriage (v. 48).<sup>30</sup>

<sup>27</sup> As to v. 44 see below.

<sup>28</sup> The words were used in the old formula of divorce.

<sup>29</sup> The words *زيد منها وطراً* have been utilised by Ḥassān b. Thābit (*Diwān*, p. 41, l. 11) in a dirge on Othmān, but the words refer to Zeid, brother of the poet.

<sup>30</sup> Cf. ii. 237.



The lessons to be deduced from this marriage were not even then exhausted. According to tradition several guests at the wedding feast, having given offence by their conduct, Muhammed forbade Believers to enter his houses in future without special invitation, to leave as soon as the meal was finished, and not to speak to his wives unless they were veiled (vv. 53-58). The command to be veiled was subsequently given to all believing women (v. 59).

The last address contains the sentence (v. 56) that "Allah and His angels pray for the Prophet." These words seem to be modelled on a Talmudic homily.<sup>31</sup> In v. 41 the same phrase is repeated, but with reference to the Moslems. I believe this verse and v. 42, from which no clue can be gathered as to date, were inserted in this *sûra* merely on account of v. 56.

The piece vv. 9-27 is of later date. It describes the siege of Medina by the "Confederates," consisting of the Qoreish and Ghatafân, assisted by the Banû Kurciza, the remaining Jewish tribe in the environs of Medina (A. H. 5). From verse 27 we gather that the piece was revealed after the annihilation of the B. Koreiza.

The twofold success found an adequate expression in this triumphant address which is somewhat elated and almost dramatic in style (v. 19). — The last section headed "O thou Prophet" (v. 49-51) makes it lawful for him to marry women who were among the captives or slaves. The first of this class was the Jewess Reihâna, widow of one of the B. Kureiza, whom Muhammed married A. H. 6. The verse placed next to this must, however, be much later, because the speaker takes upon himself not to increase his Harem any further except by concubines. The verse can therefore not have been revealed until the year 7 or 8.<sup>32</sup>

To these speeches the compilers have added three more which form the concluding part of the *sûra*. Verses 60-62 announce the speedy extirpation of the rest of the Jews of Medina. They are declared outlaws and free to be murdered wherever found.<sup>33</sup> The partial concordance of v. 62 with v. 38 explains why the little piece was placed in this *sûra*. The short discourse on the "Hour" which then follows (vv. 63-68) is quite uncertain as to date, but from v. 68<sup>34</sup> it would appear that the words were spoken, when the Jews in Medina were still a factor to be reckoned with. The concluding speech (vv. 69-73) seems to stand in connection with that in which Muhammed reproved those Moslems who had caused annoyance at the wedding feast. Moses also had to bear annoyance, "but Allah cleared him of what they said."<sup>35</sup> The Commentators refer this remark to charges brought against Moses by Korah, or other people who suspected Moses of having murdered Aaron.<sup>36</sup> It seems, however, that Muhammed had the incident of Numb. ch. xii. in his mind, because the accusation referred to in this chapter also bears on a woman. — Muhammed then cautions Believers always to speak in a straightforward manner! Verse 72 seems to be built on the framework of a Rabbinical homily.

In spite of Muhammed's strenuous efforts to convince Medinians that the marriage of Zeinab was performed in fulfilment of a divine command, he seems to have been afraid that some sceptics would regard the remarks he had attached to the affair as spoken *pro domo*. He, therefore, once more took up the subject of divorce in a special series of revelations, and had these also addressed to him personally. It was further necessary to show that matters of marriage and divorce of Moslems altogether stood under the direct providence of Allah. The address in question is that of S. lxx., also headed by the phrase: "O thou Prophet." This short sermon is also a perfect lecture on the *amr*, which is mentioned not less than eight times in it (vv. 1, 3, 4, 5, 8, 9 *bis*, 12), being the created Will of Allah and His Providence over mankind.<sup>37</sup> The

<sup>31</sup> See p. 79, rem. 59.

<sup>32</sup> As to v. 52 see Weil, Mohammed, p. 358.

<sup>33</sup> Cf. ii. 187 referring to all unbelievers, Meccans included.

<sup>34</sup> "Give them double torment." Cf. Isaiah xl. 2, a verse very popular in Jewish liturgy.

<sup>35</sup> As to *أذوا* see v. 53 *أَذُوا*.

<sup>36</sup> Cf. Numb. xx. 29, and Midrash Rabbah, ch. xix.

<sup>37</sup> See Ch. I. Appendix, Note II.



little homily appended which repeats hackneyed phrases, only serves to round off the sermon, and there can be no doubt as to the date of the same.

To the group of *sūras* dealing with Muhammed's personal affairs also belongs S. xxiv., although the customary allocation is omitted. Nearly the whole of the *sūra* is an endeavour to prove the innocence of Muhammed's favourite wife Aisha who was suspected of having committed adultery during the expedition against the B. Mustaliq. The date of the event is not beyond doubt. It is, however, hardly advisable to place it, as Sprenger seems inclined, in the year 4.<sup>38</sup> I believe the incident did not occur till A. 6. The efforts Muhammed made to convince his hearers of his wife's innocence are visible in the beginning of the *sūra* which, in Medianian speeches, is quite unique. The severity with which he wished adultery to be punished, is calculated to make the impression that it was quite impossible that any person of his household could be capable of such a crime (v. 1-3). It is, however, noteworthy that the punishment of those who charge "chaste" women with adultery, but are unable to bring four witnesses, is not much less severe, beside disqualifying the informer for ever from giving evidence before a judge (v. 4-5).

Of the speeches forming S. xxiv., the first (vv. 1-33) and the last (vv. 57-64) evidently belong together, and are perhaps but parts of the same sermon.<sup>39</sup> Their chief object being the defence of Aisha, they begin with regulations concerning immorality and false charges brought against virtuous women in general, or against one's own wife. The latter case is obviously modelled on Numb. v. 11 *sqq.*<sup>40</sup> Now the first section (vv. 1-21) has a kind of ornamental phrase: "And were it not for Allāh's grace upon you," which divides the section into four paragraphs ending in the verses 10, 14, 20, 21.<sup>41</sup> The verses 27 to 29 repeat the warnings of S. xxxiii. 53, while extending it to all Moslems, and are therefore probably later. This is not the first case where an ordination which had arisen out of a special incident, was generalised for the benefit of the whole community. The verses 30 to 33<sup>42</sup> and 57 to 64 containing rules for decorous and respectful behaviour towards the Prophet, as well as other Moslems, form too natural an appendix to the subject proper of the sermon to require special discussion.

Between the two portions of the sermon the compilers have inserted a discourse, quite alien to the character of the former, and probably later. The piece vv. 34 to 40 consists of a set of parables,<sup>43</sup> which are all borrowed from travels on land or on sea. It appears that the piece was given this place in order to divert the attention of the reader from an unedifying subject. As to its date, only so much may be said with certainty that it was revealed after several places of worship and regular hours of prayer had been fixed (vv. 36-37). Verse 41 reflects the Rabbinical metaphor that heaven, earth, and the creatures thereof sing the praise of God.<sup>44</sup> This verse, as well as the descriptive ones which follow (vv. 42-44) suit verses 39 to 40 very well. Verse 46 *sqq.* contain another attack against the Jews.<sup>45</sup> To judge from the repeated admonitions to obey (vv. 46, 50, 52, 53) it appears that this piece is later than corresponding verses in S. iv.,<sup>46</sup> as the phrase "we are disobedient" is dropped.

Similar in character to the preceding addresses, though of later date, is *Sūra* lxvi. It commences with the characteristic *O thou Prophet!* and was due to Muhammed's wife Hafsa having discovered his relations with Maria, a Coptic slave girl in the year 7. In S. xxxiii. 52 Muhammed had reserved for himself the right of adding concubines to his Harem. If in a moment of perplexity he swore to his irate spouse to forsake Maria, he believed himself entitled to cancel this oath<sup>47</sup>. (vv. 1-2). Since attack is the best defence, he now in his turn reproved Hafsa severely by exposing her as a tale-bearer, because she had promised him to keep the matter secret, but had nevertheless

<sup>38</sup> iii. 192; cf. Nöldeke, p. 156.

<sup>39</sup> V. 7, "the curse"; cf. Numb. v. 18-21.

<sup>40</sup> V. 31, cf. Isaiah iii. 16 *sqq.* As to *ولا يضرين بأرجلهن* see Jacob, *Das Leben der corislam, Beduiner*, p. 51.

<sup>41</sup> See Ch. VIII.

<sup>42</sup> See *Beiträge*, p. 84.

<sup>43</sup> V. 49, "In their hearts is sickness."

<sup>44</sup> Verses 48-49.

<sup>45</sup> Cf. S. v. 9.

<sup>39</sup> V. 57 resumes the rhyme of v. 33.

<sup>41</sup> V. 21 consists of two verses, the second beginning *ولولا*.



confided in Aisha (v. 3). He expected them to repent, because he was supported by Allāh, Gabriel, the true believers, and the angels" (v. 4). He was free to divorce his wives and take other, better, and more believing women in their stead (v. 5). In three versēs which follow Muhammed extends his admonitions to Believers, as well as infidels. The words that "on the Day [of Resurrection] Allāh shall not disgrace the Prophet and the Believers" sound like an allusion to the disrespectful treatment he had been subjected to on the part of his wives.

The second portion of the *sūra*, commencing likewise with *O thou Prophet*, evidently stands in connection with the first. There is certainly a hidden meaning in Muhammed's reference to the *two women* who stand as prototypes of misbelief, *viz.*, the wives of Noah and Lot, who were themselves devout servants of Allāh. In contrast to these are two pious ones, *viz.*, the wife of Pharaoh and Mary (daughter of Amrām). It is possible that the last name was an allusion to the other Mary, the Coptic slave. As she changed her Christian faith for Islām, she was likewise stamped as a model of piety.

The expedition against the B. Muṣṭaliq mentioned above, also gave rise to *Sūra* lxiii. In consequence of a quarrel between some Meccan fugitives and Medinians, Abd Allāh b. Ubeiyy, the chief of the latter is said to have exclaimed: "When we return to Medina, the mightiest will surely drive out the meanest therefrom." These words were reported to Muhammed who now took an opportunity of lancing a severe philippic against the "Hypocrites," and criticising the treasonable utterances ascribed to their leader<sup>48</sup> (vv. 7-8).

This was not the only incident, however, which showed Muhammed that the old spirit of freedom was far from being crushed in Medina. He has further to experience that it was easier to denounce heathen practices than to stamp them out by a revelation. He would, perhaps, have been more successful in abolishing the old custom of divorcing wives, had his first attempt in this direction not been suggestive of personal motives. It occurred that a woman appealed to Muhammed against her husband who had divorced her in the manner judged unlawful by the Prophet. The latter is said to have declared the divorce valid nevertheless. The woman, having little children to provide for, complained to Allāh, who then revealed *Sūra* lviii. 1-4,<sup>49</sup> in which the objectionable formula is definitely abolished. Now although the date given to this incident by the traditionists, *viz.*, A. 7, is not very reliable, the revelation in question seems to be posterior to that of xxxiii. 4. It is hardly credible that Muhammed should have forgotten that he had once given a decision in this manner. I therefore doubt the authenticity of the tradition in question, and believe that Muhammed seized this opportunity of denouncing the old formula of divorce over again in a case with which he was not personally connected. He did this in a form which made it appear that, whilst he personally might acquiesce in the preservation of the old custom, it was Allāh who insisted on its abrogation. "Allah," he said, "has heard the speech of her who wrangled with thee about her husband, and complained to Allāh; Allāh has heard your conversation, behold Allāh hears and sees" (v. 1).

In connection with the final decision of the question of divorce Muhammed repeated his warnings against disobedience (vv. 9, 10, 14). Remonstrance with the Jews fills up nearly the whole of the remaining part of the *sūra*. From v. 6 we may conclude that it was revealed shortly before the fight against the B. Kureiza, who were to share the fate of those who had been destroyed before them. Of other details in the *sūra* we note the following: Verse 8 being directed against the secret plots of the enemies of Islām, is a kind of reproduction of Abōth iii. 2-3. The verses 9 *seqq.* are lanced against the Jews whom, according to tradition, Muhammed exposed for turning the phrase of greeting into a curse. Believers are cautioned against rebellion, and warned against friendly intercourse with "people who suffer the wrath of Allāh" (v. 15), *viz.*, the Jews. Although Muhammed still feared the influence of the latter to some extent, he expressed his confidence that Islām would ultimately prevail; yet he was cautious enough to phrase it that "Allāh has written, I will surely prevail, and my messengers" (v. 21). Allāh has likewise "written" faith in the hearts of the Believers (v. 22), a phrase which recalls sentences as Jer. xxxi. 33; Prov. iii. 3, vii. 3.

(To be continued.)

<sup>48</sup> See Ibn Hishām, p. 726.

<sup>49</sup> See alBeidhāwī.



## FABRICATED GEOGRAPHY.

BY J. BURGESS, C.I.E., LL.D.

IN the thesis of Mrs. M. H. Bode, Ph.D., on *A Burmese Historian of Buddhism* (1898), we are told, on the authority of Taw Sein Ko (*Ind. Ant.* Vol. XXIII. p. 103), that the recurrence of Buddhist classical names in Burmese geography "has arisen from the national arrogance of the Burmans, who, after their conquest of the Talaing kingdoms on the seaboard, proceeded to invent new stories and classical names, so that they might not be outdone by the Talaings, who, according to their own history and traditions, received the Buddhist religion direct from missionaries from India. The right bank of the Irawadi river near Pagán was accordingly renamed **Sunāparanta** and identified with **Aparāntaka**."

Mrs. Bode, in her thesis or analysis of Pañāsāmi's *Sāsanaṇṇa*, calls attention to the **Nine Regions** (leaving out **Sihala**) to which missionaries were sent immediately after the Council held in the 18th year of **Asoka**. The *Mahāvāṇso*, *Dīpaṇṇsō*, and other Pāli works repeat the story that after the third convocation the great therā **Moggaliputta Tissa**, in the month Kattika, dispatched the following theras to foreign parts:— "He deputed the therā **Majjhantika** to **Kāsmira** and **Gandhāra**, and the therā **Mahādeva** (the *Sāsanaṇṇa* has **Mahārevata**) to **Mahisamandala**; he deputed the therā **Rakkhita** to **Vanavāsi**, and likewise the therā **Yona-Dhammarakkhita** to **Aparāntaka**; he deputed the therā **Mahā-Dhammarakkhita** to **Mahārāṭṭha**; the therā **Mahārakkhita** to the **Yona** country; he deputed the therā **Majjhima** to the **Himavanta** country; and to **Suvannabhūmi**, the two theras **Sona** and **Uttara**; he deputed the therā **Mahā-Mahinda** together with his own disciples **Itthiya**, **Sambala**, **Bhaddasāla** (to **Sihala**)."

These countries are mostly, if not all, satisfactorily identified. **Kāsmira** and **Gandhāra** were outlying provinces of the Mauryan empire to the north-west. **Mahisamandala** is well known as the Sanskrit name of **Maisur**, and is not connected with **Mahishmatā** on the Narmadā, founded by **Mahishmat**. To the north of **Maisur** we find **Vanavāsi**, a well known town in N. Kanara, with an old temple the scene of an annual religious festival and in the court of which is a large slab with a snake sculptured on it, and bearing an inscription of the **Sātakaṇi** dynasty and perhaps as early as the second century A. D.<sup>1</sup> The city is mentioned by Ptolemy (*Lib. VII. c. i. § 83*), and frequently in inscriptions and in Sanskrit literature.<sup>2</sup> The town is on the **Varadā** river a tributary of the **Tungabhadra**, in lat. 14° 33' N. and long. 75° 5' E.; it was also called **Vaijayanti**, and was a **Kaṇḍamba** capital. To the north, if we keep along the coast line, we come to **Aparānta** or **Aparāntaka**—the western country; by **Tārānātha** it is used as an adjective simply meaning countries west of Tibet, but it was applied to the west coast or **Koṅkana** from **Gokarna** northward perhaps to the **Tāpī**; its capital was **Sūrpāraka**, now **Sopārā**,<sup>3</sup> not far from **Bassein**. To the west of **Aparānta**, lay **Mahārāṣṭra**—the country of the **Marāṭhas**. Then, going outside India, we have the **Yona** or **Yavana** country—whether **Baktria** or **Persia**, lying to the west; and to the north **Himavanta**—probably **Nepāl**, but perhaps also **Tibet**; and next, to the east **Suvannabhūmi** or **Mramma**; and, lastly, **Ceylon** in the extreme south.

According to the statement **Mahā-Moggaliputta Tissa** ("as if with a special care for the religious future of **Mramma**") sent two separate missionaries to their country; but the author of the *Sāsanaṇṇa* is not satisfied with this, and, doubtless following older Burmese writers, he appropriates all the missions to his own country except those to **Kāsmira-Gandhāra**, and **Mahimsakamandala**. This is supported by the fabricated geography: **Suvannabhūmi** is identified (as in the *Aṭṭhakathā*) with **Sudhammapura**—that is **Thaton** in the modern **Amherst** district; **Yonakarāṭṭha** is the same as **Jañ-may** or **Chien-mai**, the country of the **Shān** tribes about **Zimmé**,

<sup>1</sup> *Inscriptions from the Cave Temples of W. India, etc.* Bombay, 1831, p. 100 f. *Epig. Ind.* Vol. I. p. 97.

<sup>2</sup> See *Epig. Ind.* Vol. II. pp. 168-171; *Ind. Ant.* Vol. X. pp. 249, 250, 252, 254; Vol. XI. pp. 65, 274; Vol. XII. p. 217; Vol. XIII. p. 366-7.

<sup>3</sup> *Ind. Ant.* Vol. VII. p. 259; *Baghvatā*, iv. 53.

<sup>4</sup> *Harivamśa*, c. xcv.; *Reinaud, Frag. Arab. et Pers.* p. 321. *Ind. Ant.* Vol. IV. p. 104.



extending along the valleys of the Me-nam and Me-ping rivers; *Vanavāsi* was applied to the region round Prome; *Mahārāṭṭha* or *Mahānagararāṭṭha* is explained as bordering on Siam, the districts of Khyām-yun and Maingūn, or Laos, in which *Nāgasena* is said to have preached;<sup>5</sup> and *Aparāntarāṭṭha* is the Burmese *Sunāparanta*, lying west of the Upper Irawādī, or the upper portion of the Thayet district.<sup>6</sup>

Besides Burma has also its own *Mahimsakamandala*, a district including Mogok and Khyātpyin. *Chinarāṭṭha*, in the *Sāsanavāṇisa*, takes the place of the *Himavantapadesa* of the Ceylon books; and is applied to the borderland lying north-east of Burma, including the districts of Bhamo and Kaung-sin.

We find also *Dvārāvati* as a name of both Sandowé and Bangkok, *Yodayā* or *Ayuthia* — a form of *Ayodhia*, *Amarapura*, and other classical names of India, transferred to the eastern Peninsula in order apparently to localise and appropriate the Pāli and Sanskrit legends to Mramma. For example, *Bajapuri* for Raxaburi, *Kosambhi* for Nyoung-yuwé, *Rāmapura* for Maultmain, *Navapura* for Lophaburi, *Channapura* for Phitsanulōk, *Uttaratirtha* for Uttaradih, *Vichitrapura* for Phixitr, *Kaṭchanapura* for Kanburi, *Hamsavati* for Pegu, etc. How far early Indian emigrants contributed to this sort of transference, it may be difficult to say; but we seem to have here something analogous to the modern transference to America, South Africa and Australasia of familiar home place names, — modified, however, by the priestly aim of localising legends.

#### EXTRACTS FROM THE LOG OF A VOYAGE ALONG THE COAST OF INDIA IN 1746.

BY R. C. TEMPLE.

(Continued from p. 358.)

#### IV.

#### LOG II.

#### 1.

#### Text.

Log II. occupies 20 pp. of the MS.

#### Headlines to Pages.

These vary with every few pages and the seven I have picked out are typical.

- (1) Ship Wake Robert Norton Comm<sup>dr</sup> towards Musule.
- (2) Ship Wake Robert Norton Comm<sup>dr</sup> towards Musulepatam.
- (3) Ship Wake Robert Norton Comm<sup>dr</sup> in Mussullepatam road.
- (4) Ship Wake Robert Norton Comm<sup>dr</sup> towards Vizaquepatam.
- (5) Ship Wake Robert Norton Comm<sup>dr</sup> in Vizacqapatam Road.
- (6) Transeactions on board the Wake Cap<sup>t</sup> Norton Comm<sup>dr</sup> att Vizacque.
- (7) Ship Wake Robert Norton Comm<sup>dr</sup> in Vizagapatam Road.

The Second log commences thus: —

Monday Sept 15 1746. 1 [P. M.]. Lost Sight of the Vernon. Att Sun sett Due point Bore from NEbN to NW.

<sup>5</sup> Garnier, *Voyage d'exploration*, pp. 100, 248, 251; Yule, *Mission to the Court of Ava*, p. 351, Childers identified *Mahārāṭṭha* as Siam.

<sup>6</sup> *Conf. Ind. Ant.* Vol. XXIII, p. 103.



*Tuesday Sept 16.* Att Sun rise the Land from NW to the pitch of Due point WSW | the Outernmost part of the breakers Streaching out from SWbS | two Ships in **Mussulepatam** road.

*Wednesday 18 1746.* Att 3 P. M. Came too an Anchor in Mussulepatam Road  $3\frac{1}{2}$  fm | the Dutch flagg Staff bearing NWbW | the french D<sup>o</sup> WNW . . . found riding here 2 Dutch Ships . . . received on board this morning 8 **Leaguers of Water**. A Ship in sight in the Offing which we take to be the *Vernon*.

*Thursday Sept 18.* Rec<sup>d</sup> on Board 2 **Leagr of Arrack**.

*Fryday Sept 19.* Sent 10 Bags of Rice with Dutch pinnace. Rec<sup>d</sup> on board the Dutch Lanch one New **Quoir Cable**.

*Saturday Sept 20.* 8 [A. M.]. Saw a sail which we took to be the *Vernon* bears NEbN. Nassipore river N. The Ship we took to be the *Vernon* is a strange ship | Upon her tack<sup>e</sup> and Standing towards [us] we Haul'd up E $\frac{1}{2}$ S and upon her Hauling her Courses up and Showing Dutch Colours, & then making all the sail She Could Carry after us & likewise being Very full of Hands judg'd her to be an enemy by her Action | So made whate sail we Coud to gett away : att Noon she Bore NbW | hull too (?).

*Sunday Sept 21 1746.* 10 [A. M.]. Spoke w<sup>th</sup> the *Vernon* | Att Sunrise the Land from W $\frac{1}{2}$ S to NE $\frac{1}{2}$ E. The Dolphin's Nose being the Nmost land in Sight . . . Saw the *Vernon* bears ENE | Stood out E<sup>t</sup> to speak with her fearing them to be in Great Want of Water.

*Monday Sept 22 1746.* 6 [P. M.]. Anchor'd near the *Vernon*. 4 [P. M.]. Sent o'Shore 28 bales of **Gunny** belonging to y<sup>e</sup> Company. 8 [A. M.]. Sent on Shore 60 Bales of Gunney belonging to the Company w<sup>th</sup> all the **Jute Rope**, each [?] | 20 Ropes | in all 116 Bundles.

*Wednesday 24.* Sent the pinnace to speak to a boat which Came from the S<sup>ew</sup>d who Informs us of a Large ship Lying att **point Guardeware**, which I take to be the Ship that Chas'd us some Day's ago.

*Fryday 26.* Att 5 A. M. Weigh'd & run into 15 fathoms Expecting Dayly the Bring[ing] in of the **Monsoons**.

*Saturday 27th.* Strong Gales from SSW to SW with a Great Swell | Scarce any land wind for the whole 24 hours | Sent on Shoare 3 bags of pease with a **Chair Palankine** | this Morning Weigh'd with a Small Spert of land wind : but presently Dying away Came to an anchor Again | att 10 D<sup>o</sup> Weigh'd with the Wind att S<sup>o</sup> Indeavouring to gett in Shoar but the Current Setting so strong to the Northward made but an Indifferent Board so Anchor'd in a  $\frac{1}{2}$  less 12 fm.

*Sunday Sept 28.* this Morning Weigh'd the Wind att SW to gett further to the S<sup>ew</sup>d but the Large Swell Still Continues | D<sup>o</sup> stood in shore again & Anchor'd in 12 fm : haveing Scare'd fetch were we Come from.

*Monday 29<sup>th</sup> 1746.* Att 10 D<sup>o</sup> (A. M.). Weighed again & by the favour of a Curr<sup>t</sup> by which we got into the road | att Noon Anchor'd in 7 fm.

*Tuesday 30 Sept 1746.* Sent a Shore 1 Bag of **Collivances**.

*Thursd<sup>y</sup> 2<sup>d</sup> Octob<sup>r</sup>.* The first part of these 24 Hours moderate gales & fair Weather | the Middle Cloudy with light<sup>s</sup> in the NE Quarter | the latter part Strong Gales from NE to E | got Down top Gallant Y<sup>d</sup> & masts.

*Fryday 3 Oct.* The first part of these 24 Hours Impley'd in getting Down Yards & Topmast topsail Yards Down on Deck & makeing the Ship as snug as possible | the Weath<sup>r</sup> looking so Dreadfull & Dempestuous all round | the latter part got Down the Crojick<sup>20</sup> Yard & Main Yard fore & aft & panell'd the fore Yard over the Topmast to be ready the first Statch to run into Deeper

<sup>20</sup> A most interesting proof of the contemporary pronunciation of cross-jack.



Water, the sea running so Very High that we are perpetually swallowed up by it | the 24 hours hard Gusts of Wind with Rain out of the Eastern b<sup>d</sup>.

*Saturdy 4 Octo.* The first & Middle part of these 24 Hours the Winds the same as before | the latter part somewhat more Moderate | the Weath<sup>r</sup> turbulent & Unsett'l'd all round with thund<sup>r</sup> light<sup>s</sup> & rain | this Morning Sway'd up the fore Yard & run into 10 fm where Anchor'd | also weigh'd the *Vernon* & went over the Barr.

*Sunday 5.* The first and middle part of these 24 Hours Unsett'l'd w<sup>r</sup> with heavy Showers of rain | in the Night Winds Variable all round | the Latter Moderate Winds in the NEbENE board | Sway'd up fore & Mizzen Topmast | got the F Yard up the M & Spritsail Yard a Cross D<sup>o</sup>.

*Monday 6 Oct.* People Employ'd in fitting our Rigging & Drying our Sails | Came on board with a Guard from the Cheif David Hopkins Soldier as a passenger.

*Tuesd<sup>y</sup> 7 Octo.* The Middle part somewhat suspicious with light<sup>s</sup> & some Small Showers of Rain Thund<sup>r</sup> light<sup>s</sup> in the Southern Board & SW D<sup>o</sup> | Came out of the river & past by to the N<sup>w</sup>ard a small Ship belonging to some Moor Marchant.

*Wednesd<sup>y</sup> 8 Octo 1746.* The Weather somewhat Squally with Light Showers of Rain from the land.

*Fryd 10.* Receiv'd Intelligence of a french Brigantine haveing Arriv'd Some Day's Ago att Ingeram being Stranded there some Day's Ago but the Crew Sav'd.

*Saturday Octo 11<sup>th</sup> 1746.* People Employ'd in Makeing ready for Sailing. 6 [A. M.]. Squally all round with thund<sup>r</sup> light<sup>s</sup> & heavy rain with Calms.

## LOG II.

### 2.

#### Geography.

The log shows that the ship was now taken Northwards, hugging the shore, for two reasons: — to have a place of safety at hand, into which to run in case of very bad weather, as the change of the Monsoons was due, and to be able to creep in nearer to shore than a hostile vessel, larger than the *Wake*, would be able to go, in case she should attempt to take possession of her. Shoal water was evidently safer in those days for a small vessel than the open sea, if an enemy happened to be about.

On the 14th September, 1746, the *Wake*, with the *Vernon* following close, probably for safety, made straight from Pullicat for Mussulepatam Road, passing Due Point, where were received on board various leaguers of water and arrack, and one new "Quoir Cable." On the 20th September, the Ship was off the Nassipore River, but had to "make whate sail we coud to gett away," because she was chased by a "large strange ship."

On the 21st, the Dolphin's Nose was sighted, and on the 22nd Vizaquepatam, called Vizacque in one place, was again reached. Here were sent on shore some "bales of Gunney belonging to y<sup>e</sup> Company," and what is much more interesting for the period, "all the Jute Rope . . . . 20 Ropes, in all 116 Bundles." Here news was received on the 24th of a "Large ship Lying att point Guardeware, which I take to be the Ship that Chas'd us some Day's ago."

On the 26th the ship was taken into 15 fathoms, as the master was "expecting Dayly the Bring[ing] in of the Monsoons." On the 27th they sent on shore a "Chair Palankine," and on the 30th a bag of collivances.

On the 2nd October, the signs of the Cyclone that was bursting on Madras town and destroying de Labourdonnais' fleet began to trouble them, and continued do so till the 8th. The notes in the log here form a most interesting early account of the manner in which cyclonic weather was met in



those days by small sailing vessels in the outer circle of a cyclone.<sup>30</sup> On this last day "a small Ship belonging to some Moor Marchant" came out of the river at Vizagapatam and "past by to the N<sup>w</sup>ard," and on the 11th the *Wake* set sail to reach Ceylon, by way of the open sea, giving the now dangerous port of Madras as wide a berth as she dare.

The geographical problems involved in the account are very few, but there is a goodly crop of Anglo-Indianisms.

## LOG II.

## 3.

## Anglo-Indian Terms.

## Arrack.

This term means spirits. See Yule, *Glossary*, s. v.

1703. — They [the Indians] also make *Aracea* out of it, which is the Indian Wine, and is strong enough, though they drink it like water (p. 140). Within the Palissados of the Church [*i. e.* Mosque] you see on both sides a great many Women, who sell the Sallet call'd Betelle, *Aracea*, Melons and Bananes (p. 187). — *Collection of Dutch Voyages*.

1711. — *Arack* seems to be an Indian Word for Strong Waters of all sorts, for they call our Spirits and Brandy, English *Arack*. — Lockyer, *Trade*, p. 267.

1893. — *Arrack* . . . . old form *Rack*. Anglo-Indian term, not native, for distilled spirits. — *Mad. Man. Admn.* Vol. III. p. 42.

## Collivances.

This is not an Anglo-Indianism, but an old English word meaning a bean. This spelling is not in Yule, *Glossary*, s. v. *calavance*.

c. 1700. — The Country is fruitful to Admiration, producing Rice, Wheat, Gram, *Doll* (dāl) *Callavances*. — Alex. Hamilton, *East Indies*, Vol. I. p. 393. What was meant by "doll *callavances*" is explained by the following: — Near that Place [Bantam] they sell Beans by the Measure of all Colours, White, Black, Red, Yellow, Green, Grey. — *Collection of Dutch Voyages*, 1703, p. 187. This exactly describes the dāl of the present day. "Doll" is quaintly explained by Lockyer in 1711 (*Trade in India*, p. 258), thus: — Doll is a small Grain less than Fetches, contains a Substance like our white Peas and being boil'd with Rice makes *Kutcheree* (khichrī).

1775. — Price Current of Sundries at the Cape of Good Hope. *Callivances* per Bag of 3 Bushels (p. 112). Trade at Madagascar in St Augustine's Bay. 1 Quart Bottle of each Sort of Gunpowder for 5 [Measures] of *Callivances* (p. 108). — Stevens, *Guide*.

1893. — Gram, Hindustani, from Portuguese *grão*, meaning grain. Term applied to many pulses [(dholl)], especially when used for horses and cattle . . . . Bengal gram . . . . Title otherwise Bengal horse gram, Cadalay, *Calavanche*, Chenna, Chick-pea, Columbine, Common Gram. Egyptian Pea, *Garavance*, Gram Chick-pea, Pea of Venus, Shanaga. — *Mad. Man. Admn.* Vol. III. p. 328.

1900. — P. & O. S. S. *Oceana*; Breakfast, Jany. 6th; . . . . "calavance curry." P. & O. S. S. *Oriental*; Breakfast, Jany. 17th; . . . . "calavance curry."

Due Point.<sup>31</sup>

This name is not given in Yule's *Glossary*.

1679. — Two Sangaries or Gun boats which sett us over upon the Island of Dio. — Streynsham Master's Journal in Mackenzie, *Kistna District*, p. 131.

<sup>30</sup> A process the present writer has himself witnessed at Port Blair in the Andaman Islands on the part of native crews of the present day, who still work some of the old schooners of John Company.

<sup>31</sup> See also quotations under "shaii."



c. 1700. — Firewood from the Islands of **Diw**, a low Point of Land that lies near **Matchulipatam**. Alex. Hamilton, *East Indies*, Vol. I. p. 368.

1717. — The President do give orders for providing all necessaries for taking possession of **Divy Island**. — Mackenzie, *Kistna District*, p. 107.

1720. — **Dew Pt.** — Mortier; map.

1764. — **Pointe de Divi**. — Croisey; map.

1809. — **Point Divy** is low . . . forming the Western side of the semicircular Bay of **Masulipatam**. — Horsburgh, *Directions for Sailing*, Vol. I. p. 347. The 1841 Ed., Vol. I. p. 600. repeats the information under "**Point Divy**."

1813. — From Mootapilly to **Point Divy** is about 20 Leagues. — Milburn, *Commerce*, Vol. II. p. 85.

11. — **Divi Point**. — Admiralty Chart.

1893. — **Divy**; **Divi**, Telugu; **Divi**, Malayalam. From **dvipa**, Sanskrit, island. The Island . . . Island, Promontory, Lighthouse; **Kistna District** . . . From **Masulipatam** 16 miles. — *Mad. Man. Admn.* Vol. III. p. 279.

#### Guardeware.

See the quotations under **Gardeware** in the notes to Log I.

#### Gunny.

A sack or sacking made of **jute**. See Yule, *s. v.*

1676. — And from thereabouts there is brought silk . . . course hetape, **gunnyes** and many other commodities. — Clavell, *Accompt of the Trade of Hugley in Yule, Liory of W. Hedge* Vol. II. p. cccxxxix.

1679. — The following is ordered to be sent to Fort St George from **Masulipatam**: 6,000 lbs of **Gunny** . . . August 6th. — Mackenzie, *Kistna District*, p. 97.

1680-1. [Jan] 2ith. 94: bundles **Gunny** and Ropes from **Metchelepatam**. — Pringle, *Mad. Consult.* for 1681, p. 2.

1683. — The Saltpetre having layn a long time in the Godown the bags are grown very rotten . . . Itt is therefore order'd that what bags is to be shipt on the Josia be new cased over with **Gunny** to prevent the loss of the Petro. — Pringle, *Mad. Consult.* for 1683, p. 113.

c. 1710. — Some damaged **Gunnies** which are much in Use in Persia for embalng goods. — Alex. Hamilton, *East Indies*, Vol. II. p. 17.

1711. — Bathings and wet **Goney** being often apply'd with Success to the Relief of the Panting [caused by "the Heats in Summer" in Madras]. — Lockyer, *Trade*, p. 24. **Goneys** occur also at p. 243.

1775. — **Gunnies** per **Corge** [score] of 20 P[iece]s. Wrappers, **Gunnies** and Ropes, &c. — Stevens, *Guide*, p. 76.

1790. — Stores supplied for the outfit of the Snow Viper . . . **Gunny Bags**. — *Bengal Consult. MS.*

#### Jute.

Yule, *s. v.*, says that the word came into English, through Dr. Roxburgh, in 1795, but here we have it used by a ship's mate in 1748.

1893. — **Jute** . . . Title otherwise . . . **gunny-bag plant**. — *Mad. Man. Admn.* Vol. III. p. 399.



**Leager, Leaguer.**

Usually a wine or spirit cask holding about 50 gallons. Yule only gives the spelling leaguer but this is not the commonest form, as per the quotations following.

1775. — Price Current of the several sorts of Goods . . . . Arrack Batavia, 30 to 35 (pagodas) per Leager (p. 110). Price Current of Goods at Canton. Arrack Batavia, per Leag., 36 Tales (p. 109). Batavia Arrack, 200 Leaguers (p. 87). A Leager of Wine, &c, is 360 Rands at 10 Mursies per Rand. A Leager of Batavia Arrack is 396 Rands (p. 88). — Stevens, *Guide to E. I. Trade*.

1790. — Stores supplied for the outfit of the Snow Viper . . . . Rum, 2 half leaguers, . . . Half Leaguers . . . . — *Bengal Consult., MS.*

1813. — Arrack is seldom imported as an article of trade, though the East India Company allow 20 leaguers to be brought in each ship. — Milburn, *Commerce*, Vol. I. p. 274. Casks . . . . Leaguers packed with hoops R. 20 per leager. Leager staves, Rs 25 per 100 (p. 317).

1835. — The English weights and measures are in general use here [Cape of Good Hope], except for wines, which are mostly sold by the Leager of 4 Ahms or 388 Caunes, containing 50 English Gallons nearly (Vol. I. p. 63). The Dutch Aam, "old system," contained, as a wine measure, "41 Gallons English wine measure." It was divided into 64 Stoops of 5.125 English Pints and there was besides a "Legger of 240 Stoops," or 141 Gallons (Vol. I. p. 10). — Kelly, *Cambist*.

**Monsoon.**

It is not always easy to tell, from the definitions usually available, what an old writer meant precisely by the term monsoon. So I here make a collection of old quotations on the subject not to be found in Yule's *Glossary*. Pringle, *Madras Consultations* for 1683, p. 143, n. 90, hits off the general senses of the word very well, which are these: — (i.) The periodical winds, NE and SW. (ii.) The seasons at which the winds blow. (iii.) The periods of change from NE to SW, and *vice versa*. (iv.) The bad weather at the changes. In the quotations that follow I shall adhere roughly to Pringle's divisions and separate them under the following heads: — I. — The Term. II. — The Wind and the Season. III. — The Winds. IV. — The Season. V. — The Changes. VI. — The Bad Weather at the Changes.

**I. — The Term.**

1780. — Monsoons are thus described for the benefit of sailors in Dunn's *Directory for the East Indies*, p. 42 ff.

XXI. — Of the Periodical Trade-Winds or monsoons. — The periodical trade-winds, or monsoons, are usually said to blow for six months from one quarter, and six months from the opposite quarter; of which there are four in India, viz., the SW and NE, the SE and NW. The SW monsoon blows from about the middle of April to the middle of October . . . . The NE monsoon blows through the same track, from the middle of October to the middle of April. . . .

XXII. — Of the Fair and Rainy Seasons. — All over the East-Indies, the westerly monsoon, as well NW as SW, brings the rainy season, with frequent squalls and dirty weather; and the Easterly monsoon brings fair weather, except on the Coast of Coromandel, and the North part of Zeloan [Ceylon], where the rainy season is from October to January.

XXIII. — Of the Changing of the Monsoons. — The changing of the monsoons is commonly gradual, and some years happens near a month sooner than in others. The change of the NE and SW monsoons is often attended with violent storms, which to the Eastward of Malacca are called Tuffoons, and to the westward the Breaking-up of the Monsoons. They seem much the same as West-India hurricanes; but never happen at the change of the NW and SE monsoons, though on those tracks, at that season, there is often very bad weather.



XXIV. — **Of the Land and Sea Breezes.** — The land and sea breezes prevail, more or less almost all along the coast of India, during the NE monsoon: they also blow sometimes during the SW monsoon, but not so general.

The valuable quotation XXIII. above given shows that by the term "**Breaking-up of the Monsoons**" the old pilots and sailors meant cyclones. The term **tuffoon** [typhoon] is as near as Dunn ever got to the modern cyclone. At p. 50 he speaks of cyclones merely as storms: "but devouring storms and tedious calms, almost as bad in their consequences [to sailing vessels] as storms, generally happen at the shifting of the monsoons: that is the storms [cyclones] from the middle of April to the middle of June, and from the end of September to the end of November." In Horsburgh's *Directions for Sailing to and from the E. I.*, Ed. 1809, Vol. II. p. iii. ff., the remarks on the "**Monsoons or Periodical Winds**" are much more advanced, but cyclones are described on p. vii. as hurricanes. In Vol. II. p. xviii., he has the queer expression "to resist the sudden shocks of the sea during **Ty-foongs**," a spelling not to be found in Yule. In the 1841 Ed. of Horsburgh, Vol. I. p. iii. ff. and p. vii., the remarks are a nearly *verbatim* reprint of the Ed. of 1809, and cyclones are still called hurricanes. Cyclones are, of course, correctly described by the synonymous names of "**hurricanes, cyclones, typhoons**," in Taylor's *Indian Directory*, 1874, p. 650, as "progressive revolving storms."

## II. — The Wind and the Season.

1607. — But yf it shall see happen you come not to Zocotora in such due tyme as you may couvenientlie goe to Aden and have that monsons to bringe you into the Indies. — Birdwood, *First Letter Book, East India Company*, p. 251.

1683. — Thursday 18 (Oct). The **Monsoons** [to NE] being now changed and no hops of the arrivall of any of the Hon<sup>ble</sup> Comp<sup>as</sup> Ships. — Pringle, *Mad. Consult.* for 1683, p. 94.

1684. — [Friday] 28 [April]. Sloop Conimeer arrived here, having endeavoured to get to Coodaloor or Conimeer, but y<sup>e</sup> [SW] **Monsoon** being hard set in, could not (p. 31). Tuesday 25 [Nov.]. Since there is no possibility of Reaching the Bay this [NE] **Monsoon** or flebruary or March next (p. 137). — Pringle, *Mad. Consult.* for 1684.

1685. — Monday 13 [April]. Order'd that Capt John Spencer, Commander of the Emoy Merch<sup>t</sup>, to give an acc<sup>t</sup> in writing as farr as he can remember of the R<sup>t</sup> Hon<sup>ble</sup> Comp<sup>as</sup> affairs and of his voyage to Bencoolen and Indrapoora [Sumatra] . . . But the **Monsoon** [SW] being contrary and many of his people dead and sick he advised him how impossible itt was for his Ship to attain that Port. — Pringle, *Mad. Consult.* for 1685, p. 60.

## III. — The Winds.

1689. — Ovington's long description of the **Mussouns** [*Voyage to Surat*] is really a description of the **SW Monsoon** on the West Coast of India, and of what are now called the **Rains**.

It was just the Season of the **Mussouns**, when we fell upon the Coast of India, which generally is extreme dangerous, because they break out for the most part in such Thunder and Rains and impetuous Winds, that if the Ships are not laid up and in Harbour before that time they incur the hazard of being lost (p. 131). This is the only proper Season for the Year for Rain, which falls here [Bombay] with such violence, and on all the Coasts of Malabar . . . It continues in these parts for the space of three or four Months from the latter end of May 'till the middle of September (p. 132). When once the **Mussouns** are past, the other Months are under the severest influence of the Heavens, without one Fertile Cloud for several Months visible in the whole Firmament (p. 137). Which common Fatality [at Suratt] has created a Proverb among the English there that **Two Mussouns** [Rains] are the Age of a Man (p. 142).

1711. — Ships may ride secure from the **South West Monsoon** in Batte Cove [on the Coast of Malabar]. — Lockyer, *Trade*, p. 272.



## IV. — The Seasons.

1675. — Never were all our proxies and Bills of Ladeing left behind before, our Ships never dispatched with greater danger of looseing the **Monsoons**. — Yule, *Diary of W. Hedges*, Vol. II. p. cclvii.

1711. — Wherefore in the beginning of the **Wet Monsoon**. — Lockyer, *Trade*, p. 270.

## V. — The Changes.

1684. — [Sat.] 13 [Sept.]. Ship Burneo Merchant Thom<sup>s</sup> Bowry, Master, arrived here from **Vizagapatam**, he being designed for the Bay, but could not proceed thither by Reason of the **Monsoons chainging** [from SW to NE]. — Pringle, *Mad. consult.* for 1684, p. 104.

1685. — August 31st 1685. Wee your Hon<sup>r</sup> &c<sup>a</sup> Councils most humble servants the Comm<sup>nd</sup>er and Officers of the Pink John and Mary finding your Hon<sup>r</sup> &c<sup>a</sup> Council does designe in few dayes to send the said Pink to Piraman on the West Coast of Sumatra Wee think itt our duty to represent to your Hon<sup>r</sup> &c<sup>a</sup> Council that should the Pink go now she would fall<sup>32</sup> much about the **breaking up of the [SW] Monsoons** on that said Coast of Sumatra where the Winds blow very hard and variable with very much Rain (p. 127). Thursday 8 (Oct). **The changing of the Monsoon [SW to NE]** being near att hand Itt is order'd that the Sloop Mary be carryed into Ennor River to secure her till the bad weather is over (p. 141). — Pringle, *Mad. Consult.* for 1685.

1689. — The [SW] **Mussoons** are rude and Boisterous in the departure as well as at their coming in, which two Seasons are call'd the **Elephant in India**, and just before their breaking up take their farewell for the most part in very ruggid huffing weather. — Ovington, *Voyage to Suratt*, p. 137.

1704. — Is very plaine and evident to every impartiall man there's no other time if any Limited to S<sup>r</sup> Nich<sup>s</sup>: Waite goeing to Bombay then the 3 months allowed and appointed to S<sup>r</sup> Jno: Gayer, the one month after the **Turne of the Monsoon** is a Espetiall ffavour and respect Singly to S<sup>r</sup> Jno: Gayer without any coherence relating to S<sup>r</sup> Nich<sup>s</sup>: Waite, every one of us unwilling interfering in said affaire expecting that you Gentlemen or the Deputy Governour and Council for the United Trade at Bombay to have notified the true Genuin Time and **Turne of the Monsoone** as held and Esteemed by the Portugueiz and other antient European and the Severall inhabitants of India for the Queens Men of Warr Rashly comeing to this Barr alters not the Annnall Season that by accident may meet with Severe and Calme weather otherwise any Nation may assume an Almighty Power equally with Mr Burniston or Aislable. But it being notorious & Certified by all Europeans, Dutch, Ffrench, English, Portugueez, the Last under a Notary publick, as well as the **Moore's Accountt**, the **Turne of the Monsoone S<sup>t</sup> Francisco or the Elephant ends att or upon and not before the new moon in 7ber**: which fell out this year to be the 18th: Ult<sup>o</sup> and the new moon the 17th: Ins<sup>t</sup> or the 18th: Ins<sup>t</sup> a full Callender month. — Letter in Yule, *Diary of W. Hedges*, Vol. II. p. ccclix. f.

The two references in the quotations for 1689 and 1704 to "the Elephant" are exceedingly interesting instances of folk-etymology. "Which two seasons are call'd the Elephant in India," says Ovington. "**St Francisco or the Elephant ends att or upon and not before the new moon in 7ber**," says the quaint old letter. Here "the Elephant" is the thirteenth lunar asterism of the **Hindus**; **Hâthi** as it is called in modern India; **Hastâ** as it was called in Sanskrit. **Hastâ** signifies the hand, and the asterism is properly represented by a hand containing five stars; but **Hâthi** happens to be a common word meaning an elephant, and hence the mistranslation of the old Anglo-Indians. What these early Europeans were told was that the SW Monsoon "turned" during the asterism **Hâthi**, i. e., in September-October, which is the fact. With the Elephant was clearly associated the term "**St Francisco**," alluding, I suppose, to the Saint's Day, either of St Francis of Assisi, the founder of the Franciscans, 4th October, or of St. Francis Borgia, the third General of the Jesuits, 10th October.



1746. — Fryday [Sept] 26. Att 5 A. M. Weigh'd and run into 15 fathoms expecting Dayly the Bring[ing] in of the [NE] Monsoons. — *Text of the Log.*

#### VI. — The Bad Weather at the Changes.

1682. — Thursday 14th: [Sept]. The Resolution being order'd to ride out y<sup>e</sup> Monsoon upon this Coast & Capt Wills[ha]w complaining that he shall not be able to ride out y<sup>e</sup> storm without sufficient Quintelage [ballast] nor get to Metchp<sup>m</sup> [Masulipatam] when the bad weather is over without it 'tis therefore order'd that the warehouse-keeper doe lade on board him 100: Tonns Saltpetre & what Calliature<sup>33</sup> wood can be got to stiffen his ship & inable him the better to ride out the storm. — Pringle, *Mad. Consult.* for 1682, p. 69 f.

1683. — Thursday 4 (Oct). Order'd that Sloop Mary be layd up in Enor River for her Security till the Monsoon be over (p. 91). Munday 10 (Dec). The Monsoon being over & the Sloop Mary being expected tomorrow out of Enor river (p. 14). — Pringle, *Mad. Consult.* for 1683.

1684. — Munday 6 (Oct). Sloop James . . . . to be putt into Codaloor or Porto Novo River to Ride out the Monsoones and be Repaired (p. 113). Thursday 9 (Oct). Sloop Charles's Dispatch for Enore River there to ride out y<sup>e</sup> Monsoon and be repaired (p. 123). 25 (Dec). The Ship Burnco Merchant arrived here out of Enno(re) River where she put in to secure her selfe from y<sup>e</sup> Moonsoone . . . . The Hon<sup>ble</sup> Comp<sup>as</sup> Sloop Charles arrived here from Enor River where she put in to be secured from the Moonsoones & Repair (p. 150). — Pringle, *Mad. Consult.* for 1684.

1685. — Thursday 26 (Nov.). The Monsoon being as to appearance over Itt is agreed that an order be sent to Mr Knowlman Master of the Sloop James to bring her out of Ennor River. — Pringle, *Mad. Consult.* for 1685, p. 153.

#### Moor Marchant.

Moor is an early term for a Muhammadan inhabitant of India.

c. 1595. — The King of Passarvan [in Java] who was a Moor and Mahometan. — *Collection of Dutch Voyages*, 1703, p. 181.

1614. — First that yo<sup>r</sup> Lo<sup>pp</sup> receive due informaçon from Armenians Moores and such othr Merch<sup>ts</sup> as trade out of Persia into the Mogores [Moguls] dominions. — Birdwood, *First Letter Book*, E. I. C., p. 455.

1672. — There is an astonishingly good description of India and its people by Streynsham Master in a letter from Surat, dated 1672, in Yule's *Diary of Sir William Hedges*, Vol. II. p. cccv. ff., and from it are taken the following excerpts:—

I have allsoe been at Sea in the vessells of the Country . . . . But the English were Masters of the Shipp, that is at Sea, though Impley'd by the Native Indians, Moores and Banians [Hindu Merchants] . . . . This Province or Part of India is principally Inhabitted by 3: Nations or sorts of People, that is Moores or Mahumedans, the Hindooes and Parsees . . . . The Moores or Mahometans are those that generally have the Rule and Government of the Country, the Mogulle himselfe being a Mahometan of Tartar Race from Tamerlane, and the greatest part of the Moores in these parts are such as came into this Country with that Conquest, though there be allsoe many of the Naturall Indians, even whole tribes that have turned Mahometans since the Conquest. The Mogull Orangzeeb, (as I have said) is a Mahometan and a great precisian in his Religion, soe that he has taken off all customes from the Mahometans and imposed 5 P. Cent. more on the Hindooes than they formerly paid, besides he hath some Persecution against the Hindooes &ca. since his coming to the Crowne, and not soe much to punish them for the Profession of their owne Religion as to trap and ensnare and even force them to turn Moores (that is to be circumcised, and then they be what they will againe, for many of the Hindooes that have turned Moores Retaine

<sup>33</sup> Telugu, *galajiru*, red-wood.



many of their Idolatrous Customes) as is the Practice of Mahometans in most Countrys, Contrary to all humane Reason, and I think to the Economy of all Religions in the World. It seems that some yeares if not ages since, I suppose about the time of the **Moore**s first Conquests, they were severe against the Idolatry of the Hindoos, and sett a Poll Tax upon all the Family of Indians, which as I said [many] of them **turne Moore**s, nor was any Pagod or Idolatrous Temple of the Hindoos suffered to stand except the Hindoos at their owne charge made a place for Prayer for the Mahometans adjoining to the very wall of it, and if they did soe, then they might build new Pagods, but since those times, especially during the Raignes of Jangeer and Sha-Jehaun, the Hindoos were not at all molested in the exercise of their Religion, but were in flavour and Preferred to the great and Meane offices of the Kingdome soe well as the **Moors**.

1672. — There were Weavers of all Sects, **Moors**, Hindoos and Persees. — Yule, *Diary of W. Hedges*, Vol. II. p. cccxi.

1682. — Makes proclamation that no **Moor** nor Gentue should serve the English. — Yule, *Diary of W. Hedges*, Vol. II. p. 1.

1683. — Forasmuch as our affairs have been much interrupted by the insolvency of the **Moors** Government. — Yule, *Diary of W. Hedges*, Vol. II. p. xx.

1689. — The Portuguese proselyte the children of all Persons deceas'd among them, whether their Parents are **Moors** or Pagans, and seize their Estates into the Church (p. 206). I shall distinguish the Natives here into three sorts. First, the **Moors** or **Moguls** (p. 233). — Ovington, *Voyage to Suratt*, p. 206.

1690. — If you do not take some care to relieve me with Speed I shall be fore'd to **turne Moore** . . . . For the lord Jesus Christs Sake let me not perish in this hellish prison. — Charles King in prison to the Bengal Council, in Yule, *Diary of W. Hedges*, Vol. II. p. cviii.

1699. — He is expert in the **Hindorstand** or **Moore**s Languages [Hindustani]. — Yule, *Diary of W. Hedges*, Vol. II. p. cclxvii.

c. 1700. — The trade is now removed into the Armenians **Moors** and Gentow's Hands. — Alex. Hamilton, *East Indies*, Vol. I. p. 367.

1701. — Our Generall [letter] advises you what has happened at Surat as to the **Moors** Seizing Sr: John Gayre and his Lady. — Yule, *Diary of W. Hedges*, Vol. III. p. lxvii.

1711. — Two Days before our Arrival a **Moorman** (or a Mahometan, born in the **Mogulls** Dominions) in the King's Service was accused before the Shabander [at Acheen]. — Lockyer, *Trade*, p. 57.

1775. — Here [Acheen] are some few English, some **Moorish Merchants** and several Chinese (p. 87). Under which Cover he [the "Imaum's Shroff" at Mocha] has an Opportunity of adding Something to the Money Weight for which he is well paid by the **Moors** who are the greatest Exporters of Silver (p. 51). — Stevens, *Guide to E. I. Trade*.

1791. — This will be delivered by Mr Clark, the Gunner of the Settlement [at the Andamans] who I have dispatched for Calcutta in charge of the Lea board for some **Mores**. — *Letter in Bengal Consult.* dated 24th Nov. 1791, MS.

1798. — The **Moorman** [Muselman Conquerors] treated the natives [Hindus] very differently. — Dr. Heyne's *Journal in Mackenzie, Kistna District*, p. 228.

#### **Musule, Musulepatam, Mussulepatam, Mussulepatam.**

These spellings are possibly due to the same false folk-etymology as brought about the contemporary spellings **Metchlipatam** and the like, so common in former days. See Yule, *Glossary*, s. v. **Masulipatam**. See also *ante*, s. v. *cit.*, under the first log.



- c. 1600. — Such like stuffe as S<sup>r</sup> James Lancaster tooke wch are made att Bengalla **Mesepatamya** Cheremandalle and S<sup>t</sup> Thome [Madras]. — Birdwood, *First Letter Book*, E. I. C., p. 73.
1605. — All or the most pte of theis abovesaid are made aboute Bengalla, **Mesepatamya** St Thome Cheremandall or Cambaya & some other pte of the East Indies. — Birdwood, *First Letter Book*, p. 75.
1605. — Theis foresaid Clothes . . . are made in Bengalla att **Mesapatania** S Thome Cheremandalla. — *Op. cit.* p. 79.
1605. — In all the Countrie of Bengalla (wherein **Mesopotania** is a Cheefe Citie). — *Op. cit.* p. 85.
1605. — These aforesaid cloths are always to be had at Bantam, yet at sometimes better than at othersome, but they be made at Bengalla, **Mesopotamia**, S Thome & Choromandle. — Danvers, *E. I. C. Letters*, Vol. I. p. 72.
1610. — We hope to arryue at **Mesopotane** . . . vppo y<sup>e</sup> Coast of Coromandell [the Cheremandalla, &c, above]. — *Op. cit.* p. 427.
- c. 1617. — At better rates then they fetch it from the flemings in **Messelpotania**.<sup>34</sup> — *Op. cit.* p. 460.
1632. — Intended to be employed on freight to **Muselpatam**. — Yule, *Diary of W. Hedges*, Vol. II, p. cccxiv.
1658. — Some 40 English miles from the Metropolitan Port and factory which is called **Mech-lupatam**. — Yule, *Diary of W. Hedges*, Vol. II. p. cccxlvii.
1674. — Monsieur Peter Deltor second for affairs of the Royal Company of France at **Metchipatam**. — Mackenzie, *Kistna District*, p. 99.
1676. — Proposals to the Agent about the young men in **Metchelepatam**. Whereas each hath his peon and some more with their Rondells [umbrellas]. — Mackenzie, *Kistna District*, p. 92.
1678. — If the Ship continues as Shee is I will take in all that is sent to **Metchep**:. — Letter from Thomas Pitt in Yule's *Diary of W. Hedges*, Vol. III. p. vi.
1679. — There by the River side all the English that were in **Metchlepatam** mett us. — Streynsham Master's *Journal* in Mackenzie, *Kistna District*, p. 131.
1735. — Onder desen zark legt begraven mi'uff Maria Wilhelmina Gambier zale Gemalin ne van den Ee Heer Gosewyn Maire Oppen-Coopm. secunde te deser Choromandel en Oppenhorfd dit Noorder District nata ter Steede Negapatnam der 15 Oct 1702 obiit alhier tot **Masulipatnam** den 2 Augusty Ao 1735 ond 32 iaren 9 maanden en 18 dagen. — Mackenzie, *Kistna District*, p. 102.
1893. — **Metchlepatam**. The legendary and absurd derivation from **machhlī** [fish] for long fixed this mode of spelling. — Pringle, *Mad. Consult.* for 1684, p. 64.

#### Palankine.

- A litter carried on a pole. Yule quotes the spelling in the text as early as 1608.
1679. — To ferry over our people **Pallankeenes** and Horses which took up 4 hours' time. — Streynsham Master's *Journal* in Mackenzie, *Kistna District*, p. 131.
1683. — Went in my **Palenkeen** for Ballasore. — Yule, *Diary of W. Hedges*, Vol. I. p. 66.
1689. — Those whose Wealth is able to support it are pompously carried upon Men's shoulders in **Palanquins** whose carriage is as easie and pleasant as that of our chairs in the Streets of London. — Orington, *Voyage to Suratt*, p. 252.

<sup>34</sup> The Dutch factory at Masulipatam was established in 1614.



1699. — And desir'd he would privately let him goe either in a **Pallakeen** or on horse to you. — Letter in Yule, *Diary of W. Hedges*, Vol. II. p. cclxvii.

1700. — Only the bare **Pallakeen** neither Bed nor Tassels . . . and I have sent a Small Sandall Screwtore [*Escritoire*] for a **Pallakeen**. — Letter in Yule, *Diary of W. Hedges*, Vol. II. p. cclx.

c. 1700. — And the English Church [at Madras] is well endowed and maintains poor Gentlewomen in Good Housewifery, good Clothes and **Palankine**. — Alex. Hamilton, *East Indies*, Vol. I. p. 366.

1702. — **Palankeen** hire . . . I can not tell why it should not be allowed here. — Letter in Yule, *Diary of W. Hedges*, Vol. II. p. ccxxi.

c. 1708. — Beg the Favour that he should pick them out some lusty Dutch Men to carry their **Palenqueens** and **Somereras** or **Umbrellas**. — Alex. Hamilton, *East Indies*, Vol. I. p. 338.

c. 1710. — Most Gentlemen and Ladies in Bengal live both splendidly and pleasantly . . . in the Evening to recreate themselves in Chaises or **Palankins** in the Fields. — Alex. Hamilton, *East Indies*, Vol. II. p. 13.

1711. — The better sort of People travel in **Palankeens** carry'd by six or eight **Cooleys** whose Hire if they go not far from the Town is three Pence a Day each. — Lockyer, *Trade*, p. 27.

1775. — **Palenkeen** and Horse Hire with the Broker, etc, from the Gott [*ghât* or landing-place] (p. 70). **Polenkeen** and **Cooley** Hire and his Necessaries to the Gott. — Stevens, *Guide*, p. 68.

1798. — Twelve **palankeen** boys [bearers] for myself. — Dr. Heyne's *Journal* in Mackenzie. *Kistna District*, p. 226.

#### Quoir.

Cocoanut fibre for rope-making, bedding, etc. The spelling in the text is not given in Yule's *Glossary*, but compare **quoils** for **coils** in the log later on, and **Quatwall** for **kōṭwal** in Stevens. *Guide*, 1775, p. 54. **Coir** is the usual modern form of the word.

1595. — The Indian Palm Tree which grows every where in the Indies and is of four kinds. The first is that which produceth Coco the most useful Tree in the World . . . The Nuts are as big as Ostrich Eggs . . . When the Fruit is gathered and dry the shell peels off like Flax of which they make their **Cairo**, that is all manner of Cables of Ropes for the use of Ships: they likewise caulk their Ships with it in stead of Tow and Mosse. — *Col. of Dutch Voyages*, 1703, p. 138 f.

1676. — The cable being new made of Maldivre **Coir** never started a strain. — Yule, *Diary of W. Hedges*, Vol. II. p. ccxxxiii.

c. 1700. — The Islands of Maldiva . . . bring Cowries and **Cayar**<sup>35</sup> for the Service of Shipping. — Alex. Hamilton, *East Indies*, Vol. I. p. 394.

1711. — Sow'd together with **Coyr**-twine (p. 11). **Coire** per pecull (p. 152). **Coire** (p. 152). They use **Coire** or Coconut Cordage (p. 258). **Coir** (p. 274). — Lockyer, *Trade in India*.

1775. — **Coir** Callicut per Bom[bay] Can[dy] of 21 mds. **Coir** Lacadavia, ditto. — Stevens. *Guide*, p. 108.

1893. — **Coir**, **kayiru**, Tamil. — *Mad. Man. Admn.* Vol. III. p. 202.

#### Shali, Chao.

This important Anglo-Indianism is mentioned in Yule's *Glossary* under **choya**. I give some additional quotations for it here, because it comes under notice in quotations for **Masulipatam**. though it is not mentioned in the Log. It signifies the dye known as **Indian madder**.

<sup>35</sup> An old and correct form. In the Andaman Islands the existing form is always *kayōr*. So it is also in the Nicobar Islands, the ancient home of the cocoanut.



1586. — They bring thither [Masulipatan] also much cotton yarne red coloured with a root which they call *Saia*, which will never lose his colour : it is very well solde here, & very much of it commeth yerely to Pegu. — Ryley, *Ralph Fitch*, p. 165.

1614. — The red yarn, also by the roguery & covetousness of the dyers, instead of *camca*, viz, put other *chaya* half so cheap, which only doth give a fair gloss at first, which with continuance & heat in the ship decays & becomes black, dirty & whitish withal. — Adam Denton, *Letter in E. I. C. Records*, Vol. II. p. 127.

1679. — To which they were answered yt if they would provide musters [patterns] of all sorts of Chae and white goods and bring them to *Metchlepatam*. — Streynsham Master, *Journal*, in Mackenzie, *Kistna District*, p. 131.

c. 1700. — *Matchulipatam*, being the next Place of Figure lies in the Way along the Sea Coast. It stands on the North-east Side of *Diu Point*, about 5 Leagues distant from it . . . . The Islands of *Diu* produce the famous Dye called *Shahi* . . . . For some Disgust he had received from the Inhabitants of *Diu Islands*. — Alex. Hamilton, *East Ind.* Vol. I. p. 370.

1700. — If I can but Keep these Cursed fellows from mixing the Southern *Chay* with the Northern. — Yule, *Diary of W. Hedges*, Vol. III. p. lxiii.

1813. — The coarser plain cloths made to the north and south of the *Godavery* or coloured with *Chaya* root which grows in the most perfection in the sands overflowed annually by the *Kistna* (p. 86). *Chaya* root is a small root from 15 to 20 inches long, very slender, with few fibres, cultivated on the Coasts of Malabar and Coromandel and other parts of India. It is used in dying red, purple, a deep clear brown, and to paint the red figures on Chintz. — Milburn, *Commerce*, Vol. I. p. 277.

#### Vizagapatam, Vizaquepatam, Vizacquepatam, Vizacque.

See illustrations, *s. v.*, in the notes to the first log. The ordinary current colloquial form of the name in military circles is *Vizag*.

1869. — The term *Vizagapatam* is properly *Visākhapatnam*, the City of *Visākha* or *Kartikeya*, the Hindu Mars. — Carmichael, *Vizagapatam District*, p. 1.

(To be continued.)

#### SOME SONGS OF THE PORTUGUESE-INDIANS.

BY E. M. LAFRENAIS.

(Communicated by F. Fawcett.)

THE Portuguese who came to India with Vasco da Gama and the other leaders, who followed in his wake, have left their names to their mixed posterity, now to be found along the west coast of India. The language spoken by these people in their homes is still a kind of Portuguese — Portuguese with an odd admixture of the Vernacular Malayalam.

##### I.

##### Adeos.

##### Text.

Adeos, Adeos, Adeos, Adeos,  
 Meu coracao  
 Alma leva retratado  
 Para hoje en penar.



Quantas vezes vos me destes  
 Vossa mao de fina prata  
 Promet eu do olhe que ser firmo  
 Como hoje sois engrato.  
 Ai demim triste coitado  
 Em que hora ja nasceo  
 Ja nasceo na huma planeta  
 Para hoje en penar.  
 Tu tens olhas de matar  
 Sobrancelhas de ferir  
 Tu tens boca de fallar  
 Coracao para sentir.

*Notes.*

The first song entitled "*Adeos*" evidently was originally a farewell serenade addressed by a jilted swain to his false lady love. The air is simple and pathetic, with that peculiar form of pathos characteristic of the lyric music of Spain and Portugal.

The words now given are many of them corrupt, and the manner of their use is such that the difficulties of translating them literally have proved insurmountable, though many individuals, who are well versed in *Mongrel Portuguese*, have been consulted. Freely translated, the verses mean that the serenader complains of his soul being dejected and of his being "in pain today" (fourth line, first verse).

The second verse is apparently in reference to the hopes held out by the lady to whom the bard addresses his plaintive melody, and to her subsequent ingratitude.

In the third verse, the bard bemoans his hard fate and curses the unlucky star under which he was born.

In the fourth verse he tells the false one that her eyes can kill, her eyebrows pierce and her mouth conquer, but her heart makes others feel.

This song is seldom sung to the same words, improvised renderings to suit occasions being generally composed at entertainments, though some few verses, like those reproduced, are fairly popular.

II.

*Britannia.*

*Text.*

O Britannia, O Britannia, O Britannia, linda amor  
 Britannia linda amor li la lay  
 Britania linda amor.<sup>1</sup>

2

Bark China jada vela capitaõ querri parte  
 Bengalina ne meo braco li la lay  
 Naon cavaie dispidia.

3

Voz ingrata disamarosa, bosa porta na vi  
 Eu lo vai ne terra estranho, li la lay  
 Esmolas lo pedi.

<sup>1</sup> This is the chorus of the song: see Translation below.



4

Vinte anno eu massel, toda terra eu ja olha  
Naon achar um minina li la lay  
De me propri idade.

5

Vosa alto fantasia quanto temp lo duro  
Com o folha se papel, li la lay  
Dally vento lo leva.

*Translation.**Chorus.*

Oh Britannia, Oh Britannia,  
Oh Britannia my love!  
Britannia my love, *li la le*,  
Britannia my love.

2

A Chinese barque put up her sails,  
For the skipper he wanted to start,  
Bengalena was in his arms, *li la le*,  
And from her it was hard to part.

*Chorus.\**

3

You are ungrateful and you're unloving,  
Your portals I'll cross no more,  
In far lands will I roam, *li la le*,  
Begging alms from door to door.

*Chorus.*

4

I have travelled in distant lands,  
My age it is twenty today,  
No girl have I met, *li la le*,  
Whose age did with mine agree.

*Chorus.*

5

Those fantastic notions of yours  
How long, think you, will endure?  
The breeze will scatter them, *li la le*,  
As papers lifted from the floor.

*Chorus.*

III.

Marilyhia,

*Text.*

Onti noite intire eu ne vossa porta  
Morrendo cum frio sin acha um reposta.

*Chorus.*

Marilyhia dai me consalaçoa  
Tirai dor de corocoa.

---

\* I. e., the first verse repeated.



2

Amor manda chama eu na sabe caminho  
Fortuna sercade cum corna dispigna.

*Chorus.*

3

Amor nouka dava ninguem allegria  
Se lagry tristi de noite didia.

*Chorus.*

4

Fogue de fongou cum agua se paka  
Fogue de me peite cum morti se paka.

*Chorus.*

5

Parmi ja acha um lence riba de consigna  
Lance congueside de nossa Rossigna.

*Chorus.*

6

Parmi tignere un amor tode tignerenoia  
A ta na barrack ne boka de soldadi.

*Chorus.*

7

Olha, qunte vi treze massev curto  
Aquely de meio golose de poot.

*Chorus.*

8

Ja sande candia sin bata azeite  
Senhora disti casa corocoa de laiti.

*Chorus.*

9

Ja sei um lua fronte se meu rosto,  
Ja vira saphira contre diamonti.

*Chorus.*

10

Magry massev massev affemado  
Eli lo levai parvos enganade.

*Chorus.*

11

Se querrai tama amor vine mingnha terra  
Corp fasez bark braco fasez vella.

*Chorus.*

12

Se querre tama amor, inda vem crianca  
Deitado ne cole tomar confianca.

*Chorus.*



*Translation.*

All last night I was without your gate,  
Dying of the cold and unknowing my fate.

*Chorus.*

Marilia, console me with love,  
And the pain from my heart remove.

## 2

Love bade me come, but no way can I find,  
And a crown of thorns my fortune doth bind.

*Chorus.*

## 3

Love yields no bliss, and night and day  
In tears am I bedewed alway.

*Chorus.*

## 4

Water, the fire of the oven extinguisheth,  
The fire of my heart will be consumed but by death.

*Chorus.*

## 5

On our kitchen top a kerchief did I find,  
And it bore the name of our Rosinha kind.

*Chorus.*

## 6

The soldiers in barracks, nay, all men envied me,<sup>3</sup>  
The love of a girl who greatly loved me.

*Chorus.*

## 7

Yonder come three youths of stature all short,  
The one in the middle's aye greedy for put.<sup>4</sup>

*Chorus.*

## 8

Save oil 's in the lamp, it will not shed light,  
The heart of my hostess, as milk 'tis pure white.

*Chorus.*

## 9

A moon before my face doth rise,  
And sapphire with diamond in splendor vies.

*Chorus.*

## 10

Beware the slender youth, the girl-faced boy,  
By artful wiles he'll thee decoy.

*Chorus.*

<sup>3</sup> This line is evidently very modern. Reference is to the small detachment of a British Regiment which is always stationed at Calicut. — F. F.

<sup>4</sup> "Poot" is a kind of cake made with rice, commonly eaten by the poorer class of the Portuguese-Indian community. — F. F.



## 11

Seek you love, then home come with me,  
Your fair form a ship whose sails your arms be.

*Chorus.*

## 12

Seek you love, then, come, child to my breast,  
Lie still in my lap and fear not to trust.

*Chorus.*

## IV.

## Marilia.

## Text.

Marilia minha Marilia,  
Minha doce coracao  
Abri vossa boca  
Dai me consolacao.

2

Cada viz que eu limbro  
De vossa bondade  
Coracao fica triste  
Olhos saltad lagre.

3

Eu com vos juntado  
Ja fez hum concerto  
Nada morrer longe  
Senad vossa puerto.

4

Ai de mino que for fazer  
Sendo nada considerar  
Sequeminte for amado  
Para hoje eu penar.

*Translation.*

Marilia, my Marilia,  
My sweetheart,  
Open your mouth, Marilia,  
And give me consolation.

2

Whenever I think of your welfare,  
My heart becomes sad  
And my eyes fill with tears.

3

You and I together have vowed a vow  
That we should not die apart,  
But should always be together.

4

What is there for me to do,  
I can think of nothing,  
For the sake of love  
I am in pain today.



THE TULA-KAVERI-MAHATMYA.<sup>1</sup>

BY G. E. SUBRAMIAH PANTULU.

## CHAPTER I.

*Sapta-prākāra-madhye sarasija-mukul-śābhāsamānē vimānē**Kāvēri-madhyā-dēśē mṛdutarā-phaṇirāḍ-bhōga-paryāṅka-madhye* 1*Nīdrā-mudr-ābhīrāman kaṭi-nikāṭa-īraḥ-pārīva-vinyāsa-hastē**Padmā-dhātī-karābhyaṁ parichīta-charaṇaṁ Rāṅganāthaṁ bhajāmi* 11

Sūta spake to **Saunaka** and other **Rishis** thus. "**Dharmavarman**, a **Rājarshi** King of **Nichulāpura**, having prostrated before the sage **Dālbya** from whom he had heard on very many previous occasions various saintly stories, asked him once more thus:—

'O, all-knowing sage, by what means do people in general become useful progenitors, blessed with long life and prosperity? How are sins washed off? How have they *bhakti* in the God-head? By following what Dharma would God, the giver of sweet scented dainties, choicest women and other terrestrial happiness, and in the end of celestial Mukti, the Creator, Preserver, and Destroyer of all, be pleased? How in this sin-worn Kali-Yuga could *mahāpātakas* of the type of *brahma-hatyā* (murder of a Brāhman) vanish like snow before sunshine and such sinners attain final beatitude? I earnestly request that you will have mercy on me, your disciple, and narrate all these in detail.'

Sūta began to narrate thus to Saunaka and other Rishis the following, as being told in days of yore by Dālbya, the best of Brāhmanas, to the charitably disposed king-sage Dharmavarman, on being questioned by the latter. "You eagerly longed to hear this excellent soul-stirring story of Vishnu. Your longing therefore enlivens the soul and waxes your *bhakti*. This is a good question and I shall, as far as my ability permits, give you a succinct account of its philosophy. The same topic was well discussed in days long gone by Agastya, before the sages on the field of Kurukshētra, when questioned by King Hariśchandra, and I shall now tell you the same, which be pleased to hear with mute attention. The far-famed King Hariśchandra of Ayōdhya, intent on performing a sacrifice reached the famous field of Kurukshētra, saw Saunaka and other Rishis of the place, and with excess of joy and humility prostrated himself before them, when they who were in the humble initiation of disciples, well versed in Vedic lore, and lovers of truth, saw him and enquired of him thus. 'O King, have you come here in peace and are your people ruled well? Are your kingdom and metropolis, treasury, granary, armoury, army, etc., etc., waxing high in peace and plenty? The king who, out of vicious habits, does not take a sixth part as tax and does not rule the people well in peace would suffer sins for a Brahma-Kalpa and then would take good-for-nothing *janmans* as worms, flies, etc. Therefore, it is that a king who pays a high reverence for Brāhmanas, who does not pay court to venal beauties, whose fame extends far and wide, who rules his people well, is blessed with long life and prosperity. You are well-disposed towards Vedic Brāhmanas, are charitable, the foremost among the best of the race, have the internal and external senses under your control and are therefore extolled by the good.'

"The Rishis, after having spoken thus, were very hospitable to their guest, King Hariśchandra. The king sat on the seat appointed, with hands uplifted, and with fear and humility spake to them: 'I have become great at the mere sight of you, revered by the whole world. Having heard of your grand assembly I have come here to pay my respects to you. I request a special favour of you. O, twice-born, how can I transgress the illimitable *saṁsāra*, how attain sustenance and final beatitude, how attain long life, how will the family progress, how will the Lord, the greatest of the Purushas, be pleased? I request you to teach me the quintessence of the *Dharmas*.'

<sup>1</sup> From the *Āgneya-Purāṇa*.



"Whereupon the Munis replied :— 'Your questions being asked with a mind intent always on Dharma are very good. We shall teach you the *talva* you like best. The *Aśvamēdha* sacrifice, being the reliever from *brahmahatyā* and other sins of that order, the giver of *bhukti* and *mukti*, the one that pleases Vishnu most, is by far the best, and if you should perform the sacrifice, you will enjoy every sort of happiness.' " To which the king replied, 'O, the choicest of Brāhmins, be good enough to have the sacrifice performed by me and make me great.'

"In the interim the Muni residents of Naimishāranya came there, led by Sūta. Amongst others were Vasishṭha, Vāmadēva, Jābāli, Kāśyapa, Bhṛigu, the resplendent Viśvāmitra, Durrāsas, the mine of prayer, Hārīta, Atri, Maṅkapa, Vitiḥōtra, Gālava, Mārkaṇḍēya, Asita, Kapva, Sita, Yāja, Upayāja, Bhāradvāja, Gautama, Bailva, Parāśara, Vyāsa, Śātātapa, Mudga, Maudgala, Kavasha, Vālmiki, Vārūṇa, Agastya, Mātāṅga, Jātukarṇa, Sūtikṣhṇa, Śātānanda, Satyavrata, Satyatapas, Āsuri, Nārada, Kavi, Dhaumya, Aṅgiras, Kālinda, Māṇḍavya, Garga, Gataksata, Hōtṛi, Dhūmakētu, Jalaplava, Ūrdhvatējas, Mahātējas, Śaṅkha, Likhita, Bōdhāyana, Yājñavalkya, Yājñakētu, Maru, Kratu, Pulastya, Pulaha, Gaura, Āśvalāyana, Āpastamba, Yajñarāśi, Marichi, Babbṛu, etc., etc., with their disciples and hosts of followers. Amongst these patient, sympathetic *munis* who keep the senses internal and external in check, some were water drinkers, some air eaters, some leaf-fruit-and-root-eaters, some Brahmachārins, some Grihasthas, some Samnyāsins, and others Vānaprasthas. These, intent on blessing the world, being close followers of *Nyāyāsāstras*, well versed in Vedic and Vedantic lore, concentrating their thoughts on that great holder of the vital shears, came there to feast their ears on *Tulakāvēri-Mahātmya*, liked so much by Vishnu. Whereupon the *muni* residents of Kurukshētra entertained them, as became them, according to Vedic ritual, seated them in the seats allotted, when Hārīschandra, the controller of the senses, prostrated before them and with hands uplifted and with tears of love flowing from his eyes, requested of them something in a humble mellow voice. 'My life has been made a model : my host of *pitrīs* satiated. Vishnu worshipped by an ireful, headstrong king of my type, a follower of Adharma, has surely appeared before me. I was able to see you by good deeds done in life past. What is there in the three worlds that cannot be attained while I am in your presence?'

"To which the Rishis replied. 'O, Hārīschandra, the devout worshipper of Hari, and the disciple of Vasishṭha, the beauty and sublimity of your powers of speech are indescribable.'

"When Hārīschandra took his seat, Śaunaka surveying the whole host of Rishis began, 'This Hārīschandra has come here intent on performing the *Aśvamēdha*. I request on his behalf that, as you have come here just in time, though accidentally, you would shower your choicest blessings on him and favour me with his views.'

"Whereupon Nārada and Agastya replied, 'This king is the fittest person to perform the sacrifice as he is very intelligent, has a decentralised mind, and holds the senses internal and external in check. But, however, there is one thing to be said. In days long gone, he was obliged to roam about in the forests, sore dismayed, being made a bankrupt by the sage Viśvāmitra, immersed in the deep wide sea of misery, sorely puzzled by the imperious sensations of hunger and thirst, and saw in a forest the resplendent sage Kintama bending half in prayer upon his knee, and stood stupified, not for a moment thinking that he should worship the sage. On seeing the king thus, the best of Brāhmins thought 'Is this not the world-famed King Hārīschandra, the controller of the *indriyas* (the senses) and anger, the incessant worshipper of Brāhmins? Why has he not worshipped me?' So thought he for a time and focussing his thoughts, was able by clairvoyant vision to perceive that his present troubles were the product of Viśvāmitra's deeds, took pity on him and became all-merciful towards him. O, best of Brāhmins, therefore it is that he is not entitled to perform this best of sacrifices, *Aśvamēdha*, till he expiates his other sins caused by the Brāhmin's curse. Whosoever in thought, word, or deed, causes offence to a Brāhmaṇa, at that very instant he loses his life and prosperity, and with his *pitrīs* enjoys hell-fire until he expiates all his follies. If the offence is a conscious one, he would become a Brahmarikshasa and the sure expiation for it is



bathing in the cold icy waters of the Kāvêri in the month of Tūlā. He will be fit for sacrificial rites if he bathes in the Narmadā in the months of Vaiśākha and Mēsha. Bathing in the sacred waters of the Kāvêri<sup>2</sup> not only expiates all sins but also confers on the bather every sacrificial bliss, every desire and *mōkṣha* in the end. The sixty-six crores of waters in the fourteen worlds join the Kāvêri in the month of Tūlā for the expiation of sins. It is impossible even for Ādisēsha (Hydra) to describe the sublimity of Tūlā-Kāvêri, though told for ten thousand years in a thousand mouths. The greatest sinner will become a heavenly habitant by bathing for three days in the Kāvêri in the month of Tūlā. From its source in the Śahya mountains till it joins the sea, the Kāvêri is flooded on both sides by Śiva and Kēśava shrines. There are many āramas of sages on both its sides. The sacredness of Tūlā-Kāvêri is indescribable by any except Brahman, Viṣṇu and Rudra in the three worlds. As the waves of the Kāvêri are a number of rivulets, its beds a number of tanks, its sands angelic habitations, bathing in it would give us the same *phala* as bathing in innumerable sacred streams. The sacred streams that join the Kāvêri in the month of Tūlā are as innumerable as the cosmic atoms, the stars in the heavens, the showers of rain and rankest seeds. A drop in the Kāvêri can be regarded as a stream in itself. As the person that bathes in the sacred waters of the Kāvêri in the month of Tūlā is not only relieved of all sins but sits at the feet of the Almighty, O greatest of kings, you will attain everything by such a bath."

The king on hearing such words from Nārada and Agastya became wonder-struck, and said, "As I am your servant, I request by your grace that I be made fit to perform the Āśvamedha sacrifice. How should the bath in the Kāvêri in the month of Tūlā and in the Narmadā in the month of Vaiśākha be performed? Why should these two months be given a preference? What charities must be done during these months? Kindly tell me these in detail."

So said King Hariśchandra to the Rishis, Dālbhya to Dharmavarman, and Sūta to Śaunaka.

## NOTES AND QUERIES.

### TOMB.

THIS curious old Anglo-Indianism means a grain measure still known in Madras as toom. It belongs strictly to the Telugu Districts and in the Southern portion of those districts it is made to correspond to the better known mercall (*vide* Yule). The word itself is not in Yule. It represents the Tel. and Tam. *tāmu*, and may be called the Indian bushel.

1680. — Eight small measures make one Tomb. Five Tombs make one Parra. Eighty Parras make one Garce . . . the measure to contain one-eighth of a Tomb and all graines, etc., for the use of the Company to be measured upon it gratis upon request. — *Mad. Consult. in Notes and Extracts*, p. 24.

R. C. TEMPLE.

### KOS — COURSE — CORSE.

c. 1616. — Sir Thomas Roe always has courses for kōs.

c. 1625. — "As for Courses they are dinersly taken (as Southerne and Northerne miles with vs), in some places longer, in other shorter, which causeth scruple in the computation." — *Note by Purchas to Roe, Hak. Soc. Ed. Vol. II. p. 541.*

1765. — The Gentoos estimate distances by courses, but more commonly by a day's journey, which they reckon five corse, but as the corse varies in different districts, from one and a half to two and a half miles English, we take the medium days travel at ten English miles. — *Howell, Events, etc.*, p. 192.

R. C. TEMPLE.

<sup>2</sup> In times when men were scarcely ever induced to travel by a liberal curiosity or by the pursuit of gain, it was better that the rude inhabitant of the South should visit Benares and Prayāga than that he should never see anything but the squalid cabins and uncleared woods amidst which he was born.



## NOTES ON THE ROCK CARVINGS IN THE EDAKAL CAVE, WYNAAD.

BY F. FAWCETT.

*(Assisted by R. C. Temple.)*

TO the S. W. of the town of Ganapativattam, known as Sultan's Battery to Europeans, from its fort constructed by Tippoo Sultan, in the *tālūk* of the Malabar District called by the Natives *Vayanātu* and well known to Europeans as the Wynaad, there lies one of the principal hills of the *tālūk*. It is known as a whole as *Edakalmala* or *Yedaculmala*. It is situated about 56 miles from Calicut, about the same distance from Ootacamund, and 4 miles S. W. from Sultan's Battery.

If one starts from Sultan's Battery the hill is reached best by following the path along the watershed from the bungalow of the Kuppumūdi Coffee Estate. The highest peak of it is known to Europeans as the **Battery Rock**, and forms a prominent feature in the Wynaad landscape, standing some 1,500 feet above the general level of the country round and something over 4,000 feet above the sea. On the Western slope of it near the crest is to be found the **Edakal Cave**, the subject of these notes.

Once a year the peak is the objective of the local Chetty caste, many of whom live in the neighbourhood. They ascend the hill and scale the peak by a flight of dangerous steps cut in the rock. On the top, where there are at the present day but four posts and two cross pieces, they perform *pūjā* to the goddess called by them *Mudiampilli*. There are a few small temples about the foot of the hill, one of which is built of slabs of rock, but there is apparently no connection between them and the open-air shrine on the top of the peak. The yearly pilgrimage to the peak, in fact, expresses almost all there is of modern religious interest attached to the *Edakalmala*, which is held to be the home of a couple of minor local goddesses, and of *Kutti Chātan*, the mischievous imp of Malabar, who sets fire to houses and hay-ricks, upsets things and teases interminably. *Kutti Chātan's* residence at this spot is explained in this way. Long ago the goddess of *Edakalmala* used to devastate the country round with the help of a large serpent, but at last the goddess of *Nellakotta Hill*, known to Europeans as the *Needle Rock*, which lies between *Edakalmala* and the *Nilgiris* and is about 20 miles distant from the former, determined to destroy the serpent and so give peace to the neighbourhood. So she sent her familiar *Kutti Chātan*, and he killed the serpent — as the sparrow killed cock-robin — with his bow and arrow. One of the arrows spent on this occasion is still shown as a long stone lying in a flat paddy field at the foot of the *Edakalmala*, which field is known as *Ambukuttivayal*, i. e., "the swamp where the arrow struck." In some way not now explainable, *Kutti Chātan* transferred his services to the goddess whose monster he had slain, and took up his residence with her on *Edakalmala*.

The Chetties above referred to must not be confounded with the well-known traders and money-lenders going under that name throughout Southern India. There is indeed a legend of their having come originally from *Tinnevely*, but it will suffice to mention here that their favourite pastime is tiger-spearing, in order to indicate the difference between them and the ordinary money-making Chetty of Southern India, the most timid of mankind, who never engages in any sport. In every house of these people is kept a piece of strong netting, several yards long and about six feet wide, and when a tiger, or even a panther, is known to be in the neighbourhood, every one brings out his piece of netting and by a concerted action the jungle around the beast is encircled with a wall of netting six feet high. The circle is gradually made smaller and the animal is eventually killed with spears thrust through the net. Like many another pastime this is closely associated with religion. Permission from their deity is obtained before commencing operations, and when the beast is slain it is hung up, stretched on a pole as if alive, as a sacrifice to him. No amount of money would induce the people to sell the skin of a tiger so slain.

In the last days of 1894, and again at the end of 1895 and the beginning of 1896, I paid visits to the Cave. During the first of these I merely took a few photographs and it was during



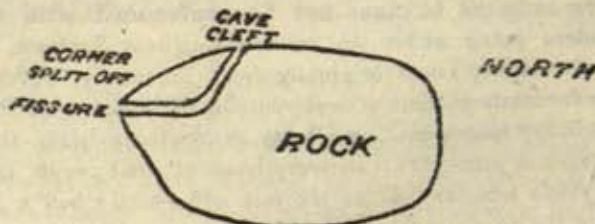
the latter that I was able to make the more detailed observations now published. At the first visit the floor of the Cave was found to be covered with a soft vegetable mould to the depth of several feet, which hid the lower portions of the carvings on its interior walls to such an extent as to make it evident that they must be uncovered before they could be usefully photographed. So, on the second occasion, having been duly provided with labour, I had the mould dug out so as to expose the whole of the carvings and make it possible to photograph them in their entirety. This was effected by myself in company with Mr. Colin Mackenzie, who kindly divided the labour with me.

There was an interesting and perhaps significant difficulty in obtaining the labour required on the spot. None of the Kurumbars of the neighbourhood would have anything to say to the Cave, appearing to hold it in some sort of reverence, which they seemed to wish to hide. They always expressed ignorance of its existence and could not be brought to approach it. No matter how hard pressed, and even when actually near it, they somehow or other avoided the approach. From anthropometric measurements<sup>1</sup> I should say that there are three distinct types of Kurumbars in this District, and it was noticed that they all had the same kind of regard for the Cave. Luckily the Paniyas, a totally distinct race of the hills, proved to have no reverence for the Cave, and from among them were found willing workmen to do the digging for us.

The best approach to the Cave is from the Eastern side of the hill through the Kuppamudi Coffee Estate. The whole crest is very rocky and is surmounted by an immense dome-like peak of solid rock. In approaching the Cave from the East one has to cross the ridge of the hill through a passage, which is a mere hole under a rock weighing perhaps a hundred tons, and so narrow that a stout man would find some difficulty in making the passage. Such a man would have to take a long walk to the Western slope and ascend the hill through the forest by a fairly stiff climb. Hindus have a strong objection to passing under the rock, as they believe that if they have committed certain sins it will fall upon them.

The Cave is situated on the Western slope of the crest of the hill, about fifty yards from the summit, and is not in the hill itself, but in an immense excrecent rock. It lies about N. E. and S. W., the entrance being from the N. E. The entrance is 6 feet to 7 feet high and 4 feet to 5 feet wide, and there is a descent of a few feet into the Cave.

The Edakal Cave is not a cave in the ordinary sense of the word. It is properly a cleft about 96 feet long and 20 to 22 feet wide in the rock, having a fissure a few inches wide at the inner end, leading for some 50 feet to the outer edge of the rock. It is in fact a fissure made by a corner of the rock splitting off from the main body from some natural cause. The depth of both the cleft and fissure is about 30 ft. Thus:—

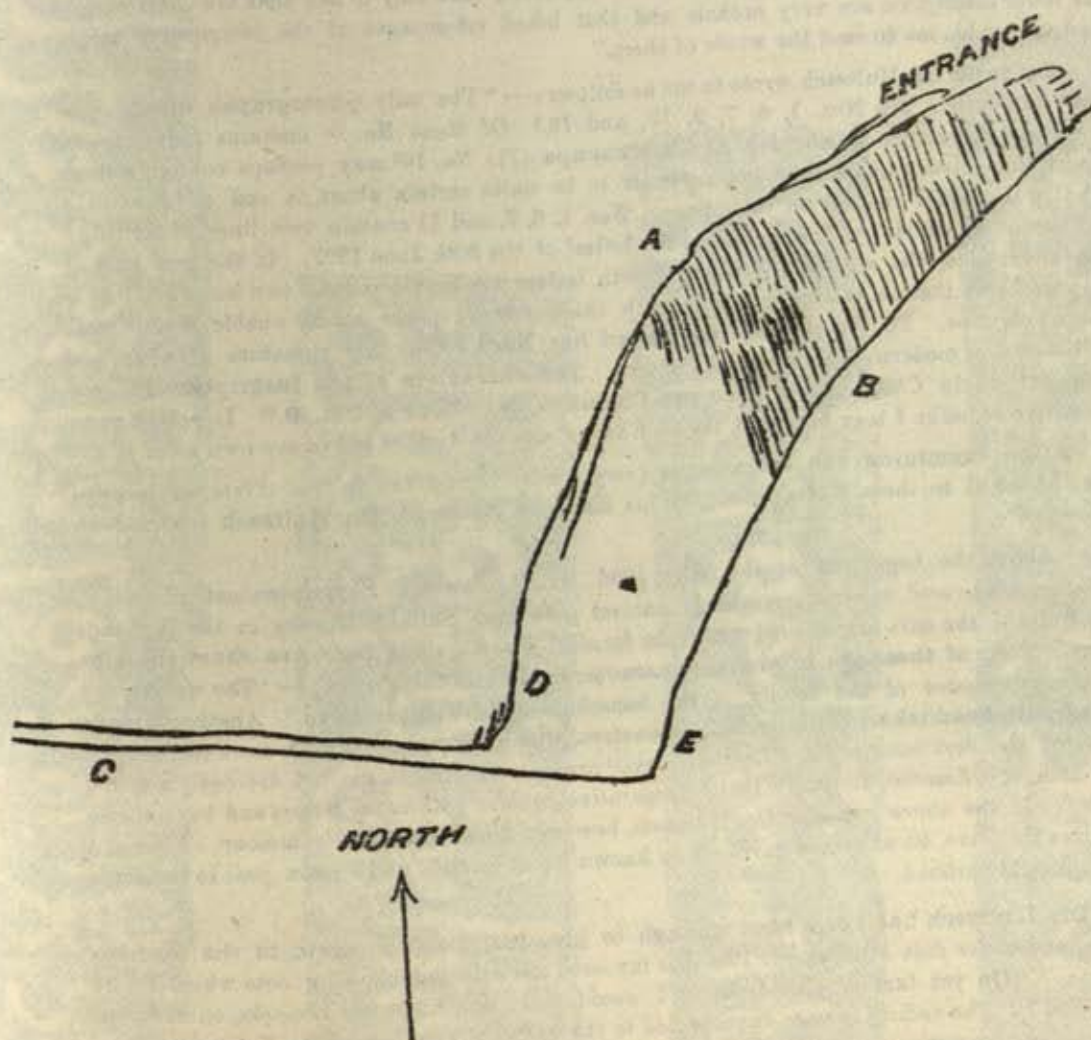


What makes it into a Cave to the ordinary observer is the fact that on the outer portion of the large cleft has fallen an enormous rock weighing several hundred tons so as to form a roof over a large piece of it. Between this roof-rock and the entrance have fallen smaller rocks, which have stuck in the cleft and so continued the roof right on to the entrance. The inner portion of the main cleft and the whole of the smaller one are more or less open to the sky.

<sup>1</sup> See my article "Notes on some of the People of Malabar," published in the *Madras Museum Bulletin, Anthropology*, Vol. III. No. 1.



On the top of the roof-rock is a large tree, some of the roots of which are to be seen in Plate II, Fig. 2. The following sketch will give the reader an idea of the general plan:—



In the sketch the shaded portion is the Cave, roofed in by the fallen rocks. The North wall A has been split off from the South wall B. From B to E and A to D there is an open space shaded by trees. C is the narrow fissure, through which at D is visible Kurumbāla, the Central Hill of the Wynaad, about 3,800 feet above the sea.

The rough sketch given in the folding plate attached, taken from the interior open portion, standing between E and D, and looking through to the entrance on the further side of the closed portion, will serve to explain the above account.

That portion of the floor of the Cave, which is under the natural roof, is flat, but the rest of it is somewhat rough, as many small rocks have fallen upon it from above.

The carvings are on the two walls of the Cave under the roof, and on the South wall of the open portion are some inscriptions and a few small figures and symbols. These inscriptions are in appearance much more modern than the old carvings on the walls of the Cave proper: not so carefully cut and not so deeply incised. Dr. Hultzsch has been good enough to examine my photographs of the inscriptions, and I give here his report regarding them in full. "The lower inscription" is in Sanskrit and reads 'Sri-Vishnuvarma-kutumbiya-kula-



**vardhdhanasya**; of the propagator of the family of the householder Sri-Vishṇuvarman.' What follows looks like **lirita**, which may be meant for **likhitam**, 'the writing.' I cannot make out the two short inscriptions in the first line. To this I have only to add that the characters of the lower inscription are very archaic and that inked estampages of the inscriptions might perhaps enable me to read the whole of them."

Later on Dr. Hultzsch wrote to me as follows:—"The only photographs which show traces of letters are Nos. 1, 6, 7, 9, 10, and 13.<sup>3</sup> Of these No. 9<sup>4</sup> contains four modern Kanarese characters which look like **Sridhapupa** (?); No. 10<sup>5</sup> may perhaps contain a short inscription in cave characters, but in order to be quite certain about it and to attempt a reading I should require an estampage. Nos. 1, 6, 7, and 13 contain two lines of writing,<sup>6</sup> the second of which was transcribed in my letter<sup>7</sup> of the 30th June 1897. In the first half of the upper line, the second, third and fourth letters are **lapuli** and the two last **kāri**. It is very probable that an estampage made with thick country paper would enable me to read the whole line. To the right of the second line No. 1 shows the signature of a certain C. Kaunan in modern Malayālam characters. The characters of the inscription in two lines are early Chalukya or even pre-Chalukya, say about 500 A. D." In reference to the above remarks I may note that the C. Kaunan was the work of one of my own men.

After examining the estampages (very kindly reproduced in the Plate of inscriptions attached to these Notes) made by his Kanarese Assistant, Dr. Hultzsch reported as follows: <sup>8</sup>—

"About the beginning of the year 1896 Mr. F. Fawcett, Superintendent of Police, Malabar, discovered a very remarkable natural cave near Sultan's Battery in the Wynaad. The walls of the cave are covered with rude fanciful drawings and bear five short inscriptions. Four of these are in archaic characters. One of them<sup>9</sup> runs:— 'The writing (?) of the propagator of the family of the householder Sri-Vishṇuvarman.' Another<sup>10</sup> reads **Palāmpulinānāntakāri** (?) in archaic characters, which are perhaps a little more recent than those of the first inscription. The two next<sup>11</sup> are unintelligible to me, but decidedly archaic. The fifth, if it deserves the name, is in comparatively modern Kanarese letters and begins with **Ścidē**." In the above remarks Dr. Hultzsch, however, does me too much honour. I did not discover the Cave, its existence having been known for at least 12 or 15 years past to residents in the neighbourhood.

Dr. Hultzsch has been kind enough to give his attention again to the inscriptions, and under date 5th October 1900 has favoured me with the following note which I here insert:—"On yet further consideration I would make the following remarks on inscription No. 1. The ending **varman** is restricted to the names of members of the Kshatriya caste. Hence Vishṇuvarman was probably a chief or king. Further, the inscription does not give the name of the person whose writing it professes to be. Accordingly I propose to correct it into:— '**Sri-Vishṇuvarmma**[**ṇaḥ**]\* **Kuṭumbiya-kula-var**[**d**]dhanasya li[kh]ita[m]\*'; the writing of the glorious Vishṇuvarman, the propagator (i. e., descendant) of the Kuṭumbiya family. The word Kuṭumbiya will now have to be taken as the proper name of Vishṇuvarman's family, while I had originally understood it to be a corruption of **kuṭumbin**, a householder. The inscription No. 2 is perhaps Tamil and meant for '**pal-puli tāṇ-antakāri**; he who himself has made an end of many tigers.' "

Excavations during the second visit were made all along the walls of the Cave to a depth of 3½ to 4 feet in order to uncover all the carvings. In addition a section was cut to a depth of 7 feet right across the Cave proper to ascertain if there were any traces, lying under the floor, of former habitation, such as tools, weapons, vessels, religious or other symbols. None were,

<sup>3</sup> Of these photographs Nos. 1, 6, 7 and 13 are represented by Plate I. Figs. 1 and 2, Plate II. Fig. 1: No. 9 by Plate VI. Fig. 2: No. 10 by Plate VI. Fig. 1.

<sup>4</sup> Plate VI. 2. <sup>5</sup> Plate VI. 1. <sup>6</sup> Plate I. 1 and 2, Plate II. 1. <sup>7</sup> Quoted in the preceding paragraph.

<sup>8</sup> Madras Government Orders Nos. 1062, 1063, Public, dated 10th August 1897, paragraph 14.

<sup>9</sup> Plate I. Figs. 1 and 2, and Plate II. Fig. 1.

<sup>10</sup> Plate I. Fig. 1, top line, and Plate II. Fig. 1.

<sup>11</sup> Plate I. Fig. 2, top, right = Plate II. Fig. 1, top, right; Plate VI. Fig. 1.





No. 2.



No. 3.



No. 4.



SCALE ONE-NINTH.

W. GRIGGS, PHOTO-LITH.

E. HULTZSCH.



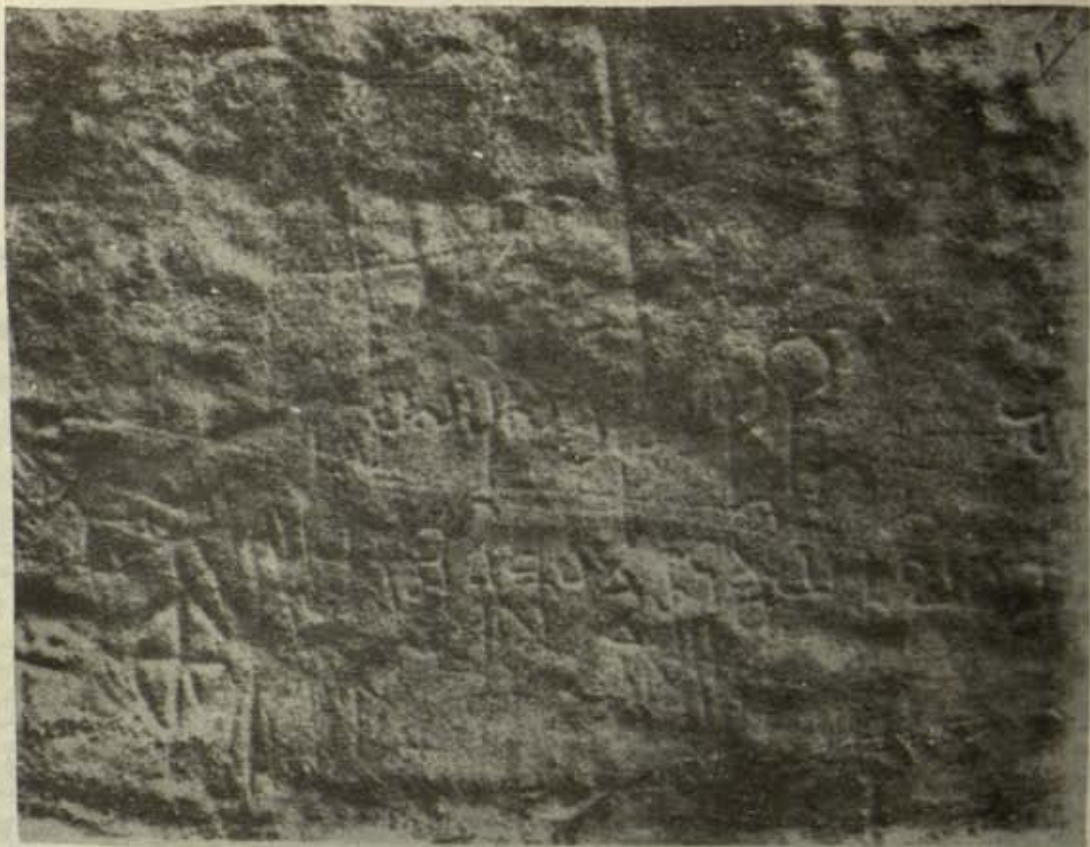


Plate I. Fig. 2.





however, found. There was, in fact, nothing whatever found in the soft, fine vegetable mould of the floor, and at 7 feet we came to fragments of broken rock, whereon we stopped work.

The presence of the mould on the floor underneath the roof-rock gives indications of an apparently great age for the carvings on the walls, for it is four feet deep, and can only have come in from the top through the interstices in the rocks. It was certainly not brought in through the entrance, a fact of which we satisfied ourselves on the spot. Now as the rainfall here is not more than 70 inches per annum, the mould must have taken a long time to accumulate to a depth of four feet, and the whole accumulation must have taken place after the rock carvings had been completed and indeed after the place had been abandoned.

Unfortunately, I was unable to take all the photographs of the carvings on the same scale, because this was not possible without first emptying the Cave of its floor of mould, an obviously impossible course for such an object. Also, as may be easily understood, the photographs were taken under great difficulties of light and position. Indeed, in the Cave proper the exposures ranged from 20 to 45 minutes, and artificial light was for obvious reasons out of the question. However, in other respects the time of year chosen was the most favourable for taking the photographs. At any other season than the few weeks immediately before or after Christmas one runs a great risk of rain and fever on this hill-top, and would also have a less favourable light for photography, as it is only at this particular time of year that the sun shines into the Cave through the S. W. opening overhead and gives anything approaching a reasonable light throughout it. But then again the days are then short, as we found to our cost, for we were unable, owing to failing light, to photograph the whole of the objects. Nevertheless, the portion omitted was not of any importance in comparison with that of which we secured a representation.

The carvings clearly represent human and animal figures and objects for human use and symbols, but they so run into each other and are so closely placed together that it takes a protracted and close study to make anything of them. The most interesting features of the sculptures are the frequent human figures with a peculiar head-dress. (See nearly all the plates.)

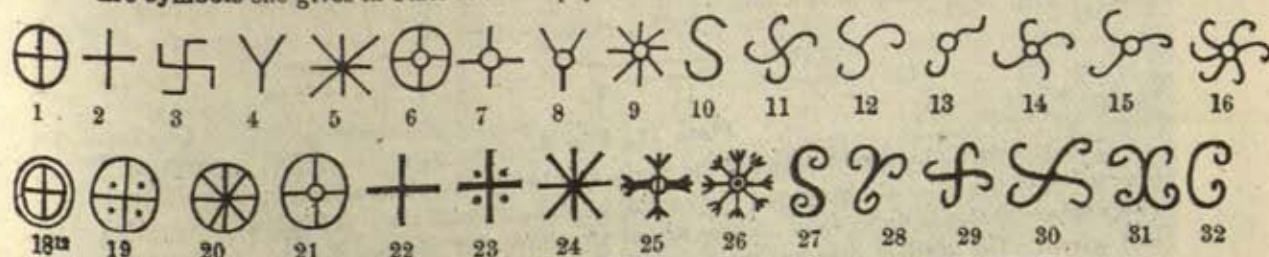
There are several rather indistinct figures of animals. The usual Indian symbols are of frequent occurrence, e. g., the *swastika* in various forms on most of the Plates, and specimens of the familiar circular "sun-symbols." There is evidence also of some magic squares, such as one is familiar with in all Oriental fortune-telling. No doubt such things would be introduced as protecting charms, just as in modern times we see them used everywhere in India.

For the better information of the reader all the recognised figures and symbols have been picked out and reproduced as separate sketches. The clearest way will be to examine each Plate and figure separately with the help of the skeleton sketches given below.

Plate I., Fig. 1.

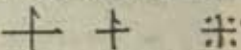
This is from a photograph taken before the excavations and shows some of the inscriptions on the South wall together with some symbols.

The symbols are what are usually known as the "sun and fire symbols," *vide* the late Mrs. Murray-Ainslie's papers on Asiatic Symbolism, *ante*, Vol. XV. pp. 61 ff., 89 ff., 117 ff., 217 ff., 258 ff., 321 ff. It will further the present enquiry to repeat here the 32 sun and fire symbols she gives in Plate I. of her paper, *ante*, Vol. XV. p. 66.



<sup>17</sup> No. 17 is not reproduced here.



The whole of these may be taken to be developments in various directions of the cross, and for Indian investigations of the *swastika*. The specimens in this figure are 

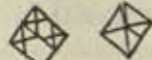
There are also two magic squares 

Plate I., Fig. 2.




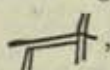

This fig. is a continuation of the inscriptions in fig. 1. It contains one symbol of the *swastika* type 

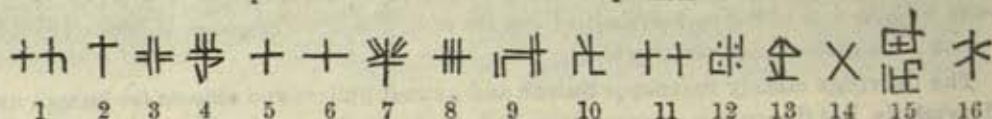
Plate II., Fig. 1.

This figure gives the whole of the inscriptions shown in part in Plate I. The photograph was taken after the excavations. It is much more fruitful in symbols than the previous Figs.

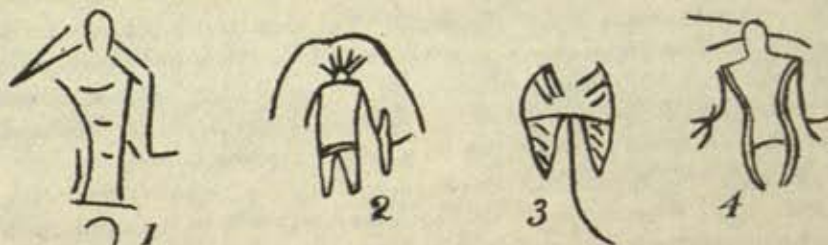
There are two good instances of magic squares 

There are also at the bottom of Fig. 1 two figures of animals which may be taken to be deer or dogs  , and another close by the magic square .

The *swastika* turns up in 16 different forms of "sun-symbols":—



We also here begin to see those human figures which are of such interest. In this Fig. there are four specimens.



Of the above, Nos. 1 and 4 I take to be women. No. 3 shows the lower limbs clad in the fashion of South India in the present day. No. 2 appears to be a man with a feathered head-dress carrying a bow or some such weapon. Assuming the weapon to be a bow, it may be conjectured that possibly the artists of the drawings were ancestors of the present Mollu Kurumbars of the neighbourhood—Vêdas as they sometimes call themselves.

There is also a childish representation of an animal that may be a dog or any animal of the chase one may fix upon. In Plate V., fig. 2, it turns up again in a different light with another that may be taken to be a deer.

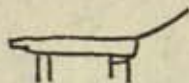


Plate II., Fig. 2.

This is from a photograph taken of the South wall before the excavations, giving a clear impression of the general appearance of the wall in sunlight with the tree shadows across it. The whole wall stands up in relief and the actual appearance of the carvings to the eye are well given. The method does not, however, lend itself to investigation and the carvings are repeated in the next Plate (III., fig. 1).





Plate II. Fig. 2.







Plate III. Fig. 2.

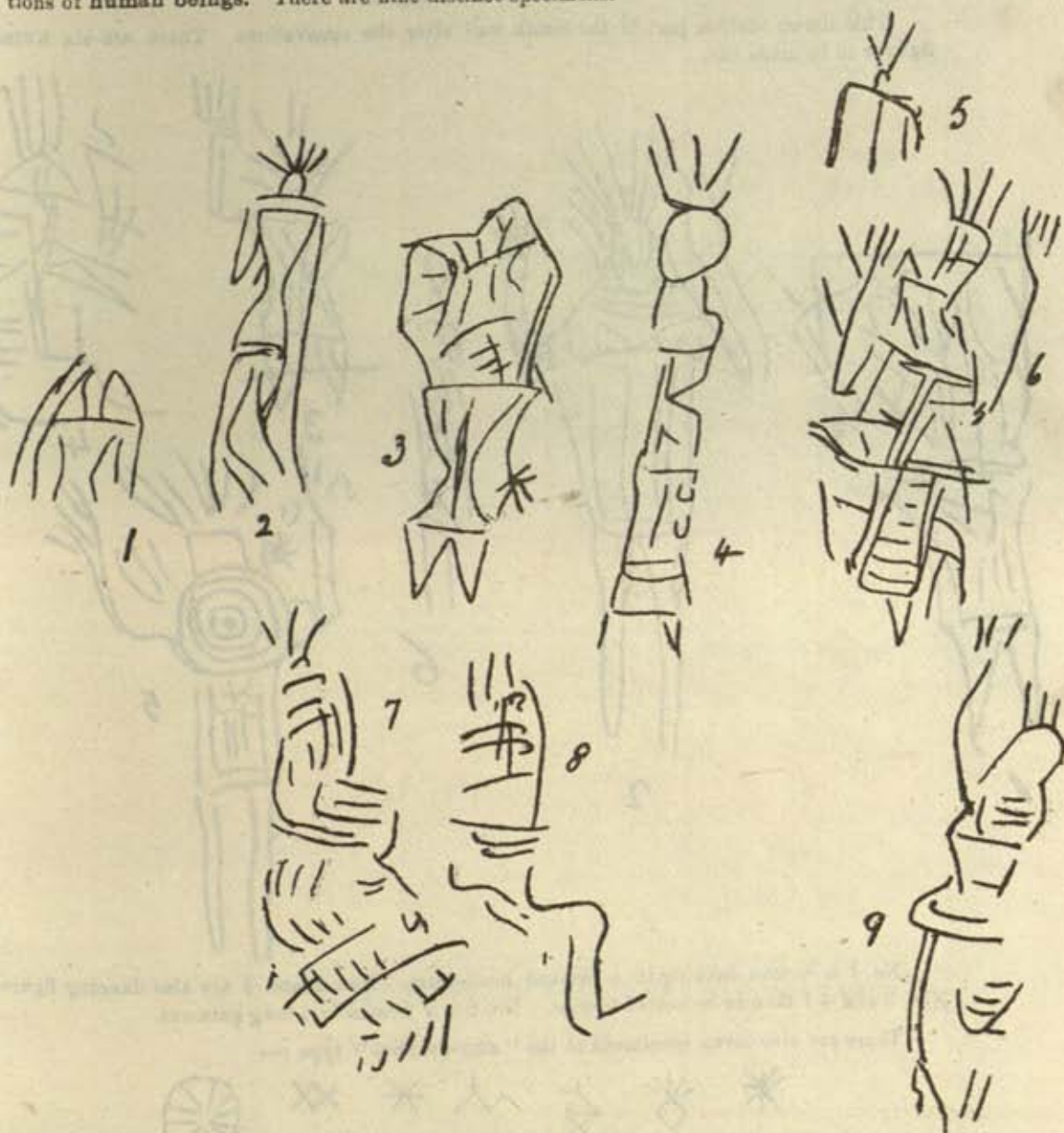




It will be sufficient to say that of the figures explained under Plate III., fig. 1, Nos. 2 and 4 come out more naturally and clearly in this plate, but No. 5 does not show truly at all and looks like a *swastika*.

Plate III., Fig. 1.

This repeats the last fig. and is from a photograph taken after the excavations. It was so taken as to show the carvings in their entirety. The interest in this Plate lies in the representations of human beings. There are nine distinct specimens.



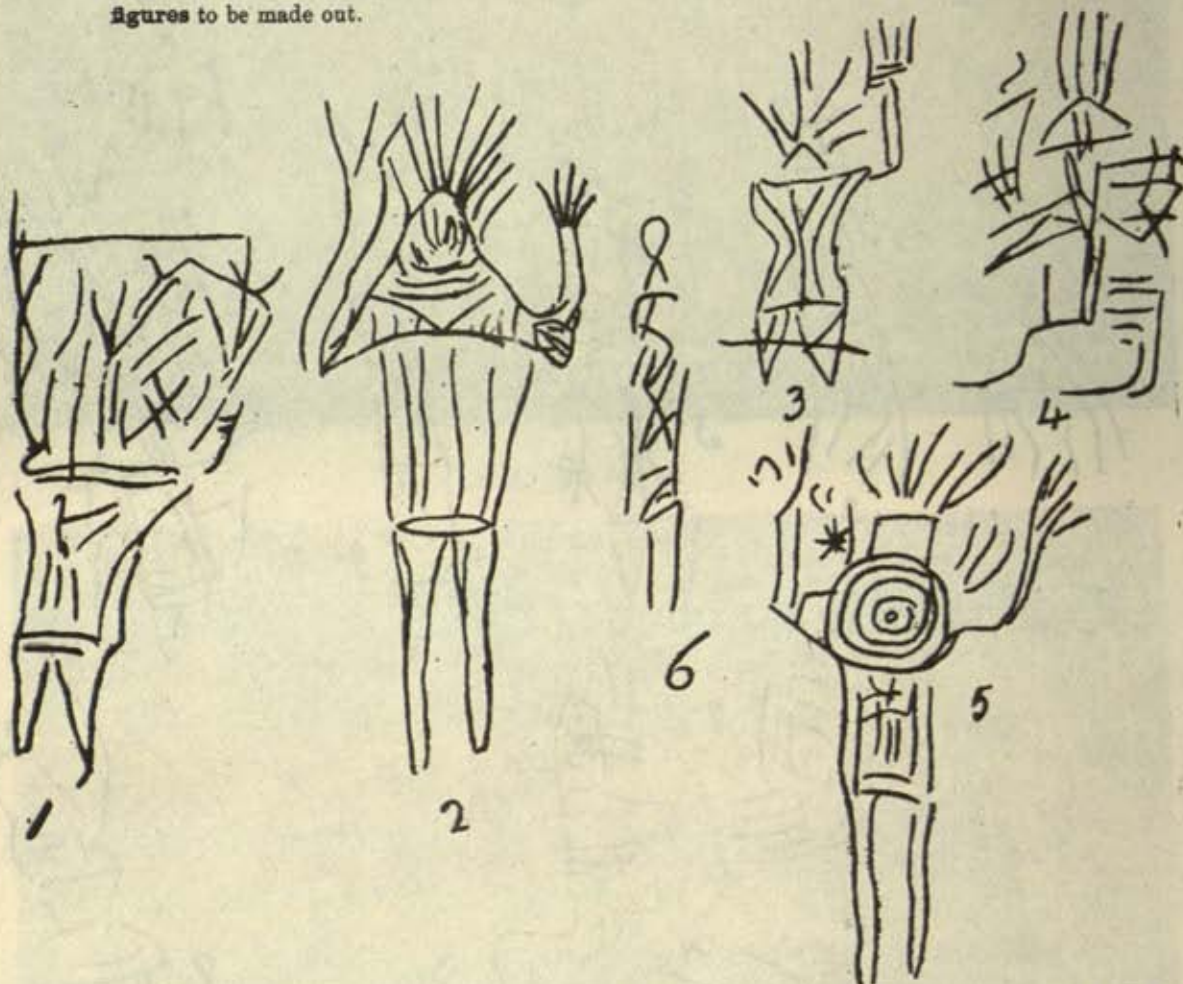
Nos. 1 and 2 I take to be women. Nos. 3, 4, 6, and 9 I take to be men dancing in masks or masked head-dresses. No. 5 is an outline figure high up on the wall. Nos. 7 and 8 seem to be persons seated. The head-dresses, the masks, the dancers and the seated figures may represent an ancient "devil-dance" of the country, much as it is still conducted among the



Taluvas of the neighbouring Districts to the Northward,<sup>12</sup> and throughout Southern India, but especially in Tinnevely. All this gives force to another conjecture as to the identity of the cave carvers that may well be made. A conjecture that is supported by the distinct cincture round the loins of the female figure and its very narrow waist. In fact the carvings may be merely the work of any one of the "devil"-worshipping castes or tribes of the neighbourhood in a past more or less — probably more — remote.

Plate III., Fig. 2.

This shows another part of the South wall after the excavations. There are six human figures to be made out.



No. 1 is a man dancing in a masked head-dress. Nos. 2 and 5 are also dancing figures. Nos. 3 and 4 I take to be seated figures. No. 6 is a woman in a long garment.

There are also seven specimens of the "sun-symbol" type:—

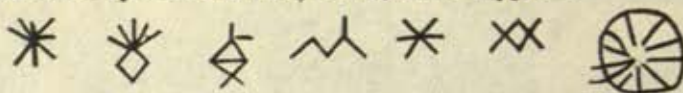


Plate IV., Fig. 1.

This is a photograph of the darkest part of the Cave. It represents part of the Southern wall. The photograph has been taken too close for making out the figures. The human

<sup>12</sup> *Vide Ind. Ant.* Vols. XXIII., XXIV., XXV. and XXVI. and especially the Plates facing Vol. XXIII. pp. 12, 38, 186; Vol. XXIV. p. 229.



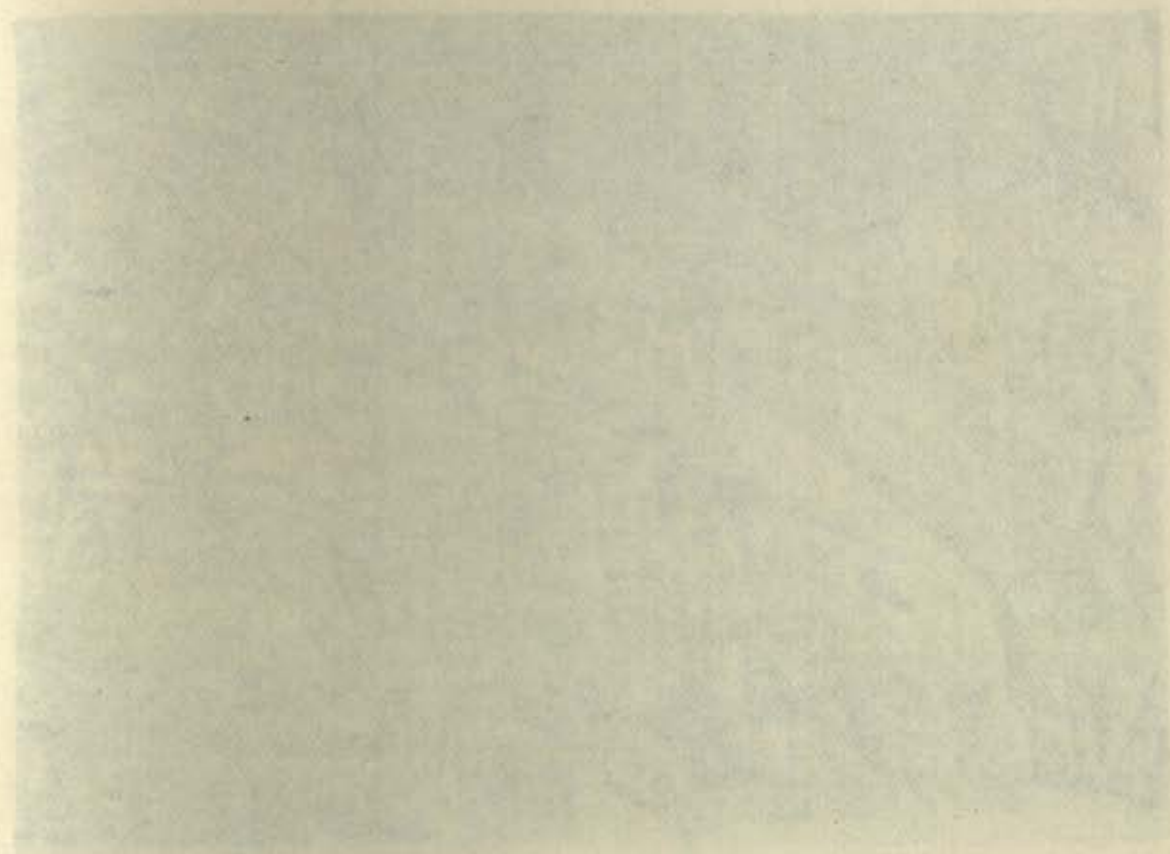
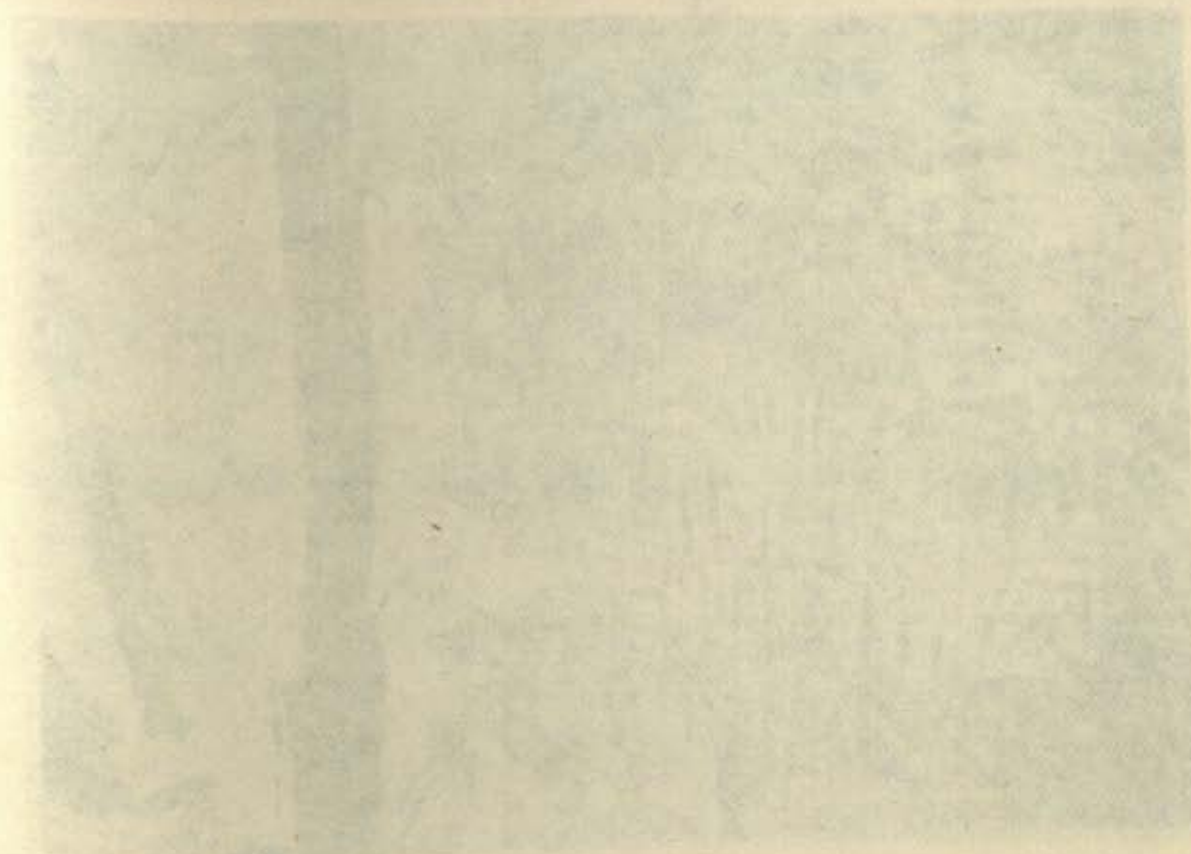


PLATE IV





Edakal Cave, Plate IV. Fig. 1.



Plate IV. Fig. 2.



F. FAWCETT, PHOTO.

NO SCALE.

W. GRIGGS, PHOTO-LITHO.



figure given below can, however, be made out on the analogy of those in the previous Plates.



Plate IV., Fig. 2.

This repeats the outer portion of the preceding Fig. in a better light. In it is to be seen the human figure just mentioned, which can now be seen to be that of a man fully clothed carrying a palm branch. Next it is the representation of a figure with a masked head-dress, dancing (No. 2). Higher up is a very primitive form of the female type already seen (No. 3).

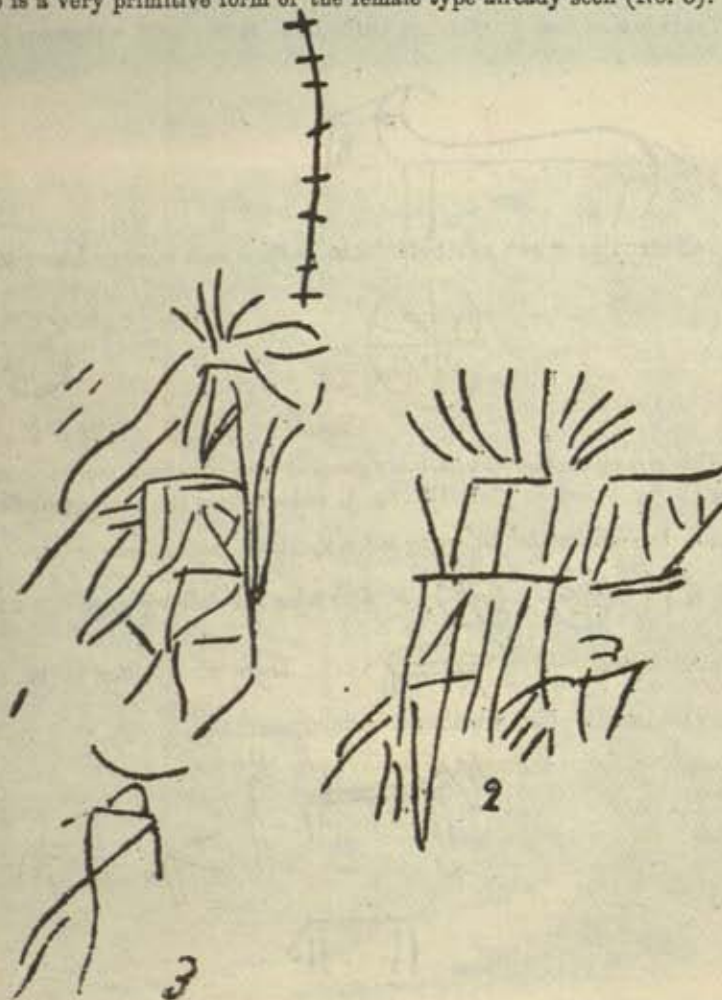
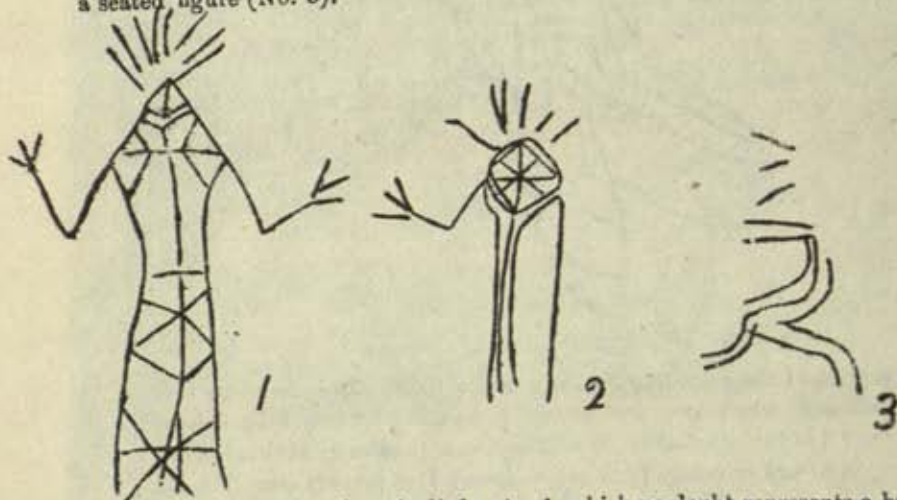




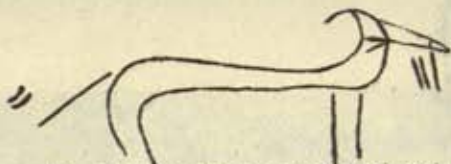
Plate V., Fig. 1.

This is from a very dark photograph of the North wall. On it, however, the following symbols appear: — 卩 人 十 \* 8 .

There are two clear **masked dancers**, Nos. 1 and 2, and signs of what may be meant for a seated figure (No. 3).



There is a curious long-bodied animal, which no doubt represents a hunting dog: —

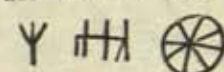


The circular "sun-symbols" again appear in a more or less distinct form: —



Plate V., Fig. 2.

This is a more distant and more general view of the same carvings as appear in part in Plate II., fig. 1, and in Plate III., fig. 1, and contains the same symbols and figures, human and animal. In addition the following seven symbols can be made out: — 卩 人 十 \* 卩



And also the following additional animal, which may be taken as a deer: —



There are further to be made out in the shadow several animals which are almost certainly deer: —

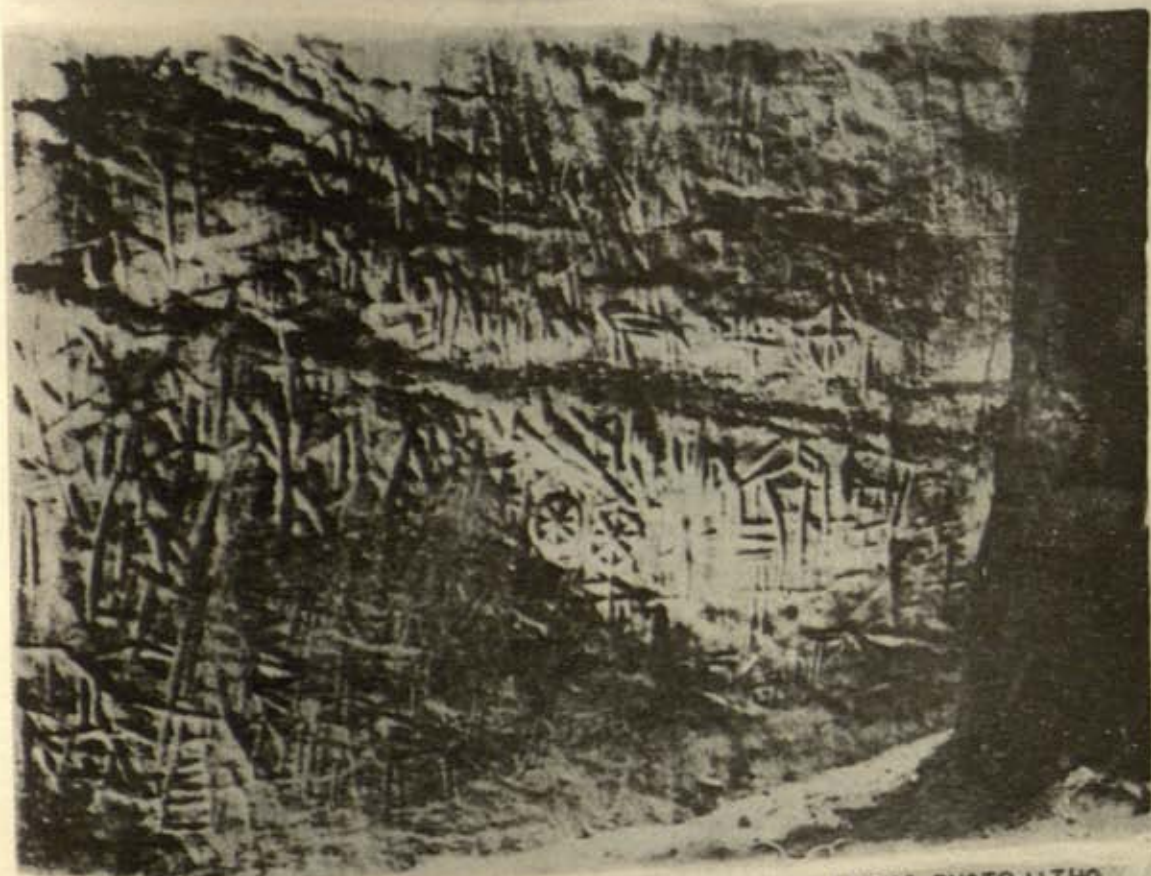




Edakal Cave, Plate V. Fig. 1.



Plate V. Fig. 2.





Edakal Cave, Plate VI. Fig. 1.





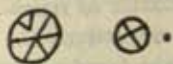
Plate VI. Fig. 2.





Plate VI., Fig. 1.

This is rather too near a view of the North wall, showing an inscription. In it are to be seen two forms of the *swastika* + , and one magic square , and two "sun-symbols"



There are at least eight human figures: Nos. 1, 3, 4, and 5, I take to be women, Nos. 2, 6, 7, and 8 to be masked dancers.

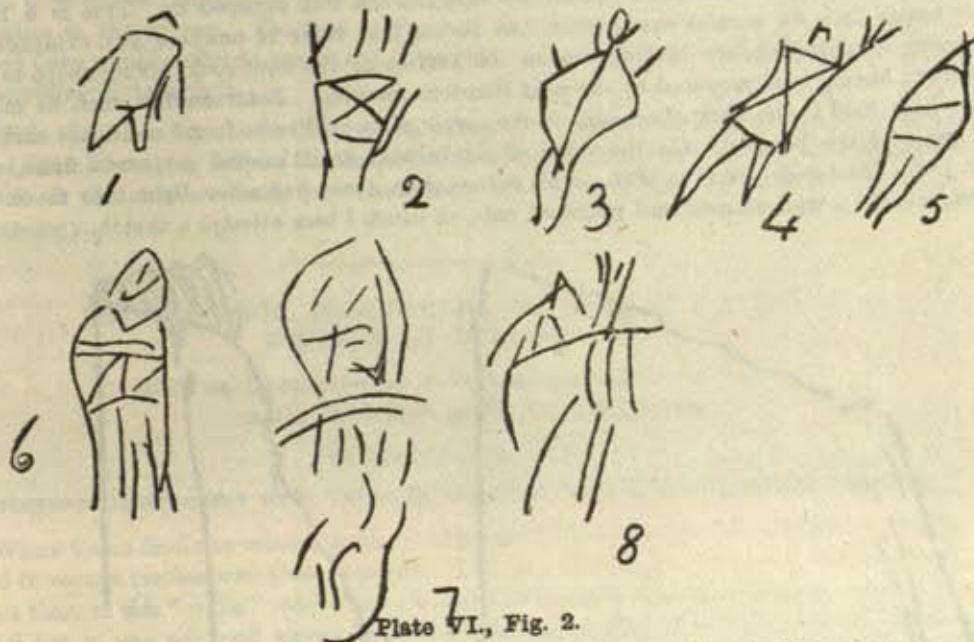


Plate VI., Fig. 2.

This also represents the North wall. It contains four figures of masked dancers.

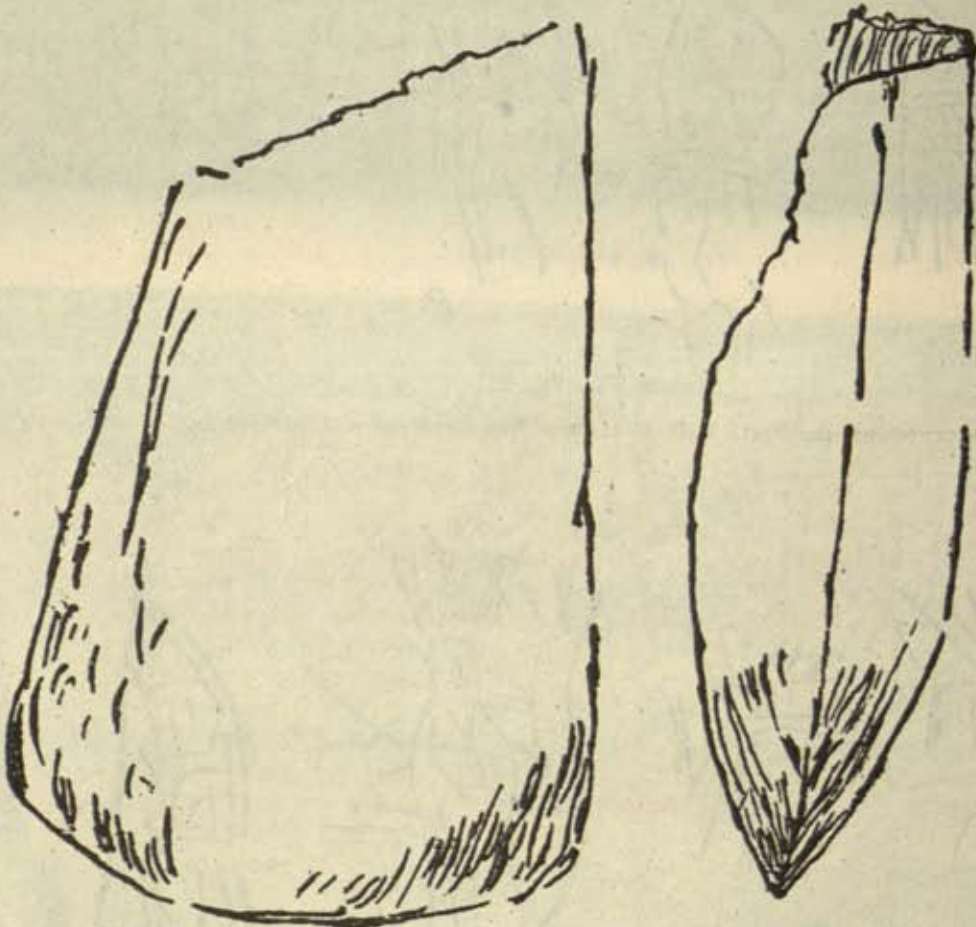


And two "sun-symbols"



The above somewhat minute examination of the Plates brings out the following points on the subject of the correct method of reproducing these carvings. It is of little use for any but a preliminary examination of such things to reproduce them by direct photography. The difficulties of getting the camera into a proper position and the tricks played by the light on the carvings preclude all hope of accurate representation. Just as in the matter of reproducing inscriptions so as to make them properly legible, it is necessary to reproduce the carvings by ink estampages and then by carefully taken photographs on a greatly reduced scale, but accurately to scale nevertheless.

Mr. Bruce Foote points out to me that the figures and other carvings on the walls of the Edakal Cave have not been cut out or chipped out but scraped in. This is a most interesting fact, for careful examination has shown that there is nowhere any evidence of chipping or chiselling, the indentations in the surface of the hard rock, giving shape to the carvings, having been produced by the most laborious scraping. Instruments such as might have been used in the work of scraping in the carvings are still to be found under the earth in all parts of the Wynaad. On the ridge of Edakalmala itself I found a quartz flake, and Mr. Colin Mackenzie found in 1890, on his coffee estate, about five miles distant to the S. E., a fragment of a well-shaped and polished celt, of which I here attempt a sketch.



Thus far as to the immediate neighbourhood. In the same region and in spots not far distant I have found pieces of worked quartz in small stone cists, containing, within earthen jars, remains, which are probably human, together with iron and other things. There is in my mind no doubt as to genuineness of the worked quartz specimens and I have the support in this opinion of Mr. J. Allen Brown and Mr. Bruce Foote. Further evidence of the presumable



makers of the carvings are to be found in numerous stone circles, marking the East, situated to the West of the Edakalmala. I suspect that they contain human remains. Their proximity to the Cave gives them a special interest in the present connection, and I much regret that my official avocations prevented me from making an examination of them with a view to establishing their connection or otherwise with the carvings in the Cave.

The curious reluctance of the Kurumbars to approach the Cave, combined with the simultaneous want of reverence for it both on the part of the Paniyas and the local Hindus, who are, however, very small in numbers and not long resident in the Wynsad, might tempt one to hazard the theory as to the carvings being the handiwork of Kurumbars of a by-gone day. It should, however, be remembered that the Paniya is a particularly fearless individual, while the Kurumbar is the reverse. The mere existence of the mysterious carvings in the silent unfrequented Cave would suffice to inspire the Kurumbar with a kind of awe and make him afraid to have anything to do with it.

With these remarks as to the possible makers of the curious scraped rock-pictures in the Edakal Cave I leave my subject for the present, satisfied with having been able to draw public attention to what may eventually prove to be a point of value to the student of South Indian anthropology.

# LETTERS FROM PORTUGUESE CAPTIVES IN CANTON, WRITTEN IN 1534 AND 1536.

*With an Introduction on Portuguese Intercourse with China  
in the First Half of the Sixteenth Century.*

BY DONALD FERGUSON.

## Portuguese Intercourse with China in the First Half of the Sixteenth Century.

WHEN Vasco da Gama reached India in 1498, the Chinese had for many years previously ceased to voyage further west than Sumatra. The first Portuguese visitors to Calicut heard rumors there of this "white" race of people that had formerly carried on a regular trade with India;<sup>1</sup> but it was not until eleven years later that representatives of the most westerly and most easterly countries of the great Eurasian continent actually met. When Diogo Lopes de Sequeira sailed from Lisbon on 13th February 1508, to "discover" Malacca, he carried with him a lengthy set of instructions from the king Dom Manoel, one of which was as follows<sup>2</sup>:—

Item.—You shall ask after the Chijns, and from what part they come, and from how far, and at what times they come to Mallaca, or to the places at which they trade, and the merchandise that they bring, and how many ships of them come each year, and regarding the fashions of their ships, and if they return in the year in which they come, and if they have factors or houses in Mallaca or in any other country, and if they are wealthy merchants, and if they are weak men or warriors, and if they have arms or artillery, and what clothes they wear, and if they are men great in body, and all other information concerning them, and if they are Christians or heathens, or if their country is a great one, and if they have more than one king amongst them, and if there live amongst them Moors or any other people that do not live in their law or faith, and, if they are not Christians, in what they believe or what they adore, and what customs they observe, and towards what part their country extends, and with whom they confine.

<sup>1</sup> See *A Journal of the First Voyage of Vasco da Gama* (Hak. Soc.), p. 181.

<sup>2</sup> See *Alguns Documentos do Archivo Nacional, etc.* (Lisbon, 1892), pp. 194-195; *Annaes Maritimos e Coloniaes*, Ser. 3 (1843), p. 490.



On arriving at Malacca on 11th September 1509 Diogo Lopes found lying there three or four junks of Chinese, with whom the Portuguese seem at once to have got on friendly terms; but an opportunity for carrying out the king's orders did not offer itself, owing to the hostility of the Malays; and Diogo Lopes was obliged to return to Portugal in 1510 with this part of his commission unfulfilled.

When, on 1st July 1511, the Great Affonso de Albuquerque anchored off Malacca with his fleet, he found there five junks of Chinese, who proved as friendly to the Portuguese as those met with two years previously had been. In fact, their captains offered their assistance to the Portuguese commander in his attack on the city of Malacca;<sup>3</sup> and were of great help in conveying Albuquerque's envoys to and from Siam; and also carried back with them to China a very favourable report of the character and prowess of the Lusitanians.<sup>4</sup> The immediate result of this was, that the uncle of the fugitive king of Malacca, whom the latter had sent as ambassador to the king of China to beg him for help against the Portuguese, was put off with excuses, and ultimately died with the object of his mission unaccomplished.<sup>5</sup> Albuquerque, while sending ambassadors to Siam and elsewhere, for some reason abstained from sending any Portuguese expedition to "discover" China.<sup>6</sup>

The two years that followed Albuquerque's departure from Malacca were occupied with almost continual fighting and unrest; but in 1514 there was an interval of comparative quiet, and advantage appears to have been taken by the new governor of Malacca, Jorge de Albuquerque, to dispatch a pioneer expedition to China.<sup>7</sup> Regarding this first visit of the Portuguese to China we have scarcely any details, the Portuguese historians being almost silent on the subject. Barros is the only one of those that mentions the visit, and he does so casually,<sup>8</sup> after chronicling the arrival at Canton, in June 1521, of Duarte Coelho in a junk from Malacca, when the Portuguese were being dangerously threatened by a Chinese fleet. Duarte Coelho, he tells us, was induced to stop and help his compatriots "principally for love of Jorge Alvares, who was a great friend of his, who was so weak, that eleven days after the arrival of this Duarte Coelho he died, and was buried at the foot of a *padrão* of stone with the arms of this kingdom,<sup>9</sup> which he the same Jorge Alvares placed there a year before Rafael Perestrello<sup>10</sup> went to those parts;

<sup>3</sup> *Commentaries of Afonso Dalboquerque* (Hak. Soc.), III. p. 98.

<sup>4</sup> *Ibid.* III. pp. 114, 152 ff.

<sup>5</sup> *Ibid.* III. pp. 131-134. (Cf. also esp. xc. of Mendes Pinto's *Peregrinação*.)

<sup>6</sup> Barros (*Dec.* III., II. vi.), says that Albuquerque, while at Malacca, sent "messengers" to China, among other places. Perhaps he refers to the Chinese mentioned above. In the *Cartas de Afonso de Albuquerque*, tom. I., are the following references to the Chinese:—On p. 433, in the *Summary das Cartas*, etc. (written before 1511), we read: "Item: that men whom he sends in the ships of Malacca go to the Chyna." On p. 64, in a letter to the king, dated 1st April 1512, giving a detailed account of his expedition to Malacca, Albuquerque mentions having taken from a Javanese pilot a large map with the names of places in Malay characters, which map, unhappily, was lost in the *Flor de la Mar*. However, a tracing had been made of a portion, which tracing he sends to Dom Manoel, showing, *inter alia*, "the navigation of the China" (but not China itself apparently). On p. 75, in a letter dated 20th August 1512, Albuquerque, after referring to the three kinds of silk,—from Ormuz, Sumatra, and China,—proceeds:—"A sample of all three is sent to your highness; that which your highness shall be most pleased with and by which most profit shall be made there, as great a quantity thereof as you desire shall be sent to you, because your troop-ships, which if it please your highness shall each year go laden with pepper from Malabar to the China, shall bring no other merchandize but silk, gold and rhubarb, for the junks of Malacca are already mixed up with China, and go there and come, and it is not such a long navigation as they make you think there, but is a very short journey, only these enemies of the faith always delight in obscuring all the riches of India." Lastly, on p. 138, in a letter dated 30th November 1513, Albuquerque tells the king that "the China are servants of your highness and our friends."

<sup>7</sup> Birdwood (*Report on the Old Records in the India Office*, p. 168) says:—"In 1508 the island of Socotra was taken, and the island of Sumatra first visited; as also was China in 1508-9, the date of the first discovery of that country, from the sea, by Europeans." I do not know what is Birdwood's authority for this latter date, which is certainly wrong.

<sup>8</sup> *Dec.* III., VI. ii.

<sup>9</sup> This stone pillar is referred to in the letter of Cristovão Vieyra given below (f. 106v.). Regarding these *padrões* see *Journ. of First Voy. of Vasco da Gama* (Hak. Soc.), p. 169. None of these memorial stones erected by order of Dom Manoel in newly discovered countries has lasted to modern times.

<sup>10</sup> Regarding this man and his visit to China see *infra*. Burton (*Camoens: Life and Lusitana*, IV. p. 540), with characteristic rashness, asserts: "The 'Middle Kingdom' . . . was opened by Perestrello (1511-12), who first conducted a ship to China under a European flag." Other writers on China have fallen into the same error.



in which year that he was there, he buried a son of his, who had died. And although that region of idolatry consumes his body, yet since for the honor of his fatherland he set up at the ends of the earth that *padrão* of his discoveries, the memory of his sepulture shall not decay, so long as this our writing shall endure."

The earliest contemporary writer who refers to this visit of the Portuguese to China is the Italian Andrea Corsali,<sup>11</sup> who, in his letter to Duke Giuliano de Medici, dated 6th January 1515, says<sup>12</sup> :—

The merchants of the land of China also make voyages to Malacca across the Great Gulf to get cargoes of spices, and bring from their own country musk, rhubarb, pearls, tin, porcelain, and silk and wrought stuffs of all kinds, such as damasks, satins, and brocades of extraordinary richness. For they are people of great skill, and on a par with ourselves (*di nostra qualità*), but of uglier aspect, with little bits of eyes. They dress very much after our fashion, and wear shoes and stockings (*i scarpe e calciamentoi*) like ourselves. I believe them to be pagans though many allege that they hold our faith or some part of it. During this last year some of our Portuguese made a voyage to China. They were not permitted to land; for they say 'tis against their custom to let foreigners enter their dwellings. But they sold their goods at a great gain, and they say there is as great profit in taking spices to China as in taking them to Portugal; for 'tis a cold country and they make great use of them. It will be five hundred leagues from Malacca to China, sailing north.

This pioneer voyage is also referred to by another of the Italians then in the Portuguese service, Giovanni da Empoli,<sup>13</sup> who, writing from Cochín on 15th November 1515, says<sup>14</sup> :—

From Malacca have come ships and junks . . . . They have also discovered China, where men of ours have been who are staying here: which is the greatest wealth that there can be in the world. The confines reach to High Tartary, and are called Balascia.<sup>15</sup> They are all white people like ourselves; they dress like Germans with all their fashions of garments, such as fur-lined caps and jerkins. There are inclosed lands like ours, and houses of stones like ours: they have great order and law, and are very friendly towards us. The country abounds with all fine white silk, and it costs thirty cruzados the *cantaro*; damasks of sixteen good pieces, at five hundred reals the piece; satins, brocades, musk at half a ducat the ounce, and less. Many pearls of all sorts in great abundance; and many caps, so that from there to here there is made on them a profit of thirty to one. There come from there amazing things; and to tell the truth, I relate to you nothing of what there is there. The ships bring spices from there; so that every year there comes from Zamatra some sixty thousand *cantara* of pepper; and from Coccin and the land of Mallibari fifteen to twenty thousand *cantara* of pepper alone: it is worth fifteen or even twenty ducats the *cantaro*. In like manner, ginger, mace, nutmeg, incense, aloes, velvet, our gold thread, coral, woollen cloths, robes. There come from there *somedrom*,<sup>16</sup> cloths like ours, much white alum, and good vermilion: many horses and large carts are in their country. Everything is sold by weight, both merchandize and provisions, and live and dead animals; all by weight. They have many grains: the great things are so many that come from there, that they are amazing; so that if I do not die, I

<sup>11</sup> Yule, *Cathay and the Way thither* (Hak. Soc.), I. p. cxli., was the first to draw attention to this fact.

<sup>12</sup> I quote Yule's translation as given in *loc. cit.*

<sup>13</sup> Regarding whom, see *Archivio Storico Italiano*, App., III. pp. 2-21.

<sup>14</sup> *Arch. Stor. Ital.*, App., III. pp. 85-87. Compare with this account the wonderfully accurate description of China (from hearsay) given by Duarte Barbosa (*Coasts of East Africa and Malabar*, Hak. Soc., pp. 204-207).

<sup>15</sup> Badakshan.

<sup>16</sup> I cannot explain this word, which is probably a copyist's error.



hope before I leave here to take a leap thither to see the Grand Khan, who is the king, who is called the king of Cathay; for by land one makes a journey of three months on horseback, all along a river,<sup>17</sup> as is the Rhine, crowded here and there with populous towns and cities, at the end of which one arrives at Zeiton,<sup>18</sup> which is the said king's who resides there.<sup>19</sup>

This year there will go ambassadors<sup>20</sup> to the king with presents<sup>21</sup> of value, and I hope to send thither a quantity of pepper and other things; and the result of all you shall know.

The writer of the above had recently arrived in India in the fleet of the new viceroy, Lopo Soares de Albergaria, which, sailing from Lisbon on 7th April 1515, included among its company, according to Barros,<sup>22</sup> "Simão d'Alcaçova, son of Pero d'Alcaçova, in a ship of private owners for China, of which Fernão Peres d'Andrade,<sup>23</sup> who went with Lopo Soares, was to go as captain-major of this China voyage, and with him Jorge Mascarenhas, son of João Gonçalves Montans, and Joannes Impole, a merchant. To whom Lopo Soares was to give ships in India for Fernão Peres to make this discovery of the country of China." Before this expedition under Fernão Peres de Andrade reached India, however, another man of Italian origin in the Portuguese service, Rafael Perestrello,<sup>24</sup> had made a successful voyage to China.

His brother, Bertolameu Perestrello, having been appointed<sup>25</sup> by Affonso de Albuquerque factor of Malacca, Rafael had accompanied him with orders "to discover China." It was not until after his brother's death in 1515, however, that he was able to undertake the voyage,<sup>26</sup> which he accomplished in a junk belonging to a native merchant at Malacca named Pulate, taking with him a number of Portuguese.<sup>27</sup> We have no details of this visit; but we are told that when Fernão Peres was at Malacca in July 1516 anxiety was being felt there regarding Perestrello and his companions, who, it was feared, had been detained as prisoners in China. A few weeks afterwards, however, anxiety was changed to envy, for the junk returned to Malacca carrying a rich cargo, on which a profit of twenty to one was made. The welcome information was also brought, "that the Chins desired peace and friendship with the Portuguese, and that they were a very good people."<sup>28</sup>

Fernão Peres de Andrade left Cochin in April<sup>29</sup> 1516, and arrived at the port of Pasai in Sumatra, where he found Giovanni da Empoli, who had preceded him, lading his ship with pepper for China, in company with some Portuguese in junks from Malacca. Unfortunately, by some carelessness or treachery, Empoli's ship took fire, and the whole of the cargo in the hold was destroyed. Fernão Peres, seeing that by this disaster his projected voyage to China would bring much less profit than he had hoped for, resolved to postpone it, and meanwhile to visit Bengal, the "discovery" of which had also been intrusted to him by Dom Manoel. Therefore, after entering into an agreement with the "king" of Pasai for the establishment of a Portuguese factory at that port for the loading of pepper for China, he left for Malacca, where he

<sup>17</sup> The Yangtze and the Grand Canal probably.

<sup>18</sup> Chwanchau-fu. (See Yule's *Hobson-Jobson*, s. v. 'Chinchew'.)

<sup>19</sup> Rather, an ambassador; respecting whom see *infra*.

<sup>20</sup> The original has *prefetti*, doubtless a copyist's blunder for *presenti*.

<sup>21</sup> An error, of course.

<sup>22</sup> Dec. III., l. i.

<sup>23</sup> Who had been appointed by Albuquerque chief captain of the fleet at Malacca after its capture in 1511. (See *Coverment of Af. Dalb.*, *passim*, regarding him.)

<sup>24</sup> Regarding the Perestrello family, see Amat di S. Filippo's *Biografia dei Viaggiatori Italiani*, p. 36. Rafael and Bertolameu Perestrello were connections by marriage (perhaps brothers-in-law) of Columbus.

<sup>25</sup> At the end of 1514 or beginning of 1515 apparently.

<sup>26</sup> Barros (Dec. III., II. vi.) says that he was sent by Jorge de Albuquerque, the captain of Malacca.

<sup>27</sup> Castanheda (III. cxlix.) says "ten," Correa (II. p. 474) has "thirty."

<sup>28</sup> Cast., IV. iv. Barros tells us that in September 1516 Rafael Perestrello arrived at Goa in a brigantine, having shortly before reached Cochin in a ship; "and as he came rich from China where he had been, and was a liberal man, and noble, much people joined him." (See further regarding him in footnote *infra*.)

<sup>29</sup> Ant. Galvão, *Discoveries of the World* (Hak. Soc. ed.), p. 123.



arrived, probably, in July 1516. The captain of Malacca, Jorge de Brito, however, offered strong objections to the proposed plan of Fernão Peres, and urged the importance of his going to China at once, if only to learn the fate of Rafael Perestrello and his companions.

Reluctantly, therefore, Fernão Peres consented to go to China with what cargo he could get in Malacca; and he left the latter port on 12th August 1516 in the ship *Santa Barbara*, there accompanying him Manuel Falcão and Antonio Lobo Falcão in two other ships and Duarte Coelho in a junk. Owing to calms, the coast of Cochinchina was not sighted until the middle of September; and shortly afterwards the vessels encountered a storm that compelled them to put in for safety to the coast of Champa.<sup>30</sup> Thence Duarte Coelho, by permission of Fernão Peres, proceeded in his junk to the Menam river, and spent almost a year in Siam;<sup>31</sup> while the rest of the company, after touching at Palo Condore, ran along the coast of the Malay Peninsula to Patani, where Fernão Peres made an agreement with the governor of that place for mutual facilities of trade. Thence the three ships sailed for Malacca, which was reached in October or November 1516.

Learning, on his return to Malacca, of the success that had attended Rafael Perestrello (as mentioned above), Fernão Peres resolved to postpone his intended expedition to Bengal, and to proceed to China as soon as possible. In December 1516, therefore, he left for Pasai,<sup>32</sup> to take in a cargo of pepper; Simão d'Alcaçova, one of his captains, going on to India to load his ship there and return to accompany the fleet to China. Leaving Pasai in May 1517, Fernão Peres returned to Malacca, where he found matters in a very unsatisfactory condition, the captain Jorge de Brito having died, and there being a dispute between Nuno Vaz Pereira and Antonio Pacheco as to which was to succeed to the post. Being unable to reconcile the disputants, and fearful of again losing the monsoon, Fernão Peres left Malacca for China in June<sup>33</sup> 1517 with a fleet of eight sail, viz., the *Esphera*, a ship of eight hundred tons commanded by himself, the *Santa Cruz* commanded by Simão d'Alcaçova, the *Santo Andre* commanded by Pero Soares, and the *Santiago* commanded by Jorge Mascarenhas; a junk belonging to a native merchant in Malacca named Curiaraja, in command of Jorge Botelho; two other junks belonging to the merchant Pulate mentioned above, commanded by Manuel d'Araujo and Antonio Lobo Falcão; and another small vessel commanded by Martim Guedes.<sup>34</sup> These vessels were well armed, and carried Chinese pilots.<sup>35</sup>

The fleet arrived at the island of Tamão or Tamou,<sup>36</sup> generally called by the Portuguese *a ilha da veniaga* (or *beniaga*), "the island of trade,"<sup>37</sup> at the mouth of the Canton river, on

<sup>30</sup> See Hobson-Jobson, s. v.

<sup>31</sup> He arrived at the Canton river in July 1517. (See *infra*.)

<sup>32</sup> Castanheda (IV. xxvii.) alone of the historians relates a serious scandal that was caused by the action of Jorge de Brito, who proposed to use force to prevent Giovanni da Empoli from returning with Fernão Peres to Pasai, which place he had left for Malacca some months before.

<sup>33</sup> Ant. Galvão (*op. cit.* p. 129) says July.

<sup>34</sup> Barros alone mentions this last man in the list of captains, and describes the fleet as consisting of eight sail; Castanheda and Correa say that there were only seven. Ant. Galvão (*op. cit.* p. 129) says that there were "eight sail, four Portuguese, and the others Malay."

<sup>35</sup> The following details of the visit of Fernão Peres de Andrade to Canton are taken from the accounts in Castanheda (IV. xxvii.-xxxi., xl.-xli.), Correa (II. pp. 523-530), and Barros (*Dec.* III., II. vi.-viii.).

<sup>36</sup> See *infra* regarding the identity of this.

<sup>37</sup> Malay *beniyaga*, (to) trade, traffic, from Skt. *vanijaka*, merchant, *vanijya*, traffic. The word *veniaga* was adopted into the Portuguese vocabulary, and is entered in the dictionaries with the meaning of "merchandise;" also verb *veniyar*, "to sell, traffic." Yule does not record the word in his *Hobson-Jobson*; and in a quotation from Mendez Pinto, s. v. 'Lawcher,' he has evidently mistaken it for a place-name. The quotation runs:—"And they" demanding of him whence he came, and what he would have, he answered them, that he was of the Kingdom of Siam [of the settlement of the Tananarim foreigners, and that he came from Veniaga] and as a Merchant was going to traffique in the Isle of Loquios." The words within brackets are inserted by Yule to supply the deficiency of Cogan's translation; but he has misunderstood the Portuguese, which runs:—"q'ha de veniaga como mercador q'era para a ilha dos Loquios a fazer sua fazenda." The word *veniaga* is never used by the Portuguese writers by itself as a place name; and *ha de veniaga* simply means "he was going [not came] a trading."

<sup>38</sup> Cf. Christovão Vieyra's letter *infra*, f. 104.



15th August 1517, passing through the midst of the fleet of Chinese junks that lay off the port to protect the merchant shipping from pirates, and not returning the shots fired at them, which, however, did no damage. At Tamão Fernão Peres found Duarte Coelho, who had arrived from Siam a month before, having had an encounter on the way with some thirty pirate vessels. After applying to the "pio" of Lantan for permission to proceed to Canton, and being told that this would have to come from the officials in that city, Fernão Peres, becoming impatient, took his four ships out of port to the mouth of the river, to be ready to sail up it at the earliest possible moment. Unfortunately, however, a sudden storm struck the vessels, which were only saved from shipwreck by the sacrifice of some of their masts. As the Chinese on shore refused to assist the Portuguese to repair their ships, a shift had to be made by a transference of masts from one vessel to another. When this had been completed, Simão d'Alcaçova was left in charge of most of the fleet at Tamão; and Fernão Peres in the ship of Martim Guedes, accompanied by that of Jorge Mascarenhas, and followed by the boats of the other ships, all well armed, crossed over to Lantan. Here he sent Giovanni da Empoli, accompanied by trumpeters and a body-guard, to press the "pio" for permission to go to Canton. After a day's delay this was given, and a pilot was furnished; and the Portuguese vessels proceeded up the river to Canton. This was towards the end of September 1517.

In three days the city was reached; and the Portuguese ships anchored off the quay. By order of Fernão Peres, a salute was fired with the cannon, and flags were displayed from the masts. Very soon a message came from the *pu-chêng sz'* of Canton, expressing astonishment at such breaches of Chinese custom; to which the Portuguese captain replied, that he had erred through ignorance, and intended only respect. News of the arrival of the Portuguese was sent by the *pu-chêng sz'* to the *tu-tung*, "*concan*" and "*chumpim*,"<sup>39</sup> who resided in a city<sup>40</sup> some distance inland; and pending their arrival strict orders were given by Fernão Peres that none of his company were to land, all trade being confined to the boats on the river. At intervals of a few days<sup>41</sup> the above-mentioned officials arrived in Canton; and after various communications had passed between them and the Portuguese a day was appointed, when Giovanni da Empoli was sent with much pomp and ceremony, accompanied by a suite and preceded by trumpeters, to explain fully the object of the Portuguese mission. The result of the interview was satisfactory, the Chinese officials promising to write to the emperor respecting the Portuguese ambassador, and granting the latter meanwhile permission to reside on shore. Accordingly, a house was set apart for Thomé Pires,<sup>42</sup> his retinue and servants; and the presents for the emperor were placed there under lock and key. Fernão Peres was also invited by the Chinese officials to come on shore; but he declined, saying that he was responsible to his king for the safety of the ships. He asked, however, the favor of a house near the water's

<sup>39</sup> See *infra* regarding these officials.

<sup>40</sup> Wuchau. (See Christovão Vieyra's letter *infra*, f. 120.)

<sup>41</sup> In order the more to impress the Portuguese, the reception of each in turn surpassing in magnificence that of his precursor. (Barros, Dec. III., II. viii.)

<sup>42</sup> This man had been chosen as ambassador to China by Lopo Soares after his arrival in India, the king having left the choice to him. Thomé Pires was an apothecary, and having shown himself to be a man of considerable ability had been employed by Afonso de Albuquerque on various missions, which he had carried out successfully. Lopo Soares selected him as ambassador, in the hope that he would bring back information not only of Chinese plants and drugs but of more important matters connected with the land of Cathay. His fate is recounted in the first letter given below. Whether he was able to send any report of his impressions of China to India I do not know: if Correa (II. p. 678) is to be trusted, he did send "a book in which he gave an account of the riches and grandeur of the king of China, which appeared doubtful of credence." Conto, writing in 1611, says in his *Decada XII.* (cap. iv.):—"And although I have already spoken of this Province of Cathay . . . I shall further on, with the divine favor. . . . give a better description of it, on account of the much more that has nowadays been discovered by the fathers of the Company [of Jesus], who are penetrating to the extremity of China and Cathay, whither no Portuguese ever came, save that ambassador whom Fernão Peres d' Andrade sent to the king of China, who went even to his court, without being able to give an account of that province, nor of any other, because the China that conveyed him led him about by different routes, in which they caused him to spend many months, both in order that he might not be able to give an account of anything, and to show him the greatness of that empire."



edge, where he might offer for sale or exchange some of the goods he had brought. This was granted; and the factor, his clerk and a few others were sent to carry on the trade. Under cover of this privilege Fernão Peres sent other men on shore to make their way secretly into various parts of the city, if possible, and report on what they saw.<sup>43</sup>

Two events occurred, however, which caused the Portuguese commander to hasten his departure from Canton. One of these was the receipt of a message from Simão d'Alcaçova to say that he had been attacked by pirates, whom, however, he had been able to beat off. The other occurrence was an outbreak of fever and dysentery among his own company, which lasted throughout the whole of October, and proved fatal to nine men, the most serious loss being that of the factor, **Giovanni da Empoli**. Fernão Peres, therefore, leaving Thomé Pires and his companions at Canton, returned to Tamão at the end of 1517 or beginning of 1518.

While Fernão Peres was repairing his vessels and carrying on trade at Tamão, there came thither some junks of Liukiu islanders, of whom the Portuguese had already heard at Malacca.<sup>44</sup> In order to gain full information regarding these people and the islands they came from, **Jorge Mascarenhas** was dispatched in his ship with Chinese pilots; but, owing to unfavourable weather, he did not get further than Chwanchau-fû, where, however, he laid the foundation of a thriving Portuguese trade.<sup>45</sup>

**Duarte Coelho** also was dispatched to Malacca to report the success that had so far attended the mission. He arrived there in March; and at once a junk was got ready and sent off, with **Jorge Alvares** in command, to bring back a cargo, and to convey to Fernão Peres the news of war with the Raja of Bintang.

On hearing these tidings Fernão Peres sent off a message overland to Jorge Mascarenhas to request his return, and meanwhile made all preparations for his departure. In due course Jorge Mascarenhas arrived; and Fernão Peres, having ascertained from the officials at Canton that the emperor had expressed his willingness to receive the Portuguese ambassador, sailed with all his fleet at the end of September 1518, and arrived safely at Malacca, one of his ships, the *Santo André*, captain Pero Soares, having been lost in a storm in the Gulf of Cochin.

Fernão Peres de Andrade had whilst in China conducted affairs with such skill and tact that he left a very favorable impression of the Portuguese character on the Chinese,<sup>46</sup> and well deserved the profit he derived from the rich cargo that he carried away.<sup>47</sup> All the good effect of his conciliatory conduct was, however, entirely destroyed by the arrogant behavior of the man who commanded the next expedition to China, and who happened to be his own brother.

The arrival, early in 1519,<sup>48</sup> of Fernão Peres de Andrade at Cochin with such a valuable cargo caused no small stir among the captains; and, although Antonio Correa was then under orders to proceed to Malacca and China, on the production by Simão de Andrade of a royal grant authorizing him to go to China after his brother's return Antonio Correa was ordered by the new governor, Diogo Lopes de Sequeira, to go to Malacca only, and Simão de Andrade was appointed to the command of the fleet destined for China.

<sup>43</sup> Barros tells us (Dec. III., II. vii.) that one of these men, Antonio Fernandes, took the opportunity one night when the populace were occupied with a feast of lanterns, to climb the city wall and run right round it, counting ninety towers therein.

<sup>44</sup> See *Comment. of Af. Dalb.* (Hak. Soc.), III. pp. xiv. 88.

<sup>45</sup> See further regarding this trade *infra*.

<sup>46</sup> One instance given by Barros (Dec. III., II. viii.) is to the effect that before his departure he caused proclamation to be made that if any Chinese had received any injury from or had any claim on a Portuguese he was to come to him and satisfaction should be made.

<sup>47</sup> Barros (*loc. cit.*) says that he entered Malacca "very prosperous in honor and riches, things that seldom go together, because there are few men who by their labors deserve them by the method by which Fernão Peres gained them in those parts." (Cf. Ant. Galvão, *Discoveries of the World*, Hak. Soc. ed. pp. 129-130.)

<sup>48</sup> Correa (tom. 2, p. 539) has 1518 (which is impossible), and to this adds other errors.



Simão de Andrade left Cochín in April 1519<sup>49</sup> for Malacca, whence he sailed for China accompanied by three junks captained by Jorge Botelho, Alvaro Fuzeiro, and Francisco Rodrigues.<sup>50</sup> With these four sail he arrived at Tamão in August 1519; and at once began to show the Chinese that he was of a very different temperament from his brother.<sup>51</sup> Under the pretext that the Chinese vessels themselves while lying in port were exposed to the attacks of pirate junks, he built on shore a fortress of stone and wood. Even more offensive to the feelings of the Chinese was the erection by him on an adjacent islet of a gallows, on which he hanged a seaman who had committed some offence, the execution being carried out with all the formalities usual in Portugal. Further, he insisted on the right of claiming precedence for his vessels over others from Siam, Kamboja, Patani, etc., in trading with the Chinese.<sup>52</sup> But what caused the cup of indignation of the Cantonese to overflow was their discovery, after Simão de Andrade had sailed for Malacca, that many of their children, whom they had given in pledge to their creditors, had been kidnapped by the Portuguese captain and carried away to become slaves.<sup>53</sup>

On arriving at Tamão Simão de Andrade learnt that, in spite of the favorable messages conveyed to his brother by the officials at Canton, the ambassador Thomé Pires had not yet received permission from the emperor to wait upon him. At length, however, after the dispatch of messages at intervals on three separate occasions, and the receipt of as many replies, the ambassador was permitted to set out. He and his suite left Canton on 23rd January 1520, proceeding up the river in three large row-boats having silken awnings and flying Portuguese flags. At the foot of the mountain range the boats were left, and the party proceeded across the Meiling Pass in litters, on horseback, or afoot.<sup>54</sup> Thence they journeyed northward, until, in May 1520, they reached Nanking, where the emperor was then staying. An imperial order was here conveyed to the ambassador, that he was to go on to Peking,

<sup>49</sup> Barros (who alone of the Portuguese historians gives us any account of this man's visit to China) says (*Dec. III., VI. i.*), with a rare double inaccuracy, that it was "in April 1518 in the time of Lopo Soares" that Simão de Andrade left India.

<sup>50</sup> Another junk, commanded by Jorge Alvares, was detained by a leak, and was obliged to follow later on in the fleet under Diogo Calvo.

<sup>51</sup> Barros (*Dec. III., VI. ii.*) tells us that Simão de Andrade was "of noble presence, very pompous, boastful, and open-handed; all his acts were performed with great dignity, and to such an extent, that he was the first man that ordered Indians to be taught to play on shawms and to make use of them." (See further regarding him in *Comment. of Af. Dalb., passim.*)

<sup>52</sup> Barros also says (*Dec. III., VI. i.*) that a principal official who protested against this action was ill-used under Simão de Andrade's orders. This is confirmed by Christovão Vieyra in the letter given below (f. 105v.). Gaspar da Cruz in cap. xxii. of his book says:—"All the ambassadors that come to China with embassies from kings or princes receive from the king many gifts and favors, and they give them a cap and insignia of a *louthia*, whereby they have great liberties in the country. They may whip and chastise the Chinese themselves, so long as they do not touch a *louthia* lesser or greater: because to touch these is bound to be followed by great inconveniences. This was the cause why, when Fernão Pires Dádrade came as ambassador to China, the Chinese rose against him, and he escaped in very doleful dumps, losing several ships: because, having executed unaccustomed justice in China and on Chinese, and it being forgiven him, he thought fit to extend his hand to the *louthias*." In the translation of this passage in *Purchas, Pilgrimes*, III. p. 189, it is said that Fernão Pires "escaped with his hands on his head," which is an almost literal rendering of the Portuguese orig. "*as mãos nos cabelos*." This expression seems to be a variant of "*com as mãos na cabeça*," which means "mortified, humbled, amazed, disappointed." But it will be noticed that Gaspar da Cruz, like so many other writers on this subject, has blundered, mixing up Fernão Pires de Andrade, his brother Simão (the real culprit), Thomé Pires (the ambassador), and Diogo Calvo or Martin Affonso (who both lost ships). Purchas recognized that there was some error in this account, but was unable entirely to solve it. (See his marginal note in *loc. cit.*)

<sup>53</sup> Barros (*u. s.*) says that it was reported among the Chinese that the Portuguese bought stolen children and ate them roasted. It will be seen that in the letter of Christovão Vieyra below (f. 105v.) the accusation against the Portuguese was that they stole dogs and ate them roasted, — certainly a very venial offence in China!

<sup>54</sup> From this pass Thomé Pires sent a letter to Simão de Andrade announcing his safe arrival there, and stating that Canton was but a small affair compared with other cities he had seen on his journey. (Barros, *Dec. III., VI. i.*) It will be seen from the first letter given below (f. 111v.) that one of the company, Duarte Fernandez, died on the journey.



there to await the emperor's pleasure. To Peking accordingly the party proceeded, arriving there, apparently, in July 1520.<sup>55</sup>

In January 1521, the emperor arrived at a small town some two leagues distant from Peking, and there halted to pass sentence on a relative of his who had rebelled against his authority.<sup>56</sup> This man having been duly executed, the emperor proceeded to Peking, which he entered in February 1521. Meanwhile complaints had reached the emperor from various quarters regarding the conduct of the Portuguese. Not only were there representations from the mandarins of Canton and Peking concerning the bad behaviour of Simão de Andrade at Tamão, but another ambassador, one Tuwang Muhammad, had come from the exiled king of Malacca<sup>57</sup> to lay before his suzerain the wrongs he had suffered at the hands of the "sea-robbers." To make matters worse, when the sealed letter from Dom Manoel to the emperor was opened, it was found to differ entirely in its language from the letters written by the interpreters under the instructions of Fernão Peres de Andrade. True, the responsibility for these latter was accepted by the interpreters; but the other accusations, it was resolved, should be made the subject of inquiry. The members of the embassy, meanwhile, were ordered not to come near the palace.

While matters were in this state, however, the emperor, who had been ailing since the day after his arrival in Peking, died, in May 1521;<sup>58</sup> and, in accordance with the custom of the country, Thomé Pires was informed that he must at once leave the imperial city; and that when the new sovereign had assumed rule<sup>59</sup> his majesty's pleasure should be communicated to him. Accordingly the ambassador and his suite set out from Peking on 22nd May, and reached Canton on 22nd September 1521.<sup>60</sup>

In the meantime events of serious import had occurred at Tamão. After the departure of Simão de Andrade from Malacca (in September 1520, apparently<sup>61</sup>), the Chinese, as I have said above, were exasperated by the discovery that he had carried off into slavery a number of their sons and daughters. They were not, therefore, inclined to give a very cordial welcome to the next Portuguese vessels that came to the Island of Trade, though at first no ill-feeling was displayed. It was in April or May 1521 that a fleet of Portuguese vessels from Malacca cast anchor in the port of Tamão. This consisted of a ship<sup>62</sup> from Portugal belonging to Dom Nuno Manuel and commanded by Diogo Calvo,<sup>63</sup> several other ships from Malacca that had not been

<sup>55</sup> I infer this from the statement of Christovão Vieyra (f. 1), that on the 2nd of August the ambassador dispatched letters to Canton reporting the progress of the mission.

<sup>56</sup> This was the prince of Ning, an uncle of the emperor's, who had taken part in a rebellion some years before. (See Boulger's *History of China*, I. pp. 465, 468.)

<sup>57</sup> Or, rather, his son, the Raja of Bintang.

<sup>58</sup> Wells Williams (*Middle Kingdom*, II. p. 186) makes Chingti's reign cover sixteen years, 1505-1522; while Boulger (*History of China*, I. pp. 425, 428) states that his reign began in 1505 and that he died in the fourteenth year of it, i. e., 1519!

<sup>59</sup> See Boulger, op. cit. (I. p. 469) regarding the trouble that was averted, on the death of Chingti without an heir, by the prompt and resolute action of the empress Changohi. A grandson of the emperor Chinghwa, a youth of fourteen years, was chosen by the nobles as their new sovereign, and ascended the throne under the title of Kiahtang.

<sup>60</sup> From the first letter given below (f. 111v.) we learn that a second member of the company, Francisco de Budoya, died on the journey back.

<sup>61</sup> The Portuguese historians do not record the date of Simão de Andrade's departure from China; but in the letter given below Christovão Vieyra states that on 2nd August 1520 the ambassador's party sent from Peking letters which "reached Jorge Botelho and Diogo Calvo in the island where trade is carried on." From this we may infer that when the letters reached Canton Simão de Andrade had already sailed. At any rate we learn from Barros (Dec. III., VI. ff.) that he arrived at Cochín at the time that Diogo Lopes de Sequeira was before Diu, that is, probably, early in 1521. One of the first acts of D. Duarte de Meneses on assuming the governorship in January 1522 was to affiancé Simão de Andrade to a natural daughter of his own in Portugal and appoint him to the captaincy of Chaul. One of his excuses for this gross job was that Simão de Andrade had shortly before arrived from China very rich.

<sup>62</sup> According to Correa (II. p. 678) it was named *Madanela* (i. e., *Madalena*).

<sup>63</sup> Who, with Rafael Catanho and Rafael Perestrello, left Lisbon in 1519 with permission to go to China. Regarding Catanho and Perestrello see the footnote further on.



able to accompany Simão de Andrade, and the junk of Jorge Alvares, which, as mentioned above, had been detained at Malacca by a leak. While the Portuguese were engaged in trading, some at Tamão and others in Canton, news came of the death of the emperor; and orders were at once issued that all foreigners should forthwith leave the country under pain of death. Diogo Calvo and his companions demurred to this, as they had not completed their cargoes; whereupon the Chinese seized and imprisoned Vasco Calvo, Diogo Calvo's brother, and other Portuguese who happened to be then in Canton, and attacked and captured a number of Portuguese and Siamese ships and junks, killing very many persons and imprisoning others. They also formed a fleet of armed junks, and proceeded to blockade Diogo Calvo's ship and the seven or eight Portuguese junks that lay at Tamão.<sup>64</sup>

At this juncture, on 27th June 1521, there arrived off Tamão two junks, one belonging to and captained by Duarte Coelho, and the other to some residents of Malacca. On learning the condition of affairs, Duarte Coelho was inclined to make his escape, leaving his compatriots to their fate; but, as I have mentioned above, he was induced to stay chiefly from his affection for Jorge Alvares, who was then sick unto death. Two days later the five vessels were beset by a Chinese fleet of fifty junks, the commander refusing all offers of peace, and attacking the Portuguese furiously, only, however, to be beaten off with much loss. After forty days had thus passed, there arrived Ambrosio do Rego in a ship with another from Malacca; and these succeeded in joining the other five. There being now not more than eight Portuguese left in any one of the vessels, Duarte Coelho, Diogo Calvo and Ambrosio do Rego resolved that the junks should be abandoned, their crews being divided among the three ships, which should attempt to break through the investing fleet. Accordingly, on the night of 7th September the three ships set sail; but at daybreak on the 8th they were attacked by the Chinese fleet, and a fierce engagement ensued. The Portuguese would probably have had to succumb to superior numbers; but a sudden gale from the north wrought havoc among the Chinese junks and enabled the three ships to soon outdistance the enemy; and in October 1521 they reached Malacca safely.<sup>65</sup>

Such was the state of affairs when Thomé Pires and his companions returned to Canton on 22nd September 1521; and we cannot be surprised that the treatment they met with there was very different from what they had experienced before they left for Peking. The indignities to which they and the other unfortunate captives were subjected are so graphically described by Christovão Vieyra, that I need not detail them here. After a farcical show of respect for the members of the embassy, extending over some ten months, these were all imprisoned, and the whole of their property and the presents from the king of Portugal to the emperor were confiscated, the lion's share, as might be expected, falling to the mandarins.<sup>66</sup>

<sup>64</sup> These and the following details are gathered from the letters given below, and from the accounts in Castanheda (V. lxxx.), Correa (II. p. 678), and Barros (Dec. III., VI. i-ii.).

<sup>65</sup> Castanheda, whose brief account of these events was printed in 1553, adds that at Malacca "they reported the news of the rising of China: and regarding this an inquiry was drawn up in Malacca, which was sent sealed to the king of Portugal: in which were set forth clearly some causes of this rising, which, as I have said, I cannot ascertain, and therefore have not related them." Correa's account, written in India a little earlier, is also very meagre; but Barros whose third *Decade* was issued in 1553, like Castanheda's *Livro V.*, seems to have obtained access to documents not available to the two other historians.

<sup>66</sup> Gonzalez de Mendoza, in treating of the reception of ambassadors in China, says, in bk. III., chap. xxiii., of his work (see also Hak. Soc. ed., I. pp. 159-160):—"To those that enter the kingdom with this name [of ambassador] for no offence that they commit (even though it be proved against them) do they do any harm; and it appears to be true, it having been manifested by experience. For when there came to this kingdom one Bartolome [sic!] Peres a Manuel, they were accused before the viceroy of the province of Canton by the ambassadors of the king of Malacca (who happened to be there, and came to the court to treat of matters of their king), the which testified that the embassy that the Portuguese had brought was a false one, and that they were spies of the viceroy of India, that they came to view the forts of the city, in order afterwards to come against it and take it, as they had done in many parts of India. And carrying still further their wickedness and damnable intention, they requested the viceroy that he should at



News of these disasters had not reached India when, in April 1522, another fleet left Cochín for China: this consisted of four ships,<sup>67</sup> commanded by Martim Affonso de Mello Coutinho<sup>68</sup> as captain-major, his two brothers Vasco Fernandes Coutinho and Diogo de Mello, and Pedro Homem. Martim Affonso carried a commission from Dom Manoel<sup>69</sup> to conclude a treaty of peace with the emperor of China, and to endeavor to obtain permission to erect a fortress at Tamão, where he was to remain in charge of the officials whom he took with him. On arriving at Malacca in July,<sup>70</sup> however, he learnt of the unfortunate change that had occurred in the relations between the Portuguese and the Chinese. Nevertheless, he determined to pursue his voyage;<sup>71</sup> and, at his request and that of the governor of Malacca (Jorge de Albuquerque), Duarte Coelho and Ambrosio do Rego were, much against their wills, induced to accompany the expedition. Accordingly, the four ships and a junk<sup>72</sup> left Malacca on 10th July 1522, and arrived at the port of Tamão in August.<sup>73</sup>

Before reaching the port, however, they were sighted by a Chinese fleet, which bore down upon them, firing off bombards that did the Portuguese no damage. Martim Affonso had given strict orders to his captains to refrain from acting on the offensive; but these demonstrations on the part of the Chinese seem to have led some of the Portuguese to commit acts of aggression for which they were severely called to account by the captain-major.<sup>74</sup> Avoiding an engagement, the four ships entered the port and cast anchor; and Martim Affonso at once sent word to the officials on shore that he desired peace and trade as before. All his overtures were, however, rejected; and some men who landed to get water were roughly handled and had to escape for their lives, leaving their barrels and jars behind. Duarte Coelho, meanwhile, unable or unwilling to accompany the ships into port, had remained at sea, and, fearful of being attacked by the Chinese fleet, sent urgent requests that the ships would come out and join him.

This Martim Affonso resolved to attempt; and he accordingly weighed anchor, the ships of Diogo de Mello and Pedro Homem, which were smaller than the other two, going in front as

once seize and castigate them as such. Who, after having thought thereon, and consulted with the *leigos* of the city, and the judges of his council, ordered them to be seized, and placed in close confinement, taking from them their confessions with much caution and care: and as in these there was found contradiction (because some of them through fear confessed more than they asked them of, and contrary to what was the truth) by reason of the inquiry he sentenced them to death, and sent the sentence to the council that they might confirm it with intent and desire to execute it. The royal council having seen it, and considered the title with which they had entered the kingdom, not only did not confirm it, but sent at once to order the viceroy to release them and to let them return free to India whence they had come (notwithstanding that the ambassadors of the king of Malacca, who were still at the court, did not get very good service thereby), and to supply them fully with every necessary until they should arrive there: saying in the mandate, that even if all that the aforesaid ambassadors testified were true, and that which they themselves through fear of death had confessed, it sufficed, to do them no harm, that they had entered that kingdom with the title of an embassy." It will be seen that this writer gives a very incorrect statement of the facts connected with the imprisonment of Thomé Pires and his companions.

<sup>67</sup> According to Correa (II. p. 674), Martim Affonso's ship was the *Conceição*, that of Vasco Fernandes the *Gryfo*, and that of Pedro Homem the *Sysiro*. Diogo de Mello was given a ship in India, the name of which is not mentioned.

<sup>68</sup> Not to be confused with Martim Affonso de Mello Jusarte.

<sup>69</sup> Who died 13th December 1521. Martim Affonso and his companions left Lisbon on 5th April 1521 in the fleet that took out the new governor of India, D. Duarte de Menezes.

<sup>70</sup> After a stay at Passai, where he installed D. André Henriques as captain in place of Antonio de Miranda, and loaded a large cargo of pepper for China.

<sup>71</sup> Unwilling, doubtless, to lose the chance of making the enormous profits which he had anticipated from the sale of his cargoes.

<sup>72</sup> Barros (Dec. III., VIII. v.) says two junks. Castanheda and Correa, however, mention only one junk, that of Duarte Coelho, as accompanying the ships. From the description of subsequent events it would seem that there was in fact only one junk, and that Ambrosio do Rego was on board of it with Duarte Coelho.

<sup>73</sup> The following details are taken from Castanheda, VI. xiii.-xv.; Correa, II. pp. 718-720; Barros, Dec. III., VIII. v. (Cf. also the accounts in the letters *infra*, f. 121, ff. 134-134v.)

<sup>74</sup> Castanheda (IV., cap. xiii.) says that Ambrosio do Rego was the chief offender; but Correa (II. p. 718) lays the blame on Duarte Coelho, whom, he adds, Martim Affonso threatened to hang from the yard-arm of his own junk. Barros entirely passes over this unpleasant incident, which, however, seems to be confirmed by the writers of the letters given below. (See f. 121 and f. 134 v.)



guides. The Chinese fleet, however, was on the alert, and at once attacked these two vessels. As ill-luck would have it, a bombard almost immediately set fire to a barrel of powder in Diogo de Mello's ship, which blew up with all on board, only a few escaping with their lives. Seeing these swimming in the sea, Pedro Homem sent his boat to pick them up, hoping that among them might be Diogo de Mello: whereupon, the Chinese, taking advantage of this diminution of his force, succeeded in boarding Pedro Homem's ship, where, after a desperate combat, the brave captain<sup>75</sup> and all his men were either slain or made prisoners, the ship itself being rifled of its cargo and fittings. Night having fallen, Martim Affonso called a council of war, and urged that vengeance should be taken on the Chinese for the losses they had inflicted on the Portuguese; but the other captains counselled a more discreet policy, to which Martim Affonso very unwillingly acceded, first requiring a document to be signed by all the captains exculpating him from the blame. This having been done, and the dismantled ship of Pedro Homem having been scuttled, the two remaining ships and the junk,<sup>76</sup> after this short but eventful fortnight at Tamão, sailed for Malacca, which they reached safely in October 1522 by the round-about way of the west coast of Sumatra and Pasai.<sup>77</sup> Thus were shattered the Portuguese hopes of a permanent lucrative trade with China for many years to come.<sup>78</sup>

It was probably while Martim Affonso de Mello and his companions were engaged with the Chinese fleet at Tamão that the imprisonment of Thomé Pires and the rest of the embassy and the confiscation of their goods took place, as described below by Christovão Vieyra,<sup>79</sup> on 14th and 15th August 1522. From the same writer we learn,<sup>80</sup> that on 1st October of that year three letters — one for the king of Portugal, another for the governor of India, and a third for the governor of Malacca — were handed to the *ngan-cha sz* of Canton to be forwarded through the exiled king of Malacca's ambassador. The latter, however, was unwilling to undertake the task; but on 31st May 1523 a junk with Chinese and Malays left Canton for Patani with a message to the exiled king.<sup>81</sup> On 5th September the latter's reply reached Canton; and as a consequence, apparently, twenty-three Portuguese prisoners, who on 6th December 1522 had had boards inscribed with their sentences placed upon their necks, were on 23rd September 1523 executed and

<sup>75</sup> He was the son of Pedro Homem, Dom Manoel's chief equerry, and, according to Barros, was "in body on of the biggest men in Portugal, and moreover the stoutness of his spirit and his bodily strength were different from the common run of others, which is seldom found in those of his stature."

<sup>76</sup> Barros, however, has it that Duarte Coelho had started in advance, and that Martim Affonso only met with him on the coast of Champa.

<sup>77</sup> Correa (II. p. 720) says that Martim Affonso sent Duarte Coelho from Pasai to Malacca with the bad news, but himself remained at Pasai until the monsoon, "when he returned to India in order to return to Portugal; but arriving at Cochym he died of his sickness." On the other hand, Barros (u. z.) states that Martim Affonso "reached Malacca in the middle of October 1522, and in the monsoon of January 1523 left for India, and thence for this kingdom in the year 1525, where he arrived in safety." Which version is correct, I cannot say.

<sup>78</sup> I have mentioned above that in 1519 Rafael Perestrelo and Rafael Catanho left Lisbon in company with Diogo Salvo with permission to make a voyage to China. Though, however, Castanheda, Correa and Barros have frequent references to their intended voyage to China, and even inform us that they accompanied Jorge de Albuquerque in 1521 as far as Pasai, where they were to load pepper, we are not told of their actually going to China. Correa, however, says (II. p. 786), that at the end of 1523 or beginning of 1524, when the Raja of Cranganor had begged help of the Portuguese against the Samorin, "Rafael Catanho, who was in Cochym, who had come from China very rich, strongly urged Dom Luis to give the help that the king of Cranganor asked for, and offered to go to fight with three hundred Portuguese men, and to pay them at his own expense." In declining the offer, Dom Luis is made to refer to "your money, which you want to gain at such risk of life." It is possible that one or both of the Rafaels visited Tamão during the troublous times described above. Jorge de Albuquerque, also, who left Portugal in command of the fleet of 1519, had received from the king the favor of "a voyage to China, after the manner of Fernão Peres d'Andrade;" but he was not able to avail himself of this, in consequence of having to take up the captaincy of Malacca. In a fleet that left Lisbon for India in 1520 was another man who had been granted a voyage to China, Pero Lourenço de Mello; he did not, however, leave Cochim until September 1522, when, on his voyage to Pasai to load pepper, he was wrecked in a storm on an island off the coast of Arakan, and he and all his men were subsequently murdered by a native chief on the mainland, to which they had escaped in the ship's boat. (Correa, II. p. 721; Barros, Dec. III., VII. vii.)

<sup>79</sup> F. 169v.-107.

<sup>80</sup> f. 110v.

<sup>81</sup> See also the extract from Jorge d' Albuquerque's letter of 1st Jan. 1524 given below.



mutilated, in and around Canton.<sup>82</sup> In May 1524, Christovão Vieyra tells us,<sup>83</sup> Thomé Pires died of sickness in prison in Canton;<sup>84</sup> and in the same year the Malay ambassador left Canton to return to his royal master (whether or not bearing the letters for the Portuguese authorities does not appear); but being wrecked off Borneo he and all his party were made prisoners.<sup>85</sup> In 1523, we learn from this same letter,<sup>86</sup> the Chinese prepared a fleet of one hundred junks in case the Portuguese should return to avenge the disaster of the previous year; but no Portuguese came; and in August a hurricane destroyed half the fleet. Next year another fleet for the same purpose was got ready; and so in each succeeding year until 1528, after which, owing to most of the junks having by that time been captured by pirates, the attempt to form a fleet was, perforce, abandoned.

Meantime, the Portuguese in Malacca, uncertain of the fate of their imprisoned countrymen, seem to have apprehended the descent on that city of an avenging Chinese fleet, as will be seen by the following extract from a letter<sup>87</sup> written to the king of Portugal on 1st January 1524 by Jorge de Albuquerque, governor of Malacca:—

Dom Sancho amriques capitam moor do mar de Malaqua por vosa alteza foy estar sobre o bintam na entrada de julho e day foy ter a patam<sup>88</sup> e ambrosio do reguo com ele e outro navio esperar hum juquo<sup>89</sup> que era em syam de voza alteza e a saber novnas da China dos chis que ahi vem ter, mandou ambrosio do reguo diante e ele ficou ainda la que hos junquos nam sam comidos e perguntei lhe por novnas da charrua<sup>90</sup> responde ho<sup>91</sup> me que lhe disera hum lymgoa que antre os chis e os portugueses tratava cando estavam de paz dise lhe que eram vyvos doito ate treze portugueses e nom safirmaram quantos porque hum diz oito e outro dizem treze e que diziam que ho embaixador tome pires que era ainda vivo, veho hum recado a el rey de bintam de seu embaixador ho quall omem que o trouxe tornou logou a fama que el rey de bintam lancon<sup>92</sup> pela tera he que hos chis aviam de vir sobre malaqua isto nom he muito certo porem sam cousas que podem ser se vieram grande dano faram salvo se o capitam mor acudir a tempoo como lhe eu espreevo porem ho meu parecer he que tall nom faram que tambem dizem na China que desejam paz com nosquo.

Translation.

Dom Sancho Henriques, captain-major of the sea at Malacca for your Highness, went to attack Bintang at the beginning of July, and from there went to visit Patani, and Ambrosio do Rego with him and another ship, to wait for a junk that was in Siam of your Highness's, and to learn news from China from the Chinese that come to call there.<sup>93</sup> He sent Ambrosio do Rego in advance; and he remained there still because the junks are not yet ended;<sup>94</sup> and I asked him for news of the merchant-ship.<sup>95</sup> He answered me what an interpreter who acted between the

<sup>82</sup> ff. 109-109v.

<sup>83</sup> Castanheda, in cap. lxxx. of liv. V. of his history (published in 1553), after referring to the imprisonment of the Portuguese and the confiscation of their goods, adds: "and some say that the ambassador fell sick and died of grief; others that he died by poison. And because I cannot ascertain the particulars of this I thus relate it in sum: and also the rest that passed in the rising of China against our people." This shows that he was ignorant of the letters of Christovão Vieyra and Vasco Calvo. (See further regarding this *infra*.)

<sup>84</sup> f. 111.

<sup>85</sup> Preserved in the Torre do Tombo, Lisbon. (*Corpo Chron.*, tom. 1, parte 1, maço 3, doc. 78.) The above extract, from the India Office transcripts, I owe to the kindness of Mr. R. S. Whiteway, B. C. S. (retd.).

<sup>86</sup> Read patana.

<sup>87</sup> For juquo.

<sup>88</sup> For China?

<sup>89</sup> For respondeo?

<sup>90</sup> Read lancon.

<sup>91</sup> See Castanheda, VI. lii.-lv.; Correa, II. pp. 769-774; Barros, Dec. III., VIII. vi.-vii. None of these writers records the facts mentioned in this letter: Castanheda distinctly admits his ignorance of what Dom Sancho and Ambrosio do Rego did at Patani.

<sup>92</sup> Literally "consumed" (*comidos*): apparently meaning that more were expected. The word may, however, be a copyist's error.

<sup>93</sup> Port. *charrua*, which, I think, must be an error for *China*.



Chinese and Portuguese when they were at peace had said to him. He told him that there were living from eight to thirteen Portuguese, and it was not certain how many, because one said eight and another said thirteen; and that they said that the ambassador Thomé Pires was still living. A message came to the king of Bintang from his ambassador,<sup>66</sup> and the man who brought it soon returned. The report that the king of Bintang was spreading in the country is that the Chinese intended to come and attack Malacca. This is not very certain; nevertheless they are things that may be. If they come, they will do great harm, unless the captain-major shall come in time, as I have written to him. However, my opinion is, that they will not do so, as they still say in China that they desire peace with us.

The anticipated attack by a Chinese fleet on Malacca did not take place, however, any more than the assault which the Chinese at Canton expected from the Portuguese. The capture of the stronghold of the Raja of Bintang by the Portuguese forces under **Pero Mascarenhas** at the end of 1526, and the death of the Raja in the engagement, gave the garrison at Malacca comparative rest for a few years; but the Raja of Ujantana was as implacable a foe as his father had been, and there were enemies in Achin and elsewhere to keep the Portuguese fully occupied.<sup>67</sup> Though themselves debarred from visiting China, the Portuguese doubtless kept in touch with that country by means of native traders calling at Patani, and never lost hope of a resumption of friendly relations. The historians, however, make but scant references to China during these years,<sup>68</sup> and there seem to be very few documents existing that throw light on the subject. Beside the extract given above, the following letter<sup>69</sup> is the only document that I have met with dealing with Chinese affairs at that period:—

Senhor — Depois de ter dado as apontamentos a vossa alteza pera por eles me perguntar as cousas da China do alevamento da terra o souberam algumas pessoas por o quall me rogaram que se me vossa alteza perguntasse por a riqueza da terra que nam deccrarse todo e me calase por que acabando hum partido com vosa alteza me faram bom partido e vosa alteza he meu rey e deus da terra, oulhe bem vossa alteza o que fiz para que saiba certo que debaixo do sol tão riqa terra nom ha como a china de todalas mercadorias que pidirem pera a boca e baratas e todalas cousas pera os vossos allmasens da India que outra cousa nam mandara pera eles somente lonas por que todo ho all them na china que pode vir pera eles muito barato, a saber, vergas mastos breu tavorado pregadura chumbo fero cobre asoque e as outros mercadorias são muito ricas que são muito pera escrever este aviso dou a vossa alteza pera que saiba ho que ha de faser e eu senhor nam deserberto (*sic*) de dizer a verdade a vosa alteza por que são soo e sem emparo de senhor e sayba por certo vosa alteza que jagora consentirão na china mercadorias de vosa alteza por que ja são pasados os cinco anos que me mandou dizer o rey que nam fosse mercadarias ate nam pasarem cinco anos o qual me dise hum meu parente que esteve no Reyno de Syam que estavam os chies desejosos de nos outros de pimenta e pao preto e pucho e encenso macho e marfim e çafraim que todo deram agora a peso e dinheiro as mercadarias da china nam digo a qui por que por palavra ho direi se

<sup>66</sup> As mentioned above.

<sup>67</sup> See Whiteway's *Rise of Portuguese Power in India*, pp. 320-321.

<sup>68</sup> Correa (III. p. 82) says that Pero Mascarenhas, before leaving Malacca for India in August 1526 to take up the governorship, granted to Duarte Coelho, as a reward for having brought the official documents announcing his accession to that office, "a voyage that he might make to Cunda, to load pepper, and that he might go to China to make his profit, which was good payment for his good news (*aleiçaras*)."<sup>69</sup> After the capture of the fortress of Bintang Duarte Coelho did indeed sail in company of Francisco de Sá for Sunda; but the voyage was a most disastrous one, and Coelho had to return to Malacca without his pepper, and with his hopes of a voyage to China blasted. (Correa, III. p. 92.)

<sup>69</sup> Referred to in Sir W. W. Hunter's *History of British India*, I. p. 185. The copy here given is from the India Office transcript. The original is preserved in the Torre do Tombo at Lisbon (*Corpo Chronologico*, parte 1, maço 35, doc. 78).



for serviço de vosa alteza sabelo de mim, e en senhor hey dir catar hum irmão meu que me ficou em cantão em arrefês por a verdade dos portuguezes, e por eles nam quererem obedecer aos mandados del Rey da China e quererem faser guerra na China e matar e roubar a terra onde se fes muito mall nesta nam digo a vosa alteza mais por que por mim o sabera quando for ser serviço que nesta cidade estou por nam ter la gasalhado e meus desejos senhor são servir vosa alteza naquellas partes por que sey escusallas digo aserrarrillas (?), e nesta digo que na China valem oitenta proras (*sic*) boas hum cruzado a troco de pimenta, fico rogando a dens por o reall estado de vosa alteza a dezeseis de janeiro de quinhentos vinte e sete = serviço de vossa alteza = Dioguo Calvo = A el Rey nosso senhor = De seu serviço = *A margem* = de dioguo Calvo que foi á chyna que el Rey deve ouvir.

*Translation.*

Sire, — Since giving your Highness the observations,<sup>100</sup> that you might by means of them question me on the affairs of China, regarding the uprising in the country, several persons knew of it, for which reason they begged me that if your Highness questioned me as to the riches of the country I should not declare all, and should hold my tongue, because if I lost the chance of favor with your highness they would do me a good turn; and your Highness is my king and God of the country. Let your Highness consider well what I did, that you may know for certain that under the sun there is no country so rich as China in all the articles of merchandize that are in demand for the mouth and cheap, and all things for your magazines in India, so that you need not send to them anything else but sail-cloths, because all the rest is to be had in China and can come to them very cheaply, namely, yards, masts, pitch, planking, nails, lead, iron, copper, quicksilver;<sup>1</sup> and the other wares are very rich, which are too many to describe. This advice I give to your Highness that you may know what has to be done, and I, sire, not discovered<sup>2</sup> to tell the truth to your Highness, because I am alone and without the protection of a lord. And let your highness know for certain that at this present time they will allow in China articles of merchandize of your Highness's, because the five years have already passed, as the king commanded to tell me that no goods should go until five years had passed;<sup>3</sup> for a relative<sup>4</sup> of mine who was in the kingdom of Siam told me that the Chinese were desirous of receiving from us pepper and black wood and putchuck and frankincense and ivory and saffron, and that they would now give everything by weight and for money. I do not here tell the wares of China, because I shall tell it by word of mouth if it shall be for the service of your Highness to know it from me. And I, sire, have to go to free a brother of mine whom I left in Canton as hostage for the veracity of the Portuguese, and because they were not willing to obey the orders of the king of China and wished to make war in China and kill and plunder the country, where much evil was done. I do not say more to your Highness in this, because you shall know it from me when I shall go to be of service, who am in this city because of having no lodging there, and my desires, sire, are to serve your Highness in those parts, because I know how to deal with<sup>5</sup> them; and in this I say that in China eighty good pearls are worth a cruzado in exchange for pepper. I remain praying

<sup>100</sup> These do not seem to be now in existence.

<sup>1</sup> The orig. has "deserberto" for "descoberto."

<sup>2</sup> I do not know who this was.

<sup>3</sup> The orig. has "escusallas digo aserrarrillas." *Escusar* is unintelligible in this connection, and there is no such word as *aserrar*. Perhaps it is a copyist's error for *acertar*.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Vasco Calvo's letter *infra*, ff. 133-133v.

<sup>5</sup> The historians do not mention this fact.



to God for the royal estate of your Highness. The 16th of January 1527.  
Service of your Highness.

DIOGO CALVO.

To our lord the king. On his service. — On the margin:— From Diogo Calvo who was in China which the king should attend to.

There is no record of any attempt by the writer of the above letter to carry out his expressed wish to liberate his brother; and as there is no subsequent mention of him by the historians of Portuguese Asia we are left in doubt regarding the reason of this. In any case, all direct intercourse with China was barred to the Portuguese for several years yet.<sup>6</sup> In 1533, however, the then captain of Malacca, Paulo da Gama, succeeded, through his ambassador Manuel Godinho, in concluding peace with the Rajas of Pahang and Patani, who had been at war with the Portuguese for a period of fifteen years. This Manuel Godinho accomplished, says Castanheda,<sup>7</sup> "much to the wish of Dom Paulo, and as befitted the service of the king of Portugal, so that it was to the great profit of his revenue and that of his vassals; and these conventions were the cause of their again trading in China, where there were afterwards discovered by our people more than fifty ports better than those of Canton, as I shall relate further on."<sup>8</sup>

As an outcome of these agreements, we find<sup>9</sup> that in July 1534 Estevão da Gama, who had succeeded to the captaincy of Malacca on the death of his brother, sent Simão Sodré to Pahang and Francisco de Barros to Patani for the purpose of obtaining provisions for Malacca, of which it stood in sore straits owing to the war with the Raja of Ujantana, son of the late Raja of Bintang. Francisco de Barros remained at Patani, being unable to leave owing to his ship's having been requisitioned by Simão Sodré to fight the Raja of Ujantana's fleet. In June or July 1535, therefore, Estevão da Gama sent Henrique Mendes de Vasconcellos to Patani to bring Francisco de Barros away, "as also," says Castanheda, "to give orders that there should go from there to China a junk that he sent there to prove if they were willing to carry on trade as they did in time past." That the junk actually was dispatched for China we are also told;<sup>10</sup> but as to how it fared we are left in entire ignorance by the Portuguese historians.

It is noteworthy, however, that Vasco Calvo, in his letter given below, writing in October 1536, refers<sup>11</sup> to a letter he had received from the person he is addressing, who, from what he says,<sup>12</sup> was then off the island of Hainan. It is evident from this that by some means the Portuguese had succeeded in communicating with the captives in Canton, who, we see, were still hoping for the deliverance that never came. Who Vasco Calvo's correspondent was we have no means of ascertaining, nor whether he was on the junk sent from Patani in the previous year. The historians seem to have entered into a conspiracy of silence regarding China at this period, their attention being taken up with the doings of Antonio Galvão, the "apostle of the Moluccas" and author of "The Discoveries of the World."<sup>13</sup>

<sup>6</sup> Correa tells us (III. p. 439), that in 1531 there arrived in India in the fleet of that year from Portugal Diogo Botelho in the *Vera Cruz*, Manuel Botelho in the *Trinidade*, and Jan' Homem, a Genoese, in the *Santa Cruz*, who were to go for three years to China and all parts of India factoring for the queen; but he subsequently states, that the governor (Nuno da Cunha) sent these ships back to Lisbon "because China was disturbed."

<sup>7</sup> VIII. lvi. (See also Correa, III. p. 487.)

<sup>8</sup> This Castanheda did, doubtless, in book IX. or X., both of which are lost.

<sup>9</sup> See Cast., VIII. lxxix., lxxxix.; Correa, III. p. 631; Barros, Dec. IV., IX. xv.

<sup>10</sup> It was just after this that the famous engagement took place off Patani between Henrique Mendes and Francisco de Barros and an overwhelming fleet of pirates, whom they succeeded in beating off after great loss. See Whiteway's *Rise of Port. Power in India*, p. 330.)

<sup>11</sup> f. 124.

<sup>12</sup> f. 128.

<sup>13</sup> Sir A. Ljungstedt, in his *Historical Sketch of the Portuguese Settlements in China*, p. 11, says:—"Chinese chronologists have noted down, that in the 30th year of the reign of Kea-tsing [1535] one foreign vessel appeared, and in [1537] another on the coast of the gulf of China. The merchants required and obtained permission to land and to raise a few huts for temporary shelter, and the drying of goods, which had been damaged on board the ships." I have not found any authority for this statement.



It is not until the year 1542 that we again hear of China, and then in connection with an event of much importance, namely, the rediscovery of Japan by the Portuguese. Couto says<sup>14</sup> :—

There being in this year of 1542, of which we are treating, three Portuguese companions, named **Antonio da Mota**, **Francisco Zeimoto** and **Antonio Peixoto**, in the port of Siam, with a junk of theirs, carrying on their trade, they resolved to go to China, because of its being then a voyage of much profit. And loading the junk with pelts and other commodities, they set sail, and with fair weather crossed the great Gulf of Hainan, and passed by the city of Canton, in order to go and seek the port of the Chinchew,<sup>15</sup> because they could not enter that city; because after that in the year 1515 **Fernão Peres de Andrade**, being in China as ambassador,<sup>16</sup> flogged a mandarin (who are those that administer justice, which among those heathen is much venerated), the Portuguese became so detested and abhorred, that the king commanded by a general edict: "That the men with the beards and large eyes should no more be permitted within his realms," which was inscribed in large letters of gold, and affixed to the gates of the city of Canton.<sup>17</sup> And thus no Portuguese had dared to go to its port; and some ships at various times afterwards went to some islands off that coast to exchange their commodities, whence, however, they turned them away. Afterwards they went on to the Chinchew, whither these were going, and where they permitted them because of the profit that they derived from the commerce; but they carried on their business at sea, because they did not trust them.<sup>18</sup>

In August 1543, Correa tells us,<sup>19</sup> there was dispatched from India "to go to China **Jeronymo Gomes**, a favorite of the Governor's,<sup>20</sup> in a good ship laden with pepper, with great powers as captain-major, that no one should go there except whom he wished; the which went there, and made so much money that he talked only of a hundred or a hundred and fifty thousand cruzados: with which there entered into him such pride and vanity, that he said that Fortune had not now the power to deprive him of his hundred thousand cruzados; but God, in order to humble his pride, was pleased to send him such a reverse, that he came from Malacca to India without possessing a shirt."

Another man who had been granted a voyage to China was still more unfortunate, as we learn from the same writer.<sup>21</sup> This was **Alonso Henriques de Sepulveda**, who in 1544 was at Malacca with a ship laden with pepper waiting for the monsoon in order to make a voyage to China, which the governor of India had given him as a reward for having spent much in the king's service. He was, however, foolish enough to organize an attempt to seize the fort of Malacca by violence after the death of the captain **Ruy Vaz Pereira**, his object being to oust **Simão Botelho** from his supervision of the custom-house. The attempt having failed, however, **Alonso Henriques** was sent on board his ship as a prisoner; but when the monsoon set in **Simão Botelho** gave him permission to go to China. Knowing, however, that if he did this he would have to return to Malacca, where by that time an order might have come from the governor to imprison him and confiscate his property, he sailed for Tenasserim, sold his pepper there at a large profit,

<sup>14</sup> Dec. V., VIII. xii. (See also Ant. Galvão, *op. cit.* p. 229.)

<sup>15</sup> Port. *o Chinchew*. See *Hobson-Jobson*, s. v. 'Chinchew,' regarding the confused use of this word for the port of Changchau-fû and the people of Fûkien.

<sup>16</sup> There are three gross errors here. Thomé Pires was the ambassador; it was **Simão d'Andrade** who maltreated the mandarin; and this outrage took place in 1520 or 1521.

<sup>17</sup> I have found no corroboration of this statement, which may, however, be true.

<sup>18</sup> Cf. the extracts below from Gaspar da Cruz. The account in Couto goes on to tell how a typhoon drove the junk to Japan, where the Portuguese were well treated by the natives, exchanged their goods for silver, and returned to Malacca well content.

<sup>19</sup> IV. p. 307.

<sup>20</sup> **Martim Afonso de Sousa**.

<sup>21</sup> Correa, IV. pp. 416, 418. (See also Whiteway's *Rise of Port. Power in India*, pp. 92-93.)



and left for India, whither he had sent in advance a small vessel to beg the governor's clemency. His ship was, however, wrecked on an island off the coast of Siam, to which country he and his company escaped in the boat, but were put to death by the Siamese.<sup>22</sup>

We have seen that commercial relations had been renewed between the Portuguese and the Chinese.<sup>23</sup> We are told by Fr. Gaspar da Cruz<sup>24</sup> that "after the disturbance that Fernā Perez Dandrade caused,<sup>25</sup> business was carried on with much difficulty, they would not allow the Portuguese into the country, and through hatred and abhorrence they called them *fācui*,<sup>26</sup> that is to say, 'men of the devil.' " ("Now," he adds, "they do not hold intercourse with us under the name of Portuguese, nor did this name go to the court when they agreed to pay customs dues: but under the name of *fāgim*,<sup>27</sup> that is to say, 'people of another coast.' ") He goes on to relate how, after "the scandal of Fernā Dādrade," the Chinese that carried on trade by sea with Malacca, Siam, Patani, etc., induced the Portuguese to go to Ningpo to carry on trade; and this proving successful they extended their operations to Chinchew, the islands of Canton, and ultimately as far north as Nanking, the Chinese officials conniving at their transactions owing to the profits they gained thereby. Emboldened by success, the Portuguese began to winter in the islands of Ningpo; and, as might be expected, quarrels took place, leading to murders on each side. Tidings of these evil doings having reached the ears of the emperor, he ordered a large fleet to be prepared in the province of Fūkien to drive the foreign robbers once more from the coast. This fleet, being unable through contrary winds to make Ningpo, proceeded to Chinchew, where it blockaded the Portuguese ships that lay there. After some time spent in desultory fighting, the Portuguese, seeing no chance of completing their business transactions, resolved to depart without the cargoes they had expected. The captains of the Chinese fleet, however, learning of this intention, sent a secret message by night, offering, on consideration of a present, to send them some goods. This was of course agreed to: and so matters were settled to the satisfaction of both parties. This took place in 1548.

In the following year, 1549, however, the Chinese fleet blockaded the coast so straitly that the Portuguese were scarcely able to obtain provisions, much less effect an exchange of commodities. Their ships therefore returned nearly empty to India, the unsold goods being left in two junks belonging to expatriated Chinese traders, with thirty Portuguese to guard them.<sup>28</sup> The captains of the Chinese fleet, learning of this rich booty from some merchants on shore, swooped down upon the two junks, and partly by stratagem, partly by force, succeeded in capturing them, after killing several of the Portuguese and wounding others. The Chinese belonging to the junks were cruelly treated; and of the Portuguese some were put to death, and four were dressed up and entitled "the kings of Malacca" by the "*luthissi*"<sup>29</sup> for his own glory, and in cages sent about from city to city, until they came to where the *haitao* was, with whom the "*luthissi*" had agreed to share the plunder. Happily, however, the emperor heard of these doings, and sent some officials to hold an inquiry: with the result that the Chinese malefactors and one or two Portuguese were condemned to capital or lesser punishment, and the rest of the Portuguese were conveyed to the city of "Cāsi,"<sup>30</sup> whence they were afterwards dispersed by twos and threes throughout various parts of the country. When

<sup>22</sup> This last part reads like a repetition of the story of Pero Lourenço de Mello, given in a footnote *supra*.

<sup>23</sup> In September 1545 Simão de Mello was sent from India as captain of Malacca, "and with him Diogo Soares de Mello, who had been provided by the governor Martin Affonso de Sousa with the captaincy of Patane, beyond Malacca, to make the China merchants come and dispatch their business at Malacca, because, in order not to pay duties, they had formed an emporium at that port, whereby the king's revenue suffered notable loss." (Couto, Dec. VI., l. i.) We are also told by Couto (Dec. VI., V. i.) that in July 1546 Diogo Soares dispatched from Patani for China several Portuguese vessels.

<sup>24</sup> *Tractado da China*, chap. xxiii. et seq. (See also Purchas, *Pilg.* III. p. 190 ff.)

<sup>25</sup> Not Fernā Peres, but Simão de Andrade, as related above.

<sup>26</sup> Chin. *fan-kuei*, "foreign demon." (See Hobson-Jobson, s. r. 'Fanqui'.)

<sup>27</sup> *Frangis*, Franks. (See Hobson-Jobson, s. r. 'Firinghee,' and cf. Christovão Vieyra's letter *infra*, f. 164v.)

<sup>28</sup> At what port is not stated, but apparently at Chinchew.

<sup>29</sup> Chin. *lao-tyé* 老妖. (See *infra* regarding titles of Chinese officials.)

<sup>30</sup> Hancow, capital of Chehkiang. (See Yule's *Marco Polo*, II. p. 152 n.)



Portuguese ships were once more permitted to carry on trade at Canton a number of these captives succeeded from time to time in regaining their liberty, the Portuguese merchants offering rewards to any Chinese who would assist them to do this.<sup>31</sup>

It was at this time that Francis Xavier visited Japan and spent some two years and a half there in preaching the gospel. On leaving that country in 1551 he resolved to attempt the evangelization of China; and accordingly, having obtained permission from the viceroy of India, he left Malacca in July 1552,<sup>32</sup> and arrived in August at the island of St. John (Shanghai), where, however, he soon sickened, and died on the 2nd of December, his body being interred in that desolate island.<sup>33</sup>

Thus Xavier's mission, which had a political as well as a religious object,<sup>34</sup> came to naught. However, we learn from Gaspar da Cruz that "since the year 1554 Leonel de Souza, a native of Algarve, and married in Chaul, being captain-major, agreed with the Chinas that they [the Portuguese] should pay their customs dues, and that they should allow them to carry on their trade in their ports.<sup>35</sup> And since that time they carry it on in Cantão, which is the chief port of China: and thither the Chinas repair with their silks and musk, which are the principal articles in which the Portuguese deal in China. There there are safe ports where they lie quietly without risk and without disturbance from anyone. And thus at present the Chinas observe well their treaties: and now the great and small rejoice much at the agreement with the Portuguese, and the fame of them spreads throughout the whole of China. Wherefore several nobles of the court came to Cantão solely to see them on account of having heard the fame of them."<sup>36</sup>

It will be observed that in the above sketch of Portuguese intercourse with China during the first half of the sixteenth century I have taken no note of the alleged peregrination of Fernão Mendez Pinto in that empire in 1542-1544. Although Faria y Sousa has entered as historical facts in his *Asia Portuguesa*<sup>37</sup> various events described by Fernão Mendez, and has accorded him a certificate of veracity, I am afraid that Congreve was only too just when he wrote:<sup>38</sup> "Ferdinand Mendez Pinto was but a type of thee, thou liar of the first magnitude." I do not mean to assert that the whole *Peregrinação* is a fabrication; but I am convinced, from internal evidence, that many of the incidents related are pure fiction, and that others, genuine enough, either took place before the writer<sup>39</sup> came to India, or formed no part of his adventures.<sup>40</sup> I append some instances of sheer mendacities.

<sup>31</sup> Fr. Gaspar da Cruz, during his residence in Canton, met several of these escaped prisoners, among whom seems to have been Galeotto Pereira, the writer of the description of China referred to *infra*.

<sup>32</sup> After a serious quarrel — for which he was largely, if not entirely, to blame — with the captain of that place, D. Alvaro d'Ataide da Gama. (See Couto, *Dec. VI.*, X. vii.; and Whiteway's *Rise of Port. Power in India*, p. 76.)

<sup>33</sup> It was afterwards removed to Goa.

<sup>34</sup> Cf. Couto, *Dec. VI.*, X. vi.

<sup>35</sup> It is remarkable, that this is the only reference I have found to this important agreement.

<sup>36</sup> *Tratado da China*, cap. xxiii. (See also Pires, *Pilg.* III. p. 190.)

<sup>37</sup> II, I. i., etc. See also I., App., cap. vii., where Faria y Sousa quotes Pinto's stories (see *infra*) of Inez de Leiria and Vasco Calvo, and indulges in some pious reflections on the early propagation of the Catholic faith in China by their means.

<sup>38</sup> *Love for Love*, Act ii., sc. i.

<sup>39</sup> I am extremely doubtful if the whole of the book, not published until 1614 (some thirty years after its alleged author's death and more than fifty after his return from the East), was really written by Fernão Mendez Pinto. I am inclined to share the belief of Mr. R. S. Whiteway that the Jesuits had a hand in its concoction, with a view to the glorification of Xavier. It is worthy of note that Couto (*Dec. IX.* xxix.) records that a certain Gonçalo Mendes Pinto was at Banda in 1574 making some voyages on a contract with Martim Afonso de Mello Pereira, and that the Bandanese made a plot to murder him and his companions and seize their ship and goods, in which, however, they were foiled.

<sup>40</sup> According to the *Peregrinação* Fernão Mendez Pinto left Goa on 13th April 1539 for Malacca with Pedro de Faria, who was to succeed Estevão da Gama as captain of that place. He arrived at Malacca on 5th June, and within the next few months was sent by Pedro de Faria as ambassador to the king of the Batas and the king of Aru. We also read of big fights taking place between the kings of Achin and Aru and the king of Ujantana and the Achinese, — likewise in 1539. Now it is significant that Correa and Couto are both silent regarding any such events; and it is curious that Correa alone mentions that Pedro de Faria was captain of Malacca at this time. It is also a strange coincidence that Castanheda, Correa, Barros and Couto all tell us that just after Pedro de Faria assumed the captaincy of Malacca in 1528 an ambassador came from the king of Aru asking for help against the king of



In chapter lxxv.,<sup>41</sup> where the encounter between the Portuguese under Antonio de Faria and the forces of the mandarin of "Nonday" is described, we are told that the Chinese leader "was mounted on a good horse, with certain cuirasses of red velvet with gilt studs of ancient date, which we afterwards learnt belonged to one Thomé Pirez whom the king Dom Manoel of glorious memory sent as ambassador to China, in the ship of Fernão Perez Dandrade, when Lopo Soares Dalbergaria was governing the State of India." This was in 1541 apparently; and I have no evidence to confirm or contradict the statement regarding the cuirasses of Thomé Pires.

But the next incident that I quote can be proved, thanks to the letter of Christovão Vieyra, to be an unblushing falsehood. In chapter xci.<sup>42</sup> we are told that (in 1543?) Fernão Mendez met in the city of "Sampitay" a Christian woman, who informed him "that she was called Inez de Leiria, and that her father was called Thomé Pirez, who went from this kingdom as ambassador to the king of China, and whom, through a disturbance that a captain<sup>43</sup> of ours made in Canton, the Chinese regarded as a spy and not an ambassador as he said, and seized him with twelve<sup>44</sup> other men that he had brought with him, and after they had as punishment given them many floggings and tortures, of which five soon died, they banished the others,<sup>45</sup> separating them from one another, to diverse places, where they died devoured by lice;<sup>46</sup> of whom only one was living, who was called Vasco Calvo,<sup>47</sup> native of a town in our country named Alcouchete,<sup>48</sup> for thus she had many times heard from her father, shedding many tears when he spoke of this. And that it chanced to her father to be banished to that district, where he married her mother, because she had some property of her own, and made her a Christian, and during the whole twenty-seven years<sup>49</sup> that he abode there married to her they both lived very catholically, converting many heathen to the faith of Christ, of whom there were still in that city more than three hundred, who every Sunday gathered there in her house for instruction." Other details are given regarding this pious woman; but the whole pretty story falls to pieces like a house of cards when we remember that, as mentioned above, poor Thomé Pires died in prison in Canton in May 1524.

But the next extract that I would quote goes a step further in mendacity. In chapter cxvi.<sup>50</sup> we are told that in the year 1544, when he was in the city of "Quansy,"<sup>51</sup> Fernão Mendez encountered "an old man dressed in clothes of black damask lined with the skins of white lambs," who, after somewhat mysterious behaviour, produced a silver cross, and, falling on his knees, with sobs and tears expressed his gratitude for having been permitted, after so long a time, to once more behold a Christian man. On being asked who he was, this old man replied: — "I am, my brother, a poor Portuguese Christian, by name Vasco Calvo, brother of Diogo Calvo who was captain of the ship of Dom Nuno Manoel, a native of Alcouchete, it being now twenty-seven years that I was made a captive with Thomé Pirez, whom Lopo Soares sent as ambassador to this Chinese king,<sup>52</sup> and who afterwards came to a

Achin, with whom he was at war. There is a suspicious similarity about these two accounts. Then we are informed that Fernão Mendez, after visiting Pahang and Patani, left the latter place on 9th May 1540 with Antonio de Faria de Sousa on a voyage to Hainan, during which the most marvellous adventures with pirates were experienced. I have only to remark, that no mention is made by any of the above writers of such a person as Antonio de Faria de Sousa, whom I believe to be as much a product of the writer's brain as the various adventures with pirates, etc., that he is said to have met with. In the *Peregrinação* the dates of events are mostly unrecorded; but where they are given, especially in the later portion of the book, they are in many cases manifestly absurdly incorrect. It is much to be regretted that no competent scholar has undertaken to properly edit the *Peregrinação*, showing how much is fiction and how much fact, and of the fact how much is from personal experience and how much stolen from earlier writers. I am astonished that such an able scholar as Mr. Major, in his Introduction to the Hakluyt Society's edition of Mendoza, should, after referring to Mendez Pinto's alleged adventures in China, conclude: — "Upon the whole, his remarks leave no doubt, we think, of the truth of his having been an eye-witness of what he records."

<sup>41</sup> Chap. xxii. of the English translation. <sup>42</sup> Chap. xlix. of Eng. trans. <sup>43</sup> Simão de Andrade. (See *supra*.)

<sup>44</sup> There were nearly double that number, according to Christovão Vieyra (f. 111v.).

<sup>45</sup> A pure invention, not one of the unfortunate captives having been removed from Canton.

<sup>46</sup> A characteristic touch, intended to give verisimilitude to the narrative.

<sup>47</sup> See next paragraph.

<sup>48</sup> This may be a fact: I cannot tell. (See next paragraph.)

<sup>49</sup> It is not said when he died; but even if it had been in 1544 that would make Thomé Pires's banishment date from 1517, the year in which he arrived in China with Fernão Pires de Andrade!

<sup>50</sup> Chap. xlvii. of Eng. trans.

<sup>51</sup> Cf. note *supra* regarding "the city of Cási."

<sup>52</sup> It was not to "this Chinese king" (Kiahsing) but to his predecessor Chingti that Thomé Pires was sent on embassy.



miserable end through a disturbance by a Portuguese captain." Then, the two having mingled their tears and taken their seats on the ground, "beginning again to tell me all the story of his sufferings, he related to me the whole course of his life, and all the rest that had happened, since he left this kingdom until then, and also regarding the death of the ambassador Tomé Pires<sup>53</sup> and of the rest whom Fernão Perez Dandrada left with him in Cantão to go to the king of China, the which, as he told it to me, does not conform much with what our historians have written."<sup>54</sup> This pseudo Vasco Calvo then conducts Fernão Mendez to his house, to which also his companions are invited, and there they are introduced to their host's wife and four children (two boys and two girls), who after dinner offer prayer in Portuguese before an altar in a secret oratory. Another very touching story: but the writer appears to have forgotten what he had previously invented regarding Thomé Pires, and so contradicts himself; while, as to Vasco Calvo, we may take it as absolutely certain that he died in prison in Canton within a year or two of writing the letter of 1536 given below.

I shall not enter upon the question of the genuineness of other alleged adventures of Fernão Mendez Pinto in China, Siam, etc., nor discuss whether he was or was not in Japan with Xavier:<sup>55</sup> but I would refer to two statements of his, which, having been recorded as history by Faria y Sousa in his *Asia Portuguesa*, are still being put forward by writers on the history of China as authentic.<sup>56</sup> These statements are to be found in chapter cxxi,<sup>57</sup> of the *Peregrinação*, where we read that in the year 1542 there took place at "Liampo,"<sup>58</sup> — where there was a settlement of three thousand Christians, twelve hundred of whom were Portuguese, and which was practically a Portuguese colony, with a governor, judges and other officials, hospitals, etc., — a terrible massacre by the Chinese, in which twelve thousand<sup>59</sup> Christians (eight hundred of them Portuguese) perished, and immense damage was done to property. Two years later, it is stated, the Portuguese succeeded in establishing a colony at Chinchew; but after two years and a half of peaceful trade a rising of the Chinese took place here also, only thirty out of five hundred Portuguese escaping with their lives, their ships and other property being burnt or plundered. I consider both these stories to be pure fiction, without any basis in fact; and I even feel very doubtful whether such an island as "Lampacan"<sup>60</sup> ever existed except in the brain of the writer.

The Chinese annals do not appear to contain much regarding the early intercourse of the Portuguese with China;<sup>61</sup> and some of their statements are far from correct.<sup>62</sup> The only record of

<sup>53</sup> Who, we had previously been told, lived for twenty-seven years married in "Sampitay".

<sup>54</sup> A candid confession! <sup>55</sup> Cf. Sir James Stephen's *Essay in Ecclesiastical Biography* (4th ed.), p. 149 n.

<sup>56</sup> Cf., *int. al.*, Sir A. Ljungstedt's *Historical Sketch of the Portuguese Settlements in China*, pp. 2-9, etc.; the Viscount de Santarém's *Memoria sobre o Estabelecimento de Macau*, p. 14; Wells Williams's *Middle Kingdom*, II, p. 428; Prof. R. K. Douglas's *China (Story of the Nations)*, p. 48; Danvers's *Portuguese in India*, I, pp. 487, 486; Denny's *Treaty Ports of China and Japan*, p. 329.

<sup>57</sup> Chap. lxxviii. of the Eng. trans. (See also chap. lxxi. of orig. xxiii. of Eng. trans.)

<sup>58</sup> That is, Ningpo. (See Yule's *Hobson-Jobson*, s. v. 'Liampo.') Barros states, in referring to the riches of China: — "Finally it is so great, and so well-provided with everything, that some of our people, being in a port near the city of Nimpo, in three months saw loaded four hundred bahars of floss and woven silk, which are one thousand three hundred quintals of ours." (*Dec. I, IX. i.*) As Barros's *Primeira Decada* was published in 1552, it is evident that the Portuguese had visited Ningpo some years previously; but I have found no record of the exact date of their first visit to that place.

<sup>59</sup> The Eng. trans. has "twelve hundred."

<sup>60</sup> Where, according to the *Peregrinação*, the Portuguese carried on trade with the Chinese from some time before 1554 until 1557, when Macao was granted to them by the mandarins of Canton. (Cf. *Mid. King. II.* p. 428; Ljungstedt, *op. cit.* p. 9.)

<sup>61</sup> M. Pauthier, in his *Histoire des Relations Politiques de la Chine avec les Puissances Occidentales* (p. 42 n), after a short and not very correct reference to the embassy of 1517, says: — "Les Annales de Canton disent que la première année Young-lo (1425) le roi de Portugal, royaume de l'Océan occidental, envoya un ambassadeur en Chine; et que trois années après (en 1428) il lui en envoya un autre avec un tribut. Celles-ci, si elles étaient réelles, auraient précédé celles de Thomas Pires." There is, of course, some great confusion here.

<sup>62</sup> Wells Williams quotes in his *Mid. King. II.* p. 427, the following from a Chinese work, and adds that the record is still good authority in the general opinion of the natives: — "During the reign of Chingti (1506) foreigners from the West, called Fah-lan-ki [Franks], who said that they had tribute, abruptly entered the Bogue and by their tremendously loud guns, shook the place far and near. This was reported at court, and an order returned to drive them away immediately and stop their trade."



any value that I have been able to find is one translated by the late Mr. W. F. Mayers in *Notes and Queries on China and Japan*.<sup>63</sup> Mr. Mayers writes:—

The following brief contemporaneous account of the arrival of **Fernão Peres do Andrade** at Canton in 1517, when Europeans for the first time landed in China, does not appear to have been hitherto noticed, and is not without interest, as the earliest Chinese mention of European visitors. It is quoted in a work on the Art of War, published under the Ming Dynasty, A. D. 1621, in the course of a description of cannon and firearms:—

"Ku Ying-siang says as follows:—**Fu-lang-ki** is the name of a country, not the name of a gun. In the year *ting-ch'ow* of the reign **Chêng-tê** (A. D. 1517) I was in office as Supervisor in Kwang-tung, and was Acting Commissioner for Maritime affairs. There suddenly arrived [at this time] two large seagoing vessels, which came straight to the **Hwai-yüan** (cherishing-those-from-afar) post-station at the city of Canton, giving out that they had brought tribute from the country of *Fu-lang-ki* [Feringhi, Franks]. The master of the vessels was named **ka-pi-tan**.<sup>64</sup> The people on board all had prominent noses and deeply-sunk eyes, wearing folds of white cloth around their heads, like the costume of the Mohammedans. Report was at once made to the Viceroy, His Excellency **Ch'ên Si-hien**, who thereupon honoured Canton with his presence,<sup>65</sup> and who gave orders that, as these people knew nothing of etiquette, they should be instructed for three days in the proper ceremonies<sup>66</sup> at the Kwang Hiao Sze (the Mohammedan Mosque); after which they were introduced. It being found that the *Ta Ming Hwei Tien* [collected Ordinances of the Ming Dynasty] contain no mention whatever of tribute being received from the nation in question, a full report of the matter was transmitted to His Majesty, who consented to the transmission [of the individuals and presents] to the Board [of Rites]. At this time His Majesty was engaged in a tour in the Southern Provinces, and [the foreigners] were left in the same lodging with myself for close upon a year. When his present Majesty ascended the Throne [i. e., the Emperor **Shih Tsung**, who succeeded to the Throne in 1521], in consequence of disrespectful conduct on the [foreigners'] part, the interpreter<sup>67</sup> was subjected to capital punishment and his men were sent back in custody to Canton, and expelled beyond the frontiers of the Province. During the long stay made by these people at Canton they manifested particular fondness for the study of the Buddhist writings.<sup>68</sup> Their guns were made of iron, and five or six feet in length . . . ."

Who Ku Ying-siang was is not stated in the work from which the above extract is taken; but in all probability, he was one of the progenitors of the celebrated Ku Yen-wu of the present dynasty, in whose biography mention is made of an ancestor who held office at Canton during the reign **Chêng Tê**.

The two large vessels referred to are obviously those which the early Portuguese chroniclers themselves speak of as having been taken to Canton, the two remaining ships and four Malay junks belonging to the Expedition having been left at anchor near the island of St. John's.<sup>69</sup>

<sup>63</sup> Vol. 2, p. 129.

<sup>64</sup> Cf. Christovão Vieyra's letter *infra*, f. 112.

<sup>65</sup> "The residence of the Viceroys being at that time Shao-k'ing Fu," says Mr. Mayers in a footnote; but, according to the statement of Christovão Vieyra (f. 120), it was at Wuchau that the chief provincial officials resided.

<sup>66</sup> The Portuguese historians say nothing of this.

<sup>67</sup> Mayers appends the following footnote:—"This was Thomé Pires, who was despatched in charge of the presents from Canton." This is an error: it was the native interpreters who were beheaded, as stated by Christovão Vieyra in his letter *infra* (f. 112).

<sup>68</sup> Cf. with this statement that of Vasco Calvo in his letter *infra* (f. 131v.). <sup>69</sup> This is a mistake. See *infra*.



Though interesting, the extract translated by Mr. Mayers adds but little to our knowledge; and it certainly seems strange that there should not exist among the Chinese annals a full record of the events connected with the first and subsequent visits of the Portuguese to China, especially as the foreigners suffered so severely at the hands of the Celestials, — a fact which the Chinese historians would, one would think, not be unwilling to leave on record.

It was not until after the agreement made in 1554 between Leonel de Sousa and the Canton officials that the Portuguese appear to have been able to obtain detailed and more or less accurate information regarding China and its people.<sup>70</sup> The account given by Castanheda in cap. xxvii. of his *Livro III.*, printed in 1553, is very meagre and not free from errors. The description of Canton in cap. xxix., however, is full and interesting and, I should think, generally accurate.

The next printed account of China seems to have been that given in the 1561 edition of Francisco Alvares's *Historia de Ethiopia*, an English translation of which will be found in Major's Introduction to the Hakluyt Society's edition of Mendoza mentioned below, pp. xxxix.-li. This relation was given at Malacca in the college of the Jesuits by a man who had been six years a captive in China,<sup>71</sup> and its special value lies in the fact that the narrator describes only what came within his personal cognisance.

A couple of years after the above anonymous relation appeared in print Barros's *Decada Terceira* was published (1563); and in the seventh chapter of the second book of this decade the great Portuguese historiographer gives, in connection with the visit of Fernão Peres de Andrade, a description of China in general and of Canton in particular. The description of China is, by his own admission,<sup>72</sup> a mere summary; but the author has done his best to make it accurate, having, for this purpose, made use of original documents.<sup>73</sup> The same remark may apply to his description of Canton,<sup>74</sup> which is very much briefer than that of Castanheda.

In 1569-70<sup>75</sup> there appeared at Evora a small quarto volume in black-letter intitled *Tractado em que se cõtam muito por estêso as cousas da China, cõ suas particularidades, & assi do reyno dormuz cõposto por el. R. Padre frey Gaspar da Cruz da ordẽ de sam Domingos. Dirigido ao muito poderoso Rey dom Sebastiam nosso seõnor*. From the Prologue by the printer, Andre de Burgos, we learn that Dom Francisco Henriques, captain of Malacca,<sup>76</sup> had some short time previously sent to the youthful king of Portugal a "brief relation" of the things of China; but of this we know nothing more.<sup>77</sup> The "tractate" of Gaspar da Cruz<sup>78</sup> comprises twenty-nine chapters, the author relating

<sup>70</sup> The letters of Christovão Vieyra and Vasco Calvo were evidently unknown to Castanheda even in 1563. (Cf. footnote *supra*, and see below as to Barros's use of them.)

<sup>71</sup> Possibly he and Galeotto Pereira (see *infra*) were among those captured by the Chinese in 1549, as described above.

<sup>72</sup> Dec. III., II. vi. and vii., where he explains that he treats fully of the country in his Geography, which, however, seems never to have been completed, and every vestige of which has now unhappily disappeared.

<sup>73</sup> From Dec. I., IX. i., we learn that Barros had in his possession "a book of cosmography of the Chij printed by them, with all the situation of the country in the form of an itinerary, which was brought to us from there, and interpreted by a Chij, whom we had for that purpose." Again, in Dec. III., II. vii., after referring to the Great Wall of China, he adds:—"This wall is entered in a geographical map of that whole country, made by the same Chij, where are located all the mountains, rivers, cities, towns, with their names written in the letters of those people, the which we ordered to be brought from there with a Chij for the interpretation thereof and of some of their books, which we also obtained. And before this map we had acquired a book of cosmography of small size with tables of the situation of the country, and a commentary upon them in the manner of an itinerary; and although this wall was not depicted therein, we obtained information regarding it." What became of these books and map, I am unable to say.

<sup>74</sup> The details he gives regarding this city, Barros says (Dec. III., II. vii.), he obtained, not only from Fernão Peres de Andrade and others of his company, but "from a drawing of it from nature, which they brought to us from there." I fear that there is little likelihood that this interesting drawing is still in existence.

<sup>75</sup> The title-page bears the date 1569, but the colophon has 1570.

<sup>76</sup> According to Couto (Dec. IX. xvii.) D. Francisco Henriques was captain of Malacca from November 1573 to November 1574, when he died; but I can find no reference to his occupying the post earlier.

<sup>77</sup> This is evidently the *Relação da China* mentioned by Barbosa Machado (*Bibliotheca Lusitana*, II. p. 162), who quotes from Ant. de Leon Pinelo's *Biblioteca Oriental*, and confesses his ignorance regarding the author and the work.

<sup>78</sup> Regarding whom see Introd. to Hak. Soc. ed. of Mendoza, p. li.



not only what he himself saw during his residence in China (1556-1569?), but information received from various Portuguese who from time to time succeeded in escaping from captivity. The translated summary given in Purchas's *Pilgrimes*, III. pp. 166-198, conveys a very fair idea of the value of this work.

Among the escaped captives met by Gaspar da Cruz during his stay in China was one **Galiote** (or Galeotto) **Pereira**, a brother of the first Count of Feira, from whom he obtained various items of information regarding the interior of the country. This man also wrote a detailed account of his adventures in China, which, curiously enough, was published in the form of an abbreviated translation into Italian some years before the tractate of Gaspar da Cruz appeared. The title of this work<sup>79</sup> is *Alcune cose del paese de la China saputi de certi Portughesi ch'ivi furon fati schiavi: e questo fu cavato d' un trattato che fece Galeoto Pereira Gentil huomo persona di molto credito il quale stette prigionero nel sudetto luogo Tuchiaen<sup>80</sup> alcuni anni.* (Venetia per Michele Tramezzino. 1565.) An abbreviated translation of this by R. Willes was printed by Richard Eden in his *Historie of Travaile in the West and East Indies* in 1577; and this was reprinted by Hakluyt in his *Principal Navigations, etc.*, II., II. pp. 68-80, and again, still further abbreviated, by Purchas in his *Pilgrimes*, III. pp. 199-209.<sup>81</sup> Like the anonymous relation referred to above, this man's narrative is of especial value as being drawn from his personal observations.

The last work to which I shall refer is the *Historia de las Cosas mas notables, Ritos y Costumbres, Del gran Reyno dela China, sabidas assi por los libros de los mesmos Chinas, como por relacion de Religiosos y otras personas que an estado en el dicho Reyno. Hecha y ordenada por el muy r. p. maestro Fr. Ioan Gonzalez de Mendoza de la Orden de S. Agustin, . . . . En Roma, . . . . 1585.* As the early English translation of this work, by R. Parke, was reprinted by the Hakluyt Society in 1853-54, edited (not very satisfactorily) by Sir G. T. Stannton, with an admirable Introduction by Mr. R. H. Major,<sup>82</sup> I need say little regarding it, beyond the fact that the author has copied largely from previous writers, besides giving the experiences of himself and his companions and other missionaries to China. It will always be of value and interest; and, as Mr. Major points out, it was the earliest *detailed* account of China ever published in the English language.

I now come to consider the two letters, of which the text and translation are given below. The copies from which the transcript is made are contained in a small quarto manuscript volume in the Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris.<sup>83</sup> It is bound in vellum, and has written on the back "12 — Historia dos reis de Bisnaga," while on the front of the cover are the words "Coronica de Bisnaga y Relacion dela china," and below "nº 7." On the flyleaf is written "St Germain franç. 1592;" and there is a modern label affixed, lettered "Port. 65."<sup>84</sup> On folio 1 at the top of the page is written "St Germaini apratis N. 2254." From this it is evident that the volume once formed a part of the library of the famous Benedictine monastery of St. Germain-des-Prés near Paris; but how it got there, I am

<sup>79</sup> Of which the British Museum Library does not possess a copy. (I quote the title from Barbosa Machado, *Bibl. Lusit.* II. p. 323.) Nor is the book mentioned in H. Cordier's *Bibliotheca Sinica*.

<sup>80</sup> Barbosa Machado (*loc. cit.*) says that the writer was a prisoner in "Tunchien;" but Gaspar da Cruz (cap. viii.) states that Gal. Pereira was imprisoned in "the city of Csil," which, as I have mentioned above, was an old name for Hangchau. ("Tuchiaen" may be a misprint for "Fuchiaen" — Fúchau.)

<sup>81</sup> Major, in his *Introd.* to the Hak. Soc. ed. of Mendoza, pp. lvi-lxvi., has quoted copious extracts.

<sup>82</sup> In view of the fact Major has given, on pp. xxxi.-xxxvi. of this Introduction, an accurate account of the facts connected with the first visits of the Portuguese to China, it is all the more remarkable that later writers, such as Wells Williams, Douglas and Danvers, should (as mentioned above) have repeated the erroneous statements of Ljungstedt. Major refers (p. xxxvi.), on the authority of Barros, to the letters received from the prisoners in Canton; but he was evidently not aware that copies of them were still extant. He also, strangely enough, refers to Remusat as giving "some interesting details" regarding Thomé Pires, the fact being that the French scholar has simply copied these details from Barros and added Mendez Pinto's fabrications. (See *Biographie Universelle*, tome 33, p. 396.)

<sup>83</sup> See brief description of it in Moral-Fatio's *Catalogue des Manuscrits Espagnols et des Manuscrits Portugais*, p. 327.

<sup>84</sup> This is the numbering of 1860: its number is now 55.



unable to say.<sup>85</sup> Folios 1-102 contain the *Chronica dos Reis de Bisnaga*<sup>86</sup> written in an archaic hand; while folios 103-153, which are of thinner paper, contain the two letters from China, the writing being of an entirely different and more modern character.

Apart from their intrinsic value owing to the information which they furnish, these letters possess a peculiar interest from the fact that they were utilized by the great Portuguese Historian João de Barros when compiling the *Third Decade* of his *Asia*. In chapters i. and ii. of the sixth book of that Decade Barros has in several places copied almost verbatim from the letter of Christovão Vieyra;<sup>87</sup> while near the end of the second chapter he says: "And according to two letters which our people received thence two or three years ago<sup>88</sup> from these two men, Vasco Calvo, brother of Diogo Calvo, and Christovão Vieira, who were imprisoned in Cantam," etc. Again, in chap. v. of bk. VIII., he says: "And according to what some of our people afterwards wrote;" and then follow further quotations from Christovão Vieyra's letter.

Of the writers of the letters I have no information beyond what they themselves furnish and the fact of the relationship of one of them to Diogo Calvo, as already mentioned. What positions they occupied I do not know; but they both seem to have been men of some social standing and education. With regard to the letters themselves, their value and interest can be judged by the translation I have given.<sup>89</sup> I may point out, however, that they contain, so far as I know, the earliest detailed account of China and the manners and customs of its inhabitants written after the first visits of the Portuguese to that empire. Considering that the writers were prisoners in the "bells" of Canton during practically the whole of their enforced residence in China, it is not surprising that some matters (such, for instance, as the religious worship of the Chinese) should not have come within their ken: the wonder is, that they should have managed to acquire so much information under such unfavorable circumstances, and should have lived to commit it to writing. It is also marvellous that even one of the duplicate sets of their letters should (even after many years) have reached the hands of the Portuguese. When one remembers the absolutely helpless condition in which the writers were at the time when they penned these letters, the full details which they furnish for the capture by the Portuguese of Canton and a large part of China itself, and their remarks regarding the ease with which the Chinese could be conquered, read somewhat strangely. The descriptions of the sea fights between the Chinese and Portuguese, ending so disastrously for the latter, tally closely with those given by the Portuguese historians; and the "casualty lists," though now of little value, must have possessed a melancholy interest at the time for the relatives and friends of the persons named. It is unfortunate that so little information is given regarding the journey of the ambassador to Peking: the reason being, that this had been described in other letters, which have, apparently, been lost. The description of Canton shows that even the terrible siege and sack of that city by the Manchus in 1650 caused little general change in its outward appearance.

<sup>85</sup> By a decision of the Committee of Public Instruction (23rd April 1795), the manuscripts of St. Germain were deposited in the Bibliothèque Nationale in 1795 and 1796. (Morel-Fatio, *Cat.*, Introd., p. x.)

<sup>86</sup> This important MS. was printed for the first time in 1897 by the Sociedade de Geografia of Lisbon in connection with the quatercentenary of the discovery of India, being edited with an excellent Introduction by Sr. David Lopes. An English translation, edited with a valuable Introduction by Mr. Robert Sewell, I. C. S. (Retd.), was published in 1900 under the title of *A Forgotten Empire*.

<sup>87</sup> Cf. for instance the concluding portion of chap. i. with f. 107 of the letter *infra*.

<sup>88</sup> Or "received two or three years afterwards." (The orig. has "*dahi a dous ou tres annos*,") If the latter is the meaning (and so Major translates it in Introd. to Hak. Soc. ed. of *Mendoza*, p. xxxvi.), the statement cannot be correct, since the letters were not written until a dozen to fifteen years afterwards; while, if the other meaning is intended, it is strange that the letters, dispatched apparently at the end of 1536, did not reach "our people" until about 1560. (Barros's *Third Decade* was published in 1563.)

<sup>89</sup> As will be seen, the Portuguese original is marked by an absence of punctuation and of capitals at the commencement of sentences, rendering the sense difficult of comprehension. The copyist also has in places blundered. I have tried to make the translation as literal as possible. To Sr. David Lopes of Lisbon I have to express my indebtedness for the kind help he has rendered me in the elucidation of several passages.



It will be noticed that in both the letters (in the first one especially) the titles of various Chinese officials are frequently mentioned. Some of these can at once be identified; but others are somewhat difficult of explanation. I append a list, giving the various forms of spelling under which each title occurs:—

- (1) *pochency, pochanci, pochuncy, pochācy, pochetcy, pochacy.*
- (2) *anchacy, amchacy, anchaçi, anchuci, anchūcy, anchiançi, anhançi.*
- (3) *cehi, ceuhi, cuhy, cuhi, ecuhi, cheuhi, cuchi.*
- (4) *tutāo.*
- (5) *conqom, conquū, conquāo, congom.*
- (6) *compim, campym.*
- (7) *choupim, choypi.*
- (8) *kaytao, oytāo, aytāo.*
- (9) *camcy, chācy, çāci.*
- (10) *toçi.*
- (11) *tōcēcy, tomeçi, tomaci.*
- (12) *ameleace.*
- (13) *lentocim.*
- (14) *conconcepaçi.*
- (15) *pio.*
- (16) *ampochi, ampochim.*
- (17) *tiquo, tigo.*
- (18) *pachain.*
- (19) *chimchae.*
- (20) *tallacō.*

Castanheda, in his *Livro III.* (which was published in 1553), gives in *cap. xxvii.* a brief account of the manners and customs of the Chinese, in the course of which he says:—

The King of China dispatches no matter of the government of his kingdom, and for all matters he has officials who govern for him. In justice, which is the chief department of the kingdom, he has three great literate men who are called *colous*:<sup>99</sup> and one is called the grand *colou*, the other the petty *colou*, and the other the lesser *colou*. These are old men and known for very good men, and come to merit these posts by letters and by goodness, and first serve in other lower offices until they get to be *tutōes*, who are governors of districts, and afterwards *achancis*, who are secretaries, and thence they rise to be *colous*, which is the highest office. And these offices of *colous* come to be held by lowborn men, because nothing is taken into consideration except that they be old good men and literates. There are other offices that they call *tutōes*, and *conquēes* and *compins*: and all these three are called a council and govern cunes, and the chief of them is the *tutāo*: he has to be a literate man, an old and good man; the *compim* is the second, and is captain of war and is not a literate; the *conquāo* is the third, and has charge of revenue affairs, and is the lowest of this council. With these goes another who is called *ceui*, who has to be a literate and known for a good man: this one dispatches with the *tutāo* the matters of justice, and has charge of

<sup>99</sup> Fule's *Hobson-Jobson*, p. 781, has:—"Colao, s. Chin. Koh-lao, 'Council Chamber Elders' (*Bp. Moule*). A title for a Chinese Minister of State, which frequently occurs in the Jesuit writers of the 17th century."



drawing up general inquiries and depositions which he sends to the king. And he has great powers, and his office does not last more than a year; those of the others last for a number of years. There are other offices inferior to these, which are called *puchancis*, *amechacis*, *tocis*, *itaos*, *pios* who are admirals, and *ticos* who are employed I know not how; and of each one there are three—great, petty, and lesser.

Fr. Gaspar da Cruz, in cap. xvi. of his *Tractado da China*,<sup>91</sup> printed in 1569-70, says that in each province there were five principal officials.

The chief of the five is the governor, whom they call in their language *tutom*. To him are referred all the affairs great and small of the whole province; and on account of the authority and majesty of his person he does not reside where do the other *louthias*,<sup>92</sup> that he be not resorted to by them, and so may be more esteemed and feared. To him come all the revenues of the provinces excepting the ordinary expenses. And by him both the transactions and all the rents that are gathered and all that passes in the provinces is referred and sent to court. The second dignity of the province is that of the comptrollers of revenue, who in their language are called *pōhassi*. To this one is intrusted the sending to collect throughout the whole province the taxes thereof, for the which he has many *louthias* under his jurisdiction, who are special officials for the transactions and the collections of taxes. He provides all the ordinary expenses of the province, and with the remainder goes to the *tutā*, in order that the *tutā* may go to the court. He can intervene in the serious matters of the other inferior officials, and he has power over them. To him also come all the affairs and transactions of the province to be by him referred to the *tutā*. Another dignity below this is the chief justice, whom they call in their language *anchasi*. And although there are many other officers of justice, this one is over all, and by him the dispatches are distributed to the others and everything relating to justice is referred to him, as to the one who has power over the other inferior ones. Another dignity below this is that of the captain-major, whom they call in their language *aitao*. To this *aitao* belongs the power to order the men of war to be got ready, and all that may be necessary of ships, provisions and all other apparatus against enemies and robbers; to him likewise appertain the affairs of foreigners that do not relate to revenue. The fifth and last dignity of the great ones and of the captain-major who puts into execution the matters of war and presides in the fleets that the *aitao* remaining on land orders is this: when it is of import, besides putting matters into execution and order, if the business requires his presence, he goes in person: and the affair may be so important that the *aitao* himself will go. This one is called in the language of the country *luthissi*:<sup>93</sup> and because these five dignities are of very great authority and dignity, and that of the *tutā* exceeds those of the others, the latter never goes out of his house for the conservation of his authority: and when he does go out he goes with very great show and with a very great company of officials and assistants.

Juan Gonzalez de Mendoza, in his *Historia de la China*, liv. III., cap. ix., says that the viceroy of each province was called *insuanto*,<sup>94</sup> and that the *comon*, or chief magistrate, was slightly superior to him in rank. In any city where neither of the above resided there was the *tutuan*, or magistrate. Then came the *ponchasi*, or president of the council of revenue; the *totoc*,<sup>95</sup> or captain-general of all the men of war; the *anchasi*, or president of civil and criminal justice; and the *aytao*, or purveyor-general and president of the council of war. Besides the above, he says, there were others of less dignity and jurisdiction, as follows: — The *cautos*,<sup>96</sup> or chief standard-bearer; the

<sup>91</sup> See also Purchas, *Pilg.* III. p. 183.

<sup>92</sup> See Hobson-Jobson, s. v. 'Louten,' where the following is quoted for Baldwin's *Manual of the Foochow Dialect*: — *Lotia* . . . . (in Mandarin *Lao-tye*) a general appellation for an officer. It means 'Venerable Father.'

<sup>93</sup> *Laotye* 老?

<sup>94</sup> Probably = *le tsh*, general.

<sup>95</sup> Evidently a misprint for *tuasanto* = *tsung-tsh*, viceroy.

<sup>96</sup> Perhaps = *ke tsh*, both meaning standard.



*pochim*, or second treasurer; the *autzatri*, or major; and the *huytay*, *tzia*, and *tontay*,<sup>27</sup> who were like justices of the king's court in Spain. Another official was the *hondim*,<sup>28</sup> or visiting justice. Lastly, there were certain inferior officers, *viz.*, the *impo*,<sup>29</sup> who had charge of the supply of provisions and the fixing of prices for these; the *tibuco*,<sup>100</sup> who arrested and punished vagabonds and idlers; the *quinche*,<sup>1</sup> or chief constable; and the *chomcā*,<sup>2</sup> or keeper of the prison.

Reverting to the list I have given above, it will be seen that Christovão Vieyra, in ff. 120-120v. of his letter, describes the duties of some of the officials mentioned; and in f. 117 he gives some details regarding their offices.

- (1) *pochenoy*, etc. — This is the *pu-chêng sz'* or *pu-ching sz'*, literally "regulating-government commissioner," usually called the treasurer.<sup>3</sup>
- (2) *anchaggy*, etc. — This is the *ngan-cha sz'* or *an-ch'a ssü*, the "criminal judge."<sup>4</sup>
- (3) *cehi*, etc. — This seems to be the same as Mendoza's *tzia*. I am not certain as to what Chinese word or words it represents.
- (4) *tutāo*. — This is the *tu-tung*, or captain-general.<sup>5</sup>
- (5) *congom*, etc. — I am uncertain regarding the identification of this. I think that either the first or second syllable must represent *kung*.<sup>6</sup> Mr. Watters, however, suggests *chiang-chün*, "general of Manchu forces."
- (6) *compim*, etc. — Morrison<sup>7</sup> has *kung-ping*, meaning "just, equitable," which may suggest an identification.
- (7) *choupim*, etc. — This evidently represents *show-pei*, "a military officer, about the rank of major."<sup>8</sup>
- (8) *haytao*, etc. — The first part of this word undoubtedly represents *hae*, the sea;<sup>9</sup> and the last part seems to be for *tao*, or *tow*, head, chief.<sup>11</sup> *Haytao* can scarcely stand for *hae taou*, which, according to Morrison,<sup>11</sup> means pirates.
- (9) *camcy*, etc. — This, I think, represents *kung tze*, "the son of a nobleman, a term of respect like Master or Mister."<sup>12</sup>
- (10) *toçi*. — This perhaps stands for *to sz'* or *too sze*, a military general officer.<sup>13</sup>
- (11) *töcicy*, etc. — There can hardly be any doubt, I think, that this represents *tung sze*, an interpreter.<sup>14</sup>
- (12) *amelcage*. — This and Castanheda's *emcchaci* seem to be variants of No. 2: otherwise I cannot explain them.
- (13) *lentocim*. — The last syllable of this word represents the Chinese *sz'* or *sze*, a general term for government officers;<sup>15</sup> and the first two syllables must stand for *leang taou*, "an officer over the public granaries; a kind of commissary."<sup>16</sup>
- (14) *contontepaci*. — This seems to be a combination of No. 5 and some other title that I cannot identify.<sup>17</sup>

<sup>27</sup> The editor of the Hakluyt Soc. Mendoza suggests that these three may represent "the *ko-la-sze*, or treasurer;" "the *che-tze*, or secretary;" and "taou, *tae*, the intendant of circuits."

<sup>28</sup> Probably = *jung-ling*, a local assistant magistrate.

<sup>29</sup> The editor of the Hak. Soc. Mendoza suggests "kwan-paou, commissioner of customs."

<sup>100</sup> Probably = *te paou*, constable.

<sup>1</sup> Probably = *yuen chas*, a police runner.

<sup>2</sup> Possibly = *ching tang*, principal officer. <sup>3</sup> See *Middle Kingdom*, I, p. 439; Morrison's *Chin.-Eng. Dict.* p. 680.

<sup>4</sup> See *Mid. King.* I, p. 439; Mor., *Chin.-Eng. Dict.* p. 196. (In the Canton dialect *ngan* is pronounced *an*.)

<sup>5</sup> See *Mid. King.* I, p. 425; Mor., *Chin.-Eng. Dict.* p. 857. <sup>6</sup> See Mor., *Chin.-Eng. Dict.* p. 489.

<sup>7</sup> *Chin.-Eng. Dict.* p. 439.

<sup>8</sup> Mor., *Chin.-Eng. Dict.* p. 758.

<sup>9</sup> See Mor., *Chin.-Eng. Dict.* p. 214.

<sup>10</sup> See Mor., *Chin.-Eng. Dict.* p. 830.

<sup>11</sup> *Chin.-Eng. Dict.* pp. 214, 821.

<sup>12</sup> Mor., *Chin.-Eng. Dict.* p. 490.

<sup>13</sup> Mor., *Chin.-Eng. Dict.* p. 867.

<sup>14</sup> See Mor., *Chin.-Eng. Dict.* p. 952.

<sup>15</sup> See Mor., *Chin.-Eng. Dict.* pp. 790, 792.

<sup>16</sup> Mor., *Chin.-Eng. Dict.* p. 531.

<sup>17</sup> Cf. Mor., *Chin.-Eng. Dict.* p. 792.



- (15) *pio*. — This is used only in reference to an official at Lantau, called "the *pio* of Nantó." Barros (Dec. III., II. viii.) says: — "The *pio* . . . was a man who filled a post, like among us that of admiral of the sea, and it was the name of the office, and not of the person." Unless there is some misapprehension regarding this title, the only explanation I can suggest is Chin. *ping* = soldiers, troops, army; and *yá* or *yew*, which might mean an officer.
- (16) *ampochi*, etc. — I cannot explain this.
- (17) *tiquo*. — This also I cannot explain.
- (18) *pachain*. — Perhaps this is intended for *fú-tsiang*, an adjutant-general or post captain.<sup>18</sup>
- (19) *chimshae*. — This apparently represents *tsing-shú*, "the hoppo writers."<sup>19</sup>
- (20) *tallacō*. — The first part of this word I cannot explain; but the last syllable evidently stands for *kāng*, "a watch of the night," *kāng lēn* being "a watchman at night."<sup>20</sup>

With regard to **Tamão or the Ilha da Veniaga**, where the Portuguese are said to have first landed, there seems to be some strange misapprehension or confusion. Sir Andrew Ljungstedt, in his *Historical Sketch of the Portuguese Settlements in China*, says (p. 7): — "Tamão on the north west coast of San-shan, was a renowned harbor, to which foreign and Chinese merchants resorted, . . . The ships lay moored at the foot of the hill in which Francis Xavier was [1552] interred. At the end of the monsoon all transactions were suspended, accounts settled, the port abandoned, and the island unoccupied, till the return of the merchants." No authority is given for these statements, the first of which has been copied by later writers,<sup>21</sup> without apparently, any attempt at verification. Castanheda tells us (IV. xxviii.) that "this island is three leagues from the coast, and the Chīs call it Tamão, and we that of Veniaga: because in those parts they call the trade in merchandise *veniaga*;<sup>22</sup> and in this island is carried on the trade in merchandise of the foreign merchants who come to China to trade, who lodge in a large town that there is there; and from there no one can go to any of the places on the coast without permission from the Council of Cantão, a city that is eighteen leagues from there; and even when they go they do not enter in, but lodge in the suburbs and there carry on their trade. And for the carrying out of this and the furnishing of the fleets that go to that quarter, the *Pio*, who is like the admiral of all that coast, resides in a town called Nantó that is three leagues from the Veniaga; and from there he informs the council of Cātão of the junks that come and whence they are and what they want, and what goods they carry: the council determines what is to be done, and if it is a new matter they at once write to the king in order that he may be advised of what passes." Castanheda also states that "the port of Nātó" "is situated at the entrance of a river a league in breadth, and along it up above is the city of Cantão a matter of twenty-five leagues from Nantó." Barros, who calls the island Tamão, Tamou, and Beniaga, only says that it was three leagues from land.

Now here we have certain definite distances given, *vis.*, Tamão, 3 leagues from the coast 18 from Canton, and 3 from "Nantó;" and this last 25 leagues by river from Canton. There is little difficulty in identifying "Nantó" with Lantau,<sup>23</sup> the large island at the entrance to the

<sup>18</sup> See Mor., *Chin.-Eng. Dict.* p. 171.

<sup>19</sup> Mor., *Chin.-Eng. Dict.* p. 757.

<sup>20</sup> Mor., *Chin.-Eng. Dict.* p. 361.

<sup>21</sup> E. g., Danvers, *Port. in India*, I. p. 338 n.

<sup>22</sup> See footnote *supra*.

<sup>23</sup> Geronimo Roman, factor of the Philippines at Macao, commenting on a letter of Matteo Ricci's written in 1584, says: — "In an island called Lintao, which is situated near this town [Macao], there is an arsenal, the director or haytao of which is continually occupied in superintending the building and equipment of vessels: The island furnishes timber, but every other necessary for them has to be imported from the continent." (Hak. Soc. ed. of Mendoza's *Hist. of China*, Introd., p. lxxix.)



Chukiang; so that we must look for Tamão some three leagues in a westerly direction from Lantau. It will be seen at once that the island of Shanghwen (St. John's) is quite out of the question, being much more than three leagues distant from Lantau.<sup>24</sup> I have failed, however, to locate Tamão, a name which, apparently, represents the Chinese Tamun,<sup>25</sup> *ta* meaning great, and *mun* meaning water running through a passage between hills. There is, indeed, an island named Taimong entered in the Admiralty chart; but this is too far from Lantau; and, on the other hand, just south-west of Lantau are the islands of Lueng and Nautau, between which is the passage of Nautau-mun; but this could hardly have been Tamão. It should be possible, however, for someone having a good knowledge of the topography of the Canton river to locate the different places referred to.

In conclusion, I append in chronological order a list of the events referred to in the following letters for which dates are given by the writers :—

- |       |             |                                                                                                       |
|-------|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1520. | 23 Jan.     | Portuguese embassy leaves Canton for Peking (f. 104).                                                 |
| "     | May.        | Do. do. with king in Nanking (f. 104).                                                                |
| "     | ?           | Do. do. ordered to go to Peking (f. 104).                                                             |
| "     | 2 Aug.      | Do. do. sends letters to Canton (f. 104).                                                             |
| "     | ?           | Mandarin ill-used by Portuguese at Island of Trade (f. 105v.).                                        |
| 1521. | Jan.        | King arrives at small town near Peking, and passes judgment on rebel relative (f. 105).               |
| "     | Feb.        | King enters Peking, and falls ill the same day (ff. 104, 106).                                        |
| "     | 21 (?) May. | King dies (ff. 104, 106).                                                                             |
| "     | 22 "        | Embassy leaves Peking for Canton (f. 104).                                                            |
| "     | 22 Sept.    | Embassy arrives at Canton (f. 104).                                                                   |
| "     |             | Portuguese ships arrive at Tamão, and Chinese attack Diogo Chlvo (f. 107v.).                          |
| "     |             | Junks with Portuguese arrive at Tamão, and are captured by Chinese (ff. 108, 118v.).                  |
| 1522. | [Aug.]      | Martim Affonso de Mello arrives at Tamão: fights, and has two ships captured (ff. 108v., 118v., 121). |
| "     | 14 Aug.     | Thomé Pires and others fettered and imprisoned (f. 106v.).                                            |
| "     | 15 "        | Do. do. do. have fetters struck off (f. 107).                                                         |
| "     | 1 Oct.      | Letters from Chinese court to king of Portugal, etc., handed to <i>ngan-cha-sz</i> (f. 110v.).        |
| "     | 6 Dec.      | Boards with sentences put on necks of prisoners (f. 109).                                             |
| 1523. |             | Chinese prepare a fleet to watch for Portuguese (f. 118v.).                                           |
| "     | 31 May.     | Junk with Chinese and Malays leaves Canton for Patani with message to king of Malacca (f. 110v.).     |

<sup>24</sup> In Linschoten's map of the Eastern Sea (reproduced at p. 192 of the Hak. Soc. ed. of Saris's *Voyage to Japan*) "I. Veniaga" and "Sanchoam" are distinctly shown as two separate islands. Moreover, Fernão Mendez Pinto, in chap. ccxv. of his *Peregrinação*, says that Sanchão "is an island twenty-six leagues from the city of Cantão, where trade was then [1552] carried on with the people of the country."

<sup>25</sup> Major, in his Introduction to the Hak. Soc. ed. of Mendoza, speaks, on p. xxxi., of "the Island of Tamang;" but I can find no support for such a form.



1523.	Aug.	Hurricane destroys Chinese fleet off Canton river (f. 118v.).
"	5 Sept.	Reply from king of Malacca reaches Canton (f. 110v.).
"	23 "	23 Portuguese prisoners executed in and near Canton (f. 109).
1524-1528.		Chinese prepare fleets of junks to resist Portuguese (f. 118v.).
1524.		Ambassador from king of Malacca leaves Canton to return (f. 111).
"	May.	Thomé Pires dies of sickness in prison in Canton (f. 112).
1534.	?	Christovão Vieyra finishes letter (f. 123v.).
(?) 1536.	Oct.	Vasco Calvo finishes letter (f. 131).
"	10 Nov.	Do. do. addendum to letter (f. 135v.).

(To be continued.)

### THE WRECK OF THE "DODDINGTON," 1755.

BY R. C. TEMPLE.

(Continued from Vol. XXIX. p. 333.)

FROM this time, till Sunday the 29th of September, the carpenter and Smith continued to work upon the boat, and the people were busy in getting in from time to time what was thrown up from the wreck.

On the 6th of October they found a fowling piece, this was a joyful acquisition, and tho' the barrel was much bent, it was soon made serviceable by the carpenter, and used with great success in shooting the birds.

On Friday, October 11, they perceived the gannets which had lately forsaken them, to hover again about the rocks, and were in hopes they would settle to lay their eggs, in which they were not disappointed.

On Sunday, October 20, Mr. Collet, Mr. Webb, and two others, ventured out once more on the float, and it was noon the next day before they could get in. They had now some rainy weather, which proved very acceptable, as they contrived to save some of the water for sea stores; but they were still in great want of bread, having lived many days on short allowance. At last they thought of building an oven, for they had some barrels of flour, in which attempt they succeeded, beyond their expectations, and were able to convert their flour into tolerable biscuit.

This biscuit was at length so near exhausted, that they were obliged to live upon a few ounces a day, without brandy, of which only a small quantity remained, and this they preserved inviolably for the use of the carpenter. They were also so short of water, that of this they were allowed but half a pint a day.

In this condition, however, they happily in a great degree preserved their health and vigour, and on the 16th of February they launched their boat, and called her the Happy Deliverance. The next day they got their little pittance of stores on board, and on the 18th they set sail from the rock, on which they had lived just seven months, and to which at parting they gave the name of Bird Island.

When they embarked in their boat, the Happy Deliverance, at Bird Island, they were twenty two in number, and had on board two butts and four hogsheads of water, two of the hogs that had come on shore from the ship alive, one firkin of butter, ninety pounds of biscuit, and about ten days salt provisions, at two ounces a man per day, but this was quite rotten and decayed.

The joy which they felt at putting off from this dreadful seat of famine and desolation was too great to be expressed, but it was of very short continuance, for as soon as they got to the mouth of the



little channel which led to the rock, the grapnails came home, and they were instantly driven on the rocks, where their boat which had cost seven months incessant labour, struck so often and with such violence, that they expected every moment to be beat to pieces. In this condition, however, it pleased him who the winds and waves obey, to relieve them; a swell of the sea took their boat so favourably, that it lifted her from the rock on which she was beating, and carrying her over the bar, left her in four fathom calm water. Here they immediately anchored to repair their damage, by securing the grapnails, and this was not effectually done till noon the next day.

The next day they stood away in order to make the river of St. Lucia, but for many days were not able to stem the current, which determined them to get back to the cape. They continued their course till **Sunday March the 7th**, when they were within about a mile of shore. They soon perceived several of the natives coming down from the mountains, which encouraged them to try to land, hoping to get some provisions of which they were in extreme want. Accordingly they sent four on shore at two different times, with some trifles to traffick with the natives, who were very kind, and brought down cattle to the sea shore, but the surf ran so high, that they could neither get provisions, nor the men on shore aboard. Thus they were starving in the sight of plenty, without prospect of relief.

It was now **Monday, the 15th of March**, and they determined at all events to make an attempt to get into the river, having no provision on board but water. Having waited therefore till it was high water, they sent the little boat to sound a-head, and following her at a proper distance, they at length ventured over the bar, and having happily received no damage, they anchored in two fathom and a half of water.

The natives had now come again to the shore, and the people on board got together some brass buttons, small bits of iron, nails, and copper hoops, as the most likely commodities to exchange for mutton and beef. The copper hoops they bent into bracelets to be worn on the legs and arms. With these baubles, which are prized by these poor savages, perhaps with as much reason as gold and gems are prized by those who hold their simplicity in contempt, the poor famished adventurers hastened on shore, and having soon made the natives understand what they wanted, and what return they would make, two bullocks were driven down to the beach with great expedition, and bartered for about one pound weight of copper hoops, and four brass buttons. Provisions of all kinds were procured in great plenty at the same rate, particularly milk, and a small grain that resembled Guinea wheat.

They continued on shore at this place near a fortnight, and found the natives an honest, open, harmless, and friendly people, ready to do any kind office that was in their power, and always dividing what they brought from the chase. Their manner of living and appearance were the same that have been so often described by those who have given account of the people called Hottentots, who inhabit the cape of Good Hope. It is remarkable, however, that among these People, who are all black, and woolly haired, there was a youth of about 12 or 14 years of age, who was quite white, and had regular European features, with fine light hair. The people of the sloop observed that he was treated like a servant, and also that he disappeared a few days before they left the coast, and therefore they suspected the natives were afraid they should carry him off, nor was one of the natives themselves to be seen the morning that they went away.<sup>12</sup>

On **Monday, March 29**, having laid in great plenty of provisions, they got safe over the bar, and made sail for the river St. Lucia, where they arrived on **Tuesday, the 6th of April**, having found the current more favourable than before.

Having got into the river, and anchored in three fathom water, they went on shore, but they found the People very different from those with whom they last traded.

Among other things, however, which they offered to barter, was a brass handle of a chest, and a piece of a buntzen they made their colours of. These happened to be acceptable, and were purchased with two large bullocks, and six good fowls.

<sup>12</sup> Nothing of this in Evan Jones's *Diary*.



The natives of this part of the coast, by their frequent dealings with the Europeans, had learned to be cleanly in their persons and food, dressing their hair up very neatly, and laying aside the grease and garbage with which the others anointed and adorned themselves; but at the same time they had learnt to be proud, crafty, deceitful and dishonest. However, the adventurers stayed with them till Sunday the 18th of April, and then getting on board they weighed and made sail.

Hitherto they had been united by adversity in the bond of friendship, but as they had now a near prospect of deliverance, their minds were less tender, and their different peculiarities of temper and opinion were indulged with less restraint. As they were sailing down the river, a dispute arose about the time and manner of crossing the bar, which was then very near, and it was carried so high, that some of them hauled down the sails, and let go the grapnel close to the brake of a sand, nine of them hoisted out the little boat, and went on shore, swearing that they would take their chance of getting to De la Goa by land, than be drowned in attempting to get over the bar. Those who remained in the sloop were by this accident reduced to very great distress; for being prevented by the delay they suffered from getting over the bar at high water, and the wind and tide both setting out of the river at a great rate, they were very soon forced on the breakers, where there was only eight feet of water, and the vessel drawing five she must inevitably have been grounded and beaten to pieces, before the river was half empty.

It happened, however, contrary to all expectation, that the vessel was brought safely out of the river.

From St. Lucia they took a new departure, and anchored in de la Goa road at 4 o'clock in the afternoon on Wednesday, the 21st of April, having again narrowly escaped shipwreck on some breakers the night before. Here they found the Rose galley, Capt. Chandler, trading for beef and ivory, and most of them begged a passage with him to Bombay.

After they had continued here above three weeks, three of the nine men who had deserted them at St. Lucia, were brought up the river in a small boat of the country, and reported that the other six were waiting, without any covering but a shirt and drawers, on the other side of the bay of Dalagoa, waiting for a boat to bring them over.

On board of the sloop there was the remainder of the chest of treasure, which had been broke open upon the rock, and plundered of what the sailors thought their share of it, upon a supposition, that on the loss of the ship it was become a common property. The officers told Capt. Chandler the affair, who went on board the sloop and secured the treasure, &c. without offering any violence to the people. The people, however, whom they left on board the sloop, fearing they might be taken into custody, weighed anchor and went away in the night.<sup>13</sup>

On the 25th of May, the officers and the rest of the crew, being on board the Rose galley, she weighed anchor, and proceeded not to Bombay, as was intended, but to Madagascar, the voyage having become necessary to compleat her cargo, because the natives of Delagoa having sold Capt. Chandler 100 head of cattle, stole them all away again, and refused to restore them without a new consideration.

The Rose galley, soon after she was at sea, made a sail, which when they came up with proved to be the sloop, which had taken in the other six men, that were left behind at St. Lucia, they had been taken on board alive, but three of them were then dead, and two more died the next day.

Two of the people on board the sloop being convinced, that no harm was intended them, came on board the Rose galley. One of these was the carpenter, to the honour of whose ingenuity be it recorded, that the sloop, which was built on a desolate rock, with the fragments of the ship, fitted together with such tools as the pieces of wood casually thrown on shore, would supply, he now sold to Capt. Chandler, for 2500 rupees, which is nearly equal to 500£, sterling money. From this time the sloop pursued her voyage in company with the galley, and both arrived at Madagascar after a pleasant voyage of two and twenty days.

<sup>13</sup> This explains the hiatus between 23rd April and 2nd May in the Diary and the confused entries for 2nd May.



Soon as they had anchored at Madagascar they had the pleasure to see the Canarvan, Capt. Hutchinson arrived there in his voyage from London to China, and as the treasure and packets, which had been preserved from the Doddington, were to be delivered at Madras, the officers went with them to the Canarvan, and delivered them, with other private effects, to the company's agents there, on the first of August, 1756.

*Finis.*

## II. — The Debbonaire MS.

### Wreck of the 'Doddington' — History of the Survivors — 1755-1756.

#### An Abstract of

The proceedings of the ship Doddington, from the Sailing out of the Downs, Till Unfortunately Lost on Some Rocks on the Coast of Africa Distance From the Cape of Good Hope by the Medium of Six More Journals About 250 Leagues; And Afterwards a Daily Journal of the Transactions, of 23 [twenty three] of the People Who Was [were] Miraculously Saved upon an Uninhabited Island.

#### Ship Doddington in Distress.

April [April] 23<sup>d</sup> 1755 Sail'd out of the Down's in Company with the Pelham, Houghton, Stretham and Edgcote.<sup>14</sup> In a Weeks Time got Clear of the Channel in which Time Found we had the Advantage of the [other] Ships in Sailing which I believe is [was] The Reason of Capt<sup>r</sup> Sampsons<sup>15</sup> not keeping Company. the Next day, After leaving the Channel, lost Sight of our 4 Consorts, and the Day Following Discover'd Several [Several] Large Ships, Lying too off Brest, which we was [were] Inform'd by His Majestys Ship Dunkirk, was Admiral Boscawens Fleet [Consisting] of Twelve Sail of the Line. We met with Nothing worth mentioning after, till the 14 of May When we Made the Island of [Lancerota], and the Next Day Sail'd Through Between the Islands of Teneriffe and Grand Canary And [on] the 20<sup>th</sup> in the Morning Saw a Sail Which Prov'd to be the Houghton. And Soon After Made the Island of Bonanisto. The Next Morning we Both got into Porto Bray Bay, and Found Riding there [the] Pelham and Stretham who had Arrived, about two Hours Before us. On the 26<sup>th</sup> the Edgcote Arrived and Anchor'd here. The Next day we Sail'd in Company with the Pelham Houghton And Stretham, Leaving the Edgcote in the Bay. We kept Company with the Other Ships a Day, Steering S B E  $\frac{1}{2}$  E Which Course the Capt<sup>r</sup> thought too farr [Far] Easterly: Therefore Order'd [ours] South, by [which] Means Soon lost Sight of them and Saw them No More. We had a Very pleasant Passage of 7 Weeks from St Jago To the Making of the Cape Land, [and] On the 8<sup>th</sup> of July Took a Fresh Departure from Cape Lagullas, we Run to the E<sup>ward</sup> in the Latitude of 35° 30' and 36° 0' 0 S. till I made [we had made by my Reackoning] 12°<sup>16</sup> 45' E: Difference of Longitude and by [the] Med<sup>m</sup> of Six Other Journals 12°<sup>18</sup> 50' Longitude and 35° 0' 0 S: Latitude. This day at Noon, the Capt<sup>n</sup> Order'd the Course to Be Alter'd from E: to E N E. Had Dirty Squally Weather with the Wind from S S W to S S E and a very Large Sea. We had at this Time two Reefs in The Fore Topsails and three in the Main, and all the Stay Sails Stow'd, so that We Run about 6 or 7 Knotts an Hour. At Midnight had About 70 Miles on The Board. A Quarter before one Thursday Morning the 17<sup>th</sup> of July The Ship Struck And in less than 20 Minutes was Entirely Wreck'd, Which is all the time any Body thought Themselves in Danger, Judging Our Selvs to be 80 Leagues of the Land; And When the Ship Was a Ground Could not See the Least Appearance of it Seing Nothing but Breakers all Round which did Not discover two Minutes Before The Ship Struck. Upon Which the Helm was Putt a Lee Immediately, but by the Time She Came Head to Wind, She was in the Midst of them. She went to peices in so little Time, that I am Certain Half the People had not Time to gett Upon Deck, for the I got out of my

<sup>14</sup> Here is an erasure.

<sup>15</sup> James Samson in Hardy's *Register*, Ed. 1811.

<sup>16</sup> I. e., 30° by present reckoning.



Cabbin the First Stroke She Gave by the Time I Gott Upon Deck, it was Falling in And Other Parts Driving to peices faster Than any person Can Imagine. Soon After I got on Deck, Spoke to the Capt<sup>n</sup> and Asked him Where he Thought we Were, for I must Own the Main Land Never Enter'd into my Head [Thoughts] Nor the Captains [neither], for the Answer he Made me was. He was Sure it Must be Some Rock in the Sea Which Never was laid down, in any Draught for [I did]<sup>17</sup> prick'd of that Day at Noon before he Alter'd [the] Course, as I did my Self After, and Found my Self by my Reckoning to the E<sup>st</sup>ward of all the East and West Land, 50 Leagues [and dis<sup>t</sup> from the Land abrest of us 100 Leag<sup>s</sup> Therefore Saw no Danger in Steering E N E which Course by the Draught Still Run us from the Land. I must not Omitt Mentioing<sup>18</sup> One thing More the Captain Spoke to Me of Upon the quarter, which was the only part Above Water, and the Sea Every Time it Came Carried Some away with it, that he was Sure, this Must be the Rock The Dolphin was Lost!<sup>19</sup> Upon and not one Spar'd to Tell there Fate, which Certainly Would be the Case with us and Indeed Every Sea Threatned it. By this Time There Was not Above 30 People Left Upon the Quarter. He Bid Me farewell and Said we Should meet in the Next World, Which Words Were Scarce out of his Mouth, When I was Wash'd off and beleive Every Body Else, for I am of the Opinion Most that was Saved was Wash'd of by the Same Sea, for no less than 10 Mett in 3 or 4 Minutes time After they Came on Shore. Therefore was in Great Hopes Should have Seen the Captain As Soon as it was Day, But was Greatly Disappointed for he 'har'd the Fate of 247 More, Only 23 Being Saved out of 270 and Most of them Very Much Bruised, my Self Escaping with A Few Scratches. As Fast as we Mett Gott Close together as we Could to keep us warm, for it Was Bitter Cold, and Nothing on but a Wett Shirt. We had not Seated our Selves long on the Sharp Rocks, before we Was Vissitted by Some Seals, which Was Taken by the people who first Saw them, to be Wild Beasts. As they Came Nearer to us Some said they Saw 4 leggs; and Took them to be Hoggs, by their Making a Noise much like a Hogg. It was all this Time so Dark that you Could Scarcely See the Rocks we Satt we Satt upon,<sup>20</sup> and now it was that I First Thought of the Main, thinking it Impossible for Wild Beasts to be On a Rock in the Sea, how Soever was Obliged to be Content'd with thinging<sup>21</sup> so Till day Light when we Found Ourselves upon a Small Island, tho it Scarce Deserves the Name, distant from the Main Land about 2 Leagues Surrounded by Sevrall Rocks, Some of them two Miles in the Offing on Which the Ship Struck. Soon After day Light Call'd the people alltogether, Found Them to be The Following Persons.

**M<sup>r</sup>: Evan Jones Chief Mate**

M<sup>r</sup>: Jn<sup>o</sup>: Collett 2<sup>d</sup> Ditto

M<sup>r</sup>: W<sup>m</sup>: Webb 3<sup>r</sup> D<sup>o</sup>

M<sup>r</sup>: Smal<sup>l</sup>: Powell 5<sup>th</sup> D<sup>o</sup>

M<sup>r</sup>: Rich<sup>d</sup>: Topping Carpenter

Jn<sup>o</sup>: Yates Midshipman

Neal Bothwell Quarter Mast<sup>r</sup>

Nath<sup>l</sup>: Chisholme D<sup>o</sup>

Rob<sup>t</sup>: Beazly Seaman

Jn<sup>o</sup>: King D<sup>o</sup>

Gilb<sup>t</sup>: Chain D<sup>o</sup>

Je<sup>f</sup>: More D<sup>o</sup>

Tho<sup>s</sup>: Arnold D<sup>o</sup>

Henry Scance D<sup>o</sup>

<sup>17</sup> 'I did' written over 'he had.'

<sup>18</sup> "Season 1747-48; Dolphin; 370 tons; Second Voyage; Commander, Geo. Newton; Destination Coast [of Coromandel] & Bay [of Bengal]." — Hardy, *Register of Ships of E. I. Co., 1707-1760*, Ed. 1800, p. 220. (List of ships lost and missing.)

<sup>19</sup> So in MS.

<sup>20</sup> So in MS.

<sup>21</sup> So in MS.



Peter Rosenbery D<sup>o</sup>  
 Johanes Taylor D<sup>o</sup>  
 Jn<sup>o</sup> M<sup>r</sup> Dugall D<sup>o</sup>  
 Jn<sup>o</sup> Glass D<sup>o</sup>  
 Dan<sup>l</sup> Ladoux Capt<sup>l</sup> Steward  
 Henry Sharp Surgeons Servant

{ Leister }  
 { Dyson } Matrosses<sup>22</sup>  
 { Smith }

(To be continued.)

### MISCELLANEA.

#### SOME NOTES ON LADAKHI CURRENCY.

BY A. H. FRANCKE.

WITH reference to Colonel Temple's paper on the *Beginnings of Currency*, *ante*, Vol. XXIX. pp. 29 ff., 61 ff., I would like to make a few remarks from my experiences and researches in Ladakh. Before the days of the Dogra War, say 60 years ago, there do not seem to have been many silver coins in the country. The royal treasure was in ingots of silver and the revenue was paid in kind, consisting chiefly of hides, grain, butter and so on, sent to the king's household. Even at the present day it is almost only in Leh that the currency is in silver, i. e., in Indian money. Elsewhere in the villages barter pure and simple is still the rule.

However, once a year the taxes due to the Maharaja of Kashmir have to be paid in silver, and for this purpose Rupees have to be collected. This is managed in the village of Khalatse in the following manner. The people take all their spare grain and dried apricots to the Salt Lakes and there they effect an exchange in salt, thus:— They have a measure of capacity called 'abo.

Four 'abo of grain equal five 'abo of salt: or two 'abo of apricots equal one 'abo of salt. The salt is then taken to Kargil and Baltisan, where rupees are procurable and there exchanged at 2½ 'abo for the rupee. The rupees when received by the Khala' sepa are not of much use to him, except for the payment of his revenue, and then only to save him from the inconveniences he would incur if he were to tender his grain or apricots instead. Here we have rather a neat instance where salt in a certain recognised measure is the currency, even where the object is to procure a fixed amount of definite coins.

As regards the ancient tea-money of Tibet, there is a very interesting survival of it in one of the modern Tibetan coins called jau. This name means "a little tea," and was probably once equal in value to a small tea-brick. At the present day, the value of the jau is 3 annas 3 pies.

It is also interesting to mention here that the Tibetan word "rich," *phyugpo*, means "possessing many cattle," being derived directly from *phyugs*, cattle. This direct analogy to *pecunia* is most interesting.

### NOTES AND QUERIES.

#### GODOWN.

HERE are some useful quotations for the history of this well-known Anglo-Indianism.

1576. — Only warning them not to touch the houses or the subterranean storehouses (*gudões*). — *Commentaries of Dalboquerque, Hak. Soc. Ed.* Vol. III. p. 127. These are the same *gudões* as are referred to by Correa, 1561, in the passage quoted in translation by Yule, *H.-J.*, s. v. *godown*.

1615. — Was given me old ruined brick house or *godung* . . . the same goods to be

locked up in the *gaddones* . . . the one half of the charges of building and purchasing a *godone* and houses. — Foster, *Letters of the E. I. C.* Vol. III. pp. 109, 159, 181.

1616. — doth promise that if the English will come and trade or build a *godown* they shall pay no duties at all. — Foster, *Letters of the E. I. C.* Vol. IV. p. 213. But the Editor has queried the word *godown* here, otherwise it is the earliest quoted instance of the word in its modern Anglo-Indian form.

R. C. TEMPLE.

<sup>22</sup> Gunner's apprentices; inferior artillerymen.



## NEW RESEARCHES INTO THE COMPOSITION AND EXEGESIS OF THE QORAN.

BY HARTWIG HIRSCHFELD, Ph.D., M.R.A.S.

(Continued from p. 386.)

## CHAPTER XII.

## Preparations for the Pilgrimage to Mecca. Renewal of Allegiance.

**P**ILGRIMAGE preached — Treaty of Hudeibiya — Conquest of Mecca — Messages from Arab Tribes — Conversions — Expedition against the Greek army — Tabūk — Renunciation of treaties (*baḍʿa*) — Deuteronomic revelations.

The successes gained in the last few years had obliterated the shame of the Uhud disaster. The enemies of Islām in and around Medina had been vanquished, and the joint attack of the Qoreish and their allies against the town had been repelled. Muhammed's power was fast approaching its apogee, and he felt himself strong enough to venture pushing his authority right into the very heart of his enemies. To enter as conqueror into the city, in which he had for many years lived the life of an outcast, appeared like a bold dream. Muhammed was, therefore, careful to disguise his intention by suggesting a peaceful pilgrimage to the Ka'ba. Even this idea had to be broached with great caution, and he endeavoured to suggest it in an address, which forms the largest portion of *Sūra xxii*. This sermon is introduced by some general remarks touching upon the difference between believers and infidels, and the expectations of both classes hereafter.<sup>50</sup> The compromise made with the heterodox of various types in two previous Medinian revelations,<sup>51</sup> viz., that the Jews, Baptists, Christians and Magicians could be regarded under certain circumstances as believers, is now abandoned, and they are ranked among the infidels (v. 17), whom Allāh shall place in contrast to true believers on the Day of Resurrection. The topic of the *Hajj* is then introduced in a rebuke lanced against the Meccans for preventing Moslems from visiting the sacred spot, which was established "for all mankind (*i. e.* Arabs) alike, and the sojourner and the stranger" (v. 25). Those who might eye the proposal of worshipping at the shrine of *Hobal* with religious scruples are reminded that the place was originally established for Abraham with the injunction to shun idolatry, to keep "my house" pure for those making the prescribed circuits, to promote pilgrimage, and to "proclaim the name of Allāh therein" (26-29). With these words Muhammed not only boldly claimed the Ka'ba, but also the heathen ritual<sup>52</sup> for Islām — a masterpiece of diplomacy. Another noteworthy feature of this speech is that Allāh, to whose service the ritual is to be transferred, officially takes the place of *Rabbika*. That this is not a mere accident will be shown by the following instances. In verse 31 we find the "sacred things of Allāh," in the verses 33 and 37 "the rites of Allāh." In the verses 35, 36, 37, 41 the proclamation of the name of Allāh (see verse 29) is again touched upon either in the form of a statement or an admonition. In verse 41 Muhammed places in the mouth of those who had fled with him from Mecca the words: *Our Lord is Allāh*. One cannot fail to see in this speech the efforts made to transplant the Meccan shrine and the ceremonies belonging to it into the bosom of the Moslim church. It is now easily intelligible why, in the treaty concluded with the Qoreish at Hudeibiya (A. 6),<sup>53</sup> which precluded Muhammed from entering Mecca that year, he raised no objection to the demand of the pagan plenipotentiary to have the document initiated by the formula: *In thy name, O Allāh*, instead of the usual *In the name of Allāh*. Any difference between these two formulas had now ceased to exist, and far from losing prestige, he had gained considerably. It is, therefore, wrong to place the verses 39-42 before the battle of Badr. A special divine permission to fight the infidels, as Weil and Nöldeke assume,<sup>54</sup> is not to be found in this revelation. This question had already been settled in *Sūra ii*. 214-215 on the occasion of the illegal<sup>55</sup> expedition of Nakhla, when the *jihād* was laid down as a command.

<sup>50</sup> Nöldeke, Q. 158, regards vv. 1-24 as Meccan. v. 17 is, however, Medinian on account of الذين هادوا.

<sup>51</sup> ii. 59; v. 73.

<sup>52</sup> See Snouck Hurgronje, *Het Mekkaansche Feest*, p. 28.

<sup>53</sup> As to the text of the treaty see Sprenger, III. p. 246.

<sup>54</sup> Weil, *Eisleit*, p. 80; Nöldeke, p. 160; see Hish. 313 with doubtful authority.

<sup>55</sup> See Ch. IX.



Somewhat older than this is the address contained in the verses 48 to 59, but it cannot be of Meccan origin,<sup>56</sup> because in v. 52 "those in whose heart is sickness and whose hearts are hardened (the Jews)" are mentioned. Verse 51 is generally explained by Moslim teachers as replacing the objectionable verses liii. 19-20 which Muhammed was, according to tradition, obliged to expunge owing to their semi-pagan character.<sup>57</sup> The verse is, however, nothing but a reflex of Zach. iii. 1, very popular in Jewish liturgy, and which Muhammed found wonderfully adaptable to his own career. Now verse 55 re-echoes Zach. xiv. 9 of even greater liturgical popularity, and therefore also speaks for the Medinian origin of the group in question, which probably dates from shortly after the battle of Uhud (v. 57).

With regard to the last portion (vv. 72-78) of the *sūra* we can only assume that it was placed here for the sake of the beginning, which is the same as in the verses 1 and 48. The *mathal* of verse 72 probably taunts the Meccans with their alleged success obtained at Hudeibiya. As the verses 76-78 point to a well arranged divine service, they can hardly be older than the group 48-59.

To an incident which happened shortly before the conquest of Mecca the traditionists refer the verses *Surā* v. 39-44, dealing with the punishment meted out to a thief. There is hardly anything better to be said about the origin of these verses.

An interesting retrospect on the allegiance sworn by the Believers at Hudeibiyah is given in *Sūra* xlviii. 18-28. The phrase *under the tree* is, as we have seen on a previous occasion,<sup>58</sup> more than a mere historical recollection. Neither is it accidental that the *Shekinah* is mentioned in the same verse.<sup>59</sup> The following verses are justly considered to refer to the rich spoil made during the raids on the Jews of Khaibar (v. 20), Fadak, Teimā, and Wādīl Qorā (v. 21). Muhammed cannot help expressing some discontent at having allowed himself to be persuaded to rest satisfied with so incomplete a pilgrimage, or, what is still more probable, he tried to weaken the treaty concluded with the Meccans by charging them with having hindered the Moslims from sacrificing at the Ka'ba (v. 25). This intention is more clearly expressed in verse 27,<sup>60</sup> where he tells the world of a vision in which he is assured of entering Mecca "if Allāh please" in safety, and of performing all rites connected therewith without fear "and He has appointed, besides this, a victory nigh at hand." This victory does not refer to Khaibar, as Palmer thinks, but to Muhammed's firm resolution to conquer Mecca at any price.

The conquest which took place in the following year was accompanied by the address *Sūra* ii. 185<sup>61</sup>-196, which cannot have been revealed prior to this event.<sup>62</sup> Muhammed was only now strong enough to include those who still refused to embrace Islām in the proscription uttered some time since against the Jews and Hypocrites, *viz.*, to kill them wherever found,<sup>63</sup> "and to drive them on whence they drove you out" (v. 187). The last words in particular are unmistakable. Muhammed had made up his mind to treat Mecca as a conquered city irrespective of the treaty which only granted him permission to enter it as a pilgrim. Possibly the defeat which the Moslim warriors had suffered in the Jumāda (September) of the same year at Mūta made a retrieval necessary. The expression "drive them out who drove you out" allows of a literal explanation in so far as the treaty of Hudeibiyah stipulated that the Qoreish were to leave the city, while the Moslims performed their devotions within its walls. It seems that Muhammed was waiting for the retirement of the Qoreish from the town in order to prevent the re-entrance of all those who still refused to embrace Islām. For it must be observed that he forbade fighting only in the immediate surroundings of the sanctuary

<sup>56</sup> Nöldeke, *ibid.* p. 158, regards v. 43-56 as Meccan, but v. 57 cannot have opened a new address.

<sup>57</sup> See *Hish.* 370, and Nöldeke, p. 159.

<sup>58</sup> Ch. II.

<sup>59</sup> Verse 18, *cf.* 26.

<sup>60</sup> As to the spurious character of v. 29 see Ch. XIII.

<sup>61</sup> The address begins with a remark on the new moons which are called "indications of time." This is a translation of Pa. civ. 19.

<sup>62</sup> Nöldeke, p. 133, rightly places the verse after the treaty of Hudeibiyah. I do not believe that Muhammed was afraid of a violation of the treaty on the part of the Meccans. It is more probable that he looked for a pretext to defy them, and for this very reason accepted conditions apparently so unfavourable to him.

<sup>63</sup> See Ch. X. and *Sūra* xxxiii. 61.



except in self-defence, or to quell a revolt (v. 187). This, however, is a meaningless phrase, since no enemy was expected to be present. Why should Muhammed suddenly recommend his warriors "to fight them that there be no sedition" (v. 189)?<sup>64</sup> This does not look as if he wished the Qorish to become masters of their town once more. In connection with these instructions Muhammed then describes in detail the ritual to be observed during the Hajj (vv. 190-196).<sup>65</sup>

How little Muhammed felt himself bound by the treaty mentioned before, will appear from the circumstance that he actually placed himself at the head of an army in order to take Mecca by surprise. His plan was, however, betrayed by a Moslim who informed the Meccans of the Prophet's arrival, the letter which was carried by a female slave being intercepted. Muhammed rebuked the deed in a warning which fills out the beginning of *Sūra* lx.<sup>66</sup> Thus far tradition. According to our judgment there could not have been any betrayal in the matter, as the visit of the Moslim army was to take place by agreement and in open daylight. The only person to be charged with perfidy is Muhammed himself. — The verses 10-13 of this *sūra* are of uncertain date, but their tenor coincides, on the whole, with the opinion of some traditionsists that they were revealed in connection with the capture of Mecca.

When this was accomplished, it was celebrated in two special sermons which form the first portion of *Sūra* xlviii. (1-15).<sup>67</sup> To have become master of Mecca was, indeed, a "great victory" (v. 1), although it was won without bloodshed. Muhammed was, however, conscious that the way he had achieved this success was anything but straight, and this feeling interfered seriously with the logic of his speech. The next verse reads as if Allāh had given him the victory in order to grant him forgiveness for past and future sins, which seems like a premium put on his transgressions.<sup>68</sup> Muhammed evidently meant to imply that, being now in a position to fulfil the pious duties of pilgrimage, he had the opportunity to atone for his sins, or some such sophistry. — The verses 4 and 10 contain the reasons why this piece was connected with the older portion beginning with v. 18<sup>69</sup> to make one *sūra*. The tendency of the words spoken twice (vv. 4 and 7), that the hosts of heaven and earth were Allāh's,<sup>70</sup> is likewise unmistakable. The conclusion to be drawn from this remark is that Allāh was free to give Mecca to the Believers. There is probably also an allusion to the large army fighting for Allāh in it. Nothing could have been more appropriate than for Muhammed, under very much altered circumstances, to proclaim himself once more on Meccan soil as Messenger, Witness, Harbinger of good tidings, and Warner (v. 8). The satisfaction he must have felt in recapitulating these words which had been nearly a score of years before uttered by him on the same spot at the peril of his life, is re-echoed in every sentence of this address, and his shrewdness is equally evident. Was it not possible that many who, at that period, became converts to Islām, did so merely in deference to his personal power? He therefore hastened to assure the world that all new comers did not "swear allegiance" to the Prophet, but to Allāh (v. 10). The expression "become Moslim" is probably discarded here on purpose.

According to tradition another fear awoke in the breast of many Medinians, viz., that Muhammed might now prefer living in his native town, instead of returning to Medina.<sup>71</sup> Should he decide that way, the loss would not only affect the faith, but the town to which the person of the Prophet attracted many deputations and visitors. The farther Islām was spread, the larger became the area of which Medina was an important centre of people, trade, commerce and wealth. It seems to me, that

<sup>64</sup> Verse 187: Sedition is worse than slaughter.

<sup>65</sup> See Snouck Hurgronje, l. c.; — Nöldeke, p. 132, regards vv. 196-198 as Meccan, but the phrase *وما له في الآخرة من خلاق* is undoubtedly Medinian; cf. iii. 71. There exists therefore no reason to detach the verses in question from the context.

<sup>66</sup> See Nöldeke, p. 182.

<sup>67</sup> Nöldeke, p. 161, places this sermon immediately after the treaty of Hudeibiya, but v. 12 points to a time after the conquest.

<sup>68</sup> Beidhawi: for having performed the *jihād* and checked idolatry.

<sup>69</sup> *السكينة* 4. *ان يبايعوك تحت الشجرة*.

<sup>70</sup> *جنود السموات* vv. 4 and 7 = *جنود السموات*.

<sup>71</sup> See Sprenger, III. 334.



these reasons had as much weight with the Medinians as any spiritual ones. Muhammed saw all this, as well as the ingratitude of which he would have been guilty, had he abandoned the town to which he owed so much. With his usual diplomacy he turned the tables, and charged those who deemed him capable of such a course of action, with "evil thoughts, and being people destitute of good" (v. 12).

The second, but short, thanksgiving address is contained in *Sūra* ex.<sup>72</sup> which, in a condensed form, reiterates the opening sentences of *Sūra* xlviii.<sup>73</sup> Since the *sūra* is so small, I reproduce it in full.

1. When the help of Allāh came<sup>74</sup> and victory.
2. And thou sawest men enter into the religion of Allāh by troops,
3. Then celebrate the praises of thy Lord and ask forgiveness of Him, behold He is forgiving.

These words describe the situation exactly, because after the conquest of Mecca Islām was progressing by leaps and bounds.

According to tradition *Sūra* xlix. (1-5) was revealed when, after Muhammed's return to Medina, messengers of the **Tribe of the Banu Tamim** arrived in the beginning of "the year of the embassies" (A. 9).<sup>75</sup> in order to negotiate with him about the redemption of some members of their tribe who had been taken prisoners by the Moslems. The ambassadors are said to have shouted for Muhammed in a disrespectful manner, for which they are rebuked in the verses alluded to.<sup>76</sup> Other commentators think they refer to different incidents.

The next group of verses of the same *sūra* is said to allude to Al Walid, son of Oqba b. Abi Moeit (who had been executed after the battle of Badr),<sup>77</sup> for having given information against the Banu Mostaliq who had refused to pay the tribute. Muhammed is said to have revealed the verses in which Al Walid is styled a sinner (*fāsiq*).<sup>78</sup> The story which is not very well authenticated, although generally believed to be true, seems to me doubtful, and was probably invented to discredit the Omayyad party, or, at least, Al Walid himself, who as Prefect of Kūfa<sup>79</sup> did not lead a very religious life and was deposed by Othmān. It is not likely that Muhammed would thus have branded a new convert, member of a very influential family, and close relative to some of his nearest friends. Moreover as the whole affair, which was due to a misunderstanding, was subsequently cleared up, Muhammed would not have left so offensive an expression in the *Qorān*. I believe that the passage (the date of which I am, however, unable to fix) was placed here on account of verse 7 which also contains statements concerning the person of the "Messenger of Allāh" in juxtaposition to the messengers of the Banu Tamim. The cause of the revelation of the verse in question seems to have been the same as in both the preceding groups (vv. 9-12), viz., the petty quarrels and jealousies which prevailed among Arab tribes in general, and the Medinians (*Anṣār*) on one side, and the Meccan Fugitives (*Muhājirūn*) on the other in particular. These quarrels often threatened to assume dangerous dimensions. The two proverbial observations contained in verse 12<sup>80</sup> also tend to denounce suspicion and backbiting, so that they stand in direct connection with verse 6. Contrary to these, verse 13 teaches that not birth and family pride, but piety give, in the eyes of Allāh, the highest claim to distinction. The verse appears to imply a criticism of the haughty tone of the verses of Al Zibriqān,<sup>81</sup> the poet of the legation, and of this kind of poetry (*fakhr*) altogether. — In spite of the traditional explanation of v. 14,<sup>82</sup> viz., that

<sup>72</sup> Nöldeke, p. 163, places the *sūra* prior to the conquest, but without valid reason.

<sup>73</sup> ex. 1 — xlviii. 1-3.

<sup>74</sup> Palmer: *When there comes, etc.*, incorrect.

<sup>75</sup> *Hish.* p. 239, Wāqidi, p. 386.

<sup>76</sup> See also Khamis, II. p. 118. As regards the details see Sprenger, III. 365, and above, Ch. I. <sup>77</sup> See Ch. X.

<sup>78</sup> V. 6. On the authority of Yasid b. Rūmān (died about 130) with no further *Isnad*, related by I. I. p. 780; Al Beidhāwī, Khamis, II. p. 120; Nöldeke, p. 164, v. 224; Sprenger, III. 368. I. I. seems to fix the incident prior to the expedition against the B. Muṣṭaliq.

<sup>79</sup> Ibn Hajar, No. 8657 (III. p. 1312).

<sup>80</sup> See Ch. VIII.

<sup>81</sup> See Ḥamān b. Thābit, *Dirān*, p. 110 *sqq.*

<sup>82</sup> Nöldeke, p. 165, adopts this explanation.



it refers to a certain Bedouin tribe which, in exchange for their conversion to Islām, expected to receive provisions from the Prophet during a famine, I rather believe it to be a comment on the preceding verse, and for a good reason. As already intimated, many Bedouin tribes accepted Islām after the conquest of Mecca; but, whilst finding the recitation of the formula of the creed very easy work, they found more difficulty in exchanging their modes of life for the practical duties of Islām. Here we perceive the civilizing influence of Islām better than anywhere else. Muhammed explained to the reluctant ones that it was not sufficient for Bedouins to say: "*We believe*" — which was no belief; but they were to say: "*we have become Moslems*." In this sentence, he evidently contrasts theory with practice, and the passage also offers a valuable instance of Muhammed's own conception of Islām at that stage.<sup>53</sup> As might have been expected he adds that it consists in obedience to Allāh and His Messenger, and sacrificing wealth and personality to the cause of the faith (vv. 15-16). Believers did not, by embracing Islām, benefit either the Prophet or Allāh, but the latter benefitted them by his guidance (vv. 17-18). One cannot fail to perceive the altered tone in Muhammed's speech, assumed in the consciousness of his power. It was also quite justifiable in view of the rudeness of the Tamimite ambassadors, and fixes the date of the address decisively. The pieces of this exhortation seem to be simultaneous or very nearly so.

If Muhammed was able to adopt such language, it is small wonder that he dreamt of leading the now greatly increased forces of the Moslim army against the Emperor Heraclius, who shortly before had made himself master of Syria, and had several Arab tribes, as well as Jews, in his army. It was probably his brother Arabs, whom Muhammed was most anxious to induce to forsake their Christian patrons, since he could hardly hope to carry the Moslim arms beyond the border of Asia. He was, however, fully alive to the dangers connected with an expedition against the better trained Greek troops. This meant warfare on a different scale from that to which he had hitherto been accustomed. As a tentative move he made two speeches, the first of which (*Sūra* ix. 23-27) in some respect resembles the one just discussed. Muhammed repeats that family ties or worldly interest must be second to the love for Allāh and His Prophet. Allāh had supported them in the past year at Honein with a large though invisible army,<sup>54</sup> just as he had done at Badr, and given them the victory over the infidels.

When Muhammed had set out to take Mecca, many Bedouin tribes had disappointed him. He severely censured those who were "left behind," and, as a punishment, they received none of the spoil gained in the expeditions against the Jewish clans (*Sūra* xlviii. 15). In order to give them an opportunity of redeeming their former laxity, Muhammed summoned them to join the forces which were sent against the Byzantines. I have little doubt that only these are meant by the expression "people of vehement valour" (*Sūra* xlviii. 16), and not the followers of Moseilima against whom Muhammed never intended sending an army. Considering the perils of this expedition Muhammed wished to have among his troops only able-bodied warriors who could cope with the Greek soldiers. In the less serious raids undertaken heretofore many had, no doubt, taken part who were not proof against the fatigues of real warfare, but underwent some hardship for the sake of the spoil. The next verse (17) seems to have been revealed in order to keep these people out rather than from purely humane motives. If such persons lost their share of the booty, it mattered little, because they would be rewarded for their obedience with the enjoyments of paradise.

The majority of voluntary and involuntary converts were not yet prepared to risk life and limb from sheer enthusiasm for Islām, and did not respond to Muhammed's call to arms as willingly as he might have expected. He had to bring all his powers of eloquence to bear in order to overcome their reluctance. In a long speech (*Sūra* ix. 33-73) he charges Believers with preferring the comforts of this world to the next. He threatens them with heavy punishment.

<sup>53</sup> See Ch. I., App., Note 1. Al Beidhāwī *واظهار الشهادة وترك* *فان الاسلام انقياد ودخول في السلم واظهار الشهادة وترك* *السجادة يشعريه*.

<sup>54</sup> Al Beidhāwī: five thousand angels, or according to others, six or eight thousand.



and recalls to their minds how Allāh had assisted him, when he, accompanied by a single friend,<sup>85</sup> had hidden himself during his escape from Mecca. While several phrases and expressions in this speech manifest its close relationship with the first part of this *sūra*,<sup>86</sup> it endeavours to re-kindle the zeal of the Moslems for religious war. The words: "He made the word (*kalima*) of the unbelievers the lowest (v. 40) are undoubtedly an allusion to the Christian faith of the enemy. If, he says, worldly gain were near at hand, and the march short, they would follow readily (v. 42), and in this manner he goes on blaming those who remained at home under various pretexts,<sup>87</sup> and were therefore classed among the "Hypocrites" (vv. 65, 68, 69).

During the expedition Muhammed returned to the same subject, and expressed his indignation against those who in spite of his entreaties stayed at home (v. 74-81). They were glad to remain behind for such paltry reasons as the heat of the season (v. 82). He declared that he would never again allow them to join any expedition (v. 84), and forbade praying at their graves<sup>88</sup> (v. 85). It grieved him to perceive that the belief of the newly converted tribes was very superficial.<sup>89</sup> He again laid down the rule for those who were exempt from military service, viz., the weak, the sick, and those who were too poor to arm themselves.<sup>90</sup> Yet others who were [able-bodied and] wealthy asked leave to stay behind.<sup>91</sup>

If Muhammed was indignant against those lately converted, he was much more so against Medinians who were guilty of the same dereliction of duty, and set a bad example to others. In the address consisting of the verses 120-128 he censured that portion of the army which was under the command of Abd Allāh b. Ubeyy, and numbered many Jews among its ranks. The latter are alluded to in the usual term "of those in whose heart is sickness" (v. 126), and Believers are expected to fight them.

At any rate Muhammed's wish to overawe the Byzantine army by an overwhelming Moslem force was not fulfilled, and the expedition terminated in the bloodless demonstration of Tabūk, whence the army returned to Medina. No risk of life had been incurred, and those who had remained at home regretted it, being profuse in excuses which were entirely ignored. In an address on the matter (vv. 95-120) Muhammed was particularly severe against those Bedouins who were "the keenest in disbelief and hypocrisy and readiest to ignore the bounds which Allāh has revealed" (v. 98). Others, he said, gave their contribution unwillingly, and were only waiting for the fortune to turn against Muhammed (v. 99), though some of them were sincere Moslems (v. 100). Now here we may observe an interesting phenomenon. The social equality which had established itself during the initiatory stages of Islām, commenced to undergo a slight change, as soon as the faith was supported by political power. Muhammed himself took the first step to create a kind of aristocracy by giving the "Fugitives" the foremost rank in the favour of Allāh. The rank next to them was occupied by the Medianian "Helpers"<sup>92</sup> (v. 101). This was but natural. It would have been an insult to those who nearly twenty years before had given up home and family, and in some cases fortunes, and cast their lot with an outlaw, to rank them with poor Bedouins who now ran after Islām because it paid better than their former trade.

In the verses following these Muhammed describes the "hypocrite" penitents and those who had built a mosque with mischievous intentions<sup>93</sup> (v. 102-108). In opposition to the latter

<sup>85</sup> Abu Bakr.

<sup>86</sup> Cf. *انزل الله سكينته* ..... *وانزل جنودا لم نزلها* v. 25 and *انصرم* v. 40.

<sup>87</sup> The verses 49 and 82 are said to refer to Al Jadd b. Qais, cf. I. I. p. 894.

<sup>88</sup> The verse is said to refer to Abd Allāh b. Ubeyy, and Nöldeke, p. 167, regards it therefore as a later addition.

<sup>89</sup> Cf. *Sūra* 49 and above, rem. 83.

<sup>90</sup> No parallel to Dent. xx. 1-8.

<sup>91</sup> Palmer's translation (94): "Only is there a way against those, etc.," quite misses the point. *السيبل* means here scar as usual. Verse 93 refers according to all authorities to the "Weepers," viz., seven Ansār who were too poor to procure camels, cf. Wāqidi, p. 392; I. I. p. 895.

<sup>92</sup> Cf. viii. 73.

<sup>93</sup> Wāqidi, *ibid.*, I. I. 913.



he places "the mosque founded on piety," as well as the position of the believers, and the fate awaiting them as laid down in *Torâh*, Gospel and *Qorân* (v. 109-113). The next portions of these rather incoherent speeches date from the same time. Verse 114 which refers either to the memory of Abu Tâlib, or Muhammed's mother,<sup>94</sup> is evidently in some way connected with verse 81, and seems to form the reply to a query based on *Sûra* xix. 46. The interpretation (given in verse 115) that Abraham only *promised*, but did not actually pray for his father, is cunning rather than dignified, because the tone of the verse alluded to impresses the reader with the idea that Abraham *did* pray. The word *tabarra'a* (verse 115) gives a clue why this sermon was joined to the one at the beginning so as to form one *sûra*.<sup>95</sup> Verse 119 standing alone, at length grants pardon to some of those censured in a former speech of the same *sûra* (vv. 38 *sqq.*).

Although the expedition to Tabûk did not bring the desired result, yet it added largely to the number of new converts, or at least subjects of Muhammed on the basis of a treaty. Finding the latter, however, not to his taste, Muhammed, in the following year, charged his cousin Aliyy to meet the pilgrims assembled at Mecca, and to read in their presence a proclamation which declared all compacts made with unbelievers null and void. Although this "Renunciation," which forms the first part of *Sûra* ix., does not appear in the usual form of revelations, it was embodied in the *Qorân*, but without the introductory formula "In the name of Allâh the Merciful, the Compassionate." This was, indeed, superfluous, since it is announced as a *barda* (renunciation) and an *adân* (proclamation), both emanating from Allâh and His messenger (vv. 1-3). It is therefore not Muhammed who violates the treaty, but Allâh Himself, the Prophet being only his tool. Exempt were only the holders of a compact until a given term (vv. 4-6). After the elapse of the [four] sacred months infidels were to be regarded as outlaws, and Moslems were free to kill them by any means in their power, unless they confessed Islâm (vv. 5-12). In order not to leave any doubt which months were meant, he explains the matter in an appendix (vv. 36-37), and denounces the pagan custom of changing one of these months with another if more convenient. — There is, however, some uncertainty about the date of the piece vv. 13-22. Noldeke, following Moslim interpreters, is inclined to retrodate these verses to the time before the conquest of Mecca, although the word *hammû* ("they solicited," *vis.*, to drive thee out, verse 13) speaks against such a theory.<sup>96</sup> It seems rather that this verse contains a reminiscence of the unsuccessful attempt undertaken by Muhammed two years before leaving Mecca to spread Islâm among the inhabitants of Tâif. His wrath against these people was all the greater, as even after the conquest of Mecca they entered into a coalition with the Hawâzin tribes to fight against Muhammed. Defeated at Honein (Shawwâl A. 8), they retired into their city which the Prophet besieged in vain. It is, therefore, natural that he was not content to entrust their punishment to Allâh alone (v. 14),<sup>97</sup> but egged Believers on to continue fighting them with the assistance of Allâh. Like other infidels they must not be permitted to "visit" the holy city even outside the sacred season, because this privilege is in future accorded exclusively to Moslems.

A further comment on the same prohibition is given in the section vv. 28-37, in which idolaters are declared to be "unclean,"<sup>98</sup> and must therefore not come near the sacred places after the termination of the present year. Such prohibition clashed, however, with the commercial interest of the believing population of Mecca. This was a rather serious objection, which Muhammed could not answer, except by the assurance that Allâh would compensate them for any loss of trade sustained in consequence of his command (v. 28).

<sup>94</sup> Noldeke, p. 168.

<sup>95</sup> See below.

<sup>96</sup> Al Beidhâwî refers v. 12 to the Jews who endeavoured to drive Muhammed out of Medina, but cf. v. 14.

<sup>97</sup> Tradition makes him pray for the conversion of the city, I. I. 188.

<sup>98</sup> To perform the 'umra, which means an occasional visit to Mecca for the purposes of performing the minor rites, but not accompanied by sacrifices.

<sup>99</sup> Cf. Levit. xxii. 8.



After their expulsion from Mecca many Jews had made common cause with Heraclius, and in Muhammed's eye still constituted some danger to Islām. The Prophet seems to have feared that their spiritual influence might become harmful after his death. We have seen before that on several occasions Muhammed tried to foist upon the Jews the stamp of paganism.<sup>100</sup> Returning to this old charge Muhammed enjoins Moslems again to fight those who held many things lawful which Allāh and His messenger had forbidden, but they did even not follow the law of their own faith (v. 29). In order to bear out the accusation of Jewish heathenism, Muhammed charged them with venerating Ezra as the son of God, in the same manner as the Christians did with Jesus (v. 30). The sole basis for this charge is the circumstance that Ezra was responsible for many institutions in the Rabbinical code, which appeared to differ from the written law, but this alleged sonship is an invention of Muhammed for the purpose alluded to above. If Moslems were to look upon Jews as upon polytheists, their influence in such quarters which stood outside the immediate control of Muhammed or any future head of the Moslim church, was not to be feared. Like unto Christians they took, he said, their Rabbis as *Lords* (*arabb*, plural of *rabb*), and very shrewdly Muhammed described these "Lords" in the same term, as in his own first revelation. "They take their *Rabbis* and *monks* as Lords beside Allāh, and also the Messiah the son of Maryam, while they have been commanded only to worship one God, there is no God but He, exalted be he above those which they join with him" (v. 31). The theological observations attached to this disclosure explain themselves (vv. 32-33), viz., that *Muhammed* is the true messenger. Rather sharp is the assertion that many of the Rabbis and monks eat the wealth of men for nought (v. 34), although as far as Jews are concerned it was in mediæval times not the custom to pay the spiritual heads of communities.

I place here the verse vii. 156 which refers to the conversion of some Jews and Christians. This is clear from the words: "they find written down *with them* in the Torāh and Gospel." Also the words "making lawful for them what is good and making unlawful evil things, and setting down for them their restrictions, and yokes which were upon them" are unmistakable. It seems to me that the verse was revealed chiefly in reference to the conversion of the Jew Abd Allāh b. Salām which took place in the year 8.<sup>1</sup> The next piece, as far as verse 172, is a homily commenting on the same incident. The conversion of Abd Allāh to which Moslim traditionists attach the greatest importance, gave Muhammed an opportunity of proclaiming himself once more the Apostle of mankind in general, and of recalling several episodes of the history of Israel. He mentions the twelve tribes, the command given to Moses to strike the rock,<sup>2</sup> and other matters discussed in previous speeches.<sup>3</sup> The "Covenant of the Book" (168) bears a striking resemblance to the "Book of the Covenant" (Exod. xxiv. 7). The verses 171-172, speaking of the children of Adam bearing witness against themselves, seem to be based on, or at least influenced by, a *Midrāsh* (Canticles I. 4) according to which God, when about to reveal the law of Sinai, demanded from the people a pledge that they would observe it. After rejecting the Patriarchs and Prophets, God accepted the children as hostages.

There only now remains *Sūra* v. which, however, offers difficult problems for the arrangement of its portions in their proper places. Before attempting this task we must briefly survey the conditions under which they were revealed. In the 10th year of the Hijra Muhammed started, at the head of an immense crowd of pilgrims to pay the famous visit to his native city which is known as his last. The dogmas and rites of the Moslim church had then been already settled, not only in the outlines, but also in many details. Muhammed himself was so far advanced in years, as to make him think of his natural end. Knowing the character and prejudices of the Arabs, and being aware that the belief of a large number of believers was but superficial, his mind was filled with apprehensions about his future. Experience had taught him that but for his personal influence the differences of interest and temper would have caused splits in the community which endangered the safety of the faith. Tribal hostilities, so often quenched by

<sup>100</sup> Cf. iii. 73.<sup>1</sup> See *Isāba* and Ch. II.<sup>2</sup> See Geiger, l. c. p. 184.<sup>3</sup> Cf. ii. 54-51.



his exertions, might break out at any moment when he was removed, and end in civil war. Most of the ritual duties were a heavy burden on the masses, which were far from grasping their meaning. Not less undesirable was the moral code. It was hard that the smallest bit of pilfering was punishable. Wine and dice were to be abhorred, and the freedom of the chase to be restricted, not to mention other laws. Muhammed was well aware that his people could not be educated up to his ideal with one stroke. The warnings had to be repeated over and over again. Such speeches of a deuteronomic character form the framework of *Sūra v.*, the bulk of which was preached on the occasion of the last pilgrimage in the presence of a huge congregation.

We can take it for granted that Muhammed was acquainted with the Jewish interpretation of the character of the Deuteronomy as a repetitional injunction of the Law (*Mishnâh Tôrah*). Why not follow this example? As an exterior deuteronomic feature in the first portion of our *sūra* I regard the three instances of *alyauma* ("today") (vv. 4, 5, 7), which in the same application is particularly frequent in the Biblical book of Deuteronomy.

Of this book the reader is already reminded in the opening words of verse 1 of our *sūra*,<sup>4</sup> corresponding to Deut. iv. 13, 23: xxix. 8, *vis.*, the injunction to keep covenants of which Muhammed had set such a good example by his *barda*. The regulations with regard to forbidden articles of food (vv. 4-7) stand parallel to Deut. xii. 16, 20, 27; xiv. 3-21.<sup>5</sup> The verses 2-3 are regarded by Nöldeke as having been revealed before the conquest of Mecca, because they ordain that *pagan* pilgrims to the Ka'ba should remain unmolested. This is, however, hardly admissible. It is not to be assumed that Muhammed would have styled the deity to be worshipped by these heathen visitors as "their Rabb," because he employed just this term from the beginning in a strictly antagonistic sense. The verses refer to future pilgrimages. Muhammed warns Believers not to revive the old hatred, nor to bear grudge against those Meccan families which had been hostile almost to the last, but were now Moslems. The large meetings to be expected at Mecca inspired him with fear that old feuds might break out afresh to the desecration of the holy spot and season, and the same fear rings through a *surat* shortly to follow. Verse 5 is the famous "verse of the *Dîn*," and reflects verses like Deut. iv. 8, and quite a host of others. As a supplement to the prayer ritual appears an ordination to wash the hands with water prior to the performance of the same, or if this should not be within reach, with sand<sup>6</sup> (vv. 8-9). Verse 10 is deuteronomic for *Sūra ii.* 285 and the parallel verses. The topic of verse 3 is with verbal repetition of the case,<sup>7</sup> taken up again in the verses 11 and 14.<sup>8</sup> The group 15-17 has a similar tendency. Nöldeke leaves a large margin for it between the years 2 and 7, but it seems that Muhammed had Moses' farewell speech in his mind. The "covenant" (v. 15) recalls Deut. xxxiii. 2, and the "twelve chiefs" are alluded to, *ibid.* v. 5. Allāh's word to the "children of Israel" recalls quite generally the blessing of verse 1 of the same chapter. As a matter of course the tone of Muhammed's imitation is on a level with his own taste, as well as the needs and intellects of his audience. The next verse (16) stating that the Banû Isrâil broke the compact, and were cursed, and hardened their heart, forged the law and forgot part of it (Deut. xxviii. 15-69), is trite enough, and served to give fulness to the speech. Less worn is the reproach addressed to the Christians that to their forgetfulness it was due that the church was split up in sects betwixt which there existed enmity and hatred "until the Day of Resurrection" (v. 17).

As a supplement to this criticism, the compilers of the *Qorān* have placed at the end of the *sūra* a narrative piece (vv. 109-120) which contains an admonition addressed by Allāh to Jesus. From the "table" mentioned in verse 112 the whole *sūra* has its name. The tendency

<sup>4</sup> The compound character of v. 1 has already been noticed by most Moslim interpreters, cf. Nöldeke, p. 169.

<sup>5</sup> وما ذبح علي النصب - Levit. xvii. 7; Deut. xxxii. 17.

<sup>6</sup> See Geiger, p. 89.

<sup>7</sup> ولا يجر منكم شأن قوم.

<sup>8</sup> Cf. ix. 13.



of the narrative is laid down in the verses 116-119, *viz.*, that Jesus commanded to worship only one God. He is, consequently, not responsible for the origin of the dogma of the Trinity which was only due to corruption and forgetfulness (see verse 17). Although it is hazardous to say anything definite with regard to the age of this piece, it seems somewhat older than verse 17 in which we may see a reference to it. Its Medinian origin is, however, beyond doubt on account of verse 110.

Now towards the end of this piece (verse 118) Jesus prays that Allāh may forgive his followers' sins, and to this the verses 18-19 seem to respond. The term "Possessors of the Writ" refers in this instance to Christians alone. It is noticeable that here as well as in verse 17 Muhammed regards the Christians with much complacency. He only reproaches them with *forgetfulness*, as we have seen, promises them that he, while explaining to them much of the Book made unintelligible by them, will also *forgive them much*. The following protest against the apotheosis of Jesus is strangely devoid of all sharpness. Even when commenting on the circumstance that [Jews and] Christians called themselves "Sons and beloved of Allāh" whilst they were only mortals (v. 21), he is not so bitter as usual. The reason seems to be that the failure of the expedition of Tabūk had taught Muhammed to abstain from reviling so large a Christian power. The effete Jews could be abused with impunity. Muhammed must certainly have feared that after his death the Moslim armies might be defeated by Christian ones, to the loss of many Arab tribes, which only a little while ago had been converted to Islām. — Verse 22, of uncertain date, has been placed here on account of v. 18.

Deuteronomic are further the verses 41-55. Verse 45 repeats the idea of *Sūra* iv. 48, whilst verse 49 is a reiteration of *Sūra* ii. 173-175, yet modifying it in the way of clemency. This furnishes some evidence that the piece v. 49-55 is later than the other. The verses 64-68 very conspicuously form a repetition of the scathing remarks in *Sūra* ii. 61, 257-258; iv. 54; ix. 34, reproducing the gist of these verses, as a comparison would show at a glance.

Of very late date is the sermon *Sūra* vi. 117-151 and partly of deuteronomic character, although nothing definite can be said with regard to the occasion on which it was revealed. The rather detailed denunciation of various heathen rites, such as the killing of children and the restriction observed with respect to using certain animals for food allow the suggestion that this speech also was addressed to the pilgrims assembled in Mecca.

The verse v. 69,<sup>2</sup> being evidently a misinterpretation of some words in Numb. xi. 23, reproaches the Jews with limiting the omnipotence of Allāh. The verse is one of those which on account of its strongly anthropomorphic character caused Moslim theologians considerable difficulties. But just this is an argument in favour of its late date, showing a time when Muhammed had ceased to see any danger in such figures of speech.

Deuteronomic are also the verses 89-90 which repeat, although perhaps not on the same occasion, prescriptions discussed at the beginning of the *sūra*. Verse 91 repeats in a somewhat extended form the command given in *Sūra* lxvi. 2. The verses 92-94 recapitulate as well as emphasize the prohibition of wine and gambling, warned against in *Sūra* ii. 216. The interdiction of statues and divining arrows is also added. The next verses (95-97) treat of the killing of game which is unlawful on sacred ground. The transgression of this command is to be expiated by an offering. In much more precise terms than in *Sūra* ii. 138 the Ka'ba is now appointed to form the "*Qibla* for men." Verse 101 is the reply to a query which, the traditionists assert, was asked with regard to the frequency with which Believers were expected to perform the pilgrimage. The angry tone of the answer is, however, unsuitable to the zeal of pious Believers. The query seems to have been of a perplexing nature, and I doubt the genuineness of the whole verse. Verse 102 abolishes the ancient custom of observing rules with regard to the eating of certain camels. One of these classes termed *baḥīra* will make it clear



why Muhammed did not adopt the name *Bahira*<sup>10</sup> for himself; the second part of the verse as well as verse 105 seems to refer again to Jews. Finally the regulations concerning wills and bequests (vv. 105-108),<sup>11</sup> and the warning to be truthful when giving evidence renew commands given long before (ii. 176; vi. 153).

I have still to mention several pieces which are of so uncertain date that it is not possible even to suggest anything as to their places. Of these are the three verses lxxxv. 9-11 which are evidently Medianian, but this is all that can be said about them with certainty. *Surd* lxxiii. 20 is a very late repetition of the refrain of *Sûra* liv. (17, 22, etc.), but with a more practical aim. The verse is suggestive of Muhammed becoming advanced in years and more experienced as regards human nature. Long nightly devotions were not so essential for those who kept the chief duties of Islâm.

(To be continued.)

#### LETTERS FROM PORTUGUESE CAPTIVES IN CANTON, WRITTEN IN 1534 AND 1536.

BY DONALD FERGUSON.

(Continued from p. 451.)

¶ Trelado de hũa carta que da China veo a qual carta escreueo Christouão Vieyra  
Vasco Caluo que laá estão captiuos os quaes forão da companhia dos  
embaixadores que leuou fernão Perez anno de 1520.

Na era de 1520 a xxij. dias de Janeiro partimos pera o Rey da China em Mayo estauamos com o Rey em Nanquim dali mandou q̃ nos fossemos a çidade de Piquim diante pera nos la dar o despacho a ij. de Agosto se escreueo a Cantão do que era passado com el rey ate então chegarão as cartas a Jorge botelho Diogo Caluo que estauão em a Ilha onde se faz mercadoria por tanto não se torna a escreuer porque o tempo requiere breuidade e pouca leitura. Em febreiro entrou o Rey em Piquim e estene doente tres meses falleçeo do dia seguinte que nos viessemos a Cantão com ho presente que viria o Rey nouo que erão por elle a outra çidade que nos mandaria o despacho a Cantão / Partimos de Pequim a xxij. de Mayo chegamos a xxij. de Setembro a Cantão porque a guia vinha a sua vontade de vagar. / a causa de se não tomar o presente he esta.

Quando fernão perez chegou ao porto da China mandou aos lingoas que fizessem cartas como vinha capitão moor e trazia embaixador pera o Rey da China os lingoas as [f. 104 v] fizerão ao custume da terra assi capitão moor e embaixador vem a terra da Cinha por mandado do Rey dos fanges com pareas vem pedir o selo segundo custume ao sñor do mundo filho de Deos pera lhe ser obediente. segundo custume por esta carta fomos recebidos em terra, esta he a sustancia da carta que fizerão sem darem conta della a fernão perez nem elle em nenhum tempo ser de tal sabedor somente os lingoas dezião que a carta estaua bem feita segundo o custume e a sustancia della Calauão.

Em a çidade de Pinquim foy dentro nas casas do Rey aberta a carta del Rey nosso Sñor e foy nella achado ao Reues do que os lingoas escreuerão pareceo lhe a todos que enganosa<sup>te</sup> emtraramos na terra da China pera lhe ver a terra que era caso de engano a deferença das cartas foy escrita a carta ao Rey mandou o Rey que não fossemos mais a suas casas fazer Reuerença e tiu<sup>se</sup> gente e guarda em nos / o custume dos embaixadores em Piquim he metelos em hũa casas de grandes curraes e aly estão fechados ao primeiro dia da lua e ha 15 dias da lua vão as casas do Rey delles a pee delles em sendeyros com cabrestros de palha e vão fazer 5. mensuras diante de hum muro das casas do Rey todos em ordem com ambos os jiolhos no chão

<sup>10</sup> See Ch. II.

<sup>11</sup> See ii. 175-176; iv. 1-45.



e a cabeça e o rosto na terra debruços assi estão atee que os mandão a leuatar .5. vezes a esta parede dali tornão se a meter nos curraes fechados a esta reuerença mandarão que não fossemos mais.

forão os linguas perguntados porq̃ fizeram carta falsa [f. 105] e não conforme a del Rey Nosso Sr̃ diserão que as fizeram ao costume da China que a carta del Rey nosso Sr̃ vinha cerrada e asellada que se não podia leer nem abrir que auia de ser dada a el Rey em sua mão que eramos de longe terra e que não sabiamos o costume da China que era grande que que ao diante o saberiamos que elles não tinham culpa pois que fizeram a carta ao costume não se contentarão os mandarys da reposta forão preguntados cada hum donde erão forão presos isto tanto que o Rey falleço e moços seus seruidores.

Chegou o Rey a hũa vila que esta duas legoas da çidade de Pim em Janeiro da era de .MDxxi. estense iulgãdo hum seu parente que se aleuanteou contra elle e o mandou queimar depois de emforcado e aly entrou em despacho noso porque lhe forão trazidas tres cartas contra os portugezes hũa de dous mandarys em Piquim outra dos mandarys de Cantão outra dos Melays cujos sustancias são estas .f. manderys que forão a Ilha de mercadoria a Receber os direyos per mandado dos mandarys de Cantão fazem saber ao Rey como elles forão em tal anno e dia era arrecadar os direyos virão gentes frangos com muitas armas e bombardas gentes fortes e não pagauão os direyos segundo o costume e fazem forças e assi ouirão dizer q̃ estes gentes tinham tomado Malaca a roubada e muita gente morta que o Rey não lhe deuia receber seu preçto e se lho quisesse receber que disessem com que Reinos confinava o Reino dos fanges q̃ os mandasse. q̃ os não deuia [f. 105 v] de Receber.

Dezia a carta dos mandaris de Cantão que os franges não querião pagar os direyos e que tomauão os direitos aos Syamis e os prendião e lhe asclauão os seus juncos e punhão guardas nelles e não lhe deixauão fazer mercadoria nem pagar os direyos e tinham hũa fortaleza feita de pedra cuberta de telha e cercada d'artelharis e dento muitas armas e que furtauão cães e que os comião asados e que vinhão a Cantão por força e que traziam bombardas em somas descobrindo os Rios que tirauão bombardas diante a çidade em outros lugares defessos.

Dizião os melajos que o embaixador del Rey de Portugal que estaua na terra da China que não vinha de verdade que falsamente era vindo a terra da China pera enganar e que andauamos a ver as terras e que logo vinhamos sobre ellas e como na terra punhamos hũa pedra e tinhamos casa logo auiamos a terra por nossa que assi fizemos em Malaca e em outras partes que eramos ladrões : / dizia hum mandiry grande que per carta lhe pidiamos asento ou casas em Cantão pera estarem franges que lhe parecia muito mal que em vez de obediencia que lhe pediamos asenta na terra Disse outro mandiry que na era de .MDxx. na Ilha de mercadoria os franges lhe quebrarão a carapuça e lhe derão pancadas e o prenderão indo elle arrecadar os direyos per mandado dos manderys de Cantão / a estas cousas respondeo el Rey que esta gente não sabem nossos [f. 106] costumes manso os irão sabendo disse que ficase o despacho p<sup>a</sup> dentro da çidade de Pequim logo entrou e no mesmo dia adoeço daly a tres meses falleço sem despachar nada. Desta reposta que o Rey deu não forão os grandes muy contentes e mandou logo o Rey a Cantão que ha fortaleza que os portugeses tinham feita que lha derribassem e assi toda a pouoação que não queria nenhũa mercadoria com nenhũa nação que se alguem viesse que se mandaria tornar e logo partirão caminho de Cantão que tirassem a limpo o que lhe diserão se era verdade ou não. Os manderys de Cantão não fizeram assi senão pera Roubar fizeram armadas e por engano delles per força tomarão os que vierem e os Roubarem.

Tanto que chegamos a Cantão nos leuarão diante do pochacy e nos mandou leuar a hũas casas de troncos que estão nos alleoqueis dos mantimentos e nellas não quis Thome piz entrar e os tronqueiros nos derão dentro hũas casas em que estiuemos trinta e tres dias e daqui leuarão a Thome piz com seis pessoas a cadea do Pochacy que chamão libanco e a mim com quatro pessoas a cadea do tomaçi / onde estiuemos pressos dez meses em poder de Thome Piz estaua toda a fazenda dauão nos Regra como seltos eramos muito vigiados em lugares apartados dos presos neste meo tempo mandarão chamar Thome piz e toda a companhia o amelaço que então era / assi chamaram os melajos dise que mandaua



o Rey q̄ entregasse el Rey nosso Sr a terra de Malaca aos melajos que lhe tinham tomada respondeo Thome piz que não vinha a ysso nem conninha a elle em tal fallar que da carta que [f. 106 v] trazia lhe daria rezão que dal não sabia Perguntou que gente avia em Malaca que elle sabia que avia nella trezentos homens portugueses e que em Cochim pouco mais respondeo que tinha Malaca quatro mill homẽs armas no mar e na terra hora erão iuntos hora espalhados e em Ceilão que não tinham cõto nestas perguntas nos teue de gíolhos quatro horas acabado de se enfadar mandou cada hum a cadeia donde estava.

A quatorze dias dagosto de .MDxxij. lançon o pochãçi a Tome piz cormas nas mãos aos da companhia cormas e ferros nos pees as cormas aseladas nos pulços e nos tomarão toda a fazenda que tinhamos assi com cadeas nos pescoços e per meo da cidade nos leuarão a casa do anchuçi ali nos quebrarão as prisões e nos deitarão outras mais fortes cadeas nas pernas cormas aselados e cadeas nos pescosos e dali nos mandarão a esta cadeia a entrada da cadeia morreo Antonio Dalmeida das prisões fortes que traziamos os braços inchados as pernas roçadas das cadeas estreitas / isto com determinação que dali a dons dias nos matarem antes de ser noite deitarão a Thome piz outras de nouo e o leuarão a elle soo descalço sem barrette / com apupadas de rapazes a cadeia de cancheufu por ver a fazenda que nos tomarão que se avia descreuer e escreuião dez e furtarão trezentos os mādaris escriuões que presente estauão assi laldesfoy o pochãçi anchuçi dizer a hum mandarin chamado ceuhi que pois portugueses entrarão na Ilha e pera que era ter nos que vinhamos a ver a terra que eramos ladrões que morresse mos logo / Respondeo o ceuhi tu queres acabar todos estes sendo de embaixada ora seja falsa ora verdadeira mandar lhe [f. 107] logo quebrar as prisões eu escrenerey a el Rey segundo sua vontade se fara naquelle seguinte dia nos quebrarão as prisões que se as tiueramos mais hum dia todos morreramos e tornarão a trazer a esta cadeia a Thome piz.

A fazenda q̄ nos tomarão crão vinte quintães de Ruybarbo mil e quinhentas ou seis çentas peças de seda ríquas obra de quatro mil lenços de seda que os chĩs chamão xopas de naquim e muito-avanos e mais tres aRobas dalmisquere em poo tres mill e tantos papos dalmiscere quatro mill e quinhentos teaes de prata e setenta ou oitenta teaes douro e outras peças de prata e todos os vestidos peças de preço assi portuguesas como da China o pueho de Jorge botelho incenso Roçamolla cascades tartaruga assi pimenta e outras mendezas estas forão entregues na feitoria do cancheufu como fazenda de ladrões o presente del Rey Nosso sñor que mandaua ao Rey da China esta na feitoria do Pochuncy a sustança das peças e quantas e de que sorte me não alembra bem porem a soma he de mil e quinhentos açima porque o caderno com outros papeis de sustança leuarão e as arcas que tomarão de vestidos e meterão com a fazenda / na nao de Diogo caluo ficarão as pessoas seguintes Vasco caluo, esteuão fernandez escriuão Agostinho fernandez mestre simão luis despenseiro João dalanquer João fernandez Diogo da Ilha do mestre e marinheiros Aº aluarez e quatro moços João fernandez guzarate Pº Jano do mestre Gaspar de estenão fernandez Gonçalo de Vasco caluo e por serem conhecidos em Cantão e dizerem que erão da embaixada escaparão os outros forão todos presos e metidos nesta cadeia delles morrerão a fome delles afogados Simão lingoa e balante alli forão pressos alli morrerão aqui nesta cadeia derãolhe com hum maço na cabeça assi o matarão [f. 107 v] Simão baralante que estava no chãchefu morrerão açontes trazendo ja cabas aos pescoços com setecentos que morrerão assi os portugueses fazendas e berços que forão com elles tudo foy roubado a menos se ouue pera el Rey a fazenda darmação que Vasco caluo tinha toda roubada do conçoçepaçi que foy pera Pequim de maneira que nada não ficou.

Bertholamen soares que era em patane e Lopo de Goês ã Syon Viçente aluarez criado de Simão dandrade o padre mergulhão que era em Syon vieram na era de .MDxxi. e estando Diogo caluo no porto de mercaderia armada dos Chĩs deu sobre elles porque vinhão os juncos oje hum e de menhã outro de Syon e forão tomados delles per engano delles pelejando forão leuados a Nanto e seus escrãos e muitas fazendas tudo roubado e elles feridos o padre mergulhão morreo pelejado forão trazidos as cadeas de Cantão com ferros e prisões aqui forão afogados trazendo tanças ja que moressem por ladrões do mar / aleantarãolhe que se querião erger com as cadeas não sendo assi tudo no tempo que hegou Martim Affonso e por não verem os outros portugueses que trazião dos nauios assi forão todos mortos.



Os cinco juncos que no porto de mercadoria ficarão na era de mill e quinhentos e vinte e hum quatro do Rey de Malaca hum do Rey de Patane / hum de francisco roiz outro de Jorge aluarez e dous outros e Diogo caluo tanto que partio forão todos roubados da gente darmada estauão a vista de Diogo caluo a maior parte leuou o anchiançi e o ampochi e capitães e pro de nãto e parte darmada e grande parte ouue o Rey e daqui se aredou e se furtou muita e se arecadou pera o Rey por fazenda de ladrões / Os Juncos forão repartidos [f. 108] o de francisco roiz Jorge aluarez forão dados aos capas e nelles se forão os del Rey de Patane aos malajos e outro aos syames doutro não sei tudo foy auido por fazenda de ladrões das grosas fazendas que destes iuncos ouuerão os mandarís ordenarão que não escapasse portuguez por que em nenhum dessem cõta destas fazendas que erão roubadas.

No mesmo anno vierão de patane dos outros iuncos em que vinhão Bertholameu Soarez de Syam outro em que vinha lopo de Goes / os portugeses como ja disse manhosamente delles tomados por força e vierão a Nanto e assi com recados falsos sabia a gente em terra e prendião nos porque vinhão espalhados oje hum de manhã outro finalmente que todos forão pressos. / nos mesmos iuncos logo cortarão as cabeças aos capitães mestres pilotos mercadores como tinhão fazenda o outro rebotalho trouxeram a cadeia em que morrerão dizem de mil e quinhentos pessoas ariba afora as cabeças dos mortos que era grande quãtidade pollos roubar aleuantarão lbe que trazião portugeses a terra per estas cadeas de Cantão forão afogados delles muitos mortos as pancadas e a fome nas cadeas de maneira que de toda esta copia de gente que antre todos serião dous mill não escaparão mais de sesenta bargantes que soltarão e obra de çinquenta molheres e mepinos de que depois morrerão a metade estes se forão pera Syam.

Hum Syame chamado chãcoantão hum seu hirmão e outros tres syames forão na praça descabeçados e feitos os corpos em troncos porque dezião que trazião portugeses a terra por cousas falsas q̃ lbe alenantarão tanto que os mandarís ouuerão as fazendas a mão a mor parte e menos pera o Rey não lbe mingou rainua [f. 108 v] pera os matar dizião os mandarís que soltassem estes que erão pas conheçidas que farião elles Syames cartas contra hos mandarís das fazendas que lhes tomarão que os mandarís pasarião mal que milhor era dar fundo a tudo por tal que nunca se soubese / Ordenarão de não receber nenhum estrangeiro na china e por esta causa destas fazendas e da dos cinco iuncos forão os mandarís muito ricos estas que furtarão ha gran tempo que não estão em Cantão forão mandados pera outras gouernanças segundo seus custumes agora som sobidos os mores do Reino.

Na era de .MDxxi. Veo ver Martim Affonso de Melo com cinco naos nauios hum iunco de Malaca / a gente que qua ficou he esta / do nauio de Diogo de mello os que morrerão no nauio Manoel chamarro, João Quoresma, Vasco Gil, Rº aluarez João vãz Lopo goncaluez João soarez Pº bouno Alvaro perdigão manuel alũz João pinto João carrasco Bastião gonçaluez homẽs darmas hum clerigo João do peral mestre Bras gonçaluez contramestre francisco piz marinheiro Alvaro annes condestabre Affonse annes bombardeyro João Affonso serrador estes sesenta bremmo rerão no nauio Diogo de Melo capitão Duarte lopez Diogo Carreiro estes feridos recolhidos / aos iuncos indo perayanto porque bradarão das feridas e prisões lbes cortarão as cabeças nos mesmos iuncos Duarte pestana o barbeiro / Benadito marinheiros / Domingos gil gromete / Roque gromete Pº do toyal gromete, João gtz bombardeyro Joanne escrauo estes noue forão a Cadea do tõeçey / Pº annes piloto / Bertholameu fernandez pedreyro / João de matos Aº medina Joanne maluco estes grometes Domingos frz Jorge diãz fernão liarũ homẽs darmas estes vierão ter a esta cadeia de anchũçy donde ora estou.

[f. 109] Gente do nauio de Pº homem os q̃ morrerão no nauio / Pº homẽ, Gaspar roiz / Martim Affonso despenseiro francisco dandrade Diogo martiz, Antonio atuz estes seis homẽs darmas / Pantalão diãz mestre João luis contramestre / Bras mriz / Pº annes / Aº esteuez estes tres marinheiros, Alvaro, Pº, Joanne Manoel preto estes cinco grometes Luis piz carpinteiro e o barbeiro Vasco roiz Jorge diãz tonoeiro todas estas dezaseis pessoas forão mortas no nauio, João da Sylueira, Domingos serrão, Martinho francisco do mogadouro / francisco Ribeiro magalhães Jorge roiz estes seis forão a cadeia do tõeçey e quatro grometes / Pina e franco, Manoel malauar, Diogo cafe e Andre carualho piloto / Aº fernandez marinheiro / francisco, Antonio grometes e Matheus diãz, franº monteiro Afonso



diz Marcos Tome fernandez tilheiro-Sisto Luis condestabre estes dez vierão ter a esta cadea / as mulheres que tomarão em estes nauios forão leuadas a outras Cadeas e vendidas / finalmente que forão teer a cadea do tomaçi todos morrerão a fome e ao frio não ficarão mais que quatro homẽs portugese e hum cafre os quaes morrerão nesta cadea em que estainos falecerão seis ficarão dezoito assy os desta cadea como os da cadea do tomeçi / Dia de .S. Nicolao da era de .MDxxij. lhes lançarão taboas com sentença que morressem e entroncos por ladrões dizião as sentenças ladrões piquenos do mar enuiados pollo ladrão grande falsamente vem espiair nossa terra mourão em troncos por ladrões / foy recado ao Rey segundo a enformação dos mandaris confirmou o Rey a sêtença a vinte e tres dias des Septiembre de .MDxxij. forão estas vinte tres pessoas feitas em pedaços cada hũa .s. cabecas pernas braços e suas naturas nas bocas o tronco do corpo em redondo pella barriga em dous pedaços pella rua de Cantão fora dos muros pta ponuação pta [f. 109 v] Ruas principais forão mortos de tiro de besta em tiro pera todos os verem assi os de cantão como os do termo pera darem a emtender que não tinham em conta portugueses por ho pono não fallar em portugueses. / forão assi nos nauios tomados as mãos por se não acordarem os capitães ambos e tomados assi todos nos nauios a todos os matarão e as suas cabecas e naturas forão trazidas as costas dos portugueses diante dos mandarís de Cantão com tangeres e prazeres forão vistas pinduradas pollas ruas e depois deitadas nos munturos / e daqui ficou não consintirem mais portugueses na terra nem outros estrangeiros.

Os malajos que forão o Piquim forão despachados que se Viessẽ a Cantão que aquí lhe mandarião o despacho e veio que lhe dessem hũa carta pera el Rey Nosso sñor pera lhe ser entregue malaqua cujo theor he este seguinte tresladada de Verbo ad verbũ dontra que os mandarís fizeram em Chim que per ella se fizesse a qual fizeram tres por este theor que se auia de leuar pera el Rey Nosso sñor ao s<sup>or</sup> governador outra ao capitão de Malaca.

Quenhici e ohiçi mandarís ouirão dizer que o poder dos frãges tinham tomado Malaca fizeram carta ao Rey da China de como fora tomado e roubada e muita gente morta e escreueo o Rey aos mandarís de Cantão que se fizesse conselho sobre isso depois desta carta chegou outra de Rey de malaca que trouxe Tuão mafame embaixador que foy dada a el Rey da China que dizia na maneira seguinte os frages ladrões com coração grande vierão a malaca com muita gente e tomarão a terra e a destruirão e matarão muita gente e a roubarão e outra catiuarão e a outra gente que fica esta debaixo da [f. 110] iustiça dos franges de que o Rey que foy de malaca tem hum coração triste anojado com grande medo tomou o sello do Rey da China e fugio pera bentão donde esta e os meus hirmãos e parentes fugirão pera outras terras o embaixador del Rey de portugual que esta na terra da China he falso não vem de verdade que vem pera enganar a terra da China pera el Rey da China fazer merçee a el Rey de Malaca com coração enojado manda presente pede ajuda e gente pera lhe ser tornada sua terra esta carta foy dada a libo que he o despachador disto despachou o libo que a terra dos franges deuia ser cousa pequena chegada ao mar depois que o mundo he mundo nunca viera a terra da China embaixador de tal terra a terra de malaca teem o fom e sello da China e da sua obediência o libo despachou e deu carta ao Rey despacho.

O Rey da China manda carta aos grandes de Cantão que não recebam a nenhum embaixador de portugual a carta del Rey de portugual he queimada o embaixador e sua companhia ja foy perguntado de como se tomou Malaca não o deixem hir mande carta ao Rey de portugual pera que o saiba e os seus mandarís p<sup>a</sup> que o saibão logo e entreguem Malaca ao dito Rey de Malaca como o Rey de Malaca for entregue malaca e gente assi como lha tomarão ao Rey de Malaca e como o Rey de Malaca for entregue della deixarião hir ao embaixador e se não entregar Malaca ao dito Rey averse ha outro conselho / esta carta veyo do Rey da China ao Tutão e comqom e choupim de Cantão os quaes a mandarão ao çenhituçi pochanci e anchaci que teem o sello ao haytao pio aos outros mandarís chamem tuão healie embaixador del Rey de Malaca e seja perguntado dixe aos manderís que muita gente dos franges lhe tomarão Malaca sua terra que assi era verdade os manderís fizeram conselho e mandarão que o embaixador del Rey de portugual fizesse carta verdadeira e fosse dada a Tuão [f. 110 v] alemançet embaixor del Rey de Malaca que a



leue a Malaca e daly van a el Rey de portugal que lhe entregue e torne sua terra e gente na mão assi como lha tomarão e assi a Tuão mafamet e e então mandarão ao embaixador de portugal que se va como vier carta del Rey de Malaca ao Rey da China que lhe entregarem sua terra e sua gente e se el Rey de portugal não entregar a terra de malaca ao seu Rey na vier carta a terra da China da entrega não deixarão hir o embaixador e averse ha outro cõselho estando nesta cadea os mandarís mandarão hũa carta em Chim que se fizesse em portugues as quaes fizerão tres hũa pera el Rey nosso s<sup>or</sup> outra pera o gouernador outra pera o capitão de malaca e se derão em a mão do anchaçi ao primeiro dia de Outubro da era de .MDxxij.

Os mandarís mandarão ao embaixador de Malaca que tomasse aquellas cartas e as leuasse a malaca como lhe fosse entregue sua terra que viesse com recado o embaixador não quis dizendo que com aquellas cartas lhe cortarião a cabeça em Malaca que lhe dessem licença que queria comprar hum iunco piqueno que queria mandar a metade da sua gente saber do seu Rey porque não sabião donde estava porque as mulheres que tomarão nos dous nauios hũa dizia que era morto outra que não e que leuarião hũa carta se a podessem mandar partio o iunco piqueno com licença com quinze melajos e outros tantos Chís ao derradeiro dia de mayo de .xxij. chegou a Patane ali tomou algũs melajos e hum capado bengala e tornou recado del Rey de malaca e veio a Cantão a cinq dias de Setembro os Chís que leuou o iunco ficarão todos em Patane que não quizerão tornar a China a carta do embaixador dezião as forças assy.

El Rey de Malaca esta em Bintão cercado dos franges pobre desemparado oulhando despolha muenhã atee noyte por socorro [f. 111] del Rey da China seu sñor e se não lho der escreuera os Reis seus vasallos que o ajudem com gente e que mande algũa prouisão de mantimento a seu embaixador e cousas a estas semelhantes dizia mais a carta que estando o iunco carregado em Patane ouuerão os portugeses noticia delle e que vierão sobre elle pera e tomar que elles se fizerão ao mar com hũa trouada e escaparão sem mais mercadoria e mantimentos que a fome ouuerão de morrer no mar com esta carta entrarão em Cantão os mandarís os tornarão a despachar qua ambos os embaixadores f. Tuão mafamet e cojação e sua companhia se fossem pera Bintão que ja tinham o iunco prestes e se se não quisessem ir que não lhe auião de dar mantimentos / Dizião que não se auião de hir que os matassem e fizessem o que quisessem que os franges tinham la tomado tudo que não podião ir a lugar que os não tomassem mais disse o linga ao tutuão que veo de Patane que auia noua que no anno presente ouuerão de vir cem vellas de portugeses pia qual palavra lhe derão vinte acontes por ousar em tal fallar partio o embaixador na era de vinte quatro aquĩ ouni dizer a hũs mercadores que por se aredarem da costa de Patane forão dar nas Ilhas de Borne com tempo e quebrarão o iunco e os captiurão não sey se foy verdade.

Na nao de Diogo Caluo veyo hum Chim xpõ com sua molher chamado P<sup>o</sup> este quando vio o desbarate tornou se pera foym donde era natural ali esteue escondido tene maneira como ouue seguro dos mandarís que lhe dizia a força que os portugeses tinham em malaca em cochim que elle o sabia tudo que sabia fazer poluora bombardas e galees dise que em malaca avia trezentos homens portugeses que em Cochim que não era nada e começou em Cantão a fazer duas galees fez duas acabadas de todo forão amostrados aos mandarís grandes acharão q pendião [f. 111 v] muito que não aproueitauão que fazião grande gasto de madeira mandarão que se não fizessem mais lleuarião mão da obra das gales e botarão nas em nanto a gelfa / acharão que algũa cousa sabia de poluora de bombardas mandaram no ao Rey deu lhe emformação de malaca foy feito honrrado com hum piquo de roz de mantimẽto dizem que fez em Pequim bombardas porque o Rey tem lã guerra per guerra ysto pode ser assi que a mim assi mo disserão deste pedrõ fazer em Pequim bombardas polla enformação teem os Chís os portugeses em pouco por dizer que não sabem pelejar em terra que são como pexes que como os tirão dagoa ou do mar logo morrem / esta enformação deu bem a vontade do Rey e grandes que elles tinham outra polla qual razão tomarão conheçimẽto de toms piz de como o entregarão pera o trazerem a Cantão.



A gente de ficon em companhia de Tome piz / Duarte fernandez criado de dom folipe / francisco de Budoya criado da sñora commadaleyra e Christouão dalmeida criado de christouão de Tauora Po de freitas e Jorge atuz eu christouão Vieira e deze moços servidores, cinco iurabaças / de toda esta companhia não ha mais que eu christouão persco Dormuz hum mdoço meu de Goa / os que ora somos vivos no presente Vasco Caluo, hum seu meço que chamão Gonçalo / como digo nos tres que ficamos da companhia de Thome piz estes por dizerem que erão da embaixada escaparão e os os puseram com nosco aqui nesta cadeia entramos treze pessoas como digo são mortos Duarte fernandez quando hiamos pera Pequim falleceo na serra hindo Ja doente francisco de bedois quão vinhamos de Pequim no caminho falleceo assi tres ou quatro moços nesta cadeia com as prisões fortes como ja acima disse Christouão Dalmeida assi Jorge atuz portugueses estão o escriuão da cadeia tomado do vinho o matou a contes falleceo em seis dias os lingoas em Pequim forão pressos e mortos e seus servidores [f. 112] dados por escrauos aos mandarís por serem de treidores o Jurabaça grãde falleceo de doença os quatro forão em Pequim descabeçados por sairem fora da terra que tronxerão portugueses a terra da China Pero de freitas nesta cadeia e Tome piz aqui fallecerão de doença Tomee piz na era de .MDxxiii. em mayo de maneira que toda esta companhia no presente não ha mais de dous aqui como acima digo.

Os nomes que tinhamos Tome piz capitão moor quando fernão perez chegou ha China dise que vinha embaixador capitão moor cuidarão que era tudo hum nome puserão embaixador capitão moor tirarão o nome dembaixador que dezião que era falsa embaixada agora nos a prouamos por Verdadeyro / os mandarís ão por mal feito o passado e não teem esta magoa pera nos soltar finalmente ficaua capitão moor endão que era seu nome a teim chamão tristão de pina porque ficou aqui tristão de pina por escriuão foy tirado eu fiquei em seu lugar e nome por estar Jaa nos liuros dos mandarís escripto e assi me chamão a Vasco caluo chamão cellamê a gonçalo seu moço a cão a Christouão Christouão Antonio Antonio e os q fallecerão deixo de os escreuer q todos tinhão os nomes desvairados porque não se podião escreuer nem teem letras que se escreuão os Chís que são letras do diabo e mais não se podião alimpar porque erão Jaa espalhados per muitas cartas e per muitas casas e fazendo outros parecia em elle o tanto monta assi como assi as mulheres dos lingoas assi as de Tome piz que ficarão em esta cidade o anno presête forão vendidas como fazenda de Treidores aqui ficarão em Cantão espalhados.

A terra da China he deuidida em .xv. governanças as que estão pegadas ao mar são Quantão, foquiem, Chequeam, namquy, xantão, Pequy, estas posto que toquem no mar também se estendem polla terra firme a redonda, Quancy honão, Caycheu he [f. 112v] Chenê Cheamcy Sançy entestão com paquim / estas governanças q estão no meyo que ançy Vinão honão destas / xv / nãoquim pequim são as cabeças de toda a terra sobre todas pequim he a principal onde o Rey per ordenança esta dasento Nanquim está em /28/ graos ou /29/ Pequim em /38/ a /39/ Cantão foquê corre a costa nordeste sudueste pouco mais ou menos de foquemate piquim corre a Costa direita ao norte sul vira ha costa que dizem que he muito limpa e de muitos cidades e lugares perto do mar per rios todas estas /15/ governanças são debaixo de ham Rey / o melhor desta serra esta pór Rios que todos deçem ao mar / não nauega ninguem no mar do norte sul he defesso pto Rey por se não deusar a terra per onde fomos tudo são Rios tem barcas e nauios lados per baixo sem conto de muitos eu me affirmo que veiria mais de /30000/ antre grandes e piquenos demandão pouca agoa certo são Rios pera galees antos pera toda fustalba de Remo de guerra pegado ao mar não teem a terra nenhuma madra nem a /30/ legoas do mar digo na costa de norte Sul he toda a terra baixa todo carreto de mantimentos e nos Rios ha madeira deca da terra firme enjenguadas e cerca Pequym mais de /100/ legoas ha sirga porque a governança em que o Rey esta não teem madeira nem pedra nem tijolo tudo corre de carreto de nanquim em barcas grandes se lhe nãoquim não a corresse com mantimentos seus ou doutras governanças não se poderia soster Pequym p que ha gente sem conto e a terra não teem aRoz por ser fria e de poucos mantimentos o Rey esta nesta governança que esta na extrema da sua terra porque teem guerra com gentes chamadas tazas e se o Rey la não estivesse entrarião a terra porque e mesmo Pequim foy destes tazas e ontras governanças.



Esta terra da enseada de Canchim obra de quinze legoas de hãynão dentro de quinze ou vinte legoas começa hũa terra chãna [f. 113] sse asseria miuylem ou moulem e corre em leste vay acabar em foquem estrema foquem de Chiquião estas serras são altissimas sem aruoredo estão lenadas e muito fragosas de maneira q̃ destas serras deuide tres gouernanças pera o mar Cançy paga a terra de Canchi e Cantão e depois foquem estas tres gouernanças ficão sobre sy. / Das outras Cantão foquem pegam ao mar chegam ate a serra / Cançim jaz antre Cantão e a serra ate Canchim não he pegada ao mar de Canchim toda esta corda de serra que deuide estas tres gouernanças das doze não tem mais de dous caminhos muito ingremes e trabalhosos hum esta desta cidade ao norte per este se serue a gouernança de cançi e cantão e parte de foquem outro esta la sobre foquem com caminhos cortados de pedreyra munita parte como quem vay a santa Maria da penha e da outra banda ouuera tal decida / destas serrarias altissimas assi ingremes se fazem regatos que depois qua embaixo se fazê Rios que da serra vem deçendo pera o mar e quem vem de Cantão pera lãa do meo do caminho sempre vay a sirgua com ganchos as vezes por palmo de agoa outro tanto he da serra pera outras gouernanças.

Esta serra da banda de Cantão tem hũa çidade e da outra banda outra a serra Jaz no meo a vera de hũa a outra ate seis sete legoas quanto diz a serra he terra ingreme a muito fragosa he grande passagem porque toda a terra das doze gouernanças vem passar por aqui os que ão de Vir a Quiancy e a Cantão em hum dia se passa este caminho em mulatos e asnos / dos regatos q̃ destas serras correm assi de hum cabo como de outro ao pee destas serras dambas as bandas se ajunta a agoa começa a fazer Rios a lugares dous palmos dagoa e as barcas pto calho vão roçando isto em muitos lugares obra de oyto ate [f. 113v] dez legoas da serra pera baixo e a lugares he fundo desta serra pera Cantão toda a mercadoria que vem e vay he per este Rio todo omandarim que vom e vay tudo he per este Rio per terra ha caminho em recados de p<sup>as</sup> e teem algũs Rios de pasar que atrauesão porem por elle andão pouco porq̃ teem ladiões per todo o caminho e por Rios como digo os caminhos da terra não são seguros. Toda passagem e caminhos na terra da China he em Rios porque toda a China e cortada dos Rios que não se podê andar duas legoas por terra sem atrauesar Vinte Rios ysto he per toda a terra e não teem mais que hũa gouernança que não tinha Rios.

Toda a fustalha de Cantão em q̃ a gente passa e mercadoria pera a serra e pera outras partes destas duas gouernanças f. Cantão Queancy tudo se faz na çidade de Cantão contra o mar em lugares cercados de Rios de agoa doce e de monte porque de Cantão ate ha serra não ha hũa soo aruore de que se possa fazer hũa soo barca / em Cançi que he longe daqui fazem algũas barcas de mercadoria grandes porem não muitas todo o feito he nestas faldras de Cantão e per derredor de tanção se estas barcas de Cantão forẽ destroydas não pode das outras gouernanças vir socorro porque não teẽ caminhos por terra assi que quem for s<sup>ido</sup> termo de Cantão tudo he milhor he na faldra do mar e doze, quinze, vinte legoas pta terra dentro tudo isto he esquartijado de Rios per onde pode andar toda cousa de Remo esta he a casa e terra mais apta que todas as do mundo pera ser sometida e todo feito he neste termo de Cantão por çerto que he mor honrra que a gouernança da India ao diãte se sabera que he mais do que se pode escreuer / Se tiuer el Rey nosso sñor a çerta verdade e enformação doque he não passara tão tempo.

[f. 114] Esta gouernança de Cantão he das milhores da China de que o Rey recebe muitas rendas porque he daroz e mantimentos sem conto e todas as mercadorias de toda a terra vem aqui deferir por rezão da escala do mar e das mercadorias que dos outros Reinos vem a Cantão e to da passa pera dentro da terra da China de que o Rey recebe muitos direytos e os mandarĩs grandes peitas os mercadores viuem mais limpamente que nas outras gouernanças que não teem trato / nenhũa gouernança da China teem trato com estrangeiros senão esta de Cantão o que outras podem teer pollos extremos he cousa pouca porque gente estranha não entra na terra da China nem da China pera fora este trato do mar nobreça muito esta gouernança e sê trato ficara nos lauradores como as outras porem a escalla de toda a terra da China he Cantão foquem ha pouca cousa de trato e não vñõ lãa estrangeiros não se pode fazer tracto em outra gouernança senão em Cantão porque pera yssõ he mais apta que outras pera trato com estrangeiros.



Esta governança tem treze cidades e sete chenos que sã grandes cidades que não teem nome de cidades, teem cem villas cercadas afora outros lugares cercados tudo o melhor Jaz ao longo do mar ate aynão per Rios que podem entrar navios que remem e os que estão arredados do mar estão antre Rios em que outro si pode andar toda a fustalha de remos as cidades e villas que estão per rios que não podem a elles ir senão a sirga não se faça dellas pollo principio fundamento porque quando o mor obedeçe o menor não se aleuanta como digo debaixo do sol não ha cousa tam desposta como esta e de gente sem conto e mnito poucada nestas falldas por onde estam rios e onde os não ha não he assi poucado nem o quinto / de toda sorte de officiaes de todos officios macanicos digo carpinteiros calafates ferreiros pedreyros tilheiros serradores emtuhadores finalmente que esta he acima [f. 114v] das cousas que são neçessarias pera o seruiço del Rey de suas fortalezas e daqui se podem tirar cada anno quatro, cinco mill homẽs sem fazerem nenhũa mingoa na terra.

O estillo desta terra da China he que todo homẽ que ministra iustiça não pode ser daquella governança / a pessoa de Cantão não pode em Cantão teer carregó de iustiça e andão trastorcados que os de hũas governanças governão as outras não pode ser iustiça onde he natural isto he nos letrados e todo o letrado quando alcança grao começa encarregos pequenos e dalli vay sobindo em mais grandes sã saberem quando hão de ser mudados e estão aqui de reponso e vẽ carta sem elle saber he mudado daqui trezentos legoas estas mudanças se fazem em Pequim isto he per toda a terra e cada hũa vay sobindo daqui vem que nenhum iulgador da China não faz verdade porque não oulha pollo bem da terra senão por furtar porque não he natural della e não sabe quando o hão de mudar pera outra governança daqui vem não terẽ lianças nem prestimos donde governão nem teem amor ha gente não fazem senão roubar matar açontar por tromentos as pouo e ho pouo mais mal tratsdo destes mandarĩs doque he o diabo no inferno daqui vem o pouo não teer amor ao Rey e aos manderĩs e cada dia se andão alleuantando e fazem se ladrões porque o pouo que he roubado não teem vinha nẽ donde comer he neçessario que se faça ladrão destes alenamentos ha mil em lugares donde não ha rios muita gente se aleuãta os que estão antre Rios donde podem ser presos estão quedos porem todos desejosos de toda nonidade porque são postos nas çimas de toda sogeição he muito mais doque digo.

Os manderĩs Canaleiros posto que sejão manderĩs não teem carregó de iustica destes são muitos são manderĩs de suas casas [f. 115] teem ordenado do Rey em sua casa quando cumpre vão pelejar donde os mandão estes por qualquer culpa são logo açontados e atromentados como qualquer outra p<sup>a</sup> do pouo tambem estes vão sobindo em nomes e segundo o nome assi teẽ o mantimento estes não saẽ da terra do seu natural porque não ministrio iust<sup>a</sup> as vezes teem carregó de lugares de gente darmas porem onde quer que estão pouca cousa entendem de iustiça saluo em lugares de pouoações de gente de sua ordenança.

As armas da terra da China são treçados de ferro curtos punho de paço tiracolla de corda desparto isto he p<sup>a</sup> gente darmas os mandarĩs tem deste geito mais limpas seg<sup>o</sup> tem o dr<sup>o</sup> lanças teem canas os ferros são pregos e ganchos pedaços de paos cascos ou capacetes destanho de folha de frandes peramor da calma antes de virem portugueses não tinham bombardas som<sup>te</sup> hũas feitas a maneira de talhas de monte moor cousa de nento. nenhum do pouo não pode ter armas mais que faça sopena de morte a gente darmas pode teer não em sua casa quando cumpre aos mndarĩs lhas dão em quanto com ellas seruem acabado recolhemse a cosa do mandarim tem arcsos bestas de pao.

As mortes na terra da China a mais Cruel he posto na cruz alli lhe tirão tres mil fatias e estando viuo e depois o abre e tiranlha a fresura pera os algozes comerem e fazem todos 3 pedaços e dam na aos cães que ally estão pera ysso dam lha a comer isto a capitães de ladrões a quem elles querem / a segunda he cortar a cabeça e sua natura cortada e metida na boca e o corpo feito em sete pedaços / a Terçeira cortar a cabeça pello tontioço / a quarta he afogar, os que teem menos culpa que morte ficão em gente darmas da China perpetuo per filho e neto bisneto / o que he de Cantão mudão no a outra governança muito [f. 115v] longe jamais nunca tornão



a sua lã serve dos homens darmas este he a gente darmas da China daqui vão a aobir em mandarim canaltes destes que acima digo dez mil hũs degredos em Vidas per annos e a elles degradados mudam nos pollos governanças a servir nas casas dos mandarim e varrer e acarretar agoa fender lenha e a todo outro seruj<sup>o</sup> desta geito a servir em obras do Rey e outros seruj<sup>os</sup> os tormẽtos sã tem escostas dalargar borzeguis hũa antre os pees e duas per fora com cordas com que lhe atormentão es artelhos e com maços dão nas emcospas as veze lhe quebrão os artelhos as vezes as canelas das pernas e morrem em hũ dia e o dous e mesmo e o semelhante com paos nos dedos das mãos e pes estes teem dor muita não perigão sã tambem acoutados nas pernas nalgas e barrigas das pernas e nas collas dos pes e pancadas nos artelhos destes acontes morrem muito sem conto e todos grandes e pequenos andão atormentados teem muito forte custume e o pouo anda escandalizado e não faz ninguem carta contra manderim como he meão o açoute he hũa cana grossa fendida seca de grosura de hum dedo e de largura de hũa palma da mão e lança na m remolho porque escoza mais.

Toda a p<sup>a</sup> que teem terras toda a terra da China he ensortada em partes chamão a cada paros quinter sera terra de semente de quatro alqueires daroz obrigado todo o laurador de pagar desta sua terra certa quantidade daroz ora semeem ora não ora aja bõs temporaes ora maos como não acodem os temporaes ficão pobres vendem os filhos pera pagar se não abasta vendẽ as proprias propriades sã obrigados cada p<sup>a</sup> como teem esta geira de terra dar certas p<sup>as</sup> pera seruj<sup>o</sup> dos mandarim ou pera cada p<sup>a</sup> vinte cruzados som obrigados a dar a todos aparelhados de mensas tintas cadeyras catres, baçios outras meudezas pera as casas dos mandarim [f. 116] sã obrigados os que não teem terras darlhe certas p<sup>as</sup> hũa e se não tem pessoa dinheyro e se não teem p<sup>a</sup> dinheyro elle em p<sup>a</sup> ha de servir e comẽr a sua custa e peitar a p<sup>a</sup> que serve alem destes dirtos sã obrigados ao seguinte.

Toda a terra da China ora sejião rios ora terra firme em caminhos geeraes de Jornada em Jornada estão casas prestes com cada hũa seu mandarim escriuão donde teem arozes carnes pescados galinhas e toda a outra maneira de comer e artificios de Cozinha e barcas com cozinhas mesas cadras camas teem assi bestas prestes remeiros pera seruj<sup>o</sup> dos manderim e toda outra pessoa que passa pollos rios f. todo mandarim ou outra p<sup>a</sup> que o Rey manda ou os manderim com sua governança leuão carta p<sup>ta</sup> qual lhe dão muito se vay per terra caualos se per mar barcas camins tudo ho neo jabe as p<sup>as</sup> sã estas casas sortadas as p<sup>as</sup> dos termos sã obrigados a dar ysto de certo tempo ora hũs ora outros per esta rezão não lhe fica nenhũa cousa que não despendão e se algũ refusa logo he preso e tudo vendido e elle morre na cadeia não refusa ninguem ao q<sup>o</sup> o mandarim manda com a cabeça no chã o rosto na terra oune e olha o mandarim como outro relãpando daqui vem o pouo a ser pobre tambem por qualquer cousa sã logo açoutados e metidos nas cadeas a menos penna he sete quintães daroz e dous tres e m<sup>o</sup> de prata ~~das~~ <sup>das</sup> ~~elles~~ <sup>elles</sup> e delles pagão quinbentos e mill tates donde creio verdadeyramente que as pennas que se arrecadão pera o Rey das p<sup>as</sup> que prendem he muito grande somma de prata e certo que nas cadeas da Cantão ha de continuo ate quatro mill homens presos e muitas molheres / e cada dia prendem maitos e soltão menos he morrem nas cadeas a fome como bichos daqui vem o pouo a estar em odio com os manderim a desejião nouidades pera terẽ liberdade.

[f. 116v] As Cidades villas e lugares cercados da terra da China todos os muros sã largos assentados em terra chã, os muros não tem aligerces estão sobre a terra a face de fora parte he de pedra sobre a terra ate o m<sup>o</sup> do muro o mays de tifolo algũs sã todos de pedra digo a face de fora dentro sã tãpys as portas fazem abobodadas grandes e grandes portas sobre as portas goaritas de madeyra destas tãpys tivã a terra pera as tãpys ficão os lugares e muros e muros e cauos os que en vy todos vy em terra chã não teem mais fortalezas as cidades e v<sup>as</sup> e lugares que teem muros abremse as portas com sol e cerlõse com sol entregão as chaves ao mandarym que dellas teem carrego a noyte recebese e p<sup>ta</sup> manhã toda a porta teem p<sup>a</sup> que a guarda com dez doze p<sup>as</sup> de noyte tudo se vigia grandem<sup>te</sup> tememse dos naturaes as casas todas sã armadas de madeyra sobre esteico de madeira, as paredes dellas sã desteiras poucas as mais de canas e tãpys com



barro face de cal per cima sobradadas de madeyra poucas geralmente assi ad todas cousa muito fraca e pta mayor parte toda a parêreira vine de hũa porta a dentro todos tem hũ alcunha cada parenteira tẽ hũa parenteira por onde se conhecem depois disto teem seus nomes mirandas ou qualquer outro apellido alem desta aboanha tem nome proprios seus desta parenteira a pessoa mais velha teer os nomes pera dar conta de quantos sã e nenhũa pessoa pode sair do lugar donde mora de vinte legoas pera cima sem carta dos manderis se sem ella he achado prendem no por ladrão porque todos os caminhos e lugares sã checos despias pera esta carta dão certa cousa a carta declara que pessoa he e idade e todo que lhe dão lca.

A tenta as casas da justia que ha nesta cidade de Cantão [f. 117] a prim<sup>a</sup> he o cancheufa que he casa da cidade esta tem doze ou treze manderis e cem escriuões todo manderi viu na casa donde he manderim a casa do pochançi tera vinte manderis piqnos e grandes escriuões chimchaes p<sup>as</sup> de recado e p<sup>as</sup> outras com escriuões teem per todos mais de duzentos a casa do anchacy tẽ outros tantos manderis grandes e pequenos escriuões p<sup>as</sup> outras a casa do Toçi tem seis ou sete manderis e muitos escriuões o cehi he hum que teem carregos da gente darma e do sal que teem escriuões muitos e cuchi q̄ teem carregos de toda a iustica he hũ que teem escriuões muitos a casa do tutão e do Choypi e congum grande e do piqueno e do tiqos / alem destas ha obra de quinze ou vinte que não nomeo não he duuida todos os manderis de Cantão desta cidade terem pasante de sete ou oyto mil serujordas todos pagos a custa do pouo não fallo em outras casas grandes de manderis que teem ovelhas que não tẽem carregos q̄ as conta por casas de gente de pouo atente que cada casa destas de manderis teem terreyros e lageamento pera em cada hũa poder fazer hũa torre e haqui a pedra talhada de cãto pera fazer de nouo hũa babilonia deixo casas de suas orações e as ruas que he quanto talhado sem conto pois madr<sup>a</sup> hũa casa desta teem pera emmadeyrar hũa fortaleza com dez torres todos estas casas teem teições de portas fortes de dentro tudo com casas e currões cada casa destas he hum campo pera fazer hũa fermosa vila tambem a casa do aytião he muito grãde e portas fortes grandes fermosas e a parede aos couços he no chão / de todas as de Cantão esta he a copia de manderis e cada dia se vão hũs e võe outros de man<sup>ra</sup> que cada tres annos e mais todos sã idos outros vindos depois que estou nesta cidade sã muitas esquipações muidadas.

Assi como digo de muita pedra assi de muita fustalha que ha [f. 117v] nesta governança de Cantão nem hũa de guerra toda de paz de tamanho de galees reaes e fustas e bargantis todas de postigas e de esporões e masteadas a maneira de galees se cada hũa poserem hũa tilha e seus liames e ficão galees e fustas bargantis e polla primeira escusarão as de cõchi Remos remeiros assi sem conto destas se deũ tomar os mihores e as mais nouas tudo o al queimar de vagar se podem fazer galees reaes toda a outra fustalha de remo estas demandão minos agoas que as nossas podem servir assy como as nossas nestes Rios pera o mar não sey quão seguras serão assi que disto se deue fazer fundamẽto porque sã muito neçessarias ate se fazerem outras que andando a cousa ordenado se podem aqui fazer em hum mes dez doze peças de remo porque os officiaes e madeira he m<sup>ta</sup> e mayormente como virem boa paga cumpre muito estas barcas porq̄ toda a força he nos rios.

Esta terra da China he grande e as mercaderias della estão em hũas governanças della em outras Cantão tem ferro o que não ha em toda a terra da China segundou sou enformado daqui vay pera dentro da outra banda da serra e o mais jaz no termo desta cidade de Cantão daqui se fazẽ tachos pregadura armas dos Chis e toda a outra cousa de ferro tẽ tambem cordoalha linho e seda pannos dalgodão por rezão do trato todas as mercaderias acodem aqui porque este era o porto donde estrangeiros acodião per este contrato de mercaderias das governanças pera Cantão e de Cantão pera dentro era a gẽte mais abastada q̄ as outras governanças todas as mercaderias que a cantão acodião antes de se emburilhar esta guerra aguardadas ate verem em que parão as cousas a [f. 118] terra dentro tem muitas sem se poderem gostar porque as farião as vontades de portugeses digo çedas porçolanas.



Não se pode soste esta terra sem trato as mercaderias agora não acodem aqui nem ha hy mercadorias nem mercadores como sohião nem o quinto porque todos forão destruidos por respto de portugueses esta cidade por não acodirem estrangeiros não acodem mercadorias das outras gouernanças esta pobre no presẽte não se pode fazer boa mercadoria ate não acodirem as de gima como souberẽ que acodẽ estrangeiros e tornarse ha a teçer o trato em cuido cada dia se se a gouernança de Cantão se aleuãta toda a terra dentro a de fazer outro tanto porq̃ toda anda fostigada por hũ theor como as cousas asentarem de hũa maneira ou doutra a terra fara mercadoria em q̃to se não fizer a terra de tantas rēdas que he cousa p̃a não querer / toda a terra he aproneitada e as mercadorias q̃ os estrangeiros trazẽ são muito necessarias na terra mayormẽte por darem sayda as suas teem muitas mercadorias e boas a terra dentro muitas maneiras de sedas que ainda não vierão a Cantão porque cuidão que as não contendem e por ser defesso por o Rey que não se vendão mercadorias boas nem de preço a estrangeiros senão cousa braganta assi teem muito Ruybarbo deixo isto torno ao que mais releuo.

Em cantão não fazião armadas como fizerão no tp̃o passado auera ora dezasseia annos que se aleuantarão hũs Chĩs em Juncos fizerão se ladrões e Cantão arrou sobre elles forão os de Cantão desbaratados fizerão os mandarĩs [f. 118v] de Cantão com elles concerto q̃ lhe perdoauão e q̃ lhe darião terra onde viuessem com condiçã que quando se aleuantassem outros ladrões no mar que elles fossem pelejar com elles e o que roubassem fosse pera elles resguardando as mulheres e cousas pera o Rey derão assento a estes ladrões delles em Nanto deles em foym dellos em aynameha e ẽ outras pouaçõs que estão de Nanto pera Cantão estes todos tinhão iuncos todos os Juncos de Cantão erão destes ladrões que digo da presa do anno de /521/ dos juncos que ficarão na Ilha forão ricos e da presa de Syão e Patane e por o vancimento dos dous nauios do anno de /522/ ficarão tão soberbos que lhe parecia que ja não podia vir ninguem que não desbaratessẽ p̃o qual o anno de /523/ fizerão armada de cem iuncos aguardando por portugueses a metade estaua diante ẽ Nanto outra a metade ao mar antre as ilhas aguardando na fim dagosto deu hũa tro-uado nelles que durou hũ dia e hũa noite que espedaçou todos os principaes q̃ estauão ao mar que não escapou nenhum a outra ametade que estaua auante ẽ nãto meteo-se dentro no Rio salnarãose em aynameha que he porto seguro que se todos estiuerão ao mar todos se perderão não teem mais iuncos nem tinhão mais força que era destes homẽs de que não ha nenhũ delles e os mays hião per força que lhes não pagauão / na era de /524/ fizerão armada de iuncos de sal enq̃ tomarão per força ate era de /528/ fizerão armadas forão os juncos diminuindo ate que ha deixarão de fazer e os juncos que escaparão em aynameha não ha nenhũ tudo he desbaratado de ladrões que depois destes se aleuãtarão no mar os quaes agora viuẽ na terra com seguro que lhes derão terão obra de sete [f. 119] ou oite iũcos agora não tem outros senão for estes destes homẽs se amda sem viuos não fazem armadas nem tem iuncos em que as queirão fazer na tem agora mais forças que he a dos muros de Cantão.

Nesta armada que os chĩs fizerão aguardando p̃ta nãta não avia nenhum homem darmas dos ordenados da China tudo era gente dessas pouaçõs e iuncos tomados por força e gente fraca e vil e o mais meninos porem cada hum dellas he melhor q̃ quatro homẽs darmas he cousa de zombaria fallar em gẽte darmas desta terra da China / esta armada que mandauão a Nanto são algũs capitães pareçendolhes que podião tomar portugueses como no anno de /522/ como festa gente for escozida do ferro portuguez toda logo he de companhia com portugueses porque mais he gente de bona boyra e pouca raiz na terra ou nenhũa / esta gente de Cantão he muito raca em comparação doutra gente de dentro que he forte neste Cantão digo p̃to termo p̃ta gouernança como he cousa arredada dos rios logo se aleuantão / dam sobre pouaçõs matão muita gente isto cada dia em muitos lugares e não lhe podem faz damno e mandão per gente a gouernança de Canq̃y que esta ao ponente de Cantão chamão a estes langãs ou langueãs estes teem mays algũa feição porem tudo he cousa de vento dizem os chĩs se portugueses entrarem que chamarão muita gente desta e não pode vir senão p̃to rio que venhão cem não aproneita nada porque como o rio fr̃ despegado da sua fustalha e se alimpar e andar nãta fustalha com bom-



bardas não a cousa que pareça a der legoas estes Chís de Cantão quando vão pelear com gentos que se aleuantião nãqua [f. 119v] matão a ladrão / saltão per essas cassas de ladrão matão nelles infindos e trazem as cabeças delles outos muitos presos dizem que são ladrões não ha mister mais proua. todos os matão per modo cruel / isto fazem cada dia / o pouo he tão sojeito e medroso que não ousa fallar deste geito he per toda a tñra da China he muito pior do que digo pto qual toda a gente deseja reuolta e vinda de portugueses estes de Cantão.

A ylha de Aynão tem hũa cidade e quatorze villas esta a vista da terra da China tem bom porto não tem madeyra per esta rezão não tem fustalha quando algũa gente de luchim se aleuantião em Junquos vay a estas partes fazer soltos pedem socorro a Cantão he cousa muito fraca he da terra China defronte de Aynão ate Cantão ao longo do mar quatro cidades muitas V<sup>as</sup> per todo mar per Rios em algũs podem entrar nauios em todos podem entrar cousa grossa de remo em todo o tempo se nanega tem ao longo desta costa muitos ylhas frescas que emparão todo o vento ysto he o principal desta gouernança e sera dous terços de gouernança entrando Cantão no tomq<sup>o</sup> tudo isto he rendido como a cabeça se someter e for tomada tem este Aynão muitos sendeyros tem quoquos e areq<sup>a</sup> que não tem toda a terra da China em Cantão tem trato com esta areq<sup>a</sup> e quoquos assi daljofre muita copia que não tem toda a terra da China assi que digo que tem sindeyros que os Chís chamão Caualllos destes tazem pera esta gouernança daqui se podem auer muitos por pouco preço.

Este Cantão tem obra de duzentos caualllos destes os mandarís pequenos que não podem trazer andor tem cauallo asy [f. 120] os mandarís de guerra cada hum tem seu estes syndeiros são pequenos são dandadura estes nas mãos de portugueses podem aprouear ordenados a gineta e desporas estes Chís são daquite e desemfreados tem Cantão mais de vinte ou trjuta set<sup>as</sup> officiaes pessoas que fazem estribos são muitos que he gente sem conto cada hum quando ganha dez fs por dia pera comer louua a deos deste geito são todos os officiaes da China assi q<sup>o</sup> como digo estes com os de Aynão podem aprouear pera a terra val aqui hum destes caualllos de tres ate dez taes de prata nenhũa p<sup>a</sup> como mantem oulhas nem podem andar em cauallo digo polla cidade.

O Tutão Compim Comquõ são tres p<sup>as</sup> que tem carregio desta gouernança de Cantão e Cançy estes são os mayores estão em hũa cidade chamada Vcheu que esta no estremo dambas estas gouernanças esta cidade he de Queançy estão aqui o mais do tpo porque tem la guerra e de las gouernão ambos as vezes vem a Cantão estão dous tres meses ora hum ora outro as vezes se passão dous annos que não vem nenhum a esta gouernança de Quçey anda sempre aleuãtada muito grande parte sem lhe poderẽ valer esta he a causa porque estão la o mais do tempo esta cidade estaa ao ponente de Cantão obra de trinta legoas per rio porque não tem caminhos per terra e he a terra toda cortada de Rios vão la em çinque dias a muito grande andar com muita gente de sirga e vem em tres andando de noite e de dia / Agora corre de la pera Cantão tem este caminho hũa cidade grande abordada ao Riõ que se chama Cheuquy fu / per todo este rio pode nauegar toda a cousa de remo são per este caminho pouoações sem conto saique a qualquer [f. 120v] cousa de guerra de Cantão estes abalão trazem gente como nossa armada, andar no rio eu fico que não venha ninguem e quemquer que vier per força ha de vir desembarcar defronte desta cidade pegado ha pouoação deste arabalde ou m<sup>a</sup> legoa per este rio acima ao norte finalmente que não pode vir ninguem que não seja apanhado e mormente que todos nauegão de dia e não de noite porque os Rios a lugares são baixos e a lugares tem pedra e se vierem todos jazem na mão pstoque mais banquas trazem do que dizem.

Tem Cantão mandarís depois destes he cheuhi e o pochãcy e amchacy tocy que chamão camcy que estão de continuo nesta cidade o ceuhy vem cada anno este não teme a ninguem todos temem a este este vem pera despachar todo o caso pera ver qual mandarý faz mal seu mandarý que faz erro he pequeno este lhe tira logo as orelhas daa diaz enformação ao Rey se o mandarý he moor escreue delle ao Rey sua culpa dela vem que não seja mais mandarim porque o rey da enteyro credito a este assi ao tutão e conquão / O Campym não escreue que tem



carrego de gerra o tutão manda em tudo se alguma carta ouuer descreuer seja o ao echi porque vem cada anno e não sabe dos roubos que são feitos aos portugueses estes não são senão aluitres segundo seruem assi lhes fazem mercees este em tudo despacho sem dar conta ao tutão nem a nenhũ mandarĩ.

[f. 121] Martim Ao de Melo veio na era de .522. a entrada do porto o fez bem de sua entrada dalgũa gente que se la matou cõartelharia veyo o recado a Cantão assi dezião que elle escreuera hũa carta q̃ dezião q̃ fallaua bem os mãdarĩs que tinham do año passado roubado a fazã agastarãose cõ sua vinda começarão a emburilhar perguntarão ao Cuhy q̃ lhe parecia se farião mercadras ou não / disse o Ceuhy q̃ mercadras como dâtes se fizesse / responderão elles q̃ não q̃ auião medo q̃ com esta mercadras se receuesse ao diante algum damno q̃ deitarião mão dalgum lugar o Ceuhy não lhe respondeo nada elles sahirão descontentes estes pregũtarão outro tato a oytão q̃ toem carrego do mar e dos estrãgeiros respondeolhe outro tanto estes dous mandarĩs q̃ perguntarão hum era o chãcy outro o anchacy q̃ erão os mayores de Cantão estes mãdarão a oytão q̃ fosse pelejar com os portugueses este aytão era nouamte vindo não sabia do passado disse elle q̃ não podia feze doente mandarão laa o tiquos q̃ tã carrego destrãgeiros debaixo do aytão não sey o q̃ la fez estes dous mandarĩs / pochancy e anchacy dizẽ q̃ peitarão ao pio de nãto ao pachain darmada q̃ trabalhassem por tomar algum nauio e trabalhasẽ por se não fazer paz istu secretamente acõteço q̃ por mofina e por os capitães não terẽ os Chĩs ã cõta e não terẽ artelharia atacada nẽ ordenada e cada hũ capitão tirou pera seu cabo e Dio de melo ser primro ferido de hũa pedrada que ficou atordado e dizẽ q̃ toda a gẽte se meteo debaixo daleçaena dos nauios per amor da pedra assi os tomarão as mãos Põ homẽ estãdo armado não lhe acodio ninguem foy morto de pedradas e remesos o mestre contramestre algũs marinheyros pelejerão não lhe acudia outra gente os iuncos erão altarcosos finalmente que forão tomados no nauio de Diogo de mello saltarão dentro nello trezentos Chĩs a roubar depois de ser a gẽte recolhida aos iuncos derão cõ fogo no parioll da poluora abruzouse o nauio morrerão todos os Chĩs sem ficar nenhũ desta noua veyo recado ao aytão de como erão dous nauios tomados e os outros ydos foy logo e veio com gaitas escreueo q̃ aquella gente que morreo do fogo que portugueses a matarão / escreueo ao tutão e o tutão a el Rey veyo a sentença que ja disse o aytão cõ esta vitoria com peita q̃ lhe derão ca dous mandarĩs a elle ao tutão q̃ cõsẽtisse mais portugueses na China ficarão estes dous e imigra dos portugueses e outros q̃ forão riquos.

Martim Afonso vinha ordenado a China com embaixada pera pedir fortaleza se lha não desem prouar se a podia fazer com officiaes que ja trazia pera a terra e pera o mar não me parece que vinha bem ordenado os Chĩs não darem fortaleza a nhũa pa estrangeira por todo o mundo quanto mais a nos que cuidão que a verilhe a terra somos vindos Tome pĩx pedia [f. 121v] hũa casa em Cantão e na Ilha todo o conselho do Rey he que vinhamos a pedir lhe sua terra porque a terra da China jaz em custume estranho sobre sy q̃ não consente estrangeiro na terra sob peña de morte senão he embaixada obediente quãto mais darlhe casa a mercadoria não querem que se fação lugares poncados por não deitarem mão dalgũa cousa e mandana fazer por maos lugares despoucados e doentios porque são muito çiosos da sua terra assique per nenhum modo do mundo a darão senão for por força e se se casa ouuesse de fazer na Ilha de mercadoria secretamente se fizesse forte donde se aueria cal e pedra pedreyros e telha e cousas neçessarias offiçaes que com lã seria trabalhosa quanto mais escondidamente que nessa Ilha pera fazer casas de palha Primeiro que se acabassem he o meio da gente morta mandon que se fizesse algum cartigo ou casa forte o que se não podia fazer logo a gerra era na mão e tolhidos os mantimentos por terra e a terra doentia e maã não sey quãto se poderia soster assi que não vinha a cousa ordenada.

Martim Affonso de mello trazia trezentos homẽs era cousa muito pequena pera lenar auante a empresa que creio que toda a gente morrera a fome e doçça ate que nada viera a lume com mais força de duzentos ou trezentos homẽs se podera tomar nanto ou hũa Va que he muito milhor chamada Jancangem que esta em hũa Ilha cercada de mar de porto e grande altura que esta ao ponente de nanto sete ou oyto legoas esta a bordoa dagoa amurada de grande poucação pegada ao mar esta era logo tomada sem matar ninguem daly correlhe aos rios e des-



baratarlhe a fustalha p[ro] Ch[im] em aperto que desta Ilha as portas de Cantão cousa muito fresca aprouciada darozes e carnes e todos os pescados he pera abastar vinte mill hom[em]s e barato com menos trabalho e mais descanso e sem morte se podia fazer que começar de nouo a terra que tem tantas cidades e villas e lugares abordados a agoa escusado he matar a gente pois q[ue] ha de ser por força de qualquer man[eira] como os Ch[im] vir[em] que os portugueses tomão posse do lugar cercado tudo se ha de começar de levantar.

De Nanto vindo pera Cantão no meo do Rio quasi pegado na barra tãoco Jaz h[um]a grande poucação ou tres em h[um]a Ilha que se chama ayn[un]cha tem canto talhado per casas ruas igrejas e em cais de que se pode fazer h[um]a [f. 122] fortaleza como a de goa tem porto seguro de todos os ventos tudo de vaza porto muito seguro aqui era a força dos j[un]cos esta fortaleza jaz sobre Cantão sogiga nanto esta villa que digo outra que se chama Xuntaeim daqui podem defender os mantimentos e por em aperto c[on]tão se redendera de qualquer man[eira] que o capitão quizer torno a dizer que leuar de peça cantão na mão com força de dous mil a tres mil homes e milhor digo dous tres mil não que com menos se não acabe a demanda som[ente] he grande cousa e os carregos de lugares que são necessarios portugueses não abastão seys mil pera render com menos do que digo e acabar a demanda porque os Ch[im] são logo aleuantados contra a çidade com a companhia dos portugueses.

Assi na fustalha q[ue] portugueses trouxer[em] como na que aqui se fizer de seus paraos a nossa guisa sera tal que todos os Rios despejara os Rios despejadosos mander[em] anse de render por força ou ão de fogir e despejar a çidade fica logo Cantão na mão e seu termo Isto pode fazer capitães que trouxerem força de setec[en]tos hom[em]s ate mil e ficar com elle a fustalha e cousa grossa de remo e toda a gente portugesa e malauares naos se os trouxer mandalas pera Couchim espidas de Ch[im] officiaes q[ue] achara pera ir[em] dez milh[ões] e se abalar o sor g[ra]dor pera o seg[un]do logo cantão he nas mãos com toda a gouernança e deixar nelle fortaleza e lugares q[ue] conuem deixar g[ra]te portugesa e malauares e torresse c[on] toda sua armada carregada de Ch[im] carpint[os] pedreiros ferreyros telheiros serradores e de todo outro off[ic]o c[on] suas molheres pera deixar por esas fortalezas que pode leuar e sua armada em juncos a terra dez mil hom[em]s s[em] fazer mingoa e cada anno podem sahir quatro mil s[em] fazer moça esta he a causa marauilhosa porque por cada portuges pode tomar cem Ch[im] pera as fortalezas.

Cantão dentro nelle tem h[um]u cabeça ch[im]o pegado ao muro da b[ar]da do norte e que esta h[um]a casa que t[em] cinco sobrados t[em] polas faldas deste cabeça dentro seis ou sete igrejas que tem c[on]to talhado pera fazer em dez dias h[um]a v[illa] c[on] muros e casas e das igrejas he s[em] c[on]to desteos vigas portas f[er]as daqui se pode senhorear a cidade outra feita a borda da goa no meo da poucação onde os mandar[em] desembarção que se pode fazer em cinco dias porque he a pedra [f. 122 v] de c[on]to talhada per ruas e casas de iusta q[ue] he p[er] fazer h[um]a grande çidade amurada he torrejada outra na igreja que esta no rio assi q[ue] pedra e a madr[em] e cal he s[em] c[on]to pois officiaes p[er] isso e seruidores em todo mundo não ha tantos e são b[om]s serujores c[on] pouco jornal p[ro]to comer virão c[on] mil e dos seus paraos fazer galees fustas bargat[em]s dalg[un]s se farão galeças c[on] poucos liames que os rios não quer[em] a força do mar assi que todas estas cousas mais vagar ão mister e se escreuer q[ue] empor se por obra a terra desposta esta p[er] tudo deos quis q[ue] estes Ch[im] sejão doudos pera perder[em] a terra porq[ue] te o pres[en]te não tiuerão senhorio ma elles pouco e pouco forão tomãdo a terra seus vezinhos e por isso he o reino grande porque estes Ch[im] são cheos de m[ul]ta Judaria e daqui lhes v[er] ser[em] pres[en]tuosos soberbos cruéis e porque ate o presente sendo g[ra]te couarda fac[em] s[em] armas e s[em] nenh[um] exerciço de guerra e sempre forão ganhãdo a terra a seos vezinhos e não per mãos mas por manhas e biocos e cuidão q[ue] ningu[em] lhes pode fazer dano chamo a todo estrangeiro saluaj[em] a sua terra chamão o reino de D[om] qu[er]quer q[ue] vier ora seja capitão com frota de dez ate quinze Vellas prim[ei]ra cousa he desbaratar armada se a tiuer[em] a que eu cuido que não t[em] seja p[er] fogo sange medo cruel por este dia s[em] dar Vida a nenh[um]a p[er] todo iunco queimado e não se tome ningu[em] por se não gastar[em] os m[an]tim[en]tos q[ue] em todo t[em]po se acharão cem Ch[im] pera h[um] portuges e isto f[az]o despejarse ha n[un]to e logo ter[em] fortaleza e mantim[en]tos se quizer[em] porque logo he na mão e dar c[on] toda armada e ayn[un]cha que esta a barra de tãocoam como ja acima digo de b[om] porto aqui



se âcorarão aos naos q̄ não poderẽ entrar no rio e queirmarhe qualq̄r fustalha q̄ tiuerẽ e depois de tomado se bem parecer queimarhe o lugar por fazer medo aos Chis antes disto fto venha hũ carta per hũ negrinho cafre e venha ã esta maneira.

O titulo da pessoa que for faço saber ao cunhi e a çãci de Cantão como auera ora tantos annos q̄ el Rey nosso sr mandou carta ao Rey da China e presente per Tome piz o q̄l foy recebido p̄tos grandes e dos outros q̄ tẽ carrego foy lhe dado casa em Cantão dahy foy chamaçõ do rey da China elle foy e o Vio em nãquy daly o mandou a Pequim pera la o despachar dizendo que la conuinha o despacho nunca mais delle soubemos na era de tantos veyo hũ nao em sua busca pagou seus direyos e pagos armarão sobre [f. 123] ella pera a tomarem e na era de tãtos vierão em sua busca cinco iuncos carregados de mercadorias e os mandarís armarão sobre elles pera os roubar não fazendo na terra mal nem agrauo por os iuncos virem abertos do mar recolherãose a outros nauios e deixarão os juncos no porto carregados de muitas mercádorias abarrotados sem delles tirarem nada e na era de tantos annos vinhão cinco naos com embaixador pera o Rey da China os manderís de nãto ordenarão com iuncos de ladrões que enganassem dous nauios com recados falsos de paz tomarão dous nauios e os tres que ficarão não souberão como o embaixor del Rey n. sr estava metido nas cadeas e sua companhia e tomado toda sua fazenda e vestidos / e sem comer nas cadeas como fazenda de ladrões sendo dembaixada assi recebido dos grandes e o presente que vinha pera o Rey recolhido sem querer mandar o embaixor isto não he iusta mas he iusta de tres mandarís ladrões / ampochim o anhançi e lentocim e pio de nãto que p̄tos roubos que tem feitos querem matar a todos por q̄ o Rey da China o não sayba veyo isto a minha noticia vim qua e em de menhã serey em Cantão por ver a çidade onde se faz tal iustiça o embaixador seja a mim enuiado antes de eu chegar a Cantão como for entregue a mim então fallaremos em o que releua e ao que são vindo do que he passado e se não quiserdes fique a culpa sobre vos outros que recebeis embaixadores e presẽte e p̄to roubar o meteis nas cãdeas esta he feita a tãtos dias da lua.

Assi q̄ escrita a carta e enuiada a pregoar liberdade na terra a todos e com toda cousa de remos entray o Rio e se tardar o recado se bem parecer por lhe offiço a poucação e queimar toda a fustalha que não aproueitar pera seruiço de guerra e morta a gẽte quem não seguir o bando tres dias que lho tolhão os mantimentos morrerão todo sa fome a çidade tem hũ grande casa de mantimentos quasi pegada a porta da banda do ponente dentro dos [f. 123 v] muros mas pera repartir p̄to pouo he nada porque pouo he sem conto e compra cada dia o que ha de comer assi que todos hão de morrer a fome e ãose daleuantar contra os mandarís como se gente aleuãtar logo a çidade he aleuantada compre teer grande aviso em não receber recados de dilacões por não acudirem muitos paraos com mantimentos a çidade em Canto ouuer recados de vento que som tantos e o pouo tanto que se não pode isto ver sobre tudo a fustalha desbaratada no rio não pareça cousa de Chis que não seja queimada com este tal matar saltara o medo na valia dos mandarís e embatarseam contra elles e isto se deue fazer e ser mais breue do que digo porque toda a gente esta esperando por portugueses a çidade per terra não lhe podem acudir mantimentos que os caminhos são logo aleuantados que sem vinda de portugueses o fazem quanto mais neste todo aroz a de vir p̄to rio e cãpre ter vigia p̄to estreito q̄ esta p̄to rio acima ao norte obra de mã legoa por onde lhe podẽ vir mantimẽtos e socorro neste se ponha fustalha q̄ tomado o estreyto q̄ não vinha tudo he na mão se os mandarís ouuerem de fogir a de ser por este esteiro aqui he sua saluação ã este esteiro podem estar gallees e deste esteiro vem a çidade por terra que he perto aly vem todo o mandarin e daly o faz saber e então entra e vem cauallos per terra a dizer aos mandarís da çidade que manderim he entrada feita na era de 534.

[f. 124] Trelado de outra carta que o mesmo Christouão v<sup>m</sup> escreueo da China.

Sor.

Olhando sempre vossa carta me desalua muito minha infirmitade com os esforços que sua merçes daa me da causa a ter algum lugar a escreuer sñor em breue não ser muita a leitura repetindo sñor nesta çidade na qual sñor digo se a indja estiuessse de maneira que o sr gener-



nardor ordenou o *sor* eytor da sylueira com a frota q̄ cada anno vay ao estreito conuindo nella tres mill homẽs trazendo mallauares pera com elles p̄r em espanto a gente com verem estes mallauares com as costas dos portuguezes irão tomando a metade da terra da China se ahí ouuesse g̃te pera soste tanta cidade e tanta copia de villas que tão fraca gente he e não t̃e maneyra nenhũa de defendimento.

Neste Rio desta cidade podẽ entrar so naos de duzentos tonelados todo o galião por grande que seja por respeito de demandar pouca agoa / todo este rio s̃or he de vasa e todo he limpo de pedras que ainda q̄ fice em seco na releua porque o rio he muito alto fica a cidade submetida debaixo destas naos / quando a mare encher porão prancha dos galeões e nauios na terra por òde saya a gente per este rio estão as casas do arabalde metidas com terem amparo per respeito dagoa não alagar tudo o q̄l amparo he de pedra entulhado de terra altura de hum homem e m̃o homẽ em lugares mada por todalas partes tem saidas muy fermosas mas todas calçadas de fermosa pedra / a qual pedra sernira ao presente pera fortalezas / porse a *sor* o fogo na ponta desse arabalde porque venha queimando tudo ao longo do rio por ficar tudo limpo pera a artellaria iugar e porque se não ponhão per [f. 124 v] hi os Ch̃s tirarẽ com frechas cõ terẽ emparo das casas he necessaria por lhe o fogo que fique tudo limpo sem nenhũa casa ficar.

Com tudo *sor* oulhese bem a principal desembarcação e no meo desse arabalde onde estaa hũa casa dos mandar̃s quando vão pera algures vão aly desembarcar e embarcar a qual casa t̃e hum recebimẽto de quaes a qual casa he darsdor cercada de taypa feita de terra posta em altura de hum remessão onde se neste lugar pode recolher soma de gente com mandarem de ribar ao rededor todas as casas porq̄ fique lugar pera se a fortaleza fazer pera se por artellaria fazendo buracos nestas taipas pera porem bombardas grossas ate se fazer a fortaleza que nesse lugar mesmo se ha de fazer com a fortaleza e ir entestar no rio e vir entestar com a porta da cidade fazendo hũa couraça muito forte e fremosa que vaa tomando sobre a porta da cidade que sogigues a cidade toda porque tudo he terra chã como a palma da mão com artellaria pera hum cabo e pera outro a qual couraça ha de ficar em maneyra da ponte dando lugar a hum riozinho que se mete o muro e o arabalde e pera entrarẽ na cidade teem hũa ponte de pedra muito fermosa e a couraça a de ser apogada com esta ponte esta couraça fica sobre esta porta e toma da ponte e a de ter a seruẽtia p̄a fortaleza mesmo onde se deue apousẽtar o alcaide moor.

Tanto *sor* que a desembarcação for neste lugar oulhe bẽ q̄ he perto da porta da cidade se se a cidade não rende por se a tres camellos e derribarão as portas que são duas estão abas de duas defronte hũa da outra estas portas *sor* são foradas de cobre tanto q̄ entrarem irão ter a casa do pochecy que he a principal casa que nesta cidade ha que he a casa onde estaa a fazenda do Rey onde se achara muita prata que não teem conto e assi muito ouro e mercadorias / esta casa he a cabeça desta governança porque nesta casa desde p̄a menhã [f. 125] ate noite nunca se faz senão pesar prata das rendas que de todos os cabos vem na qual casa se porem duzẽtos ou trezentos homẽs com hum capitão que fique posto na cidade ate se a fortaleza fazer / e assi se ha de fazer hũa fortaleza dentro na cidade onde estaa hum outeyro pequeno com hũas igrejas teem em si pedra pera fazer a fortaleza a qual fortaleza ha de ser assentada sobre o muro que Vay pera a banda do norte que he terra firme com hũa terra de quatro sobrados tudo cheo d'artellaria que fogue pera o norte e ponente eleuante e assy p̄a a cidade fiquão todos os cabos resguardados com esta fortaleza e a cidade metida e sopeada debaixo desta fortaleza na qual fortaleza *sor* estarão cem homẽs fiqua tã forte a cidade que não pode deçer hũa aue que tenha remedio a fogir os quaes cõ homẽs *sor* serão mudados de tres ou quatro meses irẽ s̃or darmada fazerem proueito.

Assi *sor* ir a dar em hũa feitoria que se chama o conchefaa onde sse escaparão mil presos o menos se os mandar̃s os não matarem por averem medo de se na cidade alleuantarẽ e matarem os mandar̃s assi pello consequinte assi esta cheia de prata que tambem esse recolhẽ renda do Rey e as penas dos presos que são em grã maneira m̃ta prata a qual fazenda *sor* que nesta feitoria estiuẽr se mudara desta pera a casa do pochecy onde hão de estar estes homes por em mentes se fazer a fortaleza recolherom ahí todo o que se tomar e assi irão a outras duas feitorias



do Rey também tem muita prata de rendas que se arrecadão nas quacs duas feitorias se chamão per nome nayhay e pōnhuem e se se achar esta fazda toda se passara ao pochēcy a se ahy aver de guardar ate tudō ser asentado / serāo avisados que se caso for não acharem prata nenhũa e dentro nesses casa que são grandes acharem algum homem seja perguntado por isso que pode ser estar soterrada em lugar que se não ache que por essas çidades que são cōbatidas [f. 125 v] dos ladrões assi fazem que a soterrão e deixão por a negaça quatro ou çinquo mil tões por não andarem os ladrões buscando tudo que vão dar com ella.

E assi se perguntara sor pto gndões do arroz q̄ são sete ou oyto casas onde estão tres mandarīs pequenos comparaueia allx<sup>as</sup> as quacs casas teem em si milhões de milhões de piquos daroz p<sup>a</sup> a regra dos mandarīs e assi outra gente o qual arroz se se posserẽ a vender a gente da terra farse ão mais de quarenta mill tões de prata pollo qual sor se porão trinta homẽs com hum capitão e terem guardado este arroz ate se a çidade e cousas viem assentar sem se deste arroz bollir delle que se caso for ãor não onner remedio ao presente não acodir arroz nẽ mantimentos de fora moura a gente da çidade toda ha fome / então sor he neco abrirse este arroz e vender este arroz a gente que na çidade estiuer e se caso for valer caro desse algũ tanto de karato por a gente não teer então per onde o mercar que toda a gẽte sor a mais della q̄ nesta çidade viue são todos officiães e mercadores e gente toda q̄ por fazerẽ mercadoria viuem q̄ a gẽte sor que he rica e tem terras viuem pto aldeas onde teẽ a suas terras que as terras aqui valem a peso de dinheyro este he o respeito por onde a gente morrera a fome não vindo arroz de fora a vender que se não pode soste esta çidade tres dias que não moura a gente a fome por ser muito o pouo.

olhem bem.

E assi se dara sor deste arroz aos pedreyros e carpintros e ferreiros e trabalhadores que nas fortalezas andarem dando lhe cada dia tres fõs de seu jornal que são doze fõs por dia e andarão contentes q̄ aqui os mandarīs pera seos serujos lhe dão dous fõs e se não trabalhão dā lhe açontes como palhas pello qual sōres serāo estes trabalhadores bẽ pagos sem se do del Rey nosso sor tirar nem gastar hum çetil [f. 126] somente deste arroz se farão com fortalezas nesta terra que toda a casa do mandarym teem pedra esteos pera sobrados de torres e de que quizerem tanto quanto não são neçessarios tantos.

E assi sor se mandara logo em breue tapar de pedra e qual todallas portas que vão pera o norte e assi as de ponente e leuante não deixando nesta çidade somente esta porta por onde se sirua a gẽte que ha de vir dar com a fortaleza e o sor capitão moor se tornara a recolher onde se desembarcou com toda a gente saluante os trezẽtos homẽs que ficarão dentro na çidade na casa do pochēcy / he cousa grande e fechado tudo com a fortaleza com os çhaues da çidade se darem de noite a este capitão que ã mētes que ali estiuer em quanto se fação as fortalezas e polla menhã serāo dadas a quem tiuer cargo de guardar aquella porta e de fechar com de noyte vigiarem e tocarem os atabagues como he vso custume.

E assi sor se ordenara com a gẽte da terra com se repartir e se ordenar hum homem por cabeça da mesma terra tallacõ de muro vigiara a gente que naquellas ruas viuerẽ porque assi he seu custume e istjillo com lhe darem ataballes que tomarẽ nas casas destes mandarīs pta menhã vierão dar conta como he custume aquelle capitão q̄ estiuer naquella casa tal cabo esta seguro virão outros e tal cabo esta seguro daram as çhaues pera abrirẽ a porta cõ sor deixar em seguro o estillo da terra cõ se porẽ de giolhos aos sōres capitães e assi toda a outra p<sup>a</sup> que qualq<sup>r</sup> cargo tiuer que o custume da terra assi he e não se perqua q̄ a gente he maa e assi pto conseguinte açontallos como não estinerẽ prestes ao q̄ são obrigados a fazer doutra maneja sera trabalho soste esta gẽte que os mādariis nunca al fazẽ senão desde polla menhã ate noite e matar e não podem com elles.

Se caso for sor que posserẽ per hi algũs barcos e com elles [f. 126 v] tirarem saião a tomallos que qualquer gente os tomara como virẽ que saem pera esse proposito não esperão que suas armas não cõsintã esperarem a cousa de portugeses as espadas são de feição das nossas obra de tres



palmo ferro morto sê terê ponta trazem por armas bajos acolchoados hũ capaçete na cabeça feito destanho tirão frechas e não muito bem esta he a sua man<sup>ra</sup> da guerra estes sor que são apremados a yssô que a gente do pouo não o sabe fazer som<sup>te</sup> fechão as portas e não clurão de mays e soterrarem o que teem de prata que cousas de casa não tem som<sup>te</sup> hũ mesa vella e hũ odeyra toda outra cousa de prata soterram.

E isto sor não a gente do pouo não teem cousa nenhũa despada nem frecha somente o pouo quando se recreçe algũ aleuãtam<sup>to</sup> fechão as portas e cada hũ se mete em sua casa e a quẽ mais pode a esses obedecem finalmente sor que esta gente com que os mandarís sostê a terra he desta maneira a qual conta dou em breue / todo homẽ que he preso he iulgado a morrer onde assi na cadea quatro e cinco annos vẽ outros mandarís e se tẽ o preso prata peita escreuẽ delle ao Rey e os mãderís grandes abremno daquella penna que teem e dãolhe degredo pera todo sempre e assi os f<sup>os</sup> ficão obrigateiros tãbem a este degredo he comparauel sñor a homẽs que em portugal degradão pera as Ilhas o qual homem he comparado a algoz estes homẽs dãolhe cada mes hũ piquo daroz pera Comer em sua casa com sua molher e assi doutros f<sup>os</sup> se recreçẽ tam-bem fazerẽ destes homes degradados estes homẽs desta çidade degradãonos pera outra gouernãça os doutras gouernanças degradão pera esta avera nesta gouernança repartidos pellas çidades, villas e lugares que estão guardãdo as portas e cadeas e andão pellos rios não se aleuãtão [f. 127] pellas çidades treze ate quatorze mil homẽs / nesta çidade estarão continuamente tres mil homẽs guardando as portas da çidade com capitães p<sup>to</sup> qual não ha malauar que não peleje com quorenta destes homẽs e todos os matara que o seu geito todo he como molheres não ha nelles estamago somente apupadas com esta gente sostem os mandarís esta terra que he o mundo.

Pello qual tanto que a frota se fizera vella pera vir pera esta çidade não ha mandarin que na çidade aguarde a frota no rio os mandarís deitarse ão pollas portas fora nisto não ha duuida nenhũa senão ser assi no m<sup>o</sup> deste rio esta hũ igreja dos chis aq̃l esta na frontaria no meyo da çidade sera tamanha como a fortaleza de calequ a qual esta ja feita em hũ fortaleza som<sup>te</sup> orguerẽ o muro e fazerem l<sup>he</sup> torres o qual se deue de fazer hũ fortaleza forte de torres ou baluartes porque estando esta fortaleza ally com vinte ou triuta homẽs he estar o rio e tudõ degollado porque daly ha de iulgar a artelharia pera todas as bãdas assi pera a çidade como pello rio açima como p<sup>to</sup> rio abaixo o fundam<sup>to</sup> que se da judia ha de trazer artelharis que cõ qual-buer gente farão facanbas.

Como for assentada a gẽte na çidade logo em breue não se passando mais que dous ate quatro dias se tomarão parnos e se conçertarão logo ã fustas se trouxerem e irão p<sup>to</sup> rio açima com leuarẽ soma de artelharia irão queimando quãtos parnos e juncos e cousas se achar de villas e lugares fazendose grandes estroyçõs sem ficar cousa nenhũa ao presẽte por por espanto na gente que ainda q̃ de çima venhão os mandarís grandes com algũ gente que se não ache embarcação nenhũa nem achẽ mantimentos nenhũs pera a gente [f. 127 v] comer quanto mais eu creio que não ha de deçer nenhũ nem pode porque se deixarem laa os ladrões ão se dalenãtar pella terra e am de vir roubando e matando o mundo todo como souberẽ que esta çidade he tomada que se podem aqui vir acolher e emborilhada a terra de maneira que apellida toda que logo se ha gente ha de aleuãtar p<sup>ta</sup> gouernança e não ha dauar manderim que no mateem p<sup>to</sup> qual a guerra se faça cruamente per onde quer que puderem assi que todas estas tres gouernanças el Rey da China ha de perder conuẽl<sup>he</sup> fazer conçerto cõ os seos capitães não se pode sosteer nem a terra manter nẽ andar gouernada nem pagarẽ direytos ao Rey porque nẽ podẽ semear nem se pode fazer mercadoria p<sup>to</sup> qual fazendose conçerto façasse muito a pronejto del Rey nosso sor que l<sup>he</sup> dara el Rey da China hũ nao carregada de prata cadanno por se não emburilharem todas quinze gouernanças ou se demouer e assi se fara mercadoria como era dantes.

E assi sor p<sup>ta</sup> Ilha da viniaga faz o caminho pera quatro ou çinco çidades mesmo desta gouernança e muita vas e pouoaçõs de m<sup>a</sup> legoa em comprida com muito pouo as quaes çidades sã grandes e de gente rica e de muita seda e todo o ferro e estanho dally vem e assi sor que he grãde trato que o Rey trata cõ esta sor que tem nelle grande renda as quaes çidades estão ao



longo da costa cõ o mar nellas se bater que darão estas çidades quanta renda o rey tem na terra a el Rey nosso sor e assi obedeçerão por não serem estruidas e por o pouo se não ver perdido e não consentirão mandarim da terra que os gouerne somente por fazerem partido que sejam os seus capitães contentes com darem a metade das rendas a el Rey nosso sor que não [f. 128] ha çidade que não de corêta çinquenta mill cruzados cada anno / não digo de villas que as villas assi o ão de fazer que darão segundo a renda vinte mill e trinta mill cruzados de parias e darão hũa nao de prata a el Rey nosso sor sã nesta terra se gastar hum ceitill del Rey nosso sor senão leuário pera a India se fazerem os gastos e cargos de naos pa portugal.

Estas çidades podem ir a ellas em todo tempo assi no innerno como no verão tudo em hũ porque tudo ha de ser galees fermosas e fustas e nauios cousa de remo e tudo se nanega p̃tos rios e per antre jlhas que aqui os chĩs todo o anno nauegão / assi pera hum cabo como pera outro / e a gouernança deste cantão e de foquem per hi parte com hũa çidade destas que se chama coicheufa da gouernança de foquem esta logo hũa çidade que se chama cameheu he çidade fermosa e a grande esta estaa no mar he cousa riqua da seda e tafetas e de cãfera e muito sal e de grande trafega e tem em si grande numero de iuncos com todo tpõ podem hir e vir que desta çidade em todo tempo vão e poẽ .xv. xx. dias por este caminho da Ilha este he fermoso caminho por auer muitos villas e pouoações tãbem tem outro braço antre esta terra de Cantão por onde vão e tãbem bom caminho por todas estas cousas se perguntara aos Chĩs e tem outros muitos rios per onde vão a outros lugares.

Assi sor por essa banda desse cõljay onde ora estaes estão tres çidades as quaes se chamão per nome hũa loycheu outra lencheu outra quanchen são la mais metidas pera dentro pera o braço do mar que se mete antre as Ilhas daynã [f. 128 v] vem dar nestas çidades cõ dardor terẽ muitas Vas e pouoações e são grandes çidades de muitas rendas e tãbem teem algũ aljofre as quaes per força ão de obedeçer ao poder del Rey nosso sor e não pode consentir mandarĩs do Rey somente se for por conçoerto do que os seus capitães fizerũ o qual per força darão tres terços da renda a el Rey nosso sor e hum terço a el Rey da China por não se queimarem nem destruirem estas çidades e villas que tudo esta a mão poderem fazer quinhentos e seis centos homẽs com trinta ou corenta villas tudo de fustas que artelharia ha de fazer a guerra.

Pollo qual nesta çidade que se chama quancheufu tem grandes serrarias e nestas serrarias se recolhẽ grande soma de ladrões e derão ja duas vezes nesta çidade e a roubarão toda os quaes ladrões como souberem da tomada desta çidade ão de deçer e am de dar della que não tẽ entã quẽ a gouerne q̃ os mandarĩs ão de fogir e assi em villas e lugares ão de roubar e matar ate que os seus capitães não ponhão nisto prouisão não teem este pouo sem virem pedir socorro ao sor capitão moor com pedirũ portugueses que vão gouernar aquella terra não se damnifique dos ladrões que o pouo não teem defensão somente o mais do pouo meterẽse de companhia a roubarrem que o mais da gẽte he gẽte de vento desamarrada toda de mercadoria cousa de vento assi como sor hi ha gẽte riqua asi ha hi gẽte que não pode alcançar de comer esta he a rezão por tudo são ladrões.

Pello qual sor tanto que esta çidade estiner forte com forta [f. 129] lezas nos lugares q̃ compre e da india Vier gente em todas estas çidades que estinerem abordadas ao mar e com os rios se fara em cada çidade hũa fortaleza forte onde se ponhão hum capitão com çinquẽta homẽs pera gouernar a terra e recolher as rendas pera el Rey nosso sor com a gente da terra mesmo / os quaes portugueses que ahi estinerem ão de ter de todos cargo e hão de ser todos ríquos, q̃ ha de ser p̃to estillo da terra estes Chĩs ão de ser fieys como s̃or forem amansados cõ os portugueses e assi em Vas se farão tãbem fortalezas com s̃opre ser tudo corrido cõ fustalha era ir e vir quanto mais gente quanto mais proueito tãto mais se ha de ir alcãçado.

De principio sor se meta o ferro nelles e o fogo altanto porq̃ assi se querẽ os inimigos de principio e tanto que o sor Capitão mor vier pera entrar no rio seja destruido este lugar que se chama nãto onde estão capitães da guerra cõ obra de dous mil homẽs destes degradados que por ser frontaria e per estrangeiros ali virem de mercadoria estão ahi nesse lugar algũs iuncos seja



todo tomado e queimado esse lugar todo ardido em fogo que a gente que ahi estaa não ha desperar / e assi vindo pera cima ao longo da costa estaa hũa pouoação de gente o qual mandarão os bateis quejmar e tomarão paraos bõos e se tenerem ilcos queimẽnos não queimando os paraos que são suffiçẽtes pera correrem rios cõ elles e assi vindo mais pa diante onde esta hũa ilha que se chama ayuõcha se tomarão pescadores que sabũ a entrada da barra a qual ylha he pouoadã recolhe em si muitos iuncos inão os bateis [f. 129 v] e fustas queimar os iuncos se não forem fogidos e assi ha mto paraos não desbaratã estes paraos que de principio hão de ser muito necessários que todo parao destes pode trazer tres berços e cinco e seis homẽs portugueses não contando remeiros tudo isto aõor sera estroido porque fique tudo limpo que as naos que na barra ficarem ficara tudo seguro e yrão e virão os bateis cada vez que necessário for sem receo de nenhũ cabo lbe ser feito perũzo irão e virão olhãdo sũr tudo fica resguardado não se pode errar em cousa nenhũa como pera estes termos e de Christouão Vra se regerẽ seja sũr tudo bem visto não se saindo do que aqui diz tudo seja estroido não fiquem esses inimigos nas costas.

Desta gouernança sũr como fortalezas e tudo foy assũtado irão a foquem que he gouernança sobre ay que he cousa boa de seda e mercadorias no qual se corre todo anno irão e virão e todas as çidades e vas estão chegadas ao mar como for hũa armada de galees e fustas ate corenta ou mais em que andem seis çentos ou sete çentos homẽs farão por aly facanhas em que farão tudo tributario a el Rey nosso sũr todas estas çidades e villas cõ cadanno trazerẽ de parias hum nauio carregado de prata não podem menos fazer por se não destruir e perder a terra per conçoerto am de partir as rendas pũo mº com el Rey nosso sũr que nesta gente não ha nenhũa defensão como ouirem rogir hũa bombardãõ se de ir por nos outejros e olhar o que querem fazer os portugueses olhese quanta riqueza sem se trazer nem se gastara somente leuarem [f. 130] limpamente pera portugal outra india se alcançara e de tanto proueito e per tempo muito mais que recreçera mais gente e assi irão alcançando mais e sogigãrão mais e assi todos os portugueses muito ricos que a terra o confẽte assi se ã de hir a esta foquem pera a banda da Ilha donde farão mercadorias por onde desta cidade gouernança são çidades e Vas e lugares e pouoações e assi de foquem com esta frota tudo se corre assi desta Cantão a terra e assi a de foquẽ tudo sũr de hum ferro fazem logo tributario e farseão grandes destroções em queimarem iuncos que estes foquẽ tem numero de milhões delles e assi em porẽ as proas das galees e fustas nas çidades as bombardadas ainda que venha pedir milã não os deixão sũr de principio a saber o que podem fazer o poder del Rey nosso sũr na terra pera lhas virem as pareas redondas sem refusarẽ ã nenhũ tempo do que os seos capitães ordenarẽ ão de ter pera isto conhecimento do que lhe podem fazer.

Assi sũr ao mar deste foquem estão os lequeos que cadanno vendẽ mercadoria a patane e soyão em tempo do rey de malaca ir a malaca são muitas ilhas e onde esta o rey he hũa ylha muito grande e não pode sũr ser menos porque a gẽte he limpa e fazem iuncos muy grandes as quaes ylhos tã muito ouro e cobre e ferro e muitas mercadorias que ha em malaca e patane que trazem e teem damascos e seda muita e porçollanas desta gouernança de foquem a tomarem as primeiras ilhas são tres dias de golfão estes lequeos vem cada dia fazer mercadoria cõ esta terra de foquẽ e de foquem vão escondidamente [f. 130 v] la a fazer mercadoria no qũl por tempo podem ir com elles fazer mercadoria e elles virem aqui fazer mercadoria e se via sũr teçendo o trato nesta cidade de toda parte de pacõ e patane e o pão de syam se fara aqui outra casa da India que esta terra tem grande necessidade deste pão de ayã agora val aqui muito / outras mercadorias escusarse ão / este pão não.

Sejão sũr estas cartas mostradas aos sũros capitães mores não se emcubrão sũr que se jorge aluarez amostrara as cartas que leuaua ao sũr dom esteuão e de nos souberão eu confio que não estieramos aqui nesta cadea ou ninos ou mortos em dous annos ou o sũr gouernador ounera de mandar ou de malaca se ounera de ordenar cousa por onde nos daqui tirarão porque se fas mº seruijo a el Rey nosso sũr buscarse todollos remedios pera nos daqui sũr tirarem por tanto eu confio sũr em sua merçe com estas lenar não se esperar de portugal a el Rey nosso sũr ordenar a vinda a esta terra somente sua merçe acaballo com o sũr gouernador na india pois que



tamanhos desejos el Rey teem desta terra tellos desejos não erra el Rey n. sor somête estamos espantados como não vêe poder sobre esta terra aver tantos annos não sabemos a rezão assi sor de hũa maneira ou doutra com seis naos como em outras cartas se verá se pode tudo acabar sor sendo sobre nossa soltura.

De hũa maneira ou doutra q sor vierẽ tãto que esse porto chegarem logo fação os jurabaças as cartas sobre nos não mandẽ sor matar pedindo nos muy altamente que a yso vêe [f. 131] assi se causa for vir cousa grande assi se ponha nesse porto a nos pedir muito riço que estes mandarís de nos sor teem o reçoço que sabemos a terra esse he o respeito porque nos não soltão e nos tõe nesta cadea sendo a mais forte que ha nesta çidade não posso sor escreuer mais largo por que tenho a mão doẽte de chagas que me arebentarão e por não ser mais neçessario que cristouão Vieyra nunca deixa descreue todallas mais cousas / feita nesta cadea do Anchã as dez luas e tantos dias de outubro rogando a nosso sor q vos guarde e vos queira sor leuar a saluamento como sua merçee deseja.

**Serujor de sua merçee / V<sup>co</sup> Caluo.**

Ese homẽ sñor quẽ sua merçee traz por guia he homẽ honrrado foy homem que teue fazenda esteue muito tempo preso e lirouse e foy degradado e teue maneyra como se foy a Malaca he sor homẽ digno de lhe ser feita honrra e he homẽ sufficiẽte pera esta terra seja lhe sor em Malaca dado mantimento e ao jurabaça que são necessarios.

sñor.

Esta gouernança de Cantão sera de sua obrigação em roda de duzentas legoas bem feitas çidades e villas e pouoações tulo esta assentado em terra chã metidas p̃os rios armadas as casas em madeyra a gouernança de foquem he mais pequena teem menos duas çidades [f. 131v] sera de sua obrigação em Roda cento e sesenta legoas he cousa muito boa e assi as çidades e villas assentadas do theor deste Cantão estas duas folhas em que estão estas gouernanças não se desapegarão porque dizem com estas cousas que aqui vão escritas.

Eu sor tenho o liuro de todas quinze gouernanças cada gouernança quantas çidades tẽ e vas e outros lugares todo escripto largamte e o modo e manra que se tẽ em toda a terra e do regimto della como de todo o mais e çidades como estão assentadas e outros lugares e assi proueitos del Rey n. sor esta hum homẽ estndando eu sor sey leer escreno a letra da terra que estou doente e vejo os Chis e tomo a letra.

Esta folha sor debuxada estaa a gouernança de Cantão toda a qual significa os rios as çidades que são dez todas per seu nome ao pe dessa folha ẽ hũa çidade q se chama Aynão q quando vẽ pera este porto fica a mão esquerda tudo são Ilhas como abi sor vereis nos quaes Ilhas esta hũa populosa çidade e tres cheos que são abaixo da çidade e dez Vas q cada va he mayor que a çidade deuora dez vezes mais gẽte outra va onde estão capitães de guerra como são esses que ẽ vossa guarda estão destas Ilhas a esta çidade de Cantão avera cinquenta ou sesenta legoas.

Pollo sor são quinze grandes çidades e mto grandes pouoações he cousa rica de grandes rendas e de palmares e arequas por respeito destes arequas e palmares he a melhor cousa que ha na terra da China onde se pese ao aljofre todo em outra parte não no ha saluante nessas [f. 132] yllas as quaes Ilhas sor partem da banda do sul con o reino de Gauchim e desta terra de Cantão pera irẽ la metese hum braço de mar com bom vento passasse em hum dia e Ruj vento dia e noyte.

Pollo qual sor feita fortaleza nesta çidade estas çidades são logo leuantadas e a mais da gẽte andarem a roubar e matarẽ a hũ e a outros porque não ha de ter quem a gouerne nẽ a quẽ obedeçer porque ão de matar os mandarís ou fogirem que a gente he muito pobre e maltratada dos mandarís quẽ gouernão.

Estas Ilhas e çidades não tõe sor nenhũa maneira de socorro fazendosse hũa fortaleza na principal çidade com quinhẽtos homẽs estantes nella e com muita fustalha que corra o braço do mar com outros quinhẽtos homẽs ficão sometidas a obedeçerẽ a el Rey nosso s<sup>or</sup> porque do geito com as rendas



que sohião a pagar ao Rey destas çidades destas Ilhas tirarse ha grande riqueza em grão man<sup>ra</sup> como a terra assēt<sup>ar</sup> que são as rendas muy grandes.

Deneis saber sor que mais foy tomarse Goa do que sera tomarem estas çidades e sogigarem por respeito da gēte ser muito fraca em grão maneira e não teem lealdade cō Rey nũ com pay nem may não andão senão com quem pode mais que cousa tam boa se deixa dalcancar assi pollo cōseguinte teem grão copia de gengibre esta gouernança teem muito gengibre muito bom e canella não he muito fina.

Pollo qual sor deixo esta substancia deste Aynão [f. 132 v] torno sñor a esta cidade de Cantão que he a cabeça desta gouernança f. estão aqui os mandarins grandes todos os ftes da iustiça aqui vem despachar rendas pto conseguente he fermosa e populosa çidade he cousa muito a mão pera o poder del Rey n. s<sup>or</sup> nella fazer cousas facuhasas estaa do geito da çidade de Lixa hum galeam que nesta çidade entrara fara render porque mete a çidade debaixo de sy não avera homẽ que apareça como artelharia tirar não auaer homem que apareça nem quem gouerne gente nem menos a cidade.

Vinda hũa frota com tres mil homẽs farão hũa fortaleza na çidade tomandoa por el Rey n. s<sup>or</sup> a qual fortaleza farão onde Christouão Vieyra escreue com hũa couraça que venha sobre a porta de tres ou quatro sobrados que sogigue a metade da çidade farão dentro na cidade hũa fortaleza em hum outeyro onde estao hũas igrejas dos Chĩs a qual fortaleza sera do geito da de Caleu tomara sobre o muro da çidade que vay pera a banda do norte com hũa torre grande que jogue pera aquella banda e fica a çidade toda sometida debaixo no qual lugar a pedra madeyra e telha pera fazerem duas fortalezas com os pedreyros da terra e serujores como areas pta praya do mar estarão nesta fortaleza atee çem homẽs e as chaues da çidade de noita darse ão ao capitão desta fortaleza as portas que vão da banda do norte e do leuante ponente serão fechadas a seruintia sera pera a banda do rio.

Com fazerem porteiros em cada porta hum portuges e çinquenta homẽs da terra que tenham cargo da porta esta gente a solla da cada dia dous lĩs a sera de pagada que sera pto estillo da terra o de saber quẽ entra na çidade e o que vem fazer e ha de hir pollas e chaues polla menhã a fortaleza que esta dentro na çidade.

Pera cima desta çidade onde se fazem dous rios se fara hũa fortaleza feita de muralhas altas com muita artelharia com duzētos [f. 133] homẽs e fustalha que se dizem algũa gente que lhe terão sor Rio não tem pera onde possão vir a esta çidade pto qual sor he mais de soste Goa do que sera soste esta gouernança e aliem del Rey n. s<sup>or</sup> aver grande riqueza toda a outra gente ha de ser rica porque a terra da lugar a tudo pto muitos cargos que na terra hão de ter.

Pollo qual sor de principio averse a destes paraos da terra grãdes que são suffiçientes pera yssos e correrão quantos rios por hi ouuer e queimarão quantos barcos acharem e iuncos como isto ao presente for queimado e destruido a fome morrerão que não teem por onde lhe venhão mantimentos e se algum caminho teem não ousão de andar por elle por respeito que tudo são ladrões no mundo se não achara terra de riqueza e pera someter debaixo do poder senão esta e não muito poder e se o poder for grande quãto mais riqueza se alcançara.

De principio sor serão altamente castigados com artelharia que fallando agora nella metem o dedo na boca despantados de cousa tam forte por respeito de ser gente que não teem estamago e deque naçe ate que morre não toma na mão senão hũa faca sem ponta pera cortarem de comer saluãte sor a gēte que trazem a soldadada que andão guardando com esses capitães os portos e rios de ladrões e por se não fazerẽ iuncos grandes por se não aleuantar o pouo a fazerẽ ladrões porque viuem em grande sojeição como Christouão V<sup>o</sup> da conta nessas cartas que escreue em que se da a conta sor toda.

Pollo qual sor se fara nesta çidade outra casa da India não trazendo de portugual saluante daqui leuarem nao carregada de prata e ouro pera na India fazerem cargo das naos pera portugual e se fazer o gasto na India daqui ira cobre [f. 133 v] salitre chumbo pedra Vme estopa cabres todo o ferro pregadura breo todas estas cousas são tanto em abestança que he pera espantar aqui se fara toda armada que na India se ouuer mister galees galiões naos ha madeira muita carpinteiros da terra



muitos como bichos e assi ferreiros pedreyros telheiros outros officiaes e pera espantar não ha portuges nenhum de por mão em pedra nem em pao pera se fortaleza fazer.

Toda pimêta de pacê de pedir patane oanda se fara hũa grande feitoria de riqueza aqui como a terra asentar porão a pimemta em quinze dezaseis tãs que ninguem não ha de tratar com ella somente el Rey nosso sor e assi sor todallas mercadorias de Syão tomarão .f. pão e darlhe ão outras mercadorias porque a feitoria ha destar chea de mercadoria da terra e assi a mercadoria dessas parçes farse a numero de riqueza e a gente darimas não lhe neçessario tratar com estas mercadorias porque a terra he tamanha e de tamanhos proueitos que se çem mil homẽs ouuer todos terão cargo e todos são pto estillo da terra de peitas e dadinas muito grandes.

Daqui sor correrão na gouernança de foquem aq̃l gouernança teem oito çidades e setenta V<sup>a</sup> pouaçõs de tres mil vezinhos se não folla saluante cousa de muros pto qual se corre com sul tornara quando quiserem que sempre teem moução que entrão por rios pollo qual sor daqui se ordenara capitão moor com trinta vellas .f. galees fustas tudo cousa de remo e algum galeão e de pareas por estas çidades V<sup>as</sup> pouaçõs trarão galees carregados de riqueza com seis çentos homẽs se fara tudo isto.

Porque sor toda a çidade por concerto pagara corenta çinquenta [f. 134] mill tãos de prata as villas vinte trinta mill tões e leuarão mercadorias e trarão mercadoria estas pareas por respeito de não destruirem a terra e desse não aleuantar o pouo com a gouernança matando mandarĩs e roubarem nas feitorias del Rey que todas estao cheas de prata .f. toda a çidade tem feitoria mandarim grande outros tres que gouernão e teem cargo de justa toda a V<sup>a</sup> ha feitoria he cousa boa esta gouernança e correrão pollo costa cosul com pilotos da terra irão logo dar na gouernança de chaqueam que teem onze çidades e oytenta villas he muy riqua gouernança de muitas e grãdes rendas teem muita prata e muita seda com seis çetos sete çentos homẽs trarão a frota carregada de prata tudo de pareas esta costa de foquem sor estao as Ilhas dos lequeos tres dias de caminho de foquem são muitas e são riquas de muito ouro e cobre ferro vem cada dia fazer mercadoria a esta terra de foquem esta gente em tpo do Rey de Malaca hião a malaca fazer mercadoria e agora vão a patane / estas Ilhas dos lequeos he cousa boa e assi que cousa grande estão ao mar deste foquem tres dias de caminho muito ouro muitas mercadorias vem fazer cada dia mercadoria a esta terra soyão de hir a malaca no tempo do Rey della agora vem a patane fazer mercadoria tambem gasta mta pimemta.

Martim Affonso de Mello sor vinha bem ordenado pera faz paz e nos tirar e fazer fortaleza em tal lugar dauão mal enformação a el Rey nosso sor acabara tudo porque trazia embaixor e vinha pto que aqui estava quis a mofina de muitos q̃ se fizesse tamanho desarranjo como se fez ã mǎdar assi dous nauios com homẽs mançebos que se não virão nunca [f. 134 v] em nada pto qual sor cada nauio tiraua pera seu cabo quando tanta copia de iuncos virão desmancho forão dar co nauio de Diogo de Mello sem lhe tirarem bombardada nem homẽ tirar espada da bainha fazendo zombaria que se armasẽ pera os Rumes Pedro homem socorria a Diogo de mello foise meter ãtre os iuncos sem tirar bombardada os juncos sor erão altarosos as pedradas os tomarão matarão Po homem e Dio de mello nos nauios e outros homẽs e a outra gente trouxerão a esta cadea a tribulados como deos sabe estiuerão assi hum anno as vezes açoutados deste tronquo que tem cargo destas cadeas esperauão os mandarĩs que viessem portugeses que pasou a moução lenarão nos a matar fazendo feas justiças nelles.

O mundo todo sor não era bastante a tomar hum nauio noso quanto mais dous se lhe amostrarão os dentes estine meu hirmão sor nesse porto tres meses cercado com manter mais que dez ou doze homẽs sem o poderem entrar porque lhe amostraua os dentes e se foy como sor la sabereis ficandolhe nesta çidade a gente presa em meu poder passãte de dez mil tões tudo me foy tomado pto qual me saluou Dẽ por respeito desta fazenda.

Pollo qual sor se o sor gouernador deixar assi estar esta gouernança em tanta bonança sem aver algũa detremenação sobre a vinda bem se pode ordenar de malaca e de paçẽ çinque vellas bem armadas e com mercadorias a nos pedirem cõ fazerẽ cortes do theor que vay nas cartas de Christouão Vieyra e farse ão tres cartas ao çeny pachency anchacy asta o que a ysso as manda a el Rey n. sor opt



embaixor e gente que tem nas cadeas que ha vinte annos [f. 135] que são nesta terra sem o Rey nem os mandarís os despacharem e se os não quizerem dar avera el Rey n. sor outro conselho tanto que chegarem os mandarão estes mandarís que guardão o porto e que trazem mercadoria se a quizerem fazerẽ e pagarão seus direytos como erão de principio e se quizerem vir a esta çidade estruila hão toda cõ artelharia e lhe porão fogo que entrão as casas no Rio e de madeyra assi na çidade como de fora sem aver quem a defenda não a hi quem aguarde a cousa de frange.

Pedindonos sempre em todos as cartas que se fizerem seja a primra materia por nos afogarem que teem grãde reço de nos daremos em forção da terra porque como nos deixarem de pedir hum pouco logo nos hão de afogar que de nos estão temORIZADOS.

Se caso for sor que pareça bẽ ordenar embaixor não oulhãdo o que he feito na terra que o pago o sor gouernador lho dara os mandarís o receberão com presente de chamalotes e veludos e grandes panos darmar bargantes que tenham veados e coelhos se qdo se acharem não se metendo cousa de aves no presente porque não folgão com ysso espelhos grandes coral sandallo cousas que pareção bem.

Isto sor seja oulhado se farão nisso os seus capitães serujo a el Rey nosso sor neste tempo todo fazer a mercadoria em quanto for o embaixador ao Rey e vier estas cartas são escritas redobradas porque se se perderẽ hũas que fiquem sempre outras.

[f. 135 v] Que o geito da terra he chamarẽ ao seu Rey fo de Dẽ e ha terra chamão terra de Deos e toda outra gente de fora da terra chamão saluagẽs que não conhecem dẽ nem terra e que todo o embaixor que vem a sua terra que vam obedecer ao fo de Dẽ e outras vaidades sor que he mta leitura eu como sor digo estou do corpo muito cibado de pontadas e dores e não me da lugar a escreuer com pena nossa senão com pena china não se podendo fazer mais declarada letra Christouão Vra escreue com pena nossa porque esta em boa disposiçãõ feita nesta çidade de Cantão dentro nas cadeas enfernaes a dez dias de nouembro na era de [1536] annos encõmendãdouos a nosso sor vos leue desta China como deseção vossas merces.

Quando sor se escreuẽ estas estou eu sempre em vigia se vem algum Chim não nos topẽ a escreuer que dos mesmos nossos moços sor nos guardamos porque andão mais deitados aos Chĩs que com nosco.

De todallas cartas que sor chegarẽ escreuer chagarão tâtas cartas não se faça mais leitura sobre isso que tendes mto que escreuer sor ao que homẽ pergunta.

Toda a carta grande e pequena sejam guardadas sem se romper nenhũa nem perder das que forem pera ysso.

Vasco Caluo.

(To be continued.)

## THE WRECK OF THE "DODDINGTON," 1755.

BY R. C. TEMPLE.

(Continued from p. 456.)

### Observations on Bird Island.

THE First thing we did was to Seek Some Cloaths for we Were perishing with Cold and Several, so Bruis'd, that they Could not Stirr. As Soon as we got things to Cover us, the Next thing was to look for Water which we Found in a Batt That drove from the Ship, and as we Were all Very drowthy With the Salt Water we Swallow'd drank very hearty. We then went to work to gett a fire and As I had Often heard that Rubbing two peices of Sticks together will fire them Was going to try the Experiment, when on of the people Found a Barrell of powder with the Head out, Notwithstanding Some of it was dry. This gave Some



Encouragement, to look for Utensills and Soon After Found a Small Escrutore<sup>23</sup> with 2 Gun Flints and a File in it with Which we Soon kindled a fire This gave us all great Spirits and Indeed I thought the People would Never think they had Candles Enough, a light [a] Box of which was Found with the Escrutore. The people who Were most wounded got Round the Fire and the Rest of us Made A Tent Over them. By the Time this was Done it was Noon and Hunger Put us in Mind of Something to Eat. We gather'd up some pork that was Wash'd On the Rocks and Broile,d Some Rashers for dinner. As Soon as dinner was Over I with those that was Able to Walk went upon the Wreck to See for Something to Subsist On. We Saw Several things Such as Flower, Beer, Wine, and Water but had not strength to get them up, so that all we Could do that Day, was to gett Some Canvass of which we made another Tent, not having Room Enough in the Other for us all. The Wind Southerly and Blows Very Hard And Threatens a Dirty Night and Indeed it proved so Bad that we Got little Rest being half Leg deep in the Tent all Night, it being rised upon Fouldung<sup>24</sup> I apprehend that on the Spring Tides and Strong Gales it Near Overflows [the Island]. I Shall add no More to this days Work then that I declare never Wrote a More disagreeable One.

**Friday 18 July.** The Wind Easterly with Frequent Showers of Rain as Soon as it Was day Light all those that were able to Stir went Upon the Wreck in Order to Save Water and what provisions we Could Find to last us the Time we Should Stay Here, which I thought Could not be less than a Month if those that were well Stay'd for them that was Sick; besides we all Agree<sup>d</sup> the longer We Stay'd there the Better it Would be for Travelling as the Summer Season Advanced. I went To the places Where I Saw the Beer and things Yesterday, but to my Great Disappointment found the Sea had Stov'd them all in the Night except a Cask of Beer Which we got up. But in looking About found a Small Cask of Flower, which we Also got up. We Lickwise Discover'd Some Butts of water, which we Endeavoure'd to get up but Could not, for those who Escape'd favourable Are Still Very Weak, And the Cries of the poor souls, that is Hurt are the most Melancholly I Ever heard. While We Were Endeavouring to gett the Butt of Water up the Tide Flow'd and Put a Stop to our Work. The Day being far Spent went to Dinner on Some Salt pork as before. We had no Sooner Satt Down than Every body began to bewail his Ragg'd and Deplorable Condition most thinging<sup>25</sup> they should Never be Able To Travel so far as the Cape of Good Hope or Delagoe, which is the Only two Places there is any Hopes of Finding of Relief. M<sup>r</sup>. Collett was Consulting which Was the Best way to go, Saying he Thought the Cape the Nearest. I Answer'd I wish we Could find Some Tools, As the Carpenter was Saved might Build a Boat, and from that Time Nothing was Talk'd of but the Boat, Which gave New life to us all, and before we got up from dinner it was Agreed On; That a Boat was the Only thing that would preserve us from perishing. Upon Which Some Immediatly went in Search of Tools, and Others to mend the Tent better and it is with great Reluctance I end this days Work without Finding any Toolcs except one of the ships Scrapers.

**Saturday 19th July.** Wind Wterly and Fair Wear Early this Morning. Musterd all the people I Could to gett up the Water and Succeeded So well that we got 4 Butts into Safety Before Dinner and Afterwards a Cask of Brandy and Another off Flower, with Severall Other Necessarys at the Same Time. Every Body was Very Diligent in Search of Tools but Founnd None. Notwithstanding do Not despair Being of Opinion the great Sea that was Continually Rowling in must Certainly Bring Some On Shore Out of the Great Number, in the Ship. Gott up our little Boat [sch] Was Always Stov'd upon the Poop on Board the Ship and Came on shore without being Stove. Lickwise Found a Firkin of Butter, and a Barrell of Powder. Some of the People

<sup>23</sup> This word is in the forms Sreutore, Scritoire, Sorowtore, etc., meant a portable writing case or desk.


<sup>24</sup> The following line is scored through and rendered illegible.

<sup>25</sup> So in MS.



that had taken a Walk Round the Island, Came to me upon The Wreck, with the most Pittifull Countenance ever I beheld, and Said the Side of the Island Next the Main was full as bad as this Side; therefore it was Impossible to [get] a Boat [off] without Staving her to peices. I must Own the Pittifull Manner they Told me this Peice of News Damp'd my Spirits at first but Recovering, told them Not to be Disheartne'd, that with Gods Assistance and Our Own Endeavours Should Overcome all Difficultys and as Soon as that I Went Round my Self, hope'd Should bring them Better News. After we got What Things We Were Able, Some of the People went And Gather'd Some Limpitts and Musoles of Which there is Great Plenty, tho not So good as in England. The Shell of the Muscle is Very Large and the Fish Vastly Small and Yellow. The Limpitts Are Very Large but so Tough, That we Could Scarce Eat them. I Endeavoured To Perswade the people the Reason of their being Tough, was Owing to Roasting Them, and as Soon as we Found a Kettle to Boil them, Should Find Them Excelent Food.

Sunday 20<sup>th</sup> July. Wind and Weaf as p<sup>r</sup> day past, had a Very Successfull Day. Sett Out Early in the Morning and no Sooner got on the Wreck than One of the People Found my Quadrant, and another Almost Whole and a Hamper with Several Sail Needles Files and Gimblets; also the Card of an Azimuth Compass. Soon After I Discover'd part of the Ships Transom — with a

Chest of Treasure on it Mark'd and Number'd Viz<sup>t</sup>  I A N<sup>o</sup> 5. Lickwise a Carpenters

Chissell and Three Sword Blades. Another pickt up a Carpenters Adze and a Mariners Compass Rectified Which Gave the People Greater Spirits than Any thing Since we have been Here. About 10 o Clock we Went to Prayers to Return God Thanks for his Mercies, which as Soon as we had Done, went to dinner. All the Time We Were together our Discourse was About Building the Boat and the Difficulty of Launching her. Therefore as Soon as I had Dine'd and Sett the People to Work to get up a Butt of Water M<sup>r</sup> Collett and My Self went to See if we Could Find a place To Launch our Intended Boat, as There is Nothing else can prevent us from Building One, having now got Some Tools, and make no doubt, Shall get Timber And Planks Enough of from the Wreck. It was not Long before we Found a Place, where there was Some probability of Getting the Boat of, tho it will Require Great Labour, to Clear it of the Rock Stones. We Walke'd round the Island Looking every Where but found no place so good as the First when We Returned the People had gott up a Butt of Water a Hogshead of Beer and One of Cyder and was at Work Making a Tent large Enough to Hold us all. I Told them of Our Success and the Illconveniency that Attended it. They Were Greatly Rejoyce'd and Said they Should not Mind the Trouble. I Took a Turn With Some of the People upon the Wreck again, and Found a Smiths Bellows, Which we got up and Part of the Companys Packett. tho almost Wash'd to Peices. However it was Taken Care of and put to dry, the First Opportunity.

Monday July 21<sup>st</sup>. The Wind Westerly and pleasant Wea<sup>r</sup> Sett [out] this Morning With great Spirits and before Dinner got up 5 Butts of water 2 Hogsheads of Brandy And One Cask of Vinagar which was all we Could Find at That Time; also Looked Every where for Tools, But Found None. The Carpenter Employ'd Making a Saw Out of a Sword Blade. Find the People Recover Surprisingly, Considering they Have Nothing to Apply to Their Wounds.

Tuesday July 22<sup>d</sup>. Wind at S W blows very hard which Makes a Large Surf. Went upon the Wreck at Day Light in Search of Provisions for as Yet we have not Enough to Last us the Time, the Boat will be a Building. Found One Cask of Pork Another of water which we got up Immediately. Afterwards Went to Work to Carry Plank and Timber to Build the Boat, Sails to Cover the Tent, and Cordage. I and M<sup>r</sup> Collett Took a Turn Round the Island Again, and the Wind being to the Southward, Makes The Place we Pitched Upon



Yesterday for Launching the Boat, the Lee part of the Island, therefore Much Smoother and Now Make no Doubt of Getting her Safe in a Calm Day. Upon Our Return Found the Carpenter had Finishe'd the Saw, which Cutts Very Well the People are all Upon the Wreck looking for Water and provissions, Except Two Deans<sup>28</sup> on of Which Says he Served 2 Years of his Time to a Smith and Promises Great Things in Regard to Making of Tools. Therefore Sett Them to Work To Mend the Bellows. This Evening Discover'd a Smoke on the Main, Which Made Us of Some Thoughts of Going Over as Soon as Our little Boat is Repair'd. The People Returned from the Wreck without any Success than What's Mentione'd.

**Wednesday 23<sup>d</sup>.** Wind and Wea<sup>r</sup> as p<sup>r</sup> day past. The People Employ'd in the Morning Carrying Plank and Timber lickwise Some Sails and Cordage, the Carpenter getting What Few Tools he has in Readiness for begining the Boat as Soon as he is Able to Stand having his Great Toe almost Cut of with the Rocks in Coming on Shore. The Man who, for the future I shall Call Smith, Making his Forge. In the Afternoon it Rain'd so hard that it Sett our Tent all Afloat, Therefore Carry'd no Plank but got Another Sail Over our Tent and Secured it as well as we Could From Blowing Down, Which I Expected Every Minute, But tho it Stood all Night But few of us got Little Rest.

**Thursday 24 July.** Moderate Breezes W<sup>e</sup>erly and pleasant Wea<sup>r</sup>. Went to work To Bring up Plank and Some peices to Make a Keel, and to Our great Joy the Carpenter and Another went to Work. The Smith Finish'd The Forge, and our Next Care is to get Coals Which we Soon procured by the Burning of Firr to Charcoal. The Next place my Self M<sup>r</sup> Collett and the Carpenter Consulted what Demensions the Boat Should be of, and was Agreed She Should be 30 foot Keel and 12 Broad. Upon Examining Our Pork found Some of it Stinking and the Rest of it little Better, a Very Disagreeable Discovery but Made the Best of it we Could, by Hanging it up in the Tent & Smoaking of it Which Preserv's it.

**Friday 25<sup>th</sup>.** Fresh Gales W<sup>e</sup>erly & fair Wea<sup>r</sup>. The Carpenter & the Other at Work upon The Keel, Others Making a Tent Over the Smiths Forge, The Rest Upon the Wreck looking For Water and provissions, but Found None and Indeed There is Nothing to Be Seen but dead Corps which we Meet with Every Step we take on the Wreck And all parts of the Island.

**Saturday 26<sup>th</sup>.** Wind and Wea<sup>r</sup> as yesterday the Carpenters have most Finishe'd The Keel, and Intend Making the Stern Next. Got up a Peice of 4 Inch Plank for that Purpose. The Smith Made himself 2 Hammers. People Employ'd bringing Up Wood for the Kiln to Make Charcoal. This Day we all Dine'd on Greens that Grows Upon the Uper part of the Rocks, the Leaf is Much like that of Merry gold; and There is Another Sort, which the People Bruise and Dress Their Wounds with, like Mash Mallows. We have 8 people Sick Now.

**Sunday 27<sup>th</sup>.** Wind Variable and fair Wea<sup>r</sup>. Did no Work this day. Kept the Sabbath, Having of Prayers. This Day the Birds Left the Island, Settled Again in Such Quantities as Almost Cover'd it. They Are what We Call Gannetts. Knock'd Down Some of them for Dinner; the Flesh is Very black & Eats Very Fishey.

**Monday 28<sup>th</sup>.** Calm Pleasant Wea<sup>r</sup>. The Smith Compleate'd a Hamer for the Carpenter & Attempted to Make an Adze but did not Succeed, but however Intends to have Another

<sup>28</sup> I. s., Danes.



Tryall for it. The People Employed in the Fore Noon Carrying Planks & in the Afternoon, Making a Tent for the Carpenter, and Mending our Own & One for a Store Tent.

**Tuesday 29<sup>th</sup>.** Little Winds E'erly & fair Wea<sup>r</sup>. Carpenter at Work upon the Boats Stern; the Smith Repairing a Camp Kettle which was pick'd Up this Morning; people Carrying up Wood to the place for Blocks; my Self Looking Round the Wreck for Water & provisions and Tools, but Found Neither, in the Evening Made a Cattamaran,<sup>27</sup> and got the Brandy in the Great Tent.

**Wednesday 30<sup>th</sup> July.** Light Breezes W'erly & fair Wea<sup>r</sup>. Carpenter Employ'd as before. Smith Made 2 Gimblets & the People Carrying Wood for the Ship, in the Evening on of The People Attempted to go out on the Cattamaran to Try if he Could Catch any Fish but Managed her so Badly that he was Glad to gett her Back Again before he Had gott 10 Yards from the Rocks. Our Carpenter is Taken ill which Disheartens us Very Much.

**Thursday 31<sup>st</sup>.** Hard Gales at S W with Frequent Squalls, Blow'd the Carpenters Tent down & Uncovered the Store Tent. Our provisions this day was Young Sea Lions As M<sup>r</sup>. Anson Calls them, which is very Indifferent Eating and I Fear not Wholesome for 5 of the People Fell Sick. The Next day, the Carpenter Continues so ill that This is a Lost day to us.

**Friday Aug<sup>1</sup> 1<sup>st</sup>.** Wind and Wea<sup>r</sup> as p<sup>r</sup> Day past. The Carpenter so Much Recover'd That he went to Work. The people Employ'd Carrying Plank, Smith a Repairing a kettle that was Found. In the Evening Dug a Well to Try if there was any fresh Water In the Island but Could not find None that was fitt to Drink; tho What we Met with was Not Salt it had a Very Sour Nasty Taste which I Take it is Occasion'd by the Running from the Hill thro' the Birds Dung. Went to Short Allowance of Bread About 2 Ounces a Man p<sup>r</sup> Day.

**Saturday 2<sup>d</sup>.** Wind Westerly and Fair Wea<sup>r</sup>. This Morning the Carpenter Employe'd Laying the Blocks the People Carrying Over the Keel Stem & Sternpost, Smith Making Bolts for the Scarf of the Keel, in the Afternoon Lay'd it, & Got up The Stem & Stern post, this Day Kill'd a Hogg 7 of them having got on Shore Alive Which I forgot to Mention the First day.

**Sunday 3<sup>d</sup>.** Wind Variable and pleasant Wea<sup>r</sup>. Every Body Dined Very Hearty on Roast Pork.

**Monday 4<sup>th</sup>.** Wind W S W and pleasant Wea<sup>r</sup>. The Carpenter Employ'd Bolting The Scarf of the Keel Stem & Stern post. The Smith Made a Maul and Some Bolts. People Carrying Plank to the Building Place, and to the kill [Kiln]. In looking About the Rocks found a Butt  $\frac{1}{2}$  full of Water which we got up Immediatly. In the Evening, M<sup>r</sup>. Collett thought he Saw a Sail, and Call'd out with a Laudable [an audible] Voice, a Sail. I never was so Agreeably Surpris'd in my Life, And all that was [were] in hearing Confesse'd the Same, and Indeed their Behaviour Shew'd it by Running for Wood & Tarr to Make a Smoak. but upon looking With the Glass, Discover'd it only to be a Spott [Spot] on the Land that we

<sup>27</sup> A small raft of logs lashed together.



had not Observe'd before. This Sudden Turn, had Such an Affect Upon the People that there was no Work done that day.

**Tuesday Aug<sup>t</sup> 5.** The Wind at N W & fair Wea<sup>r</sup>. The Carpenter Making Moulds For the Floor Timbers; Smith Making Gimblets & Trying Again at an Adze, which I Am in great Hopes he will Finish; People Carrying Up Wood with Nails and Bolts in it, to Burn them Out, Lickwise Plank and Timber for the Boat. The Pork which Was Washed, Upon the Rocks is all Expended. The Birds Which Were so Numerous at our first Coming on Shore, have Entirely left the Island, and the Seals Much Scarcer & Shyer, So that at present have Nothing to live on but an Animal Between Fish & Fowl. There is plenty of them Here and No ways Shy, they Walk As Upright as a Man, These Were Our Food this Day.

**Wednesday 6<sup>th</sup> Aug<sup>t</sup>.** The First Part Wind at N W Latter Southerly. People Employe'd Carrying Plank & Timber Over to the Building Place; Carpenter Securing the Sternpost. And to Our great Joy the Smith Made an Adze, And began an Ax. One Man Attempted to Go out on the Cattamaran & Made no hand of it. Another who was a Combmaker, is Making a Cross Cutt Saw Out of a Sword Blade.

**Thursday 7<sup>th</sup>.** The First part Wind N W Fresh Gales and Cloudy Wea<sup>r</sup> with Some Rain, the Latter Hard Showers which put our Tent a Float. Got Another Sail Over it And Spread another to Save Water. The Smith Finished An Ax, and an Auger: and in the Room of a Better, the Carpenter Finishe'd a Gun Truck for a Grindstone, which I hope will Answer the End, After we have Beat Some Sand and Shells, into The Wood. The Combmaker Finish'd the Saw, Which does but Badly, but the Carpenter Says he Can Mend her [it].

**Friday 8<sup>th</sup>.** Fresh Gales W<sup>terly</sup> with Heavy Rain of Which We Save'd 3 Tonns, Which gave us Great Spirits being in hopes we shall not want water during our Stay here, but there Seldom Comes a Good One, but a Bad One Attend's 'it, by Preventing the Carpenter from Working. Our food this day was Young Seals.

**Saturday Aug<sup>t</sup> 9<sup>th</sup>.** The First Part Fresh Gales at N W & Cloudy Wea<sup>r</sup> latter, Wind Southerly. This day 7 of the People Taken Very ill, Which I Judge is Owing to Eating too hearty of the Seals; for my Part, Live'd Upon Greens; Therefore Escape'd this Time. The Smith and his Assistant is [are] two of them. The Carpenter at Work on the Floor Timbers. Found a Butt of Water & a Hogshead of Brandy, which we got up Immediatly. Din'd This Day on Muscles, and in the Evening Kill'd a Large Bird, Which was for Supper. Lickwise Kill'd a Hogg for Sundays Dinner.

**Sunday 10<sup>th</sup>.** Wind at S W & fair Wea<sup>r</sup>. In Looking About the Rocks Found a Copper Stewpan. The People Are Much Better, My Self and Messmates Caught as Many Small Fish, with Pin hooks, as Serve'd 10 Men for Supper.

**Monday Aug<sup>t</sup> 11<sup>th</sup>.** First Part Wind S E, the Latter N W & Cloudy Wea<sup>r</sup>. 4 of the People quite recover'd. The Smith Made Some Bolts, and two Caulking Irons. The Carpenter as before. The Peope [sic] Clearing a Grapnail, which wash'd on Shore with The Cables; when Clear'd, found it wanted One Flake.



**Tuesday 12<sup>th</sup>.** Fresh gales W<sup>erly</sup> & fair Wea<sup>r</sup>. Carpenter as before. One Man [of our Men] Broke An Ax. People Carrying Plank to the Building Place, & Clear'g a Tow Line To Make a Cable for the Boat but Could Not [effect it].

**Wednesday 13<sup>th</sup>.** Wind N W & fair Wea<sup>r</sup>. The Carpenter Compleat'd all the Floor Timbers And began the Futtocks. The Smith Made Another Ax. The People Employe'd Clearing a Piece of One of the Bower Anchor which Came on Shore on the Ship's Side. Got it up to Make an Anvill for The Smith, having One of the Steering Sail Boom Irons Before. Lick-wise Found a Barrell [Barrel] of Pitch, which was Very much Wanted, not Having any Before to Pay the Seams with.

**Thursday 14<sup>th</sup>.** Wind and Wea<sup>r</sup> as p<sup>r</sup> day past. We are [were] greatly Distress'd for provisions. Therefore we Carry'd our Little Boat Over to the Building Place to be Repair'd determining to go out and Try to Catch Fish, tho' the Risk is very Great, by Reason of an Ugly Barr [Bar], to go Over, before there is any [a] Chance of Catching any. Also Enlarge'd the Cattamaran to Carry two men, & Made Another.

**Friday 15<sup>th</sup>.** The First part Wind W<sup>erly</sup> with Rain, the Latter Southerly and fair Wea<sup>r</sup>. This Forenoon the Wea<sup>r</sup> Prevented the Carpenter from Working on the Boat, Therefore Employ'd himself Sharping of his Tools, and Making Trumels. In the Afternoon Went to Work on the Boats Timbers. The Smith Made a Grindstone, out of a Flatt [Flat] Stone he Pick'd up. Building a Tent for the Carpenter to work under out of The Sun.

**Saturday 16.** The Wind E<sup>erly</sup> and some Rain. Carpenter as before. The Smith Finishe'd the Grindstone & is Making an Ax. People Employe'd Carrying Plank for the Timbers. Two of them went on the Cattamaran to try for Fish, but found Too Much Sea, so Come [Came] in Again.

**Sunday 17<sup>th</sup>.** Fresh Gales E<sup>erly</sup> and Fair Weather. This Morning Saw a Large Smoak to the E<sup>ward</sup> on the Main Which Riess Our drooping Spirits a little, being in hopes it is Occasions'd from Burning their Land. Therefore Are in Greater hopes of Success, when our Boat Goes Over, which will be the First Calm Wea<sup>r</sup>, After She is Finishe'd. The Carpenter Intends going about her to Morrow. This Day as we dont Work on the Boat All hands is amongst [are Among] the Rocks a Fishing for [endeavouring to catch] Small Fish About the bigness of a Spratt [Sprat]. We had the good Fortune to Catch a Few of, and this Week past has Help'd us Greatly.

**Monday Aug<sup>t</sup> 18<sup>th</sup>.** Light Variable Breezes, and Fair Wea<sup>r</sup>. The Carpenter Employed, Mending the Little Boat, the Smith Making an Adze. Two Men went out on the Cattamaran & to our great Joy Brought in Fish Enough for all Hands. The Next (*sic*) Clearing a Tow line for a Cable. The Smoak Continues Still to the Eastward, therefore Am Confirm'd it is Burning the Land.

**Tuesday 19<sup>th</sup>.** The first part Fresh Gales Northerly the Middle Moderate, the Latter fresh Gales at S W ; about 11 o Clock two men went out on the Cattamaran and returned in About 2 Hours and Caught 14 fine fish Which we was [were] Glad to See, being in Hopes We Shall not Starve As Our living was Very Bad Before ; Wou'd not Miss Any Oppertunity to Catch Fish



and Being Encouraged by our good Success, M<sup>r</sup> Collet and another [M<sup>r</sup> Yates]<sup>28</sup> went out on the Cattamaran. Towards 4 o Clock, the Wind Freshned to the W<sup>t</sup>ward but they being to the Leeward of the Island and Finding the Water Continne Smooth did not Apprehend There Wou<sup>d</sup> be any Danger of Getting in, therefore Continued Fishing till they Thought they had Caught Enough for 2 days, in Case the Weather Should be bad And Not Able to go out [again]. They then Cut away the Stone which Rid them, because They would be better Able to put in without it, thinking the fish would make the Cattamaran Swim to deep. As it Blows [blew] fresh I was Apprehensive they Could Not get in, therefore Kept a Good look out when they Should Attempt it, Which I had not long done, before I perceiv<sup>d</sup> they loos<sup>d</sup> [lost] Ground, which Made me Very Uneasy. I Soon Alarm'd all the people, and the Only thing I Could think of to Save them from driving to Sea, and perishing, was, to perswade two of the People to Venture Out to them, on the Other Cattamaran, with Another Cable & Killock, Taking the Same for themselvs, and try to ride till it grew Moderate; And tho The danger was so great, that theire [there] was Very little probability of their Returning, two of them Attempted to go out, but was [were twice] Washed off Ropes Killocks And all. By this time, the Others were Drove a Great way. When I Found it was in Vain to try the Cattamaran any More, I got all the Cordage We had Saved, in hopes a Hogshead would Carry the End to them, but by the Time it was got Ready I Saw plainly it would be Needless to Attempt it, for they Were Almost out of Sight. So had quite given them Over, when [till] One of the men Came And told me, the Carpenter thought he Could make the Boat Swim, with One Man to Bail, [first] Stopping the Holes in her Bottom with Lead. And [At last] Three of the people Went out & Brought them in Safe, tho' with much difficulty, for them two [Messieurs Collet & Yates] Getting into the Boat from the Cattamaran, She Swam so deep & Leek'd so fast, it was As much as they Could do to keep her Above Water. [During the Absence of the Boat we]<sup>29</sup> talk'd of Nothing but going to Morrow [after them] if it prov<sup>d</sup> Moderate Wear.

**Wednesday Aug<sup>t</sup> 20<sup>th</sup>.** The Wind Northerly, and Cloudy Weather. The Carpenter Employ<sup>d</sup> On the Small Boat. People Getting up Plank & Timber. We Should have Snapp<sup>d</sup> Very Short to day, if Providence had not directed 3 or 4 of the Old Inhabitants of the Island to us, Which we took Sleeping and Made Broth of them for Supper. Saw a Smoak on the Main Opposite us.

**Thursday 21<sup>st</sup>.** Hard Gales W<sup>e</sup>rly & heavy Squalls. Carpenter Finished the Small Boat. People Cleaning & Coiling Some Cordage. This day had Nothing for Dinner but a few greens therefore Kill<sup>d</sup> a Hogg in Order to have a good Supper.

**Friday 22<sup>d</sup>.** The First part Light Airs W<sup>e</sup>rly the Latter a Fresh Breeze, Southerly. At Day Light 3 Men Attempted to go out in the Boat a Fishing, but the great Surf on The Barr [Bar] Obliged them to put Back again. About 10 o Clock 2 Men Venture'd thro' it & Got to the Fishing Ground and Caught 30 Fish, but in Coming in, a Sea Broke into the Boat and Fill<sup>d</sup> her So that the men as well as the Fish were Sett [set] A Swimming and with Much Difficulty got Safe on Shore on the Other Island About  $\frac{1}{2}$  a Mile from the One we Are one [upon]. A Shoal place from this to that Occasions the Barr [Bar]. At the first [On our first] Discovering this Accident, I was in pain for The Men, thinking they would not be Able to gett [get] on Shore, but Soon was Agreeably Decein<sup>d</sup>, by Seeing them Crawling upon the Rocks. Our Next Care Was to Save the Boat, was in a Great panick about [which we were in great Pain for], but were Soon Relieved from that, by Sending the Large Cattamaran to Tow her in;<sup>30</sup> and After [Afterwards] Fetched the men From the Island.

<sup>28</sup> "M<sup>r</sup> Yates" written over "another."

<sup>29</sup> "During -- we" written over words erased.

<sup>30</sup> A line erased here.



**Saturday 23<sup>d</sup>.** The first part Light Breezes Westerly, latter fresh Gales Easterly. At Day light 4 Men went on the great Cattamaran, and at Noon Brought in 30 Fish. Lickwise Sent the Small Cattamaran Over to the Other Island to See what Casks they Were the people Inform'd us they Saw Yesterday; and to Our Great joy one of them prou'd to be a Cask of pork, the Other [of] Brandy, the latter Quite Whole, the other Stove, by Which the Pork am [was] damag'd so much that I am [was] Afraid Smoaking will [wou'd] Scarce preserve it. Smith Employ'd Making Fishing Hooks and Mending a Saucepan to Boil Salt Water [in order] to Make Salt.

**Sunday Aug<sup>t</sup> 24<sup>th</sup>.** Fresh Gales W<sup>terly</sup> and fair Weat. This day it was Agreed that 5 Men Should go Over to the Main the First Oppertunity; 3 on the Cattamaran & 2 in the Small Boat. It Blows [blew] too hard to go a Fishing.

(To be continued.)

## WAR SONGS OF THE MAPPILAS OF MALABAR.

BY F. FAWCETT.

WHEN introducing A Popular Mopla (Māppila) Song (*ante*, Vol. XXVIII. p. 64), I wrote :— "The Māppilas of Malabar, ardent and fanatical Muhammadans as they are, are much devoted to songs, mostly religious, about the Prophet's battles and also their own for the most part . . . . The songs are written in the Arabic character, and their language is a curious polyglot patois of Malayalam, the local Vernacular, Tamil, Telugu, Hindustani, Arabic, and of many another tongue, a word of which is here and there brought in for some special use." The song which was then given in translation, "The Story of Hasanul-Jamāl and Badaru'l-Munir," is of love and wonderful adventure in the fashion of a story in *The Arabian Nights*.

I will now consider those songs of the Māppilas which relate to war and stir up fanatic fervour. In quantity they form probably about nine-tenths of their literature — such as it is. But before doing this something must be said of the Māppilas themselves. They were described by the present writer in the October (1897) number of *The Imperial and Asiatic Quarterly Review* as "men who exhibit a courage which is absolutely dauntless, and a contempt for death which is rarely paralleled and certainly unsurpassed in any other part of the world by any race." This was not long after they had given proof of these qualities, when 92 of them met their death near Manjēri, the chief town of the Ernād talūkā of Malabar. And yet so little was the effect of this terrible punishment on their fanatic fervour that a gang of seven started out the next day, having devoted themselves to death. A strange people truly!

**The Manjēri<sup>1</sup> Temple**, a shrine of the Hindu Bhāgavatī, situated on the summit of a small hill just outside the village of Mānjēri, which lies, roughly, between Ootacamund, the summer capital of Southern India, and the sea to the west, has been the scene of more than one little battle. In 1784 this temple and the palace of the Karunamalpād, its owner, were besieged by a large body of Māppilas, and after three days' fighting utterly destroyed. The rebel Māppilas were attacked by some of Tippu Sultān's troops, a thousand strong, and were victorious, slaying Tippu's commander. The temple was restored in April, 1849, and in August of the same year during the Muhammadan Ramazān, a body of 30 Māppilas desecrated it, and routed two companies of sepoy, killing 4 Privates and a European Officer, Lieut. Wyse. Their number soon rose to 64, and a few days afterwards they were destroyed fighting gallantly, by European troops, who lost 2 Privates killed and 2 Officers and 6 Privates wounded.

The temporary defeat of our well-armed troops was effected by the Māppilas with war knives, in shape between a bill-hook and a Gurkhā kukri. They tie them to the hand and wrist, sometimes one to each hand, while madly rushing at their foes. Of this kind of warfare there has been much in Malabar.

<sup>1</sup> This and much of what follows is taken from the article just mentioned.



Even when, in 1894, the British troops were armed with the Lee-Metford rifle and the Police with Sniders, some of the fanatics reached the bayonets ere meeting what they sought: death and entrance into paradise. To the Western mind this devotion to death, which combines tender longing with fiendish fury is altogether incomprehensible. How is it that the severest of all punishments has no effect in preventing one outburst succeeding another, in none of which a Māppila has ever been taken unwounded? Men, old and feeble, as well as the young and lusty, come on unflinchingly until the bullet or the bayonet ends their existence. The lad, in his father's house quiet and inoffensive until a few hours before he faces the British troops, will rush on as if to the manner born; will throw himself, on the bayonet, if he can, and, covered with wounds, will try to strike at a soldier. Others will leave the plough or sickle, or their cattle, in order to join a passing gang of *shahīds*, or intending martyrs of the faith. There may have been instances of half-heartedness before a battle, but in the struggle of death no case of flinching or being taken unwounded has ever been known. The man who goes out to die and does not die, even though he seeks death with all the heroism of which a man is capable is never forgiven, and his life would not be safe for a moment among his own people. Father, mother, brothers, sisters and wife would not as much as listen to me when telling how one dear to them a few days before, was lying in Hospital with bullets through his body. "Why did this would-be-*shahīd* not die?" is all the notice that a family gives in such a case: or else, "He is gone; he is nothing to us." Just after the outbreak in 1894 when 32 fanatics were shot, of whom but 2 survived — one a convert shot through the spleen, and a boy of 15 wounded in the leg — the mother of one of the survivors was heard to say indignantly: "If I were a man, I would not come back wounded!"

This longing for death, which is so opposed to Western feelings, no matter what the belief in a future existence may be, was evinced with greater strength than ever during the last outbreak; for it was plain that nearly one half of the dead were self-slain, or had been slain by their comrades. They were wounded perhaps by military or Police rifle bullets, but not unto death; determined, however, not to be taken wounded, they asked their comrades to kill them. One survivor, whose left humerus was smashed and who had also a few flesh wounds, was lying on his back. One of his fellows went over to finish him. The keen knife was already on his throat and had severed the skin, when the would-be slayer was shot dead by our men. The killing of Māppila by Māppila is, however, a new departure, and somewhat at variance with their ideas.

The tract inhabited by the Māppilas, who are fanatically inclined (all are not so, but those of a certain tract only), was disarmed some 15 years ago, but the operation has not in the least scotched the spirit of "*shahīdism*." In accordance with it there must be no chance of capture. The position taken up should be chosen most carefully, as it must not be one in which the fighters can be caught like rats in a trap. But of late there here has been, however, some change in tactics, and in the last few outbreaks guns have been used for defence of the position taken up. To secure as many as possible of these the country round is scoured by the gang. The war knife is prohibited by law, but a very efficient substitute, and almost identical in shape, is the common wood-chopper of the locality; these and swords are now used.

The band which takes the initiative is composed of men who have, through continuous religious devotions, assumed an attitude of mind in which the ordinary functions of the brain are stayed by religious ecstasy. The orthodox procedure then is to dispose of all their worldly possessions; divorce their wives, solemnly give up body and soul to God, dress in a long white coat and white cap, and finally to go out calmly in order to seek death whilst fighting. The above directions are not always and strictly followed, for many of the *shahīds* possess nothing but their wives, and these are not divorced for fear of their intentions to fight and die becoming known. With the exception of the unfortunate murder of Mr. Conolly, District Magistrate of Malabar in 1855, the first overt act has been invariably the murder of some landlord or land agent, or of an apostate. Confused ideas as to Māppila outbreaks being purely agrarian, or purely fanatical, have thereby arisen. Agrarian they are, fanatical too, to a considerable extent, but fixing on any social phenomenon as the product of any single cause is and must be an error.



Before discussing further this portion of the subject let us consider how Islam was brought to Malabar — events which are often referred to in their songs. Ceremonies, too, perpetuate them. For example, the Mahārāja of Travancore takes possession of the throne only "until his uncle returns from Mecca." The word "Māppila" is said to be a contraction of Mahā (great) and 'Pillai' ('child,' an honorary title; as amongst Nayars in Travancore), and it was probably a title of honor conferred on the early Muhammadan immigrants and possibly on the still earlier Christian immigrants . . . . The Muhammadans are usually called Jonaka or Chānaka Māppilas to distinguish them from the Christian Māppilas, who are also called Nasarāni<sup>2</sup> Māppilas. Jonaka . . . . is believed to stand for Yavanaka — Ionian — Greek." Be that as it may, Māppilas of the tract subject to fanatic outbreak are Muhammadans to a man. It is only in Cochin and Travancore that certain Christians are termed Māppilas.

The following account of the conversion to Islam is taken from Logan's *Manual of the Malabar District* : —

"All Malayālī accounts are substantially in accord as to the following facts : — The last king or emperor of Malabar was one Chēramān Perumā who reigned at Kōḍungallūr (Cranganore, the Mouziris of the Greeks, the Muyiri-Kodu of the Cochin Jews). He dreamed that the full moon appeared on the night of the new moon at Mecca in Arabia, and that when at the meridian, she split into two,<sup>3</sup> one half remaining and the other half descending to the foot of a hill called Abi Kubais, when the two halves joined and set. Sometime afterwards a party of Muhammadan pilgrims on their way to the foot-print shrine at Adam's Peak in Ceylon chanced to visit the Perumā's capital, and were admitted to an audience and treated most hospitably. On being asked if there was any news in their country, one, by name Sheikh Sekke-ud-din, it is said, related to Perumā the apocryphal story of Muhammad having, by the miracle about which the Perumā had dreamt, converted a number of unbelievers."

And so it came about that the Perumā wished to unite himself to them. A vessel was made ready and the Perumā landed eventually at Shahr on the Arabian Coast.

"It is uncertain whether it was here (Shahr) that the Perumā came for the first time into contact with persons who were to be the prisoners of Islam in Malabar, or whether they or some of them had been of the party of pilgrims with whom he originally set out from Kōḍungallūr. But, however this may be, the names of the persons have been handed down by tradition as (1) Malik-ibn-Dīnār, (2) Habib-ibn-Malik, (3) Sherf-ibn-Malik, (4) Malik-ibn-Habib and his wife Kumarieth, with their ten sons and five daughters. The Perumā apparently changed his name to that which is said to appear on his tomb, namely, 'Abd-u'r-Rahmān Samiri.'<sup>4</sup>

After some time he wished to return to Malabar to spread the new religion and build places of worship, but while the ship was being built he fell ill, and, feeling death at hand, implored his companions to do that which he had intended to do himself, and gave them letters to the various chiefs of Malabar. "And after this he surrendered his soul to the unbounded mercy of God."<sup>5</sup>

"It has come to notice from the information of an Arab resident near the spot, that the tomb of the Perumā still exists at Zaphār on the Arabian Coast, at some distance from the place (Shahr) where he is reported to have landed. The facts have still to be authoritatively verified, but it is stated that on his tomb the inscription runs : 'Arrived at Zaphār A. H. 212. Died there A. H. 216.' These dates correspond with the years 827-832 A. D." The Malabar Kōllam Era dates from the departure of Perumā to Arabia in 825 A. D. The current year 1901 A. D. is 1071 M. E. It is likely he spent two years at Shahr before proceeding to Zaphār.

<sup>2</sup> Nasarāni, i. e., a Nazarene.

<sup>3</sup> Quran, chap. 54.

<sup>4</sup> It will be remembered that the Portuguese grandees who visited Vijayanagar early in the sixteenth century, coming from the west coast, spoke of this potentate as the Samuri. Modern usage, through Portuguese, makes the word Zamorin.

<sup>5</sup> Rowlandson's *Thāhāfat-ul-Mujāhidīn*, p. 53, quoted in Logan's *Manual of the Malabar District*.



The Muhammadan Faith has since greatly spread, and at the Census of 1891 the Muhammadans in Malabar, almost all of whom are Mappilas, numbered 769, 857 or over 29 per cent. of the population.\* And the population increases rapidly.

The mosques of the Mappilas are quite unlike those of any other Muhammadans. Here one sees no minarets. The temple architecture of Malabar was noticed by Ferguson to be that of Nepal; nothing like it exists between the two places. And the Mappila mosque is much in the style of the Hindu temple, even to adoption of the turret-like edifice which, among Hindus, is here peculiar to the temples of Siva. The general use nowadays of German Mission-made tiles is bringing about, alas! a metamorphosis in the architecture of Hindu temples and Mappila mosques, the picturesqueness disappearing altogether, and in a few years it may be difficult to find one of the old style. The mosque, though it may be little better than a hovel, is, however, always as grand as the community can make it, and once built it can never be removed, for the site is sacred ever afterwards. Every Mappila would shed his blood rather than suffer any indignity to a mosque. It would be the case of the Malapuram *shahids* all over again: for, once religious enthusiasm is aroused, death has no terrors, but only alluring smiles.

The Mappilas are Sunnis, and claim to have had their religion from the fountain head. The chief priest in Malabar, the Valiya Tungal of Ponani, styles himself Valiya Zarathingal? Sayid 'Ali bin Abdu'r-Rahman Vali Tungal Ponani, is a pure Arab by blood, claims direct descent from the Prophet. Curiously enough he inherits his sacred office in the female line — his nephew and not his son is the successor — after the custom of Malabar, while his family property passes according to Muhammadan law. Other Mappila priestly offices, even that of the Mahādūm, the chief representative of learning, who confers religious titles and degrees, are inherited in the same manner; while, as all over South Malabar (among Mappilas) property devolves in the usual way, sons, daughters, and widows receiving certain shares: sons an equal share; a widow with sons, an eighth of the whole; a widow without sons, a sixth of the whole; daughters, half a son's share.

The Nair tarwad, in which the devolution of property is through the female line, is the most stable of all arrangements for the preservation of the family and the family property. The Mappilas of South Malabar have followed this custom as regards certain priestly offices, but the Mappilas of North Malabar follow it in respect of property. They have changed their creed, but not their custom of inheritance. In the North they are well off, as every circumstance of the tarwad tends towards aggrandizement. In the South they are very poor, for they are extremely prolific,<sup>3</sup> and they divide up their property in such a way that prosperity is impossible. Their prolificness and mode of inheritance are enough to destroy the most capable people in the world, situated as the Mappilas are.

Not only are they prolific, but their numbers are increased largely every year by fresh adherents from the Hindus, as well as from the inferior races. In the decade preceding 1891 the Hindus increased by less than 8 per cent., while the Muhammadans increased over 15 per cent. No wonder the man of inferior caste is often induced towards the latter. The position of even the slave-like Cheruman is changed at once when he enters Islam; instead of his very presence carrying pollution to people within 100 yards of him, he can walk where he will and hold his head as high as the best, and what is more, every Mappila will stick to him through thick and thin.

A people prolific and overcrowding, and at the same time wretchedly poor, as are the Mappilas of East Malabar, are most unfortunate subjects for fanaticism; and more especially so when the customary land tenures are, as it were, arranged specially for the purpose of making people discontented. Of this fanaticism I will now say something, and endeavour to account for its existence. In many places people are poor and prolific, but not fanatic. Why then are the Mappilas so?

\* This includes the Laccadive Islands.

? Valcaza-arathengal = belonging to the great shrine.

<sup>3</sup> Much more so than Hindus. Many a man has 10 and 12 out of one wife; and I know of one, having 3 wives, who is blessed with 33 children.



When a civilized community adopts Islam as a creed, there is no great change wrought in the ordinary course of life. We were told at the Congress of Orientalists in London of 1891, that Muhammad's Paradise was no more materialistic than that of the Christians as described in Revelations; it was purely spiritual, but clothed in language, the everyday interpretation of which, and not the poetic inference, was accepted. Montaigne had the same idea. Now, whether the civilized entering Islam adopt the exalted interpretation which is said to have been Muhammad's meaning, or whether, as is usual, religion has very little hold on life among civilized peoples in the towns, the fact remains that they do not feel bound to go out, become *shahids*, and kill those whose persuasion is not theirs.

In contrast to this prosaic and sensible attitude of the civilized followers of Islam, if the shrine at Mambram or the Malapuram Mosque were to be destroyed by order of the Government, there is hardly a Mappila in Malabar, who would not give his blood to avenge the disgrace to "his pearl-like faith." There would be much bloodshed. The most insignificant shrine, a wayside mosque, even though no better or larger in structure than a hen-house, cannot be moved without much blood being shed. Why is this? When a Hindu temple is desecrated and made abominable by a handful of Mappilas, no one raises a hand to avenge the insult to the religion. Nor will those of that creed stand up to save their temple. The gods or goddesses, Siva and Bhagavati, must look after themselves in these ebullitions of excitement. If their shrine is made a place for filth, or even for the slaughter of the sacred cow, the people look on with equanimity. All that is looked for is ceremonies which will make it just as sanctified as ever it was, and the disgrace is swallowed. Why is this? The people are much the same in blood as their Muhammadan fellow-countrymen.

If the difference is not to be found in the blood it is to be found in the creed. During the Soudan War there was unmistakable evidence of the extraordinary influence which Islam has on the lower and uncivilized races. What made the immortal "Fuzzy Wuzzy" of Kipling's ballad such a "first rate fighting man?" Really nothing but the effect of Islam on his receptive nature. More recent instances of this there have been in China. It is a creed which, as if by magic, turns the submissive into heroes. We have evidence of this here. The Cherumans and Kanakans, inferior races in Malabar, are submissive to the last degree; in their lives the most harmless of beings, exemplifying many of the virtues which are supposed to be exclusively Christian, and always in peace. But let one of these adopt Islam and he is changed altogether. The psychic effect is marvellous. A youth shot down in the outbreak of 1894, who recovered, was a convert of only a few months. Two of those shot in 1896 were Cherumans and converts: one had become a Mappila only 15 hours before he was shot! The head and front of the last outbreak was a converted Cheruman. So it is with Tiyans and others who join the Mappila's faith, but the effect on those of the lowest races is the strongest. The localities where the element of danger is greatest are where the Mappilas belong in blood to the lowest races. The most dangerous criminals, the worst dacoits, are also to be found amongst this mixture. In a place called Nadapuram, in North Malabar, the whole community of Nairs was turned wholesale into Mappilas during the troublous time of Tipu Sultan, but no more peaceable people dwell in the province. The effect on the lower races and on the close mixture with them is altogether different.<sup>9</sup>

Now, the hold which Islam has fixed on this mixture of lower races is very strong indeed. The foreign or Arab blood in Eastern Malabar is very slight if at all existent. Following M. Broca's method of indicating the racial position of mongrels or *mestizos*, if there has been foreign blood it has been eliminated long ago in the locality where fanaticism is alive. True, there are individuals of Arab blood, but, as a rule, they are not among the dangerous ones. To the Arab blood has been imputed the extraordinary fanatic character of the religion of the Mappilas, who are

<sup>9</sup> The Cheruman, it may be said, is barely 5 ft. 2 in. in height (the average for the North Malabar Tayan being almost exactly 5 ft. 5 in., while the Nair is taller), much darker in colour, his nose is broader, and his cranial capacity is much smaller: his head length is 18.2 in. and the width 13.6. Compare this with the Aryan Nambudri, 19.2 and 14.6!



quite unique among the Muhammadans of Southern India. But this is an error. There are within the same province a class of their co-religionists to called Rowthans (Rāvuthans), descendants, it is said, of Tippu's cavalry, who, themselves converts — but not from the inferior races, — settled near Pāghāt; but these Rowthans are as cowardly as the Ernād Māppilas are courageous; and if, the fanatic element came from the Arab, we should find it strongest amongst those who are of pure or almost pure Arab blood living on the West Coast, but there we see no signs whatever of it. Not only the pure Arab Māppilas, but the class calling themselves Bōtkals (Arab traders hailing from the Persian Gulf) are as peaceful as any class in any class in Malabar, and are as little likely to go out and become *shahīds* as their so-called brethren in the faith living in England.

It seems to be incontestable, whether in Africa, or in China, or in Malabar, that the fanatical feelings which make people fight quite regardless of life are to be accounted for in the extraordinary effect which Islām has on untutored races. The Māppila of Ernād is certainly exceedingly impressionable and emotional. He holds the truths and beliefs of his faith, as interpreted subjectively, with the very strongest tenacity. The Salvation Army-man, who invites his brethren to embark for the shores of "kingdom come," chiding those who prefer to hesitate, has not the smallest intention of embarking himself until he is compelled to do so. He is not so strongly affected by the reality of what he sings about as to possess the slightest inclination to be off at once to the meeting by the river, when the path is death. The reality of the unseen, or that which lies in animism, is much stronger in the lower races than it is in the higher, as any investigator may find out for himself. To the Māppila, the pleasures of heaven which await those who die fighting are not a far off and indistinct vision, or, as with many people, what they think they believe; it is, not this, but something which impresses his whole being; it is altogether real; so real that he can, with that kind of confidence which makes his courage sublime, meet death with delight.

The Māppila is indeed essentially religious, although his religion may be sometimes in the style of the *ghāfī*. With the shows of the Muharram he has no sympathy, and will have none of them. The Ramazān fast he keeps faithfully, and prayer is never far from him. It is supposed that his devotion to religious teaching is a drag on his advancement in secular education — that so long as he retains it, he will remain behind in the general struggle for advancement in a country ordinarily well ordered and peaceful; but with this I do not at all agree. It is much to his credit that he will have that which he feels with every fibre of his body to be the Word of God before everything else, and will not submit to have anything substituted for it. He is only too glad to have proper secular teaching after a certain portion of the day has been devoted to the *Qorān*.

The Māppila College at Ponāni disseminates darkness where it should give light. The Musaliars, who have qualified to "read at the lamp," and the Tangals are grossly ignorant. And as for the Mullas, who teach the sacred book to the children, I have never yet met one who had the remotest idea of the meaning of a single word of the *Qorān*. Thus the children are taught to read, but not to understand; what they read, incoherent Arabic, is gibberish to them; what they learn is quite another thing. Some time ago the *Qorān* was transcribed into Malayalam, retaining the Arabic character; it being then supposed that people would like to understand what they read. This transcription is used on the W. Coast, but not where fanaticism smoulders; there they will not use it, and the book finds no sale, for the effluence of the spirit of the *Qorān* is felt through mere reading or hearing it in the original, even though not a word is comprehended, to be better a thousand times than any transcription into the vernacular. And, of course, the *musaliars* of the mosques are against it, for if the people could read and expound for themselves, their influence and pecuniary gains would disappear.<sup>10</sup>

<sup>10</sup> The marked difference between a Māppila and a Hindu is observable in other ways than those where fanatic fervour comes in view. All the kinds of work requiring pluck, energy and sustained effort are done by Māppilas. Māppilas have done the heaviest work and earned the reputation of being the best workmen, steady, tractable, and never troublesome while well treated, in the building of the big iron bridges which the Madras Railway Company have thrown over the big rivers of the Madras Presidency; and in the gold mines of South India the best miners are said to be Māppilas. They work as Hindus never do.



There survive impressions of the displaced religions of the lower races, whose blood is in the Mappila. There is much vowing in the way that Hindus vow, and prayer is offered to deceased and semi-deified persons, notable priests, *tangals* and *shahids*. The most important oath by which a Mappila can swear is "By the feet of the Mambram Tungal," and many vows are made at the shrine of this great priest, who came from Arabia to spread the faith in Malabar, and died there. On the West Coast, where the Arab blood and influence is strongest, the religion is, so to speak, purely spiritual; in the interior, where there is little or no Arab blood, it is more animistic: the religion is more strongly infused with the once universal ancestral worship and its concomitant phases. For example, on the Coast the favourite "Mauludh" ceremony is entirely spiritual in its essence — as an Arab Mappila priest describes it; but in the interior, where we find fanaticism, it is to obtain some favour from a deceased person who is invoked.

With this introduction we may examine their war songs, and we will begin appropriately with one which illustrates their ideas as to how the dead may aid the living. It is entitled "**Shahidu Ma's Pattu**" — a Garland of Songs about the Shahids, the heroes of defence of the Malapuram<sup>11</sup> Mosque being indicated. The poet says his song is "A Hymn of Praise for the benefit of all mankind . . . . Its name is **Kaliyath Shifa** . . . . As a necklace for kings have I composed it. Those who wear this necklace here will be rewarded by God hereafter with a necklace of gold. I am always praying to God to bless those who repeat this song." He asks God to forgive orthographical errors for the sake of the Malapuram *shahids*, and then, naming every ill and misfortune possible to man, asks that for the sake of the same intercessors he may come to no harm. He goes the length of asking that he may be "One of the great men who attend to the wants and defects of the house of God," and that he too may die a *shuhid*! The song is also intended to be repeated amidst vows in times of sickness. Although any want may be supplied, any disease cured, wells filled, and even cholera driven away simply by invoking the Malapuram *shahids*, it must not be supposed that these mighty beings are ever confused with God. "There is no God but God;" nevertheless there is nothing which these cannot do for man, for by means of their glorious death they have been invested with much power. Having given body and soul to God while in this world; they have earned the privilege of obtaining assent from God whenever they ask Him for anything on behalf of those on earth.

The poet's modest apology for his errors is not uncommon in the Mappilas' songs, and it will not be out of place to mention here for the sake of better appreciation of these that the Mappilas form no class with a fine literature of their own, but that they are the most backward in the Madras Presidency in the matter of education. The poets are illiterate men in the sense that they could not even pass a Lower Primary examination in the Government Schools; and they have procured the facts and legends, which they have woven so strangely into their songs, from tradition and, partly no doubt, from the regular stream of communication with Arabia which is maintained until the present day.

### The War Songs.

#### No. I.

#### The Song of the Malapuram Shahids.<sup>11</sup>

"In the name of God I begin this song. I pray to Muhammad the Prophet who is the cause of all created things. I pray also to his relatives and to the Ashabi army. I pray to all Mussalmans."

The poet goes on to say that "Abu Betir Siddik was the first true shahid. Even the angels of God hold him in high respect. He was a true man and he never exposed his person to anyone until his death. May God always bless him."

<sup>11</sup> Malapuram lies 18 miles north of Tivër on the Madras Railway and about 31 miles east of Calicut.



Omar Bin Katab is the next. He "held the Faith dearer than all his wealth and all his children. The dust in his hand was transformed to musk by the Most High, and the odour of that musk always pervaded his body."<sup>12</sup>

"Usman Bin Alvan is the third great shahid. He had the Prophet's permission to admit anyone he pleased to heaven. He visits every place like the lightning of heaven. He is the most celebrated man in heaven or earth; and he married two of the Prophet's daughters."

Isman Ali is the fourth. "He is described as a tiger in Bait-ul-Issa. The angels of death fear him. He was the son of Abdulla's brother, the most beloved of the Prophet and the husband of Fatima the Prophet's daughter, dearer to him than eyesight." A tremendous fighter! "His name is written 'Tiger' on the cot in Aesh" . . . . "He is the gate of the hall of wisdom. May God always bless him."

The story of the Perumāl, the last king among kinglets of Malabar, and his voyage to Arabia where he met the Prophet are then told. Then we come to the destruction of the Malapuram Mosque, when 44 Māppilas, the bravest of the brave, fought to death: parents, wives, children, tried to dissuade them, but to no purpose. The wives were told they would by their husbands' death in glory obtain salvation. But what about the present? "Do you not see the sky sustained without a pillar . . . the frog in the deep recess of the rock, the chicken in the egg, and the child nourished in the womb? Is it reasonable that you will be helpless? Does a man in the grave think of his parents? When we are weighed in the balance who but God will help us? Can one's parents? If men permit sacrilege to their mosque all pains of hell await them: it is only by dying for the glory of God they can obtain heavenly bliss; and then they can bless and aid their families.

"Ho! ye brethren! The shahids are most mighty ghosts and bhutas fear them. The wicked Eblis is their enemy. Those who sing their praise obtain salvation from God. Those who slight them will suffer untold misery" . . . . "Nothing is more pleasing to God than sacrificing one's body and soul in defence of God, and none are more honoured than these shahids" . . . . "They did not become shahids under compulsion but of their own faith and conviction; therefore God gave them a special place in heaven and a crown in Taj-il-Okar. Their bodies are always fragrant. God takes special care of them."

## NO. II.

### The Song of Alungal Kandi.

Another of the songs was written by the popular Māppila poet Alungal Kandi Mōyankutti Vaidiār, grandson of a convert from Hinduism, of the stock of the old Vēlan or Vaidiār, a hereditary Hindu physician. The poem begins with extolling Muhammad, and tells how the king of Damascus was convinced of the truth of his mission when the Prophet made the moon rise at the wrong time, ascend the zenith, divide, and each half pass through the sleeves of his coat. Then follows a version of the tale of Joseph and Potiphar's wife, and how the innocent minister ascended to heaven telling the king who suspected him that he would be pardoned if he accepted "the new *Vēda*!" which a prophet was then bringing to men from over the sea.

Regardless of chronology, the poet tells how Islam was brought to Kērala<sup>13</sup> and how eventually a grand mosque was built at Malapuram.<sup>14</sup> Māppilas will not allow even an atom of the *caajan* roof of the mosque to be burnt. They will fight to death for it, and they are glad of the opportunity. The poem continues:—

<sup>12</sup> Extracts only are given of this song. I cannot give here more than a meagre outline of it, and the special characteristics of the Arab shahids can be only alluded to in the briefest manner.

<sup>13</sup> The old name for Malabar.

<sup>14</sup> An absurdity is that the Perumāl is compelled to do the *hajj* or pilgrimage while Muhammad was alive. Muhammad was dead 200 years before Islam was brought to Malabar or the Perumāl, the last emperor, went to Arabia.



"The soul in our body is in the hand of God. Can we live for ever in this world? Must we not die once? Everything will die, but God alone will not. Such being the commandment of God we will have no excuse when we are brought before Him after death; so determine earnestly to fight and die. If we die fighting with the wicked men who attempt forcibly to burn this holy mosque, which is the house of God, we shall obtain complete salvation. The occasion to fight and die for the faith is like unto embarking in a vessel which has come to bear the believer to the shores of bliss. Therefore embark! How well for you that such a vessel has come! It will bear you to the broad gates of heaven. Is it not for the arrival of such a vessel that we should pray? . . . . The pleasures of wealth, or family, are not equal to an atom of celestial happiness. Our most venerable Prophet has said that those who die in battle can see the houris who will come to witness the fight. There is nothing in this world to compare with the beauty of the houris. The splendour of the sun, of the moon, and of the lightning is darkness compared with the beauty of their hair which hangs over their shoulders. Their cheeks, eyes, face, eyebrows, forehead, head are incomparably lovely. Their lips are like corals; their teeth like the seeds of the *thalimathalam*; their breasts like cups of gold, the pomegranate, or like beautiful flowers. It is not possible for the mind to conceive the loveliness of their breasts and shoulders . . . . If they wash in the sea the salt becomes like honey, and as fragrant as attar. If they were to come down to earth and smile, the sun, moon and stars would be eclipsed. Mortals would die if they but heard the music of their voice. When they wear red silk garments bordered with green lace of seventy folds, their skin, bones, and muscles can be seen through them. Such is the splendour of their body. If they clap their hands, the clang of their jewels will be heard at a distance of 500 years' journey. They clap their hands and dance and sing as they come like swans to the battle-field. If a human being were to see their beauty, their smile or their dance, he would die (with longing) on the spot. Gently they touch the wounds of those who die in battle. they rub away the blood and cure the pain; they kiss and embrace the martyrs, give them to drink of the sweet water of heaven and gratify their every wish. A horse caparisoned with carpets set with precious stones will be brought, and a voice will say: — 'Let my men mount; let them dance with celestial houris.' Then the celestial coverings will be placed on their heads; they mount the beautiful horses which will dance and leap and take them away to heaven, where they will live in unbounded joy."

"Such is the fate which awaits those who die fighting bravely. At the dissolution of the world they will be sped like lightning over the bridge across hell. In Heaven they will attend the marriage of Muhammad. They will be decorated with bunches of pearls and crowns of gold; they will sit on the trunk of Muhammad's elephant, and enjoy supreme happiness. It is impossible to describe the pleasures which await those who die fighting bravely without flinching. All their sins will be forgiven and God will listen to all their prayers."

Far otherwise is it with the coward. "All his virtuous actions are ignored. He incurs the wrath of God. He will be written down a renegade in the book of God. His prayers are vain. He will die a sinner and be thrown into hell where fresh kinds of torture will be given him. In hell are countless myriads of scorpions, snakes and frightful dragons. It is a pit of everlasting fire." The pleasures of heaven and the pains of hell have been revealed to Muhammad "who in his turn taught his disciples. It is the learned Musaliars who now hold this knowledge."

Let it not be supposed that the above feelings are entirely sensual and erotic. On the contrary the Mappilas' version of Islam has had a strong effect for good on his life and morality.

### NO. III.

#### The Battle of Bedr.

Another song by the same poet is of Muhammad's famous Battle of Bedr, where he routed the Koreish; also a subject of endless interest to Mappilas. They say that as the battle was fought on the 17th Ramazan in the 2nd year of the Hijra, it is a good day on which to die



fighting. Curiously enough, the month of fasting, during which it is enjoined not to fight unless forced to do so, is the very one in which the Māppila, the ultra strict follower of the Prophet according to his lights, chooses to go out to fight and die. The twelfth day of Ramazān is with them a good day on which to start out under devotion to death and it was selected in a last rising.

The poet describes how the Angel Gabriel told the Prophet that bliss awaited those of his followers who died fighting the infidel. The Prophet then tells them how they could gain Paradise and be met by the houris "whose eyes are like the waxing moon, whose cheeks are like the plantain's leaves who are soft as the petals of the young shoe-flower," by way of inspiring them with courage. The imagery is not quite so happy as before, for the necks of the *hūrīs* when they walk "wave to and fro like the neck of a rutting elephant." But their "breast is like a lake wherein are lotus flowers, and they are always 16 years old and very amorous" . . . . "They come like sporting elephants to bear away those who die in battle and strive with each other saying, 'I will take him — I will take him.' The Prophet swore to his army that such happiness would be theirs if they died fighting bravely." Omar was eating dates; when he heard this he cast them away. The Prophet asked why. He replied that he wished to waste no time in eating dates:—"I wish to use my time for fighting;" and so saying he rushed like a lion among a flock of sheep, killed many and died fighting: he met the death he wished for." The father fought against the son, for the bond of the faith is stronger than the bond of blood. The angels of death fought on the side of the Prophet and the Koreish were defeated.<sup>15</sup>

(To be continued.)

## NOTES AND QUERIES.

### SOOSY — COPOSS.

*Ante*, Vol. XXIX. p. 338, I have shown that soosy was Anglo-Indian for a mixed silk and cotton cloth. The following quotations from Holwell's *Interesting Historical Events Relative to Bengal, etc.*, 1765, a veritable mine of wealth for the hunter after *Hobson-Jobsons*, go to show the correctness of the identification beyond doubt. Coposs, cotton (*kapās*), is unnoticed by Yule.

Page 196. — "This district produces raw-silk and coposs [raw-cotton, called, p. 193, "coposs or Bengal Cotton"] sufficient only for manufacturing their soosies, cuttanees and gurras."

Page 200. — "The produce of the country consists of shaal timbers (a wood equal in quality to the best of our oak) dammer lacca's, an inferior sortment of raw-silk and coposs and grain, sufficient only for their own consumption."

Soosies, cuttanees and gurras were therefore all mixed piece-goods, which is valuable information. Yule quotes the second passage for saulwood (*sāl*), but dammer-lacca is especially interesting, unless we ought to place a comma between dammer and lacca, as it goes to show that Bengal dammer (pitch) was made from a resin (*lacca*, lac).

R. C. TEMPLE.

### SOME FORMS OF FERINGEE.

1679. — "Between 3 and 4 of the morning we set out and about 9 with easy travelling came to Yentapollam: in the way we passed over a place which have been formerly inhabited by Portuguese called Feringee Burane." — *Streynsham Master's Memorial*, March 19th.

1883. — "Near the line of the old Madras Road is the spot known as Feringhee or Frangula Dibba, the mound of the foreigners, where there was once a Portuguese Settlement." — Mackenzie, *Kistna District*, p. 266.

R. C. TEMPLE.

### JUFFYE — JUMP OF THE CULTCH.

HERE are two slang expressions for the learned in things Anglo-Indian to exercise their knowledge or ingenuity upon. A common slang expression of contempt among Eurasians towards a native, who apes European manners and dress, is juffye, or jump of the cultch or simply a jumper. The term jumper here is explainable as vernacular English for a man who does anything he has no natural or legal right to do, but the other two terms apparently require a good deal of explanation.

R. C. TEMPLE.

<sup>15</sup> The next song is given in full. Here as elsewhere the translation is necessarily somewhat free. The songs were first of all put into Malayalam and then into English. Though nearly every Māppila understands them more or less, few among them are capable of rendering them in the vernacular.



## NOTES ON INDIAN HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHY.

BY J. F. FLEET, I.C.S. (RETD.), PH.D., C.I.E.

The places mentioned in the *Uṇḍikavāṭikā* grant.

THIS record has been edited by Pandit Bhagwanlal Indraji in the *Jour. Bo. Br. R. As. Soc.* Vol. XVI. p. 68 ff. I am quoting it, however, from ink-impressions made by myself.

The record introduces first a certain *Mānāṅka*, whom it describes as "an ornament of the *Rāṣṭrakūṭas* whose fame was adorned by a number of many good qualities." His son was *Dēvarāja*. *Dēvarāja*, it says, had three sons; of whom, however, it mentions only one by name, — *Bhaviṣhya*. *Bhaviṣhya*'s son was *Abhimanyu*. And the record recites that, — *tēna Mānapuram-adhyāsanēn-ālaṅkurvatā mātāpitrōḥ-puṇya-nimitt-ābhivṛddhayē<sup>1</sup> pēṭha-Paṅgarakṭya-Dakṣiṇa-Sivasya Uṇḍikavāṭikā<sup>2</sup>-nāma-grāmakō Jaṭābhāra-pravrajitasya udaka-pūrvvakō dattah . . . . . Harivatsa-kōṭṭa-nigraha(? hi)<sup>3</sup>-Jayasiṅgha-samakṣaḥ.*

The Pandit rendered this passage thus:—"By him, adorning *Mānapura* by his residence (therein), there is given, with libations of water, in order to increase the religious merit of his parents, the village named *Uṇḍikavāṭikā*,<sup>4</sup> to the recluse *Jaṭābhāra*, (on behalf) of (the god) *Dakṣiṇa-Siva* of *Pethapaṅgaraka*. . . . . (This grant has been made) in the presence of *Jayasiṅgha*, the chastiser of the *Kōṭṭa Harivatsa*."

To this, however, there are objections. In the first place, in order to support such a rendering, there is the obligation of supplying some such word as *artham* or *arthē*, "on behalf," to govern the genitive ending with *Dakṣiṇa-Sivasya*. And secondly, there is no evidence of the existence of a word *kōṭṭa* as the name of any person, family, or tribe.<sup>5</sup> And, on this latter point, the following remarks may as well be made; because the matter is so thoroughly typical of the way in which there have been evolved, in connection with the ancient history of India, so many curious mistakes, some of which are recognised only when the time comes for verifying the assertions in which they are presented, and can be eliminated only by a full examination of the supposed authorities for those assertions. The Pandit gave<sup>6</sup> a certain reference in connection with his rendering of the record with which we are dealing, and in support of a remark, partly based on his estimate of the period to which it should be referred, that "this shows that there were *Kōṭṭa* chiefs at least as late "as about the fifth century A.D." And, turning to the place referred to by him, we find that he had already formed the belief, — from a Gupta record which, according to his opinion at that time, was to be referred to the end of the second century A.D., and which we shall notice again further on, — that *Kōṭṭa* did exist as a tribal name, and that a *Kōṭṭa* king was reigning in Upper India about A.D. 190; also, that he considered that he had obtained Prākṛit forms of the name *Kōṭṭa* in a word which he read as *Koḍa* or *Kōḍa* in an early inscription at *Sopārā* in the *Thāṇa* district, Bombay, and in a word *Kāḍa* which he found on an early coin obtained by him at *Sahāranpur* in the Meerut division, North-West Provinces;<sup>7</sup> and also that, on these grounds, he was of opinion

<sup>1</sup> This seems to be a mistake for *puṇy-ābhivṛddhi-nimittam* or *puṇy-ābhivṛddhi-nimittāya*.

<sup>2</sup> The Pandit read this name as *Uṇḍikavāṭikā*, with *ṇā* in the second syllable. The original uses that *āṣṭara* in respect of which, as I have before now had occasion to remark, it is often impossible to decide whether it means *ṇā* or *ṇā*; except, of course, in well-known words such as the Sanskrit *maṇḍala* and *kaṇḍaka* and the Kanarese *gāṇḍa* and *uṇḍā*. I read the name with *ṇā* because of the identification of the place, which will be shown further on.

<sup>3</sup> Over the *ha* there is a mark, which may be a flaw in the copper, or may be an imperfect attempt to attach a superscript *i* to the consonant.

<sup>4</sup> See note 2 above.

<sup>5</sup> I do not overlook the fact, that Monier-Williams' Sanskrit Dictionary, the revised edition, gives us *Kōṭṭapura* as the name of a town in Magadha, from the *Bhadraśāhucharitra*, and that two records, Nos. 655 and 656 in Kielhorn's List of the Inscriptions of Northern India (Ep. Ind. Vol. V. Appendix, pp. 83, 89), give us the personal name of "Kōṭṭabhaṣija, of the Bhaṣija family."

<sup>6</sup> Loc. cit. p. 68, note 1.

<sup>7</sup> For, perhaps, the identical coin, see Cunningham's *Coins of Ancient India*, Plate II., No. 21; the reading is distinctly *Kāḍas*, on both the obverse and the reverse.



that the Kōḍas, Kōḍas, or Kōṭṭas were widely spread over India and had already been a ruling power for nearly three hundred years.<sup>8</sup> Elsewhere, we have been told that the details adduced by the Pandit "seem to show that about B. C. 200 the tribe of the Kodas or Kottas, who seem about that time to have been ruling near Mirat and afterwards (A.D. 190) near Patna, had a settlement at "Sopāra."<sup>9</sup> As a rider to this, a remark has been made about an "apparent relation between the "Kods of the Sopāra burial circles and the Kols and Gonds of the Central Provinces."<sup>10</sup> And finally, we have been informed that there was an "early widespread tribe allied to the Gonds known "as Kōṭṭas and Kōḍs in the Central Provinces North Konkan and Delhi," and that their headquarters were probably in the Central Provinces.<sup>11</sup> But, if we turn back to the reference put forward by the Pandit himself, we find that the origin of all this matter is simply that the Pandit believed that "Skandagupta's" — [read Samudragupta's] — "inscription on the Allahābād pillar "states that he punished the scion of a Kotta" — [read Kōṭṭa, as shewn by the Pandit's Dēvanāgarī rendering of the text, given in a footnote] — "family in Pāṭaliputra."<sup>12</sup> That, however, is a pure mistake. It was some member of a family named Kōṭa, whom, the Allahābād record says, in a passage which mentions also Pushpa[pura], = Pāṭaliputra, = Patna, Samudragupta caused (at some time about A.D. 375) to be captured by his armies.<sup>13</sup> The name Kōṭa with the dental *t*, is quite distinct from any such word as *koffa*, with the lingual *f*. And, so far at any rate as anything as yet brought to light may go, we may dismiss entirely the idea that there ever was a ruling power in India known by the name of Kōṭṭa.

Now, on the other hand, in the first place, the construction of the sentence, quoted from the record with which we are dealing, is such that only the genitive *Jaṭābhāra-pravrajitasya* is necessarily connected in any way with the verb *dattaḥ*, by which it is governed, and that the genitive ending with *Dakṣiṇa-Sivasya* is governed in the most natural way by the immediately following word *Uṇṭikavāṭikā-nāma-grāmakō*; and this collocation of the words marks the village Uṇṭikavāṭikā as already belonging to the god Dakṣiṇa-Siva at the time when it was conveyed by the record to someone else. And in the second place, the word *koffa*, as also *kōṭa*, is well known as meaning 'a fort, a stronghold'; while there is nothing appropriate in speaking of the witness to a deed of gift or transfer as a chastiser of anyone when there is nothing in the record to indicate some such achievement as the motive for the grant, it is quite suitable that he should be described by a title which marks him as a local official; we have the word *koffapāla*, meaning 'a guard, protector, keeper of a fort, a commander of a fort';<sup>14</sup> and *koffanigraha* or *koffanigrahin*, in which the second component is from *nī + grah*, 'to hold down, keep or hold back, seize, hold, hold fast,' etc., may quite well be taken as an official title meaning much the same thing. Further, *grāmaka* has the meaning of 'a small village.' The word *pravrajita* has the technical meaning of 'one who has left home and wandered forth as an ascetic mendicant'; but it can hardly be fairly rendered by 'recluse' or by any single word, except perhaps in connection with Jain and Buddhist writings, in which it seems to be used in the sense of 'a monk'; and it has also the general meaning of 'gone astray, gone abroad.' The word *jaṭābhāra*, which means literally 'a mass of braided hair,' must certainly be taken here, as it was taken by the Pandit, as a proper name; but the word reminds us at once of *jaṭādhara*, 'carrying or wearing braided hair,' which is well known as an epithet of Siva; and, while it does not seem either appropriate or probable that a village, specifically described as belonging to a god, should be given away to any ordinary person without a distinct proviso that he should hold it for that god, it might quite suitably be transferred to another form of that god, or to some other god connected with that god.<sup>15</sup>

<sup>8</sup> See *Jour. Bo. Br. R. As. Soc.* Vol. XV. p. 290.

<sup>9</sup> *Gazetteer of the Bombay Presidency*, Vol. XIII, Thāna, Part II., p. 409.

<sup>10</sup> *Ibid.* p. 730.

<sup>11</sup> *Id.* Vol. I. Part I. p. 132. "Delhi" seems to be a mistake for Behar or anything else.

<sup>12</sup> See *Jour. Bo. Br. R. As. Soc.* Vol. XV. p. 290, and note.

<sup>13</sup> See *Gupta Inscriptions*, p. 12.

<sup>14</sup> See Monier-Williams' Sanskrit Dictionary, revised edition, under *koffa* and *pāla*.

<sup>15</sup> We seem to have at any rate one instance of an analogous kind. The Mahārāja Jayanātha gave a village named Dhavaśhapṛkṣā to certain persons, as a *dēvagrāhā* or 'agrāhā of the god,' for the benefit of the god Viṣṇu in the form of Bhagavat; see *Gupta Inscriptions*, p. 121. And his son Śarvanātha gave half the said village to another person for the benefit of the divine (Bhagavat) goddess Piśātipurikādevī; see *ibid.* p. 130.



And, for the above-mentioned reasons, — partly suggested, of course, but, I think it will be admitted, fully supported, by what I have to say further on in identifying the god and the places mentioned in the record, — I translate the passage thus: — “By him (Abhimanyu), adorning **Manapura** by residing at it, in order to increase the religious merit of his parents, the small village named **Uṇṭikavāṭikā**, of (i. e. belonging to) the god **Dakṣiṇa-Siva** of the **Paṅgaraka pēṭha**, has been given, with the pouring out of water, to the **Jaṭābhāra** who has left his home and gone abroad (i. e. to that same god who has gone from the place belonging to him as **Dakṣiṇa-Siva** and has settled elsewhere as **Jaṭābhāra**). . . . . (This has been done) in the presence of **Jayasiṅgha**, the keeper of the fort of **Harivatsakoṭṭa**.” Or, if it should be considered better to take **Jaṭābhāra** as the name of a place, then part of the translation would be: — “to him (i. e. that same god) who has left his home (at the place belonging to him as **Dakṣiṇa-Siva**) and has gone abroad to (and settled at) **Jaṭābhāra**.”

Now, the record does not mention the territorial division, in which lay the village **Uṇṭikavāṭikā**. Nor does it specify the boundaries of the village. Nor do we even know where it was obtained. And so we have nothing specific to guide us in the allocation of it. But the suggestion has been made, — whether by Pandit Bhagwanlal Indraji, or by his editor, is not clear, — that the god **Dakṣiṇa-Siva** may be the god of the great **Baiva** shrine in the **Mahādēva** hills in the **Hōshāṅgābād** district, Central Provinces, because that shrine is under the management of the petty Chief of a place named **Pagāra**.<sup>16</sup> This suggestion is certainly correct. And, by way of an introduction to what I have to say about the matter in proving the point, it may be conveniently stated here that, in the Indian Atlas sheet No. 71, S. W. (1899), the particular hill which is called ‘**Mahādeo**’ in it and is marked as 4,834 feet high, and on which there is the shrine in question, is located in lat. 22° 24', long. 78° 28', about three miles south-by-west from the well-known hill-station of **Pachmarhi** in the **Sōhāgpur** tahsil of the **Hōshāṅgābād** district, and about fifty miles towards the east-south-east-half-south from **Hōshāṅgābād**, which town is on the south bank of the **Nerbudda**; and that, while the principal of the **Bhōpās** or hereditary guardians of the shrine is the Chief of the **Pachmarhi** zamindāri, which comprises six villages,<sup>17</sup> another of the **Bhōpās** is the Chief of the **Pagāra** zamindāri, which consists of twelve villages<sup>18</sup> and apparently has its head-quarters at **Pagāra** itself, which is in lat. 22° 31', long. 78° 29', about four miles on the north of **Pachmarhi** and on the road to **Pachmarhi** from the **Paparia** or **Piparia** station on the **G. I. P. Railway** from **Bombay** to **Jabalpur**: from the ‘**Mahādeo**’ hill, **Pagāra** is about seven miles north-half-east.

The **Mahādēva** hills are a part of the **Sātpuṣṭā** range; but they are isolated, by precipitous ravines, from the hills which are actually known as the **Sātpuṣṭās**. The earliest mention of them that I can trace, is in **Hamilton's East-India Gazetteer**, second edition, Vol. II. (1828), p. 161, where they are described as “a range of hills in the province of **Gundwana**, where stands the “celebrated temple to which the **Hindoos** resort in pilgrimage.” They are famous for a peculiar variety of sandstone known as the “**Mahādēva sandstone**,” in connection with which a full account of them, from that point of view, has been given in the *Memoirs of the Geological Survey of India*, Vol. II. (1860), which work speaks of them as “the **Pachmuri** or **Mahadeva** hills” (page 183). And, according to **Thornton's Gazetteer of India**, Vol. III. (1854), p. 358, they took their appellation from the temple, and they may be considered as lying between lat. 21° 30' and 22° 40' and long. 78° and 80°.

**Hamilton's** work speaks also of the **Mahādēva** temple, which it describes as “a celebrated “**Hindoo** place of worship in the province of **Gundwana**, situated among the **Mahadeo** hills, sixty “miles south-east from **Hussingabad**, on the **Nerbudda** river.” It places the temple, not quite accurately, in lat. 22° 22', long. 78° 35'. It further quotes **Jenkins' Medical Transactions** to the

<sup>16</sup> *Gazetteer of the Bombay Presidency*, Vol. I. Part I. p. 132.

<sup>17</sup> See the *Imperial Gazetteer of India*, Vol. X. p. 522. This chief is described as “a **Kurkū** by caste.”

<sup>18</sup> See *ibid.* p. 527.



effect that, at the festival held in February, 1820, more than eight thousand people visited the shrine, in spite of the fact that it could hardly have become known, by that time, that the taxes, which had ranged from one rupee to ten rupees per pilgrim, and even to fourteen rupees in the case of a pilgrim having a bullock with him, had been remitted. And, from all this, we gather that the shrine really is one of considerable repute.

In 1833 or 1834, the Mahādēva hills were visited, for geological inquiries, by Mr. Spilsbury, of the Bengal Medical Establishment, who then published an account of them in the *Jour. Beng. As. Soc.* Vol. III. (1834), p. 398 ff., with a sketch-map opposite page 392. He climbed the range *via* "Pugara, a small Goand village, belonging to a Thakur."<sup>19</sup> He located "the cave of Mahadeo," — from which we infer that the "temple" is a shrine in a cave, — some four or five hundred feet below a peak, which he mentioned in one place as "Putta Sunkur"<sup>20</sup> but in another as "Jutta Shunkur,"<sup>21</sup> and which he further shewed in his map as "Jutur Sunkur." He has further told us that the occasion of the annual *jātrā* or pilgrimage is the Sivarātri, and that the pilgrims assemble, before making the ascent to the cave, at a place named "Bhawun," which, however, is not marked either in his map or in the Indian Atlas sheet. And he has drawn attention to "a singular shaped hill," near "Bhawun," which is called "Terī Kotbī" because "all Goands firmly believe the locusts issue" from it.<sup>22</sup> His map locates this hill about four miles on the south-east of "Jutur Sunkur." And his sketch of the hill itself presents what looks like an enormous *liṅga* on a huge mound, the combined height of the two being shewn as about a hundred and fifty feet.

We may now consider the details of the record. And we will take, in the first place, the prefix *Dakshina* in the name of the god *Dakshina-Siva*, "the southern Siva, the Siva of the South." We have the same prefix in the name of the god *Dakshina-Kēdārēśvara*, "the Kēdārēśvara of the South," of Baḷagāmi in Mysore, which was plainly an image established there as the local representative of Siva in the form of Kēdāra or Kēdārēśvara as worshipped at Kēdārānāth, which is a famous temple and place of pilgrimage in the Himālayas, in the Garhwāl district, North-West Provinces.<sup>23</sup> And we have it again in the name of the god *Dakshina-Sōmanātha*, "the Sōmanātha of the South," of Huligere, i. e. Lakshmēshwar, within the limits of the Dhārwar district,<sup>24</sup> which was plainly a local representative, at that place, of the famous form of Siva as Sōmanātha at Sōmanāthapaṭṭana or Pūṭaṇ-Sōmnāth in Kāṭhiāwār. Evidently, the prefix was customarily used, in a very appropriate manner, to denote certain gods in the *Dakshināpātha* or *Dekkan*, i. e. in the territory on the south of the Nerbudda, which were representatives and namesakes, in that part of the country, of celebrated gods of Northern India. And so far, therefore, as the name of the god is concerned, there is at least no objection to connect the record with the locality suggested by Pandit Bhagwanlal Indraji or by his editor.

To the preceding point, we have to add the fact that the characters of the record are of the southern class of alphabets. And in this respect, again, there is no objection to connect the record with the suggested locality.

But, further, I find a distinct connection between the record and the locality, through what is evidently the real local name of the shrine which is now known as the temple of Mahādēva, and is probably also the local name for the peak below which the shrine is. Spilsbury's map places that peak just where the Indian Atlas sheet<sup>25</sup> places the peak which it calls 'Mahādeo.' As has been mentioned above, Spilsbury's printed account speaks of the peak as "Putta Sunkur" and "Jutta Shunkur," and it is shewn in his map as "Jutur Sunkur." The "Putta" is certainly a misprint; compare "Dokgur" three times, on page 392, for the "Dobgur" at the top of the same page and the "Dobgurh" of his map, which stands for a name which is given in the Atlas sheet

<sup>19</sup> *Loc. cit.* p. 391.

<sup>20</sup> *Loc. cit.* p. 392, note.

<sup>21</sup> *Loc. cit.* p. 393.

<sup>22</sup> *Loc. cit.* p. 393.

<sup>23</sup> See *Ep. Ind.* Vol. V. p. 221, and note 4.

<sup>24</sup> *Ibid.* pp. 248, 255, and page 247, text lines 30, 31.

<sup>25</sup> See page 511 above.



as 'Dhupgarh.' It can hardly be questioned that the "Jutta Shunkur" and "Jutur Sunkur," though possibly confused by Spilsbury in some way with the word *jātrā*, 'pilgrimage,' really mean *Jaṭā-Saṃkara*, or "Saṃkara (Siva) of the braided hair."<sup>25</sup> And we can hardly avoid recognising a direct connection of some kind between that appellation and the name *Jaṭābhāra* which we actually have in the record. We can also easily understand how the present name of the range came to be established. Evidently, the first European visitor to the locality found it without any particular name of its own; he heard of the existence of a famous and much frequented shrine on some hill in it, and, no doubt, the particular hill was pointed out to him; he asked the name of the hill, or of the shrine or its god, and was told *Jaṭā-Saṃkara*; this name not being familiar to him, he asked more precisely who the god might be, and was answered *Mahādēva*; and this well-known name of Siva was readily accepted as furnishing a convenient appellation, first for the particular peak, and then for the entire range of hills.

There is no difficulty about taking the modern name *Pagāra* as representing the ancient *Paṅgaraka*.<sup>27</sup> We might perhaps take the prefix *pēṭha* as meaning 'a market-town.' And, in that case, the epithet *pēṭha-Paṅgarakiya* would locate the god *Dakṣiṇa-Siva* at the modern *Pagāra* itself, about four miles on the north of *Pachmarhi*. But we have no information as to the existence of any god of repute at *Pagāra*. Also, it would appear from Molesworth and Candy's *Marāṭhī Dictionary* that the word *pēṭh* or *pēṭhā*, in the sense of 'a market-town,' is of Hindustānī origin. I am more inclined, therefore, to take the prefix *pēṭha* as the same word which we find used as a territorial term, in records of the fifth and sixth centuries A. D. from a part of the country not far distant from that with which we are dealing, in the expression "the *Maṇināga pēṭha*,"<sup>28</sup> and which seems to be the origin of the *Marāṭhī pēṭā* in the sense of a subdivision of a *pargana* or of a *tāluka*. And, from this point of view, I interpret the record, not as locating the god *Dakṣiṇa-Siva* at *Pagāra* itself, but as marking the god as the god of a territorial division which was known as the *Paṅgaraka pēṭha* and derived its appellation from the ancient *Paṅgaraka*, now represented by *Pagāra*, as its head-quarters town.

I take the actual state of the case to be as follows. The locality first derived its sanctity from the hill called 'Terī Kothī,' the summit of which so strikingly resembles an enormous *liṅga*, about four miles on the south-east of the peak known as *Jaṭā-Saṃkara* and *Mahādēva*; and that summit itself was the original god *Dakṣiṇa-Siva*, "the Siva of the South," of the *Paṅgaraka pēṭha*. The god, in that form, had been endowed with the village of *Uṇṭikavāṭikā*. Subsequently, it was desired to set up an actual image of the god. A suitable place was found in the cave below the above-mentioned peak. Either the god himself was installed there in the more specific form of *Jaṭābhāra*; or perhaps the place itself was doubly recommended, and was named *Jaṭābhāra*, in consequence of having, over the entrance to the cave, a mass of gnarled and twisted roots and rocks resembling braided hair; and this name became afterwards modified into *Jaṭā-Saṃkara*. And, when the god was thus installed in the cave, the previous endowment of the village of *Uṇṭikavāṭikā* was transferred, by this charter, to the new shrine.

<sup>25</sup> Monier-Williams' *Sanskrit Dictionary*, revised edition, gives *Jaṭā-Saṃkara* as the name of a *tirtha*, from the *Rasikaramaya*, xii. 22. — The Postal List of the 'Wardhā' district, Central Provinces, shows a place named 'Jatta-Shankar' in the 'Arvi' tahsil, post-town 'Ashti.' But I cannot find it in the Atlas sheets Nos. 54, and 72, S. W.

<sup>27</sup> There are various other places, in different parts of the country, the names of which are given in maps, etc., as 'Pagara,' 'Pangra,' and 'Pangara.' It is sufficient to state that there are no grounds for identifying any of them with the *Paṅgaraka* of the record. — The Village List of the 'Wān' district, Berar, shows a place named 'Pitha-pongara' in the 'Kelapur' taluka, post-town 'Pandherkowra.' But I cannot find it, unless it is the 'Pitapungli' of the Indian Atlas sheet No. 73 (1896), a small village about eleven miles south-west-half-south from 'Kehlapur.' About forty miles towards the north-west from 'Pitapungli,' there is a small village or hamlet called 'Manpur,' in the 'Yotmal' taluka of the same district. There is, however, nothing to lead us to refer the record to this locality.

<sup>28</sup> *Gupta Inscriptions*, pp. 116, 133. Another form of the original word occurs as *veṇḍha*, in line 30-31 of the *Harīhar* plates of A. D. 1351; see *Jour. As. Soc. Ind.*, Vol. X, p. 347. And we have also *veṇḍha* or *peṇḍha* in line 24 of the *Harīhar* inscription of A. D. 1339; see Vol. IV. above, p. 331.

<sup>29</sup> See above.



As regards *Uṇṭikavāṭikā*, I find that it is quite suitably represented by the 'Oontiya' of the Indian Atlas sheet, nine miles towards the north-north-east from *Sôhâgpur*, and thirty miles north-north-west-three-quarters-west from the *Jatâ-Saṁkara* or *Mahâdêva* peak. There is another 'Oontiya' about four miles towards the east-north-east from that one. But it seems to be a larger village. And the record appears to distinctly single out the smaller of the two. These villages are both on the south of the *Nerbudda*, and within a quite reasonable distance from the shrine, so as to be conveniently managed by the priest or priests of the shrine.

And the fort of *Harivatsakoṭṭa* is probably the hill-fort which the Indian Atlas sheet shows as 'Dhupgarh' and places on a peak 4,454 feet high, about three miles on the north-west of the *Jatâ-Saṁkara* or *Mahâdêva* peak. The commander of that fort would be a most suitable witness to the transfer registered in the record.

The place which is mentioned as *Mānapura* cannot be satisfactorily identified. Pandit Bhagwanlal Indrajī was at first somewhat inclined to identify it with *Mānyakhêṭa-Mālkhêḍ* in the Nizam's Dominions,<sup>30</sup> the capital of the well-known dynasty of *Rāshtrakūṭas* which was founded by *Dantidurga* about A. D. 750, some three hundred and eighty miles away to the south from the locality to which our results fix us. And, later on, he or his editor has suggested more plainly "Mānpur in the Vindhya hills;"<sup>31</sup> meaning, I think, a place which I myself had meanwhile proposed,<sup>32</sup> namely *Mānpur* in *Mālwa*, the head-quarters of the *Mānpur* parganā under the *Bhōpāwar* Agency in Central India, about twelve miles south-west from *Mhow* and one hundred and seventy miles to the west from our locality. Neither of these proposals, however, is really admissible. At the time to which the present record is properly to be referred, namely in or closely about the period A. D. 650 to 700, there cannot have been any independent *Rāshtrakūṭas* at *Mālkhêḍ* in the Nizam's Dominions; moreover, the ancient Sanskrit name of *Mālkhêḍ* has never yet been met with otherwise than in the form of *Mānyakhêṭa*. And *Mānpur* in *Mālwa* is put out of the question by its being on the north of the *Nerbudda*. If the *Mānapura* of the record was the capital of *Abhimanyu*, it may possibly be *Mānpur* near 'Bandhogarh' in *Rêwa*, about two hundred miles towards the north-east-by-east from our locality, which certainly seems to be the *Mānapura* that is mentioned in a record of A. D. 462 or thereabouts.<sup>33</sup> But there is nothing in our record to mark its *Mānapura* as a capital. And the text reads more as if it was simply an ordinary town or village, somewhere in the vicinity of the other places, which *Abhimanyu* had honoured by camping at it in the course of a tour. The name *Mānpur* is of frequent occurrence as a village-name in *Rêwa*, *Baghêlkhand*, the Central Provinces, the *Berars*, and the Nizam's Dominions. But I do not at present find in the maps any *Mānpur* which is reasonably close to the *Jatâ-Saṁkar* or *Mahâdêva* peak, and so may have been used as a camp by *Abhimanyu* for the purpose of visiting the shrine.<sup>34</sup> And I am inclined to think, therefore, that the *Mānapura* of the record may be not in existence now. It is, however, not impossible that it is, in some way or another, the village which is shewn in the Indian Atlas sheet as 'Bhanpoor,' on the south bank of the *Nerbudda*, two and a half miles north-by-west from *Uṇṭikavāṭikā*-*Oontiya*.<sup>35</sup> And it is also not impossible that *Mānapura* may have been the older name of *Sôhâgpur*, or of *Sôbhâpur* which is a large village six miles on the north-east of *Sôhâgpur*.

<sup>30</sup> *Jour. Bo. Br. R. As. Soc.* Vol. XVI. p. 89.

<sup>31</sup> Vol. XVIII. above, p. 233.

<sup>32</sup> *Gaz. Bo. Pres.* Vol. I. Part I. p. 133.

<sup>33</sup> *Gupta Inscriptions*, pp. 136, 138.

<sup>34</sup> I may state that I have recently had occasion to examine sheets of the Indian Atlas covering a great deal of country, especially along the course of the *Nerbudda* and to the south of that river. In sheet No. 23, N. E. (1894), in lat. 22° 6', long. 73° 7', there is a village called 'Maupur,' in the Baroda territory, about six miles on the north of *Miyâgâm*. And, curiously enough, there is an 'Untia' about two and a half miles on the north-east of this 'Maupur,' and there is another 'Untia' about seven miles further on in the same direction. With these exceptions, I have not found any other name answering to *Uṇṭikavāṭikā* (or *Uṇṭikavāṭikā*). And these places can hardly have any connection with the present record; because they are on the north of the *Nerbudda*, and some three hundred miles away from the locality to which the other considerations lead us: nothing can be found, in that direction, to represent *Pangaraka* and the god *Dakṣiṇa-Siva* and the name *Jatâbhāra*.

<sup>35</sup> There is not, as yet, any Survey or Topographical map available for testing this point.



## The places mentioned in the Paithan plates of A. D. 794.

This record has been edited by Prof. Kielhorn, with a facsimile lithograph, in *Ep. Ind.* Vol. III. p. 103 ff. It recites that, on a specified day in the year Saka-Samvat 716 (expired), falling in A. D. 794, the Rāshtrakūṭa king Gōvinda III. gave to some Brāhmanas a village named *Limbāramikā*, in a group of villages known as the *Sārākachohha* or *Sānakachohha* twelve<sup>1</sup> which was in a territorial division called the *Pratishthāna bhukti*. And it specifies the boundaries of the village as being, on the east, a village named *Samatīrthaka*; on the south, the river *Gōdāvari*; and on the west, (a village named) *Brahmapuri*. On the north, the record places a village the name of which has been read as *Dhōnagrāma*, with the remark that the consonant of the first syllable may be either *dh*, *v*, or *ch*, and that of the second syllable may be either *n* or *t*; but, in view of the identification that can be made, we may safely say that the real name given in the record is certainly *Vōḍagrāma*.<sup>2</sup>

*Pratishthāna* is the modern *Paithan*, on the north bank of the *Gōdāvari*, the head-quarters, apparently, of the *Paithan sarkār* of the *Aurangābād* district in the *Nizam's Dominions*; in the *Indian Atlas* sheet 38, S. E. (1886), it is shewn as 'Paithan,' in lat. 19° 27', long. 75° 26'. As the village that was granted was in the *Pratishthāna bhukti*, which can only have been a small subdivision of a much larger territory which would be known as the *Pratishthāna dēśa*, we ought to find it somewhere in the vicinity of *Paithan* itself. And I find that *Limbāramikā* must have stood just about where the maps shew a village which is entered as 'Cusnapur' in the *Atlas* quarter-sheet of 1886 mentioned above and as 'Cūsnapūr' in the *Deccan Topographical Survey* sheet No. 17 of 1877, but as 'Kristnapooree' in the full *Atlas* sheet No. 38 of 1857 and in the beautiful *Survey map* of the *Paithan sarkār* executed under the superintendence of Captain H. Morland in 1842-43. The said village, 'Cusnapur-Kristnapooree,' is on the north bank of the *Gōdāvari*, twelve miles west-north-west-three-quarters-north from *Paithan*. *Samatīrthaka* is evidently a village on the same bank of the *Gōdāvari*, two miles on the south-east of 'Cusnapur-Kristnapooree,' which is shewn as 'Sewatta' in the *Atlas* quarter-sheet of 1886 and as 'Sewāṭṭa' in the *Deccan Topographical* sheet of 1877, but in the full *Atlas* sheet of 1857 and in the *Paithan Survey map* of 1842-43 is shewn as 'Savutha,' which probably represents some such pronunciation as *Saumtha*. *Vōḍagrāma* is evidently the village which is shewn as 'Vadgaon' in the *Atlas* quarter-sheet of 1886 and is referred to as 'Wargāon,' in the indication of certain cart-tracks or foot-paths, in the *Deccan Topographical* sheet of 1877, but is shewn in the full *Atlas* sheet of 1857 and in the *Paithan Survey map* of 1842-43 as 'Vaudgaon,' — which stands, no doubt, for *Vōḍgaon*, with perhaps a pronunciation of the *ḍ* like the *aw* in 'Cawnpore' and the *au* in 'maund,'<sup>3</sup> — three miles towards the north-east-by-east from 'Cusnapur-Kristnapooree.' And

<sup>1</sup> The published text gives *Sārākachohha*, with the first two syllables marked as doubtful. The consonant of the first syllable seems to be certainly *s*. For the possibility of reading the consonant of the second syllable as *n*, rather than *r*, compare the *n* of *Pratishthāna* in the same line.

<sup>2</sup> The same stands in line 56 of the text. There is no question that the first syllable may be read either as *dhō* or as *vō*. And the record presents several instances in which there are forms of *n* and *t* closely resembling the consonant of the second syllable. But, for the point that the second syllable is really *ḍa*, compare *khaḍgaṇi*, line 4, *gaḍgaṇi* for *khaḍgaṇi*, line 5, *Pāḥṭya*, line 11, and, still more clearly, *ḍayaḥ* for *ḍayaḥ*, line 31, and *jī(ṣṭ)ḍat-ḍṭar'ṣhu*, lines 60-61.

<sup>3</sup> When the *Paithan Survey map* of 1842-43 and the *Atlas* sheet of 1857 were prepared, the sounds of the short *o* and the long *ō* were, of course, often represented by *o*; but also other devices were used, such as *ea* in 'Teandoly,' four miles north-north-east, and 'Poargaon,' eleven miles towards the north-east-by-east, from 'Vaudgaon,' which are shewn as 'Tondoli' and 'Porgaon' in the quarter-sheet of 1886, and such as the insertion of an *e* after the consonant, as in 'Donogaon,' twelve miles towards the east-north-east from 'Vaudgaon,' which is shewn as 'Dongaon' in the quarter-sheet of 1886. And *au* was very often used for *ā*; as in 'Vangwaddy,' seventeen miles towards the east from 'Vaudgaon,' and in 'Wauksure,' six and a half miles south-east-by-east from *Paithan*, which are shewn in the quarter-sheet of 1886 as 'Vagwari' and 'Wakwari.' And I do not find any other certain instance in the neighbourhood of the locality with which we are concerned, in which *au* stands for *o*. But the *au* of the present day, — while occasionally represented (wrongly) by *aw*, as in the 'Sawkhaid' of the *Paithan Survey map*, five miles west-north-west from 'Vaudgaon,' which appears in the *Atlas* sheet of 1857 as 'Sowkhaid,' and even in the quarter-sheet of 1886 as 'Sowkhera,' — was almost always represented by *ow* or *ou*, as in 'Kowdgaon,' six miles north-east-half-north, and 'Ourungpoor,' five and a half miles north-north-west from 'Vaudgaon,' which are shewn in the quarter-sheet of 1886



Brahmapuri is perhaps the 'Bramagaon' of the Atlas quarter-sheet of 1886, and the 'Brumagovan' of the full Atlas sheet of 1857 and of the Paithan Survey map of 1842-43, about four miles almost due north of 'Cusnapur-Kristnapooree'; it is quite possible that its lands may have originally extended southwards along the nullah on which it stands, so as to include certain other villages which now exist separately under the names of 'Mauzeagon-Mouzeagovan,' 'Lamgaon-Lam-govan,' and 'Jogisari-Jogeshwur,' so as to reach the Gôdâvari on the west of 'Cusnapur-Kristnapooree.'<sup>4</sup> The name *Limbārāmikā* does not seem to exist, now, anywhere on the north of the Gôdâvari, in the locality to which these results fix it; nor, I may add, can any such name, or any other names resembling *Samatirihaka* and the name (no matter how it may be read) of the village on the north of *Limbārāmikā*, be found anywhere else along the Gôdâvari in the whole extent of country covered by the Atlas sheets 38, 55, and 56. But it has left a clear trace of itself, in the name of a village on the south bank of the Gôdâvari, immediately opposite 'Cusnapur-Kristnapooree,' which is not shewn at all in the Atlas quarter-sheet of 1886, but is shewn as 'Nimbāri' in the Deccan Topographical sheet of 1877 and as 'Limbaree' in the full Atlas sheet of 1857 and the Paithan Survey map of 1842-43. And I suspect that *Limbāri-Nimbāri* was an offshoot from the original *Limbārāmikā*; that 'Cusnapur-Kristnapooree,' = *Krishnapuri*,<sup>5</sup> was the *dētopuri* or "ward of the gods" of *Limbārāmikā*; that the original *brahmapuri*, or "Brahman's ward" of the village, became absorbed into *Krishnapuri*; and that that is why we can now trace the original name only on the south bank of the river.

The appellation of the group of villages known as the *Sārākachchha* or *Sānākachchha* twelve seems, not to have been derived from the name of any town or village, but to mean "the twelve (villages) on the bank or banks of the *Sārā* or *Sānā*." The reference may be to the original name of the 'Ganda,' a small river which flows into the Gôdâvari from the north at a point about three and a half miles on the west of 'Vaudgaon'; and, in this case, the name is to be taken as denoting a group of villages on the east bank of that river. Or it may be that the name belongs to a large nullah which passes 'Vaudgaon' on the east and flows into the Gôdâvari at a point about three miles on the north-west of Paithan; and, in this case, the name probably denoted a group of villages on both sides of that nullah. Close on the west of the 'Ganda,' there flows into the Gôdâvari, also from the north, another small river, the name of which is given in the full Atlas sheet of 1857 as 'Sinnna,' but in the Paithan Survey map as 'Seev,' and in the Deccan Topographical sheet as 'Sheo,' and in the Atlas quarter-sheet of 1886 as 'Siv'; it does not seem that this can be concerned in the matter.

as 'Kaudgaon' and 'Aurangpur.' And, even if the actual modern name of the village should be either *Vādgāon* or *Vaudgaon*, — which I very much question, — there can be no reasonable doubt that it is the village which is mentioned, as *Vēdgārima*, in the record. It may be added that the sound of *aw* in 'Cawnpore' and of *eu* in 'maund' is the sound which the *o* and *i* naturally assume when they are followed by an *r* which has not a vowel after it, and that there is always more or less of an *r*-sound in the final *ā*. — There seems to be really no end to the varieties of those who fix the spelling of place-names for use in maps. The Deccan Topographical Survey sheet No. 17 (1877) marks a road, which crosses the Gôdâvari about eight miles on the north-east of Newāra in the Ahmednagar district, as going 'to Arungabād'; and it gives the same words in connection with a track from the neighbouring village of 'Kaigaon.' It really means "to Aurangābād." And, in addition to presenting *u* instead of *a* and *e* instead of *i* in what purports to be up-to-date spelling, it furnishes an instance of a fantastic use of *d* for *aw*, exactly the opposite of the use of *aw* for *e* mentioned above.

<sup>4</sup> As I have before now had occasion to indicate, from the maps we can only take the distances and bearings from village-site to village-site, and this only locates approximately the relative positions of the lands belonging to the different villages.

<sup>5</sup> Either form of the name means, of course, *Krishnapuri*. And I think I am safe in saying that *Kṛṣṇa* is actually current as a vulgar or corrupt pronunciation of *Kṛishṇa*. But, both in this detail and in some others which will have been recognised above, the Deccan Topographical Survey sheet and the supposed up-to-date quarter-sheet of the Atlas, are, manifestly, anything but an improvement on the earlier maps. — A serious and very unsatisfactory feature in the Atlas quarter-sheet, is the introduction of *G* for "great" and *L* for "little"; for instance, in 'G. Shendra' and 'L. Shendra,' eight miles east of Aurangābād, where the full sheet of 1857 shews 'Shaindra' and 'Ch. Shaidra,' and in 'G. Julkeh' and 'L. Julkeh,' five miles east of Newāra in the Ahmednagar district, where the Deccan Topographical sheet No. 17 shews 'Jūlkeh B.' and 'Jūlkeh K.' Of course, the maps ought to perpetuate the local name, and to tell us whether the terms employed in particular localities are *budrākh* and *kharv*, or *hīr* and *chikā*, or *badā* and *ahādā*, and so on.



The passage in the record which mentioned the residences of the grantees, with their names and other details, "has been greatly tampered with, for the purpose of reducing the number of grantees, which originally was seven, to four."<sup>6</sup> The following remarks, however, may be made. One of these residences was *Pratishthāna-Paiṭhaṇ* itself (line 48). Another was a place in respect of which only the last component of its name, *bhadra*, can be read, in the same line; it seems to be the 'Umbud' and 'Ambad' of the maps, about twenty-seven miles east-north-east from *Paiṭhaṇ*. The name of another has been read as *Jakali*, line 49, with the remark that "possibly, what is engraved may be *Takali*; and perhaps the word has been engraved in the place of another name:" the name 'Takli,' 'Taklee,' is so common in the part of the country with which we are concerned, that, as I do not find any *Jakali*, I would certainly read *Takali*; and the place may be the 'Takli' of the maps, eight and a half miles north-by-west from *Paiṭhaṇ*, or it may be the larger 'Taklee,' forty-two miles from *Paiṭhaṇ* in the same direction. Another name, in line 47, seems to be *Avilāṭhā(?)vā(?)rēsa*, with the possibility that the penultimate syllable may be *lē*; this perhaps has some connection with the 'Valooz' and 'G. Walauj' of the maps, on the 'Ganda' river, about twenty-four miles north-north-west from *Paiṭhaṇ*. The remaining name is *Kachchhauraja* (lines 52-53); regarding this I cannot at present offer any remarks.

The places mentioned in the *Paiṭhaṇ* plates of A. D. 1272.

This record has been edited by me in Vol. XIV. above, p. 314 ff. It recites that, on a specified day in the *Prajāpati saivatsara*, Saka-Samvat 1193 expired, falling in A. D. 1272, the *Dēvagiri-Yādava* king *Rāmachandra* gave as an *agrahāra*, to fifty-seven *Brāhmanas*, a village named *Vadāṭhānagrāma*, which is described as an ornament of the *Sēuṇa* country (*dēśa*) and as being situated on the north bank of the river *Gōdāvari*, together with two other villages named *Pāṭara-Pimpalagrāma* and *Vaidya-Ghōgharagrāma*. And it specifies the boundaries of the *agrahāra* as being, on the east, the village of *Vāhagāṃvu*; on the south-east, the village of *Nēuragāṃvu*; on the south, the village of *Dēigāṃvu*, and then the *Gaṅgā*; on the west, the *Gaṅgā*, and then the villages of *Khātigāṃvu*, *Āluemgāṃvu*, and *Nagamathāna*; on the north-west, the village of *Jāntēgāṃvu*; on the north, (the village of) *Pāniva*; and on the north-east, (the village of) *Vāḍakhala*.

The places are found in the Indian Atlas sheet No. 38, S. E. (1886), in the *Daulatābād sarkār* of the *Aurangābād* district, *Nizam's* Dominions. *Vadāṭhānagrāma*, indeed, seems to have disappeared.<sup>1</sup> But *Pāṭara-Pimpalagrāma* is 'Piplegaon,' — the name of which we may conveniently take as *Pippalgaon*, though possibly it is actually *Pimpalgaon*, — in lat. 19° 43', long. 74° 55', about thirty-two miles west-south-west-a-quarter-west from *Aurangābād*; and *Vaidya-Ghōgharagrāma* is 'Ghogargaon,' two miles north of *Pippalgaon*: the prefixes in the ancient names evidently distinguished these two villages from another 'Piplegaon,' seven miles to the west-north-west from *Pippalgaon*, and from 'Kali-Pipalgaon,' ten miles north-north-east from *Pippalgaon*, and from another 'Ghogargaon,' on the south bank of the *Gōdāvari*, five and a half miles south-by-west from *Pippalgaon*. *Vāhagāṃvu* is 'Vaigaon,' three miles east-by-south from *Pippalgaon*. *Nēuragāṃvu* is 'Newargaon,' on the north bank of the *Gōdāvari*, five and a half miles south-south-east-half-south from *Pippalgaon*. *Dēigāṃvu* is 'Deogaon,' on the north bank of the *Gōdāvari*, four and a half miles towards the south-south-west from *Pippalgaon*. The *Gaṅgā* must be the *Gōdāvari* itself; unless the name can belong to a very small nullah which flows into the *Gōdāvari* from the north at a point about three and a half miles west-south-west from *Pippalgaon*. The name of *Khātigāṃvu* seems to have disappeared. *Āluemgāṃvu* is 'Awalgaon,' on the north bank of the *Gōdāvari*, three and a half miles west-by-south from *Pippalgaon*. *Nagamathāna* is 'Nagamthan,' on the north bank of the *Gōdāvari*, five miles towards the west-by-

<sup>6</sup> See loc. cit. p. 108, note 7.

<sup>1</sup> It hardly appears likely that it can be represented either by the 'Wakthi' and 'Wakthee' of the maps, three and a half miles on the north of *Pippalgaon*, or by the 'Madthas Wadgaon' and 'Mudthas Waudgaon' of the maps, four and a half miles on the east of *Pippalgaon* and two miles beyond, and on the east-north-east of, 'Vaigaon' = *Vāhagāṃvu*.



north from Pippalgaon. Jantegamvu is 'Jathagaon,' five miles north-west-by-north from Pippalgaon. Paniva is 'Panui,' four miles north of Pippalgaon. And the name of Vāḍakhala seems to be represented by 'Warkhed,' three and a half miles north-east from Pippalgaon. In the full Atlas sheet No. 38 of 1857, and in the beautiful Survey map of the Daulatābād sarkār executed under the superintendence of Captain H. Morland in 1847, the above-mentioned names are given as Peeplegaon, Gogurgaon, Peeplegaon, Katee Peepulgaon and Kalee Peepulgaon, Ghogorgaon and Gogurgaon, Voygaon, Navurgaon, Daregaon and Davegaon, Auvulgaon, Nagumtan, Jathagaon, Panvee and Panwee, and Warkhaid.

The record locates these places in the Sēuṇa country. And Hēmādri has told us, in one of the *prastis* of his *Vratakhanda*, that in the same country there was Dēvagiri, the hereditary capital of the dynasty to which Rāmachandra, the maker of the grant recorded in these plates, belonged.<sup>2</sup> Dēvagiri is Daulatābād, from which Pippalgaon is distant about twenty-seven miles towards the south-west-by-west. And, through the identification of the places mentioned in this record, we now have definite epigraphic proof to support the literary statement as to the exact position of the Sēuṇa country. We have been told that the Sēuṇa country extended from Nāsik to Dēvagiri-Daulatābād.<sup>3</sup> That, however, is not correct. The Nāsik country was a distinct territory, with a separate name of its own, namely the Nāsika *dēśa*.<sup>4</sup> And there is every reason to believe that the Sēuṇa country was separated on the west from the Nāsika country by very much the same boundary-line which now separates the Aurangābād district from the Sinnar, Niphād, Yeola, and Nandgaon talukas of Nāsik. The southern boundary of it was doubtless the Gōdāvarī. And the eastern boundary probably left the Gōdāvarī at a point, about thirteen miles north-west-by-west from Paithan, where a small river called 'Ganda' flows into that river from the north, and ran northwards along the 'Ganda' and passed a few miles on the east of Dēvagiri-Daulatābād. It has also been suggested that Sēuṇa *dēśa* was very likely the original name of Khāndēsh, and that the Sēuṇa country may have included parts of Khāndēsh as far north as the Tapti.<sup>5</sup> There does not appear, however, to be any solid foundation for that suggestion. And we may in all probability take it that the northern boundary of the Sēuṇa country was very much the same boundary-line which now divides the Aurangābād district from the Chāllsagaon and Pāchōra talukas of Khāndēsh. The territory will be best defined, and the position of it will be best indicated, if we speak of it as the country round Dēvagiri-Daulatābād.

Within the area indicated above for the Sēuṇa country, on the west bank of the 'Ganda' river, in lat 19° 41', long. 75° 16', there is a place which in the Atlas quarter-sheet No. 38, S. E., of 1886, is shewn as an ordinary village, but fortified, with the name of 'Sundarwara,' but in the full sheet of 1857, and in the Survey map of the Paithan sarkār of 1847, is shewn as a large village or small town with the name of 'Chendravadah.' It seems worth while that, when an opportunity occurs, local inquiries should be made, to determine what its name really is. 'Chendravadah' would of course stand for Chandravāḍa. And, if the name of the place is Chandravāḍa, it seems probable to me, now, that it, rather than 'Chāndōr,' in the Nāsik district, — of which the real name seems to be Chāndōḍ or Chāndwad, also representing Chandravāḍa, — may be the Chandradityapura which, according to the Bassein plates of A. D. 1069, was the capital of Dridhaprahāra, the founder of the family of the Sēuṇa princes.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>2</sup> See Dr. Bhandarkar's *Early History of the Dekkan* (in the *Gaz. Bo. Pres.* Vol. I. Part II.), Appendix C., p. 275, verses 19, 20.

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.* p. 231.

<sup>4</sup> See Vol. XI. above, p. 162. The same record mentions a subdivision of the Nāsika *dēśa*, called the Vāṇanagara *viskhaya*. It evidently took its appellation from Vāṇanagara as the ancient name of 'Wurner,' i. e. Wāṇēr, about twenty-two miles north-east from Nāsik.

<sup>5</sup> *Gaz. Bo. Pres.* Vol. I. Part I. p. 231.

<sup>6</sup> Vol. XII. above, pp. 121, 124; and see my *Dynasties of the Kanarese Districts* (in the *Gaz. Bo. Pres.* Vol. I. Part II.), p. 512.



## NEW RESEARCHES INTO THE COMPOSITION AND EXEGESIS OF THE QORAN.

BY HARTWIG HIRSCHFELD, Ph.D., M.R.A.S.

(Concluded from p. 467.)

## CHAPTER XIII.

## Interpolations. Names of Suras. Initials.

REASON for and method of collecting the *Qorân* — Revelations omitted — Alleged integrity of the *Qorân* — Interpolated verses — The name "Muhammed" in the *Qorân* — Various theories in the initials — Synopsis of initials and conclusions.

Appendix : (Approximate) Chronological arrangement of revelations.

The *Qorân* is a comparatively small book, and for some time after the death of Muhammed it was not even a book, but the different pieces were scattered about in various private collections, all of which were incomplete. In most instances the revelations were committed to memory by the Believers. The condition of the *Qorân* faithfully reflected that of Islâm in the period immediately following the demise of the Prophet. Everything was out of joint. The Believers had no other guide in religious affair, which now permeated every action, than their individual knowledge of the *Qorân*, their recollections of how Muhammed had acted in certain emergencies, and the decisions of the *Imâm* or the *Khalifah* of the Prophet. This would, however, only describe how matters stood in Medina, the centre of Islâm, whilst the provinces were so badly provided with religious ministrations that Islâm only took root there with great difficulty.

Muhammed never had any intention of compiling a book. He did not even take any pains to have the revelations put down in writing till a considerable amount of those which were required for the spiritual guidance of the community were in existence. Besides the official oracles, there circulated in the memory of the people a mass of sayings, accessory to the *Qorân*, which were rightly or wrongly credited to Muhammed. Whenever a man, holding a prominent position, dies, a mass of *dicta* are attributed to him, and in good faith too, for which he is not responsible. This was the case in a much higher degree with a man like Muhammed, who was the very heart of Islâm, and whose most insignificant utterances were regarded as oracles. Official revelations and occasional supplementary remarks to the former lay stored up side by side in the memories of the Faithful, and Muhammed himself may not always have made it quite clear to which of the two classes words that had fallen from his lips, were to be reckoned. A short time after his death it was, therefore, impossible to draw a strict line between revelations and their appendage alluded to, even leaving the large class of fabricated sayings out of consideration.

Of the secretaries<sup>12</sup> whom Muhammed had appointed to jot down revelations for his own private purposes, Zeid b. Thâbit was known as the best authority on the matter. For this reason Muhammed's immediate successors charged him with the compilation of all the speeches he could gather. The history of this compilation is obscured rather than elucidated by a mass of traditions, and does not impress the student with the conviction that it was only composed of such speeches as Muhammed regarded as divine oracles. There are in this matter two facts to be kept in mind — (1) that the first impulse to undertake the task of collecting all available revelations was given by the circumstance that many of the oldest Moslems had passed away, and (2) that when Zeid set to work, he collected the revelations from those who had already started partial collections of their own from the sundry materials, on which he and his fellow secretaries had put them down, as also from the memories of the Believers. The work was superintended both by Abu Bakr and Omar, particularly the latter.

<sup>12</sup> See Kham's, I. p. 434.



From this way of proceeding we must draw our own conclusions. Omar is said to have accepted (on the instigation of Abu Bakr) only such revelations as genuine, as were supported by the evidence of two reliable witnesses,<sup>13</sup> or by two proofs if no living witness was forthcoming. This tradition, which is handed down on behalf of Omar, is so uncertain, that Ibn Hajar interprets the twofold evidence by "known by heart and written down by somebody."<sup>14</sup> Another authority<sup>15</sup> is of opinion that the "two witnesses" had to testify that such verses were written down in the presence of Muhammed, or at least, were revealed in one of the usual ways of revelation.

There is so much vagueness about all this that the tradition in question is scarcely trustworthy, especially as traditionists admit a case in which a verse was accepted on the authority of only one witness.<sup>16</sup> This being so, the memory of the Believers remains a prominent source of Qoranic verses, and we have to judge the matter accordingly. Tradition has, indeed, handed down quite a number of verses which were not accepted as genuine, because their authenticity was not sufficiently attested. A complete compilation of these verses has been made by Nöldeke.<sup>17</sup> Although they are, from religious reasons, placed in the class of "abrogated" revelations (which I have discussed at another place), it is clear that they were either overlooked by the compilers, or treated as merely casual remarks of Muhammed, and omitted on purpose. Considering the way in which the compilation was made, it would have been a miracle, had the *Qorân* been kept free of omissions, as well as interpolations.

Nöldeke denies emphatically that Zeid b. Thâbit or any of the Khalifahs responsible for the redaction of the *Qorân* had tampered with the book, and regards any view to the contrary as mistaken.<sup>18</sup> Now if omission was possible, why not addition? There was no hard and fast rule to distinguish between divine revelations and occasional utterances of Muhammed, especially as many of the latter are quite Qoranic in tone and style. The famous "verse concerning stoning"<sup>19</sup> may serve as an illustration. It reminds Believers to cling to their families, and to stone to death adulterers though they be advanced in years. Omar is stated to have treated this verse as genuine, but he refrained from inserting it in the *Qorân* for fear it might be said that he had interpolated it.<sup>20</sup> Here we have the complete contrast to the verse mentioned above, which, according to tradition was accepted on one authority alone. From this we may conclude that individual opinion was also a factor in accepting or rejecting doubtful verses, and it is possible that the "verse concerning stoning" was rejected for other reasons than the one mentioned. The affair which is said to have caused its revelation is closely connected with the tradition relating that the Jews in Medina brought before Muhammed a man who had committed adultery. On the Prophet's enquiry what punishment the Jews were accustomed to meet out for such crime, they answered: scourging. He then asked them whether the *Tôrâ* did not command stoning. This they denied. Abi Allâh b. Salâm had a copy of the *Tôrâ* brought, and requested the Jews to read it (*Qor.* iii. 87). The Rabbi (*Al Midrás*) placed his hand upon the "verse concerning stoning" (*Lev.* xx. 10) in order to hide it, but Abd Allâh pushed it away, and showed the verse to Muhammed who thereupon sentenced the accused persons to death.<sup>21</sup> This tradition is most unreliable for various reasons. Firstly at the time Abd Allâh was converted, the Jews had been completely driven out of Medina, and could therefore not have made Muhammed judge in an affair which concerned them alone. Secondly the *Mishnah* (*Sanhedrin*, vii. 3) leaves no doubt as to what was to be done in such a case, even if we interpret the term '*Tôrâh*' by any religious code they might have brought to Muhammed. There is no other case mentioned in which Muhammed interfered with the jurisdiction of the Jews as long as they were externally on peaceful terms. As an outcome of Âisha's adventure, adultery was only to be punished with scourging (*Qor.* xxiv. 2), and Omar could therefore not accept as genuine a verse which demanded stoning. According to another version<sup>22</sup> Omar asked Muhammed when this verse was revealed, whether he should write it down "and it was as if he would not consent to such practice." We should think that, if this was an official divine revelation, the Prophet had no choice but to treat it as such, but it is pretty clear that the whole tradition was fabricated in order to justify Omar's course of action.

<sup>13</sup> *Itqân*, p. 133.<sup>14</sup> *Ibid.*<sup>15</sup> *Al Sakhâwi*, *ibid.*<sup>16</sup> *Ibid.*<sup>17</sup> *Q.* p. 174 *eqq.*<sup>18</sup> *Orientalische Skizzen*, p. 56; "*Der Korân enthält nur echte Stücke.*"<sup>19</sup> Nöldeke, *Q.* p. 185, gives the various readings of this verse.<sup>20</sup> *Ibid.* p. 194; cf. *Khamis*, I. 14; *Itq.* p. 527.<sup>21</sup> *I. Hish.* p. 393; *Bekh.* III. p. 217.<sup>22</sup> *Itq.* 528; *Beiträge*, p. 52; cf. *S. John* viii. 3.



Moslim theology holds that the distance which separates the divine oracles of the *Qorân*, and the Prophet's other utterances is not very great. Al Shâfiî (died 204/820), author of an epoch making work on "the Principles of the *Fiqh*," and founder of the latest of the four orthodox Muhammedan law schools teaches that everything ordained by Muhammed is deduced from the *Qorân*, and there exists nothing which cannot be inferred from it, so much so,<sup>23</sup> that in the last verse of *Sûra* lxiii. ("Allâh will never respite a soul when its appointed time has come"), an allusion to the sixty-three years which Muhammed lived, is found.<sup>24</sup>

The declaration of Omar, recorded above, is very remarkable. Why should he have feared suspicion? The idea of the possibility of anything creeping into the *Qorân* which originally did not belong to it, should have been inadmissible. Yet the notion of interpolations was so far from being out of the question that, according to Al Shahrastâni,<sup>25</sup> the Ajârida, a branch of the sect of the Khawârij, maintained that *Sûra* xii. did not previously form part of the *Qorân*, because it was only a tale — moreover a love story which could not be the subject of divine revelation. This is the most powerful attack ever made by Moslems against the divinity of the *Qorân*. Ibn Hazm, therefore, places these people outside the pale of Islâm.<sup>26</sup> From this denunciation of a whole *sûra*, consisting of 111 verses, we may at any rate conclude that there existed soon after the death of Muhammed a feeling that some persons had tampered with the holy Book.<sup>27</sup>

All this being taken into consideration, no serious objection can be made against the suggestion that the *Qorân* contains passages which were not *à priori* intended to be there. If I speak of interpolations, I chiefly mean the shifting of the line which separates the *Qorân* from the *Hadîth*. This line has never been drawn by Muhammed himself, and it is hard to say, when and by whom it was fixed.

The first to suspect the genuineness of certain verses in the *Qorân* among European scholars was Silvestre de Sacy, who questioned the authenticity of *Sûra* iii. 138.<sup>28</sup> To this Weil<sup>29</sup> added verse 182; xvii. 1; xxi. 35-36; xxix. 57; xlv. 14. Finally Sprenger has his doubts as to the genuineness of lix. 7.<sup>30</sup>

As regards xvii. 1 and xlv. 14 there is not sufficient evidence for a verdict. Different is the case with iii. 138. Although the event which gave the occasion for the recitation of this verse is well known, I reproduce it for the sake of completeness. It is as follows: When Muhammed was dead, great consternation prevailed among the leaders of the community who apprehended great falling off of Believers. Omar said: "Some hypocrites assert that Muhammed is dead, by Allâh, he is not dead, but was exalted to his Lord as Moses, who stopped away forty days, but returned though he was thought to be dead. Muhammed will also return and cut off the heads and legs of those who believe him to be dead." Abu Bakr, who in the meanwhile had endeavoured to calm the fears of others, emphasised Omar's words, by saying: "Whoever serves Muhammed — well he is dead, but who serves Allâh — He never dies." Then he recited the verse alluded to,<sup>31</sup> the people listened attentively, but Omar said he felt as if he had never heard the verse before.<sup>32</sup>

It is rather strange that Omar should have confessed ignorance of a verse which, according to tradition, was revealed to Muhammed during the battle of Uhud when he was struck and lay apparently dead. The Moslems, relates Al Tabari,<sup>33</sup> seeing the Prophet on the ground, called: "If he

<sup>23</sup> Al Ushmûni, *Nawâr, al hudâ*, p. 15. Ibn Burhân (*ibid.*) teaches that Muhammed has said nothing which can not directly or indirectly be traced back to the *Qorân*.

<sup>24</sup> *Ibid.*

<sup>25</sup> *Milal*, p. 95 sq.

<sup>26</sup> *Milal*, fol. 136 vo.

<sup>27</sup> *Qf. Mewâqif*, p. 357.

<sup>28</sup> *Journal des Savans*, 1832, p. 535 sq.

<sup>29</sup> *Einleitung in den Korden*, 2nd ed. p. 52 sqq.

<sup>30</sup> Vol. III. p. 164.

<sup>31</sup> Ibn Hish. p. 1012; Bokh. III. 191. Al Shahrastâni, p. 11, gives a somewhat different version according to which Omar threatened to kill anyone who said Muhammed was dead, and compared his ascension to heaven to that of Jesus.

<sup>32</sup> Al Ya'qûbi, ed. Houtema, II. p. 127, gives the story with the following variation. When Muhammed had died, the people said: We thought that the Prophet would not die until he had conquered the earth. Omar made the speech quoted above, but Al'u Bakr said: Allâh has announced his death in the revelation (xxix. 31): Thou diest and they die. Omar then said: I feel as if I had never heard this verse. — Possibly Al Ya'qûbi confounds this verse with ii. 138. At all events the uncertainty as to which verse Omar's words refer, should not be overlooked.

<sup>33</sup> VI. p. 1815 sq.



be dead, [remember that] all Messengers before him have died." When Muhammed recovered consciousness, he revealed *Sûra* iii. 138.

I believe neither in the authenticity of this exclamation, nor of the verse in question. This alone, however, is not sufficient to advance us beyond the arguments brought by Weil. The verse contains yet another element which speaks against its authenticity, viz., the name **Muhammed**. I even go further and assert that all verses in the *Qorân* in which this name, or **Ahmad**, occurs are spurious. The reasons on which I base my suggestions are the following.

In Chapter II. I have endeavoured to shew that the fabrication of the name *Muhammed* stands in close connection with the elements of the *Bahira* legend. If this be so, that name could not have come into practical use until a period of the Prophet's life, when the material of the *Qorân* was all but complete. Now it might be objected that the texts of the missionary letters which Muhammed commenced to send in the seventh year of the Hijra to unconverted Arab chiefs, as well as to foreign potentates,<sup>34</sup> were headed by the phrase: "From Muhammed, the Messenger of Allâh, to, etc." — The authenticity of the majority of these letters, one of which will occupy our attention presently, is very doubtful, and besides, even if the genuineness of the texts of the documents be admitted, the superscription may have been added by the traditionists who took it for granted. At any rate I do not believe that *Muhammed* was an official name till after the conversion of Abd Allâh b. Salâm, or a year or two before his death. At the period of the battle of Uhud (A. H. 3) there was certainly no trace of the name, and it is too superfluous to demonstrate how unlikely it was that Muhammed's friends, seeing him prostrate, should have uttered the words quoted above. If they had really thought him dead, they would have run away, as all would then have been lost. If, on the other hand, we assume that the name *Muhammed* was meant to signify something similar to *Messiah*, the verse in question is nothing but an imitation of the chief portion of another which was revealed *before* the battle of Badr (*Sûra* v. 79) and runs thus: "The Messiah the son of Maryam, is nothing but a Messenger, the messengers before him have passed away . . ." The authors of iii. 138 simply replaced *almasih b'nu Maryama* by *Muhammed*, and the verse was ready.

This is, however, not the only *Muhammed*-verse which stands in connection with the *Bahira* legend, as in *S. xxxiii. 40* we find another reference to it. This revelation is appended to one of the paragraphs which deal with the affairs of Muhammed's wives, though it does not belong to it, the preceding sermon ending with verse 39. As each of these paragraphs commences with the words: O thou Prophet!<sup>35</sup> we have seen that they refer to matters prior to the adoption of the name *Muhammed*. The verse in question runs thus: "Muhammed is no father of any of your men,<sup>36</sup> but [he is] the Messenger of Allâh and the Seal of the Prophets, Allâh knows everything." From its very place we can gather that the verse's only function is the condonation of the Prophet's marriage with the divorced wife of his adopted son,<sup>37</sup> which event took place in the year four. As to the "Seal of the Prophets," this is surely nothing but a skilful alteration of the "Seal of prophecy" in the *Bahira* legend.

It is interesting that as a *third* variation of the Seal the traditionists tell us about a real seal which Muhammed used for his letters, and Weil<sup>38</sup> as well as Sprenger seem to regard it as historic. It is, however, just as mythical as the other two seals, at any rate, in the fashion in which it appears in tradition. Before despatching his missionary letters, we read, Muhammed was afraid that the persons to whom they were sent, would not accept them unless they were duly sealed. Muhammed, therefore, had a seal made of gold, and those of his companions who could afford it, followed his example. On the morrow, however, the Archangel Gabriel came and forbade Muhammed to use

<sup>34</sup> I. Isb. p. 971. Weil has shown that the letter to Khosrau must have been written prior to the treaty of Hudeibiya. Al Tabari, p. 1559, places it *after* the same. The authenticity of all these letters is questionable.

<sup>35</sup> Although this is not the case with verse 33, I am not at all convinced of its genuineness, because it bears a striking resemblance to verse 62. Besides this the verse has the obvious tendency of freeing Muhammed from obligations which he considered binding for others. Finally, the passage "those who have passed away" must not be overlooked.

<sup>36</sup> Al Beidhawi refers these words to Muhammed's two sons who had died in infancy, so that he was left without male offspring. "Even if they had lived," he adds, "they would have been his men, but not yours."

<sup>37</sup> See Ch. XI.

<sup>38</sup> *Muhammed*, p. 196.



gold. Thereupon they all discarded their seals, but Muhammed had one made of silver on which the words were engraved: "Muhammed [is] the Messenger of Allāh," each word on a separate line.<sup>39</sup>

The *third* verse containing the name *Muhammed* is *xlvi. 2*, placed in the introduction of a *sūra* which was revealed shortly after the battle of Uhud.<sup>40</sup> A closer examination, however, cannot fail to disclose the fact that the verse is wedged in between two which belong together, disturbing their logical connection. The translation of the verses in question will make this manifest in the following manner: (v. 1) Those who disbelieve and turn [others] from the [war] path of Allāh, He makes their works go wrong. (v. 3) This [is] because the infidels follow falsehood, and those who believe, follow the truth from their Lord — thus does Allāh set forth for men their parables. Between these two verses, which according to the usual logic of the *Qorān* fit exceedingly well together, stands the following: (v. 2) And those who believe and do right and believe on what is revealed upon *Muhammed* — and it is the truth from their Lord, may He forgive them their iniquities and set right their mind. Can anyone imagine that verse 3 forms a sequence to verse 2? On the other hand the words *the truth from their Lord* make it clear why the suspected verse was put in a place where it did not originally belong. This would, indeed, only prove that the verse is misplaced; but it is also so weak and invertebrate that we cannot tax Muhammed with its authorship. He is wont to assure Believers of their share in paradise, but not to wish that Allāh may pardon their sins. Besides, as the verse begins with "and," it could not have formed a detached revelation which the compilers did not know how to place. This circumstance is also much more easily explained, if we assume that the verse was fabricated.

There is one more verse containing the name *Muhammed*, viz., *xlvi. 29*. It forms part of a letter which Muhammed is said to have dispatched to the Jews of Kheibar, although it is not stated in which year. It is, however, only necessary to cast a glance at the authorities on whose behalf the document was handed down, in order to recognise its untrustworthiness. It is preserved solely by Ibn Ishāq<sup>41</sup> who reproduces it on the authority of: A freed slave of the family of Zeid b. Thābit from Iqrima or Sa'īd b. Jubeir from Ibn Abbās. The last name especially, augurs badly for the veracity of the letter. The verse itself, which is not given as a quotation from the *Qorān*, but as belonging to the text of the letter, has been discussed at the end of Chapter VIII. It stands in no connection whatever with the *sūra* to which it is appended, and the verse preceding it gives ample evidence why it was placed here. Finally it is to be observed that the words "in order to enrage the infidels" are borrowed from ix. 121 and lvii. 9, passages which are very late, having been revealed during the expedition to Tabūk. For so late a period the verse in question is much too clumsy and confused.

Now for what purpose were these four verses embodied in the *Qorān*? It appears that Muhammed had adopted the name too late to be addressed by it in a revelation, but it was considered necessary to have it officially recorded in the *Qorān*. The interpolators were sure of not meeting with opposition when offering verses which furnished a name for the mouth-piece of Allāh. One might, however, object that an appropriate name for the Prophet was to be found in one of the Hallelūjah addresses composed in celebration of the victory of Badr, viz., lxi. 6, where Jesus announced to the children of Israel a messenger to come after him bearing the name *Aḥmad*. But the genuineness of this verse is not beyond doubt. It is improbable that it was revealed at so early an epoch when there were enough Christians left in North Arabia to contradict it. After the surrender of the northern tribes this was not to be feared. The verse was, however, a convenient battle-cry for the army which was sent to Syria shortly after the death of Muhammed. The form *Aḥmad* is nothing but a variation of *Muhammed*, and shews how little the latter name had then become settled in the minds of the Moslems.

There is less certainty about the spurious character of the following verse, but I cannot refrain from making a few observations as regards the suspicious elements of the same. *Sūra v. 78* is,

<sup>39</sup> *Khamis*, II. p. 29; Bokhārī, VIII. 457.

<sup>40</sup> See Ch. X.

<sup>41</sup> Page 376, cf. *Uyūn al Athār*. As to other letters of the similar character see *J. Q. R.* Vol. X. p. 113.



excepting a slight change in the wording, a verbal repetition of ii. 59:<sup>42</sup> "Verily those who believe, and those who are Jews, and the Baptists, and the Christians, whoever believes in Allāh and the last day, and does what is right,<sup>43</sup> there is no fear for them, nor shall they grieve." It seems to me that this verse owes its place not to any theological tendency, but to a mistake, and is actually identical with the other. Probably it was found in some collection with the words: *they have their reward at their Lord* missing, and was therefore regarded as a separate revelation. It is easy to see that the verse is out of place. The preceding one recalls to both Jews and Christians that they stood on nought until they fulfilled the *Tōrd* and the Gospel. This being in reality only a variation of the old reproach of tampering with the holy books, it is difficult to understand, how so encouraging a revelation could follow immediately after it.

Verse 101 of the same *sūra*, alluded to on a former occasion,<sup>44</sup> appears as if it had been composed after the death of the man who found a reply to every question addressed to him. It is quite natural that (before the *Sunnā* was in anything like working order) many questions on religious matters were asked, especially by later converts. What can, therefore, be the meaning of the words: "And if you ask about them when the *Qorān*<sup>45</sup> is revealed, they are made manifest to you?" Evidently that it was too late now to ask questions beyond what was laid down in the *Qorān* itself. The growth of the *Hadīth* then supplemented what was wanting.

In conclusion there only remain a few observations to be made on the mysterious letters which stand at the head of twenty-nine *sūras*, and which have hitherto not found satisfactory explanation. The Moslim commentators of the *Qorān*, it is true, do not fail to give them all kinds of sacred interpretations, but these are without any foundation, and completely valueless. Yet these letters have not only occupied the minds of theologians, but no less a man than Ibn Sīnā<sup>46</sup> is supposed to have devoted a small treatise to their explanation. He moved, however, so entirely in the ways of scholastic philosophy, that he enlightens us no more than the theologians do. When the letters were put their places, Arab philosophy was yet unborn.

Of the endeavours of modern scholars to decipher those letters, the best known is Sprenger's who took the five letters standing at the beginning of *Sūra* xix. to mean I N R I.<sup>47</sup> This theory has been finally disposed of by Nöldeke. In my opinion the last named scholar made a successful beginning in the explanation of the letters. Unfortunately he gave it up, and adopted the older theory of the late Dr. Loth, who saw in these initials cabalistic ciphers contrived by Muhammed after Jewish models.<sup>48</sup> In accordance with this view Nöldeke takes the letters as mystic signs which stands in relation to the heavenly archetype, and originated from Muhammed himself. This is, however, untenable. Jewish mysticism of this kind does not go back as far as the period in which these initials were written. On the contrary the oldest books of Jewish mystic literature show traces of Arab influence, and are at least 150 years later than the official text of the *Qorān*. Besides, there is no mysticism visible in the whole *Qorān*. Even *Sūras* cxiii. and cxiv. look like protests against magic practices, rather than magic formulas,<sup>49</sup> as they consistently place Allāh in sharp contrast to witchcraft.

If Muhammed were the author of those initials, he must have had an important share in the arrangement of the *sūras*, and this would contradict all we know of the compilation of the *Qorān*. We should also have traditions on the matter handed down by himself, but the few given by Al Bokhārī in the chapter headed *Kitāb tafsīr alqorān* do not go back far, and reveal a complete ignorance of the meanings of the letters in question. It is also strange that out

<sup>42</sup> Cf. xlii. 17, and Ch. XII.

<sup>43</sup> Verse ii. 59 has here the words: their reward is with their Lord.

<sup>44</sup> See Ch. XII.

<sup>45</sup> Palmer endeavours to meet the difficulty by inserting the word *whole*. He also translates: "they shall be shown," but it should be translated: "they are divulged."

<sup>46</sup> *Alrisāla Alneirāsiyya*, Constantinople 1298 together with other small treatises.

<sup>47</sup> Vol. II. p. 182.

<sup>48</sup> *Encyclopædia Britannica*, IXth ed., article "Korān."

<sup>49</sup> The tradition given by Al Beidāwī is evidently late and fabricated, no authority is mentioned for it, and Ibn Hish. does not mention it at all.



of the more than two hundred addresses (of which the hundred and fourteen *sûras* of the *Qorân* are composed) only twenty-nine are preceded by initials, and that they are invariably found at the heads of compound *sûras*. No one will for a moment make Muhammed responsible for the arrangement of, e.g., *Sûras* ii. and iii. Finally, if mystic relations existed between the *Qorân* and its heavenly archetype, why were these restricted to so small a number only, giving these a more sacred character than the majority of addresses?

Thus much is clear that the letters were added when the arrangement of the *Qorân* in its present form was completed. One can further not fail to observe that *sûras* with the same (or similar) initials stand in groups. *Sûras* ii., iii. and xxix. to xxxii. have [al]M; *Sûras* x. to xv. have [al]R except *Sûra* xiii. which has [al]MR; *Sûras* xxvi. to xxviii. have TS and TSM respectively; *Sûras* xl. to xlv. have HM, except *Sûra* xlii. which has HM'ASQ; *Sûra* vii. has [al]MS; *Sûra* xix. has J [or N] AS; *Sûra* xx. has TH; *Sûra* xxxvi. has J [or N] S; *Sûra* xxviii. has S; *Sûra* l. has N, and lastly *Sûra* lxxviii. has Q.

The *Sûras* ii., iii., xxix. to xxxi. evidently belong together, but had to be separated on account of their unequal length, and we know that the length of the *sûras* was an important factor in their final arrangement. This is alone sufficient to show that the initials have no sacred characters at all but are, as Nöldeke at first rightly suggested, monograms of private collectors or authorities prior to the official edition of the book. In one of the MSS. of al Dānis' *Kitāb al-ta'isir* (Cod. Brit. Mus. Or. 3068, fol. 72<sup>v</sup> l. 2) the letters TH (*Sûra* xx.) are followed by the words *alaihi as-salām*<sup>20</sup> (peace upon him). From this we may conclude that Al Dāni (or the copyist) had a tradition that at least these two letters referred to a person, whilst the *sûra* to which they belong, has no other name or heading at all. Nöldeke, endeavouring to explain the letters has rightly hit upon Talha, but I believe that only the T refers to him, whilst H, which occurs again in *Sûra* xix. belongs to another person, probably Abu Hureira. The meaning of TH would, then, be that *Sûra* xx. was found in the collections of the two persons named. Such collections, we know, were made or kept by other people also, and probably marked with the name or initial of the collector or owner. At any rate, when Zeid b. Thābit made use of these collections for the compilation of the *Qorân*, he incorporated them bodily into his volume, but from personal or other reasons kept the initials. This explains the fact that whole groups of *sûras* are headed by the same letters, and it is easily seen how such a manner of working facilitated the edition of the *Qorân*. Probably there was much less scrutiny used about it than tradition will have us believe. Even the best readers of the *Qorân* may not have mastered the whole book, but scanned a comparatively small part of it, so that it was quite possible to intersperse verses of very doubtful authenticity. Now when pieces found in sundry note books were united into one *sûra*, Zeid collected all initials belonging to them, and placed them together at the head. For the large majority of addresses which were not contained in any such collections, Zeid had his hand free to arrange on the lines dictated by Omar, or followed his own judgment. This portion, therefore, shows no initials at all, being understood to be Zeid's.

A parallel to this is offered by the superscriptions of the *sûras*. Some have none, and the initials attached to them are used as such, viz., *Sûras* xx., xxxvi., xxxviii., l. *Sûra* lxxviii. is named both after its initials and the first word. *Sûra* xlii. is titled after the initials and a word in verse 36, and many other *sûras* have two or more superscriptions. Different collectors probably chose different names, whilst the final compiler of the *Qorân* followed the same practice as he did with the initials, and preserved them all. Their inferior importance is however, shown by the liberties which were taken with them in subsequent copies.

A very superficial enquiry into this matter will show that the word chosen as superscription is often quite trivial, but the piece serves as nucleus round which other, nameless, pieces are gathered.

<sup>20</sup> The Codd. Add. 7232 and 9485 have only AL.



Endeavouring now to substitute full names for the cyphers, I read with Nöldeke's first attempt — *Z* instead of *R*, but also *N* for *J* (ا for ج). If we further follow the Arabic custom of regarding cyphers not as representatives of the first letter only, but rather the most prominent of the word, we receive the following — of course only hypothetical — list : —

*M* = Al Mughira.

*S* = Hafṣa.

*R* [*Z*] = Al Zubeir.

*K* = Abu Bakr.

*H* = Abu Hureira.

*N* = 'Othmān.

*T* = Ṭalḥa.

*S* = Sa'd [b. Abi Waqqās].

*H* = Hudaifa.

'— = 'Omar [or 'Aliy, Ibn 'Abbās, 'Aisha].

*Q* = Qāsim b. Rabi'a.

*Al* forms the article before Mughira and Zubeir, and is to be found with no other cypher.

#### [APPROXIMATELY] CHRONOLOGICAL ARRANGEMENT OF THE REVELATIONS.

##### A. — MECCAN REVELATIONS.

###### I. — First Proclamation.

*Sūra* 96, verse 1-5

###### II. — The Confirmatory Revelations.

*Sūra* 87

" 88, verse 1-33

" 112

" 89, verse 40-52

" 26 " 221-228

" 52 " 29-49

" 74 " 1-30, 35-55

" 73 " 1-14

" 76

*Sūra* 94

" 96, verse 6-19

" 111

" 104

" 79, verse 15-26

" 53 " 1-18, 24-62

" 93 " 1-8

" 109

###### III. — The Declamatory Revelations.

*Sūra* 81

" 82

" 84

" 99

" 80

" 86

" 75

" 83

" 88

" 79, verse 1-14

" 77

" 69, verse 1-39

" 78

" 56

" 52, verse 1-28

" 70

" 100

*Sūra* 101

" 108

" 107

" 106

" 90

" 92

" 91

" 105

" 102

" 97

" 98

" 89

" 72

" 85, verse 1-8, 12-22

" 103

" 95



## IV. — The Narrative Revelations.

*Sûra* 68, verse 34-52

- " 51  
 " 26, verse 1-220  
 " 54  
 " 37  
 " 44  
 " 38  
 " 37, verse 1-59  
 " 28  
 " 15  
 " 18  
 " 12  
 " 19  
 " 43, verse 25-89  
 " 21  
 " 14

*Sûra* 20

- " 11  
 " 34  
 " 7, verse 1-27, 57-155, 186-205  
 " 17 " 1-8, 103-111  
 " 73 " 15-19  
 " 40 " 1-6, 24, 57  
 " 29 " 13-42  
 " 10 " 72-109  
 " 23 " 23-52  
 " 46 " 20-35  
 " 5 " 23-38, 109-120  
 " 2 " 200-210  
 " 6 " 74-91  
 " 1

## V. — The Descriptive Revelations.

*Sûra* 79, verse 27-46

- " 71  
 " 55  
 " 50  
 " 45  
 " 42  
 " 41  
 " 35  
 " 32  
 " 67  
 " 25, verse 1-63  
 " 23 " 1-22, 53-119  
 " 16 " 1-115  
 " 43 " 1-24  
 " 13

*Sûra* 113

- " 114  
 " 10, verse 1-57, 58-71  
 " 31 " 1-10, 19-34  
 " 36  
 " 27, verse 60-95  
 " 30  
 " 39  
 " 22, verse 1-13, 62-71  
 " 40 " 7-23, 58-85  
 " 2 " 158-162  
 " 29 " 43-69  
 " 17 " 87-102  
 " 6 " 92-117

## VI. — The Legislative Revelations

*Sûra* 6, verse 1-45, 46-73

- " 93 " 9-11  
 " 25 " 64-72  
 " 31 " 11-18  
 " 7 " 28-56  
 " 29 " 1-12

*Sûra* 46 verse 1-19

- " 17 " 9-86  
 " 6 " 152-165  
 " 9 " 129-130  
 " 85 " 9-11

## B. — MEDINIAN REVELATIONS.

*Sûra* 2, verse 1-19<sub>a</sub>

- " 196-37  
 " 38-58  
 " 59  
*Sûra* 5, " 71-88  
 " 2 " 60-97  
 " 98-115  
 " 116-147  
 " 163-184

verse 211-223

- " 244-268  
 " 269-281

*Sûra* 8 " 1-41 (after Badr)

" 42-76

*Sûra* 3 " 1-29

" 30-75

" 76-90

*Sûra* 47



<i>Sūra</i> 3, verse 91-113 (?)	<i>Sūra</i> 5 verse 39-44 (A. 7)
" 114-137, 139-200	" 2 " 285-286
<i>Sūra</i> 57	" 48 " 18-28
" 7, verse 174-185	" 2 " 185-196*, 196*-199 (A. 8)
" 59	" 60
" 61	" 110
" 62	" 49 (A. 9)
" 16, verse 116-128 (?)	" 9, verse 23-27
" 64	" " 38-73
" 4, verse 1-45	<i>Sūra</i> 48 " 1-17
" " 126-129	" 9 " 74-94 (A. 10)
" " 46-72	" " 120-128
" " 73-86 (after Uḥud)	" " 95-119
<i>Sūra</i> 2 " 148-157	" " 1-12
" " 87-95	" " 36-37
<i>Sūra</i> 5 " 56-63	" " 13-22
" 2 " 282-284	" " 28-35
" 4 " 96-105 (A. 4)	<i>Sūra</i> 7 " 156-172
" " 106-125	" 5 " 1-4
" " 130-138 (?), 139 ?	" " 5-7
" " 140-145	" " 8-14
" " 146-151	" " 15-17
" " 152-175	" " 109-120
<i>Sūra</i> 33 (A. 5)	" " 18-22
" 2, verse 224-243 (?)	" " 45-55
" 65	" " 64-70
" 24	" " 89-104
" 66	" " 105-108 (?)
" 63	<i>Sūra</i> 6 " 117 151 (?)
" 58	" 73 " 20 (?)
" 22, verse 14-61 (A. 6)	" 74 " 31-34 (?)
" " 72-78	

## Interpolated or uncertain.

<i>Sūra</i> 53, verse 19-23	<i>Sūra</i> 48 verse 29
" 3 " 138	" 61 " 6
" 33 " 40	" 5 " 73 (?)
" 47 " 2	" " 101 (?)

## WAR SONGS OF THE MAPPILAS OF MALABAR.

BY F. FAWCETT.

(Concluded from p. 508.)

## No. IV.

## The Battle of Hunain.

MUHAMMAD THE PROPHET, the founder of Islam and the greatest of all the 123,999 prophets since the time of Adam, was born unto Amina by Abdulla. He was brought up at Mecca, the Queen of cities, the centre of the globe. The heathen Koreish began to speak of him as an imposter, for they feared he would destroy their religion; and they resolved to kill him. But Muhammad, warned by God, fled to Medina.



And God said :— "Convert your own people first, then the aliens. If you are resisted, use the sword and make them embrace the true faith." So the prophet took up the sword against the infidels and was always successful. He came to Mecca with a large army. The Koreish begged for peace for 20 months in order to remove from Mecca. A treaty was then drawn up and signed formally by both sides: no mercy to be given to those violating it. But the treacherous Koreish broke it, so the prophet took up the sword. Two hundred pilgrims taking shelter with the Koreish were treated kindly and then slain mercilessly. The Angel Gabriel related the tragedy to the prophet, who, calling his followers, said:—"Our treaty is broken, we must capture Mecca." Mecca was captured, the Koreish defeated and their idols destroyed, by the fourth minister Imam Ali, the prophet's son-in-law and his father's brother's son.

The Koreish resolved to seek the aid of **Malik Bin Awauli**, Lord of the monarchs of earth, saying, "he will defeat the prophet and prevent the spread of his religion. **Eblis** is his minister." They went to **Nazareth**, near **Missen**, where the king was, and saw **Eblis**, who thereupon drew up a document as follows:—"The followers of Muhammad have forced their way into the sacred temples and destroyed all images, presented to us by kings of old and adorned with gems. Chief of these was **Brähma**, more than 4,000 *kōls* in height.<sup>16</sup> These have been our salvation, and now they are hacked to pieces. All persons young and old know this. If your highness does not extirpate the Mussalmans, their religion will be the only one in the world. Muhammad is the man for that. His face is more resplendent than the full moon. A lion approaching him open-mouthed would be calmed by the sweet honey of his words. He is clever in witchcraft, and all magic. He would win over your highness. There is not his like among men or angels. We implore your highness to protect us.<sup>17</sup> Who can endure to see their gods mutilated and thrown down? It is said by king that he has no equal in might."

So saying they threw off their coats and caps and lay in the dust, and wept. When he heard them, the king was speechless for an hour; then he roared like thunder, flung aside his crown, and bit his finger in his rage. He changed colour and his hair stood on end. Saying, "there never was done us such a wrong since the world began," he called his ministers to plan vengeance. They said "if we kill Muhammad and Imam Ali we will be famous, but if we fail, we must accept their religion." The king said:—"Be patient: we will see if he is so powerful." They answered:—"Slight him not. A glance of his eye was sufficient to fill a well, which has never diminished."

Then the king wished to subdue him in war, and wrote to call his warriors. The first letter was to **Banitha Mimū**:—"Muhammad the Nebi and his son-in-law Imam Ali have seized Mecca and defiled it: we must wage war on him: come soon." He [Banitha] came with 10,000 armed men before the king, who was pleased. The second letter was to **Banihilan**, who at once marched with 90,000 men. Many others were sent for in like manner. When all had assembled the king burst into tears. Another king enquired the cause and was told that the thought of the destruction of the gods was too distressful. The other king consoled him saying that **King Urubath** was equal to 10,000 Turks. So Urubath was called, and he came with 20,000 men. Refreshments were served, and King Urubath recited a *stoka* [!] which meant: "O king, dearer than the pupil of my eye, your charity has pervaded the world as a cooling shower, and tears have been shed by you, so I am prepared to draw blood from Muhammad and his son-in-law. Will the brass of Ashin prevail against us? We will kill him as timber."

The king was pleased, and said:—"Our gods are cut down, but their divine spirit remains. We propitiate them. They will favour us rather than our enemies who have desecrated them." So saying, the king went to the camp and ordered the heads of Muhammad and his son-in-law to be cut off, and their followers to be brought in alive with handcuffs so that they might be flayed or burnt.

<sup>16</sup> A *kōl* is the carpenter's measure in Malabar; it corresponds, roughly, to a yard.

<sup>17</sup> The poet has forgotten to tell us that the supplicants went before the king with the petition prepared by **Eblis**.



with hot irons. The army replied they would do so. Then the king ordered his prime minister to open a barrel of liquor. The men drank more than they could contain and fought with each other like lunatics, forgetting their great purpose. **Imish, an ascetic, appeared to them as an old Brahman** [!]. They asked his advice. He beat his breast and wept:—"Oh warriors, you have become shameful cowards. You come to fight with Muhammad but you have most shamefully indulged in liquor. Muhammad, taking advantage, has enticed some people from our side." Then he beat his breast again and wept. The army enquired who he was. He said he was (in Arabic) "The father of evil speakers" and his native place was **Negith, a despicable Hell**. They thanked him, and set out to fight. The ascetic clapped his hands and laughed. "You are brave warriors," said he, "but when you go to fight you should take with you your wives and children, all your relatives young and old, male and female, so that you may think of them."

**Rebiath, a brave young warrior**, said:—"You need not open your mouth to speak nonsense. Go away. A child would not heed you. You would tell us—If we are defeated, Muhammad will capture our women and kinsmen. Who are so hot after women as the Arabs? If our women fall into their hands we cannot receive them back." Then spake **Kola Baith**:—"What? Is Rebiath mad? What the ascetic says is true. If we have our women with us we will feel vigorous and courageous. We can never withstand a long battle without them." The army consented, and the king ordered the families to be brought. They spread like an ocean. Mothers with crying babies, children carried on the necks of adults, old people with sticks in their hands. Women could not suckle their infants, and beat them; the bigger children cried for food; there was confusion everywhere.

The king paused a moment; then ordered the band to be played, the trumpets also. In the van of the army were kings with golden crowns on horseback, having 18 kinds of weapons. Then came camels, mules, conveyances, and the infantry armed with blowing instruments, noisy bells, 14 kinds of arrows, and swords. They reached a mountain and pitched their tents under it.

They saw other warriors encamped on the hill, their leader seated in their midst. He was a **stout blind Kaffir, 200 years old, Duraita** by name, the terror of his age, well versed in war; of profound spiritual knowledge, adept in witchcraft, astronomy, physiognomy and other sciences. He asked:—"What is that noise of babies and mothers in the midst of sounds like thunder?" He was told that King Malik had encamped there with his army, and their women and relatives. Thereupon he expressed a desire to see the king. The king came and salamed. Duraita asked who he was. The king then told his name and was asked to be seated. Duraita asked why he had come. He said Muhammad and his son-in-law had defiled their gods, so he had come with his army of 250,000 to overcome him. Duraita said the number was too small: there must be at least five lakhs of men. Malik's ministers displayed indifference and whispered in the king's ear that Muhammad had not more than 1,000 men. Then Duraita spake in anger:—"Believe me, you are not fit to engage Muhammad. Oh king! your minister deceives you. Come; try a fight with my men, 100 in number. If you beat them, you can beat Muhammad." King Malik caught his hands and pacified him:—"Oh great man: be not angry; I will collect as many men as you want."

And he sent out messengers who brought 5 lakhs of men; then he continued his march. They reached the **Honin hills** and pitched their tents. Then **Eblis** appeared before Duraita and spoke of the coming battle, and told him he would be slain by a soldier of the prophet's army, **Rebiath** by name. Duraita was horror struck, but he consoled himself saying, "Oh god! if this is my fate, I have no fear." The king heard this and was sorry; and he said:—"Eblis is a traitor: heed him not; I will help you." Duraita was encouraged, and remained at the foot of the hills.

Now while the prophet was at Medina performing his ablutions and other religious services, seated at noon in the chief mosque, he saw a young man clad in silk and wearing priceless gems approaching on horseback accompanied by 2 men as a bodyguard. The young man asked:—"Where is Muhammad, protector of the world, with his ten beautiful colours?" **Imam Ali** enquired why he



wanted to know. The young man said :—"To pay my respects." A *sayyid* pointed out where the Lord of creation, more handsome than white pearls, was seated. When he saw Muhammad who has no shadow of self on earth, the young man dismounted, and said respectfully :—"O Nebi ! ocean of charity, the magnanimous, the nearest thing to God as the string to the bow, I long wished to see you, and now I have the honour."

Some of his disciples arose and told the prophet the youth was one who had fled at the battle of Mecca and had been ordered to be killed, and touched their swords. When Muhammad saw this he said that **Shaikhuvan** should not be killed, although he is wicked : "we must know why he has forsaken his evil companions and come here." He said to Muhammad, who approached him :—"God created you and you have traversed the seven skies and above them. You are a great favourite of God. I have come to reveal my sorrow." The prophet told him to speak. "Oh prophet ! you have made the full moon to rise on the new moon night, taken hold of it and split it in two, joined the halves together and sent them back to the skies. You have converted many who saw this. Oh prophet ! our father, I have fought against thee and beg forgiveness. Thou hast produced peacocks out of granite and borne the world on the tip of thy little finger. I pray thee bless me that I may fight against heretics." Muhammad stretched out his hand, held him and taught him prayer, and he became a Mussulman.

Shaikhuvan said :—"Oh prophet ! Thou hast been laying at the feet of God for 14,000 years without raising thy head. King Malik with 5 lakhs of men has encamped on **Mount Hunai** to fight thee. Muhammad was thunderstruck. Then the angel of God came, and saluting the prophet, told him the news was true, and that he should at once fight King Malik, and he will have special indulgence in Heaven and Earth. The drums were then beaten, and the prophet explained God's message, saying those who fought for him would go to Heaven. He described Heaven thus :—"There are many pleasures in heaven, but something must be said of the celestial virgins. The beauty of their faces defies the disc of the setting sun, or of the moon. Their bodies are more brilliant than superior gold ; in fact, they are so lovely that God has never created and never will create their like. Their hair is blacker and more beautiful than the cuckoo or the wings of the beetle. The jewels on their heads are indescribable. Their eyes are ravishing, fascinating any man and filling him with lust. Their necks are more graceful than the deer's, neat and well shaped. Their mouth is like a fruit filled with honey. A drop of their spittle will turn the ocean into pure honey. Their noses are like pointed arrows. Their breasts of admirable shape, resemble two golden cups, are of full size and never fading beauty. Their bodies are well formed and polished. Their waists narrow, slender and charming. Their arms and legs are like the branches of the plain-tain tree. It would take up many pages to describe their jewels, for they wear many. They never menstruate, and they are unceasingly lustful. Those of you who fight along with me and die in battle, will have houris such as I have described, besides other enjoyments."

The army asked Muhammad to lead on so that they might partake the pleasures he had described. He sent them home to bid farewell to their families<sup>12</sup> and return at 6 o'clock the next morning to go to war. They were in all 1,060 men, and they offered prayers to God. Then Muhammad sent his private secretary to bring from his house, banners, arms, armour, horses and other necessities of war. This was done. Muhammad was mounted on a horse called **Trubath**. . . . They started for Medina, and camped near it. Muhammad gave the first banner to **Subari-bin-alavan**, the second to **Abitharklophar**, the third to **Abbas**, his uncle, the fourth to **Magdhathi-bini Aso Dhul Kathi**, the fifth to **Khalithi binal Holith**. . . . Each of these ten men recited a verse in Arabic when he received his flag. Then there were with Muhammad, in all, 12,000 warriors, who had joined him in the plain. He set out for war together with his four ministers. When it was time to do so, they assembled for prayers, and then retired to their tents to sleep. But the first minister **Abu Bakr Siddik** went to Muhammad's tent, and having obtained permission, entered and said the expedition was a splendid one as their army was composed of heroes and more than a match for the enemy's army of five lakhs of men.

<sup>12</sup> Mappila [Mopla] fanatics always bid farewell to their families before going out to di .



Muhammad was displeased and repeated a religious *mantram* [!], exhaustive and deep, meaning that none but God can do anything. He was uneasy and had little sleep, thinking of the words of the first minister. In the morning his uneasiness continued, and after prayer when he had mounted his throne, his father's elder brother Abbas came to him and asked the cause of his gloom. Muhammad said the words of the first minister were unsavoury, and he did not know what evil awaited them. Then the Angel Gabriel appeared before Muhammad and taught him two prayers to be repeated by the whole army. In the evening Muhammad saw a band of Kafir soldiers, who said they were of the Vanibava tribe (sect) and they were going to fight a certain king whose subjects they hated. He then prayed and retired to rest. And God's messenger appeared again before him and taught him a prayer (?) of deep meaning: briefly, that throughout the Hunai War many wonders would be worked by him (Muhammad), and God will avenge his enemies. He was filled with joy and thanked God.

The Kafir soldiers hid behind the mountain and in the night their chief asked whether they knew the Arabs they had met. They did not. He said they had conversed with Muhammad, the King of Mecca, who was waging war against their king: would any one volunteer to bring in the head of Muhammad? Some arose in answer, but their leader warned them saying Muhammad was powerful, an athlete and of extraordinary prudence. They said Muhammad's tent was in a lonely place; and two lion-like men went away saying that by the grace of God they would bring in his head. They saw him engaged in prayer under a tree, his hands placed on his belly, a mile distant from his army; and they hid in a hollow of the tree. Muhammad's sword was left leaning against the tree, and he was lying on his face praying. One of them took the sword thinking it was sharper than their own and aimed a blow at Muhammad's neck. But he saw them with the small eyes on his head, and prayed to God. And a branch of the tree bent down and the sword struck it, and stuck to it and to the man's hand. When he had finished his prayers he looked around and saw the two men lying on the ground. They begged for mercy, invoking his God. He raised them up and let them go, telling them God would punish them with everlasting hell. Ismanli, the lion, the fourth minister, was told by the prophet what had happened. Seized with passion, he begged leave to kill them twain and annihilate the whole army. The prophet said that God would arrange: he would do nothing without God's order. God had saved him from them, and he should likewise save them. He is answerable to God. As the two Kafirs were going (to lie) to their king, a mighty wind swept them into the sea. The king and his army enquired in several countries what had become of them. Behold! their corpses were found in the sea.

Muhammad with his army encamped near the enemy, and looking round, asked whether any one would spy in the enemies' camp. A man called Raphi stood up and said he would go. In the direct way there were hills, mountains, pits, trees, forests and many difficulties, besides guards were posted. Muhammad said though that way was a difficult one, Raphi should take it. Then Abbas, the uncle of Muhammad, said that Raphi had spoken truthfully. Muhammad said to Raphi that God would take him unto Himself. Again he explained what Heaven was. In it there were many beautiful things, tables, chairs,<sup>18</sup> mattresses, beds; different kinds of music; all sorts of fruits; pure water; valuable jewels for the celestial virgins. "God will give you all these." Then Raphi said he felt confident of all this happiness, but he was grieved to think that if he were killed he would not be able to return with news (!). While Muhammad was deep in thought the Angel Gabriel appeared and said to him that what he had promised Raphi had already been promised by God 14,000 years before. Moreover, God had sent him to say that Raphi would not be killed.

Raphi then started, and found the kings on their thrones and the army surrounding them. The old blind man [Duraita?] discovered his presence by means of astrology, and by the time Raphi had heard the kings conversing together as to the destruction of Muhammad, and ascertained the number of their flags, they were informed that a spy was in their midst. Search was at once made. Raphi prayed to God and Muhammad to save him. A surprising thing then happened. No one could see

<sup>18</sup> Chairs are very modern in Malabar!



Raphi. Then they mocked the old blind astrologer, but he persisted he was right. The king told him to find the Arab or die on the spot. The old man asked each man to come in front of him and make a certain noise. Raphi was in great anxiety and prayed to God and Muhammad. A man asked him who he was, and he answered he was one of themselves. He was taken before the astrologer to whom he gave a false name. He was told to make the noise. Again he prayed to God and Muhammad and made the noise so that the astrologer did not distinguish him. The king and his men again mocked the astrologer, and said no Arab had entered the camp. The astrologer swore by their gods that there had, and he would not eat until he had found him. He then asked the men to come in pairs, one on his right one on his left, and make the noise. When Raphi made the noise the astrologer held his hand and asked him who he was. He said he was chief of the flagsmen. Was he sure? Yes. Then he was let off. The troops clapped their hands and said the old man was childish. The astrologer contended the Arab spy was among them, and that he was invisible through witchcraft.

When the king's army partook of food Raphi was served with the flesh of sheep and camels to eat, and toddy to drink. He carried it to where the mules were tied. After eating food the army was about to fall in for war when Duraita told them not to march. The king asked why not. He said they should hide under the slope of the hill and by a sudden rush fall on Muhammad's men before they could take up their arms: there was no other way to conquer such great warriors. So the king ordered Duraita to prepare the army for battle. The attack was to be made in five companies. Cavalry armed with swords and formed in four sections to be in front; each section to assist the others. Men with daggers, also formed in four sections to be behind the cavalry. Men with bows and arrows to be behind these again. Women and children to be in rear.

Naratha Maharishi, that is, Eblis, then told the king the men in front would not fight well if their women and children were so far away, so these were placed behind the men in front. Raphi returned to his camp, all the way invoking Divine help against the Kaffirs. He told Muhammad what he had seen. The Kaffirs were countless and they had 2,000 flags. Muhammad then said that there were as a rule 250 men for each flag, so there must be at least 5 lakhs of men; and he ordered his men to start: the enemy should not be kept waiting for them. He ordered one to go and see if the enemy stood ready. Report was brought that the enemy, horses, camels, mules, etc., with twice their number of men, also women and children, were there. Muhammad said that God's angel Dru'ri had told him of this, and gave the order to mount and prepare to attack the enemy at the foot of Mount Abuthassoli. The army marched to the hill and found there some small temples and big trees, and some men from the king's army who were doing *pūjā* [!] in the temples. The first minister took the priest before Muhammad who enquired whether the gods in the hill were equal to the great gods of Mecca, or were they greater. The priest replied they were related to the gods of Mecca. Muhammad asked why he worshipped those stones when he might worship the true God. He did not answer and Muhammad ordered him away. Some one said the priest was a Kaffir, and Muhammad said such was God's will.

Muhammad then ordered Imam Ali to cut down a tree on the top of the hill. Imam Ali did so, and a column of smoke at once rose to the skies. He ran in fear to the prophet who said that 3 *jinn*s were living in the tree and were now leaving it. Then Abas came up and said there was a snake on the hill, so huge that only God knows its magnitude, and flames shot from its mouth. The prophet with a few followers went to see it. The Arabs began to run like sheep before the tiger. But the prophet said: — "Do not fear; stand behind me." They did so. The prophet looked at the serpent, it lowered its head and creeping towards him knocked its head on the ground, saying, "Oh prophet of world-wide renown, I am not a serpent, but a leader of the *jinn*s. I am a Mussalman. There are Kaffirs and Mussalmans among the *jinn*s. The prophet knows why we wander in the world: to bite and kill the prophet's enemies. Give me leave and I will destroy the king's army." Then the prophet said: — "We do not need you now. I will tell you if we do. Leave this place and may God bless you." The serpent fled to another country.



The prophet remained in the hill and next morning left for **Hunain**, the enemy's camp. The Kaffir king was startled, invoked his gods and ordered his army to pray, and to get into battle array. "God will bless you. If they are 12,000, we are 500,000." The king called his minister called **Musa**, "Ho minister! Get up this tree and tell me the number of the enemy and their equipments." He climbed the tree and said:—"A man carrying a flag is in front. They come like lightning. Their horses are as if dancing." The king said:—"Who comes in front?" The minister replied:—"Two chiefs on horse-back, each carrying a flag." "Of what colour?" "One is white and the other is yellow. Behind comes one with a green flag. All their turbans are green, and their coats are white. Both are very clever." "You know the people of Mecca," said the king, "who are they?" One is **Abbas**, the prophet's father's elder brother, the tiger of men; a rich man. The other is **Pakalu**, a brave warrior." Looking again, the minister said:—"Oh king! I see something very wonderful: a great warrior comes. His horse is like an eagle and he comes like a lion that has seen a deer. He looks as if he will kill us all." The king asked his name. The minister replied:—"Imam Ali, the fourth minister; there is none so brave in Muhammad's army." The king ordered him to look again. "Great king, I see one whom I am powerless to describe: my tongue fails; my eyes become dim. He will confound your army. His clothes shine like the sun at noon. He rides a huge horse. His beauty is beyond description. The sun and moon cannot be compared to him. His horse's hoofs touch the ground like thunder. His splendour fills the earth and the skies. The clouds are as an umbrella over his head." The king asked:—"Who is it?" "Oh king! it is Muhammad the prophet." Then the king said sorrowfully:—"Ah God! when they see him, my army will not be able to fight." The king and the minister then went to their tent.

The king cried out:—"The prophet has come with his army. Fear not. Be firm." The army answered:—"They are great sorcerers; we are not able to fight them." An angel said:—"Fear not! Adorn your gods and hold them before the army; call out their names and pray, and you will succeed." Seeing that panic seized his army, the king ordered liquor to be brought. The whole army drank, and taking their gods placed them in front. The king said:—"Fear not in battle: if you have any fear, you will lose." And he promised large rewards.

By this time the prophet's army came in sight. The prophet said:—"The enemy deceives us. They are in ambush by the hill." Then the Angels Gabriel and Michael came with a thousand angels and joined the prophet's army. The reason for their coming was this:—"The Kaffirs numbered 5 lakhs and the prophet's army but 12,000. The Kaffirs looked at them and laughed, saying, "We should not have brought so many." So the prophet's army was in fear, saying, "We are but a few, and they mock us. Then the prophet prayed to God who sent his angels who descended from the sky on aerial horses. They said:—"The Kaffirs lie in wait. We will go in front; you come behind us. We can see them as fish in a bottle of water. If you come with us they will perish." Then rushing at those who were concealed they killed them all. A few escaped and told the king on the hill top what had happened. Eblis came and took the king by the hand as he said:—"Have angels also come for the battle?" and he began to run. So the king said:—"Who will help us if you run away?" Eblis said:—"I cannot fight against angels." The king implored him, but Eblis shook him off and fled. The king was thrown far and fell on a blind man's neck. The blind man asked:—"Who are you?" "I am the king." The blind man said:—"Will the king fall on a blind man's neck? Liar!" and drew his sword to kill him. But the king swore by all his gods; and both went to the tent.

The two armies fought. A mounted warrior of the king's army, armed with 18 weapons, rushed to the prophet's army and said:—"I am **Akubath**. Let Muhammad's army come on." The prophet called out **Jabagir** and said:—"Fight him. God will bless you." There was a desperate conflict. He cut **Akubath** and his horse in two with one blow. Another Kaffir rushed forward and he too was slain. So the Arab killed 15 Kaffirs. More Kaffirs ventured, but the Arab mocked them, making his horse dance. A valiant Kaffir **Makmas** said:—"Wretch! I will cleave your skull!" "Many wished to engage him, but the prophet prevented them saying he was a mighty warrior and



called on his fourth minister Imam Ali, who went forward and said:—"I am Imam Ali! I broke your idols." He touched the Kaffir with his sword and as he fell, cut him in two. Another Kaffir came and fought for ten hours and was killed. Twelve others were killed.

Then the king called out his third minister. His helmet weighed 30 lbs. His sword was 14 cubits in length and he was as tall as a cocoanut tree, and as big as a hill. God never created such a human being. If he fell, 1,000 men would die at once. The Arabs were afraid to see him and prayed to God. The prophet himself was confounded, and said:—"Let the fourth minister meet him. There is no other help." There was a hard fight and the fourth minister cut to pieces his 18 weapons and killed him. The prophet praised God.

The Kaffirs were about to fly, but the king rallied them; and then they said it was by witchcraft and not in fair fight that their hero was killed. A general battle took place, and the fourth minister and 130 Arabs were wounded. But the prophet touched them with his hands and they were at once healed. Suddenly the Arabs fled, for in the front rank of the Kaffirs were kings, and when they were killed the Arabs began to rifle their gems, upon which the Kaffirs sent volleys of rockets [!] amongst them. And there was another reason. The prophet's first minister, Abu-Bakr-Siddik said:—"The enemy are numberless; whereupon 8,000 of the prophet's army fled. Four thousand were left, and of these only 1,000 fought, the others merely looking on. One said:—"We are 4,000 while they are five lakhs: we will have to run." But a voice from Heaven said:—"Despair not! Let them be ten lakhs." Again they fought, but at last they began to fly. Then Eblis, assuming the form of the second minister, said:—"Ho ye Arabs! Fly for your lives! You are in a boundless ocean of sorrow. There is no escape but in flight. The prophet is killed. Is there battle without a king?" The prophet's army fled, and there were but seven persons left, and of these, four were the ministers. These ran to the prophet and said:—"We are but seven persons against more than four lakhs. What can we do?" Then the prophet raised his hands towards heaven, lifted his eyes and prayed. He put on his armour and rode on his favourite vehicle. The four ministers stood beside him and God commanded 2,000 angels to descend at once to help the prophet. They came, looking like young men; their coats were white and their turbans were black. The earth shook as they alighted. They stood on 4 sides and ordered the ministers to fight. All fought bravely and the enemy began to fly. The prophet asked a minister to recall his army. Patel said:—"Where can they be found? Call them!" The sound was carried by the air to the ears of the army, and they returned and begged for pardon, saying Eblis had deceived them. Laying their swords to their stomachs, the soldiers said they would kill themselves if not pardoned. An angel from God said they had spoken the truth. The ministers of the king said:—"We cannot defeat the Arabs. The four ministers of the prophet are invincible." They caused our swords to fall, and their horses ran over our heads like lightning. They killed forty to our one. Three lakhs of our army are slain." Women and children dashed their heads on the ground and said to the king:—"Our husbands, fathers and brothers are killed: send us home."

The king ordered them to be fed. Then he mounted his war horse, and dressed in his brightest gems went out and challenged the prophet. The prophet sent a man **Vazir** to meet him. The king killed him and four others. A young warrior, **Jaffari**, with the prophet's permission went to meet him. It was the day after his wedding, and he was 16 years old. The king cut him together with his horse in pieces in the twinkling of an eye. One of his ministers told the king to go back; he would fight in his stead and kill 12,000 Arabs. The Arabs said:—"There is no devil equal to him. With one blow he will kill 1,000 of us." The prophet sent **Abdulla**, but the Kaffir cut him in pieces. His brother **Abdul Keriva** went out, and he too was killed. No more Arabs ventured.

Seeing no more coming to meet him, he returned to his tent, and his wife said, "Where is the head of Ali?" He replied:—"I will give it to you to-morrow." She asked:—"Is Ali 100 cubits high?" "May be so. There is no such warrior in the prophet's army." "Do not approach or touch me: I will not be your wife until you bring the head of Ali." He was furious, and rushed out



calling, "Ho ye prophet! Send me your best man, or your whole army;" and he beat the ground. The prophet said:—"God will give special benefits to whoever kills this wretch. I guarantee it." An Amir went and was killed at once. The Kaffir cried:—"Where are your brave men? Kalid? Suvar? Sayid? Where is the brave Talhat? Where is Abu Bakr? Where is Omar? Where is the world-renowned Ali? My heart beats like the waves of ocean to fight the tiger-like Ali. Oh Muhammad! where is your God!" An Arab, Athusamed, leaped forward but the Kaffir took him by the leg and dashed him to the ground.

Then the prophet said:—"Where is Imam Ali?" "He is fighting on the hill." "Let 500 take his place and send him here." He came. The prophet prayed. The Kaffir asked:—"Oh beautiful youth, who are you?" He replied:—"Imam Ali." The Kaffir said:—"You are his slave. Send him to me and save your life." They fought for 3 days. On the 4th day Ali said:—"Embrace the prophet's faith or I kill you." The Kaffir said:—"You are brave. No one else could have fought me for 3 days." The Kaffir's wife watched the fight from a hill and sent her head dress by a slave, saying, "Cut off the head of Ali, and smear this cloth with his blood, or never come near me again." Then they fought desperately for six days. On the seventh day Ali made a noise which shook the earth and the sky. The Kaffir was stunned, and Ali cut off his head. The prophet asked what was the army doing, and Ali replied it was standing still and the Kaffir army had fled.

The prophet ordered the dead to be counted, and it was found that 1,000 Ashabis had been slain. The Kaffirs told their king:—"For one of them that we kill they kill 1,000. They believe they go to Heaven and do not fear death. Let us make peace. Our gods have not helped us. They have killed our brave men by witchcraft." The king was sad, and threw his crown on the ground. A vassal asked permission and went to the battle-field calling for the bravest of the prophet's men to meet him. An Arab went out, and the king killed him. Then the prophet ordered Imam Ali to fight the king. The king wounded him, but Ali mounted his horse and they fought for 22 hours. At night they separated. Again they met. At night Ali said:—"Oh king! do not lose your life: join the fourth religion.<sup>20</sup> If you do, you will gain Heaven." The king said:—"If you defeat me, I will join your faith. Let us dismount and fight with our hands. If you are victorious I will join you." They wrestled. Ali caught the king by his belt and was about to throw him when he called out, "I am defeated: do not throw me." Ali took him to the prophet and the merciful prophet embraced him, and told him the secret of his faith. Seeing this the Kaffir army fled.

The king wrote and collected 30,000 more soldiers and ordered them to fight. They challenged the Arabs. A leader of the Kaffirs wounded an Arab, but the prophet gently touched his wounds and healed them. There was a general battle and neither side prevailed. Meanwhile the prophet retired alone to a tree a mile distant to pray. A Kaffir approached stealthily to kill him, and raised his sword. In an instant, there was a wall of fire protecting the prophet, and the Kaffir was aghast. The prophet finished his prayers and smiled, saying:—"Ho king! fear not, but come before me." He came, and begged the prophet's mercy, and embraced his faith, and at once fought against the Kaffirs [*sic*]. The king was alarmed and sent a larger army to seize the prophet and his fourth minister, Ali.

There was a combat between Shaibath and Rabiyyath for 2 days and neither prevailed. The prophet prayed to God, and an eagle carried off the turban of Shaibath the Kaffir. Then Rabiyyath cut off his head. A magic square in his turban had protected him. It was the Angel Gabriel who, in the form of an eagle, carried off his turban. The Kaffir army then fled in great fear. The king rallied his men, and a dreadful battle ensued. For five days and nights it lasted. The Arabs were nearly overcome, when the prophet at the door of his tent prayed to God:—"Oh God, I never began anything without your command. It is said in the Koran that God helps those who carry out His commands. Give courage and strength to my soldiers. We cannot fight the Kaffirs who are coming like dark

<sup>20</sup> The Mappilas call their religion the "Fourth Veda."



clouds." God granted the strength of 1,000 lions to Ali, and to all the others the strength of from 4 to 40 lions. For seven days the battle lasted, and still the Kaffirs did not give way. Then the fourth minister made a sound which shook the earth and the skies, the sea and the hills. The Kaffirs became deaf and blind. The Kaffirs fled, and after them their king. The Arabs pursued and killed many. Then they returned to camp. One Arab did not return, for he had gone to find the enemy's hiding place.

The prophet asked how many were killed. His minister replied:— "Three thousand." "Such is the will of God. They will obtain paradise." He then asked:— "How many Kaffirs?" His minister said:— "God alone can say." Ordering the corpses to be buried he enquired where the Kaffir's army lay hidden. The Kaffirs had taken shelter in the fort of a friendly king. The prophet ordered the spoil to be counted, and sent all the gold to a fort to be there watched; and he commanded his army to march against the fort *Tayif*. The fort was taken, and the king was captured. Imam Ali offered the captive king the prophet's faith, or death. His offer was scorned, and he raised his sword to strike the king, when the prophet said:— "He is a king, and must not be killed." The prophet had his chains removed and let him free to go where he pleased. This act of mercy moved the king to tears. He fell at Muhammad's feet, and embraced his religion. The prophet thereupon restored to him all his wealth and possessions.

**Note.**—In conclusion I acknowledge with gratitude the invaluable assistance in translation given me by **Mr. T. Kannan of Calicut.**

## THE ASA DI WAR, A MORNING PRAYER OF THE SIKHS.

BY M. MACAULIFFE.

### NOTE.

It is said that **Guru Nānak** on going to *Pāk Patṭan* in the Panjāb to meet **Shēkh Brahm**, otherwise called **Farid Sani**, or **Farid the Second**, was asked to give religious instruction, and in reply composed the greater portion of the *ślōks* and *paūrīs* of the hymns known under the name of **Āsā di War**. Some of the remaining hymns were composed by **Guru Angad**, the second Sikh Guru. The *Āsā di War* is repeated by religious Sikhs after the *Jappī* and the *Hazārī di Shabd* as a morning divine service.

The word **War** originally meant a dirge for the brave slain in battle, then it meant any song of praise, and in this collection it means God's praises generally. *Wars* were composed in stanzas called *paūrīs*, literally ladders, which were sung or chanted by professional minstrels. In the *Granth Sāhib*, *paūrīs* always follow *ślōks*. A *ślōk* is a verse written in imitation of the Sanskrit measure so called.

The sixth Guru is said to have written in the *Granth Sāhib*, as a preface to this collection, that it should be sung to the air of "*Tundā As Rājā*."<sup>1</sup>

### ASA DI WAR.

There is but one God whose name is true, the Creator, devoid of fear and enmity, immortal, unborn, self-existent; by the favor of the Guru.<sup>2</sup>

**Guru Nānak (Rāg Āsā).**

This *War* includes *ślōks*. The *ślōks* also were written by the first Guru, and should be sung to the air of *Tundā As Rājā*.

<sup>1</sup> As, son of Onitrib, was a holy prince against whom a false charge had been preferred by his lascivious step-mother, which led to his hands and feet being cut off as punishment. One of the many Oriental versions of the story of Potiphar's Wife.

<sup>2</sup> *Guru Parshād*— See my translation of the *Jappī* for another interpretation of these words.



## ŚLŌK I.

Guru Nānak.

I am a sacrifice to my Guru a hundred times a day,  
Who without any delay made demi-gods out of men.

Guru Angad.

Were a hundred moons to rise, and a thousand suns to mount *the sky*,  
Even with such light there would be appalling darkness without the Guru.

Guru Nānak.

Nānak, they who very clever in their own estimation think not of the Guru,  
Shall be left like spurious sesames in a reaped field.  
They shall be left in the field, saith Nānak, without an owner :  
The wretches may even bear fruit and flower, but they shall be as ashes within their bodies.

Paurī I.<sup>3</sup>

God Himself created the world and Himself gave names to *things*.  
He made Mayā<sup>4</sup> by His power; seated He beheld *His work* with delight.  
O Creator, Thou art the Giver; being pleased Thou bestowest and practisest kindness  
Thou knowest all things; Thou givest and takest life with a word.<sup>5</sup>  
Seated Thou didst behold *Thy work* with delight.

## ŚLŌK II.

Guru Nānak.

True are Thy regions and true Thy universes;  
True Thy worlds and true Thy creation;  
True Thine acts and all Thy thoughts;  
True Thine order and true Thy court;  
True Thy command and true Thy behest;  
True Thy favor and true Thy signs.  
Hundreds of thousands and millions declare Thee true.  
True is all Thy power, true all Thy strength;  
True Thy praises, true Thy eulogies;  
True Thy might, O true King.  
Nānak, true are they who meditate on the True One.  
They who die and are born *again* are the falsest of the false.<sup>6</sup>

Guru Nānak.<sup>7</sup>

Great is His glory whose name is great;  
Great is His glory whose justice is true;  
Great is His glory whose seat is immovable;  
Great is His glory who understandeth *our* utterances;  
Great is His greatness who knoweth all our feelings;  
Great is the glory of Him who giveth without consulting *others*;  
Great is the glory of Him who is all in all Himself.  
Nānak, his acts cannot be described.  
Whatever He did and hath to do all dependeth on His own will.

<sup>3</sup> The paurīs in this collection are all by Bābā Nānak, so in the original his name is omitted at their head.

<sup>4</sup> In Sanskrit literature Māya is styled *anādi*, without a beginning, hence uncreated, but this is not the doctrine of the Gurus. To believe that God did not create Mayā would be to believe in a limitation of His power.

<sup>5</sup> *Kṛado* — also translated, thou givest and takest life from the body.

<sup>6</sup> *Kach* is here used as the correlative of *such*, true.

<sup>7</sup> In the original — Mahala I. It is so written to mark the distinction between the preceding verses, which are *ślōks*, and the following verses, which are in a different measure.



*Guru Angad.*

This world is the True One's chamber; the True One's dwelling is therein.  
Some by His order He absorbeth in *Himself*; others by His order He destroyeth.<sup>8</sup>  
Some at His pleasure He withdraweth from mammon; others *He causeth* to abide therein.  
It cannot be even told whom He will regenerate.  
Nānak, he to whom God revealeth Himself, is known as holy.

**Paūrī II.**

Nānak, God having created animals recorded their names, and appointed Dharmrāj to judge their acts.  
At His court the real truth is adjudged; He separateth and removeth those who are attached to mammon.  
There the false find no place: they go to hell with blackened faces.  
Those who are imbued with thy name win; the deceivers lose.  
God recorded names and appointed Dharmrāj to record acts.

**Ślōk III.**

*Guru Nānak.*

Wonderful Thy word, wonderful Thy knowledge;  
Wonderful Thy creatures, wonderful their species;  
Wonderful their forms, wonderful their colors;  
Wonderful the animals who wander naked;  
Wonderful Thy wind; wonderful Thy water;  
Wonderful Thy fire which sporteth wondrously;  
Wonderful the earth, wonderful the sources of production;  
Wonderful the pleasures to which mortals are attached;  
Wonderful is meeting, wonderful separation from Thee;  
Wonderful is hunger, wonderful repletion;  
Wonderful Thy praises, wonderful Thy eulogies;  
Wonderful the desert, wonderful the road;  
Wonderful Thy nearness, wonderful Thy remoteness;  
Wonderful to behold Thee present.  
Beholding these astonishing things I remain wondering.  
Nānak, those who understand them are supremely fortunate.

*Guru Nānak.*

By Thy power we see, by Thy power we hear, by Thy power we fear, or enjoy the highest happiness;  
By Thy power were made the nether regions and the heavens; by Thy power all creation;  
By Thy power were produced the Vēds, the Purāns, the Muhammadan books, and by Thy power all compositions;  
By Thy power we eat, drink, and clothe ourselves; by Thy power springeth all affection;  
By Thy power are the species, genera, and colors of creatures; by Thy power are the animals of the world.<sup>9</sup>  
By Thy power are virtues; by Thy power are vices: by Thy power are honor and dishonor;<sup>10</sup>  
By Thy power are wind, water, and fire; by Thy power is the earth.<sup>11</sup>

<sup>8</sup> By separating from Himself.

<sup>9</sup> Also translated — By Thy power was created aqimate and inanimate nature.

<sup>10</sup> *Mān abhīmān*. The latter word is for *apimān*, as so often in the *Granth Sāhib*. Compare *mān abhīmān madh* so *śīcāk nahā*. He who hath regard for honor or dishonor is not a holy man. (*Srī Rāj Gura Arjan*, 26; see also *Kēdāra Kabīr*, 1.)

<sup>11</sup> *Dhartī khāk*. It is probably unnecessary to translate the word *khāk*.



Every thing existeth by Thy power ; Thou art the omnipotent Creator ; Thy name is the holiest of the holy.

*Saith Nānak*, Thou beholdest and pervadest *all things* subject to Thy command : *Thou art* altogether unrivalled.

### Paūrī III.

*Man* having enjoyed himself becometh ashes, and the soul passeth away.

However great and wealthy a man may be, *the ministers of death* throw a chain on his neck and take him away.

There an account of his acts is read ; *the Judge* on his seat taketh the account and passeth sentence.

*Such a man* shall find no place of shelter ; when he is beaten, who will hear his cries ?

*Man*, blind that thou art, thou hast wasted thy life.

### Slōk IV.

*Guru Nānak.*

In fear<sup>12</sup> the winds and breezes ever blow ;

In fear flow hundreds of thousands of rivers ;

In fear fire performeth its forced labor ;

In fear the earth is pressed by its burden ;

In fear Indar<sup>13</sup> moveth headlong : in fear *sitteth* Dharmrāj at *God's* gate ;

In fear is the sun, in fear the moon ; they travel millions of miles without arriving at an end ;

In fear are the Sidhs, the Budhas, the demigods, and the Nāths ; in fear are the stars and the firmament ;<sup>14</sup>

In fear are wrestlers, very mighty men and divine heroes ;

In fear cargoes of men come and go.

God hath destined fear for every one ;<sup>15</sup> Nānak, the Formless One, the True, is alone without fear.

*Guru Nānak.*

Nānak, the Formless One is without fear ; all the Rāmas were dust.

How many stories there are of Krishṇa ! how many Vēds and religious compositions !<sup>16</sup>

How many beggars dance, and fall, and again beat time !

Actors enter the market place and draw forth their appliances ;<sup>17</sup>

Kings and queens sing and utter nonsense ;<sup>18</sup>

They wear ear-rings worth hundreds of thousands, and necklaces worth hundreds of thousands.<sup>19</sup>

The body on which they are worn, O Nānak, shall become ashes.

Divine knowledge is not sought in mere words ; to speak concerning it were as hard as iron ;

If one be so destined, he obtaineth it ; skill and orders are useless therefor.

<sup>12</sup> The fear of God is, of course, meant.

<sup>13</sup> The god of the firmament.

<sup>14</sup> *Alīw* — from the Sanskrit *āśāṅga*. The phrase is also translated — In fear is the firmament extended.

<sup>15</sup> *Literally*, God hath written the destiny of fear on the heads of all.

<sup>16</sup> *Vichār* — see above Slōk III., *Kudrat sarō vichār*. Also translated — How many expound the Vēds !

<sup>17</sup> *Kadā bēzār* — also translated — draw a crowd around them.

<sup>18</sup> *Bolā āi pāṭāl* — *literally*, speak of the upper and lower regions. *Āi pāṭāl* is applied to the language put into the mouths of demons in Sanskrit dramas.

<sup>19</sup> *Lakh lakṣāṇ*. *Takā* is really a double pice, or about a halfpenny of English money, but in the plural it means money in general.



Paurl IV.

If the Kind One look with kindness, then is the true Guru obtained.  
The soul hath wandered through many births, and now the true Guru hath communicated  
the Word.  
There is no benefactor so great as the true Guru; hear this, all ye people.  
By meeting the true Guru who hath removed pride from his heart, and who preacheth  
the truest of the true,  
The True One is obtained.

Slók V.

Let all the *gharīs* be your milk-maids, and the *pahars*<sup>20</sup> your Krishnas and Gopals:<sup>21</sup>  
Let wind, water, and fire be your jewels; and the moon and sun your avatars;  
The whole earth your *stage* properties and vessels, which are all entanglements.  
Nānak, those who are deroid of divine knowledge are robbed; the minister of death hath  
devoured them.

Guru Nānak.

The disciples play, the Gurus dance,  
Shake their feet, and roll their heads.  
Dust flieeth and falleth on their hair;<sup>22</sup>  
The audience seeing it laugh and go home.  
For the sake of food the performers beat time,  
And dash themselves on the ground.  
The milk-maids sing, Krishnas sing,  
Sitās and royal Rāmas sing.  
Fearless is the Formless One, whose name is true,  
And whose creation is the whole world.  
The worshipers on whom God bestoweth kindness worship Him;  
Pleasant<sup>23</sup> is the night for those who long for Him in their heart.  
By the Guru's instruction to his disciples this knowledge is obtained,  
That the Kind One saveth those on whom He looketh with favor.  
Oil-presses, spinning-wheels, hand-mills, potter's wheels,  
Plates,<sup>24</sup> whirlwinds, many and endless,  
Tops, churning-staves, countless<sup>25</sup>  
Birds tumble and take no breath.  
Men put animals on stakes and swing them round.  
O Nānak, the tumblers are innumerable and endless.  
In the same way those bound in entanglements are swung round;  
Every one danceth according to his own acts—  
Those who dance and laugh shall weep on their departure;  
They cannot fly or obtain supernatural power.  
Dancing and jumping are mental recreations;  
Nānak, those who have fear in their hearts have also love.

<sup>20</sup> The *gharī*, a measure of time for which there is no English word, is twenty-two and a half minutes. Three hours make a *pahar*.

<sup>21</sup> *Gopāls* are herdsmen among whom Krishna used to sport.

<sup>22</sup> *Jhātā* is a woman's head of hair. The actors, who in India are all men, wear female wigs.

<sup>23</sup> *Bhānī*, literally, dewy, when the atmosphere is calm and the heat not excessive.

<sup>24</sup> *Thāī* — plates poised on a stick and spun round.

<sup>25</sup> *Anyāh*; some explain this to mean buffaloes which tread out corn.



## Pauri V.

Thy name is the Formless : by repeating it *man* goeth not to hell.  
 The soul and body are all Thine : what Thou givest man eateth : to say aught else were  
 waste of words.  
 If thou desire thine advantage, do good acts and be lowly.  
 Even though thou stave off old age, it will come to thee in the disguise of death.  
 None may remain when his measure<sup>26</sup> is full.

## Ślōk VI.

The Musalmans praise the Shariât, read it, and reflect on it;  
 But God's servants are they who employ themselves in His service in order to behold Him.  
 The Hindus praise the Praised One whose appearance and form are incomparable;  
 They bathe in holy streams, perform idol-worship<sup>27</sup> and adoration, use<sup>28</sup> copious incense of  
 sandal.  
 Those who are Jōgis meditate on God<sup>29</sup> the Creator, whom they call the Unseen,  
 Whose form is minute, whose name is the Bright One, and who is the measure of their  
 bodies.<sup>30</sup>  
 In the minds of the generous contentment is produced in their desire to give.  
 Others give, but ask a thousand fold more, and *and still want* the world to honor them.  
 Why mention thieves, adulterers, perjurers, evil and sinful men?  
 Several depart from here after eating what they had amassed in *previous births*; <sup>31</sup> shall  
 they have any business whatever in *the next world*?<sup>32</sup>  
 The *animals* which live in the water, dry land, the fourteen worlds, and all creation —  
 What they say Thou alone knowest; for them too Thou carest.  
 Saith Nānak, the saints hunger to praise Thee; the true Name is their support.  
 In everlasting joy they abide day and night: *may I obtain* the dust of the feet of such  
 virtuous men!

Guru Nānak and Shēkh Brāhm discussed the question of the disposal of the dead.  
 It is believed the Shekh maintained that a man who was buried would go to hell.

## Guru Nānak.

The ashes of the Musalmān fall into the potter's clod;  
 Vessels and bricks are fashioned from them; they cry out as they burn.  
 The poor ashes burn and weep, and sparks fly from them.  
 Nānak, the Creator who made the world, knoweth *whether it is better to be burned or  
 buried*.<sup>33</sup>

## Pauri VI.

Without the true Guru none hath found God; without the true Guru none hath found God.  
 God hath put Himself into the true guru; He hath made manifest and proclaimed this.  
 Salvation is ever obtained by meeting the true Guru who hath banished worldly love from  
 within him.  
 Best are the meditations of him who hath fixed his mind on the True One;  
 He hath found the Giver of life to the world.

<sup>26</sup> *Paiai* - *gai* is a grain measure.

<sup>27</sup> *Archā*. This word not only means worship, but the idol that is worshiped.

<sup>28</sup> Some suppose *kīr* to be a noun meaning the lines Hindus draw on the ground to enclose cooking places, within which others are not admitted.

<sup>29</sup> *Sup*, literally, void, compare the Greek *κόλον*, hollow, from which the Latin *column*, heaven, was obtained.

<sup>30</sup> It will be observed here that the jogis have a different conception of God from the Hindus.

<sup>31</sup> And have done nothing meritorious in this birth.

<sup>32</sup> This verse is also translated — Several depart from here after spending what they possessed; had they any other business in this world?

<sup>33</sup> *Uṭ jāṛ, ut ṭ gadd* — The Hindus are burnt, the Musalmans are buried. — Kabir, *Saith*, 1.



ŚLŌK VII.

In pride<sup>34</sup> man cometh, in pride he departeth ;  
 In pride is man born, in pride doth he die ;  
 In pride he giveth, in pride he taketh ;  
 In pride he earneth, in pride he spendeth ;  
 In pride man becometh true or false ;  
 In pride man meditateth evil or good ;  
 In pride he goeth to hell or heaven ;  
 In pride he rejoiceth, in pride he mourneth ;  
 In pride he becometh filthy, in pride he is cleansed ;  
 In pride man loseth his caste and race ;  
 In pride is the ignorant, in pride is the clever man ;  
 In pride one knoweth not the value of deliverance or salvation ;  
 In pride is mammon and in pride its effect on the heart ;  
 In pride are animals created.  
 When pride is quenched, God's gate is seen.  
 Without divine knowledge man worrieth himself by talking.  
 Nānak, the Commander hath thus ordained it ;  
 As man regardeth God, so God regardeth him.<sup>35</sup>

Guru Angad.

It is the nature of pride that it produceth pride.<sup>36</sup>  
 This pride is a trammel which subjecteth man to repeated transmigration.  
 What is the origin of pride, and by what device shall it depart ?  
 For pride it is ordained that man wander according to his previous acts.  
 Pride is a chronic disease, but there is also a medicine for it in the heart.  
 If God bestow His grace, man shall avail himself of the guru's instruction ;  
 Saith Nānak, hear, O ye men, in this way trouble shall depart.

PAUṚĪ VII.

They who have meditated on God as the truest of the true, have done real worship and are contented ;  
 They have refrained from evil,<sup>37</sup> done good deeds, and practised honesty.  
 They have lived on a little corn and water, and burst the entanglements of the world.  
 Thou art the great Bestower ; ever Thou givest gifts which increase a quarter fold.  
 Those who have magnified the great God have found Him.

ŚLŌK VIII.

Men, trees, the banks of sacred streams, clouds, fields,  
 Islands, peoples, countries, continents, the universe,  
 The sources of production from eggs, cauls, the earth, and perspiration.  
 Lakes, mountains, animals — O Nānak, God knoweth their condition.  
 Nānak, God having created animals taketh care of them all.<sup>38</sup>

<sup>34</sup> Haṁā — literally, egoism.

<sup>35</sup> Also translated —

(a) Treat men according to their acts.

(b) Treat others as thou wouldst be treated thyself.

<sup>36</sup> Literally — that it performeth works of pride.

<sup>37</sup> Compare Guru Angad —

"Nānak, chinīd mat kārā ; chinīd Tīshī āhī

Jal māh jānt updīā ; tīnā bhī r'jīd'ī.

Nānak, be not anxious ; anxiety is for Him

Who created animals in the water ; to them also He giveth their daily food."

<sup>37</sup> Literally — Have not put their feet into evil.



The Creator who created the world hath to take thought for it also.  
It is the same Creator who made the world who taketh thought for it.  
To Him be obeisance, blessings be on Him! His court is imperishable.  
Nānak, without the true Name what is a sacrificial mark? what a sacrificial thread?

*Guru Nānak.*

Man may perform hundreds of thousands of good acts and deeds, hundreds of thousands of approved charities,  
Hundreds of thousands of penances at sacred places, *sahaj jōg*<sup>39</sup> in the wilderness,  
Hundreds of thousands of braveries, and part with his life in the conflict of battle;  
He may study hundreds of thousands of Vēds and works of divine knowledge and meditation, and read the Parāns —  
Nānak, these devices would be of no avail; true is the mark of destiny.<sup>40</sup>  
The Creator who made the world hath decreed transmigration.

*Paupī VIII.*

Thou alone art the true Lord who hath diffused the real truth.  
He to whom Thou givest obtaineth truth, and he then practiseth it.  
Man obtaineth truth on meeting the true guru in whose heart the truth dwelleth.  
The fool knoweth not truth, and hath wasted his life by obstinacy.  
Why hath he come into the world?

*Slōk IX.*

*Guru Nānak.*

A man may load carts with books; he may load men with books to take with him;  
Books may be put on boats, and pits be filled with them.  
A man may read books for months, he may read them for years;  
He may read them for life, he may read them while he has breath —  
Nānak, only one word, *God's name*, would be of account; all else would be the senseless discussion of pride.

*Guru Nānak.*

The more one readeth and writeth, the more he is tormented;  
The more one wandereth on pilgrimages, the more he babbleth;  
The more religious garbs man weareth, the more discomfort he causeth his body.  
Bear, O my soul, the result of thine own acts.  
He who eateth not corn<sup>41</sup> hath lost the relish of life.  
Men suffer much pain through their attachment to mammon.  
Those who wear not clothes suffer terribly day and night.  
Man ruineth himself by perpetual silence; how can he who sleepeth in ignorance be awaked without a Guru.  
Even though man go bare-footed, he must still suffer for his own acts.<sup>42</sup>  
If a man eat filth, and put ashes on his head,  
The blind fool loseth respect; without the Name he obtaineth no abiding place.  
The ignorant man who dwelleth in the wilderness and at burial and cremation grounds,<sup>43</sup> knoweth not God and shall afterwards repent.

<sup>39</sup> *Sahaj jōg*, in contradistinction to the *hath jōg* of the *Aphorisms of Patanjali*, means keeping the mind fixed on God. See Manni Singh's *Life of Guru Nānak*.

<sup>40</sup> *Karm* — also translated — God's grace.

<sup>41</sup> Several fakirs do not eat corn, some go naked, some practise perpetual silence, some go barefooted, some eat filth, etc., etc.

<sup>42</sup> The Gyānis generally translate — If a man go bare-footed, he is merely suffering for his sins. The word *upāśāna* is derived from *upāśi* shoes, and *tyāgā* to leave off.

<sup>43</sup> *Murī* is where a saintly Hindu's body or ashes repose; *maṣānī* is a cremation ground.



He who meeteth the true Guru and fixeth *God's* name in his heart, obtaineth comfort.  
Nānak, he on whom *God* looketh with favor obtaineth Him.  
He becometh free from hopes and fears, and destroyeth his pride by means of the Word.

PAURĪ IX.

The saints, *O Lord*, please Thy heart, adorn Thy gate, and hymn Thy praises.  
Nānak, they who are outside Thy favor, find no entrance and wander in many births.  
Some know not their origin, and have an inordinate opinion of themselves.  
I am a singer of low caste; others call themselves of high caste.  
I only beg of those who meditate on Thee.<sup>44</sup>

ŚLŌK X.

Guru Nānak.

False are kings, false their subjects, false the whole world;  
False are mansions, false palaces, false those who dwell therein;  
False is gold; false silver; false he who weareth them;  
False the body; false raiment; false peerless beauty;  
False husbands; false wives; they pine and waste away.  
Man who is false, loveth what is false, and forgetteth the Creator.  
With whom contract friendship? The whole world passeth away.  
False is sweetness; false honey; in falsehood shiploads are drowned.  
Nānak uttereth supplication—except Thee, *O God*, everything is thoroughly false.

Guru Nānak.

Man is then known as true when truth is in his heart;  
When the filth of falsehood departeth, man washeth his body clean.  
Man is then known as true when he beareth love to the True One;  
When man heareth the name and restraineth his mind,<sup>45</sup> he shall then attain the door of salvation.  
Man shall then be known as true when he knoweth the true way;  
Having prepared the field of the body, put into it the seed of the Creator.  
Man shall then be known as true when he receiveth true instruction;  
Let man know mercy to living things and perform some works of charity.  
Man shall then be known as true, when he dwelleth in the pilgrimage of his heart;  
Let man after enquiry from the true guru rest and abide in his own heart;  
Truth is the medicine for all; it removeth and washeth away sin.  
Nānak maketh supplication to those who are in possession of truth.

PAURĪ X.

Be mine the gift of the dust of the saints' feet: if I obtain it, I shall apply it to my forehead.  
Forsake false covetousness; concentrating thy mind meditate on the Unseen One.  
Thou shalt obtain a reward in proportion to what thou hast done.  
If it have been so allotted from the beginning, man shall obtain the dust of the saints' feet.  
Ruin not thyself with scant service.<sup>46</sup>

<sup>44</sup> Also translated — I beg for a sight of those who meditate on Thee.

<sup>45</sup> Nām sun man rahisī — also translated — when one's mind becometh happy after hearing the Name.

<sup>46</sup> Compare — Ochhī bhaytī kaisi uttarasī pārt? How shall he of scant service be saved? — *Gaurī Kōbī*, 15.



## SLOK XI.

Guru Nānak.

There is a dearth of truth ; falsehood prevaileth ; the blackness of this age maketh men demons.

Those who have sown the seed have departed with honor ; how can half seed germinate ? If the seed be whole, it will germinate in the proper season.

Nānak, unbleached cloth cannot be dyed without a base.

If the body be put into the vat of fear, modesty be made its base,

And it be dyed with devotion, O Nānak, there will not be a trace of falsehood in it.

Guru Nānak.

Greed and sin are ruler and village accountant ; falsehood is master of the mint.

Lust, his minister, summoneth and examineth men, and sitteth in judgment on them.

The subjects are blind and without wisdom, and satisfy the judge's greed with bribes.

Gyānis dance, play musical instruments, disguise, and decorate themselves ;

They shout aloud,<sup>47</sup> sing of battles, and heroes' praises.

Fools call themselves pandits and with tricks and cavilling love to amass wealth.

Pretended religious men spoil their religious acts, and yet want the door of salvation ;

They call themselves continent, and leave their houses and homes, yet they know not the way.

Every one is perfect to himself : no one admitteth himself wanting.

If the weight of honor be put into the scale, then, Nānak, man shall appear properly weighed.

Guru Nānak.

Man's evil becometh known,<sup>48</sup> O Nānak ; the True One seeth all.

Every one maketh endeavors, but it is only what the Creator doeth that taketh place.

Caste hath no power in the next world : there is a new order of beings.

Those whose accounts are honored are the good.

## PAURI XI.

Those whom Thou didst so destine from the beginning meditate on Thee, O Lord.

There is nothing in the power of creatures ; O God, it is Thou who hast created the different worlds.

Some Thou blendest with Thyself ; others Thou ledest astray from Thee.

Thou art known by the favor of the guru, through whom Thou revealest Thyself.

Those who know Thee are easily absorbed in the True One.

## SLOK XII.

Guru Nānak.

Pain is medicine, worldly pleasure is a disease ; where there is such pleasure, there is no desire for God.

Thou art the Doer, I do nothing ; if I try to do anything, it cometh to nothing.

I am a sacrifice unto Thee ; Thou abidest in Thine omnipotence :

Thine end cannot be seen.

Thy light pervadeth creatures ; creatures are contained in Thy light ; Thou fillest inanimate and animate creation.<sup>49</sup>

Thou art the true Lord ; beautiful is Thy praise ; he who uttereth it is saved.

Nānak uttereth the words of the Creator ; what is to be done God continueth to do.

<sup>47</sup> *Unchī Kūkā*. The Kūkās, a sect of Sikhs, translate this — The Kūkās are exalted.

<sup>48</sup> *Burajog* — so *urajogā*, it shall be known.

<sup>49</sup> *Ākāl kāl* — also translated — Thy power (field) is inconceivable (a not, and hard to know). The words, however, present great difficulty, and no two *gyānis* agree as to their interpretation.



*Guru Angad.*

The Jôgis deem it their duty to acquire divine knowledge, the Brâhmans to read the Vêds,  
 The Khatrijs to exercise bravery, the Sûdras to work for others ;  
 But the highest duty of all is to repeat the name of the one God.<sup>50</sup>  
 He who knoweth the secret of this  
 Is a bright God himself, and Nânak is his slave.

*Guru Angad.*

There is one God, the God of all gods, the Supreme God of souls.  
 He who knoweth the secret of the soul and of God,  
 Is a bright God himself, and Nânak is his slave.

*Guru Nânak.*

Water remaineth if confined in a vessel ; but it cannot remain without a vessel.<sup>51</sup>  
 The mind controlled by divine knowledge is restrained ; but without a Guru there can be  
 no divine knowledge.

## PAURI XII.

If the literate and the illiterate are vicious, the latter are not punished.  
 As man acteth so shall he be described.  
 Play not such a game as shall bring thee defeat on arriving at God's court.  
 The literate and the illiterate shall be judged hereafter ;  
 The obstinate shall be punished in the next world.

*(To be continued.)*

## SONGS SUNG BY THE LAMBADIS.

BY F. FAWCETT.

THE Lambâdis, Brinjâris, or Sugâlis, as they are variously called in the Madras Presidency, are well known and need no introduction to the readers of this *Journal*. It cannot, however, be said that much is known about them racially, and it has not yet been determined whether they, the Indian gipsies, are identical with the gipsies of Europe. Here are some of their songs. The translations given are free renderings, as I experienced difficulty in arriving at a reasonably correct rendering of the songs, since there occur words in them of which no one can explain the meaning. Some of the songs themselves and many of the words are not in the least understood by the singers.

The following six Songs now given were taken down by Mr. P. Rama Rao from the mouths of five women of the Lambâdi *tasdâs* encamped at Râtibhâvi Vankâ, Rayadûrg Taluk, Bellary District, during 1900. Their names were: Ohâvali, aged 30 ; Lachhmi, aged 40 ; Gojji, aged 25 ; Mikhî, aged 20 ; Râmki, aged 30.

## Song No. I.

Râmâ bi chelê Lachumanâ bi chelê sôb chelenêhâr.  
 Jammakh khêlô râgô ranajhade Râjâ !  
 Mârô maragala namar Sîtâtô bovi kevadô.  
 Râgô ranajhade râjâ !

<sup>50</sup> Also translated — The Jôgis speak of divine knowledge, the Brâhmans of the Vedas ;  
 The Khatrijs of bravery, the Sôdras of working for others.  
 All that they speak is concerning the one God.

<sup>51</sup> Water cannot remain without a vessel. Compare — *kumbh binâ jal na tikhvâti*. — *Gauri Kabir*.



## Translation.

Rāma is gone, Lachhmana (his brother) is gone, all are doomed to go (i. e., die).

Let us therefore play the jolly play of a Rājā!

He chased and beat an illusory antelope, but the animal did not die. He chased the buck for Sītā (his wife) who was fragrant with the sweet smell of the snake-flower.

Let us therefore play the jolly play of a Rājā!

**Note.** — This song relates to a well known incident in the *Rāmāyana*. Rāma, Sītā and Lachhmana saw in the forest what appeared to be a golden antelope. Sītā wished for it, and Rāma chased it. Lachhmana followed him, and before the brothers returned, Rāvaṇa king of the *Hākshasas*, abducted Sītā.

## Song No. II.

Āssē dappē vālēkē lambī lambī dhōtī | vōrē kaniyan dēkan. Dab chālēdē.  
 Āssē dappē vālōkē tāngemā tōdā | tārē thōdana dēkan vālēmē rasiyā. Bhyē! Bhāyerē!  
 Āssē dappē vālēkū hātēmā kōradā | āssē koradāmē dēkavālēmē rasiyā. Dab chālēdē.  
 Āssē dappē vālēkū kadimā kanajōru | vuna dēka vālēmē rasiyā. Dab chālēdē.

## Translation.

The loin-cloth of a rich man is too long, seeing his earring [beat drum];  
 On the legs of a rich man there are silver chains, seeing which I am enamoured, [spoken]  
 Bhyē! Bhāyerē!  
 On the wrists of a rich man there are silver bracelets, seeing which I am enamoured; beat  
 drum and let us play.  
 On the waist of a rich man there is a silver thread, seeing which I am enamoured; beat  
 drum and let us play.

## Song No. III.

Abdu yūlarē Malān | Abdu yūlarē chōgān (*chorus*)  
 Sāyibare ghīru munang ghummaru ghāl | Vōrē māliya khādnēhār (*chorus*).  
 Mēlā hindōlōghāl | mārājare ghare mēlā hindōlōghāl (*chorus*).

## Translation.

Gauri says to her father: "Abdu father, in this place (here is) open ground."  
 In front of His (God's) house, let us meditate or praise Him: drive back His herds  
 of cattle.<sup>1</sup>  
 On the upstairs of Mahārājā's [house — palace] they have a hanging (or swinging) cradle.

## Song No. IV.

Bāgemā ghōḍōlō mōlālē, Titārājā.  
 Bāgemā kanadhōro mōlālē, Titārājā.  
 Bāgemā soneri bāgemā hasalō mōlālē, Titārājā.  
 Bāgemā koldā mōlā, kadaḍhari Rājā.  
 Bāgemā mungā mōlā, kadhadāri Rājā, soneri.

## Translation.

"O Titārājā, purchase horses in the jungles,  
 Purchase them with the silver waist thread on your waist.  
 Purchase them with the gold necklace round your neck.  
 Purchase them, oh truth-speaking Rājā, with the silver bangles on your arms,  
 Purchase them with that coral wreath round your neck."

<sup>1</sup> This is considered one of the sacred services to God.



**Note.** — This is explained thus by the Lambādis : — Titarāja, a Lombādi Mahātma (1) went to the forest to find his horses, and was killed by a tiger near Annigere in Mysore. His wife, by a species of second sight, knew of his fate and with her kinsfolk went to the place, where they found his bones. These she collected, made a fire and threw herself into it. She sang this song before she died. It is intended to be in praise of her husband.

## Song No. V.

Sudā savāye Bhaktu pēri ; kachē kērō divālō ; karpūra kerī artimā ; mēka mēlāri artimā ;  
pavanerpāpi artimā ; chānde sūrtari artimā ; jami mātā artimā.

## Translation.

O thou beautiful Goddess! I thy devoted worshipper, approach thee with a camphor-lighted *haligharthi*,<sup>2</sup> and I worship thee with it; I request thee to pour down rain; I worship thee with clear water. I worship the sun and the moon and the Mother Earth.

**Note.** — A prayer to the Goddess Durgā.

## Song No. VI.

Āndhadiyā Upabhavāni tārē dārē ; gaḍapar nōbaththu vājē.  
Āndhadiyā aki sadār Bhavāni tārē dārē ॥ gaḍapar nōbaththu vājē.  
Vānjuvā Vupabhavāni tārē dārē ; vari gōḍē sadāru Bhavāni tārē dārē ॥ gaḍapar  
nōbaththu vājē  
Kūbadiyā Upabhavāni tārē dārē ; gaḍapar nōbaththu vājē

## Translation.

O Bhavāni! a blind man is at your door in your presence. So I beat the drum in your name.  
Cure the eyes of your blind devotee, O Bhavāni! So I beat the drum in your name.  
There is a barren woman standing in your presence, O Bhavāni! Make her carry a child and stand in your presence, O Bhavāni! So I beat the drum in your name.  
There is a hump-backed crooked person in your presence, O Bhavāni! So I beat the drum in your name.

**Note.** — Prayer to the Goddess Bhavāni.

## A COMPLETE VERBAL CROSS-INDEX TO YULE'S HOBSON-JOBSON OR GLOSSARY OF ANGLO-INDIAN WORDS.

BY CHARLES PARTRIDGE, M. A.

(Continued from p. 367.)

Cande; ann. 1552: <i>s. v.</i> Candy, 119, ii.	Candie (Sugar); ann. 1627: <i>s. v.</i> Candy (Sugar-); 120, i.
Candee; ann. 1618: <i>s. v.</i> Candy (s.), 119, ii.	Candied sugar; <i>s. v.</i> Candy (Sugar-), 120, i; ann. 1880: <i>s. v.</i> Dolly, 249, i.
Candgie; ann. 1631: <i>s. v.</i> Congee, 190, i.	Candiel; ann. 1598: <i>s. v.</i> Candy (s.), 119, ii.
Candhar; ann. 1814: <i>s. v.</i> Candahar (c), 771, ii.	Candies; ann. 1644: <i>s. v.</i> Corge, 197, ii; ann. 1807: <i>s. v.</i> Garce, 278, ii.
Candi; <i>s. v.</i> Candy (Sugar-), 120, i; ann. 1554: <i>s. v.</i> Moorah, 447, i; ann. 1645 and 1726: <i>s. v.</i> Candy, n. p. 119, ii.	Candil; <i>s. v.</i> Candy (s.), 119, ii; ann. 1536: <i>s. v.</i> Salsette (s), 594, ii, twice; ann. 1563: <i>s. v.</i> Candy (s.), 119, ii.
Candia; <i>s. v.</i> Candy (Sugar-), 120, i; ann. 1530 and 1726: <i>s. v.</i> Candy, n. p., 119, ii.	
Candich; ann. 1666: <i>s. v.</i> Balaghaut, 38, ii.	

<sup>2</sup> A copper or brass plate sometimes resembling the figure of a fish on which lighted camphor is placed and passed up and down an image, as in temples or during divine processions. This is called locally *artī*, or *mangala artī*.



- Candjer; ann. 1712: *s. v.* Hanger, 806, i.
- Candy n. p.; *s. v.* 119, ii; ann. 1616: *s. v.* Modelliar, 435, i; ann. 1648: *s. v.* Modelliar, 435, ii; ann. 1681: *s. v.* 119, ii.
- Candy (a.); *s. v.* 119, ii; *s. v.* Culsey, 216, i, *s. v.* Viss, 739, i; ann. 1554: *s. v.* Ganton, 278, i, *s. v.* Moorah, 447, i; ann. 1644: *s. v.* Cerge, 197, ii, twice; ann. 1680: *s. v.* Doray, 792, ii; ann. 1710 and 1760: *s. v.* 120, i; ann. 1775: *s. v.* Tical, 699, ii; ann. 1818: *s. v.* Moorah, 447, i.
- Candy [=Sugar-Candy.]; *s. v.* Candy (Sugar-), 120, i; ann. 1850: *s. v.* Bengal, 64, ii.
- Candy (Sugar-); *s. v.* 120, i; ann. 1727: *s. v.* 120, i.
- Candy (Sugar); 655, ii, footnote.
- Candy (sugar); ann. 1596: *s. v.* Candy (Sugar-), 120, i.
- Candyan; *s. v.* Dissave, 246, i.
- Candyan Kings; *s. v.* Adigar, 4, i.
- Candy wine; ann. 1620-30: *s. v.* Sucket, 652, ii.
- Cane; ann. 1380: *s. v.* Tibet, 699, i.
- Canel; 13th cent.: *s. v.* Cube, 214, ii.
- Casell; ann. 1400: *s. v.* Zedoary, 747, ii.
- Canella; ann. 1506: *s. v.* Camphor, 117, i; ann. 1621: *s. v.* Darchenee, 788, i; ann. 1690: *s. v.* Malabathrum, 415, i.
- Canella grossa; 113, ii, footnote; ann. 1420-30: *s. v.* Malabar, 412, ii.
- Canelle; ann. 1370: *s. v.* Mace (a), 404, ii.
- Cane-molasses; *s. v.* Arrack, 26, i.
- Canequis; *s. v.* Guingam, 288, i.
- Canfora; *s. v.* Camphor, 116, ii.
- Canfuri; ann. 1726: *s. v.* Camphor, 117, i.
- Canga; *s. v.* Caogue, 120, ii.
- Cangandir; ann. 1500: *s. v.* Oranganore, 211, ii.
- Cangé; ann. 1680: *s. v.* Congee, 190, ii.
- Cangia; ann. 1672: *s. v.* Congee, 190, i.
- Cangiar; *s. v.* Hanger, 312, i; ann. 1672: *s. v.* Hanger, 312, i.
- Caogue; *s. v.* 120, i and ii (3 times), 771, ii; ann. 1779, 1797 and 1878: *s. v.* 121, i.
- Canhameira; *s. v.* 771, ii, *s. v.* Moluccas, 824, i; ann. 1561: *s. v.* 771, ii.
- Canis aureus; *s. v.* Jackal, 338, ii.
- Canjar; ann. 1883: *s. v.* Hanger, 312, ii.
- Canje; ann. 1563: *s. v.* Congee, 190, i.
- Canju; ann. 1578: *s. v.* Congee, 190, i.
- Canna; *s. v.* Bamboo, 41, i.
- Cannabis Indica; *s. v.* Churru, 169, ii.
- Cannabis indica; *s. v.* Bang, 45, i, *s. v.* Gunja, 308, i.
- Cannabis of the Latins; ann. 1578: *s. v.* Bang, 45, i.
- Cannabis sativa; *s. v.* Gunja, 308, i.
- Cannameli; ann. 1343: *s. v.* Sugar, 655, ii.
- Cannanore; *s. v.* 121, i, *s. v.* Honore, 321, i, *s. v.* Minicoy, 434, i, *s. v.* Pudipatan, 556, ii, see 839, i, footnote.
- Cannarins; ann. 1615: *s. v.* Cañara, 118, i.
- Canne desucre; ann. 1791: *s. v.* Punch, 559, ii.
- Cannella; ann. 1343: *s. v.* Candy (Sugar-), 120, i; ann. 1430: *s. v.* Quilon, 570, i; ann. 1514: *s. v.* Ceylon, 139, i.
- Caño; ann. 1404: *s. v.* Khanum, 813, i.
- Canoa; ann. 1535: *s. v.* Mangrove, 426, ii; ann. 1588: *s. v.* Turban, 864, ii; ann. 1613: *s. v.* Orankay, 492, i.
- Canoe; *s. v.* Almadia, 10, i, *s. v.* Baloon, 40, i.
- Cañon; ann. 1404: *s. v.* Khanum, 866, ii.
- Canongo; *s. v.* 121, i, 772, i.
- Canongoe; ann. 1786: *s. v.* Sheristadar, 626, i.
- Canonor; ann. 1510: *s. v.* Cannanore, 121, i, twice.
- Canoo; ann. 1630: *s. v.* Calavance, 110, ii.
- Canongon; ann. 1590: *s. v.* Coolcurnee, 191, ii.
- Canoses; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Prow, 555, ii.
- Canora; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Cañara, 118, ii.
- Canorein; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Hendry Kendry, 314, i, *s. v.* Kennery, 365, i.
- Canose; ann. 1553: *s. v.* Poorub, 547, ii.
- Canoul; *s. v.* Kurnool, 379, i.
- Canow; ann. 1606: *s. v.* Prow, 555, i.
- Canowes; ann. 1579: *s. v.* Calico, 113, i.
- Cantan; ann. 1540: *s. v.* Nanking, 472, ii, ann. 1560: *s. v.* Cayolaque, 136, ii.
- Cantão; *s. v.* Canton, 121, ii; ann. 1516: *s. v.* Canton, 772, ii, twice; ann. 1517: *s. v.* Chinchew, 154, i.
- Cantari; ann. 1506 and 1510: *s. v.* Bahar, 36, i.
- Canteray; *s. v.* Canteroy, 121, i.
- Canteroy; *s. v.* 121, i, 772, i; ann. 1790 and 1800: *s. v.* 772, i.
- Canter'raia; ann. 1800: *s. v.* Canteroy, 772, i.
- Canton; *s. v.* 121, ii, 772, i, *s. v.* Ananas, 17, ii, *s. v.* Bocca Tigris, 76, i, *s. v.* Bogue, 76, ii, *s. v.* Bombay Marine, 78, ii, *s. v.* Camphor, 116, i, *s. v.* Chop, 160, ii, 161, ii, *s. v.* Conso House, 190, ii, *s. v.* Cumquot, 216, ii, *s. v.* Datchin, 230, ii, twice, *s. v.* Hong, 320, ii, *s. v.* Hong-boat, 321, i, twice, *s. v.* Hoppo, 324, i, *s. v.* Loquot, 397, ii, *s. v.* Macao (a), 402, i, *s. v.* Macheen, 405, ii, 406, i, *s. v.*



- Neelám, 476, i, *s. v.* St. John's Island (b), 591, ii, *s. v.* Sapecta, 599, ii, *s. v.* Tarega, 685, ii, *s. v.* Campoy, 691, i, *s. v.* Pekoe, 691, ii, *s. v.* Souchong, 691, ii, *s. v.* Whampoa, 740, i, *s. v.* St. John's Island (b), 852, ii; ann. 1517: *s. v.* Chinchew, 154, i; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Pardao, 841, i; ann. 1567 and 1570: *s. v.* Macao (a), 402, i; ann. 1687: *s. v.* St. John's Island (b), 591, ii; ann. 1711: *s. v.* Cot, 205, i; ann. 1727: *s. v.* 121, ii, *s. v.* Hong, 320, ii; ann. 1750-52: *s. v.* Leechee, 391, ii; ann. 1770: *s. v.* Bocca Tigris, 76, ii, *s. v.* Liampo, 393, i, *s. v.* Whampoa, 740, i; ann. 1788: *s. v.* Hong, 321, i; ann. 1856: *s. v.* Lorcha, 398, i, twice; ann. 1878: *s. v.* Shroff, To, 630, ii; ann. 1882: *s. v.* Hoppo, 324, ii.
- Cantone; ann. 1552: *s. v.* St. John's Island (b), 852, ii.
- Cantonese; *s. v.* Cangue, 120, ii, *s. v.* Cumahaw, 786, ii.
- Canton fu; ann. 1585: *s. v.* Canton, 121, ii.
- Cantonment; *s. v.* 121, ii, twice, *s. v.* Achánock, 2, ii, *s. v.* Akyáb, 6, i, *s. v.* Barrackpore, 53, i, *s. v.* Bungalow, 98, i, *s. v.* Cawnpore, 136, i, *s. v.* Dinapore, 245, i, twice, *s. v.* Dumdum, 254, ii, *s. v.* Prickly-pear, 554, i, *s. v.* Chownee, 779, ii; ann. 1782: *s. v.* Black, 74, i; ann. 1783, 1825 (twice) and 1848: *s. v.* 121, ii.
- Canton River; ann. 1748 and 1750-52: *s. v.* Bankshall (a), 47, i.
- Cantoo Baboo; ann. 1782: *s. v.* Baboo, 32, ii.
- Cantonment; *s. v.* Cantonment, 121, ii.
- Canum; ann. 1619: *s. v.* Khanum, 366, ii.
- Caor; ann. 1552: *s. v.* Burrampooter, 101, ii.
- Caorsino; *s. v.* Marwáree, 822, ii.
- Caoul; ann. 1780: *s. v.* Cowle, 208, i.
- Caoun; ann. 1762: *s. v.* Cowry, 210, i.
- Caoutchouc; ann. 1850: *s. v.* Columbo Root, 781, ii.
- Caova; ann. 1580: *s. v.* Coffee, 179, i.
- Capasa; *s. v.* 772, ii.
- Capdet; *s. v.* Cadet, 107, i.
- Cape [of Good Hope]; *s. v.* Apricot, 24, i.
- Cape gooseberry; *s. v.* Tiparry, 703, ii.
- Cape of Good Hope; *s. v.* Corral, 200, ii.
- Cape Verde; ann. 1501: *s. v.* Anile, 22, i.
- Capel; *s. v.* 121, ii; ann. 1510: *s. v.* 121, ii.
- Capelan; *s. v.* 121, ii, 122, i; ann. 1516 and 1660: *s. v.* 122, i.
- Cápelan; ann. 1850: *s. v.* Capelan, 122, i.
- Capelangam; ann. 1535: *s. v.* Capelan, 122, i.
- Capell; ann. 1498: *s. v.* Capel, 121, ii.
- Capellan; ann. 1510: *s. v.* Capelan, 122, i.
- Capha; ann. 1436: *s. v.* Firinghee, 799, i.
- Caphala; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Cadila, 109, i, *s. v.* Julibdar, 357, ii.
- Caphe; ann. 1623 and 1628: *s. v.* Coffee, 179, ii.
- Caphir; ann. 1673: *s. v.* Seedy, 610, i.
- Capura; ann. 540: *s. v.* Camphor, 116, ii.
- Capillarius; *s. v.* Bálwar, 40, ii.
- Capitettum; *s. v.* Cadet, 107, i.
- Capocate; ann. 1500: *s. v.* Capucat, 772, ii.
- Capogatto; ann. 1510: *s. v.* Capucat, 122, i.
- Capperstam; ann. 1603: *s. v.* Casiristan, 109, ii.
- Capra megaceros; *s. v.* Markhore, 427, ii.
- Capra Sibirica; *s. v.* Skeen, 642, ii.
- Capsicum; *s. v.* Curry, 218, i.
- Capsicum annuum; *s. v.* Chilly, 150, i.
- Capsicum fruticosum; *s. v.* Chilly, 150, i.
- Capua; ann. 1498: *s. v.* Capucat, 122, i.
- Capucad; ann. 1516: *s. v.* Capucat, 122, i.
- Capucat; *s. v.* 122, i, 772, ii.
- Carabansaca; ann. 1404: *s. v.* Caravansey, 772, ii.

(To be continued.)

## NOTES AND QUERIES.

## SOME BURMESE EXPRESSIONS AT PORT BLAIR.

THE Burmese convicts at Port Blair, of whom there are some two thousand, have made up names for themselves out of their own language, more *suo*, for various places and matters they have to deal with. *E. g.*, *Set-kyun*, Machinery Island, stands for Chatham Island, where the Sawmills are. *Mingyi-jyun*, Commissioner's Island, stands for Ross Island, where Government House and the Head-quarters are. *Pá-ta-gaung*, One-frog, is a rather ingenious translation, or perhaps transcription, of the real name of the

place, *Pahárgaon*, Hill-village. Also for some occult reason of sound and recollection, Phoenix Bay is called by the Burmans *Myúnistipá*, which in their own country does duty for the to them outlandish word and institution, Municipality. Aberdeen has beaten them as a word and is known as *Baládin*. So also has a daily expression in Port Blair borrowed from the Indian Courts' jargon: *mushaqqati*, a labouring convict, which they call *máskáti*.

R. O. TEMPLE.



## PAPAYA.

HERE are some interesting additions to Yule's description of the uncertain word. Yule calls it American, but the *American Century Dictionary* calls it Malabar! Yule also calls it an "insipid, not to say nasty, fruit." With this description, as one for many years well acquainted with it, I must beg to entirely differ. It is to my taste most palatable, when ripe, to eat raw; it makes a first rate after-dinner dish when cooked with sugar, and a most welcome vegetable in the tropics when served up cooked whilst unripe — a good substitute then for marrows. Yule remarks on the spelling poppoi (പപ്പായ) of Sir Lewis Pelly. This is merely Anglo-Madrasi: in the Madras Presidency, as long as I can remember, it is known as poppay and usually so spelt in accounts and letters and so on. By Natives of North India working in the South it is usually, by a natural confusion or analogy, called wrongly papitā.

1893. — Papaw. Popāya, Mahr.; poppayi, Conc[ani]; . . . papaiyah, Hind.; . . . popai-ka-jhadr, Dec[ani]; papaya, Malay; . . . bappangāyi, Too[loo]; bōppayi, Tel.; pappayam, Mal[ayalam]; papol, Singh[alese]; pappāli, Tam[il] Title from Malay . . . Title otherwise Foreign castor, Melon tree, Papaw mango, Papaya . . . Wild papaw: [quite another tree] . . . Botanically, *sterculia colorata*. — *Madras Manual of Administration*, Vol. III. p. 650 f.

1899. — Papaw . . . Papaya, a name of Malabar origin . . . also written pawpaw. — *Century Dict.*, Times Ed., s. v.

1900. — The pawpaw is found throughout a great part of Nigeria. — Robinson, *Nigeria*, p. 8 f.

R. C. TEMPLE.

## CORRUPTIONS OF ENGLISH AT PORT BLAIR.

Kanbalās stands for "convalescent," i. e., a man in a "convalescent gang" of convicts.

Dirmat is, *longo intervallo*, a form of "Department," and always means in Port Blair the Forest Department.

But "orchid" has been too much for the Forest Department convicts, and they have rather ingeniously translated the word by hawa patti, air-leaf.

R. C. TEMPLE.

## THE BRACES.

c. 1669-1679. — This River is soe named from y<sup>e</sup> great towne of Hugly Scituated Upon y<sup>e</sup> banks of it neare 150 miles from y<sup>e</sup> Braces or shoals that lye at y<sup>e</sup> Entrance thereof. — T. B., *Asia, etc.*, MS., fol. 74.

1676. — 5th Sept. This night we sailed over the Sands called the Braces, having never lesse than three fathoms water, and a Swelling Sea. — Streynsham Master, *Journal*, in Yule, *Hedges' Diary*, Vol. II. p. 232.

1676. — 3rd (Dec) Sunday: Wee lay upon the Sands called the Braces all this day, haveing small wind and very smooth sea. — *Op. cit.* p. 237.

1676. — might with more care goe over the Braces and come up Hugly River then they can goe out of the Downes into the River of London. — Walter Clavell in *op. cit.* p. 239.

1685. — January 8. This morning by breake of day we weighed Anchor and by 12 at noon came to an anchor upon y<sup>e</sup> edge or Entrance on y<sup>e</sup> Westwardmost Brace . . . At slack water we weighed and stood downe between the two Braces . . . Here we mett with George Herron y<sup>e</sup> Company's Chief Pilott who came on board and carryed us over y<sup>e</sup> Brace, for which I presented him with R. 50. — Yule, *Hedges' Diary*, Vol. I. p. 175 f.

1703. — Western or Outer Brace . . . Eastern or Inner Brace. — Map attached to the Ed. of the *English Pilot* of 1703. *Op. cit.* Vol. II. p. 220.

1748. — A New and Correct Chart, showing the sands, shoals, mudbanks . . . with the going over the Braces from Point Palmyras to Calcutta in the River Hugly In the Bay of Bengal. — Title of the *English Pilot* for that year. *Op. cit.* Vol. III. p. 205.

1780. — The Braces, Sea-reef, Sagor and other sands, eastward of Point Palmyras . . . in the channel between the Braces. — Dunn, *Directory*, p. 207.

1898. — Eastern Brace . . . Western Brace. — *Admiralty Chart*.

1898. — Brace . . . an arm: esp. an "arm" of the sea or other large body of water . . . Brace of Saint George . . . the two arms, esp. the width of the two arms. — *Oxford English Dict.*

Whoever was responsible for the name of The Braces had no doubt in his mind the former or latter fundamental sense of the word "brace," when he so named the once dreaded and famous arms or spits of sand that run out to the sea from the Hugli River. But it is a pity that this particular sense of the word has missed the astonishingly minute investigation of the compilers of the great *Oxford Dictionary*.

R. C. TEMPLE.



## BOOK-NOTICE.

PROFESSOR PISCHEL'S PRAKRIT  
GRAMMAR.<sup>1</sup>

THIS is a work which it is difficult to review for no one knows the subject of which it treats so thoroughly as does the author. In Prakrit we are all Professor Pischel's pupils, and we are too well aware what a store of learning lies behind each sentence that he has written to permit ourselves to lightly differ from him. Indiscriminate praise in such a case is the only safe course, and I should be tempted to adopt it myself did I not know that this is just what he would least desire. Praise it deserves, — the highest praise, — and if in a few minor points I appear to press views which are not in accordance with those advanced by him, I must begin by expressing my admiration for a book which is one solid mass of thousands of arranged and coordinated facts, now for the first time brought together and digested into a whole with extraordinary skill and clearness.

It is divided into three parts, an Introduction (pp. 1-47), Phonetics (47-241), and Accidence (241-407). It is well supplied with Indexes and full list of Authorities. Regarding Phonetics and Accidence I do not propose to make any remarks. Each of these sections is a wonderful piece of work. Every form of every known dialect which occurs in literature is discussed and accounted for. Only one book of importance (which, however, was published after the grammar appeared), the *Kumdra-pāla-charita*, seems to have escaped the author's net. For the purposes of reference these portions are therefore as complete as can be. Lassen's great work (though much of it has been out of date for many years) is now finally superseded.

The Introduction is naturally the more generally interesting part of the book. The author first defines what he includes under the term 'Prākṛit.' He confines himself to the literary forms of speech, and (by the plan of the series of which the work forms one of the sections) is compelled to abstain from the consideration of the monumental Prakṛits, or as he names them the *Leṇa* dialect-

For my part, I must express my regret at this omission, and it seems to me a pity that the framework of the *Grundriss* could not have been stretched so as to include this language in the present volume. He next gives the various native interpretations of the name 'Prākṛit,' the most usual being that the group of dialects is so called because their *prakṛiti* or basis is Sanskrit, but does not discuss the question himself, which, however, can hardly be considered of importance.<sup>2</sup>

This is followed by the various lists of Prakṛit dialects given by the grammarians, in connexion with which the author explains the correct meaning of the term 'Apabhraṃśa' and briefly discusses the connexion of the various Apabhraṃśas with the modern languages of India. Finally he gives a general account of each Prakṛit dialect and of the materials which are available for its study, concluding with a full account of all the known Prakṛit grammars compiled by native authors.

Stress is laid on the undoubted fact, hitherto often ignored, that these Prakṛit dialects, Saurasēni, Māgadhi, and so forth, (though founded on real spoken vernaculars) are artificial products, in so much as they have been altered in important particulars, by those who used them to adapt them for literary purposes. They cannot be considered as representing the actual speech of the people at any epoch, though they are based upon it. Can we go nearer the source? The answer is in the affirmative. We have the Apabhraṃśa; there was a Saurasēni Apabhraṃśa, a Mahārāṣṭra Apabhraṃśa, a Māgadhi Apabhraṃśa, and so on. Each of them was originally the popular speech of the country with whose name it was connected, and is the mother of the modern language of the same tract. It is hardly necessary to say that none of them is a corruption of the corresponding literary Prakṛit. Saurasēni Apabhraṃśa was not a corruption of Saurasēni Prakṛit, as its name appears to imply, — the reverse would more nearly represent the truth. But these Apabhraṃśas themselves, when they in their turn

<sup>1</sup> *Grundriss der indo-arischen Philologie und Altertumskunde*. Begründet von Georg Bühler, fortgesetzt von F. Kielhorn. Vol. i., Part 8. *Grammatik der Prakritsprachen* von R. Pischel. Strassburg, Trübner, 1900, pp. 430.

<sup>2</sup> Personally, I have never felt myself able to accept the explanation of this word offered by most Indian grammarians. It is that which would naturally occur to a *pandit*, but it is based on a fallacy. Prakṛit is not derived from Sanskrit, or based on it. It is of course

possible that the word is a *pandit's* concoction based on a false theory, but that has yet to be proved. To me it seems that the two words *prā-kṛita* and *śaṅ-kṛita* should be considered as a mutually correlated pair. Each depends on the other. Possibly the best explanation is that *prā-kṛita* means 'simple,' 'that which grew of itself,' 'unartificial,' in contradistinction to *śaṅ-kṛita*, 'polished,' 'artificial.' This closely agrees with Namiśādhya's interpretation of '*prākṛita*,' quoted on p. 14 of the work under review, and also appears to be the opinion of Professor Pischel (p. 32).



became used for literary composition (and of course it is only in literary compositions that they have survived), were subjected to the same process of regularisation as the Prākṛits proper, and hence, though the language of these works is immeasurably nearer the spoken vernaculars of the time than they, we are hardly justified in accepting any of them as a well of contemporary folk-speech undefiled.

Here a small point arises on which I am compelled to differ from Prof. Pischel. On p. 4 he states in so many words that modern Marāṭhī is derived from Mahārāshṭra Apabhraṃśa, and on p. 2 he speaks of undoubted points of connexion between Mahārāshṭri Prākṛit and the modern languages of Mahārāshṭra. It is thus evident that he considers that there is a close connexion between Mahārāshṭra Apabhraṃśa and Mahārāshṭri Prākṛit. Again, on p. 25, he equally decisively states that between the modern Māgadhī dialect of Bihār and the Māgadhī Prākṛit there is no connexion. I mention these two statements together to show that he lays no stress on community of name. If he denies the connexion between ancient and modern Māgadhī although their names are identical, he cannot say that Mahārāshṭri and Marāṭhī are connected because their names are identical. Nor does he. For proof of the identity of the two last-named languages, he refers to the well-known review of Weber's edition of Hāla which appeared from the pen of Garrez in the *Journal Asiatique* for 1872. Now that article was written nearly thirty years ago, and our knowledge of the Indian vernaculars has made great strides since then. I am convinced that Garrez would use very different language at the present day if he were alive. In the article referred to he gives a number of reasons which then appeared to him to be sufficient to show that Marāṭhī is derived from Mahārāshṭri Prākṛit. I take the most important of them:—

1. Marāṭhī has a Gerundive in *āa*, corresponding to the Mahārāshṭri *āna*. True, but the same suffix appears in Oriyā (cf. *jā-una*, having gone), which is certainly not derived from Mahārāshṭri.
2. Marāṭhī has a feminine form of the Demonstrative and Relative Pronouns. True, — but so have Jaipari and Mārwarī.

3. Marāṭhī has the emphatic termination *ēch*, corresponding to the Mahārāshṭri *chia*. True, — but so has Chhattisgarhī spoken on the other side of India.

Finally, Garrez quoted a number of words which are, he said, peculiar to Marāṭhī and Mahārāshṭri. It may or may not be true that they are peculiar to Mahārāshṭri, but it is certainly not true that they are peculiar to Marāṭhī. All that is true is that Marāṭhī has a good dictionary, while other Indian vernaculars have not. It is unnecessary to go into details.

It hence follows that the proof of the affiliation of Marāṭhī to Mahārāshṭri Prākṛit, which Garrez attempted, has broken down in every particular. Are we then to assume that Marāṭhī is not so descended? I do not say that. I only maintain that it is not proved that it is, nor can it be definitely proved, so far as I am aware, that any particular Prākṛit has any greater claim to be its progenitor than another.

While not venturing to give a decided opinion on this question, I may point out one or two facts which may at some future time help to solve the problem. It has been urged by some, including Hoernle, and others of less authority, that the word Mahārāshṭri does not necessarily mean the Prākṛit of Mahārāshṭra.<sup>2</sup> But Mahārāshṭra Apabhraṃśa must mean that, and hence it may have nothing to do with Mahārāshṭri Prākṛit. The two words may have no more connexion than the external form common to the two names. Mahārāshṭra appears to have meant Vidarbha, — the Berars.\* At the present day the language of the Berars is a provincial form of Marāṭhī, and, if Mahārāshṭra Apabhraṃśa had a recognised literary counterpart, it would probably be what the grammarians called 'Vaidarbhi' or 'Dākṣiṇātyā,' about which we know hardly anything at all, except that Rāmatarakavāgīśa appears to group it with Māgadhī and Ārdhamāgadhī,<sup>3</sup> while Prof. Pischel is inclined to connect it with Sauraseni. No one, so far as I know, has ever traced any relationship between it and Mahārāshṭri Prākṛit.

Whether Marāṭhī is connected with Mahārāshṭri Prākṛit or not, it cannot be seriously argued that it is not derived from Mahārāshṭra Apabhraṃśa. In itself it possesses two important points of differentiation. Its past participle ends in *l*,<sup>4</sup> in this agreeing with the eastern languages of

<sup>2</sup> It has been suggested that the name arose through this emasculated form of language being first used as a vehicle for songs in that country.

<sup>3</sup> See *Bṛāhmadāyaka*, x. 74, where Vidarbha and Kuntala (Berar and south-west Hyderabad) are identified as

<sup>4</sup> Mahārāshṭra.

<sup>5</sup> Lassen, p. 21.

<sup>6</sup> I take this opportunity of stating that I have long ago abandoned the theory that this *l* is derived from the Sanskrit *la* through *ja*.



India (Bihâri, Oṛiyâ, Bengali, and Assamese), and the oblique form of its strong nouns ends in *d*, not *ḍ*, in this agreeing with the *dha* of Māgadhi Prākṛit, with the modern eastern languages, and also with those of Rājputana and Gujarāt, but altogether disagreeing with Māhārāṣṭri Prākṛit. These facts do not prove anything, — there are too few of them, — but at any rate they altogether fail to show any connexion between the last named Prākṛit and Marāṭhi.

We next come to Prof. Pischel's statement that there is no connexion between the Māgadhi dialect of Bihâri (or, as it is more usually called, Magahī) and Māgadhi Prākṛit. On the page preceding this statement he gives it as his opinion that 'Māgadhi' Prākṛit was not a uniform speech, but included all those Prākṛit dialects which had *ya* instead of *ja*, *la* for *ra*, *ṣa* for *sa*, and in which the nominative of nouns in *-a* ended in *-ḍ*. Now, except the first, all these peculiarities are typical of the modern languages of Eastern India, including Bihâri (of which Magahī is a dialect), some in one and some in another. Let us take them in order.

The change of *ra* to *la* is common in Bihâri, especially in Magahī. For instance, in my old district of Gayâ, in the heart of Magadha, the town of Lakṣmanapura is nowadays called Lakṣnaul or Nakhlaul.

In Bengali, a language closely connected with Bihâri, every *sa* is pronounced as *ṣa*. Bihâri, which is the most western of the eastern group of languages, and whose speakers are politically connected with Audh and not with Bengal, has abandoned the old pronunciation of this letter, and has taken to *sa*. This letter is now a literal shibboleth between the nationalities of Bengal and Hindōstān, with the latter of whom the Bihâris have thrown in their lot. But that the old pronunciation was *ṣa* is clearly shown by the fact that in writing the national character every Bihâri without exception writes *ṣa* instead of the *sa* which he pronounces. Thus, he says *māṣ*, a month, but writes *māṣ* (मास).

In old Bengali<sup>†</sup> and Bihâri the nominative of *-a* bases ended in *-ḍ*. An example occurs in the very first line of my edition of the poems of Vidyāpati, where we have *śindṣ* for *śindani*, bathing. In the west we should have had *śandṣ*.

There are other typical peculiarities of Māgadhi Prākṛit which are also found in the eastern Indo-Aryan vernaculars. The genitive singular in Māgadhi Prākṛit ended in *dha*. In all the dialects

of eastern India (including Magahī) its representative, the oblique form, ends in *d*, not in *ḍ* as in western Hindōstān. In Māgadhi Prākṛit *ṭa* becomes *ṣa*. I have more than once pointed out that in wild parts of Gayâ I have heard the uneducated use the form *paṣṭā* instead of *paṭṭā*, a lease. Finally (to take one of many possible instances in vocabulary), with the Māgadhi Prākṛit word *kāṣiṇa* (*kāṣhṇa*), lukewarm, quoted by Prof. Pischel as a typical Māgadhi Prākṛit word, we may compare the universal Bihâri word *usind*, parboiled.<sup>\*</sup>

For these reasons I must hold (in spite of Prof. Pischel's great authority) that Māgadhi Prākṛit has undoubted points of connexion with the modern language of the country of Magadha, — Bihâri.

I am thus bold enough to state a difference of opinion from him on two points. I hold as not proved the connexion of Māhārāṣṭri Prākṛit with Marāṭhi, and I hold as proved the connexion of Māgadhi Prākṛit with Magahī. As to MĀHARĀSHTRĪ PRĀKRIT, I don't believe there ever was such a language, or anything approaching it, spoken anywhere. I don't believe such 'emasculated stuff' could ever have been made the vehicle of oral communication. It was chiefly used for song writing. It was about as intelligible as the language of the modern half-taught tenor of a country drawing-room, of whom we say 'he has such a nice voice, but it is a pity he sings so indistinctly.' This indistinct enunciation is carried to an extreme by Indian singers of the present day. I once sat beside one of the great noblemen of Bihâr, a man highly educated and learned in all the accomplishments of an oriental gentleman. A local play was being performed, interspersed with songs in the local dialect, his mother tongue. In vain I tried to follow the words of the singer (a famous Lucknow *disa*). When one of the songs was finished I turned to my host and asked him if he could understand a word of what she had been rendering. 'Of course not,' was the reply given in all simplicity and honesty. He never imagined that he was expected to understand it. So it must have been with Māhārāṣṭri. It represents an attempt, and a very successful attempt, to record the sounds as they issued from a professional singer's lips. As a language, its only real peculiarity, which differentiated it from Prākṛits which were founded on real vernaculars, was the almost total absence of differentiating points. After all, the basis of every phonetic system is its consonants. By their consonants

<sup>†</sup> The nominative in modern Bengali also sometimes ends in *ḍ*, but this has an altogether different origin.

<sup>\*</sup> Cf. *Bihâr Peasant Life*, sec. 963.



we distinguish Hémachandra's Apabhraṃśa from Saurasēni and Saurasēni from Māgadhī. Māhārāshṭrī cuts the knot, and reduces itself to a dead level with reference to all dialects, by dropping nearly all its consonantal framework. The native writers, it is true, point out a few grammatical peculiarities, but I have shown above that those which Garrez selected as the most typical ones, cannot (if the testimony of the modern vernaculars is to be received) have all been confined to any one locality in India.

I have already exceeded my limits, and must content myself with a few brief remarks on one other point of interest. I would draw special attention to Prof. Pischel's remarks on *Paiśāchi*. I have long doubted the correctness of the usual theory that we must look for this dialect in the neighbourhood of the Vindhya range, and am glad to see that he considers that its home is to be found in the north-west of India. May I add a few facts which, at least, do not run counter to this theory? The great *Paiśāchi* work was of course the *Bṛhat-kathā*. This collection of stories has obtained its fame through translations made in Kāśmīr. The traditions preserved in the *Nīlamata-purāṇa* show that the popular belief was that the aboriginal inhabitants of Kashmir were *Piśāchas*. They were almost certainly non-Aryans. The distinguishing characteristic of *Paiśāchi* was its mispronunciation of the *Prākṛit* on which it was founded. In one form of it, the *Chūlikā-Paiśāchi*, this mispronunciation consisted in uttering the medial sonant letters as if they were tenuis. At the present day the lower orders of Kashmir when borrowing a word foreign to their own language are apt to mispronounce it in exactly the same way. My head-boatman there used to call my horse's bridle the *lākam* (Persian *lagām*), and even the grammars give Kāśmīrī *bāpat* as the equivalent of the Arabic *bābat*. All this is consistent with *Paiśāchi* being, in the main, a *Prākṛit* as mispronounced by a north-western Aryan or non-Aryan people, whose true vernacular was some other language. An interesting parallel to *Paiśāchi*, if considered from this point of view, will be found in the works of a non-Indian dramatist, — Shakespeare. The broken English spoken by his Welshmen follows this rule of *Paiśāchi* *Prākṛit*.

Possibly Prof. Pischel will have excellent rejoinders to much of what I have written in the preceding pages. I should not have raised the questions had I not hoped that a truer idea of the whole case can be gained from looking at both sides of the shield. His point of view is the natural and proper one, and he is standing on ground which he has made peculiarly his own. If I have

humbly gazed up at it from the lower level of the modern vernaculars, it is possible that I may have caught lights and shadows which have not presented themselves to his eye. I have touched on a few minor points, and in doing so, I have not concealed the admiration which I feel for this epoch-making work. In conclusion I would express the hope that it will soon be translated into English, and thus be made available to native scholars in India.

I ask permission to add a brief note on a point not touched upon by Prof. Pischel, but which has often elicited wondering comment from other writers. More than once I have seen amazement expressed at the polyglot nature of an Indian drama. In a single scene there may be half a dozen people on the stage at the same time, all speaking different languages, and yet all mutually understanding each other. It is closely paralleled by what we experience at an Oriental Congress, though perhaps we are not all so mutually intelligible at these *séances* as we pretend. But we need not leave India, for India is unchanging, and the Sanskrit stage only accurately represented the ordinary state of affairs in an Indian nobleman's house both then and at the present day. In such a residence in Bengal we find Oriyā-speaking *pālāṭ*-bearers, Bhojpuri-speaking *darwadās*, and house-bearers talking Awadhī of Faizābād. Some of the *syces* are Dusādhs from Tirhut, speaking Maithilī, and others are Ahīrī-speaking Chamārs from the neighbourhood of Delhi. The head of the family may have an *upapattā*, whose ordinary language is the pure Bēgmātī Urdū of Lucknow, but who drops into *alum*-abuse when she is angry. The gentleman I have in my mind uses high-flown literary Bengali in his own house when I visit him, but on other occasions speaks the colloquial Bengali which is as different from the standard as Saurasēni is from Sanskrit. His wife comes from Bīrbhūm, a hundred miles away, and speaks the curious women's *bōlī* of that district. His man of business comes from Eastern Bengal, and talks Dhākī, while a couple of boatmen from Chittagong speak Chatgaiyā. Here we have thirteen distinct dialects (four of them, Oriyā, Bihārī, Urdū, and Bengali, distinct languages) all spoken in the same house. Intercommunication is perfectly free, yet every one uses his own home-vernacular, and is understood by everyone else. Rarely do we hear a man speaking the language of the person he is addressing. Once or twice I have heard an up-country constable trying to speak Bengali, and the only possible comparison is the classic one of the *Mṛichekhatakā* about a woman trying to speak Sanskrit.

G. A. G.



THE ASA DI WAR, A MORNING PRAYER OF THE SIKHS.

BY M. MACAULIFFE.

(Concluded from p. 547.)

Slôk XIII.

Guru Nānak.

Nānak, this body of ours<sup>52</sup> hath one carriage and one driver.  
They are both changed in every age: the holy man knoweth this.  
In the Sat age contentment was the carriage, piety the driver in front;  
In the Treta age continence was the carriage, strength the driver in front;  
In the Dwāpar age penance was the carriage, truth the driver in front;  
In the Kal age passion<sup>53</sup> is the carriage, falsehood the driver in front.

Guru Nānak.

The Shāma Vēd saith that the Lord is white-robed,<sup>54</sup> that men desired truth, abode in truth, and that every one was absorbed in truth.  
The Rig saith that God's name is everywhere contained, that it is as the sun in heaven;  
That by repeating it sins depart,  
And that then, Nānak, man obtaineth salvation.  
The Yajur stateth that Kan Krishṇa, who was a Yādav, seduced Chandrāwal;  
That he brought the tree of life for a milkmaid, and amused himself in Bindrāban.  
The Atharva belongeth to the Kal age, when God's name was called Allah.  
Men then wore blue clothes, and the Turks and Pathāns exercised sway.  
The four Vēds are true so far, if they are read and studied with great attention;  
But when man hath love and devotion and is himself lowly, it is then, O Nānak, he obtaineth salvation.

Paupl XIII.

I am a sacrifice to the true Guru by meeting whom the Lord is remembered,  
Who gave me the salve of divine instruction; with these eyes I then beheld God in the world.  
The dealers who leave the Lord and attach themselves to mammon are wrecked.  
The true Guru is a boat; few there are who consider this,  
And those who do he mercifully saveth.

Slôk XIV.

Guru Nānak.

The simal tree of the desert<sup>55</sup> is very tall and very thick.  
Why should the birds which go to it with hopes depart disappointed?  
Because its fruit is insipid, its flowers unwholesome, and its leaves useless.  
The tree that yieldeth sweet fruit is lowly, O Nānak, but its qualities and virtues are exquisite.  
Every one boweth to himself; no one boweth to another.  
If any thing be put into a scale and weighed, the side which descendeth is the heaviest.<sup>56</sup>

<sup>52</sup> *Mēru* is the large bead in which the two ends of a rosary are joined. *Mēr sharir* therefore means man's body, which is superior to that of other animals.

<sup>53</sup> *Agan*, literally fire. This word is often used for wrath, but Guru Nānak has more often inveighed against avarice or covetousness than against wrath, and perhaps it is the former that is taken as a special attribute of this degenerate age. See above, Slôk XI., *Bhāhi bhārī mardār*.

<sup>54</sup> *Sētambar* — the Hans or Swan Avatar.

<sup>55</sup> *Sardīra* — this word is from the Persian *sahara*.

<sup>56</sup> The man who is lowly is the most worthy.



The wicked man like a deer-stalker<sup>57</sup> boweth twice *more than any one else*;  
But what availeth bowing the head, if the heart be impure?

The following hymn was composed by Guru Nānak at Banāras on the occasion of a discussion with the local *pāṇḍits* who pressed him to dress in the style of the Hindus:—

Guru Nānak.

You read books, perform your twilight<sup>58</sup> devotions, argue, worship stones, and sit like cranes;  
You utter falsehoods as excellent jewels; you meditate on the Gāyatrī<sup>59</sup> three times a day;  
You wear a necklace, put sacrificial marks on your foreheads, carry two *dhōḷīs*, and put towels on your heads.  
If you knew God's designs, you *would know that yours* is verily a vain religion.  
Saith Nānak, verily reflect that without the true Guru you shall not find the way.

Paūrī XIV.

Raiment and pleasing beauty man must leave on earth and depart.  
Man shall obtain *the fruit* of the bad or good deeds he hath done:  
He may have exercised sovereignty to his heart's content, yet must he proceed by the narrow road.  
He shall be sent naked to hell, which will then appear very formidable to him;  
And he shall regret the sins he hath committed.

The following hymn was addressed by Guru Nānak to Paṇḍit Hardiāl, his family priest, when he came to invest him with a *janēū*, the sacrificial thread of the upper classes of Hindus:—

Slōk XV.

Make mercy thy cotton, contentment thy thread, continence its knot, truth its twist.  
That would make a *janēū* for the soul; if thou hast it, O Brāhman, then put it on me.  
It will not break, or become soiled, or be burned, or lost.  
Blest the man, O Nānak, who goeth with such a thread on his neck.  
Thou purchasest a *janēū* for four *damṛīs*,<sup>60</sup> and seated in a square puttest it on;  
Thou whisperest instruction that the Brāhman is the guru of the Hindus —  
Man dieth, the *janēū* falleth, and the soul departeth without it.

Guru Nānak.

Though men commit countless<sup>61</sup> thefts, countless adulteries, utter countless falsehoods and countless words of abuse;  
Though they commit countless robberies and villanies night and day against their fellow-creatures,  
Yet the cotton thread is spun, and the Brāhman cometh to twist it.  
For the ceremony they kill a goat and cook and eat it, and everybody then saith "Put on the *janēū*."  
When it becometh old, it is thrown away and another is put on.  
Nānak, the string breaketh not if it be strong.

<sup>57</sup> *Hantā mīrgāh* — The English word hunter may be derived from *hantā*, a killer.

<sup>58</sup> *Sandhiā* — from *sandhi*, union (of day and night).

<sup>59</sup> *Traipāl* is understood to be for *traipāl*, the *gāyatrī* or spell of the Hindus, so called because it is composed of three feet of eight letters each. Hence the *gāyatrī* is commonly said to have three legs. The *gāyatrī* is as follows:—  
Om, bhur, bhūvā, sva, tat savitar varṇyam, bhargo devasya dhīmahi dhiyā yonā prachōdyāt, om, Om, earth and air and sky, let us meditate on that excellent sun the bright god, which stimulateth our intellects, om.

<sup>60</sup> Four *damṛīs* is one *paīsā* of Indian, or about a farthing of English, money.

<sup>61</sup> *Lakh*, literally, one hundred thousand, here used for an indefinite number.



Guru Nānak.

By adoring and praising the Name honor and a true thread are obtained.<sup>62</sup>  
In this way a sacred thread will be put on which will not break, and which will be fit for entrance into God's court.

Guru Nānak.

There is no string for the sexual organs, there is no string for women, *there is no string for the impure acts which cause your beards to be daily spat upon.*

There is no string for the feet, there is no string for the hands, there is no string for the tongue, there is no string for the eyes.

Without such strings the Brāhman waundereth, twisteth strings for the neck, and putteth them on others.

He taketh hire for marrying; he pulleth out a paper, and showeth the fate of the wedded pair.<sup>63</sup>

Hear and see, ye people, this is strange that, while mentally blind, he is named wise.

Paūrī XV.

He to whom the Lord is compassionate and merciful will do the Master's work.

That worshiper whom God causeth to abide by His order, will worship Him.

By obeying His order man is acceptable, and shall then reach his Master's court.

He shall act as pleaseth his Master, and obtain the fruit his heart desireth;

And he shall be clothed with a robe of honor in God's court.

A man at Lahore presented a cow to a Brāhman. The Brāhman took her with him, but had not wherewithal to pay toll at the Sultānpur ferry. He was stopped by the Hindu Khatri toll-keeper. The latter collected the cow's dung, and at once plastered his cooking place therewith. Mardānā went towards him, but was ordered off, lest he, as a Musulmān, should defile the toll-keeper's cooking place. Upon this Bābā Nānak uttered the following:—

Ślōk XVI.

Thou takest toll for a cow and a Brāhman, the cow-dung will not save thee.

Thou wearest a *dhōṭī* and a frontal mark, and carriest a rosary, yet thou eatest the bread of *malēchhas*.<sup>64</sup>

Thou performest the Hindu worship at home, thou readest the Kurān in public, and associatest with Muhammadans,<sup>65</sup> O my brother.

Lay aside hypocrisy, repeat God's name, and thou shalt be saved.

Guru Nānak.

Those who have strings on their necks eat men, recite the Muhammadan prayers,

And use knives to cut men's throats.<sup>66</sup>

Although the Brāhmans sound shells in their houses,

And enjoy their viands as they do themselves;<sup>67</sup>

Yet false is their capital and false their dealings.

By uttering falsehoods they maintain themselves.

Far from them is the abode of shame and honesty:

Nānak, falsehood everywhere prevaieth.

<sup>62</sup> Also translated — By adoring the Name cotton is produced; by praising God a true thread is obtained.

<sup>63</sup> That is, he draws a horoscope.

<sup>64</sup> *Malēchhas*, from *mal* filth and *ichhā* desire — those whose desires are filthy. The word here means Muhammadans, but it is also applied by Hindus to Christians.

<sup>65</sup> *Sanjam Turkān* — also translated — Thou actest like Muhammadans.

<sup>66</sup> Also translated — They who read prayers devour men, and they who wear strings on their necks ply knives.

<sup>67</sup> According to the holy books of the Hindus, Brāhmans should not eat in the houses of men who recite Muhammadan prayers.



On their foreheads are sacrificial marks, on their waists reddish<sup>68</sup> *dhófis*,  
 In their hands knives; they are the world's butchers.  
 Putting on blue clothes, they are acceptable in the *Muhammadans'* court,  
 And, while taking bread from the malechhas, they worship the *Paráns*.  
 They eat he-goats killed with unspeakable words,<sup>69</sup>  
 And allow no one to enter their cooking squares.  
 Having smeared a space they draw lines around it,  
 And sit within false that they are,  
 Saying, "Touch not! O touch not!  
 Or this food of ours will be defiled."  
 But their bodies are defiled; what they do is defiled;  
 Their hearts are false while they perform ablutions *after their meals*.  
 Saith Nānak, meditate on the True One,  
 If thou art pure, thou shalt obtain Him.

Paupī XVI.

All are within Thy ken, O Lord; Thou seest all, and Thou movest them beneath Thy  
 glance.  
 God himself bestoweth greatness; He Himself causeth men to do good works.  
 He is the greatest of the great; great is His world; He appointeth *all men* to their  
 respective duties.  
 If He cast a backward glance, He maketh monarchs as grass;<sup>70</sup>  
 They may beg from door to door and receive no alms.

Guru Nānak composed the following slok on being invited by a dishonest shopkeeper of  
 Lahore to attend a *shrād* or religious service for his deceased father:—

Slok XVII.

If a robber break a house and sacrifice the fruits of that robbery to his ancestors,  
 The sacrifice shall be known in the next world, and make out the ancestors thieves.  
 The hand of the Brāhman go-between shall be cut off; thus will God do justice.  
 Nānak, it is only the fruit of what man giveth from his earnings and toil that shall be  
 obtained in the next world.

Guru Nānak.

As a woman hath her recurring courses, so falsehood dwelleth in the mouth of the false  
 one, and he is ever despised.  
 He should not be called pure who sitteth and washeth his body;  
 Rather is he pure, Nānak, in whose heart God dwelleth.

Paupī XVII.

Caparisoned horses fleet as the wind and women adorned with every aid to beauty —<sup>71</sup>  
 Men fix their hearts on them, dwell in mansions and palaces, and make display;  
 They enjoy pleasures to their hearts' content; but they know not God and therefore fail.  
 They live by their authority, and, beholding their women's chambers, forget death.  
 Old age hath come and youth hath failed them.

<sup>68</sup> *Kakhi* — reddish or partially soiled from frequent washing. The word is also applied to the tucking in of a *dhófi* in a particular way.

<sup>69</sup> The Muhammadan expression *Bismillah* (in the name of God) used when slaughtering animals as well as on other occasions.

<sup>70</sup> *Ghāhu* generally translated grass-cutters by the *gyānis*; a third interpretation too is possible. In former times men of position appeared before conquerors with grass in their mouths, implying that they were the conquerors' cows whose lives should be saved. Accordingly, the phrase is also translated—and He would cause Kings to put grass in their mouths.

<sup>71</sup> *Har rangi*, literally, with every color.



A rich man gave a feast to which Guru Nānak and several Brāhmans were invited. During the feast a child was born in the house, whereupon the Brāhmans refused food and departed, deeming the house impure. Guru Nānak remonstrated with the following *ślōk* and hymn :—

**Ślōk XVIII.**

If the idea of impurity be admitted, there is impurity in every thing.  
There are worms in cow-dung and wood ;  
There is no grain of corn without life.  
In the first place, there is life in water by which every thing is made green.<sup>72</sup>  
How shall we avoid impurity ? It falleth on our kitchens.  
Saith Nānak, impurity is not thus washed away : it is washed away by divine knowledge.

*Guru Nānak.*

Impurity of the heart is greed, impurity of the tongue is falsehood ;  
Impurity of the eyes is gazing on another's wealth, his wife, and her beauty ;  
Impurity of the ears is listening to slander.  
Nānak, even the pretended saint who practiseth such things, shall go bound to hell.  
All impurity consisteth in superstition and attachment to worldly things.  
Birth and death are ordained ; as it pleaseth God, we come and go.  
The eating and drinking which God sent as sustenance are pure.  
Nānak, the pious persons who know God have no impurity.

**Paurī XVIII.**

Magnify and praise the true guru in whom there is all greatness.  
If the guru cause us to meet God, we shall behold His greatness.  
If it please the Guru, he will cause God's praises to dwell in the heart.  
He putteth his hand on our foreheads ; and when he giveth the order, removeth evil from within us.  
When God is pleased the nine treasures are obtained.

**Ślōk XIX.**

The Brāhman having first purified himself sitteth in a purified square.  
The purified food is placed before him ; no one may touch it.  
Being thus purified, he beginneth to eat and read Sanskrit verses.  
If it is thrown into a filthy<sup>73</sup> place, whose fault is that ?  
The corn was holy, the water was holy, the fire and salt were holy ; when the fifth ingredient *ghī*<sup>74</sup> was added,  
Then the food became pure.  
When the food entereth a sinful body, it becometh impure as if spat upon.  
The mouth which uttereth not the Name, and eateth even delicacies without the Name.  
Consider, O Nānak, as if spat upon.

The following was Guru Nānak's remonstrance to a man who reviled the female sex :—

*Guru Nānak.*

In a vessel<sup>75</sup> man is conceived, from a vessel he is born, with a vessel he is betrothed and married.  
With a vessel he contracteth friendship ; with a vessel he goeth through the world.  
When one vessel dieth, another is sought for ; to a vessel he is bound.  
Why call her bad from whom are born kings ?  
From a vessel a vessel is born ; none may exist without a vessel.  
Nānak, only the one true God is independent of a vessel.

<sup>72</sup> Compare—*Jal hai ślōk, thal hai ślōk, ślōk opat hai*, There is impurity in water, there is impurity in land, there is impurity in whatever is created. — *Kabir Gauri*, 41.

<sup>73</sup> *Kuśōthi*—from the Sanskrit *kūṣi*.

<sup>74</sup> Clarified butter, always deemed pure by Hindus and their kindred sects.

<sup>75</sup> Woman is meant. The Greeks sometimes used the word *oxēvos* in the same sense.



The mouth which ever praiseth *Him*<sup>76</sup> is fortunate and beautiful.  
Nānak, that face shall be bright in the court of the True One.

Paūrī XIX.

Every one calleth Thee, O Lord, his own; those who do not so call Thee Thou putteth away,  
Every one *must bear the result of his own acts*, and adjust his own account.  
Since ye are not to remain in this world, why practise ye pride?  
Call no one bad; know this by reading these words.  
Dispute not with a fool.

Slōk XX.

Nānak, the mind and body of him who talketh evil are evil:  
He is most evil, and most evil is his reputation.  
The evil person is rejected in God's court; his face is spat upon.  
The evil person is a fool, and receiveth shoe-beatings as punishment.

Bābā Nānak.

If a man, foul within and fair without, puff himself up in the world,  
His filth will not depart even though he bathe at the sixty-eight places of pilgrimage.<sup>77</sup>  
Those who wear silk within and rags without, are good in this world.  
They have conceived love for God and contemplate beholding Him.  
In God's love they weep, in God's love they laugh, or are even silent.  
They care not for anything except the true Master.  
They beg for food at *God's door*, and *only* eat when He giveth it to them.  
For them there is but one court as there is but one pen;<sup>78</sup> we and you shall meet for justice.  
The accounts of *the wicked* shall be taken in *God's court*, and they shall be pressed  
O Nānak, like oil in a mill.<sup>79</sup>

Paūrī XX.

Thou Thyself didst create the world, and Thou Thyself didst put power into it.  
Thou beholdest Thine own work, the losing and winning dice<sup>80</sup> upon earth.  
Whatever hath come shall depart; his turn shall come to every one.  
Why forget that Lord who owneth life and soul?  
With thine own hands arrange thine own affairs.

Slōk XXI.

Guru Angad.

What love is that which attacheth itself to worldly things?  
Nānak, call him a lover who is ever absorbed in God.  
He who deemeth only what is good good, and what is bad bad,  
Shall not be called a true lover if he proceed in this manner.<sup>81</sup>

Guru Angad.

He who offereth salutation and at the same time criticiseth *God's works*, hath made a mistake from the beginning.  
Both *his salutation and criticism* are in vain; Nānak, such a person shall not obtain a place in *God's Court*.

<sup>76</sup> Some suppose that woman is the missing word here, as the preceding slōk is a defence of women, not a eulogy of God.

<sup>77</sup> Compare — *Antar mail jō tirath nahācāi, tis baikanth na jānā*, If a man foul within bathe at a place of pilgrimage, he shall not go to heaven. — *Kabir, Asī 37*.

<sup>78</sup> That is, there is no mediator between God and man. It is God Himself who decides man's fate.

<sup>79</sup> The last line and half is also translated — They who confound meum and tuum shall have their accounts taken in God's court, and shall be pressed, O Nānak, like oil in a mill.

<sup>80</sup> That is, the sinners and the virtuous. The game of *chausar* or *chaupar* is played with sixteen pieces called *sāris*, and three dice called *pāsā*. The *sāris* while being moved round the board, like creatures in transmigration, are called *kachī*, unripe; when they reach their goal, they are called *pakki* or ripe.

<sup>81</sup> He shall not be called a lover, if he rail at God in adversity. This idea often occurs in Oriental poetry.



**Pauri XXI.**

Ever praise that Lord by worshiping whom thou shalt find happiness.  
Why hast thou done such evil deeds as thou shalt suffer for?  
Do absolutely nothing evil, look well before thee.  
So throw the dice that thou mayest not lose with the Lord,  
Nay, that thou mayest gain some profit.

**Slók XXII.**

*Guru Angad.*

When a servant while performing service is proud and quarrelsome besides,  
And talketh too much, he pleaseth not his master.  
If he efface himself and perform service, he shall obtain some honor.  
Nānak, he who longeth for God shall meet Him, and his longing shall be acceptable.

*Guru Angad.*

What a man hath in his heart cometh forth; lip-worship is of no avail.  
Man soweth poison and expecteth ambrosia; look at that for justice.

*Guru Angad.*

Contracting friendship with a fool would never be profitable.  
He acteth according to his understanding: let any one see and enquire into this.  
One thing can fit in a vessel if another thing be *first* removed.<sup>82</sup>  
Orders will not succeed with God; supplications must be addressed Him.  
By practising falsehood falsehood is obtained: Nānak, there is pleasure in praising God.

*Guru Angad.*

Friendship for a fool and love for a great man  
Are like lines drawn on water, which leave neither trace nor mark.

*Guru Angad.*

If a man be a fool and do any thing, he cannot do it well;  
Even though he do one or two things well, he will spoil the rest.

**Pauri XXII.**

If the servant who is employed in service act according to his master's wishes,  
His honor is all the more, and he receiveth double wages.  
If he vie with his master, he shall excite his jealousy,  
Lose his large salary, and receive shoe-beating on the mouth.  
Thank Him by whose gifts thou liveth;  
Nānak, orders will not succeed with Him; the Master must be implored.

**Slók XXIII.**

*Guru Angad.*

What sort of gift is that which we obtain by our own asking?  
Nānak, wonderful is the gift we obtain when the Lord is pleased.

*Guru Angad.*

What sort of service is that in which the fear of the master departeth not?<sup>83</sup>  
Nānak, he is called a servant who is absorbed in the love of his master.

**Pauri XXIII.**

Nānak, God's end is not seen, nor hath He a thither or a hither side.  
He Himself createth, and He Himself again destroyeth.  
Some have chains on their necks, and some ride on many horses.  
It is God who causeth men to act and who acteth Himself; to whom else shall we  
complain?  
Nānak, it is for Him who made the world to take care of it.

<sup>82</sup> The love of God will enter man's heart if he first expel worldly love.

<sup>83</sup> That is, when perfect understanding exists between master and servant, and the service is performed with love.



## SLOK XXIV.

*Guru Nānak.*

It is God Himself who made vessels<sup>84</sup> and He Himself who filleth them.  
In some is contained milk;<sup>85</sup> others are put over the fire.  
Some sleep on mattresses, and others stand and watch over them.  
Nānak, God regenerateth those on whom He looketh with favor.

*Guru Angad.*

God Himself arrangeth, He Himself putteth what He hath made into its proper place;  
Having in this world created animals, He Himself beholdeth their birth and death.  
Whom shall we address, O Nānak, since God doeth everything Himself?

## PAURI XXIV.

The greatness of the great God cannot be expressed;  
He is the Creator, the Omnipotent, the Bounteous; He provideth His creatures with sustenance.  
Man doeth that work which God destined for him from the beginning.  
Nānak, except in the one God alone there is no abiding place.  
He doeth what He pleaseth.

## NOTES AND QUERIES.

## THE EIGHTEEN AGUS.

ACCORDING to the Prelude to the Kesar-Saga the names of the eighteen Agus (heroes) are the following:—

- (1) Pasang Idan ru skyes, possessing the Friday, horns growing. *Characteristic mark*: a goat's head.
- (2) Anggar rtsangspo, Anggar, the lizard. *Char. m.*: a lizard's head.
- (3) Khra mgo khra thung, falcon's head, short falcon. *Char. m.*: a falcon's head.
- (4) Kha rgan dgani (nyi), old mouth, day of joy. *Char. m.*: a white beard.
- (5) sKya rgodpo, wild soup-spoon. *Char. m.*: a soup-spoon instead of a head.
- (6) zLaba bzangpo, good moon. *Char. m.*: a moon instead of a head.
- (7) mD'a dpon gongma, the high headman of bowmen. *Char. m.*: an arrow blade instead of a head.
- (8) Ala jong gol (this means, so I am told, the sole of a boot, the stupid one). *Char. m.*: the sole of a boot instead of a head.
- (9) 'aBu dmar lamstan, red vermin, way leader. *Char. m.*: a worm's head.
- (10) Shelgyi buchung, little boy of glass (or crystal). *Char. m.*: a concave mirror instead of a head.
- (11) dGani(nyi) gongba, day of joy, the collar. *Char. m.*: a collar instead of a head.
- (12) Laglag rings, long hand. *Char. m.*: a hand instead of a head.
- (13) rKang rkang rings, long foot (or leg). *Char. m.*: a foot instead of a head.
- (14) Bongnag ldumbu, black ass (*ldumbu* = a plant?). *Char. m.*: a donkey's head.

(15) bKa blon ldanpa, the state-minister, the possessor. *Char. m.*: a man's head.

(16) dPalle rgodpo, wild splendour, glory. *Char. m.*: an old man's head.

(17) rNa yyu rna 'athal, turquoise earring. *Char. m.*: a turquoise instead of a head.

(18) zLaba jkarpo, white moon. *Char. m.*: a white shell instead of a head.

To these Kesar or Kyesar has to be added as their leader, he is the nineteenth. Holy numbers in the Pre-Buddhist religion of Ladakh are 3, 7, 9 and 18; but it is remarkable, that, whilst the first three of these numbers are always quoted without a following number, the 18 is always followed up by 19. For example: "They digged a pit of 18, 19 yards," "there appeared 18, 19 priests."

If we take Kesar, the supposed sun hero, into the account, it is not difficult to identify six of the nineteen Agus with six of the seven days of the Tibetan week. Then the question remains: What could be the probable origin of the remaining 12? Their number seems to point to the months of the year or to the Zodiac; but as I have no means available to compare their characteristic marks with those of other lunar calendars, I should be very glad, if competent scholars would offer an opinion on the subject.

As far as I can see, some of the Agus do not possess only a single name, but several, though the characteristic mark will probably remain the same.

The representatives of the weekdays are probably the following:—

No. 19, Sunday; No. 6, Monday; No. 9, Tuesday; No. 12, Wednesday; No. 7, Thursday; No. 1, Friday.

A. H. FRANCKE.

<sup>84</sup> Here the word *bhūṭa* means human beings generally.

<sup>85</sup> That is, God's love, milk being deemed pure.



# INDEX.

Abbās, as a Māppila hero ... ..	531	Agus, the, 336; the Eighteen, 564, = ? Days of the week plus the months of the year, 564:— of the land of gLing, 339:—a tale of the ... ..	331
Abdallah bin Ubeiy ... ..	386	Ahichhatra, Jaina origin for the name ... ..	303
Abdul Keriva, a Māppila hero ... ..	535	Ahiri Rag, discussion on the ... ..	319
Abdulla, a Māppila hero ... ..	535	Ahmad, origin of, as a title of Muhammad, 327; as a name proves an interpolation in the <i>Qorān</i> , 522: = Messias ... ..	327
'Abdu'r-Rahmān Samiri=Chēramān Perumāl. 501		Ahura-mazda corresponds to Varuna ... ..	270
Abhichandra, son of Chakshushmant, 248:— son of Andhakavrishni (Jaina) ... ..	294	Aihole on the Malparbhā River ... ..	260
Abhimanyu, a Rāshtrakūta king; the places mentioned in a charter issued by him, identified, 509; lived at Mānapura... ..	511	Aindram, a tank at Satrunjaya ... ..	240
Abimanyu, son of Bhaviṣya ... ..	509	Airanyavatam, a mountain range (Jaina) ... ..	243
Abithasklophar (Māppila hero) ... ..	531	Airavatām, a mountain range (Jaina) ... ..	243
'abo, a Tibetan measure of currency ... ..	456	Aisha, wife of Muhammad ... ..	385
Abraha, King, in the <i>Qorān</i> ... ..	41	Ajātasatru's city = Rājgir ... ..	56
Abraham in the <i>Qorān</i> ... ..	41, 44, 46	Ajitasēna, son of Dēvaki (Jaina) ... ..	298
'aBruguma, 360; came from India, 363; the White Tārā, 361:— the tale of, 336 ff.; a song in praise of, 361, = a song to, 363:— bride of Kesar, 338 ff., 361; a tale of Kesar and, 340 ff.; and Kesar, song to ... ..	362	Ajitasvāmin (Jina), 250:— brother of Sagara, 251; son of Jatasatru and Yaśōmati ... ..	251
Abu Bakr, helps in the compilation of the <i>Qorān</i> , 519: as a Māppila hero ... ..	536	Akarmaka = Satrunjaya ... ..	244
Abu Bakr Siddik, Māppila hero ... ..	531	Akālālochana Rock on Kuluba Hill ... ..	94
Abu Betir Siddik, the first Māppila Shāhid... ..	505	Akshōbhya, son of Andhakavrishni (Jaina) ... ..	294
Abuthaasoli, Mount, Māppila Geography ... ..	533	Akubath, a Māppila hero ... ..	534
Achala, son of Andhakavrishni (Jaina) ... ..	294	Albergaria, Soares de, his voyage to India (1515) ... ..	424
Acheen Island = Sumatra ... ..	184	Albuquerque, Affonso de, reaches Malacca 422	
Achyuta = Krishna (Jaina) ... ..	302	Albuquerque, Jorje de, first to go to China, 422: letter to, from King of Portugal, 1524 ... ..	433 ff.
'Ad, the Tribe of, references to, in the <i>Qorān</i> , 41, 44		Aicaçora, Simão d', early Portuguese visitor to China (1515), 424: goes from Sumatra to India (1516) ... ..	425
Adhēm, a wrong reading, 375: = Achhēm, 376, = Adhi, 373 f. = Atkēm ... ..	377	Aletar = Ganjam ... ..	351
Adijina, the (Jaina) ... ..	306	Alexander, campaigns of, places mentioned in the, not yet identified sufficiently ... ..	24
Adinātha, 250: temple to, on Baibhār Hill... ..	59 f.	Alī, as a Māppila hero ... ..	536
Adipura, the town of ... ..	306	Allāh, rise of the term ... ..	457
Adisvara, the principal Jina ... ..	240	Al-Masiḥ (the Messiah) in the <i>Qorān</i> ... ..	50
Aditya, a primal deity arising out of nature-symbolism ... ..	270	Altēm mentioned as Raktapura ... ..	106
Ādityasās, race (Jaina) ... ..	251	Aluengāmva near Vādāthānagrāma, 517: = Awalgāon ... ..	517
administration in Indian inscriptions ... ..	24	Alungal Kandi Moyankutti Vaidiār, Māppila poet, song of ... ..	506 ff.
adultery, origin of Muhammadan law of punishment for ... ..	385	Alvares, Jorge, commands a vessel to China, 1518 ... ..	427
'aDzambugling = 'aDzamgling ... ..	144	Amarapura near Mandalay ... ..	388
'aDzamgling (Tibetan) = Jambudvīpa = the East ... ..	144	Ambā, goddess worshipped at Raivāta (Gir-nār) (Jaina), 290 f.; statue of, on Raivāta, 291:— daughter of the King of Kāsi (Jaina) ... ..	296
Aghōvallabha of the Rāṭa lineage (?) spurious name ... ..	373	Ambad, note on the name ... ..	517
Agni, the Fire-god at the head of the Vedic gods ... ..	273 f.		
Agrāpi river, the = Kanhavannā ... ..	374		
agreement with unbelievers, rise of Muhammadan view of... ..	463 f.		
Agu = hero (Tibetan) ... ..	564		



- Ambālā, daughter of the King of Kāśī (Jaina) ... 296
- Ambikā = Ambā, 291:— daughter of the King of Kāśī (Jaina), 296:— a *gōtra-dēvī*, 241; a *kula-dēvī*, 241; a *śāsanadēvī* (Jaina) ... 246
- Ambukuttivayal, a field in the Edakalmala Mountain ... 409
- Aminbhāvi, remarks about an inscription formerly existing at ... 209
- Amōghavarsha the Rāshtrakūṭa = Indra III. 371
- Anādhriṣṇi, son of Vasudēva, Jaina story of ... 299 f.
- andmīkā*, the ring-finger ... 3 n., 370
- Anandapura founded by Bharata ... 249
- Anantasēna, son of Dēvakī (Jaina) ... 298
- Anantavīrya descended from Hastin of Hastinapura (Jaina) ... 294
- Andaman Islands in the 18th Century, 28 ff., 183 ff., 232 ff.:—Survey of the, under Kyd, 184; Malay trade in slaves from the, 120:— the Great, Ritchie's Notes on, 233 ff., 237 f.; the Little, 30, described by Ritchie (1771) ... 238
- Andamaner = Andamanese ... 235
- Andamanese, the, seen by Ritchie (1771), 235 f.: policy towards, in XVIIIth Century. 184
- Andhakavṛiṣṇi of Sauryapura, father of Kuntī (Jaina), 296:—son of Sauri (Jaina) ... 294
- Andhali = Yanduli ... 373
- Andharāgiri Hill near Selagāra ... 370
- Andrade, Fernão Peres d', early Portuguese visitor to China (1515), 424; Chinese account of his visit to Canton in 1517, 442 f.: goes to Sumatra (1516) ... 424
- Andrade, Simão d', goes to China (1519) ... 428
- Andrade, Thomé Peres d', Ambassador to China, 426; visits Nanking and Peking ... 428 ff.
- Āṇa kings in Jain faith ... 303
- Angerang = Injeram ... 352
- Anglo-Indian words, specimens of bogus ... 320
- Anidri, a stream of Satrunjaya ... 240
- Anikayāśā, daughter of Dēvakī (Jaina) ... 298
- Anilagati, master of the Vidhyādhara (Jaina) ... 296
- Añjanā Mount (Jaina) ... 245
- Anśār, the Helpers, origin of the title ... 232
- anthropomorphism in the Aryan Period ... 271
- Apabhraṃsā Prakṛits, the ... 553
- Aparāntaka, the Burmese, 387; Sunāparanta = Thayetmyo, 388:— really the Konkan ... 387
- Aparājita gods, the (Jaina) ... 298
- apes—are the desecration of the Sabbath ... 229 f.
- aricots as currency in Ladākh ... 456
- aracea = arrack ... 391
- Aranjo, Manuel d', commands a vessel to China (1517) ... 425
- Arasibīdī in Bijāpur, mentioned by the ancient name of Vikramapura ... 260
- Arbuda, a summit of Satrunjaya ... 240
- archives and chronicles, dynastic, in ancient times ... 10
- Arekegaṭṭa, an ancient place ... 381, 382
- Aremoga = Armegon ... 346
- Arha, Jaina deity ... 289
- Arhas, Kuntī sister of the ten (Jaina) ... 296
- Arishta, a demon killed by Kaiṣa (Jaina) ... 299
- Arishtanēmi, the Jina, 250; birth of, 298 f.:— = Nemi ... 294
- aristocracy, Muhammad's attempts at creating an ... 462 f.
- Arjuna, Jaina story of his birth ... 299
- Armaganulu = Armegon ... 347
- Armegon Shoal, the, 343; origin of name, 347; the name discussed ... 346 f.
- arrack, 389; the term discussed ... 391
- Ar-Rahmān, as a name for God in the *Qorān*, 50, = God ... 122
- Aryadatta becomes a Jaina ascetic ... 303
- Asa descended from Hastin of Hastinapura (Jaina) ... 294
- Asā dī Wār*, the morning prayer of the Sikhs, 537 ff., 557 ff.: composed by Gurū Nānak, 537; Gurū Angad had a share in the ... 537
- Āsanivān, a Vidhyādhara (Jaina) ... 296 f.
- Ashabis, the, a Tribe (Māppilas) ... 536
- Ashtāpada *tīrtha* (Jaina) ... 245
- Ashtāhmikā, a Jaina temple at Satrunjaya ... 292
- Ashtōttaraśatakūṭa in the Satrunjaya Range. 245
- Asōka, edicts of, religious character of ... 19
- Asōkachandra (Jaina), story of ... 290 f.
- aspects of worship, Hindu ... 254 f.
- Asura = Varuṇa ... 270
- asura*, in the *Vēda*, always used in a good sense ... 272
- Āśvasēna becomes a Jaina ascetic ... 303
- Āśvāvabadhaka in Brīgukachha (Jaina holy place) ... 293
- Āśvins, the, in the Vedic period, 274; depend on nature-symbolism ... 275
- Athusamed, a Mappila hero ... 536
- Atimukta, brother of Kaiṣa (Jaina) ... 298
- Atrēyikā, Jaina ascetic ... 292
- Aurangzeb's family, note on ... 79 f.
- Avilāṭhāvárōsa = Valooz = Walanj ... 517
- Ayuthia = Bangkok ... 383
- Ayyavole = Aihole in the Bhijāpur District. 260
- Baal in *Qorān* ... 45
- Badgaon = Nālanda ... 55



- Badr, battle of, 321; its effect on Muhammad-an law, 321: Māppila version of the story ... 507 ff.  
 Bāgaḍage, Bāge, or Bāgenāḍ seventy district ... 265, 267  
 Bāge fifty, a small district in the Tardavāḍi thousand ... 380  
 Bāge, Bāgenāḍ, or Bāgaḍage seventy district ... 265, 267  
 Bāhaḍa of Vallabhi (Jaina) ... 307  
 Bāhubali in the Satrunjaya Range ... 245  
 Baibhār Hill, described ... 59  
 Bakraur, remains at ... 95 f.  
 Bala, demi-god (Jaina) ... 251  
 Balabhadra = Balarāma ... 298  
 Baladēva = Balarāma ... 298  
 Balarāma, son of Kāṇsa (Jaina) ... 298  
 Balāśwar Temple = Black Pagoda ... 348  
 Bāḷguḷikār-Iṭṭage, an ancient village ... 257  
 Bālivaṇsa, the members of the, were lords of the Daḍigamaṇḍala country ... 110, 266  
 Bamza-'abum-skyid, wife of Kēsar = the Green Tārā ... 361  
 Banavāsi twelve-thousand province ... 106, 265  
 Banihilan (Māppila hero) ... 529  
 Banitha Mimū (Māppila hero) ... 529  
 Bannekal, ancient, in the Bellary District under the same name ... 108  
 Banu Al-Nādir, expulsion of the (Jews) ... 326 f.  
 Banū Isrāil = the Arab Jews ... 228  
 Banū Koreiza, siege of the ... 329  
 Banū Qainoqā, expedition against the ... 322 f.  
 Banu Tamim, the Tribe of ... 460  
 Bāpatla, an inscription at, said to be of A. D. 810-11 ... 207 n.  
 Barābar, Caves at ... 96  
 Baragiri Hill, near Selagāra ... 370  
 Baraṭa, a *raḍhaṣa* ... 249  
 barca, Port, a sailing boat, bark ... 161  
 barco, Port, a barge ... 161  
 Barrebulle buoys in the Hugli, 342; name discussed ... 347  
 Barren Island mentioned by Ritchie (1771). 238  
 Barros, Francisco de, voyage to Patani ... 436  
 Barros, João de, utilises the two Portuguese letters of 1534-6 from Canton ... 445  
 Barva River, the ... 357  
 Basava, traditional founder of the Liṅgāyat sect ... 2  
 baṭan = batten ... 256  
 Batavia, the name discussed ... 348 f.  
 Battery Rock ... 409  
 bDud, the giant of the North ... 359  
 Bedas, Western Tibetan professional entertainers ... 330  
 Belugare or Belugale five-hundred district; it included Jamkhaṇḍi and Mudhōl ... 381, 382  
 Belār = the Pērār *agrahara* in the Kisukād Seventy... ... 261  
 Beluvalike near Selagāra, 370 = Bellokhee = Belaukhi = Belwāṅki ... 370  
 Belvola three-hundred district ... 106 and n., 262, 264, 265, 266  
 Belwāṅki = Beluvalike ... 370  
 Bengal Asiatic Society, remarks on a spurious record in the ... 203  
 Bengal, the name discussed ... 347 f.  
 Bhadrā, a stream of Satrunjaya ... 240  
 Bhagavant, Jaina image of the ... 306  
 Bhagiratha in the Satrunjaya Range ... 245  
 Bhairava leap at Girnār ... 241  
 Bhaṇḍāragavittage, the modern 'Bhandar Kavtha' in Shōlāpur... ... 212 n.  
 Bhānu, son of Satyabhāmā, born at Girnāra (Jaina) ... 300  
 Bhāranda birds (Jaina) ... 289  
 Bharata, Jaina version of the story of ... 248  
 Bhārata-kunḍa, the, built by Bharata ... 249  
 Bharatādhiśa, his pilgrimage to Satrunjaya, 249; a tank at Satrunjaya ... 240  
 Bhāratam, a mountain range (Jaina) ... 243  
 Bharatam-varsham (Jaina) ... 244  
 Bharatāni, Mount (Jaina) ... 243  
 Bhārūara, son of Satyabhāmā, born at Girnāra (Jaina) ... 300  
 Bhaumēyikas, Jaina gods ... 28  
 Bhāvaḍa Sēṭh, Jaina story of ... 304 f.  
 Bhāvalā, wife of Bhāvaḍa Sēṭh... ... 304  
 Bhavanaryendra Viḍanja (Jaina) ... 240  
 Bhavanavāsins, Jaina gods ... 28  
 Bhavishya, son of Devarāja ... 509  
 Bhijayēśvara = Vijayēśvara ... 259  
 Bhima, birth of (Jaina)... ... 299  
 Bhimarathi, an ancient name of the river Bhimā ... 212 n.  
 Bhimasēna, Jaina view of, 288 f.; son of Vajrasēna of Srāvasti (Jaina) ... 289 ff.  
 Bhōgavatipura town ... 266  
 Bhojavriṣṇi, son of Suvira (Jaina) ... 294  
 Bhōta = Tibet ... 305  
 Biblical references in the *Qorān*, origin of ... 44  
 Bihar, Archaeological tour in ... 54 ff., 81 ff.  
 Bijēśvara = Vijayēśvara ... 259  
 Bimlepatam, 343; the name discussed ... 348  
 Bingeraem = Ingeram ... 352  
 Bird Island, observations on (1755) ... 491 ff.  
 birth-custom, 266; Musalmān, in the Panjāb ... 40  
 bṭs = B (the letter) ... 256  
 Bishanpūr, sculptures at ... 89 f.



- Bizipatam = Vizagapatam ... 357  
 bKur-dmanmo, the Celestial Bride ... 334  
 bKur-dman-rgyalmo, the Heavenly Mother... 360  
 Black Pagoda, 342; the name discussed ... 348  
 Blackwood's Harbour, 344f.; a note on ... 358  
 Blair, Archibald, in charge of Port  
   Cornwallis, 1792 ... 30  
 boats, Indo-European terms for ... 160 ff.  
 Bôdh-Gayâ, a fraudulent record from ... 3 n.  
 Bostavie = Batavia ... 343  
 Bon Religion, the ... 132 ff.  
 Bonchos, the Pre-Buddhist religion of Tibet... 359  
 Bonpa Hymnal, a ... 359 ff.  
 bora = bhay, Hind., a lighter... 162  
 Borevali near Selagâra ... 370  
 Botelho, Jorge, commands a vessel in voyage  
   to China (1517), 425; commands a vessel  
   to China (1519) ... 428  
 Bourdonnais, de La, his attack on Madras,  
   1746, account of ... 64 f.  
 Bower Manuscript, value of the palaeography  
   of the ... 2  
 Braces, the, discussion on the term ... 552  
 Brâhma, as a *Muhammâdan* supernatural  
   being (Mappila) ... 529 f.  
 Brahmagiri, a summit of Satrunjaya ... 240  
 Brahman, rise of, as a god ... 277  
 Brâhman, as a caste, rise of the, 276;  
   origin of the power of the, 277:—an  
   extreme doctrine relating to an offence  
   against a, 407:—an anti-Brâhman story  
   from S. India ... 110 ff.  
 Brahmapuri near Limbârâmikâ, 515 =  
   ? Bramagaon ... 516  
 Brâhmi, a stream of Satrunjaya ... 240  
 Brahmo Religion, origin of the ... 288  
 Brigukachha, town of ... 293 ff.  
 Brihadratha, father of Jarâsandha (Jaina) .. 297  
 Brihaspati, origin of, as a god ... 276  
 Brihatdhvaja, son of Vasu (Jaina) ... 294  
 Brinjâri = Lambâdî ... 547  
 British Museum plates of Vira-Satyâśraya-  
   dêva; the places mentioned in them,  
   identified ... 369  
 brTandzin, the Red ... 333  
 brTanpa, 340; father of a'Bruguma ... 338, 366  
 Bubble-quo, a corruption of Bubble and  
   Squeak ... 163  
 Buddha, origin of his Religion, 277:—a knife  
   to stab (Tibetan) ... 333  
 Buddhavana Hill, 60 f.; identification of ... 83 f.  
 Buddhism, reason for the spread of, 279 f.;  
   and Christianity ... 279 f.  
 Budham Hill mistaken for Buddhavana, 61:—  
   described ... 61 f.
- Burmese expressions in Port Blair ... 551  
 Bûtuga II., Western Ganga of Mysore,  
   mentioned in an inscription at Rôn ... 262  
 Cafferie = coffree = negro or negroid ... 236  
 cairo = coir ... 399  
 Cajoree = Kedgerie ... 353  
 calavance = a bean = gram, the term dis-  
   cussed ... 391  
 Calculla confused with Calcutta ... 349  
 Calcute = Calcutta ... 342  
 Calcutta, the name discussed, 349; confused  
   with Calculla in old maps and books ... 349  
 Calcocota = Calculla, not Calcutta ... 349  
 Caletar = Ganjam ... 351  
 Calpie, 342; the name discussed ... 349  
 Calvo, Diogo, sails for China (1521), 429 f.;  
   on Chinese affairs in 1527 ... 434 ff.  
 Calvo, Vasco, at Hainan in 1536 ... 436  
 gambuco = Ar. *sanbug* = *barca* = a sailing  
   boat ... 161  
 canao = canoa = canoe... 161 f.  
 canoa = canoe ... 161 f.  
 canot = canoe ... 162  
 Canton, Portuguese in (1534-6) ... 421 ff.  
 Car-Nicobar mentioned by Ritchie (1771) ... 238  
 Caraid = Carera ... 350  
 Careda = Carera ... 349  
 Caregare = Carepare, Ganjam ... 351  
 Carepare, old name for Ganjam ... 351  
 Carera, 343 = Karadu, 349; the name dis-  
   cussed ... 342 f.  
 Carnarvon, the, in Madagascar (1756) ... 453  
 Castanheda on Chinese manners, 1553 ... 446 f.  
 caste, early formation of ... 276  
 cat, superstitions as to the ... 163  
 catamaran, the word discussed ... 350  
 cattamaran ... 495  
 Cattermaran ... 343  
 cayar = coir ... 399  
 celts in the Wynaad Hills ... 420 f.  
 Cerara = Carera... 350  
 Cicarahoeri = Chitricory ... 350  
 chae = choya ... 399 f.  
 Chakrêsvârî-suri, a Jaina god ... 305  
 Chakshushmant, son of Vimalavâhana ... 248  
 Chakrâ Ghât described ... 63  
 Chakradhara (Jaina) ... 250  
 Chakrêsvârî, wife of Javaḍa ... 306  
 Champâ, a town (Jaina) ... 294  
 Champaka, an elephant killed by Kṛishna  
   (Jaina) ... 299  
 Chandler, Capt., commands the *Rose* Galley  
   (1756) ... 453



- Chāndōr in the Nāsik District =? Chandra-  
dityapura = Chandravāḍa ... 518  
Chandrādityapura, an ancient town ... 518  
Chandragupta, Sandroktos ... 16  
Chandrakīrti King, story of (Jaina) ... 292  
Chandrapabhāsakshētra = Kapardin ... 306  
*chandrashāla* ... 305  
Chandravāḍa = Chāndōr in the Nāsik District. 518  
Chandrōdyānam, a grove of Śatrunjaya ... 240  
Channabasava, traditional founder of the  
Lingayat sect ... 2  
Chandura, a wrestler killed by Krishna  
(Jaina) ... 299  
Chāraṇamuni (Jaina) ... 295  
Chatham Island in Port Cornwallis ... 29, 184  
Chaturvakra = Kalkin ... 307  
*chaya* = *choya* ... 400  
Chēlam-sarōvara at Śatrunjaya ... 249  
*cheling* = *chiling* ... 350  
Chēramān Perumāl of Kōḍungallūr, the first  
Malabar Muhammadan, 501; = 'Abdu'r-  
Rahman Samiri ... 501  
Chetties, the, of Ganapativattam, described ... 409  
Chijns = the Chinese ... 421  
children, spirit-scaring from ... 163  
*chiling*, 344; the word discussed, 350; = *chiling* ... 350  
China, affairs of, in 1526, 431 ff.; in 1542,  
437;—early Italian visit to, 423;—Portu-  
guese intercourse with, in the 16th Century,  
421 ff.; Chinese annals silent on Portuguese  
visits to, 441 f.; Jaina notions of ... 305  
Chinavattā, the Northern Shān States ... 388  
Chinese officials, titles of, in Portuguese  
form, 446; identified ... 448  
Chitrāṅgada, son of Śāntanu (Jaina), 295;  
succeeds Śāntanu, 296; conquered by  
Yudhishtira ... 302  
Chitricory Reef, 344;—the name discussed,  
350 f.; = Cicarahoeria = Sikari-hori =  
Sriharikotā, Sanskritised from Chikirēni  
(Telug) ... 350 f.  
Chorol; father of 'aBruguma ... 336  
*choya* = Indian Madder ... 399 f.  
Christianity, early, in India, knowledge of,  
286; and Buddhism ... 279 f.  
Christians, = Possessors of the Writ, in the  
*Qorān* ... 466  
chronicles, ancient Indian, did exist ... 10  
Cocala = Calcutta ... 349  
Cocos Islands, the ... 30, 233  
Coelho, Duarte, arrives in Canton, 422; starts  
again for China (1516), 425; returns to  
Malacca (1518), 427;—reaches China again  
(1521) ... 430  
coir, the term discussed ... 399  
Colair Lake, Legend of the ... 200  
Colcota = Calcutta ... 344  
cold, folk-cure for a ... 163  
collivance, 389; the term discussed ... 391  
colophons of literary works; historical items  
in them ... 13, 26  
concubines, origin of Muhammadan law  
relating to ... 385 f.  
copper-plate charters; an illustration of the  
extent to which they are liable to travel far  
from the places to which they really  
belong ... 212 n.  
*coposs*, the term discussed ... 508  
corge = score ... 382  
*Cornucallia*, the ... 184, 186  
Cornwallis, Port, the old name for Port Blair,  
29, 183;—Archibald Blair, Superintendent  
of, 30;—as a naval arsenal (1792), 30;—  
changes of name, 28 f.; = Old Harbour,  
29;—first plan of (1791), 29 f.; Islands in... 29  
Cornwallis, Port, the present, first men-  
tioned, 184; = North East Harbour, 28;—  
decided on as a Settlement, 185 f.; Naval  
arsenal at, in 1792 ... 183 f.  
Coromandel Coast, currents on the ... 345  
Correra = Carera ... 344  
Corsali, Andrea, Italian writer on China  
(1515) ... 423  
course = corse = *kōs*, a road measure ... 408  
Continho, Affonso de Mello, commands fleet  
to China (1522) ... 431  
Coutinho, Fernandes, commands a vessel to  
China (1522) ... 431  
Couto's account of China in 1542 ... 437  
Oranganore = Kōḍungallūr ... 501  
Creation, the, in the *Qorān* ... 121  
Cruz, Gaspar da, on China, 1569-70 ... 447  
Cudavari = Godavery ... 351  
Cudjeree = Kedgerie ... 353  
Culculla = Calcutta, not Calcutta ... 349  
Culpie = Calpie ... 349  
cumulative rhyme, a South Indian ... 31 ff.  
Currency in Ladākh ... 456  
curtains, use of, to avert the evil eye ... 310  
Cusnapur = Kristnaporee ... 515  
*cuttanee*, a cotton cloth ... 508  
cyclone of October 2nd, 1746 ... 65 f.
- Daḍiga, the fictitious, of the Mysore legends ... 110  
Daḍigaraṇa of the Bālivarṇa race ... 110, 266  
Daḍigavāḍi, Daḍigaipāḍi, an ancient province,  
in Mysore, localised, 109;—mentioned also  
as the Daḍigamandala country, in connec-  
tion with the Bālivarṇa ... 110, 266



- Dākivaḍulunke seventy, the, unidentified ... 180 f.  
*dakshina* as a prefix to the names of gods ... 512  
 Dakshina-Siva, "the Siva of the South;"  
 the ancient name of a god in the Mahādēva  
 hills ... 512, 513  
 Dālbhya, the sage ... 406  
 dammer, = pitch ... 508  
 Daṇḍavīrya, the ... 250  
 Darīhagochoḍma, 338; the handmaid of  
 'aBruguma ... 336  
 Daśārāh, son of Andhakavṛishṇi (Jaina) ... 294  
*daśavanno*, a fiscal term ... 107 n., 267 n.  
 Datta, son of Kalkin (Jaina) ... 307  
 dammer, birth of a, Musalmāns, Panjāb ... 40  
 Daulatābād = Dēvagiri ... 518  
 David in the *Qorān* ... 47  
 Dawn, Vedic goddess of the, depends on  
 nature-symbolism ... 275  
 Day, the Last, in the *Qorān* ... 122  
 days of years and reigns, a system of reckon-  
 ing by ... 9  
 dBangpo-rgyab-bzhin, the king of Heaven,  
 331; a tale of his three sons ... 331 f.  
 dead, disposal of the, Sikh discussion on the ... 542  
 Dean = Dane ... 494  
 deaths at sea, method of recording, in 18th  
 Century ... 66  
 Dēigārvu near Vādāthānāgrama = Deogaon 517  
 Delagoa Bay, the *Happy Deliverance*,  
 reaches (1756) ... 453  
*Deliverance*, the *Happy*, starts on her voyage  
 (1756) ... 451  
 demons or bad gods, use of ... 272  
*dēva*, in the *Vēda*, used in a good sense ... 272  
 Dēvadēśa = Saṁrāshṭra ... 249  
 Dēvagēri, in Dhārwar, remarks on a spurious  
 record at ... 211  
 Dēvagiri = Daulatābād ... 518  
 Dēvakanṛipa, husband of Kumudini (Jaina). 296  
 Dēvaki, daughter of Dēvakanṛipa, wife of  
 Vasudēva, 294; Jaina story of ... 298  
 Dēvapāla, son of Sūryamalla ... 246  
 Dēvarāja, son of Mānāka ... 509  
 Dēvayāsā, daughter of Dēvaki (Jaina) ... 298  
 devil dance, a, possibly represented in the  
 Edakal Cave carvings ... 415 f.  
 Dew, Point = Point Devi ... 392  
 dGani, the Agu ... 331, 336 f., 340  
 Dhanēśvara of Valabhi, author of the  
*Satrunjaya Mahatmyam* ... 239, 307  
 Dhanka in Satrunjaya Range ... 245  
 Dharagiri, a hill near Selagāra ... 370  
 Dharaya the serpent prince (Jaina) 303;  
 the birth of (Jaina), 302:—son of Andha-  
 kavṛishṇi (Jaina) ... 294  
 Dhārāni, wife of Ugrasēna (Jaina) ... 291  
 Dharmavarman, Rājārāhi King of Nichulā-  
 pura ... 406  
 Dhātuki-khaṇḍa a division of the world  
 (Jaina) ... 243  
 dhony = *tōni*, Tam., a sailing boat ... 161  
 Dhṛitarāshṭra, son of Vichitravīrya (Jaina) ... 296  
 Dhruvarājapattana = Duraspatam ... 347  
 Dhupgarh = Harivatsakoṭṭa ... 514  
 Diamond Island ... 30  
 diaries, ancient Indian official, probably  
 existed ... 9  
 Digambara, explanation of ... 280  
 Dikkumāris (Jaina) ... 298  
 Dikkumāryas, the (Jaina) ... 251  
 Diligent Strait (Andamans), origin of  
 name ... 234  
 Dio, Island and Point = Point Divi ... 391  
 Dīpak Rāg, meaning of the term, 319; a  
 native view of the, 319:—stories about ... 319  
*dīrmat* = department ... 552  
 Diu Island = Point Divi ... 392  
 Divi, Point, near Masulipatam ... 391 f.  
 divorce, Muhammadan law of, 384; origin of. 383  
 dKar-thigmo, the Celestial Mother ... 334  
 Doddington, original account of the wreck  
 of the (1755), 451 ff., 454 ff., 491 ff.; leaves  
 the Downs (1755) ... 454  
 doll = *dāl* = gram ... 391  
 Dolphin, the, Rock ... 455  
 Dolphin's Nose, the, 343; at Vizagapatam,  
 name discussed ... 351  
 Dongrub = Kēsar, 149, 360: as a Saviour,  
 363:—son of the King of Heaven, 331 ff.:—  
 a tale of, 333 f.:—tale of his birth ... 334 f.  
 Donldan, son of the King of Heaven ... 331 ff.  
 Donyod, son of the King of Heaven ... 331 ff.  
 Donyodgrubpa = the Northern Lōkapāla =  
 Kēsar ... 149  
 Doogoraspatam = Duraspatam ... 347  
 dPalle, the Agu ... 331, 336, 340  
 dragon sovereigns in India ... 367 f.  
 drama, Indian, value of, 13:—its polyglot  
 nature ... 556  
 Drāvida, son of Vṛishabhasvāmin (Jaina) ... 250  
 Drīdhāsakti = Satrunjaya ... 244  
 drink, worship of a plant producing, arising  
 out of anthropomorphism ... 271  
 Drubri, a Māppila angel ... 533  
 Due Point = Point Divi, the term dis-  
 cussed ... 391 f.  
 Duhprasaha, Jaina teacher ... 308  
 Duhshamās, the (Jaina) ... 244  
 Duncan Passage (Andaman), origin of the  
 name ... 238



<i>Dunkirk</i> , the H. M. S., in 1755 ... .. 454	fiction, 22:—field still to be searched in, 22:—need for revision of texts already published ... .. 23
<i>Duraita</i> , an unbeliever ( <i>Māppila hero</i> ) ... 530	epitaphs in inscriptions, historical value of ... .. 18
<i>Duraspataṃ</i> = <i>Arnegon</i> ... .. 346 f.	<i>Erambarage</i> , ancient name of <i>Yelbarga</i> in the <i>Nizam's</i> Dominions ... .. 262
<i>Durgarāzpatam</i> = <i>Duraspataṃ</i> ... .. 347	<i>Erambaraga</i> = <i>Yelbarga</i> ... .. 262
<i>Duryōdhana</i> , son of <i>Dhṛitarāshṭra</i> ( <i>Jaina</i> ), 296:—pedigree of ( <i>Jaina</i> ), 294; <i>Jaina</i> story of his birth, 299:—a <i>Jaina</i> story of ... 302	<i>escutore</i> ... .. 492
<i>Dvaita Lake</i> , the ( <i>Jaina</i> ) ... .. 302	<i>Evil Eye</i> , local details concerning superstitions regarding the, 191 ff.:—averting the, origin of seclusion and ceremonial purification, 308 ff.:—origin of veils, marks and curtains ... .. 310
<i>Dvaitavanam</i> , the ( <i>Jaina</i> ) ... .. 302	<i>Evil Eye</i> , protectors against the—
<i>Dvārakā</i> , built by <i>Kubēra</i> for <i>Kṛishṇa</i> ( <i>Jaina</i> ) ... .. 300 f.	the hand ... .. 97 f.
<i>Dvārāvati</i> = <i>Sandoway</i> and <i>Bangkok</i> ... 388	honey ... .. 98
<i>Dvijapulli</i> , a hamlet in <i>Yeleyavāpi</i> ... .. 372	horn ... .. 98 f.
	the horse ... .. 100
	horse-shoe ... .. 100 f.
	hunchback ... .. 101
	hyena ... .. 101
	incense ... .. 101
	iron ... .. 101
	key ... .. 101 f.
	masks ... .. 102 f.
	milk ... .. 103
	mirror ... .. 103
	monkey ... .. 103
	mouth ... .. 103
	nails ... .. 103
	numbers ... .. 104
	palm-leaves ... .. 104
	phallus ... .. 104 f.
	prayers ... .. 105
	rites ... .. 105
	salt ... .. 187
	the scape ... .. 187
	sea-horse ... .. 187
	serpent ... .. 187
	shell ... .. 187
	siren ... .. 187
	skeleton ... .. 187
	skull ... .. 188
	spitting ... .. 188
	sulphur ... .. 188
	Sun-face ... .. 189
	thread ... .. 189
	tongue ... .. 189
	tooth ... .. 189
	water ... .. 189
	wolfskin ... .. 189 f.
	words ... .. 190
	writing ... .. 190
	<i>Exorcism</i> in the <i>Qorān</i> ... .. 123
<i>Edakal Cave</i> , rock-carvings in the, 409 ff.:—situation of, described in detail, 410 f.; lies in the <i>Edakamala Mountain</i> ... .. 409	
<i>Edgcote</i> , the, leaves the <i>Down</i> , 1755 ... .. 454	
<i>Elephant</i> , the; season so named—the asterism <i>Hastā</i> or <i>September-October</i> , 395: = <i>St. Francisco</i> ... .. 395	
<i>Elijah</i> in the <i>Qorān</i> ... .. 45	
<i>Elisha</i> in the <i>Qorān</i> ... .. 46	
<i>Empoli</i> , da, <i>Giovanni</i> , Italian writer on <i>China</i> (1515, 423:—in <i>Sumatra</i> (1516), 424:—death of (1517) ... .. 427	
endowments in inscriptions ... .. 19	
English, corruptions of ... .. 163, 256, 552	
<i>Epics</i> , Indian, effect of, on religion ... .. 281 f.	
<i>Epigraphia Indica</i> , its value ... .. 5	
epigraphic research, the necessity for further, 1, 3, 6, 22:—various methods of supplementing it, 26:—spurious materials to be avoided, 201 f.:—a number in <i>Mysore</i> , 212:—usually on copper, 211 f.:—are sometimes genuine documents tampered with, 213:—an ancient form of forgery, 202; some are modern forgeries, 203 f.:—occasions causing the forgeries, 204 f.; largely used to support claim to village property, 213, chiefly title-deeds to property, chiefly private in land, 212 f.; sometimes relate to religious grants, 213:—false historical statements in, 205:—means for recognising, 202 f.:—mode of using scientifically, 205 ff.:—list of ... 208 f., 214 ff.	
<i>Epigraphy</i> , Indian, interest in, wanted, 1; value of, to students, 1; directions in which scholars can help, 26; requires support and more students, 5:—value of details of, 2:—the source of knowledge of ancient Indian political history, 1; as a means of learning history, 201:—results of, need bringing together chronologically by classi-	



- Fāgim = Franks = Firinghee ... 438  
 Fakalu, a Mappila hero ... 534  
 Falcão, Lobo, starts for China (1516), 425:—  
   commands a vessel to China (1517) ... 425  
 Falcão, Manuel, starts for China (1516) ... 425  
 Farid Sāni = Shēkh Brahm ... 537  
 "fate" in the *Qordā*, dependent on politics... 326 f  
 finance in Indian inscriptions... 24  
 Fire-worship, arising out of anthropomor-  
   phism ... 271  
 Feringhee Burane, near Masulipatam ... 508  
 Firinghee, forms of, 508:—corruptions of,  
   Fāgim, 428; Fulanki .. 442  
 foist = *fusta*, Port., a small sailing vessel ... 161  
 Folklore in the Central Provinces ... 110 ff.  
 forgeries, epigraphic, 201 ff.;—literary, 201  
   and n.;—some of them are of quite modern  
   fabrication; thus, the Suradhēnupura  
   plates, 203;—and a plate in the Library  
   of the Asiatic Society of Bengal, 203;—  
   and some records at Rāmēshwaram ... 208  
 founding, river-borne, classical, Jaina stories  
   of a ... 296 f.  
 fowls, superstitions as to ... 256  
 Frāngula Dibba, near Masulipatam ... 508  
 Fu-lang-ki = Firinghee ... 442  
 Fuzeiro, Alvaro, commands a vessel to China,  
   1519 ... 428  
  
*g* and *v*, interchanges of ... 258  
 Gadādhara = Krishna (Jaina) ... 302  
*gaddones* = godowns ... 456  
 Gajouri = Kidgerie ... 353  
 Galvão, Antonio, at the Moluccas in 1536 ... 436  
 Gama, Estevão da, Captain of Malacca, 1534... 436  
 Gama, Paulo da, at Malacca, 1553 ... 436  
 Gāpada-Hālūr = Ganudukal in the Kisukād  
   Seventy... 261  
 Ganapati = Ganēsa ... 255, 282  
 Ganapativattam = Sultan's Battery ... 409  
 Gaṇḍamārtanḍa, a *biruda* of Krishna III. ... 373  
 Gāndhārī, wife of Dhṛitarāshṭra (Jaina), 296:—  
   mother of Duryōdhana (Jaina) ... 299  
 Gandhastī Stūpas, the ... 95  
 Ganēsa, development of, as a god, 262 f.:—  
   popular view of, in Madras, 255 f.; pecu-  
   liarity of the worship in Madras ... 255 f.  
 Gaṅgā, daughter of Jahnu, wife of Sāmtanu  
   (Jaina) ... 294 ff.  
 Gangam = Ganjam ... 343  
 Gaṅgavāḍi ninety-six-thousand province... 109, 262  
 Gāṅgēya Bhiṣhma, son of Sāmtanu (Jaina),  
   295 f.:—origin of his name (Jaina) ... 296  
 Ganjam, the name discussed ... 351  
  
 Ganudukal = Gāpada-Hālūr ... 261  
 garavance = calavance ... 391  
 Gardaware = Godavery ... 351  
 Garuḍa = probably the Sun ... 284  
 Gaṭṭavāḍi, remarks on the spurious inscrip-  
   tion at ... 211  
*gelua* = *jalid* = a shallop ... 161  
 geography, ancient Indian; an indication of  
   what remains to be done, 24 f., 26;—how  
   far it may be deduced from spurious  
   records ... 208  
 geography, notes on Indian, 257 ff., 369,  
   509 ff.:—in Indian inscriptions, 24 f.:—  
   Plotemy's, not yet sufficiently identified for  
   general use ... 24 f.  
 Ghāṭagrāma at the fort of Satrunjaya ... 304  
 Ghatparbhā River, the ... 332  
 Ghōgharagrāma = Ghōgargaon ... 517  
 Giridurga on Gīrnār ... 242, 246  
 Gīrnāra, Mount, = Gīrnār ... 246  
 Gīrvraja = Rājagṛha ... 57  
 Gīrnāra, the Yādavas at (Jaina) ... 300 f.  
 Giryek = Indrasailaguhā ... 54  
 gLing, the Land of, 33, 364 = the Earth ... 334  
*gling-glu*, a hymnal (Tibetan) ... 359  
 Gochodma = Darlhagochodma ... 340  
 God, Unity of, in the *Qordā*, 123 f.:—the  
   Father (Tibetan), 362: the Mother  
   (Tibetan) ... 362  
 Gōdāvari River, the ... 515  
 Godavery, the name discussed... 351 f.  
 Godinho, Mannel, at Malacca in 1533... 436  
 Godonosa = Godavery ... 351  
 godown, the term discussed ... 456  
 gods, the, in Jania Mythology, 28; good, rise  
   of the (Tibetan) ... 272  
 godung = godown ... 456  
 Godvara = Godavery ... 352  
 Gogzalhamo, 341, 359; mother of Dongrab,  
   331, of Kesar ... 335  
 Gordware = Godavery ... 352  
 Golgotha = Calcutta ... 349  
 Gomes, Jeronymo, visits China in 1543 ... 437  
 Gomichod = Darlhagochodma ... 340  
 goney = gunney ... 392  
 Gondewary = Godavery ... 351  
 Govinda = Krishna (Jaina) ... 302  
 Govindarāya, father of Vira-Satyāśrayadēva. 369  
 gram = doll = calavance ... 391  
*grami* ... 186  
*gratt*, a bogus word, explained ... 320  
 "great river, the," meaning the Krishna ... 372, 381  
 Greeks, Muhammad's attack on the ... 461  
 grindstone, superstition relating to the ... 120  
 Guadavari = Godavery ... 351



- Guard-an-ogre, Point = Gôdâvari Point, 343, 351  
 Guardeware, Point, = Godavery ... 389  
*gudoos* = godowns ... 456  
 Guedes, Martim, commands a vessel to  
 China (1517) ... 425  
 Gugernat = Juggernaut ... 352  
*guinea*, a term for Rs. 15 in India, 368:—  
 sovereign in India ... 368  
*guinna*, a bogus word, explained ... 320  
 Guṇa-Sundari, daughter of Kalyānasundara, 247  
 gunney, 389; the term discussed ... 392  
 Gunsar, the site of the ancient Pāṭaliputra... 96 f.  
*gurra*, a cotton cloth ... 508  
 Gurupādagiri = Kukkuṭapādagiri ... 87
- Habīb-ibn-Malik, Muhammadan Apostle to  
 Malabār ... 501  
 Haimavatam, a mountain range (Jaina) ... 243  
 Hafsā, wife of Muhammad ... 385  
 Hajj, the, in the *Qorān*... 457  
 Hallelujah-Psalms, Muhammad's ... 326  
 Haman in the *Qorān* ... 47  
 Hamsa Stōpa ... 55  
 Hamāvatī = Pegu ... 388  
 hand, the, as a protection against the Evil  
 Eye ... 97 f.  
*hangling*, angle-iron, a corruption of English. 320  
 Hari = Kṛishṇa (Jaina) ... 302  
 Hari and Hariṇi, eponyms of the Harivaṇśa  
 (Jaina version of story) ... 292  
 Harivaṇśa, Jaina legend of the ... 292  
 Harivarsha, city of ... 292  
 Harivarshan, a mountain range (Jaina) ... 243  
 Harivatsakoṭṭa, ancient name of a hill-  
 fort in the Mahādēva hills ... 511, 514  
*Harshacharita* of Bāṇa; remarks on its  
 historical value ... 12  
 Hasrā, as a site for Kukkuṭapādagiri ... 86 f.  
 Hasrā-kōl, site of Kukkuṭapādagiri ... 87  
 Hastināgapura, a town (Jaina) ... 294  
 Hastisēna becomes a Jaina ascetic ... 303  
 Haya, a demon killed by Kaṇsa (Jaina) ... 299  
 Hazaribagh, archaeological tour in ... 54 ff., 81 ff.  
 Heraclius, Muhammad's attack on the  
 Emperor ... 461  
 heifer, red, the ordinance of the (Muham-  
 madan) ... 230  
 Hēmakūṭa, Puranic mountain ... 244  
 Henriquez, Dom Francisco, Captain of  
 Malacca in 1569-70 ... 443  
 Himachūlā, wife of Vijaya, ancestress of  
 Rāma (Jaina) ... 251  
 Himavant, Mount (Jaina), 243, Puranic moun-  
 tain ... 244
- Himavant, son of Andhakavṛishṇi (Jaina) ... 294  
 Himavantapadśa = the Northern Shan State. 388  
 Hindorstand = Hindustani ... 397  
 Hiranyamayam, Mount (Jaina) ... 243  
 Hiriya-Maniyār in the Kisukād Seventy, 262:  
 in the Dhānvār District ... 262  
 historical records, Indian; classification of  
 them according to the materials on which  
 they have been preserved, 16 f.;— and  
 according to the objects of them, 18 ff.;  
 —spurious records, 201 ff.;—records con-  
 taining passages of different dates, 209;—  
 genuine records which have been tampered  
 with ... 213 and n.  
 historical research, Indian; the present  
 position of it, 1 ff.;—various methods of  
 prosecuting it by way of supplementing  
 the epigraphic inquiry, 26;—false details  
 and fables to be eliminated... 201 f.  
 historical romances, instances of, and  
 remarks on them ... 12  
 historical statements, false; the reason for  
 the introduction of them into spurious  
 records ... 205  
 history, ancient; how far and in what ways the  
 Hindūs have helped in preserving it, 6 ff.;—  
 the real reason for which they have done so  
 in the epigraphic records ... 22  
 history, notes on Indian, 257 ff., 369, 509 ff.:—  
 inscriptions an accident, not a purpose, 22;  
 ancient Indian, depends on inscriptions ... 1  
 Hsien Tsiang, Chinese pilgrim; the necessity  
 for re-examining proposed identifications  
 of places mentioned by him... 25 f.  
 Hobal, the shrine of ... 457  
*Hobson-Jobson*, Cross Index to... 34 ff., 68 ff.,  
 112 ff., 149 ff., 252 ff., 311 ff., 364 ff., 549 ff.  
 Homem, Pedro, commands a vessel to China... 431  
 honey, a protection against the Evil Eye ... 98  
 horn, a protection against the Evil Eye ... 98 f.  
 horse, the, a protection against the Evil Eye,  
 100; the god's bay ... 339  
 horse-shoe, a protection against the Evil  
 Eye ... 100 f.  
 Hor, the land of, 364:—Mongolia=Yarkand... 364  
 Hosea, the "marriages" of ... 383  
 Houghton, the, leaves the Downs, 1755 ... 454  
 Hrishikēsa = Kṛishṇa (Jaina) ... 302  
 Hūd in the *Qorān* ... 44  
 Hudeibiyah, Treaty of ... 457 f.  
 Hugli R., the, Barrebulle Buoya, 342;—the  
 Buoy of the Fairway, 342:—Fairway or  
 Western Channell ... 347  
 Hui-hui = Panthay ... 39  
 Hui-tzu = Panthay ... 39



- Hunain, Battle of, Māppila version ... 528 ff.  
 hunchback, a protector against the Evil Eye ... 101  
 Hungund in Bijāpur; its ancient name was  
 Ponugunda ... 264  
 Hutchinson, Capt., commands the *Carnarvon*,  
 1756 ... 454  
 Hwait-ze = Panthay ... 39  
 hyena, a protector against the Evil Eye ... 101  
 "Hypocrites," the, 224 f.: were the Arab  
 Jews ... 224 ff.
- Iagannat = Juggernaut ... 353  
 Iblis, Mappila view of ... 529, 533  
 ice-lion, the, of Tibet = a glacier ... 137  
 Ilāvṛitam, Mount (Jaina) ... 243  
 Imām Ali, as a Mappila hero ... 536  
 Imish, the Brāhman (?), Māppila hero ... 530  
 Impole, Joannes, early Portuguese merchant  
 to China (1515) ... 424  
 incense, a protector against the Evil Eye ... 101  
 Iñchal-Karāñji = Karandai ... 371  
 India, Aryan Settlement of, origin of ... 272  
 Indian historical research; the present  
 position of it, 1 ff.;—various methods of  
 prosecuting it by way of supplementing  
 the epigraphic inquiry, 26;—false details  
 and fables to be eliminated ... 201 f.  
 Indra, the god of the Thunderstorm, Vedic  
 ideas on, 274:—his performances at  
 Raivata (Girnār) in human form, Jaina  
 story of ... 301  
 Indrakētu descended from Hastin of Hastinā-  
 pura (Jaina) ... 294  
 Indras (Jaina gods) ... 298  
 Indrasailaguhā, 55; = modern Giryek ... 54  
 Ingeram, 343; the name discussed ... 352  
 inscriptions, Indian, are on copper and stone,  
 one only on iron, 16; on copper usually  
 called grants, 17; on stone usually called  
 "inscriptions," 17:—commencement of the  
 study of, 16:—very numerous and  
 ubiquitous, 17; value of the varied matter in  
 them, 17 f.; the principal materials for  
 research into ancient India, 27:—usually  
 commemorate royal donations, 21; recording  
 administration of the law, 29 f.; as the basis  
 of titles to real property and rights, 21;  
 recording endowments, 19 ff.; recording  
 religious doctrines, 19:—determine all  
 ancient Indian historical questions, 3; the  
 source of ancient Indian political his-  
 tory, 1; recording treaties, 19; relating to  
 royal donations, historical value of, 22;  
 purely historical instances of, 18; value of  
 even isolated, for history, 1: monumental,  
 historical value of, 18: usually dated in  
 various Hindu eras, 17:—classification of,  
 importance of, 16, by materials and by  
 objects, 161, by contents, 18:—relating to  
 administration, 24; to finance, 24; to  
 geography, 24; to grants to private indi-  
 viduals, 12; to ownership of land, 20; to  
 religious buildings and installations, 19 f.;  
 to visits to sacred sites, 20; to great  
 sacrifices, 19; to sectarian disputes ... 20  
 Inscriptions, noted or edited:—  
 at Bishanpūr ... 90  
 in the Edakal Cave, edited ... 411 ff.  
 at Hasrā ... 87  
 at Kuloha Hill ... 93  
 at Kurkihār ... 86  
 Inscriptions, Forged:—  
 Alamanda plates of Anantavarman year  
 304 ... 214  
 Alṭēm plates of Pulakēsin I., Sa.-St. 411 ... 218  
 Anantapur plates of Janamējaya ... 220 f.  
 Bagumrā plates of Dadda II., Sa.-St. 415 ... 218  
 Bangalore Museum plates of Vira-  
 Nonamba, Sa.-St. 366 ... 221  
 Bangalore Museum plates of Koṅgani-  
 mahārāja ... 222  
 Bēgūr plates of Janamējaya ... 220  
 Bhimankaṭṭi plates of Janamējaya ... 219 f.  
 Bombay R. A. S. plates of Dharaśēna II.,  
 Sa.-St. 400 ... 217  
 British Museum plates of Sivamāra ... 222  
 Chicacole plates of Dēvēndravarmān  
 year 51 ... 214  
 Chicacole plates of Satyavarman  
 year 351 ... 214  
 Dēvagēri Inscription, Sa.-St. 522 ... 217  
 Devarhalli plates of Śripurusha-Mutta-  
 rasa, Sa.-St. 698 ... 223  
 Dhiniki plates of Jāikadēva, V.-St. 794 ... 216  
 Galigōkere plates of Ranavikramayya ... 223  
 Gaṭṭavādi Inscription, Sa.-St. 111 ... 221  
 Gaṭṭam plates of Sivamāra II. ... 223  
 Ganjam plates of Prithivivarman ... 214  
 Gauj plates of Janamējaya ... 220  
 Gayā plate of Samudragupta year 9 ... 214  
 Haidarabad plates of Vikramāditya I. ... 219  
 Hallegere plates of Sivamāra I., Sa.-  
 St. 635 ... 222  
 Harihar plates of Viṣṇugōpa, Sa.-St. 272 ... 221  
 Hosūr plates of Satyāśraya ... 222  
 Hosūr plates of Śripurusha-Muttarasa,  
 Sa.-St. 684 ... 222 f.  
 Ilāḥ plates of Dadda II., Sa.-St. 417 ... 216



- Kandalgaon plates of Pulukésin II. ... 217  
 Karnól plates of Vikramāditya I. ... 214  
 Khairōjhisthāna plates of Kṛishna III.,  
 Sa.-St. 633 ... 217  
 Komaralingam plates of Ravidatta ... 215  
 Kuppagaḍḍa plates of Janamējaya ... 220  
 Kurtakōṭi plates of Vikramāditya in  
 Sa.-St. 530 ... 217  
 Lakshmēshwar Inscription, Sa.-St. 645,  
 651, 890, 608 ... 218 f.  
 Madras Museum plates (10) of Vira-  
 Saṅgaḍaiyān ... 215 f.  
 Lakshmēshwar Inscription, Sa.-St. 890  
 and 656 ... 218  
 Mallohalli plates of Durvinita ... 222  
 Mallohalli plates of Kōṅganirāja... 221 f.  
 Muḍiyanār plates of Malladēva-Nandi-  
 varman, Sa.-St. 261 ... 221  
 Mukara plates of Avinīṭa-Kōṅganīma-  
 hādhirāja, Sa.-St. 388 ... 219  
 Nirpaṇ plates of Tribhuvanāśraya-Nāga-  
 vardhana ... 216  
 Pedda-Cherukūru plates of Viṣṇuvar-  
 dhana ... 214  
 Pimpalnār plates of Satyāśraya, Sa.-St.  
 310... 216  
 Sorab plates of Janamējaya ... 220  
 Srīraṅpur Inscription of Satyāśraya,  
 Sa.-St. 19 ... 217  
 Srīpūṇḍi plates of Viṣṇuvandhana-Tāḷa. 214  
 Sūḍi plates of Bātuga II., Sa.-St. 860 ... 217  
 Tagaḍḍu plates of Harivarman, Sa.-St.  
 188... 221  
 Tanjore plates of Arivarman, Sa.-St. 169. 215  
 Tirthahalli plates of Janamējaya ... 219 f.  
 Udayēndiram plates of Nandivarman ... 215  
 Umēta plates of Dadda II., Sa.-St. 400... 216  
 Wadgaon plates of Amōghavarsha, Sa.-  
 St. 720 ... 218  
 introductions of literary works; historical  
 items in them ... 13, 26  
 Inzaram = Injeram ... 352  
 Inzipatam = Vizagapatam ... 357  
 iron, a protector against the Evil Eye, 101:—  
 its influence on lightning, 163; on drought. 163  
 'Isā = Jesus, in the *Qorān* ... 50  
 Isaac in the *Qorān* ... 46  
 Ishmael in the *Qorān* ... 46  
*ishṭa-dēva* ... 241  
 Ishākpattan = Vigagapatam ... 358  
 Islām, influence of, on Hinduism, 287 l.:— in  
 Malabar, 501; conversion of the Malabāris  
 to ... 501  
 Ismān Ali, the fourth Māppila Shāhid ... 506  
 Ismanli, the Lion (Māppila) ... 532  
 Isvarabhāpa, builder of the Jaina temple at  
 Rājapura ... 303  
 Isvaradatta of Prithvipura (Jaina) ... 289 f.  
 j and s, interchanges of ... 258  
 Jacob in the *Qorān* ... 46  
 Jaffari, a Mappila hero... 535  
 Jagannalla, prince of Takshasilā (Jaina) ... 305  
 Jagarynat = Juggernaut ... 352  
 Jagernot = Juggernaut ... 352  
 Jaggerenatt = Juggernaut ... 352  
 Jaggernat = Juggernaut ... 348  
 Jagrenat = Juggernaut ... 348, 353  
 Jakaranat = Juggernaut ... 353  
 Jākatra = Batavia ... 348  
 Jakernot = Juggernaut ... 342  
 Jakhtiban, discussed ... 61  
 Jaina mythology, note on, 27 f.; Triad-  
 Buddhist Triad, 246:— traditions at  
 Kuluha Hill ... 95  
*jaina-chaitya* ... 243  
 Jains, rise of the religion of the ... 230  
 Jājanāga, son of Jāvaḍa ... 306  
 Jambūdvīpa (Jaina), a division of the world.. 243  
 Jambukhaṇḍi, ancient name of Jamkhaṇḍi... 381  
 Jambukhaṇḍi seventy in the Belugare  
 five hundred ... 381  
 Jāmbavati, wife of Kṛishna (Jaina) ... 294  
 Jāngala, a disciple of Jāṭila Muni (Jaina) ... 290  
 Jāntēgāmvu near Vādāthānagrāma, 517, =  
 Jathagaon ... 518  
 Jarāsandha of Rajagriha (Jaina), 297:—  
 his quarrel with the Yādavas (Jaina) ... 306  
 Jarāsandha's Seat, a Stūpa ... 55, 59  
 Jāṭābhāra, an ancient name of a god or a  
 place in the Mahādēva hills ... 511, 513  
 Jāṭā-Samkara, name of a peak in the Mahā-  
 dēva hills, 513;—and of a *tīrtha* ... 513 n.  
*jāṭi*, the, his duty (Jaina) ... 249  
 Jāṭila Muni (Jaina) ... 290  
*jau*, origin of the Tibetan term, = a coin ... 456  
 Jāvaḍa, son of Bhāvaḍa Sēṭh, 304; death  
 of ... 306  
 Jayamati, wife of Jāvaḍa ... 306  
 Jayaśekhara, an alleged king of Pārāśara-  
 parvata... 201 n.  
 Jayasēna, brother of Bhīmasēna (Jaina) ... 292  
 Jayasingha, the keeper of the Harivatsukoṭṭa  
 fort ... 511  
 Jeshtiban described ... 62 f.  
 Jesus, stories of, in the *Qorān* ... 44, 49 ff.  
 Jēthiān described ... 61 ff.  
 Jews in the *Qorān*, 224 ff.; versus Islām, 464:—  
 Muhammadan expulsion of the, 326:—



- Arab = Banû Isrâil, 228; Muhammad and the Arab, 323 ff. :— in Travancore, mentioned in an inscription... 20
- Jigalûr = Sivunûr ... 258
- Jitaśatru, father of Ajitasvâmin, 251; governor of Bhṛigukachha ... 293
- Jīvayāśā, daughter of Jarāsandha, Jaina story of, 297 f.; wife of Kansa (Jaina), 298; vows vengeance on the Yādavas (Jaina) ... 300
- Jñānachandra Muni (Jaina) ... 292
- Job in the *Qorān* ... 46
- johncumon, a bogus word, explained ... 320
- John Gernaet = Jaggernaut ... 352
- Jokārta = Batavia ... 349
- Jonah in the *Qorān* ... 42, 45 f.
- Jones, Evan, writer of the account of the wreck of the *Doddington* ... 455
- jonque (French) = junk ... 161 f.
- Joseph (Yūsuf) in the *Qorān* ... 49
- juffye, the term discussed ... 508
- Juggernaut, the name discussed ... 352 f.
- Jump of the cultch, the term discussed ... 508
- jumper, the term in India ... 508
- Juna-Panhālā = Undraparvata ... 371
- Juno, the ... 184, 186
- jute, 389; the term discussed ... 392
- Jutta-Shunkur = Jaṭā-Sāmkara = Jaṭa-bhāra ... 513 f.
- Jyatiśkas, Jaina divinities of the sky ... 28
- Jyotirindra Viḍanjan (Jaina) ... 240
- Ka'ba, pilgrimage to the, Muhammad's ... 457
- Kachchhaurājā not identified ... 517
- Kadambaka in the Satrunjaya Range ... 245
- Kādambakagiri shrine attributed to Bharata ... 249
- Kādambārī forest, the ... 302
- Kailāsa = Satrunjaya ... 244
- Kailāsa crest ... 13
- Kālambaḍi district, a division of the Karahāṭa four-thousand province ... 379
- Kalaṇḍavēṇuvana Vihāra, the ... 57
- Kālēm = Kala = Kaleh = Kalli ... 376 f.
- Kalid as a Mappila hero ... 536
- Kaligiri ... 302
- Kalikunḍam Jaina temple, said to be an Aṅga foundation ... 308
- Kalinga, the capital of, mentioned by Hiuen-Tsiang, was Piṭhāpuram ... 26
- Kāliya, a serpent killed by Kṛishṇa (Jaina) ... 299
- Kāliyath Shifa, the ... 505
- Kaliyuga era; records claiming to be dated in it, 215 f., 219 and n.;—the division of it known as the era of Yudhiśthira ... 219 n.
- Kāliyûr, remarks on an inscription said to exist at... 208 n.
- Kalkin, Jaina story of ... 307
- Kalli = Kālēm ... 377
- Kalli twelve, a group of villages attached to the Karahāṭa four-thousand province, localised ... 373, 376, 379
- Kalpātītas, gods of the Jains ... 28
- Kālpī = Calpie ... 349
- Kalpōpagas, Jaina divinities of time ... 28
- Kalyāṇa-kaṭaka is in the Kanyakubja Country ... 247
- Kalyāṇapura, an ancient town, the modern Kalyāṇi in the Nizam's Dominions ... 369
- Kalyāṇasundara, king of Kalyāṇakaṭaka ... 247
- Kamadāyin in the Satrunjaya Range ... 245
- Kamḍumuni Hill, the place of Vīra, the Jina ... 240
- Kāmpilyapura, the town of Bhāvaḍa Sāṭh ... 304
- Kanasa, son of Ugrasēna (Jaina) ... 294
- Kāmvadēvarāya, a Chālukya prince ... 207 n.
- Kanabaḍi = Kanamaḍi = Kaḷabaḍi ... 379
- Kanakagiri mountain ... 13
- Kapaṇvade, another form of the name of the Kaḷambaḍi district ... 379
- Kanārak = Black Pagoda ... 348
- kānbālēs = convalescent ... 552
- Kānchana, a summit of Raivata (Jaina) ... 295
- Kaūchagāra-Belgali = Kunohagar Bellagul in the Bellary District ... 257
- Kānchīpura ... 265
- Kaṇḍu of Chandrapura (?), a Jaina hero ... 241
- Kaṇēkallu = Kanakallu ... 108
- Kanerere = Carera ... 350
- Kanhavannā, a Prākṛit name of the river Kṛishṇā ... 373, 376
- Kanhavannā River, the = the Agrapī River, 373 f.; a wrong reading, 375 f.:—Kṛishṇavannā = the Kṛishṇa ... 376
- Kaniyakal = Modern Kunakallu in the Bellary District ... 108
- Kaniyakal three-hundred district, localised ... 108
- Kāṇkēm in the Kalli Twelve of the Karahāṭa Province, 373, = Kaṅki ... 374
- Kaṅki = Kankēm ... 374
- Kansa, Jaina story of his birth, 297; his doings at Mathurā, 299 f.; usurps his father's kingdom, 298; killed by Kṛishṇa ... 300
- Kausāmbaka forest (Jaina) ... 303
- Kanyakubja Country, the ... 247
- Kapilā, a stream of Satrunjaya ... 240
- Kapardayaksha (Jaina) ... 305
- Kapardikā stream = Yakshāṅgi ... 240
- Kapardin in the Satrunjaya Range, 245; story of (Jaina) ... 305 f.
- kapitan, Chinese corruption of "Captain" ... 442



- Karād; see Karhād ... 377  
 Karadu = Carera ... 349  
 Karahāṭa four-thousand province; its position and limits ... 377 ff.  
 Karandai, an ancient place; it is the modern Iñchal-Karāñji ... 371  
 Karāñjakhēṭa, an ancient place ... 373, 377  
 Kareda = Carera ... 350  
 Karhād, in Sātārā; its modern and ancient names, 377, 378; — the places mentioned in the plates of A. D. 959, identified ... 373  
 Karimidi or Kariviḍi thirty district; its position ... 267  
 Kārivana, the (Jaina) ... 303  
 Kariviḍi or Karimidi thirty district; its position ... 267  
 Karṇa, an alleged Chālukya ... 206, 207 n.  
 Karṇa, son of Kuntī and Pāṇḍu (Jaina) ... 297  
 Kaṭha, an ascetic, connected with Pāravanātha, 302; = Mēghamālin ... 302  
*katokamutkalita*, an expression meaning "a camp was pitched" ... 220 n.  
 Kāvya Uśanas = the Teacher and Representative of the *Asuras* ... 272  
*kayṭr* = coir ... 399  
 Kedgerie ... 342  
 Kedgerie = Khijiri, 353; the name discussed ... 353  
 keddysall = kitesall ... 347  
 Kegeria = Kedgerie ... 353  
 Kegeria = Kedgerie ... 353  
 Kejeria = Kedgerie ... 353  
 Kejavāḍi three-hundred district ... 264, 266, 267  
 Kerare = Carera ... 350  
 Kesar, discussed, 330: — is the King of the Gods, 335, 341; is King of gLing (Earth), 340: — as the Sun, 149: — as a saviour, 363: — as an Agni (the 19th), 561: — = Dongrub, 360: — and 'aBruguma, song to, 362: — a lullaby to, as a babe, 360: — a hymn to, 359: — his festival in the Spring ... 359  
 Kesar Saga, Spring Myth of the, 329 ff.; Winter Myths of the, 330: — is Pre-Buddhist, 330: — an episode of the ... 331  
 Kēsi, a demon killed by Kaṇsa (Jaina) ... 299  
 key, a protector against the Evil Eye ... 101 f.  
 Khajūri = Kedgerie ... 353  
 Khalithi bin Al Holith, Māppila hero ... 531  
 Khara, a demon killed by Kaṇsa (Jaina) ... 299  
 Khārabēla of Kalinga, historical narrative in inscription of ... 18  
 Khātigaṇṇu near Vādāṭhānagrāma ... 517  
 Khidrāpur = Koppam ... 371  
 Khromo, the Agni, 331; a tale of ... 335 f.  
 Khyang-dkrung = the Sun ... 132  
 Kilvishika, a god = Viru Kuvinda (Jaina) ... 292  
*kiupṣeh* = king-post ... 256  
 Kīriya-Dākivaḍuvangi unidentified ... 108 f.  
 kirnis = screen ... 256  
 Kirtidhara, son of Purandara ... 251  
 Kirtikēta descended from Hastin of Hastinapura (Jaina) ... 294  
 Kīru-Nareyaṅgal in the Kisukād Seventy ... 262  
 Kisukād seventy district; its position, boundaries, chief towns, and history, 259 ff.; — its Sanskrit name was *Sulvātavi*, 261, 264; — the meaning of its name ... 264  
 Kisuvola, an ancient name of Paṣṭadakal in Bijāpur ... 259, 263  
 kitesall = umbrella = burabulla = parrasoll ... 347  
 Kittle-Bottom, the, 344; the name discussed, is in the Nagari Hills ... 553 f.  
 kittysol = kitesall ... 347  
 Kling = Obeling = Quillin ... 350  
 Koḍaganūr in the Kariviḍi Thirty ... 268  
 Kōḍungallūr = Oranganore ... 501  
 Kōḍikop in the Dhārwar District, 261 f.; = Kīru-Nareyaṅgal ... 262  
 Kogaṇa or Kogaṇa, a *biruda* applied to Krishna III ... 373  
 Kōḷa, a town in the Bellary District ... 108  
 Kōḷa country, localised ... 106  
 Kognoli = Kōḷulavali ... 370  
 Kola Baith, Māppila hero ... 530  
 Kōḷhāpur, the temple of Mahālakṣmi or Ambābāi at; remarks on an inscription said to exist there ... 206, 207 n.  
 Kollāka Mount ... 241  
 Kōṅganivarman, the mythical first Gaṅga ... 210  
 Kōṅganōḷi = Kōḷulavali ... 370  
*Kōṅgudēśvarājātka*, an imaginative chronicle of Mysore ... 6, 201 and n.  
 Kōṅgulavali near Selagāra, 370: = Kognoli = Kōṅgnoollee = Kōṅgulavalli = Kōṅganōḷi 370  
 Kōṅgulavali twelve, a group of villages near Miraj, localised, 369, 370; the present ownership of ... 371  
 Konnūr, in Dhārwar, remarks on the inscription at ... 210  
 Kōpēsvara, a god at Khidrāpur ... 369, 371  
 Koppam, a famous ancient battle-field; it is the modern Khidrāpur in the Kōḷhāpur territory ... 371  
 Korantaka, the Forest of ... 293  
 Kōśāmbhi = Nyauṅ-ywē ... 388  
 Kōṭṭa; there is no evidence of the existence of any such tribal or dynastic name ... 519  
*kōṭṭanigraha*, *kōṭṭanigrahin*, a word probably meaning 'a commander of a fort' ... 510



- Krishnā, the, styled "the great river"... 372, 381  
 Krishnā, Jaina view of, 288 f.; Brahmanical epithets of, among Jains, 302:—son of Dēvaki, Jaina story of, 298 f.; born at Gōkula, 298; his doings at Mathurā ... 299 f.  
 Krishnā worship, rise of, 280 f.; ritual of, foreign, 286 f.:—effect of Christianity on, 285 f.  
 Krishnavernā, the river Krishnā, 372:—the origin of this name, and variants of it ... 376  
 Kristnapooree = Limbārāmikā ... 515  
 Kṛitavīrya descended from Hastin of Hastināpura (Jaina) ... 294  
 Kroshtuki, the astrologer, Jaina version of his story ... 300  
 Kshitimaṇḍana in Sindhala (Jaina) ... 290  
 Kshitimaṇḍanamapjanam = Satrunjaya ... 244  
 Kshētram Mahāvīdēham ... 242  
 Kubēra, builds Dvārakā and gives gifts to Krishnā and his relatives (Jaina) ... 301  
 Kūḍalsangam, a famous ancient battle-field near Khidnāpur in the Kōlhāpur territory... 371  
 Kūḍlāpura, remarks about an inscription at... 209 f.  
 Kuḍugūr nāḍ, a division of the Pānāḍ six-thousand province ... 215 n.  
 Kukkuṭapādāgiri, 60 f.; = Gurpādāgiri, 87; Chinese accounts of, 87 f.; identified with Sōbnāth Hill, 88 f.; identified, is not Kurkihār ... 84 ff.  
 Kukkuṭēśvaram, the Jaina tīrtham ... 303  
 Kūla, son of Jarāsandha, Jaina story of ... 300  
 Kullān = the Kwangtung, a ship ... 163  
 Kulūha Hill, description of, 90 ff.; sacred sites on, 92 ff.; Daśavatāra sculptures ... 94  
 Kumārāpala of Vallabhi (Jaina) ... 307  
 Kumudini, wife of Vidura (Jaina) ... 296  
 Kuṇḍālādri, Mount (Jaina) ... 245  
 Kūṇḍi three-thousand province ... 381  
 Kunthu descended from Hastin of Hastināpura (Jaina) ... 294  
 Kuntī, wife of Pāṇḍu, Jaina story of, 296 f.: daughter of Vasudēva, wife of Pāṇḍu, 294; mother of Yudhishtira, 299; mother of Arjuna, 299; mother of Bhīma, 299:—builds a temple at Nāsikya (Jaina), 299: sculptures at, described ... 85 f.  
 Kurkihār is not Kukkuṭapādāgiri ... 84 f.  
 Kurumbars, the, of the Wynaad Hills, 410, 421:—Mōḷa, possibly represented in the Edakal Cave carvings ... 413  
 Kurūnda, Kurūndaka, ancient name of Kurūndwād ... 218 n., 371 and n.  
 Kusāgarapura = old Rājagṛha, 57 = modern Rājgir ... 56  
 kuṭāmra, 'a fraudulent charter' ... 202  
 kūṭasāsana, 'a forged charter' ... 202  
 kutcheres (khichri), composition of ... 391  
 Kyd, Alexander, appointed Supt. of the Andamans ... 31, 184  
 Kyesar = Kesar... 359  
 l, ḷ, and ṇ, interchanges of ... 258  
 l and r, interchanges of; in Erambarage-Yelbarga, 262;—other instances ... 377  
 lacca and dammer-lacca = pitch ... 508  
 Ladakhi Marriage Ritual, 131 ff.; Songs... 131 ff.  
 lagnadēvi, stone-cow (Jaina) ... 307  
 Lakshmanā, wife of Krishnā (Jaina) ... 294  
 Lakshmēshwar = Palikanagara, 106, = Raktapura ... 106  
 Lakshmēshwar, remarks about two spurious inscriptions at... 211  
 Lakshmlilāvilāsam, a forest at Satrunjaya... 240  
 Lakulīśa, a Saiva teacher ... 1  
 Lambādī = Brinjāri = Sugāll, 547:—songs of the ... 547 ff.  
 Lauhitya in the Satrunjaya Range ... 245  
 Laukēśa = Rāvaṇa (Jaina) ... 251  
 law, of property. Muhammadan, 322 ff.; as to ecclesiastical rights, 322:—as related in inscriptions ... 19 f.  
 leager, 389; the term discussed, 393 = legger. 393  
 lCogpo, king of the water-spirits ... 339  
 ldem, golden hat = the sun (Tibet) ... 143  
 Leeboard, the ... 29  
 legger = leager ... 393  
 Leṇṭurēm = Pendurēm Leṇṭiwēm, 375; = Retrēm ... 377  
 lha = a god in Tibet, 186; coloured white for luck ... 141  
 lhatho = god's seat = altar of white stone on hill-tops in Tibet ... 136  
 Limbārāmikā = Kristnapooree ... 515  
 Limbārāmikā, an ancient village, localised. 515, 516  
 Limbaree derived from the Limbārāmikā ... 516  
 Lingāyats, or Vira-Saivas; the foundation of their sect ... 2  
 literature, Indian, generally of no historical value ... 12  
 literary works; the existence of historical items in the introductions and colophons of them, 13;—and the necessity of collecting such items... 26  
 lōkapālas in Tibet ... 136, 141  
 Loovain, the (1746) ... 64, 343  
 Loqmān, personality of ... 128 f.  
 Lot in the Qordā... 44  
 Macmehone, mate of the Wake, writer of the Log ... 64  
 madahastipādarakshapālaka, 'captain of the guards of elephants' ... 369



- Madakunike near Selagāra ... 370  
 Madapollam ... 355  
 Madgalas, a people (Jaina) ... 304 f.  
 Madhumati, the town of Vikramārka, 304 :—  
 is in the Saurāṣṭra-maṇḍala ... 304  
 Madraka, father of Mādri (Jaina) ... 291  
 Madras, French attack on (1746), 64 f.;  
 capture of, by the French (1746), 65,  
 343 f. :— the name discussed ... 354  
 Mādri, daughter of Vasudēva, wife of Paṇḍu,  
 294; Jaina story of ... 297  
 Madubāvi = Mudbawee = Madbhav, 370 :—  
 near Selagāra ... 370  
 Magadha, Old, tour in ... 54 f.  
 Māgadhī dialect, derivation of the ... 554 f.  
 Māgere in the Karividi Thirty ... 268  
 magic squares in the Edakal Cave ... 413 f.  
 Magdhatthi-bin-Aso Dhul Kathi, a Mappila  
 hero ... 531  
 Mahābala = Satrunjaya ... 244  
 Mahābhārata, necessity for an Edition of  
 the South Indian recension, 118 :— value of  
 South Indian versions of, 118 :— value of  
 the Persian and Javanic versions of ... 119  
 Mahādēo Hill in the Hoshangābād  
 District ... 511  
 Mahādēva hills in the Central Provinces;  
 remarks on them and on a Śaiva shrine  
 there ... 511 f.  
 Mahādān, title of the High Priest of the  
 Māppilas ... 502  
 Mahābhīmavānt, Mount (Jaina) ... 243  
 Mahākāla, a *rākṣasa* conquered by Mahipala ... 246  
 Mahanēmi (Jaina) ... 301  
 Mahāpadam = Satrunjaya ... 244  
 mahāprabhu, a village official ... 372 n.  
 Māhārāṣṭri Prakṛit, non-existent ... 555  
 Maharattha = Mahanagararattha = Shān  
 States ... 388  
 Mahātīrtham = Satrunjaya ... 244  
 mahātmyas present imaginative history and  
 dates, 201 n. :— but they may be useful for  
 geographical inquiries ... 27  
 Mahāvidyākhaṇḍa (Jaina) ... 244  
 Mahāvīra (Jina) ... 243  
 Māhēśvari, a stream of Satrunjaya ... 240  
 Mahisakamaṇḍala = Ruby Mines ... 388  
 Mahipāla (Jaina), 245; son of Suryamalla, 246;  
 conquers the *rākṣasa* Mahākāla ... 246  
 Mahisamaṇḍala = Maisur ... 387  
 Makmas, the unbeliever, a Māppila hero ... 534  
 Mala, the lowest caste in S. India, folk-  
 origin of the ... 200  
 Malacca in the 16th Century, 421 f.; Shahids,  
 song of the ... 505 f.  
 Malapuram Mosque, destruction of the,  
 story of the ... 506  
 Malay trade in slaves from the Andamans ... 120  
 Malik-bin-Awauli (Māppila hero) ... 529  
 Malik-ibn-Dinar, Muhammadan apostle to  
 Malabar ... 501  
 Malik-ibn-Habib, Muhammadan apostle to  
 Malabar ... 501  
 Mallaka thirty, a small district in the Kara-  
 hāṭa four-thousand province, localised 372, 373  
 Malparbhā River, the ... 260  
 Mānapura, an ancient town or village ... 511, 514  
 Mānāka, the Rāṣṭrakūṭa ... 509  
 Maṇḍali thousand province ... 265  
 Māndhātā, ancestor of Rāma (Jaina) ... 251  
 Māngalavēṣṭaka = Māngalvēḍhēm ... 386  
 Mānjēri Temple, the ... 499  
 Mañichūḍa, King of Ratnapura ... 247  
 Manoel, Dom, his instructions on the first  
 voyage to China ... 421  
 Manuel, Dom Nuno, sends an expedition to  
 China (1621) ... 429 f.  
 Mānushottarapārvata, Mount (Jaina) ... 245  
 Māppilas = Moplas, the, described, 499 f.;  
 origin of name, 501 :— numbers of the,  
 502 :— varieties of, 501 :— amount of  
 Arab blood in the, 502 f.; Nasarāni or  
 Christian, 501; Jonaka or Chānaka, =  
 Muhammadan, 501 :— Religion, nature of  
 the, 504 f.; are Sunnis, 502; mosques of the,  
 502; origin of the fanaticism of, 499 f.;  
 culminating day of, 501 f.; High Priest  
 of the, 502 :— war songs of the, 499 f.,  
 528 f.; war knives of the ... 499  
 maps of India, list, 1642-1780 ... 346  
 Marāṭhī dialect, derivation of the ... 534  
 Maria, the Coptic girl, Muhammad's intrigue  
 with ... 385 f.  
 Maria, daughter of the Byzantine Emperor  
 Maurice, wife of a son of Nāshirvān, 244;  
 legendary ancestress of the princes of  
 Udayapura (Mēwar) ... 244  
 marriage-concubinage with slave women,  
 origin of Muhammadan law of ... 384  
 marriage songs in Western Tibet, 131 f. :—  
 in Ladākh ... 131 f.  
 marriage ritual in Western Tibet, 131 f. :—  
 131 f.; in Ladākh in two parts, Buddhist  
 and Pre-Buddhist ... 148  
 Mārudēva in the Satrunjaya Range ... 245  
 Mārudēva, son of Prasānaji ... 248  
 Mārudēvi, wife of Mārudēva, mother of  
 Rishabha ... 248  
 Marut, the winds, as Vedic gods ... 276  
 Māsavāḍi hundred-and-forty district ... 265



- Mascarenhas, Jorge, early Portuguese visit to China (1515), 424:— commands a vessel in voyage to China (1517), 425:— founds a trade at Ohwanchaufu, 1518 ... 427
- Mascarenhas, Pero, his proceedings in Malacca in 1526 ... 431
- mask, a protector against the Evil Eye, 102 f., 310
- Masulipatam, 343; the name discussed, 354, 397 f.
- Matchulipatam = Masulipatam ... 355, 392
- mathal* (Arabic) = aphorism, 165; full sense of the term, 165:— in Arabic Tradition, 179 ff.:— of the *Qorān*, period of ... 175
- matross in 1755 ... 456
- Mecca, the capture of, 459; the first pilgrimage to ... 457
- Mēgha-Kumāra, enemy of Bharata (Jaina) ... 248
- Mēghamālin = Kāṭha ... 302
- Mēgharaṭṭini Rāg, discussion on the ... 319
- Mello, Diogo de, commands a vessel to China (1522) ... 431
- Mēlpāṭi, ancient name of Mēlpāṭi in the North Arcot district ... 373
- Mendoza, Gonzalez de, on China ... 447
- Meru, Mount ... 241
- Meru *Mrtha* (Jaina) ... 215
- Mesopatamyā = Masulipatam ... 398
- Mēsha, a demon killed by Kāṇsa (Jaina) ... 299
- Mesopotamē = Masulipatam ... 398
- mesacott*, a corruption of Mess House (koṭ) ... 163
- Messopotania = Masulipatam ... 398
- Messiah, the, in the *Qorān* ... 50
- milk in suckling women, superstitions as to, 163:— a protector against the Evil Eye ... 103
- miracles, Muhammad and the performance of ... 42 ff., 322
- Miriñje three-hundred *kampāya*, the headquarters sub-division of the ancient Miraj territory ... 369, 370
- mirror, a protector against the Evil Eye ... 103
- Mithilā, the residence of Vira (Jina) ... 243
- Mithra in the *Acēsta* ... 271
- Mithyativī-dēvas, the (Jaina) ... 306
- Mitra = the Day Sky ... 270
- Mlēcchha princes in Vallabhi (Jaina) ... 307
- modern forgeries; the Suradhēnnpura plates, 203:— a plate in the Library of the Asiatic Society of Bengal, 203:— some records at Rāmēshwaram ... 208
- Mogul, = the ruling Indian Muhammadan ... 397
- Mōnāpālemurēvu = Blackwood's Harbour ... 358
- monkey, a protector against the Evil Eye ... 103
- monsoon, 389; discussion on the various senses of the term, 393 f.:— the season so named, 394; the wind and the season so named, 394; the winds so named, 394; the weather change so named, 395:— the bad weather at the equinoctial changes ... 396
- monumental inscriptions, historical value of ... 18
- Moor, 390 = an Indian Muhammadan discussed ... 396 f.
- Moorman = an Indian Muhammadan ... 397
- Moors = Hindustani ... 397
- Moplas, = Māpillas, the, described ... 499 f.
- Mosalemaṭṭu, an ancient village ... 107
- Moses, story of, in the *Qorān* ... 41, 44, 47 f.
- Mosopotania = Masulipatam ... 398
- Mota, Antonio da, visits China in 1542 ... 437
- moturpha*, house (properly trade) tax, explained ... 320
- mouth, a protector against the Evil Eye ... 103
- Mudgalas, conquer of Saurāshṭra, Kachha, Lāṭa (Jaina) ... 305
- Mudiampilli, goddess of the Ganapativattam Chetties ... 409
- Muduvalalu, the modern Mudhōl, 381, 382:— another place of the same name ... 268 and n.
- Muhammad, rise of the name, 327 ff.; as a name in the *Qorān* proves an interpolation, 522:— as the founder of a State, 224; as a "story-teller," 41; his domestic affairs, 382 ff.:— King of Mecca (Māppila) ... 533
- Mukkappa-Kaṭamba ... 220 n.
- Mukkukonḍa = the Kittle-Bottom ... 354
- Muktigēham = Satrunjaya ... 244
- muni* (Jaina) ... 242
- Munisuvrata as King of Champa (Jaina story), 293, = Suvrata, 294:— son of Samitra ... 293
- Mūsa, a Mappila hero ... 534
- Mushtika, a wrestler killed by Krishṇa (Jaina) ... 299
- mussoun = monsoon ... 394
- Musale = Masulipatam ... 398
- Mysore, a list of spurious records from, 219 ff.:— remarks about them ... 202 n., 204, 205, 208, 209 n., 209 f., 211, 212
- Mythology, Jaina, note on, 27 f.:— Comparative, discredited as a science ... 268
- n* and *l*, *ḷ*, interchanges of ... 258
- Naaman in the *Qorān* ... 46
- Nābhēya = Rishabha (Jina) ... 242
- Nābhi = Mārudēva ... 248
- Nāgaon = Urāgrāma ... 372
- Nagari-Nose, = the Kittle-Bottom ... 354
- Nāgamatbāna near Vādāthānagrāma, 517; = Nagamthan, 517; Nāgēndri, a stream of Satrunjaya ... 240
- Nagēsa in the Satrunjaya Range ... 245
- Naghusa, ancestor of Rāma (Jaina) ... 251



- Nagila, Jaina teacher ... 308  
 nail, a protector against the Evil Eye ... 103  
 nail-parings unlucky ... 120  
 Naire, devolution of property among the ... 502  
 Nakula, son of Paṇḍu (Jaina) ... 299  
 Nālanda of Hiuen Tsiang = modern Badgaon ... 55  
 Nanda, Jaina story of ... 299 f.  
 Nandisvara, Mount (Jaina) ... 245  
 Naratha Maharishi = Iblis (Māppila) ... 533  
 Naravarman of Satrunjaya, 247 :— father of  
 Prabhāvatī ... 302  
 Nārāyaṇa, Jaina legend of ... 251  
 Narcondam Island, Ritchie's Notes on ... 234  
 Naregal, in the Rōṇ taluka, remarks on the  
 inscriptions at ... 211  
 Nareyanagal twelve, a group of villages in  
 the Belvola country ... 264, 267  
 Narmadā River, Jaina origin of its sanctity ... 293  
 Narsapore, the name discussed ... 354 f.  
 Narsipelle near Narsapore ... 355  
 Narsipore = Narsapore ... 354  
 Nāsikya, Jaina tale of its sanctity ... 299  
 Nassipore = Narsapore ... 343  
 Nature in the Qordā ... 122  
 Nature religion, triumph of intellect over ... 283  
 Nauraspooram = Narsapore ... 355  
 navel-cord, superstition as to ... 256  
 Nāyak Gōpāl, court musician to Akbar ... 319  
 Nazareth near Missee (Māppila) ... 529  
 Negith, a Māppila hell ... 530  
 Negrais, Cape ... 234  
 Necobar = Nicobar ... 184  
 Nemi, one of the five principal Jains, 240 :—  
 a Jaina account of, 301 f. :— = Arish-  
 tanēmi, 298 f. :— son of Samudravijaya  
 (Jaina), 294 :— marriage of, 302 :—  
 "sun-worshipping" (Jaina) ... 295  
 Nēmiśa, Jaina view of, 288 f. :— was a  
 Harivamsa, 292 :— statue of, on Raivāta,  
 291 ; worshipped on Raivāta ... 288  
 Nēpāl vamsāvalī, remarks on the ... 8  
 Nēuragāṇvu near Vādāṭhānagrāma, 517 :  
 = Newargaon ... 517  
 Nicobars, Survey of the, under Kyd ... 184  
 Niḍagunḍi in the Kisukāḍ Seventy in the  
 Dhārwar District ... 261  
 Nibutārf, son of Dēvaki (Jaina) ... 298  
 Nila, Puranic mountain ... 244  
 Nilāngada, a Gandharva (Jaina) ... 296  
 Nilavant, Mount (Jaina) ... 243  
 Nimbani = Nimni, 372 = Limbare ... 516  
 Nine Gems, the ; the poet Kalidāsa, etc. 3 and n.  
 Nirvāṇa, date of the, a note on the ... 117  
 Nishādha, Mount (Jaina), 243 ; Puranic  
 mountain ... 244  
 Noah in the Qordā ... 42, 44  
 Nolambavāḍi thirty-two-thousand province,  
 107, 108, 109, 265  
 North East Harbour in the Andamans = Port  
 Cornwallis ... 28, 184  
 Norton, Robert, Commander of the Wake ... 64  
 numbers, a protector against the Evil Eye,  
 104 :— holy, Tibetan ... 564  
 Nyopas, the, described ... 131, 136  
 official records in early times ... 9  
 Old Harbour in the Andamans = Port  
 Blair ... 28  
 Omar, helps in the compilation of the Qordā,  
 519 :— as a Māppila hero ... 536  
 Omar bin Katab, the second Māppila Shāhid. 506  
 Orissa, remarks on the vamsāvalīs and  
 archives of ... 8 f., 201  
 Oontiya = Uṇṭikavāṭikā ... 514  
 ordeal, trial by, recorded in an inscription ... 20  
 Pachee = Panthay ... 40  
 paddy-boat ... 343  
 Padmādevī, wife of Sumitra ... 293  
 Padmāvatipura town ... 13  
 Padmōtara, an elephant killed by Kṛishṇa  
 (Jaina) ... 299  
 pado = pāyu = prow = galiot, a sailing  
 vessel ... 161  
 Pagāra in the Hōshāngābād district ; men-  
 tioned in an early record as Paṅgaraka 511, 513  
 Pagodas, the Black and White, the names  
 discussed ... 348  
 pairau = prow ... 161  
 Paisāchi dialect ... 556  
 Paithān ; the places mentioned in the plates  
 of A. D. 794, identified, 515 ;—and those  
 in the plates of A. D. 1272 ... 517  
 palaeographic research, the necessity for  
 further ... 23  
 palankine, 389 ; the term discussed ... 398 f.  
 Paleakate = Pulicat ... 355  
 Palecate = Pulicat ... 355  
 palega = tone, a small boat ... 161  
 Palicata = Pulicat ... 351  
 pallakeen = palankine ... 399  
 pallenge = tone, a small boat ... 161  
 Palliacatt = Pulicat ... 348  
 palm-leaves, protectors against the Evil Eye. 104  
 Palus = Panaśa ... 372 f.  
 palwa (Malay), a skiff, 161 :— pālwaḍ (Indian),  
 a skiff ... 161  
 Panaśa = Palus ... 372 f.



- Pañchajanya**, the name of Krishna's conch (Jaina) ... 300
- Paṅgaraka**, ancient name of Pagāra in the Hōshangābād district ... 511, 513
- Pang-hse** = Panthay ... 39
- Pāṇḍavas**, Jaina view of the, 288 f.; the sons of Dhṛitarāshtra (Jaina), 296 :— as Jaina heroes ... 302
- Pāṇḍu**, son of Dhṛitarāshtra (Jaina) ... 296
- Pāniva** near Vādāthānagrāma, 517; = Panui. 518
- Paniyas**, the, of the Wynaad Hills ... 410
- Panthay**, derivations of, 39 ff. :— P Pārsi ... 40
- papaya**, note on, 552; pawpaw = papaya ... 552
- Parable in the Qorān** ... 165
- parao** = prow ... 161
- Pārśāraparvata**, Sanskritised name of Pārśad ... 201 n.
- Parasād** in Belgaum; its name Sanskritised as Pārśāraparvata ... 201 n.
- Pāramāth Temple** on Kuluba Hill ... 93
- parō** = prow ... 161
- paroe** = prow ... 161
- parr**, **parra**, a large boat ... 161
- parrasoll** = kitesall = umbrella ... 347
- Parsees**, advent in India of the ... 287
- Parsi** = Panthay ... 40
- Pārśva**, one of the five principal Jinas ... 240
- Pārśvanātha**, Jaina story of ... 302 ff.
- pāru** (Malayālam) = prow ... 161
- Parvalāhetta Range**, the ... 260
- Parvatēndra** = Satrunjaya ... 244
- parwē**, Dakhani, a large boat ... 161
- Pāṭālamūla** = Satrunjaya ... 244
- Pāṭaliputra**, the ancient, site of, at Gunsar ... 96 f.
- Pātāra-Pimpalagrāma** ... 517
- paṭṭada**; its meaning in the name of Paṭṭada-Kisuvōl ... 263 and n.
- Paṭṭada-Kisuvōl**, ancient name of Paṭṭadakal in Bijāpur, 259, 260 :— explanation of the name ... 263
- Paṭṭadakal** in Bijāpur, the ancient Kisuvōlāla, Kisuvōlāla, and Paṭṭada-Kisuvōlāla, 259, 260, 263
- paṭṭavāṭis**, the lists of the successions of the Jain pontiffs; the necessity for examining them more fully ... 7, 27
- Pātāra-Pimpalagrāma** = Pippalgaon ... 517
- pedigrees, vamsāvalis**; the preservation of them in India ... 7, 22
- Pegu**, Coast of, French M.S. Map of (XVIIIth Century) ... 234
- Peixoto**, Antonio, visits China in 1542 ... 437
- Pelham**, the, leaves the Downs, 1755 ... 454
- Peking**, Portuguese visit to, 1519 ... 428 ff.
- Pendurēm**, a wrong reading, 375 :— Pandār, 373 f. :— Leṇṭurēm ... 375
- Penti** = Panthay ... 40
- peragua**, Port., a fast sailing vessel ... 161
- Pereira**, Galiote, in China in 1569-70 ... 444
- Pereira**, Ruy Vaz, death of, in 1544 ... 437
- Perestrello**, Rafael, an early visitor to China, 422 f.; his visit to China ... 424
- Periplus of the Erythræan Sea** was probably written between A. D. 80 and 89 ... 24 n.
- Persaim** (Bassein in Burma) ... 30
- Pêrâr ogrāhāra** = Bêlār ... 261
- Phalguśrī**, Jaina teacher ... 308
- phallic worship**, its connection with Saivism. 282
- phallus**, a protector against the Evil Eye ... 104 f.
- Phaltan**; its ancient name was Pratyāṇḍaka ... 380, 381
- pharao** = prow ... 161
- Pharaoh** in the Qorān ... 41
- Pha-si** = Panthay ... 39
- phyugpo**, origin of the Tibetan term, = rich. 456
- Pillayar**, Tamil name for Ganēśa ... 255
- Pinto**, Fernão Mendez, his visit to China, 1542-4 ... 439 ff.
- Pipolo Cave** = Pippala Cave ... 58
- Pipolo Stone**, the ... 58 f.
- Pippala Cave**, the, described ... 57 f.
- pirogue** = prow = also a canoe (French) ... 161
- pitāmbara** = Krishna (Jaina) ... 302
- Pitṭāpuram** is the town referred to by Hiuen Tsiang as the capital of Kalinga ... 26
- Piyadaśi**, importance of his edicts and their language, 278 :— effect of, on Buddhism ... 278
- Policat** = Pulicat ... 355
- Ponāni**, Māppila College at ... 504
- Pondy** = Pundy ... 356
- poems**, Indian, historical value of classical ... 13
- Ponugunda** thirty, an ancient group of villages in the Hungund tāluka, Bijāpur ... 264
- porgo** = purgoe ... 162
- Port Blair** originally called Port Cornwallis, 29, 183; change of name from Port Cornwallis, 29 :— = Old Harbour ... 28
- Portuguese intercourse** with China in the 16th Century, 421 ff. :— letters from China, (1534-6), 467 ff. :— in Canton (1534-6), 421 ff. :— forms of the titles of Chinese officials, 446; identified ... 448
- Portuguese**, Mongrel, a language, 401 :— Indian, songs of the ... 400 ff.
- Prabhāvatī**, daughter of Prabhākara of Prithvipura, wife of Munisuvrata, 293 :— wife of Pārśvanātha, 302; becomes a Jaina ascetic ... 303
- Prabhōpadam** = Satrunjaya ... 244



- prabhu*, a village official ... 372 n.  
*prāhu* (Malay) = prow ... 161  
*Prajā-pati* = Brahman ... 277  
*Prakrit Grammar*, a note on ... 553 f.  
*Prānata* (Jaina) ... 293  
*prāśasti*, 'an eulogy' ... 17  
*Prasēnagit*, son of Abhichandra ... 248  
*Pratishṭamuni* of Supārśva (Jaina) ... 294  
*Pratishṭhāna*, ancient name of Paṭṭan in the Nizām's Dominions, 515;—the country round it was called the *Pratishṭhāna bhukti*, 515;—on the Godāvari, legendary home of Śālivāhana ... 244  
*Prātipada* (Jaina), 307 = *Phalṭan* ... 380 f.  
*Pratyandaka* four-thousand province, the *Phalṭan* territory ... 380, 381  
*prau* (Malay) = prow ... 161  
*praw* = prow ... 161  
*prayer*, a protector against the Evil Eye, 105;—by Allah and his angels (!) ... 384  
*present position of Indian historical research* ... 1 ff.  
*priests in India*, power of the ... 283 f.  
*Prithvipati*, son of Hari (Jaina) ... 292  
*Prithvipitham* = *Satrunjaya* ... 244  
*Prithvipura* in Magadha (Jaina) ... 289 f.  
*proa* = prow ... 162  
*proe* = prow ... 161  
*Providence*, the Divine, in the *Qordā* ... 122 f.  
*provee* = prow ... 161  
*prow* = (Malay) a sailing vessel, 161;—double derivation from Malayalam *paru* and Malay *prahu* ... 161  
*Psalms*, imitations of the, in the *Qordā* ... 124 ff.  
*Ptolemy's geography* was put together about A. D. 150 ... 24 n.  
*public-works in inscriptions* ... 18  
*Pulicat* the name discussed ... 355 f.  
*Puligege* three-hundred district ... 106 and n., 262, 265  
*Pulikanagara* = *Puligege*, 106 = *Laksh-mēshwar* ... 106  
*Pullicat* ... 344  
*Puṭṭiyappayanaviḍu*, ancient name of 'Hooly-beade' in Bellary ... 258  
*Pūnād* or *Punnādū* six-thousand province. 215 n.  
*Punḍarika* = *Satrunjaya*, 244; origin of the name, 249;—the Jaina gāṇa-leader, 240; origin of the image of ... 305  
*Pundy Rocks*, 342; name discussed ... 356  
*Puntai* = *Panthay* ... 40  
*Puṇyārāsi* = *Satrunjaya* ... 244  
*Puṇyārāsi Surapriya* in the *Satrunjaya Range* ... 245  
*purga* = *purgoe* ... 162  
*purgoe* discussed, 160 ff.; Portuguese = *barco*, *barca* ... 161  
*purgoo* = *purgoe* ... 160  
*Pūraṇa*, son of Andhakavṛishni (Jaina) ... 294  
*Purdya*, remarks on the historical chapters of the, 10 f.;—the geographical chapters require to be fully examined ... 27  
*Purandara*, son of Vajrabāhu ... 257  
*Pūri* = *Jaggernaut* ... 348, 353  
*Purification*, ceremonial origin of, averting the Evil Eye ... 308 ff.  
*Purigege* three-hundred district ... 106 and n., 262, 265  
*Purikanagara*, *Purikarapura*, Sanskritised forms of the name of *Purigege-Laksh-mēshwar* ... 106  
*Purushōttama* (Jaina) ... 242  
*Pūshan*, the Vedic gods of the "Plebs" ... 274  
*Pūshānōragagrāma* = *Uragagrāma* ... 372  
*Pushkaradvīpa* (Jaina), a division of the world ... 243  
*Pushpadanta* = *Satrunjaya* ... 244  
*Pūtana*, ogress killed by Kṛishṇa (Jaina) ... 296  
*Puthee* = *Panthay* ... 39  
*Qibla* originally Jerusalem, 231; change from Jerusalem to Mecca ... 231  
*Qordā*, *Researches into the*, 121 ff., 165 ff., 223 ff., 321 ff., 382 ff., 457 ff., 519 ff.;—based on memory, 520 ff.;—portrays Muhammad as a man, 382; Muhammad did not mean to compile a book, 519; compiled by Zeid bin Thābit, 519;—oldest descriptions in the, 44 f.;—chronology of the, 526 ff.;—the Medianian Revelations, 223 ff., 228 ff.; Meccan and Medianian Revelations, features common to the, 223; Medianian Revelations relate to the social constitutions, 224; the Narrative Revelations in the, 41; Descriptive Revelations in the, 121 ff.; Legislative Revelations in the, 127 ff.; the basis of Muhammadan Law, 127 ff.; historical references in the, 41 f.; the "Hypocrites," 224 ff.;—ritual prescriptions, 231; religious observances inculcated in the, 128; unity of God in the, 123 f.; the Divine Providence in the, 122 f.; "fate" in the, arose out of politics, 326; the last day in the, 122; Creation, the, in the, 121; Nature in the, 122;—the Parable in the, 165; period of the *mathalā* in the, 175; aphorisms in the, 165 ff.; poetry in the, 165; a text on the Signs, in the, 126 f.; exorcism in the, 123; mysterious letters in the, are



- monograms, 524 ff.:—imitation of the Psalms in the, 124 ff.; deuteronomic character of speeches in the, 465:—interpolation in the, 521:—principle of Abrogation ... 231
- Qoreish, Muhammad's treaty with the ... 457
- Quarters, the Four, in Tibetan Marriage Song ... 131
- Quillin = Kling ... 350
- quoir = coir ... 389, 399
- and *l*, interchanges of: in Eranibarage-Yelbarga, 262;—other instances ... 377
- Rabbika, the word for God before Allāh ... 457
- Rabiyath, a Māppila hero ... 536
- rack = arrack ... 391
- Rādha, wife of Śāta (Jaina) ... 297
- Rāgs, the, note on ... 319
- Rairata, Mount, 242 = Girnār, 288, in the Satrunjaya Range, 245:—shrine attributed to Bharata ... 249
- Rājāgrha = Girivraja, 57; Old = Kusāgārapura, 57; = modern Rājgir, 55 f.:—New, of Huen Tsiang, 56:—Old = modern Rājgir, 56 f.
- Rājapura, origin of Jaina temple at ... 303
- Rājataranginī*, remarks on the historical nature of the ... 11 f.
- Rājāvalikathe*, an imaginative chronicle of Mysore ... 6, 201 and n.
- rājāvalis*, lists of the lineal successions of kings ... 7, 22
- Rajendrachōḍa the Dravida (in the spurious Wadgaon plates) ... 371
- Rājgir = Rājāgrha, 51 ff.; Tirtha of, 56:—*māhātmya* of the Tirtha at, topographical value of ... 56
- Rājīmati, daughter of Ugrasēna, wife of Nemi (Jaina) ... 302
- Rājpiṇḍ Cave, described ... 82 f.
- Raktapura, another name of the modern Altōn ... 106
- Rāma, Jaina legend of ... 251
- Rāma, son of Vasudēva, 294; probably due to Buddhist influence ... 285
- Ramadhān, commencement of the fast ... 231
- Rāmapatam = Ramnepatam ... 357
- Rāmapattanam ... 349
- Rāmapura = Maulmain ... 388
- Rāmāyana*, need for a critical text of ... 119
- Rāmēshwaram, modern forgeries at, which pretend to be ancient records ... 208
- Ramnepatam, 34; the name discussed ... 356 f.
- Rāmyakam, a mountain range (Jaina) ... 243
- Ramzān = Ramadhān ... 231
- Rangoon ... 30
- Rangoon (Syriam) River ... 234
- Ranna, the poet, was born in A. D. 949-50 at Mudhōl ... 381
- Raphi, a Māppila hero ... 532
- Rathanēmi (Jaina) ... 301
- Ratna, the adorer of the temple of Nēmi on Raivata (Jaina) ... 302
- Ratnapura, a town ... 247
- Ratnasēkhara of Ratnapura (Jaina) ... 296
- Ratnavati, wife of Ratnasēkhara (Jaina) ... 296
- Ravana, Jaina legend of ... 251
- Rebiath, Mappila hero ... 530
- records, ancient Indian official ... 9
- records, historical, Indian; classification of them according to the materials on which they have been preserved, 16 f.;—and according to the objects of them, 18 ff.;—spurious records, 201 ff.;—records containing passages of different dates, 209;—genuine records which have been tampered with ... 213 and n.
- Rego, Ambrosio do, reaches China (1521) ... 430
- Reihāna, Muhammad's Jewish wife ... 384
- Religion—began with nature-symbolism, 270; passed on to a deity arising out of nature-symbolism, 270:—doctrines, promulgated by inscriptions, 19:—the part that it has played in the preservation of ancient Indian history, 19 ff.:—in India, history of, 268 ff.; value of India for studying development of, 268; Aryan period of, 269 f.; of the Second Vedic period, 276; origin of the Buddhist, 277 f.; of the Jains, rise of the, 280; in the Indo-Teutonic period ... 268 f.
- Rēvakanimmaḍi, wife of Bātuga II. ... 265
- rGyabzhin, King of Heaven ... 334, 338
- Ribho, the gods of the smiths ... 274
- ring-finger, *andmika* ... 3 n., 370
- Ripumalla, a Yādava, 242; of the rise of Vanapāla, 247; lives at Raivata ... 247
- Rishabha, son of Mārudēva, 248; his children 248
- Rishabhasvāmin the first Jina, 247:—origin of the image of ... 305
- Rishabha-dēva, temple of ... 249
- Ritchie, John, his survey of the Andamans ... 232 ff.
- rites, protectors against the Evil Eye ... 105
- rKyanbyung-dbyerpa, 333, 341; the steed of Kēsar ... 340
- rock-carvings, in the Edakal Cave, described, 411; nature of, 413, 420; age discussed, 413:—in the Wynaad ... 409
- Rodrigues, Francisco, commands a vessel to China, 1519 ... 428
- Rohana mountain (Jaina) ... 290



- Rohini, wife of Kaṇsa (Jaina), 298:— wife of Vasudēva (Jaina) ... 294  
romances, historical, instances of, and remarks on them ... 12  
Rosipor = Narsapore ... 355  
Rose, the, Galley, in Delagoa Bay (1756) ... 453  
Ruchaka *tritha* (Jaina) ... 245  
Rudra, the Vedic, depends on nature-symbolism, 275: the god of the period following the *Vēda* ... 276  
Rudva = Kalkin ... 307  
Rukmini, wife of Kṛishṇa (Jaina) ... 294  
Rub in the *Qordā* unexplained ... 43  
Rāpya, Mount (Jaina) ... 243
- s* and *j*, interchanges of ... 258  
Sābhramati, a stream of Satrunjaya ... 240  
sacrifices, recorded in inscriptions ... 19  
Saddle Peak, the, in the Andamans ... 29  
Sadralā, a stream of Satrunjaya ... 240  
Saffi Ghāt, ancient road through ... 81 f.  
Sāgara, 250; son of Andhakavṛishṇi (Jaina), 294; brother of Ajitasvāmin ... 251  
Sāgaradatta of Padminikhaṇḍu (Jaina), story of ... 293  
Sahadēva, son of Paṇḍu (Jaina) ... 299  
Sahasrākhyā in the Satrunjaya Range ... 245  
Sahasraputra in the Satrunjaya Range ... 245  
Sahasrāva, the 8th heaven of the Jains ... 293  
Sahudrasthān, Stūpa of, described ... 81  
sailor's life in 18th Century in India, English ... 66 f.  
Saikhuvaṇ, Māppila hero ... 531  
Saiva religion in literature ... 284  
Saivism, the revival of, in the twelfth century A. D. ... 2  
Sākadvipīya-Brāhmanas were Iranians ... 287  
Sakata, ogre killed by Kṛishṇa (Jaina) ... 298  
Saktisimha of Saurashṭra ... 249  
Sakuni, son of Subala of Gandhāra (Jaina) ... 297  
Sakuni, ogre killed by Kṛishṇa (Jaina) ... 298  
Salgar = Selagāra ... 370  
Sālīh in the *Qordā* ... 44  
Sālivāhana, legendary ruler Pratishthāna on the Gōdāvari ... 244  
salt as currency in Ladākh, 456; the measure of currency in Ladākh, 453:— a protector against the Evil Eye ... 187  
Sāmāgaḍ plates of A. D. 754; a remark about the places which purport to be mentioned in them ... 213  
Samasi-Guḍigere *agradāra* ... 265 and n.  
Samatirṭhaka, an ancient village, identified ... 515
- Samgamēvaramdhātmya*, remarks on the, 201 n., 207 n.  
Sammēta Salla, Nēmi goes to ... 303  
Sammēta Sikkhara (Jaina) ... 294  
Sammēta *tritha* (Jaina) ... 245  
Sammētādri, Mount (Jaina) ... 245  
Sampson, Capt., commands the *Doddington*, 1755 ... 454  
Samtanu descended from Hastin of Hastinapura (Jaina), 294; story of ... 294 ff.  
Samudragupta, historical narrative in inscription of ... 18  
Samudravijaya, Yādava of Giridurga (Jaina), 246; son of Andhakavṛishṇi, 294, 297; father of Ariṣṭanemi ... 298  
Sanatkumāra descended from Hastin of Hastinapura (Jaina) ... 294  
sanbūq, Arabic for a sailing boat ... 161  
Sandrokottos, Chandragupta ... 16  
saṅkṛi, the, his duty (Jaina) ... 249  
Sanskrit Epic Text Society, proposals for ... 117 ff.  
Sāntalige thousand province ... 265  
Santi descended from Hastin of Hastinapura (Jaina) ... 294  
Sānti, one of the five principal Jinās ... 240, 250  
Saptaparna = Sattapanna, derivation of ... 58  
Sarah Kapardiyakshaya, a tank at Satrunjaya ... 241  
Sārākachchha or Sānākachchha twelve, a group of villages in the Paithan country ... 515, 516  
Sārṅgapāni = Kṛishṇa (Jaina) ... 302  
Sārṅgin = Kṛishṇa (Jaina) ... 302  
Sarvakāmada = Satrunjaya ... 244  
Sarvatirṭhāvātāram, a tank at Satrunjaya ... 241  
Sāsanaḍēvi, a kind of being (Jaina) ... 240  
sāsanasundarī = sāsanaḍēvi ... 241  
Sāsīlēkhā, wife of Sāryamallā ... 246  
Sāsvata = Satrunjaya ... 244  
Satapatraka in the Satrunjaya Range ... 245  
sati, occurrence of, in inscriptions ... 18  
Satrasēna, son of Dēvakti (Jaina) ... 298  
Satrunjaya, synonyms for ... 244  
Satrunjaya River ... 240  
Satrunjaya *Māhātmyam*, 239 ff., 288 ff.; its character as a poem ... 229  
Sattapanna Cave, true site of, 60; various views of, 58; described ... 57 ff.  
Satyabhāmā, sister of Kaṇsa (Jaina), 299:— wife of Kṛishṇa (Jaina), 294; story of her marriage with Kṛishṇa (Jaina) ... 299  
Satyaśrī, Jaina teacher ... 308  
Satyavati, wife of Samtanu, her story (Jaina), 295 f.; mother of Chitrāṅgada and Vichitravīrya (Jaina) ... 296



- Saudharmakalpa (Jaina) ... 292  
 Saudharmendra (Jaina) ... 251  
 Saundatti, spurious records from the neighbourhood of ... 209, 217 n.  
 Saura, grandson of Vasu (Jaina) ... 294  
 Sauri rules at Sauryapura in Kuśavarta ... 294  
 Sauripura, a town (Jaina) ... 294  
 Sauvira in Sindh founded by Suvira (Jaina) ... 294  
 Savitri in the Vedic period, 274; takes the place of Indra ... 275  
 Savutha = Samatirthaka ... 515  
 Sayid, a Māppila hero ... 536  
 scape, the, a protector against the Evil Eye ... 187  
 screetore ... 163  
 Scriptures, Christian, in the *Qorān* ... 466  
 sea-horse, a protector against the Evil Eye ... 187  
*Seahorse*, the ... 184, 186  
 Seal of the Prophets, the ... 522  
 seals, historical value of official ... 19  
 seapiah = sepoy ... 120  
 seapie = sepoy ... 120  
 seclusion, origin of, to avert the Evil Eye ... 308 ff.  
 secretary = screetore = a writing case ... 163  
 sects, religions mentioned in inscriptions and thus dated ... 21  
 Selagāra, ancient name of 'Salgar,' 'Surgul' ... 369, 370  
*sepoy*, early references to the Anglo-Indian word ... 120  
 Sepulveda, Henriques de, visits China in 1544 ... 437  
 Sequeira, Lopes de, sails for China ... 421  
 serpent, a protector against the Evil Eye, 187:— in the Jaina faith, origin of ... 302  
 Séuna country, the, was the country round Dēvagiri-Daulatābād ... 518  
 Seven Sleepers of Ephesus, the, in the *Qorān* ... 49  
 Sewatta = Samatirthaka ... 515  
 shaal (saul, *Sāl*), a timber ... 508  
*shahdism* ... 560  
*Shahdū Māla Pattu*, the ... 505  
 Shaibath, a Māppila hero ... 536  
 shai = chae ... 399 f.  
 Sharf-ibn-Malik, Muhammadan apostle to Malabar ... 501  
 Sheba, Queen of, in the *Qorān* ... 47  
 Shēkh Brahm = Farid Sāni ... 537  
 shell, a protector against the Evil Eye ... 187  
 Shinita, son of Andhakavrishni (Jaina) ... 294  
 Shoeb in the *Qorān* ... 44  
 Siddhādri = Raivata = Girnār ... 289  
 Siddharāj in the Satrunjaya Range ... 245  
 Siddhasēna, as a Jaina hero ... 304  
 Siddhēśvara Hill, the, described ... 96  
 Siddhikshētram = Satrunjaya ... 244  
 Siddhi Vināyaka = Sugrāma (Jaina) ... 295  
 "sign," the, in the *Qorān*, 42 ff.; Muhammad and the ... 323  
 "Signs," a text on the, in the *Qorān*, 26 f.; of God in the *Qorān*, 121:—"of the Book" in the *Qorān* ... 47  
 Sikari-hori = Chitricory ... 351  
 Sikharin, Mount (Jaina) ... 243  
 Sikhs, origin of the, 288:— the morning prayer of the ... 537 ff.  
 Silāditya of Vallabhi (Jaina) ... 307  
*silalēkhā*, 'a stone-writing' ... 17  
*silāśāsana*, 'a stone-charter' ... 17  
 silver ingots in Ladākh ... 456  
 Simandharasvāmin (Jaina) ... 242  
 Simharatha, enemy of Jarāsandha (Jaina) ... 291  
 Simraur, fragments at ... 63  
 Sinda family; a traditional account of its origin ... 378  
 Sindavāḍi country, localised ... 257  
 Sindas, the land of the, 257 ff.:— history of the (997 A. D. to 1233 A. D.) ... 265 ff.  
 siren, a protector against the Evil Eye ... 187  
 Siriguppe in the Karivīḍi Thirty ... 268  
*simin*, *simint*, a corruption of Portland "Cement" ... 163  
*sirmit*, a corruption of Portland "Cement" ... 163  
 Sitalasvāmin, temple of (Jaina) ... 292  
 Siva, rise of, as a god, 277:— worship, origin of its present prevalence ... 282  
 Sīvā, wife of Samudravijaya (Jaina), 297:— mother of Ariṣṭanemi ... 298  
 Sivapuri in the Kauśāmbaka forest (Jaina) ... 303  
 Sivapūr, ancient name of Jigālār or Jigālār in Dhārwar ... 258  
 six, an unusual number in Tibetan mythology ... 147  
 skeleton, a protector against the Evil Eye ... 187  
 skull, a protector against the Evil Eye ... 188  
 a Kyab-sbdun, the Earth Mother ... 339  
 S5bnāth Hill is in the Mahār Hills, 88 f.; site of Kukkuṭapādagiri ... 88 f.  
 Sōḍāsa, ancestor of Rāma (Jaina) ... 251  
 Sodom and Gomorra, Indian version of the story of ... 200  
 Sodré, Simão, voyage to Pahang, 1534 ... 436  
 Sogal, village in Belgaum; its ancient name was Soval, Sōl ... 259  
 Sōl, Soval, ancient name of Sogal in Belgaum ... 259  
 Solomon in the *Qorān* ... 47  
 Sōmaka, Jaina story of ... 300  
 Sōmadēva, an alleged Chālukya ... 206, 207 n.  
 Sōmayasas, son of Bāhubali (Jaina), 250:— progenitor of the Lunar Race ... 251



- Sommaveron = Summerwarren ... 357  
 Sonapore = Summerwarren ... 357  
 Sônbhândâr, the, at the Sattapanna Cave ... 58  
 Sonnewaren = Summerwarren ... 357  
 Sons of Adam, the ... 52  
 soosy, the term discussed ... 508  
 soul, flight of the, signs of ... 163  
 Sousa, Leonel de, his agreement with the Chinese in 1554 ... 439, 443  
 Soval, Sôl, ancient name of Sogal in Belgau ... 259  
 sovereigns in India, spade and dragon, 367 ff. = guinea in India ... 368  
 spade sovereigns in India ... 367 f.  
 Spirit Basis of Belief and Custom ... 97 ff., 187 ff.  
 spitting, a protection against the Evil Eye ... 188  
 spurious Indian records, 201 ff.;—the recognition of the existence of them is not a matter of simply modern date, 202;—the various ways in which they betray themselves, 202;—the reason for their existence, 203;—they are fabricated even in the present day, 203;—the principal occasions for the fabrication of them, 204;—the reason for the introduction of false historical statements into them, 205;—the point of view from which we must regard them, 205;—a list of them, 208;—the principle followed in framing the list, 209;—the reason why they are mostly on copper-plates, not on stone, 211;—a comparatively large number of them has come from Mysore, 212;—they nearly all claim to be title-deeds of landed estate, 212;—the list of them ... 214  
 Srênika as a Jaina hero ... 364  
 Sri-Pundarikâ gâṇa-leader (Jaina) ... 245  
 Sri Somayaśa built the temple to Rishabha-dêva ... 249  
 Sri Suvratajinendra (Jina) ... 251  
 Sri-Vajrasvâmin (Jaina) ... 305  
 Sriharikôṭa = Chitricory ... 351  
 Sringin, Puranic mountain ... 244  
 Sringzha, the blue ... 333  
 Srinivasa of Sripura ... 247  
 Sripâla, son of Mahipâla ... 247  
 Srisânti, the, Jinanîyaka ... 247  
 Srivardhananagara, an ancient town ... 380  
 Sriyahpadam = Satrunjaya ... 244  
 Sriyugâdijinêśvara, a Jaina god, 305; = Rishabha ... 242  
 Strong-btsan-sgampo, King of Heaven ... 361  
 St. Francisco = the Elephant ... 395  
 St. Lucia, River, the *Happy Deliverance* reaches (1756) ... 452  
*Sthalapurâṇas* present imaginative history and dates, 201 n.;—but they may be useful for geographical inquiries ... 27  
 Sthâṇugâdhagrâma-Tâlgund, the thirty-two-thousand Brâhmanas of ... 220 n.  
 Street-child, the (Tibetan folk-lore) ... 336, 339  
 Stretham, the, leaves the Downs, 1755 ... 454  
 Subala of Gandhâra, father of Gândhârî (Jaina) ... 297  
 Subari-bin-alavan (Mâppila hero) ... 531  
 Subhadra = Satrunjaya ... 244  
 Subhadra, wife of Andhakavîrâhpi (Jaina), 294;—wife of Vajrasena of Srâvasti (Jaina) ... 289  
 Subhatunga, a *biruda* applied to Krishna III. 373  
 Subhaviṛya descended from Hastin of Hastinâpura (Jaina) ... 294  
 Subrahmanîa (Madras), brother of Ganêśa ... 255  
 Sudharman, supposititious author of the materials for the *Satrunjaya Mahatmyam* ... 240  
 Sudharmapura = Suvannabhûmi = Thatôn ... 387  
 Sôḍi = the Kisukâḍ Seventy, 261; in the Dhârwar District ... 261  
 Sugâl = Lambâḍi ... 547  
 Sugarloaf, the, 343; a hill near Vizagapatam, the name discussed ... 357  
 Sughôsha, the name of Balarâma's conch (Jaina) ... 300  
 Sugrâma of Raivata (Jaina), 295; = Siddhi Vinâyak ... 295  
 suicide by ascetic in inscriptions ... 18  
 Sukarman, father of Kapardin (Jaina) ... 305  
 Sukhêna, minister of Bharata (Jaina) ... 248  
 Sulasâ, foster-mother of Dêvaki's children (Jaina) ... 298  
 sulphur, a protector against the Evil Eye ... 188  
 Sultan's Battery = Ganapativattam ... 409  
 Sulvâtavi, Sanskritised name of the Kisukâḍ district ... 261, 264  
 Sumitra of Râjagriha, father of Suvrata (Jaina) ... 293  
 Summerwarren, 342; the name discussed, 357; = Sommaveron = Sonnewaren = Sônapuram = Sônapur ... 357  
 Sumukha, Jaina devotee, 308;—King of Kausâmbi (Jaina), story of ... 292  
 Sun, the, in Tibet = Kêsar, 149; = Khyung-dkrung, 132; = umbrella, 139 f.; = *idem*, the golden hat ... 141  
 Sunâparanta, origin of the Burmese, 387; = Thayetmyo ... 388  
 Sunapore = Summerwarren ... 357  
 Sun-face, a protector against the Evil Eye ... 189  
 Sundara, a town ... 247  
 Sûṇḍi, 257 = Sôḍi in the Dhârwar District ... 261



- sun-symbols in the Edakal Cave ... 413 ff.
- Suparna = Garuda ... 284
- Supārśva, a mountain of Mēru (Jaina) ... 294
- Suprabhā, a wife of Daśaratha (Jaina) ... 281
- Supratishṭa-muni (Jaina) ... 297
- Sūra, father of Suśīlā ... 304
- sūras*, superscriptions of, discussed, 525 f.: the mysterious letters at the head of certain, are monograms ... 524 ff.
- Suradhārāpura at the foot of Raivata, Jaina story of its foundation by Indra ... 307
- Suradhēnupura forgery, remarks on the ... 203
- Surapati = Indra ... 242
- Surāsaila = Satrunjaya ... 244
- Surāshtrā (Jaina) ... 244
- Sūrpāraka = Sōpārā near Bassein in Bombay ... 387
- Sūrya grove at Satrunjaya ... 245
- Sūryamallā, Yādava of Giridurga ... 246
- Sūryagaśas, son of Bharata (Jaina), 250; ancestor of Sūryavamśa Solar Race (Jaina) ... 250 f.
- Sūryodyānam, a grove of Satrunjaya ... 240
- Suśīlā, wife of Jāvaḍa ... 304
- Sāta, Jaina story of ... 297
- Sutirtharāj in the Satrunjaya Range ... 245
- Suvannabhūmi = Sudhammapura = Thatōn ... 387
- Suvar, a Māppila hero ... 536
- Suvarnabhūmi = Mramma = Burma ... 387
- Suvarnadīpa in Jaina legend ... 305
- Suvira, grandson of Vasa (Jaina) ... 294
- Suvīrya descended from Hastin of Hastināpura (Jaina) ... 294
- Suvrata, the Arhant (Jaina) ... 293, 301
- Suvratasvāmin = Suvrata = Munisuvrata ... 294
- Svargōdyānam, a grove of Satrunjaya ... 240
- Svarnagiri, a summit of Satrunjaya ... 240
- svastika*, development of the, in Tibet ... 132 ff.
- Sveta, Puranic mountain ... 244
- Svētāmbara, explanation of ... 280
- svayamvara*, Jaina story of a ... 296
- sweeping, superstitions as to ... 256
- symbolism in the Edakal Cave ... 413 ff.
- Syriam (Rangoon) River ... 234
- Tabāk, the demonstration at ... 462
- Taddavādi thousand province ... 380, 381
- Tadigaipādi = Tadigaipādi ... 109
- Tadigaipādi Dadigaivādi, an ancient province, in Mysore, localised ... 109
- Tadiyavāli = Tadigaipādi ... 109
- Tākali = Takli ... 517
- Takkalikā in the Vāyvaḍa Twelve ... 380
- Takshāśīlā in Jaina story ... 305
- Tāladhvaja in the Satrunjaya Range ... 245
- Tāladvaji, a stream of Satrunjaya ... 240
- Tālgund, the thirty-two-thousand Brāhmanas of ... 220 n.
- Tamāo, Island of, 425; identification of ... 449 f.
- Tamon = Tamāo, Island of ... 425
- tāmraśāsana*, 'a copper-charter' ... 16
- Tapan Rāja, connected with the story of Bhāvaḍa Sēth ... 304
- Tapoban discussed, 61: spring of, described. 62 f.
- tarakkī*, a turkey cock: corruption of English. 320
- Tardavādi thousand province ... 380, 381
- tarryar*, an old Anglo-Indian term explained. 320
- Tayif in Māppila geography ... 536
- tea-money in Tibet ... 456
- Teri Kothī, its connection with Jātābhāra ... 513
- Terwan plates of A. D. 1260, remarks on the ... 207 n.
- Thamūd, the Tribe of, references to, in the *Qorān* ... 41, 44
- Thatōn = Sudhammapura = Suvannabhūmi ... 387
- thirty-two-thousand Brāhmanas of Tālgund. 220 n.
- thread, a protector against the Evil Eye ... 189
- Tibet, Pre-Buddhist Religion of, 131 ff.; Jaina notions of ... 305
- Tibet, Western, Marriage Songs in, 131 ff.; Marriage Ritual in ... 131 ff.
- Tibet, the sentence-rhyme of ... 330 f.
- Tidgundi plates of A. D. 1082; the places mentioned in them, identified ... 380, 381
- Tirthamānapura, city of Kapardin (Jaina) ... 305
- title-deeds to real property based on inscriptions ... 21
- tomb* = *toom* = *tāmu*, the S. Indian bushel ... 408
- tongue, a protector against the Evil Eye ... 189
- tone* = *dhony* = *tōni* = Tam., a sailing boat, 161; = *pallenge* = *palega*, a small boat ... 161
- tooth, a protector against the Evil Eye ... 189
- Toragal, a Chronicle of; remarks on its nature ... 201 n.
- Toragare sixty district ... 257, 265
- treaties with unbelievers, Muhammadan view of, rise of, 463 f.: in inscriptions ... 19
- Trimūrti, the Indian Trinity ... 284
- Tripētra-Kādamba ... 220 n.
- Tripētra-Pallava ... 220 n.
- Trinity, the Indian, foundations of, obscure ... 284
- Trivikrama, son of Trisanku of Srāvastī ... 247
- Trubath, the horse (Māppilas) ... 531
- Tætsæ-ngangdmar, the goat ... 333
- tufoon = typhoon = cyclone = hurricane ... 394
- Tula-Kāverī *Māhātmya*, the ... 406 ff.
- Tuliga, a *biruda* applied to Krishna III. ... 373
- tumbigege, an ancient village ... 107



- Tumbikkai Alwar, Tamil form of Ganēsa ... 255  
*Tundā As Rājā*, a Sikh air ... 537  
 Tungani = Panthay ... 39  
 Turchi = Taruturapalli ... 373  
 Taruturapalli = Turchi ... 373  
 Trashtri, a Vedic god of the "Plebs" ... 274  
 Two-Horned, the, in the Qordā ... 49  
 ty-foong (see tuffoon) ... 394
- Uechipillayar Kovil at Trichinopoly, temple  
 to Ganēsa ... 256  
 Udarya, a summit of Satrunjaya ... 240  
 Udayanti River (Jaina)... 295  
 Udayapura (Mewār), prince of, descended  
 legendarily from Maria, daughter of the  
 Byzantine Emperor Maurice ... 244  
 Ugrasēna, son of Bhojavriśhi of Mathurā  
 (Jaina), 294, 297; restored on Kaṇsa's  
 death ... 300  
 Uḥud, Muḥammadan defeat at (625 A. D.). 325 f.  
 Ujjayanta Mountain ... 290  
 Ujjayantikā, a stream of Satrunjaya... 240  
 umbrella = the sun (Tibet) ... 139  
 Undragiri Hill, near Selagāra ... 370  
 Undraparvata Hill near Selagāra, 370;—  
 = Junā-Panbālā ... 371  
 Union, the, a Snow ... 29 f., 183, 186  
 Uṇṭikavāṭikā, ancient name of 'Oontiya,'  
 514;—the places mentioned in the Uṇṭika-  
 vāṭikā grant, identified ... 509  
 Uṇṭikavāṭikā Grant, geography of the ... 509 f.  
 Urāgrāma = Nāgaon = Nāgaon-Nimni ... 372  
 Urdha-Pushkar (Jaina), a division of the  
 world ... 243  
 Urdhvalōkanivāsin Viḍanja (Jaina) ... 240  
 Urgan (Tibet) = Padmāsambhava ... 148  
 Urubath, King (Māppila hero) ... 529  
 Usmān bin Alvān, the third Māppila Shahīd ... 506  
 Uttarakuru = Videhakam ... 243  
 Uttarakurus, a people (Jaina)... 302
- r and g, interchanges of ... 258  
 Vāḍakhala near Vādāṭhānagrāma, 517:  
 = Warkhed ... 518  
 Vādāṭhānagrāma of the Sēupa country ... 517  
 Vādgaon = Vōḍagrāma... 515  
 Vāhagāmvu near Vādāṭhānagrāma, 517:—  
 Vāgaon ... 517  
 Vaibhāra Hill, 56, 58 ff.; Jaina account ... 245  
 Vaibhārakagiri shrine attributed to Bharata ... 249  
 Vaibhāra *Mrtha* (Jaina) ... 245  
 Vaidya-Ghōgharagrāma ... 517  
 Vaihāra Hill (Vaibhāra) ... 57
- Vajrayanti = Vanavāsi ... 387  
 Vaimānikas, Jaina divinities of the heavens... 28  
 Vaishnava religion in literature ... 284  
 Vaitāḍhya, Mount (Jaina) ... 245  
 Vajra = Sri-Vajrasvamin, 305: = Sri Vajra-  
 garu ... 306  
 Vajrabāhu, son of Vijaya ... 251  
 Vajrabhrī of Siddhapura (Jaina) ... 293  
 Vajrasēna of Śrāvastī, father of Bhīmaśena  
 (Jaina) ... 289  
 Vajra Svāmi = Vajra ... 306  
 Vakkalēri plates of A. D. 757; a remark on  
 the distance to which they travelled from  
 the place to which they really belong ... 212 n.  
 Vālikilla, son of Vṛishabhasvāmin (Jaina) ... 250  
 Valiya Tangal of Ponāni, the, High Priest  
 of the Māppilas ... 502  
 Valooz = Walanj ... 517  
 Vāmā, mother of Pārāvanātha, 302: becomes a  
 Jaina ascetic ... 303  
*varśāvalis*, pedigrees; the preservation of  
 them in India ... 7, 22  
 Vanamālā, daughter of Naravarman, mother  
 of Vanapāla ... 247  
 Vanamālīkā, wife of Virakuvinda and mistress  
 of Sumukha (Jaina) ... 292  
 Vanapāla, nephew of Mahipāla ... 247  
 Vanavāsi identified in India, 387:— = Prome  
 (Burmese) ... 387  
 Vanibhava Sect (Māppila) ... 532  
 Varali Rāg, discussion on the ... 319  
 Varatōyā, a stream of Satrunjaya ... 240  
 Vardhamana (Vira) the Jina, ostensible  
 author of the *Satrunjaya Mahātmyam* ... 239  
 Varuṇa, a primal deity, arising out of nature-  
 symbolism, 270; = the Night Sky, 270:—  
 a Vedic God of the Heavens, 270:— =  
 Asura ... 270  
 Vasconcellos, Mendes de, goes to Patan, 1535. 436  
 Vasingepatam = Vizagapatam ... 357 f.  
 Vastupālaṇḍ of Vallabhi (Jaina) ... 307  
 Vasu of Mathurā, story of (Jaina) ... 294  
 Vāsudēva (Jaina), 251; son of Andhakavṛishni,  
 294; brother of Samudravijaya, 297; father  
 of Kṛishna ... 294  
 Vāyvaḍa = Wāi ... 381  
 Vāyvaḍa twelve, a group of villages in  
 the Pratyāṇḍaka four-thousand province,  
 localised ... 380, 381  
 Vazir, a Māppila hero ... 535  
 Vēda, time of the ... 272 f.  
 Vedic period, the Second, Religion of ... 276  
 veiling, origin of Muḥammadan, of women... 284  
 veils, use of, to avert the Evil Eye ... 310  
 Veniaga, Ilha de = Tamão ... 440 f.



Vātugidēva, an alleged Chālukya ...	206	Vṛishabhasēna = Rishabha ...	248
Vichatravīrya, son of Sāmtanu (Jaina) ...	295	Vṛishabhasvāmin, ancestor of the Ikshvāku	
Vidāngas, the (Jaina) ...	240	race (Jaina), 250:—Jaina founder of the	
Vidēhaḥ, Mount (Jaina), 243 = Uttarakura ...	243	Kauravas ...	294
Vidēhakam, a mountain range (Jaina) ...	243	Vyantara gods, the (Jaina) ...	306
Vidhyābhrit, a country (Jaina) ...	302	Vyntarādhipa Viḍanja (Jaina) ...	240
Vidyādharma, 296 f.; a people (Jaina) ...	247	Vyāsa, Cave of, described ...	82
Vidhyādharma Munis (Jaina) ...	295		
Vidura, son of Dhṛitarāshṭra (Jaina) ...	296		
Vieyra, Christovão, his account of the		Wadgaon spurious plates; the places men-	
Chinese captives (1521) ...	430 ff.	tioned in them, identified ...	371
Vijaya, first ancestor of Rāma, etc. (Jaina) ...	251	Wāl; its original name seems to have been	
Vijayanagara series of records; there are		Vāyvaḍa ...	381
many forgeries which are said to belong		Waks, the Ship, voyage of, described (1746),	
to it ...	206, 209, 212	64 ff., 312 ff.:—Log of ...	64, 388 ff.
Vijayésvara, an ancient god at Paṭṭadakal ...	259	Walanj = Valooz ...	517
Vijésvara = Vijayésvara ...	260	war, spoils of, Muhammadan law as to the ...	392
Vikrama legend, remarks about the ...	3	wār, the term explained ...	537
Vikramāśāśācharita of Bilhana; remarks		water, a protector against the Evil Eye ...	189
on its historical value ...	12	weapons, superstition as to ...	163
Vikramapura, an ancient name of Arasibīḍi		weeping as a form of greeting ...	256
in Bijāpur ...	260, 266	Wisagapatam = Vizagatam ...	357
Vikramārka as a Jaina hero ...	304	words, a protector against the Evil Eye ...	190
Vikramapura = Arasibīḍi ...	260 f.	wolfskin, a protector against the Evil Eye ...	189 f.
Vimalādri = Satrunjaya ...	244, 308	writing, oldest form of Indian, 278:—a	
Vimalavāhana, Jaina devotee, 308:—first		protector against the Evil Eye ...	190
ancestor of Satrunjaya ...	248	Wynad = Vayanāta, 409:—Rock-carvings	
Vimalāsaila, the abode of Vira (Jaina) ...	308	in the ...	409 ff.
Vināyaka = Gaṇeśa ...	255		
Vināyakachāvuti, Gaṇeśa's birth-day (Madras) ...	256	Xavier, Francis, visits Japan and China, 1552 ...	425
Vindhyačhala district ...	300		
Viper, the ...	29, 185 f.	Yādu, eponym of Yādavas (Jaina version of) ...	294
Vira, one of the five principal Jinas, 240:—		Yahūd = Jew, is an Aramaic word ...	225
= Vardhamāna ...	239	yaksha, 241 f., 306:—rākshasa (Jaina) ...	246
Vira-Saivas, = Lingāyats; q. v. ...	2	yakshadēva (Jaina) ...	305 f.
Viridharavuna near Selagāra ...	370	Yakshāngi, a stream of Satrunjaya ...	240
Vira-Satyāśrayadēva, the British Museum		Yamalā, a stream of Satrunjaya ...	240
plates of; the places mentioned in them,		Yanduli = Andhali ...	373
identified ...	369	Yarkand, the king of, Tibetan song about ...	364
Viśākhapatanam = Vizagapatam ...	358	Yarpurpeta = Narsapore ...	355
Viśgiapatam = Vizagapatam ...	357	Yahtivana, 60 f. = Jēthlān = Jēshṭiban ...	62 f.
Viśṇu, rise of, as a god, 77; worship, origin		Yasōdharman, historical narrative in inscrip-	
of its present prevalence, 282:—Krishna		tion of ...	18
(Jaina) ...	302	Yasōmati, mother of Ajitasvāmin ...	251
Viśvakarman, alleged writer of some of the		Yavuna, brother of Jarāsandha (Jaina) ...	300
spurious records of Mysore ...	202 n.	Yelbarga in the Nizam's Dominions; its	
Viśvāksēna = Gaṇeśa ...	255	ancient name was Erambarage ...	262
Viśavīrya, descendant of Hastin of Hastinā-		Yeleyavāpi, ancient name of Yelāvi ...	372, 379
pura (Jaina) ...	294	Yodayā = Ayuthia = Bangkok ...	388
Vizagus = Vizagapatam ...	388	Yona = really Baktria or Persia ...	387
Vizacquepatam = Vizagapatam ...	343	Yonakaratṭha = Chien-mai = Zimmè ...	387
Vizagapatam, the name discussed ...	357 f.	Yudhishtira, Jaina version of his birth,	
Vōḍagrāma, an ancient village, identified ...	515	299:—was a dharmaputra (Jaina) ...	299
Vṛindāra, the = Jaina gods ...	240	Yudhishtira, the era of; the first three-	
Vṛisha, a demon killed by Kansa (Jaina) ...	299	thousand and forty-four years of the Kali-	
		yuga ...	219 n.



Yugādjīna, author of a Jaina <i>Māhātmyam</i> ...	240	Zeinab, story of ...	385
Yugādīśa, one of the five principal Jinas ...	240	Zeid bin Thābit compiles the <i>Qorān</i> ...	519
<i>yun-drung</i> = <i>svastika</i> in Tibet... ..	132	Zeimoto, Francisco, visits China in 1542 ...	437
Yuvārājapattana = Duraspatam ... ..	347	Zinatū'n-Nissā, daughter of Aurangzeb, 79 f.:—date of her death ... ..	80
Za, the Agu ... ..	333 f.	Zu'l-Kifl in the <i>Qorān</i> , not identified historically ... ..	46
Zarathustra, an inspired prophet ... ..	270	Zu'l-Qārnain in the <i>Qorān</i> ... ..	49



CATALOGUED

76220



The following is a list of the names of the persons who have been elected to the office of the President of the United States, and the names of the persons who have been elected to the office of the Vice President of the United States, for the year 1901.

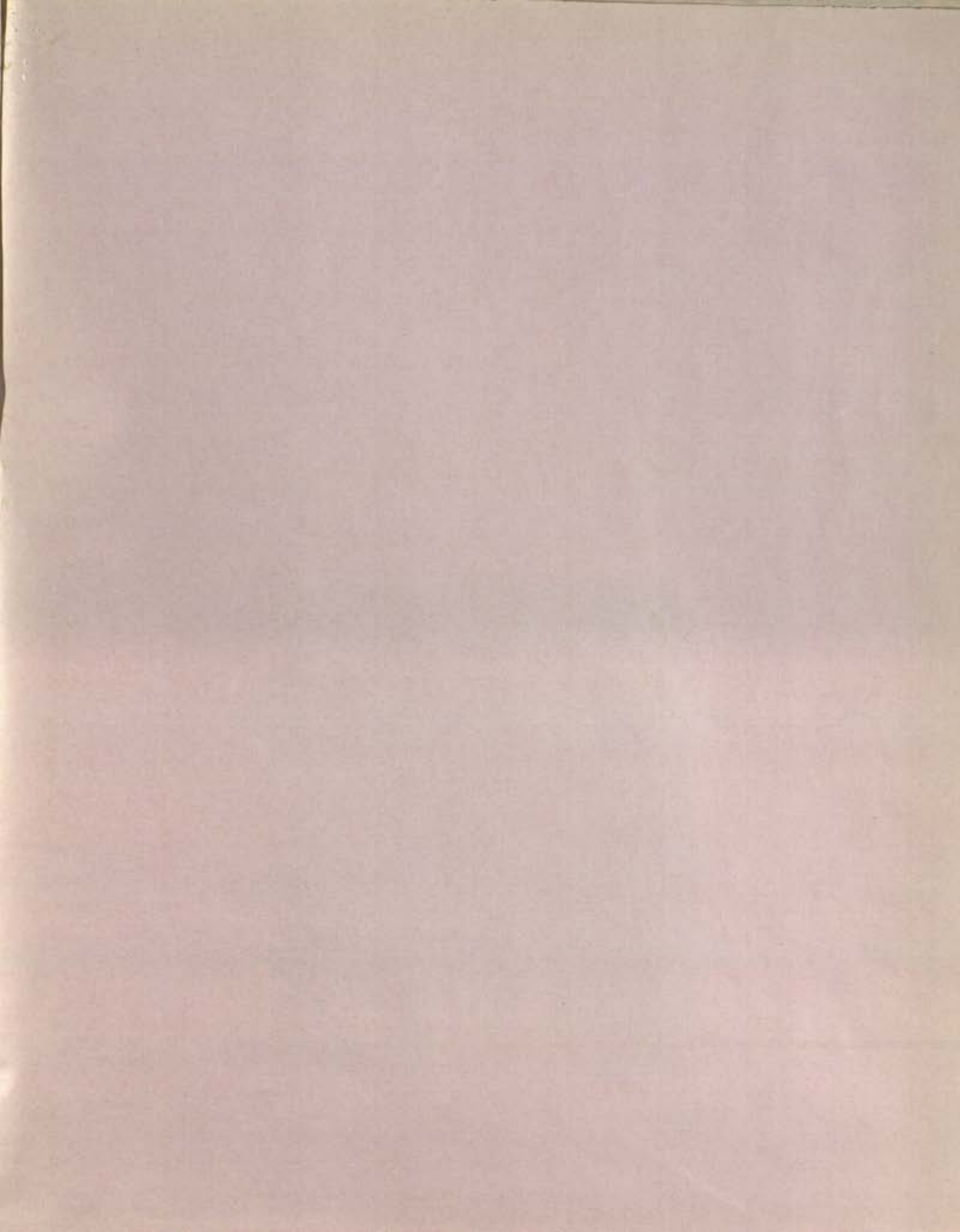
The following is a list of the names of the persons who have been elected to the office of the President of the United States, and the names of the persons who have been elected to the office of the Vice President of the United States, for the year 1901.



RECEIVED

The following is a list of the names of the persons who have been elected to the office of the President of the United States, and the names of the persons who have been elected to the office of the Vice President of the United States, for the year 1901.











*"A book that is shut is but a block"*

CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL LIBRARY

GOVT. OF INDIA  
Department of Archaeology  
NEW DELHI

Please help us to keep the book  
clean and moving.

---